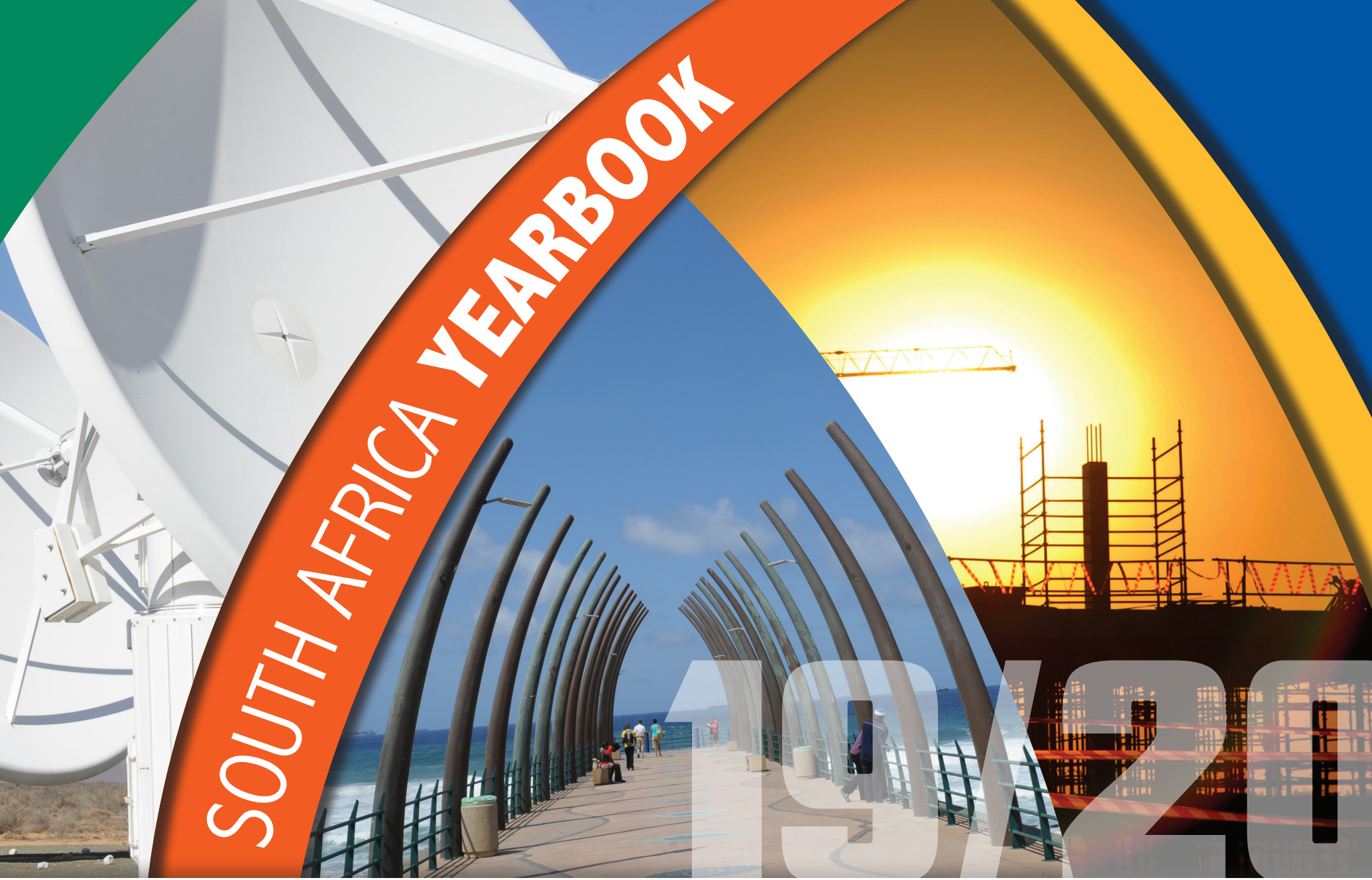
SOUTH AFRICA YEARBOOK 19/20



government communications

Department:
Government Communication and Information System
REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

2030 NDP

Foreword

The *South Africa Yearbook* (SAYB) 2019/20, documents a year of progress across society. At the same time, the year will forever be defined by the severe disruption to lives and livelihoods caused by the COVID-19 pandemic.

This edition of our annual SAYB is published amid the global struggle against COVID-19. In South Africa, the last few months of the financial year centred on the management of the pandemic in partnership with civil society and with our partners in Africa and across the globe.

Until the identification of the first COVID-19 case in South Africa in March 2020, government was making steady progress in concerted efforts to tackle the triple challenge of poverty, unemployment and inequality.

The pandemic has affected our growth trajectory and implementation of far-reaching programmes to improve the lives of South Africans. In its wake, the virus has left a damaged economy, a sudden loss of income for individuals and businesses and a country that has to engage with the world outside in new and different ways.

However, as with all crises, COVID-19 has compelled us to revisit our plans for revitalising the economy and making our economy more inclusive and equitable.

This crisis has also sparked innovation and adaptation in many areas, and the adaptability and flexibility demonstrated by our nation during this time bodes well for the tasks that we must now undertake.

One of the key developments in our quest for inclusive growth was the appointment of the Presidential Economic Advisory Council in October 2019, tasked with ensuring greater coherence and consistency in the implementation of economic policies that spur inclusive growth.

The expertise of the council members is an even more critical asset to our country in the midst of COVID-19.

This SAYB reminds us of the vital interventions we took in the year under review to support Early Childhood Development, which is globally recognised as the most powerful investment in human capital that a country can make.

To strengthen the ongoing fight against gender-based violence (GBV) and femicide, women's rights and gender power relations will be part of Life Orientation in the school curriculum. Necessary amendments are being made to laws and policies to ensure that perpetrators of GBV are brought to book.

During South Africa's Chairship of the African Union in 2020, we have prioritised gender empowerment, and protecting and promoting the rights of adolescent girls and young women on the African continent.

Back home, the District Development Model (DDM) was introduced to build a coherent and coordinated state, and improve integrated planning across government. In each of the 44 districts and eight metropolitan areas, the DDM involves all social partners, including business, civil society, faith-based communities and traditional leaders, in the approach of One District, One Plan.

Government recognises the important role played by traditional leadership in mobilising our people behind a common vision of freedom, equality and justice. As part of efforts to address the challenges of landlessness, poverty and inequality, we are fast-tracking the process of land reform.

The Coronavirus pandemic may have cast a heavy shadow over our efforts to grow South Africa, but this crisis has changed the way we approach the health and well-being of our nation, the way we treat our environment, and how we relate to one another.

Our continued fight against the virus, South Africa's own contribution to the global search for a vaccine, the solidarity and cooperation we have deepened with states across our continent and the regard the world has expressed for our efforts to fight the virus, will ensure that the new normal will also be a better normal.

That requires us to build on the many achievements recorded in this publication, which I am proud to commend to you.

His Excellency Cyril M. Ramaphosa
President of the Republic of South Africa
October 2020

South Africa Yearbook 2019/20

Twenty-seventh (27th) edition
(Originally published as *South Africa Official Yearbook*)

Compiled, edited and published by:
Government Communications (GCIS)
Private Bag X745, Pretoria, 0001

Telephone: 012 473 0000
Website: *www.gcis.gov.za*

Editor: Miriam Mokoena

Assistant Editors: Kirosha Kamal
Malphia Honwane

Researchers: Kirosha Kamal
Lindokuhle Mabhena

Picture coordinator: Elizabeth Sibiya

Images supplied by: GCIS

Design and layout: Rachel Sekhu

ISBN: 978-0-620-87169-3

The *South Africa Yearbook* (SAYB) is compiled and edited by the GCIS. The editorial staff has taken all reasonable care to ensure correctness of facts and statistics. However, any person requiring formal confirmation of any data in the SAYB, or more detailed specific information, should consult the sources as indicated. The information is also available on Government Online (*www.gov.za*).

Unless otherwise specified, the information contained in this book was the latest available in September 2020.

For any enquiries, please contact the Editor, Miriam Mokoena, tel: 012 473 0089, email: *miriam@gcis.gov.za*

2019/20 SOUTH AFRICA YEARBOOK

Land and its people

Land and its people

South Africa occupies the most southern tip of Africa with its long coastline stretching more than 3 000 kilometres (km) from the desert border with Namibia on the Atlantic coast southwards around the tip of Africa and then north to the border of subtropical Mozambique on the Indian Ocean.

The country has more than 290 conservation parks. It is home to almost 300 mammal species, about 860 bird species, and 8 000 plant species. The annual sardine run is the biggest migration on the planet.

South Africa comprises nine world heritage sites and is divided into eight biomes.

The heritage sites are:

- Fossil Hominid Sites of South Africa (i.e. Cradle of Humankind, Taung Skull Fossil Site and Makapan Valley)
- Mapungubwe Cultural Landscape
- Richtersveld Cultural and Botanical Landscape
- Robben Island
- Cape Floral Region Protected Areas
- iSimangaliso Wetland Park
- Vredefort Dome
- uKhahlamba/Drakensberg Park
- ‡Khomani Cultural Landscape.

The biomes are:

- Grassland
- Savanna
- Succulent Karoo
- Nama Karoo
- Forest
- Fynbos
- Desert
- Thicket.

The country is considered to be the cradle of humankind and boasts 40% of all hominid finds on Earth.

The land

Stretching latitudinally from 22°S to 35°S and longitudinally from 17°E to 33°E, South Africa's surface area covers 1 219 602 km^2.

Physical features range from bushveld, grasslands, forests, deserts and majestic mountain peaks, to wide unspoilt beaches and coastal wetlands.

The country shares common boundaries with Namibia, Botswana, Zimbabwe, Mozambique and Eswatini, while the Mountain Kingdom of Lesotho is landlocked by South African territory in the south-east.

The Prince Edward and Marion islands, annexed by South Africa in 1947, lie some 1 920 km south-east of Cape Town.

The oceans and coastline

The warm Mozambique-Agulhas Current skirts the east and south coasts as far as Cape Agulhas, while the cold Benguela Current flows northwards along the west coast as far as southern Angola.

The contrast in temperature between these two currents partly accounts for significant differences in climate and vegetation, as well as differences in marine life.

Owing to the cold waters of the west coast being much richer in oxygen, nitrates, phosphates and plankton than those of the east coast, the South African fishing industry is centred on the west coast.

Saldanha Bay on the west coast is the only ideal natural harbour.

Rivers and lakes

None of the country's rivers are commercially navigable and most river mouths are unsuitable as harbours because large sandbanks block entry for most of the year.

South Africa has no significant natural lakes. Artificial lakes are used mostly for crop irrigation. The Orange River is South Africa's largest river. Rising in the Drakensberg Mountains, it traverses through the Lesotho Highlands and joins the Caledon River between the Eastern Cape and the Free State before it empties into the Atlantic Ocean forming the border with Namibia.

Other major rivers include the Vaal, Breede, Komati, Lepelle (previously Olifants), Tugela, Umzimvubu, Limpopo and Molopo.

Relief features

South Africa's surface area falls into two major physiographic categories: the interior plateau and the land between the plateau and the coast.

Forming the boundary between these two areas is the Great Escarpment, the most prominent and continuous relief feature of the country. Its height above sea level varies from about 1 500 metres (m) in the dolerite-capped Roggeveld scarp in the south-west, to 3 482 m in the KwaZulu-Natal Drakensberg.

Inland from the escarpment lies the interior plateau, which is the southern continuation of the great African plateau stretching north to the Sahara Desert. The plateau is characterised by wide plains with an average height of 1 200 m above sea level. The dissected Lesotho plateau, which is more than 3 000 m above sea level, is the most prominent.

Between the Great Escarpment and the coast lies an area which varies in width from 80 km to 240 km in the east and south, and 60 km to 80 km in the west. At least three major subdivisions are recognised – the eastern plateau slopes, the Cape folded belt and adjacent regions, and the western plateau slopes.

Climate

A subtropical location, moderated by ocean on three sides of the country and the altitude of the interior plateau, account for the warm temperate conditions. South Africa is a relatively dry country, with an average annual rainfall of about 500 mm.

While the Western Cape gets most of its rainfall in winter, the rest of the country is generally a summer-rainfall region.

Temperatures in South Africa tend to be lower than in other countries at similar latitudes, owing mainly to greater elevation above sea level. On the interior plateau, the altitude – Johannesburg lies at 1 694 m – keeps the average summer temperatures below 30 °C. In winter, for the same reason, night-time temperatures can drop to freezing point or lower in some places. South Africa's coastal regions are therefore relatively warm in winter.

The hottest place in South Africa is Letaba in Limpopo, with a mean annual temperature of 23.7 °C and an average annual maximum temperature of 30.7 °C.

Average temperatures (°C) in South Africa

City	Summer		Winter	
	Max	Min	Max	Min
Bloemfontein	31	15	18	-2
Cape Town	26	16	18	7
Durban	28	21	23	11
East London	26	18	21	10
George	25	16	19	8
Johannesburg	26	15	17	4
Kimberley	33	17	19	2
Mthatha	27	17	21	5
Musina	34	22	25	8
Nelspruit	28	18	22	7
Pietermaritzburg	28	19	23	6
Polokwane	28	17	21	5
Port Elizabeth	26	18	20	8
Pretoria	29	18	20	5
Richards Bay	29	21	23	12
Skukuza	33	21	26	6
Thohoyandou	30	20	23	10
Upington	36	20	21	4

Source: South African Weather Service

The coldest place is Buffelsfontein near Molteno in the Eastern Cape, with a mean annual temperature of 11.5 °C and an average annual minimum temperature of 2.9 °C.

The wettest place is Matiwa in Limpopo with an average annual rainfall of 2 004 millimetres (mm) (calculated over a 60-year period).

The driest place in the country is Alexander Bay in the Northern Cape, with an average annual rainfall of only 46 mm and the windiest place is Cape Point in the Western Cape, which experiences only 2% of all hours in the year with calm conditions. The average wind speed is 6.9 metres per second (m/s) with 42.1% of the wind speeds higher than 8 m/s.

The people

For 2020, Statistics South Africa (Stats SA) estimates the mid-year population at 59.62 million. The black African population is in the majority (48.2 million) and constitutes approximately 81% of the total South African population. The white population is estimated at 4.7 million, the coloured population at 5.2 million and the Indian/Asian population at 1.5 million.

Gauteng continues to record the largest share of South Africa's population, with approximately 15.5 million people (26.0%) living in this province. The second-largest population with approximately 11.5 million people has been recorded in KwaZulu-Natal. Northern Cape maintained its status as the province with the lowest population in the country with a population estimated at 1.29 million people. The report indicates that approximately 51.1% (approximately 30.5 million) of the population is female.

According to the report about 28.6% of the population is aged younger than 15 years and approximately 9.1% (5.4 million) is 60 years or older. Of those younger than 15 years of age, the majority reside in KwaZulu-Natal (21.8%) and Gauteng (21.4%). Of the elderly (those aged 60 years and older), the highest percentage 24.1% (1.31 million) reside in Gauteng.

About 28.6% of the population is aged 0 – 14 years, while the proportion of elderly persons aged 60 and older has grown from 7.6% in 2002 to 9.1% in 2020.

The report further shows that for the period 2016 – 2021, Gauteng and the Western Cape are estimated to experience the largest inflow of migrants of approximately, 1 553 162 and 468 568 respectively. Life expectancy at birth for 2020 is estimated at 62.5 years for males and 68.5 years for females. The infant mortality rate for 2020 is estimated at 23.6 per 1 000 live births.

The estimated overall HIV prevalence rate is approximately 13.0% among the South African population. The total number of people living with HIV is estimated at approximately 7.8 million in 2020. For adults aged 15 – 49 years, an estimated 18.7% of the population is HIV positive.

Languages

Besides the official languages, scores of others – African, European, Asian and more – are spoken in South Africa, as the country lies at the crossroads of southern Africa. Other languages spoken here and mentioned in the Constitution are the Khoi, Nama and San languages, sign language, Arabic, German, French, Greek, Gujarati, Hebrew, Hindi, Portuguese, Sanskrit, Tamil, Telegu and Urdu. There are also a few indigenous creoles and pidgins.

English is generally understood across the country, being the language of business, politics and the media, and the country's lingua franca. But it only ranks fourth out of 11 as a home language.

South Africa's linguistic diversity means that all 11 languages have had a profound effect on one another. South African English, for example, is littered with words and phrases from Afrikaans, isiZulu, Nama and other African languages.

According to Stats SA's Community Survey 2016, isiZulu is the most common home language spoken by 24.6% of the population, followed by isiXhosa (17%), Afrikaans (12.1%), Sepedi (9.5%), Setswana (8.8%), and English (8.3%), Sesotho (8%), Xitsonga (4.2%), Siswati (2.6%), Tshivenda (2.4%) and isiNdebele (1.6%).

In terms of the Use of Official Languages Act, 2012 (Act 12 of 2012), and as part of promoting social cohesion and nation-building, every government department, public entity and enterprise is expected to establish a language unit and adopt a language policy.

Languages according to mother tongue

Language	Percentage	Language	Percentage
IsiZulu	24.6%	isiNdebele	1.6%
IsiXhosa	17.0%	Siswati	2.6%
Afrikaans	12.1%	Tshivenda	2.4%
Sepedi	9.5%	Xitsonga	4.2%
English	8.3%	Sesotho	8%
Setswana	8.8%		

Source: Community Survey 2016

Religion

South Africa is a secular democracy with freedom of religion. Many religions are represented in the ethnic and regional diversity of the population.

The majority of South Africans or 79.8%, are Christian. The independent African Zion Christian churches predominate, being the faith of 15.3% of the total population, and 19.2% of all Christians. Roughly 15% of the population have no religion, and 1.4% are undetermined about their faith. Islam is the religion of 1.5% of South Africans, Hinduism that of 1.2%, African traditional belief 0.3%, Judaism 0.2% and other beliefs 0.6%.

The provinces

Eastern Cape

The Eastern Cape, at 168 966 km², is South Africa's second-largest province after the Northern Cape, taking up 13.9% of the total land area.

The province has a population of more than 6.7 million people, the majority of whom speak isiXhosa, followed by Afrikaans and English.

It is a region of great natural beauty, particularly the rugged cliffs, rough seas and dense green bush of the Wild Coast.

The region has remarkable natural diversity, ranging from the dry, desolate Great Karoo to the lush forests of the Wild Coast and the Keiskamma Valley; the fertile Langkloof Valley, renowned for its rich apple harvests; and the mountainous southern Drakensberg region at Elliot.

Various floral habitats meet in the province, ranging from tropical forests in the north to the more temperate woods of the south.

The province is home to a number of higher education institutions, including Rhodes University, the Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University, the University of Fort Hare and the Walter Sisulu University of Technology.

It has airports in Bhisho, East London, Mthatha and Port Elizabeth. It also has two major harbours in East London and Port Elizabeth respectively.

Eastern Cape

Capital: Bhisho
Principal languages:
IsiXhosa 82.7%
Afrikaans 10.3%
English 3.9%
Population: 6 734 001
Percentage share of the total population: 11.3%
Area: 168 966 km²

Source: Community Survey 2016 and *mid-year population estimates, 2020*

Agriculture, fisheries and forestry

The fertile Langkloof Valley in the south-west has enormous deciduous fruit orchards, while sheep farming predominates in the Karoo.

The Alexandria-Grahamstown area produces pineapples, chicory and dairy products, while coffee and tea are cultivated at Magwa.

An olive nursery developed in collaboration with the University of Fort Hare forms a nucleus of olive production in the Eastern Cape.

The coastal areas receive good summer rainfall and have a moderate climate, becoming more subtropical to the north-west, which makes it particularly suitable for forestry.

The basis of the province's fishing industry is squid, some recreational and commercial fishing for line fish, the collection of marine resources, and access to line-catches of hake.

Industry

There are two Industrial Development Zones (IDZs): the West Bank in East London and Coega, near Port Elizabeth, which includes the deepwater Port of Ngqura.

The metropolitan economies of Port Elizabeth and East London are based primarily on manufacturing, the most important being automotive manufacturing. The province is the hub of South Africa's motor industry. With its ability to link throughout the economy, the government has identified the automotive industry as a key growth sector. It already exhibited significant growth under the Motor Industry Development Programme.

Other important sectors include renewables and green industries, forestry and timber processessing, pharmaceuticals, plastics and chemicals, capital goods and tourism.

Free State

According to the mid-year population estimates, 2020, there were over 2.9 million people in the Free State on about 129 825 km² of land. The main languages spoken are Sesotho, Afrikaans and isiXhosa.

The Free State has wide horizons and blue skies, farmland, mountains, goldfields and widely dispersed towns.

It lies in the heart of South Africa, with Lesotho nestling in the hollow of its bean-like shape. Between the Vaal River in the north and the Orange River in the south, this immense rolling prairie stretches as far as the eye can see.

Mangaung, comprising Bloemfontein, Botshabelo and Thaba Nchu, has an established institutional, educational and administrative infrastructure. With Bloemfontein being South Africa's judicial capital, the province houses the Supreme Court of Appeal. Important towns include Welkom, Sasolburg, Odendaalsrus, Kroonstad, Parys, Phuthaditjhaba, Bethlehem and the charming village of Clarens situated in the rolling foothills of the Maluti Mountains.

Some of South Africa's most valued San rock art can be found in the Free State. Other tourist attractions include the Golden Gate National Park, the annual air show in Bethlehem, the Cherry Festival in Ficksburg and the Fauresmith International Endurance Ride equestrian event.

The annual Mangaung African Cultural Festival, known as MACUFE, is hosted in partnership with the Tourism Authority and the Performing Arts Centre of the Free State.

The Vredefort Dome, 10 km in diameter, is South Africa's seventh world heritage site.

Free State

Capital: Bloemfontein
Principal languages:
Sesotho 71.9%
Afrikaans 10.9%
IsiXhosa 5.7%
Population: 2 928 903
Percentage share of the total population: 4.9%
Area: 129 825 km²

Source: Community Survey 2016 and *mid-year population estimates, 2020*

Agriculture

Agriculture dominates the Free State landscape, with cultivated land covering 32 000 km² and natural veld and grazing 87 000 km² of the province. Field crops yield almost two thirds of the gross agricultural income of the province. Animal products contribute a further 30%, with the balance generated by horticulture.

Mining

The National Development Plan has intensified the mining potential that still exists in the goldfields region of Matjhabeng in the Lejweleputswa District as a job intervention zone.

The De Bron-Merriespruit Gold Project and the Bloemhoek Gold Project are included as potential development projects in the scope of work of the Presidential Infrastructure Coordinating Commission.

The province has 12 gold mines, producing 30% of South Africa's output and making it the fifth-largest producer of gold in the world. Gold mines in the Free State also supply a substantial portion of the total silver produced in the country. Uranium occurring in the gold-bearing conglomerates of the goldfields is extracted as a by-product.

The Free State's gold reef of more than 400 km stretches across the province from Gauteng. South Africa's largest gold-mining complex is the Free State Consolidated Goldfields, with an area of 330 km^2.

Bituminous coal is mined and converted to petrochemicals at Sasolburg.

The province also produces high quality diamonds from its kimberlite pipes and fissures, and the country's largest deposit of bentonite is found in the Koppies district.

Manufacturing and industry

The Maluti-a-Phofung Special Economic Zone is the Free State's share of the logistics and industrial corridor. The Vehicle Distribution Centre was established in partnership with the German Bremen Logistics Group, which committed R60 million towards this project. The Harrismith Food Processing Park forms part of the broader development initiative.

The green economic solar zone in the Xhariep district was expected to result in the establishment of the Xhariep Solar Park, harnessing the solar radiation in the southern part of the Free State.

The Ingula Pumped Storage Scheme forms part of Eskom's Capital Expansion programme. This energy infrastructure project is located on the border of the Phumelela and Maluti-a-Phofung Local Municipalities in the Free State and eMnambithi Local Municipality and the uThukela District Municipality in KwaZulu-Natal.

Sasol South Africa, the largest producer of synthetic fuels on the sub-continent, remains a key role-player in the Free State economy. Its investment in its Sasolburg operations is evident from the Wax Expansion project, the Ethylene Purification Unit 5, the Gas Engine Power Plant and Clean Fuels 2.

The Omnia Nitric Acid complex, located within the Sasol Industrial Complex, includes a nitric acid plant, an ammonium nitrate plant, a porous ammonium nitrate plant, a fleet of 145 specialised ammonia rail tankers and other ancillary facilities.

Gauteng

The 2020 mid-year population estimates show that Gauteng remains the most populous province – with approximately 15.5 million people (26.08%). Gauteng contributes 33.9% to South Africa's gross domestic product and is also one of the biggest contributors to the economy of the continent.

Gauteng accounts for the bulk of all employees' remuneration in the country, at a whopping 47.7%, and is responsible for 50.4% of all company turnover in South Africa. Financial and business services, logistics, manufacturing, property, telecommunications and trade are some of the province's most important economic sectors.

It is the business heart of South Africa, but it is also the shopping mecca of Africa, with 60% of tourists from the rest of the continent citing shopping as their reason for visiting the province.

The population of more than 15 million people has the highest per-capita income level in the country. The province blends cultures, colours and first- and third-world traditions in a spirited mix, flavoured by a number of foreign influences.

Most overseas visitors enter South Africa via the OR Tambo International Airport in Johannesburg.

Gauteng

Capital: Johannesburg
Principal languages:

IsiZulu	23.0%
Afrikaans	10.1%
English	11.3%

Population: 15 488 137
Percentage share of the total population: 26.08%
Area: 18 178 km^2
Source: Community Survey 2016 and *mid-year population estimates, 2020*

South of Johannesburg lies Soweto, the most populous urban residential area in the country, with a population of more than a million.

Some 50 km north of Johannesburg lies South Africa's administrative capital, Pretoria. The magnificent Union Buildings, which overlook the city from Meintjieskop, represent the official seat of the South African Government and house the offices of the country's President.

The industrial area of Rosslyn and the townships of Soshanguve and Ga-Rankuwa are situated north of Pretoria. Cullinan, which is well known for its diamonds, and Mamelodi lie to the east. To the west lies Atteridgeville.

Other important Gauteng towns include Krugersdorp and Roodepoort on the West Rand; and Germiston, Springs, Boksburg, Benoni, Brakpan and Kempton Park on the East Rand. Vanderbijlpark and Vereeniging in the south of the province are major industrial centres, while Heidelberg, Nigel and Bronkhorstspruit, to the east, are of agricultural importance.

The University of Pretoria is the largest residential university in South Africa, while the University of South Africa is believed to be the largest correspondence university in the world. Other universities include the University of the Witwatersrand and the University of Johannesburg.

The province also has several other tertiary education institutions such as universities of technology and further education and training colleges. Gauteng is also home to leading research institutions such as the Council for Scientific and Industrial Research (CSIR), the Agricultural Research Council, the Onderstepoort Veterinary Institute and the Human Sciences Research Council.

Mining and manufacturing

Manufacturing includes basic iron and steel, fabricated and metal products, food, machinery, electrical machinery, appliances and electrical supplies, vehicle parts and accessories, and chemical products.

All major gold and diamond mining houses have their headquarters in Johannesburg, the biggest being Anglo American and De Beers.

Although gold-mining and ancillary industries provide thousands of jobs, the importance of mining is declining compared to the manufacturing and financial sectors. Gauteng dominates the South African economy in every major sector except agriculture, mining and quarrying. Mining produces only 6% of Gauteng's total income and 31% of export earnings.

Technology

More than 60% of South Africa's research and development takes place in Gauteng.

The CSIR is one of South Africa's leading science and technology research, development and implementation centres. Located in Pretoria, the CSIR's research and development areas include biosciences; the built environment; information and communication; materials science and manufacturing; natural resources and the environment; mineral resources; space technology; nanotechnology and synthetic biology.

The Innovation Hub in Pretoria is Africa's first internationally accredited science park and a full member of the International Association of Science Parks. Its community has become a regional centre of innovation and knowledge creation, linked to the fast-moving world of global interconnectivity, and made up of small, medium and micro-enterprises and multinational companies, employing over 1 000 people.

Industry and agriculture

A large area of Gauteng falls within the so-called "Maize Triangle." The province is an integrated industrial complex with major areas of economic activity in three sub regional areas, namely the Vaal Triangle; the East, West and Central Rand; and Pretoria. Johannesburg houses the Johannesburg Stock Exchange Limited, the largest securities exchange in Africa.

KwaZulu-Natal

KwaZulu-Natal is one of the country's most popular holiday destinations. It includes South Africa's lush subtropical east coast, stretching from Port Edward in the south to Mozambique in the north.

The Drakensberg mountain range stretches the entire length of KwaZulu-Natal's western boundary. The Drakensberg forms the boundary between South Africa and the mountain kingdom of Lesotho, and offers some of the country's most awe-inspiring landscapes.

It provided the backdrop for the films *Zulu* (1964) and *Yesterday* (2004) and the setting for Alan Paton's novel *Cry, the Beloved Country*, and is the inspiration for a million picture postcards.

Within the area is a vast 243 000-hectare (ha) sweep of basalt summits and buttresses; this section was formally granted World Heritage status in November 2000, and was renamed uKhahlamba-Drakensberg Park.

The summer-rainfall coastal regions are hot and humid, with a subtropical climate. The Midlands area is drier, with extremely cold conditions in winter and snow on the high-lying ground. In the north, the subtropical strip extends around Eswatini to the edge of the escarpment.

Visitors can enter the province through the King Shaka International Airport at La Mercy, north of Durban, or use the extensive national road network. There are also two major harbours – the port of Durban, which is one the busiest in Africa, and Richards Bay, which is an important coal-export harbour.

There are several nature reserves, including the Royal Natal National Park, Giant's Castle and the Kamberg Nature Reserve.

Tertiary institutions of learning in the province include the University of KwaZulu-Natal and the Durban Institute of Technology.

KwaZulu-Natal is the only province with a monarchy specifically provided for in the Constitution.

Industry and agriculture

KwaZulu-Natal has a diverse industrial sector, with major industries having developed around the port of Durban.

Major industries in the province are agriculture, forestry, aluminium, petro-chemicals, automotive manufacturing, steel production, plastics and packaging, paper and board manufacturing, and a range of industries associated with imports and exports though the major ports of Durban and Richards Bay.

KwaZulu-Natal

Capital: Pietermaritzburg
Principal languages:

IsiZulu	82.5%
Afrikaans	1.0%
English	12.5%

Population: 11 531 628
Percentage share of the total population: 19.3%
Area: 94 361 km^2
Source: Community Survey 2016 and *mid-year population estimates, 2020*

The coastal belt is also a large producer of subtropical fruit and sugar, while the farmers in the hinterland concentrate on vegetables, dairy and stock farming.

Another major source of income is forestry in the areas around Vryheid, Eshowe, Richmond, Harding and Ngome, which is also known for its tea plantations.

Limpopo

South Africa's northernmost province shares borders with Mozambique, Zimbabwe and Botswana, making it the ideal gateway to Africa. Named after the Limpopo River that flows along its northern border, the province is rich in wildlife, natural beauty and historical and cultural treasures.

The province is linked to the Maputo Development Corridor through the Phalaborwa Spatial Development Initiative, which is a network of rail and road corridors connected to the major seaports, opening up Limpopo for trade and investment. This is complemented by the presence of smaller airports in centres such as Phalaborwa and Musina, as well as the Gateway International Airport in Polokwane, the capital city, which lies strategically in the centre of the province.

The Great North Road, running through the centre of the province, strings together a series of towns such as Bela-Bela, with its popular mineral spa; Modimolle, with its beautiful Waterberg mountain range; Mokopane; Polokwane; Makhado, at the foot of the Soutpansberg mountain range; and Musina, which is well-known for its majestic baobab trees. The crossing into Zimbabwe is at Beit Bridge.

Phalaborwa and Thabazimbi are Limpopo's major mining centres, while the town of Tzaneen in the picturesque Magoebaskloof is known for its tea plantations, forestry products and tropical fruit.

The province is in the Savanna Biome, an area of mixed grassland and trees, generally known as bushveld. Natural resources include more than 50 provincial nature reserves and several private game reserves. The largest section of the Kruger National Park is along Limpopo's eastern boundary, which borders on Mozambique.

Several museums and national monuments bear testimony to the ancient people and fearless pioneers who braved the unknown.

Living museums include the Bakone Malapa Museum near Polokwane and the Tsonga Open-Air Museum near Tzaneen. Mapungubwe ("Place of the Jackal") Hill, some 75 km from Musina, is a world heritage site. It served as a natural fortress for its inhabitants from about 950 AD to 1200 AD.

Limpopo

Capital: Polokwane
Principal languages:
Sepedi 56.0%
Tshivenda 17.1%
Xitsonga 16.6%
Population: 5 852 553
Percentage share of the total population: 9.8%
Area: 125 754 km^2
Source: Community Survey 2016 and *mid-year population estimates, 2020*

Agriculture

Limpopo produces a wide range of agricultural products. The area is a potato belt and known for its superior quality potatoes for high-end markets. It also produces 75% of the country's mangoes; 65% of its papayas; 36% of its tea; 25% of its citrus, bananas and litchis; 60% of its avocados and two thirds of its tomatoes.

Other products include coffee, nuts, guavas, sisal, cotton, tobacco, sunflower, maize, wheat and grapes. In addition, more than 170 plantations produce timber.

Most of the higher-lying areas are devoted to cattle and game ranching, earning a reputation for quality biltong (salted, dried meat) – a popular South African delicacy.

Industry and mining

Limpopo also has abundant mineral resources, making mining the critical sector of the province's economy by contributing 22% of the gross geographic product. Metals include platinum, chromium, nickel, cobalt, vanadium, tin, limestone and uranium clay.

Other reserves include antimony, phosphates, fluorspar, gold, diamonds, copper, emeralds, scheelites, magnetite, vermiculite, silicon, mica, black granite, corundum, feldspar and salt.

The Medupi Power Station, a dry-cooled, coal-fired power station, is under construction near Lephalale. Medupi is a Sepedi word which means "gentle rain". The station is expected to create around 40 000 job opportunities.

Mpumalanga

Spectacular scenic beauty and an abundance of wildlife make the province one of South Africa's major tourist destinations.

Mpumalanga, which means "Place Where the Sun Rises", is home to more than four million people. The principle languages are Siswati and isiZulu.

With a surface area of only 76 495 km^2, it is the second-smallest province after Gauteng, yet has the fourth-largest economy in South Africa.

Bordered by Mozambique and Eswatini in the east, and Gauteng in the west, the province is situated mainly on the high plateau grasslands of the Middleveld. In the north-east, it rises towards mountain peaks terminating in an immense escarpment. In some places, this escarpment plunges hundreds of metres down to the low-lying area known as the Lowveld.

The province has a network of excellent roads and railway connections, making it highly accessible. Owing to its popularity as a tourist destination, Mpumalanga is also served by a number of small airports, including the Kruger Mpumalanga International Airport.

Mbombela is the capital of the province and the administrative and business centre of the Lowveld. Other important towns are eMalahleni, Standerton, Piet Retief, Malalane, Ermelo, Barberton and Sabie, which lies in the centre of one of the largest man-made forests in the world. Mpumalanga lies mainly within the Grassland Biome.

The escarpment and the Lowveld form a transitional zone between this grassland area and the Savanna Biome.

The Maputo Corridor, which links the province with Gauteng, and Maputo in Mozambique, facilitates economic development and growth for the region.

Agriculture and forestry

Mpumalanga is a summer-rainfall area divided by the escarpment into the Highveld region with cold frosty winters and the Lowveld region with mild winters and a subtropical climate. The escarpment area sometimes experiences snow on the high ground. Thick mist is common during the hot, humid summers.

Agriculture, as the backbone of the province's economy, employs 8.1% of its total workforce. An abundance of citrus fruit and many other subtropical fruit – mangoes, avocados, litchis, bananas, papayas, granadillas, guavas – as well as nuts and a variety of vegetables are produced in the province.

Mbombela is the second-largest citrus-producing area in South Africa and is responsible for one third of the country's orange exports. The Institute for Tropical and Subtropical Crops is situated in the city.

Groblersdal is an important irrigation area, which yields a wide variety of products such as citrus, cotton, tobacco, wheat and vegetables. Carolina-Bethal-Ermelo is mainly a sheep-farming area, but potatoes, sunflowers, maize and peanuts are also grown there.

Industry and manufacturing

Most of the manufacturing production in Mpumalanga occurs in the southern Highveld region; especially in Highveld Ridge, where large petrochemical plants such as Sasol 2 and Sasol 3 are located.

Large-scale manufacturing occurs especially in the northern Highveld area, particularly chrome-alloy and

Mpumalanga

Capital: Nelspruit
Principal languages:
SiSwati 29.1%
IsiZulu 28.8%
IsiNdebele 10.1%
Population: 4 679 786
Percentage share of the total population: 7.8%
Area: 76 495 km^2
Source: Community Survey 2016 and *mid-year population estimates, 2020*

steel manufacturing. In the Lowveld sub region, industries concentrate on manufacturing products from agricultural and raw forestry material. The growth in demand for goods and services for export via Maputo is expected to stimulate manufacturing in the province.

Mpumalanga is rich in coal reserves with eMalahleni being the biggest coal producer in Africa. South Africa's major power stations are situated in this province.

Kendal power station's cooling towers are the largest structures of their type in the world. The Kusile Power Station near Delmas is the country's biggest, contributing a massive 4 800 megawatts of electricity to the national grid.

One of the country's largest paper mills is situated at Ngodwana, close to its timber source. Middelburg, which produces steel and vanadium, is home to Columbus Stainless, South Africa's only producer of stainless-steel flat products.

Northern Cape

The Northern Cape is South Africa's largest province, taking up almost a third of the country's total land area. However, the province is sparsely populated with only about 1.2 million people on 372 889 km² of land.

About 68% of the people speak Afrikaans while Setswana, isiXhosa and English are also widely spoken.

The last remaining true San people live in the Kalahari area, mainly along the Orange and Vaal rivers. Many fossils and San rock engravings have been found here, some of which are displayed at the McGregor Museum in Kimberley.

The province lies to the south of its most important asset, the mighty Orange River, which provides the basis for a healthy agricultural industry.

Northern Cape

Capital: Kimberley
Principal languages:

Afrikaans	56.8%
Setswana	33.4%
IsiXhosa	5.2%

Population: 1 292 786
Percentage share of the total population: 2.2%
Area: 372 889 km²

Source: Community Survey 2016 and *mid-year population estimates, 2020*

The Northern Cape borders the Atlantic Ocean in the west with Namibia and Botswana to the north and north-west, respectively. It is fringed by the Swartberg mountain range on its southern border.

With two major airports at Kimberley and Upington, and an excellent road network, the province's interior is easily accessible from South Africa's major cities, harbours and airports.

Sutherland hosts the southern hemisphere's largest astronomical observatory, the multinational-sponsored Southern African Large Telescope.

The Northern Cape is one of two sites to host the Square Kilometre Array (SKA) radio-telescope. Developed by scientists from 17 countries, the SKA will be the largest and most advanced radio telescope in the world.

Among many other benefits, the province's tourism and hospitality industry is profiting from the project, as scientists and other interested parties are flooding into the town of Carnarvon.

The province has several national parks and conservation areas, including the Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park, Ai-Ais/Richtersveld Transfrontier Conservation Park and Augrabies Falls National Park.

The largest part of the province lies in the dry Nama-Karoo Biome, which contains a number of fascinating plants, including the elephant's trunk ("halfmens" or half-man) tree, aloe ("kokerboom" or quiver tree) and a variety of succulents. The area is well known for its spectacular annual spring flowers, which attract thousands of tourists.

Agriculture and industry

The economy of the province's Karoo region depends on sheep farming, while the karakul-pelt industry is one of the most important in the Gordonia district.

The province has fertile agricultural land, especially in the Orange River Valley. A variety of fruit is cultivated at Upington, Kakamas and Keimoes. The Vaalharts Irrigation Scheme near Warrenton facilitates the production of wheat, fruit, peanuts, maize and cotton.

Wine is also produced in the Northern Cape's Orange River wine region, which accounts for 25.6% of South Africa's Colombard vines and 10% of its Chenin Blanc. The Niewoudtville Rooibos Tea processing initiative centres on the development and economic empowerment of smallholder farmers. It is aimed at unlocking economic potential, creating sustainable jobs and increasing the skills base. The installation of pasteurisation equipment has been completed and tea has been exported to countries such as Germany, Spain and Japan.

Mining

Mining contributes 27.6% to the gross regional domestic product. Iron-ore mining in the north-eastern corner of the province has been expanding despite the global recession, driven largely by China's demand for steel.

Sishen is the biggest iron-ore mine in the country and its owner, Kumba Iron Ore, is engaging in a new project at Kolomela. New manganese projects are also underway.

Diamond mining, in contrast, has seen declining volumes and job losses. Diamond mining is increasingly moving away from the older mines to alluvial mining along the Orange River and its tributaries and in the Atlantic Ocean.

The province also has copper, asbestos, fluorspar, semi-precious stones and marble.

North West

North West is bordered by Botswana in the north and fringed by the Kalahari Desert in the west, Gauteng to the east, and the Free State to the south. It is known as the "Platinum Province", owing to its wealth of this precious metal.

The province has a population of more than four million people who mainly speak Setswana.

Mahikeng is the capital city and well known for the Mafikeng Siege, which took place in October 1899 during the Anglo-Boer/South African War.

Most of the province's economic activity is concentrated between Potchefstroom and Klerksdorp, as well as in Rustenburg and the eastern region, where more than 83.3% of the province's economic activity takes place.

North West

Capital: Mahikeng
Principal languages:

Setswana	71.5%
Afrikaans	7.2%
IsiXhosa	5.1%

Population: 4 108 816
Percentage share of the total population: 6.9%
Area: 140 882 km^2
Source: Community Survey 2016 and *mid-year population estimates, 2020*

The province has various tourist attractions, including Sun City, the Pilanesberg National Park, the Madikwe Game Reserve, and the De Wildt Cheetah and Wildlife Trust.

A portion of one of South Africa's world heritage sites also falls within the borders of North West namely the Taung hominid fossil site, which has been incorporated into South Africa's Cradle of Humankind.

Mining and manufacturing

Mining contributes 23.3% to North West's economy, and makes up 22.5% of the South African mining industry. The Rustenburg and Brits districts produce 94% of the country's platinum, which is more than any other single area in the world. In addition to granite, marble, fluorspar and diamonds, the province also produces a quarter of South Africa's gold. Employment along the Platinum Corridor, from Pretoria to eastern Botswana, accounts for over a third of the province's total employment.

North West's manufacturing sector centres on the municipalities of Brits, Rustenburg, Potchefstroom, Klerksdorp and Mahikeng, which together account for more than 50% of the province's total manufacturing production.

The industries in Brits concentrate on manufacturing and construction, while those in Klerksdorp are geared towards the mining industry. In the manufacturing arena, automotive parts, machinery, electronic, audio, and medical equipment are manufactured using local materials and resources.

Agriculture

Some of the largest cattle herds in the world are found at Stellaland near Vryburg, which explains why this area is often referred to as the Texas of South Africa.

North West is South Africa's major producer of white maize. The areas around Rustenburg are fertile, mixed-crop farming land, with maize and sunflowers being the most important crops.

Western Cape

Situated on the south-western tip of the African continent, the Western Cape with its wide beaches and breathtaking scenery, complemented by a rich variety of cultures, historical landmarks, world-class restaurants and entertainment, is a world-famous tourist destination.

Cape Town, often referred to as the "Mother City", is South Africa's legislative capital and houses Parliament. The province has a strong network of higher education institutions, including the universities of Cape Town, Stellenbosch and the Western Cape, and has the highest adult education level in the country.

Visitors to the province can disembark at one of the province's two main airports, Cape Town International or George Airport, or at the seaports of Cape Town, Mossel Bay and Saldanha.

Table Mountain, the Cape winelands, Robben Island and the Kirstenbosch Botanical Gardens are among the province's most popular tourist attractions.

The Western Cape is also known for its floral diversity. The Cape Floristic Region World Heritage Site, comprising eight separate protected areas, covers an area of more than 553 000 ha stretching from the Cape Peninsula to the Eastern Cape.

The Knysna-Tsitsikamma region has the country's biggest indigenous forests.

The cold Atlantic Ocean along the West Coast is a rich fishing area, while the warmer Indian Ocean skirts the province's southern beaches.

Agriculture and fisheries

The Western Cape's sheltered valleys between mountains are ideal for the cultivation of export-grade fruit such as apples, table grapes, olives, peaches and oranges.

A variety of vegetables is cultivated in the eastern part of the Western Cape, while the Swartland and Overberg districts are well-known as the country's prime wheat-growing areas.

The agricultural sector is critical to the Western Cape economy, accounting for 60% of regional exports. The Western Cape is also well known for its wine production.

Some 75% of all South African fishing takes place along the Western Cape coastline. The rich fishing grounds on the west coast are protected from exploitation by a 200 km commercial fishing zone and a strict quota system. Snoek, Cape lobster, abalone, calamari, octopus, oysters and mussels are among the delicacies found in these waters.

Other exports are fruit, wine, wool and ostrich. The high quality of exports, combined with the relative weakness of the local currency, makes the products some of the most affordable high-quality exports in the world.

Industry

The Saldanha Bay IDZ is drawing strong international interest. Saldanha Bay is strategically located to serve as a service, maintenance, fabrication and supply hub for the booming African oil and gas sector, due to the increasing number of oil rigs requiring maintenance, and their traffic flow passing from the west to the east coast of Africa.

Western Cape

Capital: Cape Town
Principal languages:

Afrikaans	46.6%
IsiXhosa	31.1%
English	19.6%

Population: 7 005 741
Percentage share of the total population: 11.8%
Area: 129 462 km^2
Source: Community Survey 2016 and *mid-year population estimates, 2020*

2019/20 SOUTH AFRICA YEARBOOK

History

The early inhabitants

The discovery of the skull of a Taung child in 1924; discoveries of hominid fossils at Sterkfontein caves, a world heritage site; and the ground-breaking work done at Blombos Cave in the southern Cape, have all put South Africa at the forefront of palaeontological research into the origins of humanity. Modern humans have lived in the region for over 100 000 years.

The small, mobile bands of Stone Age hunter-gatherers, who created a wealth of rock art, were the ancestors of the Khoikhoi and San of historical times. The Khoikhoi and San, although collectively known as the Khoisan, are often thought of as distinct peoples. The former were those who, some 2 000 years ago, adopted a pastoralist lifestyle herding sheep and later, cattle. Whereas the hunter-gatherers adapted to local environments and were scattered across the subcontinent, the herders sought out the pasturelands between modern-day Namibia and the Eastern Cape, which generally are near the coast. At around the same time, Bantu-speaking agropastoralists began arriving in southern Africa, bringing with them an Iron Age culture and domesticated crops. After establishing themselves in the well-watered eastern coastal region of southern Africa, these farmers spread out across the interior plateau, or "Highveld," where they adopted a more extensive cattle-farming culture.

Chiefdoms arose, based on control over cattle, which gave rise to systems of patronage and, hence, hierarchies of authority within communities. Metallurgical skills, developed in the mining and processing of iron, copper, tin and gold, promoted regional trade and craft specialisation.

At several archaeological sites, such as Mapungubwe and Thulamela in the Limpopo Valley, there is evidence of sophisticated political and material cultures, based in part on contact with the East African trading economy. These cultures, which were part of a broader African civilisation, predate European encroachment by several centuries. Settlement patterns varied from the dispersed homesteads of the fertile coastal regions in the east, to the concentrated towns of the desert fringes in the west.

The farmers did not, however, extend their settlement into the western desert or the winter-rainfall region in the south-west. These regions remained the preserve of the Khoisan until Europeans put down roots at the Cape of Good Hope. Aided by modern science in uncovering the continent's history, which forms part of the African Renaissance, South Africa is gaining a greater understanding of its rich precolonial past.

The early colonial period

Portuguese seafarers, who pioneered the sea route to India in the late 15th century, were regular visitors to the South African coast during the early 1500s. Other Europeans followed from the late 16th century onwards.

In 1652, the Dutch East India Company (Vereenigde Oostindische Compagnie (VOC)) set up a station in Table Bay (Cape Town) to provision passing ships. Trade with the Khoikhoi for slaughter stock soon degenerated into raiding and warfare. Beginning in 1657, European settlers were allotted farms by the colonial authorities in the arable regions around Cape Town, where wine and wheat became the major products. In response to the colonists' demand for labour, the VOC imported slaves from East Africa, Madagascar, and its possessions in the East Indies.

By the early 1700s, the colonists had begun to spread into the hinterland beyond the nearest mountain ranges. These relatively independent and mobile farmers (trekboers), who lived as pastoralists and hunters, were largely free from supervision by the Dutch authorities. As they intruded further upon the land and water sources, and stepped up their demands for livestock and labour, more and more of the indigenous inhabitants were dispossessed and incorporated into the colonial economy as servants.

Diseases such as smallpox, which was introduced by the Europeans in 1713, decimated the Khoisan, contributing to the decline of their cultures. Unions across the colour line took place and a new multiracial social order evolved, based on the supremacy of European colonists. The slave population steadily increased since more labour was needed. By the mid-1700s, there were more slaves in the Cape than there were "free burghers" (European colonists). The Asian slaves were concentrated in the towns, where they formed an artisan class. They brought with them the Islamic religion, which gained adherents and significantly shaped the working-class culture of the Western Cape. Slaves of African descent were found more often on the farms of outlying districts.

In the late 1700s, the Khoisan offered far more determined resistance to colonial encroachment across the length of the colonial frontier. From the 1770s, colonists also came into contact and conflict with Bantu-speaking chiefdoms. A century of intermittent warfare ensued during which the colonists gained ascendancy, first over the Khoisan and then over the isiXhosa-speaking chiefdoms to the east. It was only in the late 1800s that the subjugation of these settled African societies became feasible. For some time, their relatively sophisticated social structure and economic systems fended off decisive disruption by incoming colonists, who lacked the necessary military superiority.

At the same time, a process of cultural change was set in motion, not least by commercial and missionary activity. In contrast to the Khoisan, the black farmers were, by and large, immune to European diseases. For this and other reasons, they were to greatly outnumber the white people in the population of white-ruled South Africa, and were able to preserve important features of their culture.

Perhaps because of population pressures, combined with the actions of slave traders in Portuguese territory on the east coast, the Zulu kingdom emerged as a highly centralised state. In the 1820s, the innovative leader Shaka established sway over a considerable area of south-east Africa and brought many chiefdoms under his dominion. As splinter groups conquered and absorbed communities in their path, the disruption was felt as far north as central Africa. Substantial states, such as Moshoeshoe's Lesotho and other Sotho-Tswana chiefdoms, were established, partly for reasons of defence. The Mfecane or Difaqane, as this period of disruption and state formation became known, remains the subject of much speculative debate.

The British colonial era

In 1795, the British occupied the Cape as a strategic base against the French, thus controlling the sea route to the East.

After a brief reversion to the Dutch in the course of the Napoleonic wars, it was retaken in 1806 and kept by Britain in the post-war settlement of territorial claims.

The closed and regulated economic system of the Dutch period was swept away as the Cape Colony was integrated into the dynamic international trading empire of industrialising Britain.

A crucial new element was evangelicalism, brought to the Cape by Protestant missionaries. The evangelicals believed in the liberating effect of "free" labour and in the "civilising mission" of British imperialism. They were convinced that indigenous peoples could be fully assimilated into European Christian culture once the shackles of oppression had been removed.

The most important representative of the mission movement in South Africa was Dr John Philip, who arrived as superintendent of the London Missionary Society in 1819. His campaign on behalf of the oppressed Khoisan coincided with a high point in official sympathy for philanthropic concerns. One result was Ordinance 50 of 1828, which guaranteed equal civil rights for "people of colour" within the colony and freed them from legal discrimination. At the same time, a powerful anti-slavery movement in Britain promoted a series of ameliorative measures imposed on the colonies in the 1820s, and the proclamation of emancipation, which came into force in 1834. The slaves were subject to a four-year period of "apprenticeship" with their former owners, on the grounds that they must be prepared for freedom, which came on 1 December 1838.

Although slavery had become less profitable because of a depression in the wine industry, Cape slave-owners rallied to oppose emancipation. The compensation money, which the British treasury paid out to sweeten the pill, injected unprecedented liquidity into the stagnant local economy. This brought a spurt of company formation, such as banks and insurance companies, as well as a surge of investment in land and wool sheep in the drier regions of the colony in the late 1830s.

Wool became a staple export on which the Cape economy depended for its further development in the middle decades of the century.

For the ex-slaves, as for the Khoisan servants, the reality of freedom was very different from the promise. As a wage-based economy developed, they remained dispossessed and exploited, with little opportunity to escape their servile lot. Increasingly, they were lumped together as the "coloured" people, a group which included the descendants of unions between indigenous and European peoples, and a substantial Muslim minority who became known as the "Cape Malays" (misleadingly, as they mostly came from the Indonesian archipelago).

The coloured people were discriminated against on account of their working-class status as well as their racial identity. Among the poor, especially in and around Cape Town, there continued to be a great deal of racial mixing and intermarriage throughout the 1800s.

In 1820, several thousand British settlers, who were swept up by a scheme to relieve Britain of its unemployed, were placed in the eastern Cape frontier zone as a buffer against the Xhosa chiefdoms. The vision of a dense settlement of small farmers was, however, ill-conceived and many of the settlers became artisans and traders. The more successful became an entrepreneurial class of merchants, large-scale sheep farmers and speculators with an insatiable demand for land. Some became fierce warmongers who pressed for the military dispossession of the chiefdoms. They coveted Xhosa land and welcomed the prospect of war involving large-scale military expenditure by the imperial authorities. The Xhosa engaged in raiding as a means of asserting their prior claims to the land. Racial paranoia became integral to white frontier politics. The result was that frontier warfare became endemic through much of the 19th century, during which Xhosa war leaders such as Chief Maqoma became heroic figures to their people.

By the mid-1800s, British settlers of similar persuasion were to be found in Natal. They, too, called for imperial expansion in support of their land claims and trading enterprises.

Meanwhile, large numbers of the original colonists, the Boers, were greatly extending white occupation beyond the Cape's borders to the north, in the movement that became known as the Great Trek, in the mid-1830s. Alienated by British liberalism, and with their economic enterprise usurped by British settlers, several thousand Boers from the interior districts, accompanied by a number of Khoisan servants, began a series of migrations northwards.

They moved to the Highveld and Natal, skirting the great concentrations of black farmers on the way by taking advantage of the areas disrupted during the Mfecane.

When the British, who were concerned about controlling the traffic through Port Natal (Durban), annexed the territory of Natal in 1843, those emigrant Boers who had hoped to settle there returned inland. These Voortrekkers (as they were later called) coalesced in two land-locked republics, the Zuid-Afrikaansche Republiek (Transvaal) and the Orange Free State.

With limited coercive power, the Boer communities had to establish relations and develop alliances with some black chiefdoms, neutralising those who obstructed their intrusion or who posed a threat to their security.

Only after the mineral discoveries of the late 1800s did the balance of power swing decisively towards the colonists. The Boer republics then took on the trappings of real statehood and imposed their authority within the territorial borders that they had notionally claimed for themselves.

The Colony of Natal, situated to the south of the mighty Zulu State, developed along very different lines from the original colony of settlement, the Cape. The size of the black population left no room for the assimilationist vision of race domination embraced in the Cape. Chiefdoms consisting mainly of refugee groups in the aftermath of the Mfecane were persuaded to accept colonial protection in return for reserved land and the freedom to govern themselves in accordance with their own customs. These chiefdoms were established in the heart of an expanding colonial territory.

Natal developed a system of political and legal dualism, whereby chiefly rule was en-trenched and customary law was codified. Although exemptions from customary law could be granted to the educated products of the missions, in practice they were rare. Urban residence was strictly controlled and political rights outside the reserves were effectively limited to white people. This system is widely regarded as having provided a model for the segregationism that would prevail in the 20th century.

Natal's economy was boosted by the development of sugar plantations in the subtropical coastal lowlands. Indentured Indian labourers were imported from 1860 to work the

plantations, and many Indian traders and market gardeners followed.

These Indians, who were segregated and discriminated against from the start, became a further important element in South Africa's population. It was in South Africa that Indian activist and leader Mohandas Karamchand Gandhi, also known as Mahatma Gandhi refined, from the mid-1890s, the techniques of passive resistance, which he later effectively practised in India. Although Indians gradually moved into the Transvaal and elsewhere, they remain concentrated in Natal.

In 1853, the Cape Colony was granted a representative legislature in keeping with British policy, followed in 1872 by self-government. The franchise was formally non-racial, but also based on income and property qualifications. The result was that black and coloured people formed a minority of voters – although in certain places a substantial one.

What became known as the "liberal tradition" in the Cape depended on the fact that the great mass of Bantu-speaking farmers remained outside its colonial borders until late in the 19th century. Non-racialism could thus be embraced without posing a threat to white supremacy.

Numbers of black people within the Cape Colony had sufficient formal education or owned enough property to qualify for the franchise. Political alliances across racial lines were common in the eastern Cape constituencies. It is therefore not surprising that the eastern Cape became a seedbed of African nationalism, once the ideal and promise of inclusion in the common society had been so starkly violated by later racial policies.

The mineral revolution

By the late 19th century, the limitations of the Cape's liberal tradition were becoming apparent. The hardening of racial attitudes that accompanied the rise of a more militant imperialist spirit coincided with the watershed discovery of mineral riches in the interior of southern Africa.

In a developing economy, cheap labour was at a premium, and the claims of educated blacks indentured for equality met with increasingly fierce resistance. At the same time, the large numbers of Africans in the chiefdoms beyond the Kei River and north of the Gariep (Orange River), then being incorporated into the Cape Colony, posed new threats to racial supremacy and white security, increasing segregationist pressures.

Alluvial diamonds were discovered on the Vaal River in the late 1860s. The subsequent discovery of dry deposits at what became the city of Kimberley drew tens of thousands of people, black and white, to the first great industrial hub in Africa, and the largest diamond deposit in the world. In 1871, the British, who ousted several rival claimants, annexed the diamond fields.

The Colony of Griqualand West thus created was incorporated into the Cape Colony in 1880. By 1888, the consolidation of diamond claims had led to the creation of the huge De Beers monopoly under the control of Cecil John Rhodes. He used his power and wealth to become Prime Minister of the Cape Colony (from 1890 to 1896) and, through his chartered British South Africa Company, conqueror and ruler of modern-day Zambia and Zimbabwe.

The mineral discoveries had a major impact on the subcontinent as a whole. A railway network linking the interior to the coastal ports revolutionised transportation and energised agriculture. Coastal cities such as modern-day Cape Town, Port Elizabeth, East London and Durban experienced an economic boom as port facilities were upgraded.

The fact that the mineral discoveries coincided with a new era of imperialism and the scramble for Africa, brought imperial power and influence to bear in southern Africa as never before. Independent African chiefdoms were systematically subjugated and incorporated by their white-ruled neighbours. In 1897, Zululand was incorporated into Natal.

The Transvaal was annexed by Britain in 1877. Boer resistance led to British withdrawal in 1881, but not before the Pedi (northern Sotho) State, which fell within the Republic's borders, had been subjugated. The indications were that, having once been asserted, British hegemony was likely to be reasserted.

The southern Sotho and Swazi territories were also brought under British rule but maintained their status as imperial dependencies, so that both the current Lesotho and Eswatini escaped the rule of local white regimes.

The discovery of the Witwatersrand goldfields in 1886 was a turning point in the history of South Africa. It presaged the emergence of the modern South African industrial state.

Once the extent of the reefs had been established, and deep-level mining had proved to be a viable investment, it was only a matter of time before Britain and its local representatives again found a pretext for war against the Boer republics of Transvaal and the Orange Free State.

The demand for franchise rights for English-speaking immigrants on the goldfields (known as uitlanders) provided a lever for applying pressure on the government of President Paul Kruger. Egged on by the deep-level mining magnates, to whom the Boer government seemed obstructive and inefficient, and by the expectation of an uitlander uprising, Rhodes launched a raid into the Transvaal in late December 1895.

The raid's failure saw the end of Rhodes' political career, but Sir Alfred Milner, British high commissioner in South Africa from 1897, was determined to overthrow Kruger's government and establish British rule throughout the subcontinent. The Boer government was eventually forced into a declaration of war in October 1899.

The mineral discoveries had a radical impact on every sphere of society. Labour was required on a massive scale and could only be provided by Africans, who had to be drawn away from the land.

Many Africans responded with alacrity to the opportunities presented by wage labour, travelling long distances to earn money to supplement rural enterprise in the homestead economy.

In response to the expansion of internal markets, blacks exploited their farming skills and family labour to good effect to increase production for sale. A substantial black peasantry arose, often by means of share-cropping or labour tenantry on white-owned farms.

For the white authorities, however, the chief consideration was ensuring a labour supply and undermining black competition on the land. Conquest, land dispossession, taxation and pass laws were designed to force black people off the land and channel them into labour markets, especially to meet the needs of the mines.

Gradually, the alternatives available to blacks were closed, and the decline of the homestead economy made wage labour increasingly essential for survival. The integration of blacks into

the emerging urban and industrial society of South Africa should have followed these developments, but short-term, recurrent labour migrancy suited employers and the authorities, which sought to entrench the system.

The closed compounds pioneered on the diamond fields, as a means of migrant labour control, were replicated at the gold mines. The preservation of communal areas from which migrants could be drawn had the effect of lowering wages, by denying blacks rights within the urban areas and keeping their families and dependants on subsistence plots in the reserves.

Blacks could be denied basic rights if the fiction could be maintained that they did not belong in "white South Africa," but to "tribal societies" from which they came to service the "white man's needs." Where black families secured a toehold in the urban areas, local authorities confined them to segregated "locations." This set of assumptions and policies informed the development of segregationist ideology and, later (from 1948), apartheid.

The Anglo-Boer/South African War (October 1899 to May 1902) and its aftermath

The war that followed the mineral revolution was mainly a white man's war. In its first phase, the Boer forces took the initiative, besieging the frontier towns of Mafeking (Mahikeng) and Kimberley in the Northern Cape, and Ladysmith in northern Natal.

Some colonial Boers rebelled, however, in sympathy with the republics. But, after a large expeditionary force under lords Roberts and Kitchener arrived, the British advance was rapid. Kruger fled the Transvaal shortly before Pretoria fell in June 1900. The formal conquest of the two Boer republics was followed by a prolonged guerrilla campaign. Small, mobile groups of Boers denied the imperial forces their victory by disrupting rail links and supply lines.

Commandos swept deep into colonial territory, rousing rebellion wherever they went. The British were at a disadvantage, owing to their lack of familiarity with the terrain and the Boers' superior skills as horsemen and sharpshooters. The British responded with a scorched-earth policy, which included farm burnings, looting and the setting-up of concentration camps for non-combatants, in which some 26 000 Boer women and children died from disease. The incarceration of black (including coloured) people in the path of the war in racially segregated camps has been absent in conventional accounts of the war and has only recently been acknowledged.

They, too, suffered appalling conditions and some 14 000 (perhaps many more) are estimated to have died. At the same time, many black farmers were in a position to meet the demand for produce created by the military, or to avail themselves of employment opportunities at good wages. Some 10 000 black servants accompanied the Boer commandos, and the British used blacks as labourers, scouts, dispatch riders, drivers and guards.

The war also taught many Africans that the forces of dispossession could be rolled back if the circumstances were right. It gave black communities the opportunity to recolonise land lost in conquest, which enabled them to withhold their labour after the war.

Most blacks supported the British in the belief that Britain was committed to extending civil and political rights to black people. In this they were to be disappointed. In the Treaty of Vereeniging that ended the war, the British agreed to leave the issue of rights for blacks to be decided by a future self-governing (white) authority. All in all, the Anglo-Boer/South African War was a radicalising experience for blacks.

Britain's reconstruction regime set about creating a white-ruled dominion by uniting the former Boer republics (both by then British colonies) with Natal and the Cape.

The priority was to re-establish white control over the land and force the black people back to wage labour. The labour-recruiting system was improved, both internally and externally. Recruiting agreements were reached with the Portuguese authorities in Mozambique, from where much mine labour came.

When, by 1904, black resources still proved inadequate to get the mines working at pre-war levels, over 60 000 indentured Chinese were brought in. This precipitated a vociferous outcry from proponents of white supremacy in South Africa and liberals in Britain.

By 1910, all had been repatriated, a step made easier when a surge of blacks came forward from areas such as the Transkeian territories and the northern Transvaal, which had not previously been large-scale suppliers of migrants.

This was the heyday of the private recruiters, who exploited families' indebtedness to procure young men to labour in the mines. The blacks' post-war ability to withhold their labour was undercut by government action, abetted by drought and stock disease.

The impact of the Anglo-Boer/South African War as a seminal influence on the development of Afrikaner nationalist politics became apparent in subsequent years.

The Boer leaders – most notably Louis Botha, Jan Smuts and James Barry Munnik Hertzog – played a dominant role in the country's politics for the next half century. After initial plans for anglicisation of the defeated Afrikaners were abandoned as impractical, the British looked to the Afrikaners as collaborators in securing imperial political and economic interests.

During 1907 and 1908, the two former Boer republics were granted self-government but, crucially, with a whites-only franchise. Despite promises to the contrary, black interests were sacrificed in the interest of white nation-building across the white language divide.

The National Convention drew up a Constitution and the four colonies became an independent dominion called the Union of South Africa on 31 May 1910.

The 19th century's formally non-racial franchise was retained in the Cape but was not extended elsewhere, where rights of citizenship were confined to whites alone. It was clear from the start that segregation was the conventional wisdom of the new rulers. Black people were defined as outsiders, without rights or claims on the common society that their labour had helped to create.

Segregation

Government policy in the Union of South Africa did not develop in isolation, but against the backdrop of black political initiatives. Segregation and apartheid assumed their shape, in part, as a white response to blacks' increasing participation in the country's economic life and their assertion of political rights.

Despite the government's efforts to shore up traditionalism and retribalise them, black people became more fully integrated

into the urban and industrial society of 20th-century South Africa than elsewhere on the continent. An educated élite of clerics, teachers, businesspeople, journalists and professionals grew to be a major force in black politics. Mission Christianity and its associated educational institutions exerted a profound influence on black political life, and separatist churches were early vehicles for African political assertion.

The experiences of studying abroad and, in particular, interaction with black people struggling for their rights elsewhere in Africa, the United States of America and the Caribbean, played an important part.

A vigorous black press arose, associated in its early years with such pioneer editors as John Tengo Jabavu, Pixley ka Isaka Seme, Dr Abdullah Abdurahman, Sol Plaatje and John Dube serving the black reading public.

At the same time, African communal struggles to maintain access to the land in rural areas posed a powerful challenge to the white state. Traditional authorities often led popular struggles against intrusive and manipulative policies. Government attempts to control and co-opt the chiefs often failed.

Steps towards the formation of a national political organisation of coloured people began around the turn of the century, with the formation of the African Political Organisation in 1902 by Dr Abdurahman, mainly in the Cape Province.

The African National Congress (ANC), founded in 1912, became the most important black organisation, drawing together traditional authorities and the educated African élite in common causes.

In its early years, the ANC was concerned mainly with constitutional protest. Worker militancy emerged in the wake of World War I and continued through the 1920s. It included strikes and an anti-pass campaign, given impetus by women, particularly in the Free State, resisting the extension of the pass laws to them. The Industrial and Commercial Workers' Union, under the leadership of Clements Kadalie, was (despite its name) the first populist, nationwide organisation representing black people in rural as well as urban areas. But it was short-lived.

The Communist Party, formed in 1921 and since then a force for both non-racialism and worker organisations, was to prove far longer-lasting. In other sections of the black population too, the turn of the century saw organised opposition emerging. Gandhi's leadership of protest against discriminatory laws gave impetus to the formation of provincial Indian congresses, including the Natal Indian Congress formed by him in 1894.

The principles of segregationist thinking were laid down in a 1905 report by the South African Native Affairs Commission and continued to evolve in response to these economic, social and political pressures. In keeping with its recommendations, the first union government enacted the seminal Natives Land Act, 1913 (Act 27 of 1913).

This defined the remnants of their ancestral lands after conquest for African occupation, and declared illegal all land purchases or rent tenancy outside these reserves. The centenary of this Act was commemorated in 2013.

The reserves ("homelands" as they were subsequently called) eventually comprised about 13% of South Africa's land surface. Administrative and legal dualism reinforced the division between white citizens and black non-citizens, a dispensation personified by the governor-general who, as "supreme chief" over the country's African majority, was empowered to rule them by administrative fiat and decree.

The government also reserved skilled work for white people and denying black workers the right to organise. Legislation, which was consolidated in the Natives (Urban Areas) Act, 1923 (Act 21 of 1923), entrenched urban segregation and controlled black mobility by means of pass laws. The pass laws were designed to force blacks into labour and to keep them there under conditions and at wage levels that suited white employers, and to deny them any bargaining power. In these and other ways, the foundations of apartheid were laid by successive governments representing the compromises hammered out by the National Convention of 1908 to 1909 to effect the union of English-and Afrikaans-speaking white people. However, divisions within the white community remained significant. Afrikaner nationalism grew as a factor in the years after the union.

It was given impetus in 1914, both by the formation of the National Party (NP), in a breakaway from the ruling South African Party, and by a rebellion of Afrikaners who could not reconcile themselves with the decision to join the first world war against Germany.

In part, the NP spoke for Afrikaners impoverished by the Anglo-Boer/South African War and dislodged from the land by the development of capitalist farming.

An Afrikaner underclass was emerging in the towns, which found itself uncompetitive in the labour market, as white workers demanded higher wages than those paid to black people. Soon, labour issues came to the fore.

In 1920, some 71 000 black mineworkers went on strike in protest against the spiralling cost of living, but the strike was quickly put down by isolating the compounds where the migrant workers were housed. Another threat to government came from white workers. Immigrant white workers with mining experience abroad performed much of the skilled and semi-skilled work on the mines.

As mine owners tried to cut costs by using lower-wage black labour in semi-skilled jobs, white labour became increasingly militant. These tensions culminated in a bloody and dramatic rebellion on the goldfields in 1922, which the Smuts government put down with military force.

In 1924, a pact government under Hertzog, comprising Afrikaner nationalists and representatives of immigrant labour, ousted the Smuts regime.

The pact was based on a common suspicion of the dominance of mining capital, and a determination to protect the interests of white labour by intensifying discrimination against black people. The commitment to white labour policies in government employment, such as the railways and postal service, was intensified, and the job colour bar was reinforced, with a key objective being to address what was known as the "poor-white problem".

In 1934, the main white parties fused to combat the local effects of a worldwide depression.

This was followed by a new Afrikaner nationalist breakaway under Dr Daniel François Malan. In 1936, white supremacy was further entrenched by the United Party with the removal of the qualifying Africans of the Cape Province from the common voters' roll. Meanwhile, Malan's breakaway NP was greatly augmented by an Afrikaner cultural revival spearheaded by the secret white male Afrikaner Broederbond and other cultural organisations during the year of the Voortrekker centenary celebrations (1938), as well as by anti-war sentiment from 1939.

Apartheid

In 1948, the NP, with its ideology of apartheid that brought an even more rigorous and authoritarian approach than the segregationist policies of previous governments, won the general election. It did so against the background of a revival of mass militancy during the 1940s, after a period of relative quiescence in the 1930s when black groups attempted to foster unity among themselves. The change was marked by the formation of the ANC Youth League in 1943, fostering the leadership of figures such as Anton Lembede, Ashby Solomzi Peter Mda, Nelson Mandela, Oliver Tambo and Walter Sisulu, who were to inspire the struggle for decades to come.

In the 1940s, squatter movements in peri-urban areas brought mass politics back to the urban centres. The 1946 Mineworkers' Strike was a turning point in the emergence of politics of mass mobilisation.

As was the case with World War I, the experience of World War II and post-war economic difficulties enhanced discontent.

For those who supported the NP, its primary appeal lay in its determination to maintain white domination in the face of rising mass resistance; uplift poor Afrikaners; challenge the pre-eminence of English-speaking white people in public life, the professions and business; and abolish the remaining imperial ties.

The State became an engine of patronage for Afrikaner employment. The Afrikaner Broederbond coordinated the party's programme, ensuring that Afrikaner nationalist interests and policies attained ascendancy throughout civil society.

In 1961, the NP government under Prime Minister Hendrik Frensch Verwoerd declared South Africa a republic, after winning a whites-only referendum on the issue. A new currency, the Rand, and a new flag, anthem and coat of arms were formally introduced.

South Africa, having become a republic, had to apply for continued membership of the Commonwealth. In the face of demands for an end to apartheid, South Africa withdrew its application and a figurehead president replaced the British queen (represented locally by the Governor-General) as Head of State.

In most respects, apartheid was a continuation, in more systematic and brutal form, of the segregationist policies of previous governments. A new concern with racial purity was apparent in laws prohibiting interracial sexual activities and provisions for population registration requiring that every South African be assigned to one discrete racial category or another.

For the first time, the coloured people, who had always been subjected to informal discrimination, were brought within the ambit of discriminatory laws. In the mid-1950s, government took the drastic step of overriding an entrenched clause in the 1910 Constitution of the Union so as to be able to remove coloured voters from the common voters' roll. It also enforced residential segregation, expropriating homes where necessary and policing massive forced removals into coloured "group areas."

Until the 1940s, South Africa's racial policies had not been entirely out of step with those to be found in the colonial world. But by the 1950s, which saw decolonisation and a global backlash against racism gathering pace, the country was dramatically opposed to world opinion on questions of human rights. The architects of apartheid, among whom Dr Verwoerd was pre-eminent, responded by elaborating a theory of multinationalism.

Their policy, which they termed "separate development," divided the African population into artificial ethnic "nations," each with its own "homeland" and the prospect of "independence," supposedly in keeping with trends elsewhere on the continent.

This divide-and-rule strategy was designed to disguise the racial basis of official policy-making by the substitution of the language of ethnicity. This was accompanied by much ethnographic engineering, as efforts were made to resurrect tribal structures. In the process, the government sought to create a significant collaborating class.

The truth was that the rural reserves were by this time thoroughly degraded by overpopulation and soil erosion. This did not prevent four of the "homeland" structures (Transkei, Bophuthatswana, Venda and Ciskei) being declared "independent", a status which the vast majority of South Africans, and therefore also the international community, declined to recognise. In each case, the process involved the repression of opposition and the use by the government of the power to nominate and thereby pad elected assemblies with a quota of compliant figures.

Forced removals from "white" areas affected some 3.5 million people and vast rural slums were created in the homelands, which were used as dumping grounds. The pass laws and influx control were extended and harshly enforced, and labour bureaux were set up to channel labour to where it was needed.

Hundreds of thousands of people were arrested or prosecuted under the pass laws each year, reaching over half a million a year from the mid-1960s to the mid-1970s. Industrial decentralisation to growth points on the borders of (but not inside) the homelands was promoted as a means of keeping blacks out of "white" South Africa.

In virtually every sphere, from housing to education and healthcare, central government took control over black people's lives with a view to reinforcing their allotted role as "temporary sojourners", welcome in "white" South Africa solely to serve the needs of the employers of labour.

However, these same programmes of control became the focus of resistance. In particular, the campaign against the pass laws formed a cornerstone of the struggle.

The end of apartheid

The introduction of apartheid policies coincided with the adoption by the ANC in 1949 of its programme of action, expressing the renewed militancy of the 1940s. The programme embodied the rejection of white domination and a call for action in the form of protests, strikes and demonstrations. There followed a decade of turbulent mass action in resistance to the imposition of still harsher forms of segregation and oppression.

The Defiance Campaign of 1952 carried mass mobilisation to new heights under the banner of non-violent resistance to the pass laws. These actions were influenced in part by the philosophy of Gandhi.

A critical step in the emergence of non-racialism was the formation of the Congress Alliance, including the ANC; South African Indian Congress; the Coloured People's Congress; the Congress of Democrats (a small white congress organisation); and the South African Congress of Trade Unions.

The alliance gave formal expression to an emerging unity across racial and class lines that was manifested in the Defiance Campaign and other mass protests, including against

the Bantu education of this period, which also saw women's resistance take a more organised character with the formation of the Federation of South African Women.

In 1955, the Freedom Charter was drawn up at the Congress of the People in Soweto. The charter enunciated the principles of the struggle, binding the movement to a culture of human rights and non-racialism. Over the next few decades, the Freedom Charter was elevated to an important symbol of the freedom struggle.

The Pan Africanist Congress (PAC), founded by Robert Sobukwe and based on the philosophies of "Africanism" and anti-communism, broke away from the Congress Alliance in 1959.

The State's initial response, harsh as it was, was not yet as draconian as it was to become. Its attempt to prosecute more than 150 anti-apartheid leaders for treason, in a trial that began in 1956, ended in acquittals in 1961. But by that time, mass organised opposition had been banned.

The year 2012, marked the 60th anniversary of the 1952 Women's March. You strike a woman, you strike a rock! Wathint' abafazi, wathint' imbokodo! In 1956, with these words, thousands of women advanced the cause to liberate South Africa from apartheid rule. The phrase has come to symbolise women's courage and strength in South Africa. During the early 1950s, Lilian Ngoyi, Helen Joseph, Albertina Sisulu, Sophia Williams-De Bruyn, and many others formed the Federation of South African Women. With the Blacks (Abolition of Passes and Coordination of Documents) Act, 1952 (Act 67 of 1952), the South African government amended the pass laws, requiring all black people over the age of 16 to carry a "reference book" at all times.

On 9 August 1956, more than 20 000 women of all races marched through the streets of Pretoria to the Union Buildings to hand over a petition to Johannes Gerhardus Strijdom, South Africa's Prime Minister, protesting the introduction of the new pass laws and the Group Areas Act, 1950 (Act 41 of 1950). The latter enforced different residential areas for different races and led to forced removals of people living in "wrong" areas. On the day of the march, Strijdom had arranged to be elsewhere, and the petition was eventually accepted by his secretary.

However, the first attempt to make black women carry passes was in 1913 when the then Orange Free State introduced a new requirement that women, in addition to existing regulations for black men, had to carry reference documents. The resulting protests, by a multiracial group of women, many of whom were professionals, took the form of passive resistance through refusing to carry the new passes. Matters came to a head at Sharpeville in March 1960, when 69 anti-pass demonstrators were killed when police fired on a demonstration called by the PAC. A state of emergency was imposed and detention without trial was introduced.

The black political organisations were banned and their leaders went into exile or were arrested. In this climate, the ANC and PAC abandoned their long-standing commitment to non-violent resistance and turned to armed struggle, combined with underground organisation and mobilisation as well as the mobilisation of international solidarity. Top leaders, including members of the newly formed military wing Umkhonto we Sizwe (MK) ("Spear of the Nation"), were arrested in 1963.

In the Rivonia Trial, eight ANC leaders, including Mandela, were convicted of sabotage (instead of treason, the original charge) and sentenced to life imprisonment.

In this period, leaders of other organisations, including the PAC and the New Unity Movement, were also sentenced to long terms of imprisonment and/or banned. The 1960s was a decade of overwhelming repression and relative political disarray among black people in the country. Armed action was contained by the state.

State repression played a central role in containing internal resistance, and the leadership of the struggle shifted increasingly to the missions in exile. At the same time, the ANC leadership embarked on a campaign to infiltrate the country through what was then Rhodesia (now Zimbabwe).

In August 1967, a joint force of MK and the Zimbabwean People's Revolutionary Army (ZIPRA) of the Zimbabwe African People's Union entered Zimbabwe, and over a two-month period engaged the joint Rhodesian and South African security forces. Although the joint MK-ZIPRA force failed to reach South Africa, this was the first military confrontation between the military forces of the ANC-led alliance and white security forces.

The resurgence of resistance politics in the early 1970s was dramatic. The Black Consciousness Movement, led by Steve Biko (who was killed in detention in 1977), reawakened a sense of pride and self-esteem in black people.

News of the brutal death of Biko reverberated around the globe and led to unprecedented outrage.

White capitalist economies sputtered with the oil crisis of 1973 and black trade unions were revived. A wave of strikes reflected a new militancy that involved better organisation and new sectors, in particular intellectuals and the student movement, being drawn into mass struggle and debate over the principles informing it. Rallies at black universities in support of Frelimo, the Mozambican liberation movement, also gave expression to the growing militancy.

The year 1976 marked the beginning of a sustained anti-apartheid revolt. In June, school pupils of Soweto rose up against apartheid education, followed by youth uprisings all around the country. Despite the harsh repression that followed, students continued to organise, with the formation in 1979 of organisations for school students – the Congress of South African Students, and college and university students – the Azanian Students Organisation.

By the 1980s, the different forms of struggle – armed struggle, mass mobilisation and international solidarity – were beginning to integrate and coalesce.

The United Democratic Front and the informal umbrella, the Mass Democratic Movement, emerged as legal vehicles of democratic forces struggling for liberation. Clerics played a prominent public role in these movements. The involvement of workers in resistance took on a new dimension with the formation of the Congress of South African Trade Unions and the National Council of Trade Unions.

Popular anger was directed against all those who were deemed to be collaborating with the government in the pursuit of its objectives, and the black townships became virtually ungovernable. From the mid-1980s, regional and national states of emergency were enforced.

Developments in neighbouring states, where mass resistance to white minority and colonial rule led to Portuguese decolonisation in the mid-1970s and the abdication of

Zimbabwe's minority regime in 1980, left South Africa exposed as the last bastion of white supremacy.

Under growing pressure and increasingly isolated internationally, the government embarked on a dual strategy, introducing limited reform coupled with intensifying repression and militarisation of society, with the objective of containing the pressures and increasing its support base while crushing organised resistance. An early example of reform was the recognition of black trade unions to try to stabilise labour relations. In 1983, the Constitution was reformed to allow the coloured and Indian minorities limited participation in separate and subordinate houses of Parliament.

The vast majority of these groups demonstrated their rejection of the tricameral dispensation through massive boycotts of elections, but it was kept in place by the apartheid regime despite its visible lack of legitimacy. Attempts to legitimise community councils as vehicles for the participation of blacks outside the Bantustans in local government met a similar fate.

Militarisation included the ascendancy of the State Security Council, which usurped the role of the Executive in crucial respects, and a succession of states of emergency as part of the implementation of a comprehensive counter-insurgency strategy to combat what, by the mid-1980s, was an endemic insurrectionary spirit in the land.

However, by the late 1980s, popular resistance was taking the form of mass defiance campaigns, while struggles over more localised issues saw broad sections of communities mobilised in united action. Popular support for released political prisoners and for the armed struggle was being openly expressed.

In response to the rising tide of resistance, the international community strengthened its support for the anti-apartheid cause. Sanctions and boycotts were instituted, both unilaterally by countries across the world and through the United Nations (UN). These sanctions were called for in a coordinated strategy by the internal and external anti-apartheid movement in South Africa.

Frederik Willem de Klerk, who replaced Pieter Willem Botha as State President in 1989, announced at the opening of Parliament in February 1990, the unbanning of the liberation movements and release of political prisoners, among them Mandela. A number of factors led to this step. International financial, trade, sport and cultural sanctions were clearly biting. Above all, even if South Africa was nowhere near collapse, either militarily or economically, several years of emergency rule and ruthless repression had clearly neither destroyed the structures of organised resistance, nor helped establish legitimacy for the apartheid regime or its collaborators. Instead, popular resistance, including mass and armed action, was intensifying.

The ANC, enjoying popular recognition and legitimacy as the foremost liberation organisation, was increasingly regarded as a government-in-waiting.

International support for the liberation movement came from various countries around the globe, particularly from former socialist countries and Nordic countries as well as the Non-Aligned Movement (NAM).

The other liberation organisations increasingly experienced various internal and external pressures and did not enjoy much popular support.

To outside observers, and also in the eyes of growing numbers of white South Africans, apartheid stood exposed as morally bankrupt, indefensible and impervious to reforms.

The collapse of global communism, the negotiated withdrawal of Cuban forces from Angola, and the culmination of the South-West African People's Organisation's liberation struggle in the negotiated independence of Namibia – formerly South-West Africa, administered by South Africa as a League of Nations mandate since 1919 – did much to change the mindset of white people. No longer could they demonise the ANC and the PAC as fronts for international communism.

White South Africa had also changed in deeper ways. Afrikaner nationalism had lost much of its raison d'être. Many Afrikaners had become urban, middle class and relatively prosperous.

Their ethnic grievances and attachment to ethnic causes and symbols had diminished. A large part of the NP's core constituency was ready to explore larger national identities, even across racial divides, and yearned for international respectability.

In 1982, disenchanted hardliners split from the NP to form the Conservative Party, leaving the NP open to more flexible and modernising influences. After this split, factions within the Afrikaner elite openly started to pronounce in favour of a more inclusive society, causing more friction with the NP government, which became increasingly militaristic and authoritarian.

A number of business, student and academic Afrikaners held meetings publicly and privately with the ANC in exile. Secret talks were held between the imprisoned Mandela and government ministers about a new dispensation for South Africa, with black people forming a major part of it.

Inside the country, mass action became the order of the day. Petty apartheid laws and symbols were openly challenged and removed. Together with a sliding economy and increasing international pressure, these developments made historic changes inevitable.

The first decade of freedom

After a long negotiation process, sustained despite much opportunistic violence from the right wing and its surrogates, and in some instances sanctioned by elements of the State, South Africa's first democratic election was held in April 1994 under an interim Constitution.

The interim Constitution divided South Africa into nine new provinces in place of the previous four provinces and 10 "homelands", and provided for the Government of National Unity (GNU) to be constituted by all parties with at least 20 seats in the National Assembly.

The NP and the Inkatha Freedom Party (IFP) formed part of the GNU until 1996, when the NP withdrew. The ANC-led government embarked on a programme to promote the reconstruction and development of the country and its institutions.

This called for the simultaneous pursuit of democratisation and socio-economic change, as well as reconciliation and the building of consensus founded on the commitment to improve the lives of all South Africans, in particular the poor. It required the integration of South Africa into a rapidly changing global environment.

Pursuit of these objectives was a consistent focus of government during the first decade of freedom, seeking the unity of a previously divided society in working together to overcome the legacy of a history of division, exclusion and neglect.

Converting democratic ideals into practice required, among other things, initiating a radical overhaul of the machinery of government at every level, working towards service delivery, openness and a culture of human rights. It has required a more integrated approach to planning and implementation to ensure that the many different aspects of transformation and socio-economic upliftment cohere with maximum impact.

A significant milestone in the democratisation of South Africa was the exemplary Constitution-making process, which in 1996 delivered a document that has evoked worldwide admiration. So, too, have been the national and local government elections subsequent to 1994 – all conducted peacefully, with high levels of participation compared with the norm in most democracies, and accepted by all as free and fair in their conduct and results.

Since 2001, participatory democracy and interactive governance have been strengthened through the practice of public participation, the roving Executive Council and mayoral meetings, in which members of the Executive, in all three spheres of government, including The Presidency, regularly communicate directly with the public about the implementation of programmes of reconstruction and development.

The second democratic national election in 1999 saw the ANC majority increase to just short of two-thirds and the election of Thabo Mbeki as President and successor to Mandela. It saw a sharp decline in the popularity of the NP (then the New National Party [NNP]) and its replacement by the Democratic Party as the official opposition in Parliament. These two parties formed the Democratic Alliance (DA), which the NNP left in 2001.

The Truth and Reconciliation Commission (TRC), under the leadership of Archbishop Desmond Tutu, helped inculcate a commitment to accountability and transparency in South Africa's public life, at the same time helping to heal wounds inflicted by the inhumanities of the apartheid era.

During 2003, Parliament accepted government's response to the final report of the TRC. Out of 22 000 individuals or surviving families appearing before the commission, 19 000 were identified as needing urgent reparation assistance – virtually all, where the necessary information was available, received interim reparations.

As final reparations, government provided a once-off grant of R30 000 to individuals or survivors who appeared before and were designated by the TRC, over and above the programmes for material assistance. There are continuing programmes to project the symbolism of the struggle and the ideal of freedom. These include the Freedom Park and other symbols and monuments, and such matters as records of history, remaking of cultural and art forms and changing geographical and place names.

The ethos of partnership informed the establishment of the National Economic Development and Labour Council. It brings together government, business, organised labour and development organisations to confront the challenges of growth and development for South Africa in a turbulent and globalising international economy.

The Presidential Jobs Summit in 1998 and the Growth and Development Summit in 2003 brought these sectors together to take advantage of the conditions in South Africa for faster growth and development.

At the summit, a comprehensive set of agreements was concluded to address urgent challenges in a practical way and to speed up job-creating growth and development.

Partnership between government and civil society was further strengthened by the creation of a number of working groups through which sectors of society – business, organised labour, higher education, religious leaders, youth and women – engage regularly with the President.

In the first decade of freedom, government placed emphasis on meeting basic needs through programmes for socio-economic development such as the provision of housing, piped water, electricity, education and healthcare, as well as social grants for those in need.

The integration of South Africa into the global political, economic and social system has been a priority for democratic South Africa. As a country isolated during the apartheid period, an African country, a developing country, and a country whose liberation was achieved with the support of the international community, it remains of critical importance to build political and economic links with the countries and regions of the world, and to work with others for an international environment that is more favourable to development across the world, and in Africa and South Africa in particular.

The South African government is committed to the African Renaissance, which is based on the consolidation of democracy, economic development and a cooperative approach to resolving the challenges the continent faces. South Africa hosted the launch in 2002 of the African Union (AU), a step towards further unification of Africa in pursuit of socio-economic development, the Organisation of African Unity having fulfilled its mandate to liberate Africa. The then President, Thabo Mbeki, chaired the AU for its founding year, handing over the chair to to former President of Mozambique Joaquim Chissano in July 2003. In 2004, the AU decided that South Africa should host the Pan-African Parliament and it met for its second session in South Africa, the first time on South African soil, in September that year. By participating in UN and AU initiatives to resolve conflict and promote peace and security on the continent – in countries such as the Democratic Republic of Congo, Burundi and Sudan – South Africa has contributed to the achievement of conditions conducive to the entrenchment of stability, democracy and faster development.

During the first decade of freedom, it acted at various times as chair of the Southern African Development Community, NAM, AU and the Commonwealth Heads of Government meetings. It hosted several international conferences, including the UN Conference on Trade and Development in 1996, the 2000 World AIDS Congress, the World Conference Against Racism in 2001, the World Summit on Sustainable Development in 2002 and the World Parks Congress in 2003. The country has also been represented in international forums such as the International Monetary Fund's Development Committee and Interpol.

The second decade of freedom

When South Africa celebrated 10 years of freedom in 2004, there were celebrations across the world in countries whose peoples had helped to bring freedom to South Africa through their solidarity, and who today are partners in reconstruction and development. As government took stock of the first decade of freedom in the Towards a Ten Year Review, it was able to document great progress by South Africans in pursuit of their

goals, as well as the challenges that face the nation as it traverses the second decade of its freedom towards 2014.

In its third democratic elections, in April 2004, the country gave an increased mandate to the Government's programme for reconstruction and development and for the entrenchment of the rights in the Constitution. It mandated government specifically to create the conditions for halving unemployment and poverty by 2014. Following these elections, Thabo Mbeki was appointed to a second term of office – a position he relinquished in September 2008, following the decision of the National Executive Committee of the ANC to recall him. Parliament elected Kgalema Motlanthe as President of South Africa on 25 September 2008.

Local government elections in 2006, following a long period of civic unrest as communities protested against a mixed record of service delivery, saw increased participation compared with the previous local elections, as well as increased support for the ruling party based on a manifesto for a concerted effort, in partnership with communities, to make local government work better.

South Africa held national and provincial elections to elect a new National Assembly as well as the provincial legislature in each province on 22 April 2009. Some 23 million people were registered for the 2009 general election, which was about 2.5 million more than in 2004. About 77% of registered voters took part in the election. The results for the top five parties were as follows: the ANC achieved 65.9%; the DA 16.6%; the newly-formed Congress of the People (Cope) 7.4%; the IFP 4.5%; and the Independent Democrats 0.9% of the votes cast.

Jacob Zuma was inaugurated as President of South Africa on 9 May 2009.

Government adopted 14 outcomes as its focus areas. These include among other things: improving the quality of basic education and health services, strengthening the fight against crime, creating decent employment through inclusive growth, and boosting skills development. It also included ensuring food security for all, building sustainable human settlements and an improved quality of household life, improving local government structures and an efficient and development-oriented public service.

A significant milestone for South Africa in the second decade of freedom was the successful hosting of the 2010 FIFA World Cup.

The tournament, which was the first on African soil, demonstrated that South Africa has the infrastructure and capability to warrant serious investment consideration. It also showcased South Africa and its people to the world.

The local government elections held on 18 May 2011 were characterised by lively and respectful campaigning with all political parties free to engage with voters in all areas. The Independent Electoral Commission highlighted decreased voter apathy and achieved an impressive 57.6% registered voter turn-out – an improvement from the previous local government elections, which scored below the 50% mark. The ANC won the highest number of seats and councils – 198 councils and 5 633 seats, constituting 62% of the vote. The DA came second with 18 councils, 1 555 seats and 23.9% support. The ANC and DA were followed by the IFP and Cope.

To secure a better quality of life for all, government finalised the National Development Plan (NDP): Vision for 2030 in 2011. The plan was a step in the process of charting a new path for South Africa.

By 2030, government seeks to eliminate poverty and reduce inequality. The plan was the product of not just the NPC but also tens of thousands of ordinary South Africans who shared their dreams, hopes and ideas for the future.

The revised NDP 2030 document titled, Our future – make it work, is a policy blueprint for eliminating poverty and reducing inequality in South Africa by 2030.

Implementation of the plan will be broken up into five-year chunks, in line with the electoral cycle, with the 2014 to 2019 Medium Term Strategic Framework forming the first five-year building block of the plan.

The 2019 to 2024 and 2024 to 2029 planning cycles will be used to initiate the remaining activities and will be informed by a performance review of the previous cycle.

On 8 January 2012, Africa's oldest liberation movement, the ANC, celebrated 100 years of existence. This was a historic achievement, not only for the movement, but also for South Africa, the continent and the world. Thousands of ordinary South Africans, political and religious leaders attended the centenary celebrations which were held in Mangaung, Free State, the birthplace of the ANC.

On 30 October 2012, Statistics South Africa released the Census 2011 results. In 2011, the country held its third national population and housing count in post-apartheid South Africa.

The census analysed the country's demographics, population distribution and access to services, average household size, income, migration, and mortality. Results showed that the country's population grew to 51.8 million people from 44.8 million in 2001, representing a 15.5% increase.

In December 2012, Zuma was re-elected as the President of the ANC during the ruling party's congress in Mangaung. Cyril Ramaphosa was elected as the party's Deputy President.

While receiving intensive medical care at home for a lung infection after spending three months in hospital, South Africa's first democratically elected President and anti-apartheid icon, Mandela, died at the age of 95, on 5 December 2013. Mandela led South Africa's transition from white-minority rule in the 1990s, after serving 27 years in prison for his political activities.

He was buried in his home town of Qunu in the Eastern Cape on 15 December 2013.

South Africa celebrated 20 years of freedom in 2014, which was a historic milestone for the country. The Twenty Year Review, and the National Planning Commission's 2011 Diagnostic Report, highlighted that poverty, inequality and unemployment continued to negatively affect the lives of many people.

As stated in the NDP, by 2030, South Africa's rural communities must have better opportunities to participate fully in the economic, social and political life of the country.

Government's programme of radical economic transformation is about placing the economy on a qualitatively different path that ensures more rapid, sustainable growth, higher investment, increased employment, reduced inequality and deracialisation of the economy. The NDP sets a growth target of at least 5% a year, and emphasises measures to ensure that the benefits of growth are equitably shared.

On 7 May 2014, the country elected a new National Assembly and new provincial legislatures. It was the fifth election held in

South Africa under conditions of universal adult suffrage since the end of the apartheid era in 1994, and the first held since the death of Mandela. It was also the first time that South African expatriates were allowed to vote in a South African national election.

The National Assembly election was won by the ANC (62.1%). The official opposition, DA won 22.2% of the votes, while the newly formed Economic Freedom Fighters (EFF) obtained 6.4% of the vote.

Eight of the nine provincial legislatures were won by the ANC. The EFF obtained over 10% of the votes in Gauteng, Limpopo and North West, and beat the DA to second place in Limpopo and North West. In the other six provinces won by the ANC, the DA obtained second place. In the Western Cape, the only province not won by the ANC, the DA increased its majority from 51.5% to 59.4%.

The discovery of Homo naledi, an extinct species of hominin, in September 2015 became worldwide news. In 2015, South Africa celebrated the 60th Anniversary of the Freedom Charter, which advocated for a non-racial South Africa.

The 40th Anniversary of the 16 June 1976 Soweto Student Uprising was celebrated in 2016, along with the 20th Anniversary of the signing of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996.

The 2016 Local Government Elections were held on 3 August 2016. The ANC won 53.9% of the total votes, followed by the official opposition DA with 26.9% and the EFF with 8.2%.

In 2017, South Africa commemorated the centenary of the birth of Tambo, the late former President of the ANC and one of the key founding fathers of South Africa's liberation and constitutional democracy. The centenary celebrations were held under the theme: Life and Legacy of OR Tambo.

The year 2018 marked the centenary of the birth of South Africa's first democratically elected President Mandela and Struggle stalwart Albertina Sisulu respectively. Centenary celebrations for the two icons were marked with year long series of awareness, educational, celebratory and legacy commemoration events. Mandela's centenary celebrations were held under the theme: "Be the legacy" while the Albertina Sisulu commemorations were held under the theme: "A woman of fortitude".

On 8 May 2019, the country held its sixth national and provincial elections.

On 25 May 2019, Ramaphosa was inaugurated as the sixth democratically elected President of South Africa.In a departure from the tradition of holding the inauguration at the Union Buildings, the event took place at the Loftus Versfeld Stadium in Pretoria.

2019/20 SOUTH AFRICA YEARBOOK

Agriculture and Rural Development

Agriculture, Land Reform and Rural Development

The mandate of the Department of Agriculture, Land Reform and Rural Development (DALRRD) includes developing agricultural value chains, providing agricultural inputs, and monitoring production and consumption in the agriculture sector, as well as facilitating comprehensive rural development.

Chapter 6 of the National Development Plan (NDP) envisions an integrated and inclusive economy that involves the expansion of agricultural activity, the need for effective land reform and the promotion of sustainable rural development. This vision is expressed specifically in terms of Priority 1 (economic transformation and job creation) of government's 2019 – 2024 Medium Term Strategic Framework, with which the work of the DALRRD is directly aligned. The nature and extent of the department's interventions are, therefore, underpinned by reducing poverty and inequality, and creating employment by allocating adequate resources and requisite skills to address the persistent challenges associated with agriculture, land reform and rural development in South Africa.

Accordingly, over the medium term the DALRRD will focus on providing redress and equitable access to land, increasing food security and creating employment in the agricultural sector, improving agricultural production, developing the agricultural value chain through greater market access, and promoting an inclusive rural economy.

Providing redress and equitable access to land

The DALRRD's focus on providing redress and equitable access to land is far reaching, in that these provisions contribute to ensuring inclusive and sustainable economic development. Over the medium term, as part of the land restitution programme, the DALRRD expects to finalise 1 411 restitution claims at a cost of R8.7 billion, which accounts for 16.3% of the total budget.

The One Household, One Hectare programme is aimed at providing landless South Africans with access to land and promoting agrarian transformation. The initiative aims to support rural enterprises by creating smallholder producers, who will, in turn, supply their produce to agri-parks in poor districts in the country and other densely populated areas. In this regard, over the period ahead the DALRRD aims to acquire approximately 312 218 hectares (ha) of strategically located land, and provide agricultural inputs and infrastructure to make resettled farms productive. For this purpose, R2.9 billion will be transferred to the agricultural land holding account over the Medium Term Expenditure Framework (MTEF) period. These transfers are made in the Land Acquisition and Redistribution subprogramme in the Food Security, Land Reform and Restitution programme. Since the initiative began in 2008/09, about 1 675 farms have been created from more than 4.9 million ha of land acquired.

Increasing food security and creating employment in the agricultural sector

Over the medium term, the DALRRD will focus on food security, job creation and increasing the agriculture sector's contribution to the gross domestic product (GDP). In this regard, the department's interventions will involve increasing support to subsistence, smallholder and black commercial farmers through the Fetsa Tlala food production initiative, which is funded through the Ilima/Letsema Projects Grant. Fetsa Tlala (eradicate hunger) is a government initiative that seeks to push back hunger inadvertently working towards the elimination of the triple challenges of poverty, inequality and hunger. It contributes to the broader national Integrated Food Security and Nutrition Policy.

As part of the initiative, in each year over the MTEF period, 145 000 subsistence and smallholder producers are expected to be supported with agricultural inputs and the mechanisation of farms, and 120 000 ha of productive land are expected to be planted. To fund these activities, the Ilima/Letsema Projects Grant is allocated R1.8 billion over the medium term in the Plant Production and Health subprogramme in the Agricultural Production, Health, Food Safety, Natural Resources and Disaster Management programme. In 2020/21, the DALRRD plans to spend R35.9 million from an indirect grant created from the Ilima/Letsema Projects Grant to conduct a survey aimed at setting the baseline for poverty, vulnerability and food insecurity in South Africa. This project will be undertaken as part of the department's continued involvement in the regional vulnerability assessment committee of the Southern African Development Community (SADC). Funds from the Comprehensive Agricultural Support Programme (CASP) Grant will be used to provide subsistence, smallholder and commercial farmers with infrastructure in the areas of grain, livestock and horticultural production. These farmers will also be assisted with infrastructure, in particular agro-processing infrastructure, both on and off farms. In addition, over the MTEF period, R278.3 million from the grant will be used to revitalise provincial agricultural colleges, and R957.1 million will be used for the recruitment and training of extension officers as well as for the placement of unemployed agricultural graduates in commercial farms in all provinces. The CASP Grant is allocated R4.8 billion over the medium term in the Food Security, Land Reform and Restitution programme.

To streamline the provision of agricultural finance, the DALRRD will transfer R1.2 billion, over the MTEF period, to the Land and Agricultural Development Bank of South Africa (Land Bank). This transfer will enable the bank to offer blended finance (a combination of government grants and loans at cheaper rates) to emerging black farmers in the black producer commercialisation programme with the aim of creating a projected 450 black commercial farmers in each year over the period ahead.

Improving agriculture production and food safety

The DALRRD's ongoing objective is to increase its capacity to respond to biosecurity threats and ensure food safety in South Africa, strengthen animal and plant health, and improve inspection and laboratory services. This includes local and international surveillance of specific animal and plant diseases, especially in areas where there is a prevalence of foot-and mouth disease, ovine rinderpest and Newcastle disease. Spending on related activities over the medium term is expected to amount to R130 million in the Animal Production and Health subprogramme in the Agricultural Production, Health, Food Safety, Natural Resources and Disaster Management programme. In the same subprogramme, R45 million is earmarked, over the medium term, for the implementation of microbial and antimicrobial monitoring, and all relevant pathogen reduction programmes. Related activities include conducting inspections of facilities that produce food of animal origin.

Developing the agricultural value chain through greater market access

Over the medium term, the DALRRD plans to continue monitoring the implementation of the SADC-European Economic Partnership Agreements (EPAs), which commenced in October 2016. The agreement has already provided new and greater market access for about 32 South African agricultural products, including sugar, flower varieties, fruit and wine. For this purpose, R1.9 billion is allocated over the MTEF period in the Agro-processing, Marketing and Rural Industrial Development subprogramme in the Economic Development, Trade and Marketing programme to ensure that primary product commodities are converted into value-added products, and that there is domestic and international market access for South African agricultural products.

The availability of an integrated system to identify and trace livestock and other products of animal origin will provide the local agriculture industry with the necessary credibility for improving and expanding market access. In this regard, R40 million is earmarked in the Economic Development, Trade and Marketing programme, over the MTEF period, for the development and implementation of a livestock identification and traceability system in South Africa.

Promoting an inclusive rural economy

The DALRRD's ongoing commitment is to promote inclusive economic growth, broadly, and an inclusive rural economy, specifically. This commitment is realised through activities carried out in the Rural Development programme, which is allocated R3.3 billion, over the medium term, representing 6.2% of the department's total budget. Accordingly, over the medium term, 750 rural enterprises and 270 farmer production support units will be supported through the programme for the provision of infrastructure and inputs, both on and off farms.

Legislation and frameworks

The DALRRD executes its legislative mandate by implementing, managing and overseeing the following key pieces of legislation, among others:

- the Restitution of Land Rights Act, 1994 (Act 22 of 1994), which makes provision for the restitution of rights to land to people or communities dispossessed of such rights after 19 June 1913 as a result of racially discriminatory laws or practices of the past. To administer this task, the Act established a Commission on the Restitution of Land Rights and a Land Claims Court;
- the Provision of Land and Assistance Act, 1993 (Act 126 of 1993), which makes provision for the designation of certain land, the regulation of the subdivision of such land and the settlement of persons thereon. It also provides for the acquisition, maintenance, planning, development, improvement and disposal of property, and the provision of financial assistance for land reform purposes;
- the Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act, 2013 (Act 16 of 2013), which seeks to enable the transformation of South Africa's settlement patterns by adopting a new approach to spatial planning and land use management;
- the Agricultural Product Standards Act, 1990 (Act 119 of 1990), which provides for control over the sale and export of certain agricultural products, and the sale of some imported agricultural products; and
- the Conservation of Agricultural Resources Act, 1983 (Act 43 of 1983), which makes provision for control over use of the country's natural agricultural resources to conserve soil, water sources and vegetation.

Budget and funding

Agriculture was allocated R7.6 billion for the 2019/20 financial year while Rural Development and Land Reform received R10.8 billion.

Expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 2.4%, from R17.2 billion in 2019/20 to R18.5 billion in 2022/23. Transfers and subsidies are the DALRRD's largest cost drivers, accounting for 50.9% (R26.7 billion) of its total expenditure over the MTEF period.

Agriculture

About three quarters of smallholder farms are within the former homelands, and the rest are split between urban areas and commercial farming areas. There is scope to increase the size of the smallholder sector in each of these areas. The DALRRD works with provincial departments of agriculture to support these smallholders to become sustainable and meet the targets set out in the NDP.

In the former homelands, there are thousands of ha of underutilised arable land that can be put back under production. The DALRRD continues to provide targeted support programmes such as the CASP Grant, Ilima/Letsema and LandCare in order to realise enhanced food production, contributing towards the eradication of hunger by 2030. The department plans to increase its inspection capacity and infrastructure for abattoirs and ports of entry for United States (US) imports to manage the African Growth and Opportunity Act (AGOA) trade agreements.

The management of pests and diseases remains important in contributing to sustainable agricultural production and ensuring access of commodities to export markets. As such, the DALRRD continues to provide intensified control measures to deal with outbreaks and maintain a foot-and-mouth disease free status.

Agriculture's role in the national and international economy

According to the *Economic Review of the South African Agriculture 2018/19*, the value of agricultural production in South Africa decreased by 2.7% to R277 078 million compared to R284 623 million in the previous year, mainly because of the decrease in the value of field crops and animal products by 4.8% and 4.5% respectively.

Despite its relatively small share of the total GDP, primary agriculture is an important sector in the South African economy. It remains a significant provider of employment, especially in the rural areas and a major earner of foreign exchange.

Agriculture's prominent, indirect role in the economy is a function of backward and forward linkages to other sectors. Purchases of goods such as fertilisers, chemicals and implements form backward linkages with the manufacturing sector, while forward linkages are established through supplying raw materials to the manufacturing industry. About 70% of agricultural output is used as intermediate products in the sector. Agriculture is therefore a crucial sector and an important engine of growth for the rest of the economy.

Gross farming income made from all agricultural products decreased marginally by 0.4% to R277 801 million for the year ended 30 June 2019, from R278 915 million the previous period. This was largely due to the decrease in gross income from animal and horticultural products by 4.5% and 0.3%, respectively. The weighted average price received by farmers for their agricultural products decreased slightly by 0.5%, mainly because of the decrease in prices of animal products by 6.0%. The weighted average price of field crops increased by 9.9%, due to the increase in the prices of summer grains by 19.7%, winter grains (7.8%), hay (5.3%), oilseeds (3.7%) and tobacco slightly by 0.6%. The weighted average price of horticultural products increased by 3.0%, due to the increase in the prices of viticulture by 16.6% and vegetables by 8.6%. The weighted average price of animal products decreased by 6.0% and was driven by the decrease in prices of milk by 11.4%, poultry meat by 6.4% and slaughtered stock by 5.4%.

The prices paid for farming requisites, including machinery and implements, material for fixed improvements as well as intermediate goods and services increased by 4.3%, compared to 3.9% in the previous period. The prices of building material increased by 6.3%, fuel (6.0%), fencing material (5.8%), packaging material and animal health and crop protection (4.8%) each, trucks and maintenance and repairs of machinery and implements (4.6%) each, seed (4.0%), feeds (3.3%) and tractors and fertilisers (2.3%) each.

The domestic terms of trade showed a decrease of 4.6%, largely because of the increase of 4.3% in production costs compared to a decrease of 0.5% in prices received by the farmers. The net farming income decreased by 12.3% mainly as the result of the increase of 4.3% in the expenditure on intermediate goods and services.

Volume of agricultural production

The estimated volume of agricultural production in 2018/19 was 0.02% less than the previous year. The field crop production volume decreased by 5.6%, mainly as a result of decreases in the production of maize and oilseed crops (soybean, sunflower seed and groundnuts). The largest contributor towards the gross value of field crops for the past five seasons is maize (45.0%), followed by sugarcane (13.5%), wheat (9.9%), soya beans (9.6%) and sunflower seed (6.7%). Maize production decreased by 1.6 million tons (t) (12.0%). Soybean production decreased by 369 660 t (24.0%), sunflower seed by 214 360 t (23.9%) and groundnuts by 42 860 t (66.5%). Horticultural production increased by 1.9% from the previous season, which can mainly be attributed to increases in the production of citrus and subtropical fruits. The production of oranges increased by 313 027 t (21.4%), grapefruit by 119 881 t (36.8%), soft citrus by 35 508 t (14.2%), as well as lemons by 25 554 t (5.71%) and naartjies by 12 263 t (29.9%), which all contributed to an increase in the production of citrus fruits. Furthermore, with reference to subtropical fruit, the production of avocados increased by 39 656 t (46.0%), mangoes by 21 698 t (24.4%), bananas by 13 478 t (3.3%), as well as pineapples by 7 416 t (7.1%) and guavas by 1 998 t (7.2%), which all led to an increase in the production of subtropical fruits from the previous season. Animal production increased by 1.0%, mainly as a result of increases in the production of poultry (poultry meat and eggs). The production of poultry meat increased by 71 848 t (4.2%) and eggs by 57 611 t (11.2%). The production of milk increased by 79 653 litres (l) or 2.2%, as compared to the previous season.

Farming income

The gross income of producers (the value of sales and production for other uses, plus the value of changes in inventories) decreased slightly by 0.4% to R277 801 million for the year ended 30 June 2019, compared to R278 915 million the previous year. This was mainly the result of the decrease in prices of animal products, as well as the decrease in production levels or volumes of horticultural products, in particular, deciduous and other fruit by 12.6%.

The gross income from field crops increased by 10.9% to R57 835 million for the year ended 30 June 2019. This can be attributed to the increase in income from grain sorghum by 29.0% (from R336 million to R434 million), cotton by 28.1% (from R878 million to R1 124 million), wheat by 23.2% (from R5 681 million to R6 999 million), maize by 22.4% (from R20 895 million to R25 575 million), sugarcane by 8.5% (from R7 890 to R8 564 million) and sunflower seed by 8.3% (from R3 172 million to R3 436 million).

The gross income from horticultural products decreased slightly by 0.3% to R83 535 million from R83 825 million. This can be attributed largely to the decrease in income from deciduous and other fruit by 19.4% (from R22 648 million to R18 252 million). The gross income from animal products decreased by 4.5% and amounted to R136 431 million, compared to R142 922 million the previous year. This was driven by the decrease in income from sheep slaughtered by 13.4% (from R7 262 million to R6 290 million), milk by 11.2% (from R18 010 million to R15 989 million), eggs by 7.9% (from R12 076 million to R11 125 million) and cattle and calves slaughtered by 7.2% (from R37 318 million to R34 631 million).

Consumer prices

The consumer prices of all agricultural products increased by 4.4% for the year ended June 2019, compared to 4.5% the previous period. The consumer prices of non-food and food increased by 4.7% and 2.8%, respectively. The consumer prices of vegetables increased by 8.6%, fish by 5.6%, coffee and tea by 3.5%, grain products by 2.5%, sugar by 2.2%, milk, eggs and cheese by 2.1%%, meat by 1.8%, fats and oil by 1.4% and fruit by 0.9%. The consumer prices of other products increased by 3.5%.

Imports and exports of agricultural products

The estimated value of imports came to R75 789 million, an increase of 0.5% from R75 412 million. The value of exports increased by 4.6%, from R104 577 million to R109 379 million. According to the export values, citrus fruit (R19 969 million), wine (R9 263 million), apples, pears and quinces (R7 451 million), nuts (R5 685 million) and cane or beet sugar (R4 353 million), were the most important agricultural export products. Meat (R6 616 million), rice (R6 436 million), wheat (R4 978 million), undenatured ethyl alcohol (R4 284 million) and palm oil (R3 948 million) accounted for the highest imports in terms of value. The Netherlands, with exports to the value of R11 927 million, the United Kingdom (UK) (R10 784 million), Mozambique (R7 448 million), China (R6 931 million) and the US (R5 233 million) were the five largest trading partners of South Africa

in terms of export destinations for agricultural products. About 20.8% of the total value of agricultural exports from South Africa for the period July 2018 to June 2019 went to the Netherlands and the UK combined. The five largest trading partners for South Africa's imported agricultural products during 2018/19 were Thailand (R5 328 million), Brazil (R5 251 million), the Argentina (R4 705 million), the US (R4 560 million) and Germany (R4 083 million). About 14.0% of the total value of agricultural imports by South Africa during the period under review was from Thailand and Brazil combined.

Entities

Agricultural Land Holding Account

The Agricultural Land Holding Account was established in 2009 in terms of the Provision of Land and Assistance Act of 1993. The Act authorises the Minister of Agriculture, Land Reform and Rural Development to purchase land to enable the DALRRD to accelerate the land redistribution process, acquire land in nodal areas and other areas of high agricultural potential, improve the process of identifying and selecting beneficiaries and the planning of land on which people could be settled, and ensure the maximum productive use of land acquired.

The entity's strategic objective over the period ahead is to promote equitable land redistribution and agricultural development by acquiring strategically located land by 2023. Accordingly, over the medium term, 224 015 ha of strategically located land will be acquired through the account, which will be used for redistribution and to promote agricultural development. About 141 511 ha of acquired land will be allocated to smallholder farmers over the medium term.

The entity derives 72.6% (R2.9 billion) of its revenue over the MTEF period from transfers from the DALRRD. Due to the nature of the entity's work, its expenditure over the period ahead is in line with revenue.

Agricultural Research Council (ARC)

The ARC was established in terms of the Agricultural Research Act, 1990 (Act 86 of 1990) and is the main agricultural research institution in South Africa. The council's primary mandate is to conduct research, and develop and effect the transfer of technology to promote agriculture and industry, contribute to a better quality of life, and facilitate and ensure the conservation of natural resources. Accordingly, at a cost of R400 million over the MTEF period, the council plans to construct a foot-and-mouth disease vaccine production facility in Onderstepoort, Gauteng, to reduce reliance on imports.

Expenditure increases at an average annual rate of 9.4%, from R1.4 billion in 2019/20 to R1.8 billion in 2022/23. Spending on compensation of employees accounts for 55.4% (R2.7 billion) of the council's total expenditure over the medium term. The council derives most of its revenue from transfers from the DALRRD and the Department of Science and Innovation (DSI). These transfers amount to 71% (R3.9 billion) of the council's total budget over the medium term. The amount for the construction of the vaccine production facility in Onderstepoort is ring-fenced within departmental transfers. The council's remaining revenue is generated by the provision of analytical and research services, the sale of farm products and rental income.

Other entities

The KwaZulu-Natal Ingonyama Trust Board

This is a land management agency that ensures that commercial activity on communal land is developmental and beneficial to local communities. The KwaZulu-Natal Ingonyama Trust Act, 1994 (Act 3KZN of 1994) makes provision for the 2.8 million ha of land spread across the province to be held in trust and managed on behalf of communities. The affairs of the trust are administered by the Ingonyama Trust Board. The board's total budget for 2019/20 was R210.9 million.

The Office of the Valuer-General

The Office of the Valuer-General values all land to be acquired for land reform purposes, in accordance with a defined set of criteria based on Section 25(3) of the Constitution, to ensure fair and equitable prices. The Property Valuation Act, 2014 (Act 17 of 2014) prescribes that the office must be impartial in exercising its powers and performing its functions, and be accountable to the Minister of Agriculture, Land Reform and Rural Development. The office's total budget for 2020/21 was R142.6 million.

Onderstepoort Biological Products (OBP)

OBP was established as a public entity in terms of the OBP Incorporation Act, 1999 (Act 19 of 1999), with government as its sole shareholder. The entity's mandate is to prevent and control animal diseases that affect food security, human health and livelihoods through the continued development and efficient manufacturing of innovative animal-related pharmaceuticals (including vaccines) and related products. The entity's total budget for 2019/20 was R193 million.

National Agricultural Marketing Council (NAMC)

The council was established in terms of Section 3 and Section 4 of the Marketing of Agricultural Products Act, 1996 (Act 47 of 1996). The council is mandated to investigate the establishment, continuation, amendment or revocation of statutory measures affecting the marketing of agricultural products; and evaluate the desirability, necessity or efficiency of these statutory measures. It is also mandated to, if necessary, propose alternatives to the establishment, continuation, amendment or repeal of a statutory measure, and report to and advise the Minister accordingly. The council's total budget for 2019/20 was R45.7 million.

Perishable Products Export Control Board (PPECB)

The PPECB is an independent service provider of quality certification and cold chain management services for producers and exporters of perishable food products.

It is mandated by government in terms of the Perishable Products Export Control Act, 1983 (Act 9 of 1983), which broadly requires the board to ensure the orderly export of perishables and monitor the proper maintenance of a continuous cold chain for exports. It also derives its mandate from the Agricultural Products Standards Act, 1990 (Act 119 of 1990), which broadly requires the board to monitor the minimum quality standards of perishable exports, as required by government and bilateral agreements with importing countries. The board's total budget for 2019/20 was R463.9 million.

The Registration of Deeds Trading Account

The trading account makes provision for the administration of the land registration system and the registration of rights in land.

It requires that deeds and documents are prepared and lodged in the deed's registry by a conveyancer or public notary and are scrutinised for accuracy and compliance with common law, case law and statutory law. The main goal of the trading account is to contribute to effective land planning, administration and property registration. The account's total budget for 2019/20 was R938.6 million.

Role players

Credit and assistance

The six major sources of credit for farmers are banks (56%), agricultural cooperatives and agribusinesses (9%), the Land Bank (30%), private creditors (3%) and other creditors and financial institutions (2%).

Land and Agricultural Development Bank of South Africa

Established in 1912, the Land Bank is a government-owned development finance institution with the mandate of financing agricultural development to achieve food security, and to drive economic growth and development in South African agricultural sector.

The bank is a specialist agricultural bank guided by a government mandate to provide financial services, including crop insurance, to established commercial farmers, developing farmers and agri-enterprises.

Through its direct lending, the Land Bank currently supports approximately 1 500 black farmers and relinquished approximately R74 million of its profits to subsidise interest rates to these farmers.

The bank provided support to farmers impacted by the drought, disbursing more than R240 million in loans under its drought relief programme, administered in conjunction with the Industrial Development Corporation Ltd.

As part of its transformation objective, the Land Bank Insurance Company subsidiary launched and implemented the Agricultural Insurance Assessors Development programme to train agricultural economist graduates (or equivalent) in crop insurance assessment protocols to service the agricultural sector. It is charged with promoting agricultural and rural development, as well as providing a range of financial products and services, including crop insurance to farmers and agribusinesses.

Micro Agricultural Financial Institutions of South Africa (MAFISA)

The MAFISA provides production loans to smallholder operators within the agriculture sector. The scheme's operations are guided by the MAFISA Credit Policy.

Loans are provided at a low interest rate and accessed through a network of institutions accredited by the DALRRD as retail intermediaries.

Intermediaries submit monthly and quarterly reports to the DALRRD as part of its monitoring process. Regular workshops and inspection visits to intermediaries are also conducted as part of monitoring.

The scheme offers production loans of up to R500 000 per person, with the repayment terms structured according to the income cycle of the enterprise. The loans are limited to South African citizens who meet the eligibility criteria set in the MAFISA Credit Policy.

The MAFISA loans are available for the entire value chain of agriculture though most of the loans are still in respect of primary production and largely in agriculture. To date, most of the loans are in respect of livestock, sugarcane, vegetables and grain crops.

Currently, the MAFISA is accessed through the following intermediaries:

- National Emergent Red Meat Producer Organisation – livestock in all provinces.
- South African Sugar Association – sugarcane in KwaZulu-Natal and Mpumalanga.
- Peulwana Agricultural Financial Services – grains, vegetables, sugarcane and fruits in KwaZulu-Natal.
- Mpumalanga Economic Growth Agency – various agricultural commodities in Mpumalanga.
- Eastern Cape Rural Development Agency – various agricultural commodities in the Eastern Cape.

Farmers' organisations

Agri SA

Agri SA was established in 1904 as the South African Agricultural Union.

Its mission is to promote the development, profitability, stability and sustainability of agriculture in South Africa by means of its involvement and input on national and international policy and the implementation thereof.

Agri SA, through its affiliated membership, represents a diverse group of individual farmers regardless of gender, colour or creed.

Agri SA's policy advocacy includes work on trade negotiations, industrial policy, taxation, financing, land reform, labour laws, training, farmer development, environmental affairs, water rights and water pricing, other input-related issues, farm safety, law and order, infrastructure, technology development and transfer, statistical information and local government.

Furthermore, the organisation maintains an extensive communication network with its members and other affected communities, organisations and individuals. Agri SA is a member of high-level business, trade and agricultural entities that includes Business Unity South Africa, the International Chamber of Commerce, the World Farmers' Organisation, the Southern African Confederation of Agricultural Unions and the Cairns Group Farm Leaders.

Agri SA communicates with its members via its two-monthly magazine, namely *Agri* (incorporating *Die Boer/The Farmer*) and an electronic newsletter. The magazine provides background information on policy, legislation and programmes of interest to farmers. It also offers advice, extension and news on topical events to about 28 000 farmers who are members of Agri SA via the respective affiliates. The magazine is sent directly to each member. It is also distributed more widely to include opinion-formers and decision-makers.

Agri SA is committed to ensuring a safe environment for all people involved in the agricultural sector. A sound working relationship has been established with the South African Police Service (SAPS) at both policy and operational level, with a view of addressing the relevant rural safety problems.

Agricultural Business Chamber (Agbiz)

The Agbiz is a voluntary, dynamic and influential association of agribusinesses operating in South and southern Africa. The function of Agbiz is to ensure that agribusiness plays a constructive role in the country's economic growth, development and transformation, and to create an environment in which agribusinesses of all sizes and in all sectors can thrive, expand and be competitive.

The Agbiz is the only organisation that serves the broader and common overarching business interests of agribusinesses in South Africa. It addresses the legislative and policy environment on the many fronts that it impacts on the agribusiness environment. The Agbiz facilitates considerable networking opportunities so that South African agribusinesses can play an active and creative role within the local and international organised business environment.

The strategic intent of the Agbiz is to advocate for and facilitate a favourable agribusiness environment in order for its members to perform competitively and sustainably.

Transvaal Agricultural Union South Africa (TAU SA)

The TAU SA was established in 1897 as the Transvaal Agricultural Union. In 2002, the union reorganised to become a national agricultural union serving commercial farmers. It also renders services to its members in terms of property rights, economic issues, and safety and security. The TAU SA conducts various projects to enhance the concept of successful agriculture.

National African Farmers' Union of South Africa (NAFU SA)

The NAFU SA is an independent, autonomous farmers organisation governed by and representing farmers in South Africa, united for the purpose of analysing their problems and formulating action to achieve economic emancipation and development through production efficiencies, access to market opportunities, and education.

It was formed in 1991 as part of the broader process of economic liberation and empowerment of, mainly, black farmers who were excluded from mainstream economic landscape of South Africa. Its predecessor, the National African Chamber of Commerce and Industries, for many years had fought against economic oppression and marginalisation of African people in this country. Over many years, the union has acted as an advocacy and pressure group calling for policy reforms and the support and development of farmers. Through its interventions and contribution to policy formulation, the NAFU SA has contributed to the following:

- access to productive land being made available to farmers;
- access to finance and other support for farmers;
- access to markets and information for farmers; and
- skills development and technical support.

The NAFU SA pursues these items by implementing the following broad programmes:

- Advocacy, Lobbying and Policy Research,
- Cooperatives and Commodity Group Development, and
- Farm Enterprise Development.

African Farmers' Association of South Africa (AFASA)

The objectives of AFASA are to create a sustainable united body of African farmers with capacity to influence policies through lobbying and advocacy, to facilitate development of competencies of African farmers in order for them to participate meaningfully in formal and informal markets, and to mobilise resources for the benefit of African farmers.

Grain SA

Grain SA was established in June 1999. Its mission is to provide commodity strategic support and services to South African grain producers, as well as to support sustainability.

Grain SA is a voluntary association of grain farmers established to represent the interests of its members. It aims to be recognised as an autonomous and independent grain producers' organisation.

The organisation also aims to be involved in all matters bearing on the wellbeing of the industry and to be consulted about policy issues relating to the industry. The association is controlled by farmers and structured to ensure members' democratic control over their elected office bearers.

Products

Crop estimates

According to the final production forecast for summer crops for 2019 by the Crop Estimates Committee, the size of the expected commercial maize crop was set at 11.258 million t, which is 0.64% or 71 800 t more than the previous forecast of 11.186 million t. The area estimate for maize was 2.301 million ha, while the expected yield was 4.89 t/ha.

The estimated maize crop was 10% smaller than the 2018 crop. The three main maize producing areas, namely the Free State, Mpumalanga and North West provinces were expected to produce 80% of the 2019 crop.

The area estimate for white maize was 1.298 million ha and for yellow maize the area estimate was 1.002 million ha. The production forecast of white maize remained unchanged at 5.538 million t. The yield for white maize was 4.27 t/ha. In the case of yellow maize, the production forecast was 5.720 million t, 1.27% or 71 800 t more than the 5.648 million t of the previous forecast. The yield for yellow maize was 5.71 t/ha. The production forecast for sunflower seed remained unchanged at 680 940 t. The area estimate for sunflower seed was 515 350 ha, while the expected yield was 1.32 t/ha.

The production forecast for soybeans also remained unchanged at 1.170 million t. The estimated area planted to soybeans was 730 500 ha and the expected yield was 1.60 t/ha.

The expected groundnut crop was 20 030 t, 2.96% or 575 t more than the previous forecast of 19 455 t. The area estimate for groundnuts was 20 050 ha and the expected yield was 1.00 t/ha.

The production forecast for sorghum decreased by 2.71% or 3 650 t, from 134 525 t to 130 875 t. The area estimate for sorghum was 50 500 ha and the expected yield is 2.59 t/ha.

In the case of dry beans, the production forecast remained unchanged at 66 355 t. The area estimate of dry beans was 59 300 ha, with an expected yield of 1.12 t/ha.

Grains

The DALRRD has announced that South Africa will have sufficient staple grains supply in the 2020/21 marketing year, which started in May 2020 and will end in April 2021.

The data released by the DALRRD, in May 2020, showed that the 2020 summer grains harvest could amount to 17.5 million t, which is a 31% increase from 2019 and the second-biggest harvest in the history of this country.

South Africa's agriculture will continue to export agricultural commodities and products, which are crucial for generating foreign exchange. There will be over 2.5 million t of maize (white and yellow maize combined) for exports in the period between May 2020 and April 2021.

Maize

The maize sector comprises both commercial and non-commercial farmers; the latter mostly in the Eastern Cape, Limpopo, Mpumalanga and northern KwaZulu-Natal provinces. Maize is the most important grain crop in South Africa, being both the major feed grain and the staple food of the majority of the South African population. About 49.5% of maize produced in South Africa is white and the remaining 50.5% is yellow maize (2019).

White maize is primarily used for human consumption, while yellow maize is mostly used for animal feed production. The gross value of agricultural production is determined by the quantity produced and prices received by producers. The gross value of maize for 2018/19 amounted to R26 407 million, 8.0% or R1 959 million more than the R24 447 million the previous year. The two main white maize-growing provinces in South Africa, namely the Free State and North West, produced about 73% of the white maize harvest in 2019, whereas the Free State and Mpumalanga produced about 65% of the yellow maize harvest. Most of the maize is harvested from late May up to the end of August. The ratio of areas planted was 56% white maize to 44% yellow maize. An estimated 5.4% of the area planted to white maize was under irrigation and 94.6% was dryland, while the estimate for yellow maize was 14.4% under irrigation and 85.6% is dryland.

Sorghum

Sorghum is an indigenous crop in Africa, and is regarded as the fifth most important cereal in the world. There are two types of sorghum, namely bitter and sweet sorghum cultivars.

Preference is given to the sweet cultivars. Bitter sorghum is planted in areas where birds are a problem because it contains tannin, which gives a bitter taste and consequently birds tend to avoid feeding on it.

Sorghum for commercial purposes is mainly produced in the Western Free State, Mpumalanga, the drier parts of the North West and Limpopo provinces.

South Africa has moved from being a net exporter of sorghum to a net importer.

Wheat

Wheat is the second most important grain crop produced in South Africa and plays an important role in national food security. Most of the wheat produced in the country is bread wheat. Small quantities of durum wheat, used to produce pasta, is produced in certain areas. In South Africa, wheat is mainly used for human consumption (bread, biscuits, breakfast cereals, rusks, etc.) and the remaining as seed and animal feed.

Other non-food uses include production of alcohol for ethanol, absorbing agents for disposable diapers, adhesives and industrial uses as starch on coatings. Producers of wheat are estimated to be approximately between 3 800 to 4 000.

South Africa is a net importer of wheat. The price farmers get for their crop is, therefore, tied to import parity. There is also an import tariff.

A quota of 300 000 t can be imported duty free from the European Union (EU) under the EPAs. South Africa is expected to import almost two million t by 2026.

South Africa remains the largest wheat producer in Sub-Saharan Africa after Ethiopia.

Barley

Barley is one of the most important grain crops in South Africa, surpassed only by wheat and maize and is, following wheat, the most important small grain type.

The cultivation area for malting barley under dryland conditions is at present restricted to a very specific region, namely the Southern Cape, which stretches from Bot River in the west to Heidelberg in the east. It would not be economically viable to cultivate malting barley on dryland in an area that does not receive 350 millimetres of well-distributed rainfall during the growing season (April to October).

The concentration of the production of a relatively minor commodity, for instance malting barley, in a specific area, has various advantages, for example, it facilitates transport, storage, control, extension and research, which also implies cost advantages.

However, because of the risk of unpredictable weather conditions in the Southern Cape, barley production has also been introduced to the cooler central irrigation areas in the Northern Cape. There are also farmers in other areas of South Africa, such as North West, Limpopo and the Free State, who plant small quantities of malting barley under irrigation.

Malting barley under irrigation has a higher yield and is more stable than in the Southern Cape, where the crop is dependent on rainfall.

Barley is mainly used for the production of malt (for brewing beer), animal feed and pearl barley.

Dry beans

Dry beans are warm-season annual legumes. Gross returns from dry beans can easily be higher than for soya beans. While yields are typically lower, dry beans fetch a relatively higher price.

South Africa has a dry bean deficit and relies on imports. This provides an opportunity for the whole of southern Africa to increase production.

The crop is mainly produced in the Free State, KwaZulu-Natal, Limpopo, North West and the Northern Cape. Producers sell directly to the trade or to wholesalers and cooperatives.

Oilseeds

Groundnuts

Groundnuts are grown mainly in the Free State, North West and Northern Cape. They are also produced in Limpopo, Mpumalanga and KwaZulu-Natal but production is lower in these provinces.

Oil made from groundnuts can be used for cooking and to make peanut butter. It can also be used to manufacture soap, massage oil, shaving and hair creams.

Sunflower seeds

The Free State and North West are the major producers of sunflower seeds, followed by Limpopo, Mpumalanga and Gauteng. South Africa is the world's 10th-largest producer of sunflower seeds.

Compared to other crops, sunflower performs well under dry conditions. This is probably the main reason for the crop's popularity in the marginal production areas of South Africa. A close link exists between the area planted to maize and the area planted to sunflower seed because farmers can easily switch to sunflower if the normal period for maize planting has passed.

Major exporters of sunflower seeds to South Africa are Romania, Botswana, Bulgaria and Argentina. Importing from SADC countries utilises the SADC Free Trade Agreement which facilitates flow of commodities among countries in the region at no tariff charges.

The sale of sunflower seeds are mostly to the domestic market, with very small quantities destined for the export market. Mostly, South Africa remains a net importer of sunflower seeds.

Soya beans

Soya beans are produced mainly in Mpumalanga, the Free State and KwaZulu-Natal. Small quantities are also produced in Limpopo, Gauteng and North West. Various soya bean cultivars have adapted quite well to South African conditions.

Domestic soya bean oilcake production has exceeded imported oilcake since 2014 and is projected to increase to over 1.8 million t by 2026, continually replacing imports so that only 250 000 t or 13% of domestic soya bean oilcake use is projected to be imported by 2026. Soya oil imports are projected to decrease from 160 000 t in 2017 to merely 50 000 t by 2026.

Canola

Canola is an oilseed crop grown mainly in the Western Cape. Canola competes on the local market with other oilseeds such as sunflower seeds and soya beans.

Local and international investors in the oilseed crushing sector are boosting South Africa's capacity to process oilseed crops such as soya beans, canola and sunflower seed.

About 99% of the canola crop in South Africa is produced in the Western Cape province, particularly in the Southern Cape.

Cotton

In South Africa, cotton is grown in the warm regions of Limpopo, Mpumalanga, Northern Cape, North West and KwaZulu-Natal, where minimum night temperatures are at least 15 °C during the growing season.

The cotton industry is labour-intensive and provides work for roughly one worker per hectare of cotton planted. Oil extracted from cotton seed can be used for cooking and salad dressings. Extracted seed can also be used as a fertiliser or as feed for livestock, poultry and fish.

Tobacco

Virginia tobacco is produced mainly in Mpumalanga, Limpopo, Eastern Cape, Western Cape and North West.

Flue-cured leaf tobacco contributes more than 79% to total production, with the number of ha cultivated for flue-cured tobacco being about six times the land cultivated for air-cured leaf tobacco. The industry produces 15 000 t of tobacco a year.

There are 176 commercial tobacco growers in South Africa operating on some 5 000 ha of land and 155 small-scale tobacco farmers.

Tobacco farmers employ about 8 000 to 10 000 farmworkers; in addition, more than 35 000 dependants are also able to make a living in deep rural areas thanks to the tobacco industry.

More than 90% of tobacco used in South Africa goes toward the manufacturing of high-quality tobacco products.

Sugar

South Africa produces cost-competitive high-quality sugar. The sugar sector is a diverse industry, combining the agricultural activities of sugar-cane cultivation with the industrial factory production of raw and refined sugar, syrups and specialised sugars, as well as a range of by-products.

The South African sugar industry is cost-competitive, consistently ranking in the top 15 out of approximately 120 sugar producing countries worldwide. The industry makes a positive difference to the lives of more than a one million people and is a catalyst to economic growth and development. Sugarcane is a strategic crop for Kwazulu-Natal and Mpumalanga, where sugarcane production is located, comprising nearly 50% of field crop gross farming income across the two provinces.

Sugarcane is grown by approximately 24 000 registered growers, farming predominantly in KwaZulu-Natal with substantial operations in Mpumalanga, and some sugarcane production in the Eastern Cape. Employment within the industry is estimated at 429 000 people (direct and indirect) and the industry produces an average of approximately 2.2 million t of sugar per season.

About 75% of the sugar on average is marketed in the Southern African Customs Union (SACU) region. The remainder is exported to markets in Africa, Asia and the US.

Horticulture

Deciduous fruit

The deciduous fruit industry in South Africa, including fresh, dried and canned fruit for local consumption and export, is a multimillion-rand industry. The exporting of deciduous fruit is a major earner of foreign exchange for South Africa.

Deciduous fruits grown in South Africa include apples, pears, apricots, nectarines, peaches, plums, grapes, olives, figs and cherries.

Although some producers grow fruit both for processing (canning, juice and drying) as well as fresh consumption, it is estimated that in South Africa there are about 2 231 producers of fruit for fresh consumption, 1 066 producers of dry and table grapes, 924 producers of stone fruit and 618 producers of pome fruit.

The main deciduous fruit producing areas of South Africa are situated in the Western Cape and Eastern Cape, mostly in areas where warm, dry summers and cold winters prevail.

Dried fruit

Dried fruit is produced mainly in the western and southern parts of the Western Cape and the Lower and Upper Orange River areas in the Northern Cape. Tree fruit, as opposed to vine fruit, is dried mainly in the Western Cape.

The most important dried fruit products in terms of volume are Thompson seedless raisins, golden sultanas, unbleached sultanas, currants, peaches, pears, apricots and prunes.

Apricots are grown mainly in the Little Karoo and prunes are produced almost exclusively in the Tulbagh District in the Western Cape.

Most raisins are produced in the area along the Lower Orange River and currants are mainly from the Vredendal District in the Western Cape.

Honeybush and rooibos tea

Honeybush production is a young, growing industry that is unique to South Africa. Honeybush is part of the fynbos that grows wild in the Western Cape and is not produced anywhere else in the world. The plant grows naturally on the wetter and cooler southern slopes of mountains. Some species are mostly harvested in the wild, while others are cultivated commercially.

About 394 t of dry tea are harvested per annum. Most of the crop is exported to countries such as the Netherlands, Germany, the UK and the US.

Currently, 82% of honeybush tea is wild-harvested and only 18% cultivated. The cultivated tea comes from a few farmers who have established successful honey bush plantations, as well as a handful of community-based projects.

Rooibos tea is exclusively farmed in the Cederberg and Sandveld areas of the Western Cape.

On average, South Africa produces about 15 000 t of rooibos tea a year. According to the South African Rooibos Council (SARC), out of the 15 000 t of rooibos tea produced a year, 50% of it is consumed in South Africa.

In 2019, Stellenbosch University announced its ongoing study that will look to link the potential ingestion of rooibos with weight-loss, citing obesity as among the most-common causes of non-communicable diseases in South Africa. The university started its rooibos research in 2017, looking at the cardio-protective capacity of rooibos when it comes to helping the body cope with excessive blood glucose (type 2 diabetes being another major cause of non-communicable disease locally).

In 2019, the SARC invested R4.5 million into rooibos research. Because rooibos is a part of the legume family, it is naturally caffeine-free and contains a unique antioxidant, aspalathin, not found anywhere other than in rooibos – this flavonoid is particularly good at lowering blood glucose.

In 2014, South Africa won the right to secure geographical indicator status for rooibos tea. This enables rooibos tea growers to look for new markets in Asia and increase those that already exist.

ARC Infruitec-Nietvoorbij is responsible for managing nine genebanks. The genebanks include field collections of various deciduous tree fruit crops, grapevines, olives, indigenous flowers of the Proteaceae and honeybush, in vitro collections of yeasts, fungi and bacteria as well as some tree fruit and berry crops in medium term cold storage. The main purpose of the field genebanks is to conserve genetic diversity of fruits, grapes and indigenous crops, particularly in support of breeding programmes; the yeast collection contributes to oenological research; and the fungal and bacterial collections provide for research and diagnostics.

Wine

South Africa is the eighth-largest wine producer in the world, with a contribution of 4.1% to the world's wine production.

The area under wine grape vineyards is estimated at 94 545 ha.

The wine industry is labour intensive and provides employment to approximately 290 000 people directly and indirectly. The number of primary wine grape producers in South Africa is estimated at 3 029.

Wine is produced mainly in the Western Cape and along parts of the Orange River in the Northern Cape.

The traditional winegrowing areas along the coastal zone benefit from its cooling breezes that moderate the summer temperatures. The Cape mountain ranges form a backdrop to what is internationally recognised as one of the most beautiful wine producing areas of the world. The vineyards lie in valleys and mountain foothills in some areas, and in flatter plains in others. One of the potential competitive advantages of the Cape winelands is a great variety of soils.

Nietvoorbij, the internationally acclaimed research farm of the ARC, is synonymous with quality research in oenology and viticulture. Annually, 1 000 different wines (10 – 20 l) are made for research purposes in the modern experimental cellar. Next door, in the old, thatched roof cellar, traditional and modern winemaking methods are combined to create unique wines for enjoyment.

Citrus and subtropical fruit

South Africa ranks 13th in world citrus production and despite increased competition, its citrus exports are growing. The country is also the world's third largest exporter of fresh citrus fruit by volume, after Spain and Turkey.

In terms of gross value, the citrus industry is the third-largest horticultural industry after deciduous fruits and vegetables.

Citrus fruit is grown in Limpopo, Eastern Cape, Mpumalanga, Western Cape and KwaZulu-Natal in areas where subtropical conditions (warm to hot summers and mild winters) prevail.

The Western Cape and Eastern Cape are considered 'cooler' citrus growing areas and production is focused on Navel oranges and lemons. The cooler climate allows farmers to respond to consumer demand for easy peelers like clementines and satsumas. Farm sizes are also smaller and most citrus in the Western and Eastern Cape is packed by privatised cooperatives in facilities that are amongst the largest in the world.

In Mpumalanga, Limpopo and KwaZulu-Natal, the climate is warmer and better suited to the cultivation of grapefruit and Valencia oranges. Farms in these regions are larger and many farmers pack in smaller privately-owned facilities.

Pineapples are grown mainly in the Eastern Cape and northern KwaZulu-Natal.

Other subtropical crops such as avocados, mangoes, bananas, litchis, guavas, papayas, granadillas and macadamia and pecan nuts are produced mainly in Mpumalanga and Limpopo, as well as in the subtropical coastal areas of KwaZulu-Natal and the Eastern Cape.

The largest contributors to the sales of subtropical fruit on the major fresh produce markets are bananas, pineapples and avocados, followed by mangoes and papayas.

Vegetables (excluding potatoes)

Vegetables are produced in most parts of the country. However, in certain areas farmers tend to concentrate on specific crops, such as green beans that are grown mainly in Kaapmuiden,

The year 2020 has been internationally recognised as the International Year of Plant Health (IYPH) – a year to celebrate plant health under the slogan of "Protecting Plants, Protecting Life." South Africa joined countries around the world to celebrate plant health as part of recognising the importance of plants to human and animal health, environmental care and biodiversity; socio-economic, agriculture and rural development.

The IYPH 2020 celebration activities in South Africa have been premised on six key messages:

- Keep plants healthy to achieve Zero Hunger and the United Nations (UN) Sustainable Development Goals.
- Be careful when bringing plants and plant products across borders.
- Make trading in plants and plant products safe, by complying with international plant health standards.
- Keep plants healthy, while protecting the environment.
- Invest in plant-health capacity development, research and outreach.
- Strengthen monitoring and early warning systems to protect plants and plant health.

Marble Hall and Tzaneen, green peas in George and Vaalharts, and asparagus mainly in Krugersdorp and Ficksburg.

Tomatoes are produced countrywide, but on the largest scale in Limpopo, the Mpumalanga Lowveld and Middleveld, the Pongola area of KwaZulu-Natal, the southern parts of the Eastern Cape and the Western Cape. In Limpopo, South Africa's main tomato-growing area, most of the crops are found in Letaba, Mooketsi and Musina.

Onions are grown mainly in Mpumalanga, certain areas of the Western Cape and the southern Free State and in all areas of Limpopo, with the main production areas being Polokwane and Mokopane. Onions have an estimated planting area of 6 500 ha to 9 000 ha.

Cabbages are grown countrywide, but the largest crops are in Mpumalanga and the Camperdown and Greytown districts of KwaZulu-Natal.

Potatoes

There are 16 distinct potato-production regions in South Africa, which are spread throughout the country. The main regions are situated in the Free State, Western Cape, Limpopo and Mpumalanga.

Potatoes are planted at different times because of climate differences in the production areas, resulting in fresh potatoes being available throughout the year.

In the early 1990s, there was a major shift in production from dryland to irrigation and currently almost 80% of plantings are under irrigation.

Livestock

Animal production contributes approximately 48% to the country's agricultural output in terms of value. The national herd comprises various international dairy and beef cattle breeds as well as indigenous breeds such as the Afrikaner and the Nguni.

Approximately 80% of the agricultural land in South Africa is suitable mainly for extensive livestock farming. However, livestock is also found in areas where the animals are kept in combination with other farming enterprises.

Dairy farming

Although milk is produced in all the areas of South Africa, the coastal areas are the most suitable because of their mild temperatures and good rainfall conditions, which lead to improvements in animals and pasture conditions.

Milk production in South Africa contributes only about 0.4% to the world's milk production.

South Africa has four major dairy breeds, namely Holstein, Jersey, Guernsey and Ayrshire. The industry comprises various economic activities with significant differences in farming methods and the processing of dairy products, including the production and marketing of raw milk, pasteurised milk and cream, fermented milk, long-life milk and cream, yoghurt, and cheese and its by-products.

Beef cattle farming

Beef is produced throughout South Africa. The production of weaners for the feedlot industry is the main form of cattle farming – feedlots account for approximately 75% of all beef produced in the country.

Beef cattle contribute approximately 80% to the total number of cattle in the country, while dairy cattle make up the remaining 20%.

Small stock (sheep and goat) farming

Although sheep farms are found in all provinces, these are concentrated in the more arid parts of the country.

Flock sizes vary between less than 50 and 1 800 animals. Sheep flocks in the Eastern, Western and Northern Cape provinces tend to be much larger than those in the other provinces.

The animals are kept mainly for wool and mutton production and the industry is therefore represented by organisations from the mutton as well as the wool industry.

The sheep breed with the highest wool production per head is the South African Merino, followed by other dual-purpose Merino breeds, such as the Dohne Merino, South African Mutton Merino, Afrino and Letelle breeds. Dual-purpose breeds are bred with the specific aim of maximising wool and mutton produce.

Limited numbers of indigenous fat-tailed and Karakul sheep are still found in the more arid areas.

The indigenous meat-producing Boer goat accounts for about 40% of all goats in South Africa.

Almost all of South Africa's Angora goat (mohair) farmers are located in the Eastern Cape, where they farm with about one million goats.

South Africa produces approximately 53% of the world mohair clip. Through selective breeding and farming techniques, the Angora goat farmer plays a crucial role in promoting the constant availability of quality natural fibres.

Most of the world mohair production is imported to South Africa for further processing, after which it is exported together with locally (including Lesotho) produced mohair. China remains the leader in mohair imports from South Africa, followed by Italy and Taiwan.

Pig farming

The South African pork industry is small in terms of the overall South African agricultural sector. It contributes 2.2% to the primary agricultural sector.

The gross value of pork production is dependent on the quantity produced and the price farmers received. The trend in gross value follows a pattern of prices, because the industry is characterised by volatile prices.

Pork is produced throughout South Africa, with Gauteng and Western Cape being the largest producers, contributing to 40% and 21%, respectively, to total production. There are about 132 commercial, four stud and about 400 smallholder pig farmers. They own about 120 000 sows (100 000 commercial and 10 000 smallholder sows) and employ about 3 005 workers, comprising about 2 200 farm workers and 805 workers in the abattoir sectors. The 145 registered pig abattoirs use modern technology to ensure a streamlined slaughtering process.

Poultry farming

The poultry industry (including meat and eggs) continues to dominate the agricultural sector in South Africa as the main supplier of protein in kilogramme terms to the South African consumer, as more poultry products are consumed per year than all other animal protein sources combined.

The consumption of poultry meat accounts to about 60% of total meat consumption (beef, mutton, goat, pork and poultry).

The distribution of broiler birds per province is as follows: North West (22.0%), Mpumalanga (20.7%), Northern and Western Cape (19.5%), Free State (12.1%), Gauteng (9.9%), Eastern Cape (6.7%), KwaZulu-Natal (6.6%) and Limpopo (2.5%).

Hunting and wildlife sector

Hunting can be divided into trophy hunting and meat hunting. South Africa is a popular hunting destination for international hunters that may want to take a trophy of their hunting experience home as memorabilia.

Local hunters, often referred to as biltong hunters, hunt for their own use as an alternative protein source, which also contributes to food security.

The five most popular hunting provinces are Limpopo, Northern Cape, Eastern Cape, North West and Free State. The five most popular species among biltong hunters are springbok, impala, blesbuck, blue wildebeest and kudu.

Hunting primarily occurs in rural and remote rural areas. Limpopo, North West and the Eastern Cape are prime hunting destinations that generate employment for the unskilled workforce where other viable land-use options are often limited.

The hunting sector in South Africa is represented by various voluntary associations and organisations that serve in the interest of both consumptive and professional hunters. The Confederation of Hunting Associations of South Africa is a federation of over 25 hunting, hunting-related and shooting affiliates across South Africa. The SA Hunters and Game Conservation Association is the biggest representative body for hunters in South Africa.

SA Hunters and other hunting associations in South Africa have taken the lead in the wildlife economy by advocating and practising responsible, sustainable hunting as the most effective wildlife management mechanism that supports the game ranching sector in the country.

Programmes and projects

Regulatory services

As a result of an increase in trade in regulated agricultural products, illegal import or export of products poses the risk of introducing a range of diseases and pests.

The DALRRD's regulatory activities include the inspection of plants, animals and their products to prevent the introduction and distribution of quarantine pests and diseases and ensuring that exported animals, plants and their products are free from quarantine pests and diseases.

The DALRRD also ensures compliance with agricultural legislation by conducting inspections at designated ports of entry.

Plants and plant products are inspected for compliance with plant health, genetic resources and food and quality-assurance legislation. The DALRRD conducts surveillance for regulated pests and/or national pests of concern throughout the country.

The Pest Risk Analysis Division conducts scientific analysis of risks posed based on scientific data. Risks associated with the importation of plant propagation material are managed by prescribing a compulsory predetermined quarantine detention period for specific high-risk categories.

To prevent the introduction of harmful exotic plant pests, all imported plant material is tested and audited. The DALRRD renders diagnostic services to ensure that all imported and exported products comply with international standards.

Closely linked to early detection is the implementation of proper pest-awareness programmes to keep the agricultural sector and the general public informed.

Through its Import/Export Protocols Division, the department ensures and maintains market access for South African plants and plant products. This includes exchanging plant health information and expertise in terms of bilateral engagements and maintaining bilateral export/import programmes.

Despite having maintained the country's lucrative fruit export markets, production and exports are still under threat. Accordingly, imports of host fruit from countries where pests have been established must be appropriately managed. This emphasises the importance of border control and risk management responsibilities.

Over the medium term, the DALRRD expects to receive an additional allocation to address biosecurity issues at South Africa's 16 land border posts, acquire two additional plant quarantine stations and two additional animal quarantine stations, strengthen pest surveillance and control and inspection and laboratory services.

The National Surveillance programme for Quarantine Fruit Flies continues. The invasive oriental fruit fly (Bactrocera dorsalis, previously known as Bacrocera invadens) occurs in Limpopo, Mpumalanga, North West, Gauteng and KwaZulu-Natal where it is under official control.

Through the ongoing surveillance programme, it was also detected in the Western Cape. In line with the applicable regulations, the necessary regulatory measures were instituted to quarantine the area. This detection in the Western Cape is of particular concern in light of the important contribution of the deciduous fruit industry to the agricultural sector. This surveillance programme is continuing.

South Africa is an active member of the World Organisation for Animal Health. Disease reports are received from the organisation, and through direct contact with veterinary administrations in exporting countries.

The Directorate: Animal Health works to curb outbreaks of diseases such as highly pathogenic avian influenza, foot-and-mouth disease, and African horse sickness. The department is working with the equine industry on protective measures for

horses, in the African horse sickness infected zone, in order to reduce the severity of outbreaks.

Trade in animals and animal products are regulated to prevent the entry of diseases.

Information for international travellers

Pests and invasive species are not only introduced through formal trade, but are also brought into South Africa by tourists.

Once a pest has entered South Africa, climate change may influence its establishment and spread, as well as the damage it causes.

When travelling to South Africa, tourists should make sure that they do not bring in prohibited agricultural products. These products may harbour pests that occur in other countries and their introduction may endanger South Africa's competitiveness in trade and agricultural productivity.

Animals and animal products such as meat and dairy products, plants and plant products, honey and honey products as well as other regulated goods, are all potentially high-risk materials. These materials may only be imported into South Africa by means of an import permit, unless exempted, and must be declared with the DALRRD inspectors for inspection at ports of entry before entering South Africa. Inspectors from the department conduct luggage and consignment inspections at the ports of entry with the help of sniffer dogs to ensure compliance with the import permit requirements.

Prohibited products will either be confiscated, destroyed or returned to the country of export and those found carrying them may face a fine of up to R20 000 or imprisonment.

Food import and export standards

Internationally, standards for food imports and exports are harmonised through various international standard-setting bodies subscribed to under the World Trade Organisation, to which South Africa is a signatory. This includes the Sanitary and Phytosanitary Measurements Agreement, the World Organisation for Animal Health, Codex Alimentarius Commission and the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change. These requirements aim to protect consumer rights, the environment, animal life and public health.

Through its Directorate: Food Import and Export Standards, the DALRRD collates information regarding the standards for sanitary and phytosanitary measures applicable to trade in animal and plant products. The department also coordinates promotion and awareness programmes addressing cross-cutting standards and legislative requirements for food safety, quality, and plant and animal health.

The DALRRD and the PPECB work closely to assist South Africans to export their products successfully in a highly competitive global arena.

Food safety and quality assurance

The Directorate: Food Safety and Quality Assurance (D: FSQA) is responsible for the development of regulations, standards and requirements regarding control of the export of agricultural products of plant and animal origin under the Agricultural Product Standards Act of 1990 and to control the production, sale, import and export of certain alcoholic products in terms of the Liquor Products Act,1989 (Act 60 of 1989).

These standards and regulations are harmonised with various international standard-setting bodies such as the Codex Alimentarius Commission, the Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development, UN Economic Commission for Europe, and the International Dairy Federation.

South African products can compete on an equal footing with overseas products and can also be marketed more competitively.

The Agricultural Product Standards Act of 1990 makes provision for the appointment of assignees to undertake inspections at the point of sale, manufacture, packing or export to ensure that the set standards and requirements are complied with.

The following assignees are currently appointed:

- the PPECB conducts quality inspection and food safety services under the Agricultural Products Standards Act of 1990 for regulated agricultural products intended for export;
- the Nejahmogul Technologies and Agric Services (Pty) Ltd conducts quality inspection for dairy and related products on the local market;
- the Agency for Food Safety conducts inspection for regulated animal products (poultry meat and eggs) on the local market;
- Impumelelo Agribusiness (Pty) Ltd conducts quality inspections on processed products on the local market;
- Leaf Services conducts quality inspections on grain and grain products on the local market;
- Product Control of South Africa conducts quality inspections of fresh fruit and vegetables; and
- the South African Meat Industry Company conducts inspections of meat carcasses on the local market.

National Analytical Services (NAS)

The NAS laboratories reside under the D: FSQA. There are two in-house laboratories within NAS – one situated in Stellenbosch and the other in Pretoria.

The laboratories provide and coordinate the analysis of certain agricultural products (fresh fruit and vegetables, grains, wines and spirits, dairy products and processed food) in support of the enforcement of the food safety and quality standards and requirements as laid down in the Agricultural Product Standards Act of 1990 and the Liquor Products Act of 1989.

Disaster and risk management

The National Agricultural Disaster Risk Management Committee provides strategic guidance on policy and advises the government on issues relating to agricultural disaster risk management. The committee comprises members from provincial departments of agriculture, organised agriculture such as NAFU SA, Agri SA, TAU SA and the ARC and relevant directorates within the DALRRD.

The established National Drought Task Team, chaired by the DALRRD, advises the National Disaster Management Advisory Forum on drought management. The task team comprises provincial disaster management centres, organised agriculture, and relevant directorates within the department.

The DALRRD frequently responds to hazards such as droughts, veld fires, floods and outbreaks of pests and disease, which includes the control of migratory pests such as locusts and quelea. It is also responsible for the control of blackfly.

International cooperation

The DALRRD maintains a number of trade agreements, including with the EU and the US (AGOA).

Under AGOA, the agricultural sector has advantages for the exports of citrus, macadamia nuts, wine and other food products to the US.

The DALRRD has continued to open new markets. A notable recent achievement is the Indonesian government's recognition of the competence of South Africa's food safety control measures. This comes after a protracted negotiation process between the technical teams of the two countries, which eventually led to the opening of the Indonesian market to South African exporters.

The recognition was granted in respect of 15 commodities, including deciduous fruit, citrus, grapes and nuts. South African exporters will be allowed to use the port of Jakarta, Tanjung Priok, which is closer to the main Jakarta market, therefore reducing transport costs and preventing quality loss.

The DALRRD has identified that for South Africa to trade on a common footing with the global economy, it needs to migrate from the current paper-based certification and permit system. In this regard, the South African Revenue Service has pledged technical support to the department towards the development of an internationally recognised and interphase ready import and export system, at a projected cost of R80 million over the medium term.

Weather and climate

Climate change

The agricultural sector in South Africa faces considerable impact from climate change, which affects the livelihoods of most people, especially those who are vulnerable to food insecurity.

South Africa responds to international obligations regarding climate through various government departments.

The Climate Change programme implemented by the DALRRD includes programmes on raising awareness, policy development, the development of sector mitigation and adaptation plans, conducting vulnerability assessments countrywide, and identifying and coordinating climate-related research projects.

The Climate Change Adaptation and Mitigation Plan outlines useful mitigation and adaptation options promoting soil, water and nutrient conservation for agricultural production.

The DALRRD's Crop Suitability programme is aimed at promoting best adaptation management practices and enhancing adaptive capacity and resilience of the agricultural systems to minimise the risk of the negative impacts of climate change as drastic increases in temperature have a negative impact on crop growth and crop yields.

South Africa is a full member of the Global Research Alliance which, among other objectives, aims to enhance collaborative research into reducing agricultural emissions and increasing support and resourcing for agricultural emissions research.

South Africa has already been involved in stock takes and regional workshops run by the Livestock Research Group, and newer areas of interest include topics such as greenhouse gas inventories

Early warning unit

The increasing risk of disaster is reduced by strengthening early warning systems and disseminating early warnings, as well as raising awareness through campaigns. This helps to build resilient farming communities.

The DALRRD has, therefore, developed and implemented an Early Warning System (EWS) that disseminates extreme weather warnings to farming communities. The EWS communicates monthly advisories and daily extreme weather warnings, in support of reducing disaster risk.

The implementation of the EWS is continuously monitored and evaluated to identify and address gaps in the system. National Agro-Meteorological Committee meetings are held quarterly.

Other risk reduction activities include continuous research to identify areas and measures in addressing and improving disaster risk management, including awareness campaigns and education and training so as to strengthen disaster risk management. In addition, the DALRRD continues to encourage integration of disaster risk management into all departmental programmes and projects.

The DALRRD also encourages the strengthening of EWSs by all relevant role players to be prioritised and creation of disaster units in provinces.

Sustainable resource management and use

The DALRRD and the ARC's Institute for Soil, Climate and Water have developed an inventory of soils, terrain forms and climate (land types). The National Land Type Survey, available for use at a 1:250 000 scale, aims to assist and guide land-use planning and decision-making at national level.

All available natural-resource spatial information and other required data sets, including the latest Spot-5 satellite imagery and agricultural information, are found on the internet-based Agricultural Geo-Referenced Information System (Agis). Using interactive web-based applications, Agis provides access to spatial information, industry-specific information and decision-support tools.

The Advanced Fire Information System tracks all fire outbreaks in the SADC region through the use of Moderate-Resolution Imaging Spectroradiometer satellite imagery. The information may be viewed at *afis.meraka.org.za*.

Soil degradation

Soil degradation is largely related to the decline in organic soil matter. Monoculture cereal production, intensive tillage, short-term fallow periods and limited crop rotation have contributed to this in the commercial sector.

Excessive fuel-wood collection, inappropriate land use, population density and overgrazing are the main causes of soil degradation in communal areas. In addition, it is estimated that about 60% of the cropland area is moderately to severely acidic, and probably at least 15% is affected by subsoil acidity.

It is calculated that 1.5 million ha (around 1% of the land surface) have a high to extremely high erosion risk. More than 11 million ha (9%) are classified as having a moderate erosion risk, and 17% as low to very low risk.

It is estimated that 25% of South Africa is covered by soils that are also potentially highly susceptible to wind erosion. These include the sandy soils in the western half of the "maize quadrangle" in the North West and the north-western Free State – the areas that produce 75% of the country's maize.

South African soils are also extremely prone to serious soil compaction, particularly under intensive mechanised cultivated agriculture, in both dryland and irrigated land. It is a problem throughout the country and much more widespread and serious than the global norm.

Human-induced soil acidification is a major problem. Its effect is severe since it impacts on the country's scarce, arable land, especially the limited high-potential agricultural land. Soil-fertility degradation is a concern.

In commercial agriculture, there has been capital-building of some nutrients, especially phosphorus and zinc. In some cases, phosphorus has built up to excessive levels, where it starts to reduce crop yields.

Genetically modified (GM) organisms

GM provides a way to meet the growing demand for food without placing greater pressure on scarce resources.

South Africa has commercialised three different GM crops, namely maize, cotton and soya beans.

The country is also the ninth-largest producer of genetically modified crops in the world and remains the pioneer for the adoption of genetically modified crops. This is aligned to Section 24 of the Constitution, which advocates for sustainable use of biodiversity.

LandCare

The National LandCare programme is a government-supported community-based initiative, which is active throughout the country. Driven by both the public and private sectors through partnerships and cooperation, it seeks to:

- conserve natural resources;
- use them in a sustainable way;
- create a conservation ethic through education and awareness; and
- create jobs and address poverty by launching various natural resource rehabilitation, improvement and conservation projects.

Serious concerns about land and water degradation are identified in each province and specific projects address these issues. Projects have been implemented in all nine provinces through the LandCare Conditional Grant, whereby ring-fenced funding is transferred to provinces.

Four subprogrammes, namely WaterCare, VeldCare, SoilCare and JuniorCare, are all part of the LandCare programme.

The LandCare programme is aligned with government's broader objective of job creation. The temporary jobs created under the programme are funded through the Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP). The LandCare programme adheres to the target of 55% women, 40% youth and 2% people with disabilities as specified by the EPWP.

Funding for these projects is transferred quarterly to the respective provincial departments as implementing agents, as conditional grants under the Division of Revenue Act, 2013 (Act 2 of 2013). Assessment and reporting requirements are specified in the Act, as well as by the EPWP. The provincial departments use the reporting tools provided by the EPWP to report on the number of jobs created.

Additional monthly, quarterly and annual reports are forwarded by the provincial departments to the DALRRD to monitor performance and the impact of the programme on the state of the natural agricultural resources.

Extension and advisory services

The National Policy on Extension and Advisory Services for the agricultural sector recognises and calls for the involvement of a wide array of stakeholders involved in the delivery of extension and advisory services through a pluralistic and integrated approach.

The implementation process of the National Policy on Extension and Advisory Services implementation commenced with the establishment of the Provincial Extension Coordinating Forum (PECF). The PECF is operational in all provinces and meetings are held on a quarterly basis. The DALRRD provides support to the PECF to ensure provincial integrated service delivery.

Since the implementation of the Extension Recovery programme in 2008/09, the number of extension officers has increased from 2 210 to the current 3 200.

The DALRRD targets deploying 20 extension practitioners to commodity organisations per financial year.

The intention was to deploy 100 extension practitioners by 2019/20, to ensure that they acquire skills and gain experience of a specific commodity value chain.

Training

The agricultural sector boasts state-of-the-art training and research facilities.

South Africa has a number of regular schools offering a range of agricultural subjects as well as specialised agricultural high schools such as Bekker High School in North West, Harry Oppenheimer Agricultural High School in Limpopo and Boland Agricultural High School in the Western Cape.

Prospective farmers and technicians are trained at the country's colleges of agriculture such as Grootfontein Agricultural Development Institute in the Eastern Cape, Cedara College of Agriculture in KwaZulu-Natal and Madzivhandila College of Agriculture in Limpopo.

On average, each college admits 400 full-time students and trains 1 000 farmers annually. This relates to close to 1 000 potential entrant farmers and over 10 000 skills trainings per year.

In September 2020, Cabinet approved the establishment of agricultural colleges as the competency of higher education colleges in terms of the Higher Education Act, 1997 (Act 101 of 1997), as amended.

The agricultural colleges, which are currently under the DALRRD, provide programmes that are aligned to higher education qualifications, including skills training and vocational programmes. The relocation of these colleges to the Department of Higher Education and Training will align them to the prescribed Higher Education Act of 1997 and improve their governance and management.

Universities, some with designated faculties of agriculture, offer degree courses. Veterinary surgeons are trained at the University of Pretoria's Faculty of Veterinary Sciences at Onderstepoort.

This training potential is coupled with productive and robust research capacity in terms of scientists and researchers based at various organisations who are world leaders in their respective fields of agricultural research.

Research and innovation

It is only through proper research that the country can be able to increase productivity, come up with disease resistant plants and animals, and alleviate the impact of climate change.

The ARC, several universities and various private-sector organisations, as well as some provincial departments of agriculture, which are responsible for technological development and transfer aimed at improving managerial efficiency on farms, conduct agricultural research.

Through the Agricultural Science, Technology and Innovation Activities Coordination Committee, the DALRRD engages with the DSI on joint issues of national importance within the National System of Innovation.

The research unit is also involved in the development and implementation of national research policies and strategies, such as the National Agricultural Research and Development Strategy. This encompasses the national priority-setting process, developing guidelines, administering a national research and technology fund and overall monitoring and evaluation.

The National Agricultural Research Forum (NARF) provides a platform for stakeholder consultations on research and development while the Government Agricultural Research and Development Action Group provides a platform for government and state-owned entities to plan research and technology development within the national agricultural research system.

The NARF facilitates consensus and makes recommendations to government on the coordination of research, development and transfer of technology to enhance national economic growth, social welfare and environmental sustainability.

Policy research support

The Directorate: Policy Research Support coordinates all agricultural research and development activities. The mandate on policies extends beyond policies and strategies in research but covers the entire sector related policies.

The Policy Research Support Unit is responsible for ensuring that available sector policies are aligned to government protocols, which is conducted by subjecting available policies to the objectives of the main government policies, such as the NDP, to ensure that sector policies address government's priorities.

The unit is also responsible for conducting the review of sector policies for alignment with the NDP.

Animal identification

Any owner of cattle, sheep, goats or pigs, is compelled by law to mark their livestock. The registered mark is put on the National Register of Animal Identification System. This register is available to the SAPS to help it trace individual animals in cases of stock theft.

However, this can only be implemented successfully if all cattle, goats, pigs and sheep are marked in accordance with the Animal Identification Act, 2002 (Act 6 of 2002).

Pest control

The South African Pest Control Association (SAPCA) is the official representative of the pest, termite and woodborer-control industries. All SAPCA-qualified inspectors have to register with the DALRRD.

South Africa regularly liaises with other countries and international organisations to ensure the transfer of pest-control technology.

To respond comprehensively to the management of regulated plant pests and diseases, the DALRRD, in close collaboration with the South African fruit industries, has developed an early warning surveillance programme for the quarantine of fruit flies. The technical forum continues to identify, prioritise and manage quarantine pest risks such as the African invader fruit fly.

In the global trade of food and food products, veterinary public health and food safety aspects in relation to animal products received increasing attention.

Food security

To address the challenges of households vulnerable to poverty, inequality, unemployment and persons with inadequate or severely inadequate access to food, the DALRRD has prioritised food and nutrition security, including agrarian transformation.

In 2013, Cabinet approved the National Policy on Food and Nutrition Security, the Household Food and Nutrition Security Strategy and the Fetsa Tlala Integrated Food Production Initiative. These policy frameworks are intended to streamline, harmonise and integrate the diverse food and nutrition security interventions in South Africa.

The strategic objective of the National Policy on Food and Nutrition Security is to ensure the availability, accessibility and affordability of safe and nutritious food at national and household levels.

The National Food and Nutrition Security Plan (NFNSP) 2017 – 2022 embodies a collective response of government to the challenges of food insecurity and malnutrition in the country. It reflects a common vision across government departments and entails a unified set of national goals and objectives, indicators and targets for monitoring progress, as well as a common budget for implementation of activities.

It enables the country to address problems such as hunger, malnutrition and micronutrient deficiencies that affect physical growth and cognitive development, especially among children, as directed by the NDP 2030.

The goal of the NFNSP is to implement a priority set of actions and establish the necessary institutional architecture to lead, coordinate, budget and monitor the implementation of these actions to deliver significant improvements in food and nutrition status by 2030.

The NFNSP actions are guided by six strategic objectives which were derived from a consultative process aimed at establishing a governance and leadership system; to review current policies and strategies; reform the current duplicated and uncoordinated delivery of food and nutrition security (FNS) interventions and to ensure the implementation of strategic and comprehensive FNS initiatives in a coordinated manner.

It also took into account the recommendations from Cabinet; the Policy on FNS, and the diagnostic/implementation evaluation of nutrition interventions for children from conception to five years, which compared South Africa to Brazil, Colombia, Malaysia, Malawi and Mozambique.

The DALRRD also worked with the private sector to develop the Agricultural Policy Action Plan (APAP), which plans to bring one million ha of underused land into full production over the next few years.

Through the APAP, the DALRRD aims to bring more smallholders into the mainstream as envisaged in the NDP.

However, the effective participation of the previously excluded black majority in agriculture and food production will only occur meaningfully, when they have access to land and the means to work it.

An inclusive and scientific process will be used to assess the situation in terms of land capability for different commodities and in different localities, so as to inform land acquisition and allocation for different categories of producers across the country.

Smallholder development

In support of food security, the DALRRD has persistently strengthened its support for smallholder producers and continues to do so with the involvement of both internal and external partners.

These producers are supported in various ways, among others, by providing production inputs, training and advisory services, as well as access to finance and credit through the MAFISA, CASP and Ilima/Letsema. These interventions have increased their competitive edge towards becoming sustainable producers to provide products to markets. Through the Fetsa Tlala initiative, the DALRRD's strategic objective is to use one million ha of land in rural areas for the production of crops.

A web-based platform of the supported small-holder producers was being developed to ensure proper data and updates on all smallholder activities. The implementation of the approved Strategic Plan for Smallholder Support is on track with support funding received from the department of Trade and Industry's Employment Creation Fund.

With all conditions favourable, the agriculture and agro-processing value chain had the potential to increase the number of smallholders from 171 670 in 2013 to 471 670 in 2019; increase the value added of the sectors from R42.5 billion in 2012 to R48.9 billion in 2019 (or 2% real growth per year); real increase in the value of net exports from an annual average of R5.1 billion in 2012 to R5.8 billion in 2019 (or 2% real growth per year); decrease in the value of diesel, fertiliser and machinery imports from an annual average of R9.6 billion in 2012 to R7.4 billion in 2019 (or 3% real decline per year) and increase the number of jobs in the sector from 660 000 in 2012 to a potential one million jobs by 2030.

The intensification of the Revitalisation of the Agriculture and Agro-Processing Value Chain (RAAVC) focused on the following crucial areas, namely:

- implementing the Agri-parks — expanding infrastructure support to 44 Agri-hubs and 88 farmer production support units; implementing the APAP with special focus on the production of high-value crops. R3.2 billion will be spent on projects and 11 082 jobs created;
- collaborating with private sector partners to advance the Fetsa Tlala and the One Family, One Hectare initiatives;
- increasing market access for smallholders through the implementation of programmes such as South African Good Agricultural Practice (SA-GAP) and increasing intra-African trade and other global trade opportunities; and
- continuing implementation of the Aquaculture Lab where 40 projects were planned to be registered under Operation Phakisa. The Aquaculture Bill would provide a legislative framework for the sector development. It was envisaged that aquaculture production would increase to 20 000 t, with 2 500 direct new jobs and 15 000 jobs in the value chain by 2019, and an additional investment of R500 million.

To ensure mechanisation support to smallholder producers, the National Mechanisation Policy creates a favourable regulatory environment in which government will continue to make agricultural machinery such as tractors available to smallholder producers to ensure the optimal production of food.

An innovation of which the DALRRD is particularly proud is the drought tolerant maize cultivar. Results indicate that farmers who planted the new maize cultivar experienced on average 50% increased yields when compared to conventional varieties available on the market. The department, therefore, has to ensure that sufficient seed is available for farmers.

Public entities, the ARC and the NAMC in particular, have been actively involved in the development of the APAP/RAAVC. The research and databases from the ARC's Soil Testing Laboratories were used in its spatial analysis and maps to determine which commodities can be produced in which places.

These maps have been overlaid with the mapping by the DALRRD following its land audit.

The NAMC also supported the APAP/RAAVC with economic analysis and their expertise in value chain mapping. The NAMC is also the coordinator for the Strategic Infrastructure Project 11, which pertains to agrologistics and rural infrastructure.

The PPECB has committed to expand the number of smallholder farmers with the SA-GAP Certification programme. The organisation is also working with the OBP to secure adequate funding to ramp up vaccine production.

The DALRRD together with the Eastern Cape Department of Rural Development and Agrarian Reform has invested R40 million of CASP funds since 2006 to establish 300 ha of macadamia nuts in the Ncera area of the Eastern Cape.

This is a private, public partnership with landowners, the community and private companies. A total of 180 ha of macadamia nuts have been planted with 80 ha harvested for the export market, creating 110 permanent jobs. This project has turned the tide of unemployment, unskilled communities and poverty. It created a vibrant society with better prospects for the future.

This macadamia development programme will be further expanded in the Eastern Cape, KwaZulu-Natal, Mpumalanga and Limpopo, focusing on growing the participation of black producers in this industry.

Agricultural census

To ensure focused support to smallholder producers, the DALRRD began working with Statistics South Africa (Stats SA) in 2018 to conduct an agricultural census. The technical team comprised of the DALRRD and Stats SA officials.

A Memorandum of Understanding was compiled to undertake this intervention. The focus was to approach the census in two phases. The first phase focussed on the census to cover commercial agriculture at enterprise level. This area of work was managed by Stats SA.

The second phase is envisaged to be done over two financial years of 2019/20 and 2020/21. Stats SA will provide technical support and advice to support the DALRRD with the development and implementation of the Farmer Register to cover smallholder and subsistence producers.

Female Entrepreneur Awards

The 20th annual Female Entrepreneur Awards were held in Cape Town on 29 August 2019. The awards programme is a joint venture between the provincial departments of agriculture and key partners in the sector. They honour female farmers, recognise their role in the sector and their entrepreneurial skills in the mainstream agriculture, forestry and fisheries. The major thrust of the programme is to underline the fact that women play a significant role in food security, job creation, economic growth and poverty alleviation.

The awards were held under the theme; "Celebrating two decades of women's victory in agriculture, forestry and fisheries".

The 2019 winners were:

- Best Female Worker – Katrina Nxangani (Free State);
- Best Subsistence Producer – Tholakele Sibiya (KwaZulu-Natal);
- Top Entrepreneur (Smallholder) – Happiness Makgamatho (Limpopo);
- Top Entrepreneur (Processing) – Daphne Neethling (Western Cape);
- Top Entrepreneur (Export Markets) – Berene Damons (Western Cape);
- The Minister's Special Award for Young Female Entrepreneur – Marice Mercuur (Western Cape);
- The Minister's Special Award for Female Entrepreneur with a Disability – Matebogo Mouwane (Gauteng); and
- Top Entrepreneur (Commercial) and overall winner based on the highest scoring points – Mmathoko Mabula (Limpopo).

World Food Day

South Africa joins the world in marking World Food Day on 16 October every year to highlight the plight of millions of undernourished people in the world. World Food Day is commemorated annually around the world in remembrance of the founding of the Food and Agriculture Organisation of the UN in 1945.

In South Africa, October has been declared Food Security Month. The objective of Food Security Month is to create a platform for heightening public awareness on issues pertaining to food security in the country.

The theme for World Food Day 2019 was "Our Actions Are Our Future. Healthy Diets for A #ZeroHunger World". It focused on tackling global hunger.

Regional and international cooperation and trade

Regional cooperation

South Africa has strong and mutually dependent economic links with countries in southern Africa through the SADC and SACU regions.

As a contribution to the African regional development, the DALRRD continues to implement South Africa's foreign policy objectives, through the facilitation of SADC and African Union engagements and implementation of the South-South Cooperation.

The International Relations Strategy is an instrument put into place to interact with various sector stakeholders at regional and international level in support of producers to access international markets.

Regional trade

South Africa, as a member of the SACU and a signatory of the SADC Treaty, is committed to sharing its objectives with other nations in the region. SACU opened its markets to the countries of the SADC region by implementing its tariff reduction commitments under the SADC Trade Protocol.

The signatories to the SADC Trade Protocol are: Botswana, Lesotho, Madagascar, Malawi, Mauritius, Mozambique, Namibia, the Seychelles, Eswatini, Tanzania, Zambia and Zimbabwe. Angola and the Democratic Republic of Congo are still in the process of acceding to the protocol.

The first objective of the trade protocol is to remove both tariff and non-tariff barriers to trade between SADC countries.

The SADC has set up an electronic reporting system for non-tariff barriers, in which the DALRRD is involved as a contact point to receive traders' complaints.

The South African agriculture products continue to benefit from the Tripartite Free Trade Area agreement of the SADC, Common Market for Eastern and Southern Africa and the East African Community.

Rural Development

Rural Development creates and maintains an equitable and sustainable land dispensation, and acts as a catalyst in rural development, to ensure sustainable rural livelihoods, decent work and continued social and economic advancement for all South Africans.

Geospatial and cadastral services

The national geospatial information component is responsible for the national control survey network, the national mapping and aerial imagery programmes and the provision of geospatial information services.

This component offers map literacy and map awareness training for adults, and support to educators and learners to promote the use of geospatial information – focusing mainly on rural communities.

Aerial imagery is a significant source of geospatial information and a record of the land at a given time. National geospatial information acquires aerial imagery annually. Selected Comprehensive Rural Development programme sites have been prioritised.

The branch also assists with creating orderly and sustainable rural settlements by ensuring alignment and harmonisation of rural development plans with existing planning frameworks, including provincial growth and development strategies and integrated development plans.

The DALRRD has considered the adverse effect that disasters have on rural areas and the lives of rural people, and included in its strategy a disaster management component, which, together with other sector departments, will coordinate responses to rural disasters.

The Braille atlas for the visually impaired is a first in South Africa and is primarily intended to give visually impaired people access to geospatial information.

Programmes

Rural Development

The aim of this programme is to catalyse, initiate, facilitate and coordinate the implementation of a comprehensive rural development programme, leading to sustainable and vibrant rural communities. Its subprogrammes include:

- the Rural Infrastructure Development programme, which facilitates improved access to social and economic infrastructure and provides opportunities to generate income through improved infrastructure in rural areas;
- the Rural Enterprise and Industrial Development programme, which creates an enabling institutional environment for sustainable rural development and provides for social and economic development and sustainable livelihoods in rural communities. Its functions are based on the social mobilisation of communities to ensure that rural communities take ownership of development projects and programmes; establish development forums and partnerships; increase food security; promote youth development and social organisation; create jobs through cooperatives; and develop rural enterprises and industries; and
- the National Rural Youth Service Corps programme, which trains rural youth in skills sectors such as administration, agriculture, construction, education, engineering, health and safety, hospitality, renewable energy and transport to match the economic priorities of the communities and provinces from which they were recruited.

Restitution

The purpose of the programme is to settle land restitution claims under the Restitution of Land Rights Act of 1994 and provide settlement support to beneficiaries. It facilitates the restoration of land rights and alternative forms of equitable redress through conducting research and finalising claims.

The Restitution National Office provides administrative and professional support to the Commission on Restitution of Land Rights for processing and investigating restitution claims, develops and coordinates restitution policy, and oversees court cases. The Restitution Regional Offices subprogramme is responsible for the research, validation, verification and negotiation of settlements, and provides administrative support services for the settlement of claims.

The Restitution grants redress restitution claims by restoring land or providing alternative land, provides financial compensation and alternative relief, offers settlement planning and facilitation assistance and contributes funds to the resettlement of communities.

Land Reform

The principles which underpin the new approach to sustainable land reform are:

- de-racialisation of the rural economy;
- democratic and equitable land allocation and use across gender, race and class; and
- strict production discipline for guaranteed national food security.

Its subprogrammes include:

- the Land Redistribution and Development programme, which is responsible for the implementation of the One Household, One Hectare initiative, the recapitalisation and development of existing projects, and the DALRRD's proactive strategy to acquire land;
- the Land Tenure and Administration programme, which provides functional systems and institutional arrangements for tenure and land administration to enable agrarian reform in all provinces;
- the Land Reform grants, which provides funding for project and programme planning, land acquisition and settlement; and allows the DALRRD to maintain, plan, develop or improve property;
- the KwaZulu-Natal Ingonyama Trust Board, which provides quarterly transfers for administering land owned by the Ingonyama Trust;
- the Agricultural Land Holding Account, which is responsible for buying and holding land until suitable beneficiaries are identified in terms of the Provisions of Land and Assistance Act of 1993; and
- the Office of the Valuer-General, which is responsible for providing land valuations of land earmarked for land reform and land restitution purposes.

Deeds registration

The core responsibility of South Africa's deeds registries is to:

- register real rights in land;
- maintain a public land register;
- provide registration information; and
- maintain an archive of registration records.

There are deeds registries in Bloemfontein, Cape Town, Johannesburg, Kimberley, King William's Town, Mthatha, Nelspruit, Pietermaritzburg, Pretoria and Vryburg.

These offices register deeds and documents relating to real rights in more than eight million registered land parcels consisting of township erven, farms, agricultural holdings, sectional title units and sectional title exclusive-use areas in terms of the Deeds Registries Act, 1937 (Act 47 of 1973), and the Sectional Titles Act, 1986 (Act 95 of 1986).

The Deeds Registry is open to any member of the public to access information regarding:

- the registered owner of a property;
- the conditions affecting such property;
- interdicts and contracts in respect of the property;
- the purchase price of the property;
- rules of a sectional title scheme;
- a copy of an antenuptial contract, deeds of servitude and mortgage bonds;
- a copy of a sectional title plan;
- township-establishment conditions; and
- information relating to a property or deed.

Deeds registration has progressively introduced the e-Cadastre project, which is aimed at improving cadastral surveys management and deeds registration as well as the consolidation of data stores.

The e-Cadastre project enterprise architecture investigation, which is aimed at consolidating cadastral surveys and deeds registration data stores, has been concluded. Digital scanning of the microfilm records is ongoing.

Commission on the Restitution of Land Rights

The Restitution of Land Rights Act of 1994 created the Commission on the Restitution of Land Rights under a chief land claims commissioner and seven regional commissioners. In addition, the Act established the Land Claims Court to address land claims and other land-related issues though later amendments enabled an administrative process of settling claims with court referrals only in cases of dispute.

The DALRRD is authorised to administer the Act, including by negotiating on behalf of the State, acting as a respondent before

the court, and managing the implementation and finances of the restitution process. Legally, all land claims are against the State and not against past or current landowners.

Consultants are extensively used as part of the pre-settlement of claims, and is a major cost driver in the restitution programme.

Agri-Parks

The agri-parks initiative supports rural enterprises, develops rural industries and facilitates the efficient movement of rural produce to markets.

The initiative develops networked systems of agro-production, processing, logistics, marketing, training and extension services in district municipalities and developments on underused land.

Each agri-park supports smallholder farmers by providing capacity-building, mentorship, farm infrastructure, extension services, and production and mechanisation inputs. Smallholder farmers own 70% of an agri-park, while the remainder is owned by government and commercial farmers.

Agri-parks are expected to contribute to government's targets of creating one million new jobs in rural economies by 2030.

Communal Property Associations (CPAs)

The CPAs Act, 1996 (Act 28 of 1996) is aimed at enabling communities "to form juristic persons, to be known as CPAs, to acquire, hold and manage property on a basis agreed upon by members of a community in terms of a written constitution and to provide for matters connected therewith."

The DALRRD has facilitated the establishment of CPAs district forums to assist in the provision of support to the associations and serve as a platform for them to share experiences, approaches and lessons on how to handle matters.

2019/20 SOUTH AFRICA YEARBOOK

Communications

Communications and Digital Technologies

The Department of Communications merged with the Department of Telecommunications and Postal Services (DTPS) with effect from 1 April 2020 to form the new Department of Communications and Digital Technologies (DCDT).

The National Development Plan (NDP) recognises that access to high-speed information and communications technology (ICT) is a key enabler for inclusive economic growth.

The work of the DCDT is integral to the realisation of this recognition, and gives it effect through the department's contribution to Priority 1 (economic transformation and job creation) of government's 2019 – 2024 Medium Term Strategic Framework.

The DCDT is mandated to enable South Africa's digital transformation to achieve digital inclusion and economic growth by creating an enabling policy and regulatory environment. This is done through the implementation of the *2016 National Integrated ICT Policy White Paper*, which provides for the participation of multiple stakeholders for inclusive digital transformation; interventions to reinforce competition and facilitate innovation across the value chain; measures to address issues raised by ICT and convergence; and the establishment of a new national postal policy framework. It also provides for policies to address the digital divide and affordable access, supply-side issues and infrastructure rollout, and demand-side issues to facilitate inclusivity.

The DCDT is responsible for the overarching communications policy and strategy, information dissemination and publicity, as well as the branding of the country abroad. In addition, another key objective is to build a better life for all through an enabling and sustainable world-class ICT environment.

A priority for the department over the medium term is to develop and revise policies, strategies and legislation to align with the objectives of the *2016 National Integrated ICT Policy White Paper*, taking into consideration developments necessitated by the Fourth Industrial Revolution (4IR). As such, over the Medium Term Expenditure Framework (MTEF) period, the department will focus on rolling out the South Africa Connect Broadband Policy, implementing the Broadcasting Digital Migration Policy, and submitting new Bills to Parliament.

Rolling out broadband through South Africa Connect

The department will continue to provide broadband connectivity to government buildings by implementing the digital development pillar of the South Africa Connect Broadband Policy. By 2022/23, a targeted 970 government buildings will be connected in the pilot phase, resulting in projected expenditure of R739 million over the medium term period. The business case for the second phase, which aims to connect government buildings throughout the country, will be developed over the medium term.

Migrating towards digital broadcasting

The new model for the implementation of broadcasting digital migration over the medium term includes the provision of vouchers to indigent households for devices that will allow analogue televisions to receive digital signals, and compensation to the South African Post Office (SAPO) for the costs of administering the voucher and distribution systems. To subsidise the provision of these vouchers, R1.6 billion over the medium term is allocated to the Universal Service and Access Fund (USAF), and R275 million is allocated to the Universal Service and Access Agency of South Africa (USAASA) to compensate the SAPO for the administration of the project. A further R100 million is allocated to Sentech in the 2021/22 financial year for dual illumination, which will allow the entity to operate both analogue and digital signals until digital migration is fully implemented. As a result, spending in the Broadcasting Digital Migration subprogramme in the ICT Infrastructure Development and Support programme is expected to increase from R312.8 million in 2019/20 to R1.4 billion in 2021/22.

Implementing the *2016 National Integrated ICT Policy White Paper*

It is envisaged that a number of Bills required for the implementation of the White Paper will be developed and submitted to Parliament over the medium term. These include the Digital Development Fund Bill, State Information Technology (IT) Company Bill, State ICT Infrastructure Company Bill, Digital Transformation Bill, and Audio-visual Content Bill. This will allow for, among other things, the rationalisation of state-owned ICT companies for greater efficiency, and ensure that communities and individuals have access to ICT services and skills for the digital economy. To achieve this, expenditure in the ICT Policy Development and Research programme is expected to increase from R48.6 million in 2019/20 to R64.7 million in 2022/23 at an average annual rate of 10%.

White Paper on Audio and Visual Content Services Policy Framework

In September 2020, Cabinet approved the draft *White Paper on Audio and Visual Content Services* Policy Framework.

This Bill is necessary as there is a growing need to level the playing field between traditional broadcasting, on-demand services providers – these include catch-up TV service, video on-demand services as well as news portals – and video-sharing platforms.

This White Paper proposes policy and regulatory changes and makes recommendations to reposition the audio-visual media sector for future growth and investment promotion. It also emphasises the review of:

- sports broadcasting rights matters,
- promotion of foreign direct investment within the broadcasting sector,
- licensing of the over-the-top services,
- competition issues in relation to pay-tv and free-to-air markets,
- availability of spectrum for the transmission of audio-visual content, and
- skills development to fast-track digital transformation within the audio-visual sector.

Legislation

The DCDT derives its mandate from a number of acts and policies. Key among these are:

- the Broadcasting Act, 1999 (Act 4 of 1999), as amended, which establishes a broadcasting policy in South Africa;

- the Electronic Communications Act, 2005 (Act 36 of 2005), as amended, which provides the legal framework for convergence in the broadcasting, broadcasting signal distribution, and telecommunications sectors. It also allows for the granting of new licences and social obligations; the control of the radio frequency spectrum; and the regulation of electronic communication network services, electronic communication services, and broadcasting services;
- the Film and Publications Act, 1996 (Act 65 of 1996), as amended, which provides for the classification of certain films and publications, and establishes the Film and Publication Board and Tribunal;
- the Independent Communications Authority of South Africa (ICASA) Act, 2000 (Act 13 of 2000) which establishes the regulator in the sector; and
- the Postal Services Act, 1998 (Act 124 of 1998), as amended, which makes provision for the regulation of postal services.

Budget

For the 2019/20 financial year, Communications was allocated R4.8 billion. The department is expected to spend a total of R10 billion over the medium term, of which R7.3 billion is earmarked to be transferred to public entities. As the entities within the department's portfolio are responsible for many of the deliverables emanating from these policies, the DCDT will devote considerable attention to exercising its oversight role through signing shareholders compacts and governance agreements, analysing performance reports, and approving strategic and annual performance plans. Spending on compensation of employees is expected to amount to R1.1 billion over this period.

Entities

Sentech

Sentech was established in terms of the Sentech Act, 1996 (Act 63 of 1996) and is listed as a Schedule 3B public entity in terms of the Public Finance Management Act (PFMA), 1999 (Act 29 of 1999). It is responsible for providing broadcasting signal distribution services to licensed television and radio broadcasters.

Over the medium term, the entity will focus on creating new revenue streams through acquisitions and the formation of strategic partnerships. It aims to build a wireless broadband business, and invest in technologies to enhance the performance of its connectivity services to existing and future clients. The entity considers these investments key to enhancing connectivity, and has set aside R445.8 million over the medium term for the acquisition of assets.

Total expenditure is set to increase from R1.2 billion in 2019/20 to R1.3 billion in 2022/23 at an average annual rate of 3.6%. Spending on goods and services, mostly for satellite rental and other operating costs, accounts for an estimated 45.6% (R1.7 billion) of total expenditure over the medium term. As the entity employs many skilled technical personnel, expenditure on compensation of employees constitutes an estimated 40.9% (R1.6 billion) of total spending over this period.

The entity expects to generate 98.1% (R4 billion) of its revenue over the MTEF period through services rendered to customers, mostly for the provision of signal for television and radio broadcasting services; and the rest from the department through project-specific funding for dual illumination, which is the operation of both analogue and digital signals. Total revenue is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 3%, from R1.3 billion in 2019/20 to R1.4 billion in 2022/23.

South African Broadcasting Corporation (SABC)

The SABC is listed as a Schedule 2 public entity in terms of the PFMA of 1999. Its mandate is set out in its charter and in the Broadcasting Act of 1999, which requires the corporation to provide South Africans with radio and television broadcasting services. It is also required to provide a wide range of programming that displays South African talent in educational and entertainment programmes; offer a diversity of views and a variety of news, information and analysis; and advance national and public interests.

Over the medium term, the corporation will focus on finalising and implementing its turnaround strategy, which aims to invest in new and compelling content to attract audiences, thereby attracting advertisers and increasing revenue. An amount of R3.2 billion was allocated to the corporation in the 2019 Adjusted Estimates of National Expenditure for the strategy. To contribute towards nation-building and greater diversity, the corporation also plans to spend R2 billion over the medium term to broadcast all sporting codes of national interest and acquire sports rights. Total expenditure is expected to increase from R8 billion in 2019/20 to R8.9 billion in 2022/23 at an average annual rate of 3.4%. Of this amount, 36.9% (R9.6 billion) is earmarked for spending on goods and services, largely for programme, film and sports rights; and 34.9% (R8.6 billion) for spending on compensation of employees.

The corporation expects to generate 97.3% of its revenue over the medium term through licence fees, commercial revenue from advertising, and sport sponsorship across television, radio and online platforms. Total revenue is expected to increase from R7.4 billion in 2019/20 to an estimated R8.5 billion in 2022/23 at an average annual rate of 4.4%. The corporation is set to receive transfers from the department amounting to R648 million over the medium term to subsidise various functions, including public broadcasting, programme productions, and support for Channel Africa.

The entity has experienced significant financial challenges over the past three financial years due to a decrease in viewership, listenership and revenue, and projects deficits of R302 million in 2020/21, R194 million in 2021/22 and R446 million in 2022/23 over the medium term.

South African Post Office

The SAPO was established to provide postal and related services to the public, and is listed as a Schedule 2 public entity in terms of the PFMA of 1999. It derives its mandate from the Postal Services Act of 1998, the SAPO state-owned company (SOC) Ltd Act, 2011 (Act 22 of 2011) and the South African Postbank Limited Act, 2010 (Act 9 of 2010). The Postbank Services Act of 2010 grants the entity an exclusive mandate to conduct postal services in the reserved sector for items such as letters, postcards and parcels less than one kilogram, and makes provision for the regulation of postal services and the operational functions of the entity, including its universal service obligations. Over the medium term, the entity will focus on providing universal access to postal and related services, stabilising its financial position, optimising its personnel to

ensure operational effectiveness, and distributing social grants on behalf of the South African Social Security Agency.

The SAPO is allocated R1.6 billion over the MTEF period to subsidise its universal service obligations to provide accessible and affordable postal services in underserviced areas. This allocation is expected to allow the entity to maintain 2 000 points of presence, including post offices, retail postal agencies and mobile units, over the medium term.

As the work of the post office is labour intensive, expenditure on compensation of employees accounts for a projected 50.1% (R11.5 billion) of total expenditure over the medium term. Other significant spending over the medium term is on transport and IT to support an expected increase in revenue in the courier and e-commerce sectors. Total expenditure over the MTEF period is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 4.5%, from R7.2 billion in 2019/20 to R8.2 billion in 2022/23.

The post office generates revenue by providing postal and courier services, and through income earned from interest and fees for financial transactions. Total revenue is expected to increase from R6.8 billion in 2019/20 to R8.9 billion in 2022/23 at an average annual rate of 9.2% due to potential revenue opportunities from government and the unreserved market. These opportunities include courier services, in which the post office competes with the private sector.

In an effort to ensure that all South Africans have access to telecommunications and government services during COVID-19, ICASA has assigned temporary radio frequency spectrum to mobile network operators. The DCDT working with the departments of the Basic and Higher Education, and in partnership with mobile network operators and internet service providers approved 471 local websites to be zero rated for educational purposes during COVID-19.

The zero-rated websites included Technical and Vocational Education and Training colleges; universities; basic education sites; as well as sites that provide information which could help South Africans contain the spread of the pandemic. Zero rating of telecommunications and data services for specified public services like health, education and public service pronouncements is a very important intervention to empower society and the youth, in particular, to mitigate the negative impact of COVID-19 to their education prospects.

The ICT will continue to help provide up-to-date and accurate medical information, statistics, as well as information about new government regulations, to inform citizens about the crisis. COVID-19 provides an opportunity for affordable ICT infrastructure and digital technology solutions such as artificial intelligence, high performance computing, robotics and the internet of things to be explored.

State Information Technology Agency (SITA)

The SITA is governed by the SITA Act, 1998 (Act 88 of 1998), as amended, and is listed as a Schedule 3A public entity in terms of the PFMA of 1999. The SITA Act of 1998 mandates the agency to provide IT, information systems and related services to and on behalf of government departments and organs of state. The agency is required to maintain secure information systems and execute its functions according to approved policies and standards.

Over the medium term, the agency will focus on delivering and operationalising an integrated digital ecosystem for government by migrating data to cloud services. This is expected to enable greater accessibility and the integration of data from different sources, thereby improving policy analysis and decision making. The implementation of the government digital transformation strategy will entail facilitating the acquisition of ICT skills and the modernisation of government infrastructure.

An estimated 65% (R15 billion) of total expenditure over the medium term is earmarked for spending on goods and services, mostly for the provision of IT services. Total expenditure is projected to increase from R6.8 billion in 2019/20 to R8.1 billion in 2022/23 at an average annual rate of 6.1%. As the agency is dependent on skilled personnel to provide its services, expenditure on compensation of employees accounts for an estimated R6.7 billion (28.9%) of total expenditure over the medium term.

The entity generates its revenue by providing ICT infrastructure and services to government departments and organs of the State. Total revenue is projected to increase from R7 billion in 2019/20 to R8.3 billion in 2022/23 at an average annual rate of 6%.

Telecommunications and Postal Services

The mandate of the Telecommunications and Postal Services within DCDT is to create a vibrant ICT sector that ensures all South Africans have access to robust, reliable, affordable and secure ICT services to advance socio-economic development goals and support Agenda 2063: The Africa We Want and contribute towards building a better world. Agenda 2063 is Africa's blueprint and master plan for transforming Africa into the global powerhouse of the future. It is the continent's strategic framework that aims to deliver on its goal for inclusive and sustainable development and is a concrete manifestation of the pan-African drive for unity, self-determination, freedom, progress and collective prosperity pursued under Pan-Africanism and African Renaissance.

The core functions of the Telecommunications and Postal Services include developing ICT policies and legislation and ensuring the development of robust, reliable, secure and affordable ICT infrastructure that supports and enables the provision of a multiplicity of applications and services to meet the needs of the country and its people. The main focus of the of the Telecommunications and Postal services are:

- rolling out ICT infrastructure, applications and services, postal and banking services;
- developing e-strategies to roll out e-government and e-sectoral services; and
- promoting cybersecurity and the security of networks.

The objectives of the Telecommunications and Postal Services are in line with the country's NDP, which recommends developing a coordinated and enabling ICT strategy and a plan that cuts across government departments and sectors to improve e-literacy, and provide clarity on the roles and functions of the State to prevent unintended policy outcomes.

The National Integrated ICT White Paper replaces the *White Paper on Telecommunications (1996)* and *the White Paper on Postal Services (1998)*. It responds to the development of technology, including convergence, digitisation, the increasing use of the Internet, and how South Africans communicate, work and interact with government. The main purpose of the *National Integrated ICT White Paper* is to unlock the potential of ICTs to eliminate poverty and reduce inequality in the country by 2030. Specific goals and objectives for policy interventions adopted to achieve this are outlined in each chapter.

The policy is a strategic instrument to implement what is envisaged by the NDP as it introduces a range of interventions to ensure everyone in South Africa, irrespective where they live or their socio-economic status can access the benefits of participating in the digital society.

The White Paper lays the foundation for realising the NDP vision for the ICT sector to create "a seamless information infrastructure by 2030 that will underpin a dynamic and connected vibrant information society and a knowledge economy that is more inclusive, equitable and prosperous."

The Telecommunications and Postal Services has the following key priorities:

- implementing the *National Integrated ICT Policy White Paper*;
- implementing the ICT Small, Medium and Micro Enterprise (SMME) Development Strategy;
- implementing the e-Government Strategy;
- Broadband connectivity;
- SOC rationalisation; and
- ensuring that South Africa is among the top ICT leaders globally.

The state-owned enterprises under the Telecommunications and Postal Services aspect of the DCDT include the following:

Broadband Infraco (BBI)

The BBI's legislative mandate, which is set out in the BBI Act, 2007 (Act 33 of 2007) provides ICT infrastructure and broadband capacity in South Africa. The main objectives in terms of the Act are to expand the availability and affordability of access to electronic communications, including but not limited to, underdeveloped and underserviced areas; to ensure that the bandwidth requirements for specific projects of national interest are met; and to enable the State to provide affordable access to electronic communications networks and services. The company's total budget for 2019/20 was R684.2 million.

National Electronic Media Institute of South Africa (NEMISA)

The NEMISA was established as a non-profit institute for education in terms of the Companies Act, 1973 (Act 61 of 1973) and is listed as a Schedule 3A public entity in terms of the PFMA of 1999. NEMISA's ongoing activities include offering national certificates and short courses in the areas of television production, animation and radio production. The institute is in the process of being merged with other entities to form the iKamva National Digital Skills Institute. The institute's programmes are structured to enhance the market readiness of students in a wide range of broadcasting and e-skills disciplines. The institute's total budget for 2019/20 was R114.3 million.

Universal Service and Access Agency of South Africa

The USAASA was established in terms of Section 80 of the Electronic Communications Act of 2005 as a statutory body and is listed as a Schedule 3A public entity in terms of the PFMA of 1999. Its sole mandate is to promote universal service and access to electronic communications services, electronic communications network services and broadcasting services. The agency's total budget for 2019/20 was R83.8 million.

Universal Service and Access Fund

The USAF was established in terms of Section 89(1) of the Electronic Communications Act of 2005. The fund's sole mandate is to make payments for subsidies towards the provision of ICT equipment and services as well as the construction and extension of electronic communication and broadcasting networks for those in underserviced areas. The fund is managed by the USAASA and is financed by contributions from all telecommunications licensees except community broadcasting service licensees. The fund's total budget for 2019/20 was R137.6 million.

Programmes and projects

Fourth Industrial Revolution

The 4IR has necessitated that countries develop new policies, strategies and innovation plans to enable an inclusive developmental approach that will comprise of the representatives of a cross section of stakeholders, including the public sector, business, academia and research institutions, experts, labour, SMMEs, youth, women and non-governmental organisations. In essence, South African policies, strategies and plans should seek to advance the goals of inclusivity and shared growth. A core short-term focus of South Africa's national response will be on the impact of the changing technological landscape on the economy and employment.

The country needs a more broad-based approach that looks at threats and opportunities that technological change and convergence will have on South Africa's other development imperatives. This includes economic infrastructure, environmental sustainability and transitioning to a low-carbon economy, an integrated and inclusive rural economy, human settlements, education, training and innovation, health, social protection, safer communities, and building a capable and developmental state.

The DCDT's priorities are anchored in an endeavour to prepare South Africa for the 4IR. Key initiatives in this regard include coordinating the establishment of the Presidential Advisory Commission on the 4IR to ensure that the country is in a position to seize opportunities and manage the challenges of rapid advances in ICT. The commission acts as an advisory body that ensures that South Africa leverages on the benefits of the latest technology by coordinating and planning across the industries and sectors that will underpin the drive towards the 4IR. Its work is centred on eight work streams dealing with the impact of technological advancement on human capital and the future of work as well as social and economic development.

The 30-member commission, chaired by President Cyril Ramaphosa, comprises eminent persons from different sectors of society and reflects a balance in gender, youth, labour and business, including digital start-ups as well as digital entrepreneurships.

The commission's objectives are to:

- develop an integrated country strategy and plan to respond to 4IR, including detailed interventions to be carried out achieving global competitiveness of the key economic sectors (agriculture, finance, mining, manufacturing, ICT, and science, technology and innovation);
- advise on a technology research and development programme to advance 4IR;
- advise on strategies for skills development and future of work; and
- make recommendations on enabling relevant infrastructure for the country to participate in the digital economy and make recommendations on an institutional framework and mechanism to coordinate 4IR programmes.

The commission also serves as a platform to address challenges identified through research and consultation, and

ensures that ICTs are regarded as drivers in creating jobs, through innovations and development of ICT SMMEs.

4IR ICT Skills Programme

The DCDT, through the Media, Information and Communication Technology Sector Education and Training Authority, has launched the 4IR Skills Programme as part of its efforts to create one million new jobs by 2030.

The programme, which provides skills in key 4IR domains namely, data science, 3D printing, cloud computing, drone piloting, software development, cyber security, digital content production is in partnership with Deviare, Microsoft, Cisco and Leaders in Motion Academy. Deviare has developed an online platform *4IRSkills.Africa* to initiate recruitment of learners for the programme. *4IRSkills.Africa* is an active platform for building the capability and capacity for future digital skills that can be applied across sectors in African.

Over 1 000 learners were enrolled in the programme across the country. The first intake of learners commenced in July 2019 in Gauteng, KwaZulu-Natal, Eastern Cape and Limpopo in Data Science, Digital Content Production, Cyber Security and Drone Piloting. The other programmes commenced in August, September and October respectively. The learning methodology promotes blended, high touch and outcome-oriented learning, providing learners the opportunity to access training anywhere anytime through virtual classrooms, access to global teaching assistants and mentorship programmes with continuous assessment through the programme.

In July 2019, the then DTPS hosted the Digital Economy Summit in Midrand, Gauteng. This was a first step towards bringing all economic and social players to the table on the collective effort of understanding the drivers for unlocking the value of the 4IR within the economy and society and with a focus on the specific drivers for job creation in this new world.

The outcome of the summit served as an input into the work of the Presidential Advisory Commission on the 4IR. In order to showcase technological innovation, the department enacted, through a collaboration with Nokia and Vodacom, a replication of the summit in Rustenburg using a holographic projection. This was the first time that a Head of State was broadcast live using 3D holographic technology. This move signaled government's readiness to cement South Africa's position as a leader in the 4IR.

Positioning South Africa as a global ICT leader

The DCDT's international programme is focused on positioning South Africa as a global ICT leader; influencing the debates and decisions of multilateral organisations in favour of national interest and development agenda; increasing investment in the economy; and promoting South African business and technological capabilities.

South Africa was elected to the International Telecommunications Union (ITU) Council for the period 2019 – 2022. ICASA Radiocommunications Manager Mandla Mchunu, representing South Africa, was elected to the Radio Regulations Board of the ITU for the period 2019 – 2022. South Africa was also elected to the African Telecommunications Union (ATU) Council for the same period.

As a legacy of the ITU Telecom World, the DCDT has launched a Digital Transformation Centre whose objective is to incubate enterprise talent and harness innovation. With the support from ITU, the World Economic Forum and other partners, the centre will support the entry and growth of SMMEs in various aspects of these future communication systems and networks, focusing on management of intellectual property rights, standardisation, conformance testing, and SMME innovation. It will further support the production and usage of ICT technologies and break the current monopolies in the electronic manufacturing industry.

The international branch of the DCDT continues to be the primary vehicle through which the department pursues government's priority of contributing to a better South Africa and safer Africa in a better world.

The country is also serving as a member of the Universal Postal Union (UPU) Council of Administration for a second term, 2017 – 2020.

It is also responsible for chairing a new committee dealing with strategy. South Africa has contributed significantly to the UPU's work in developing National Address Systems. The country's use of Global Positioning Systems to allocate addresses to people in rural and undeveloped areas has proved critical.

Internet

According to Statistics South Africa's General Household Survey (GHS) 2018, released in May 2019, household access to the Internet at home was highest in the Western Cape (25.8%) and Gauteng (16.7%) and lowest in Limpopo (1.7%). While 17.3% of households in metropolitan areas had access to the Internet at home, this was true for only 1.7% of rural households in general and less than 1% of rural households in North West (0.8%) and Limpopo (0.6%). Households were generally more likely to have access to the Internet at work than at home or at Internet cafés or at educational institutions. Households in Gauteng and Western Cape were most likely to access the Internet at work while those in Limpopo were least likely to do so.

Social media

The emergence of social media as a social and business communication tool in the last few years has been dramatic.

In South Africa, a country where first and third-world conditions are often separated by just a few kilometres, social media has levelled the playing field and created a platform that is affordable for everyone, easy to use and highly effective as a communication tool.

Online retail

A forecast by World Wide Worx for the three years, 2018 – 2020, show online retail sales more than doubling to almost R20-billion, a year sooner than originally forecast in 2016. Most established online retailers have enhanced their digital presence, and refined their fulfilment models, while many traditional retailers are starting to see significant growth in their online offerings. It is not unusual to see growth rates of between 25% and 50% reported by individual online retailers, with slightly more tempered expectations for 2019 and 2020.

Cybercrime and cybersecurity

Cyberspace comes with new types of challenges to the governments of the world and it therefore introduces a further dimension to national security.

The cyberworld is a borderless platform that enables more sophisticated threats such as cybercrime, cyberterrorism, cyberwar and cyber-espionage. For this reason, cyberthreats need to be addressed at both the global and national levels.

The National Cybersecurity Hub is South Africa's National Computer Security Incident Response Team, and strives to make cyberspace an environment where all South Africans can safely communicate, socialise, and transact in confidence. It offers alerts and warnings, announcements, security-related information dissemination, incident-handling and incident response support as services to its constituents. These services can be categorised as proactive, reactive and social services.

Incidents are logged via the National Cybersecurity Hub website and depending on their evaluation, they are timeously resolved or escalated to other agencies for further investigation.

Mobile communications

South Africa has one of the largest telecommunications markets on the continent. It has five mobile operators, namely Cell C, MTN, Vodacom, Telkom Mobile and Rain.

Mobile phones are the dominant technology for voice and data communication among base of pyramid (BoP) users and for informal businesses. People in this group access the Internet mostly via their mobile phones and smartphones because they have taken over functions that used to be performed by computers.

Users are also finding innovative ways to bypass expensive cellphone SMS rates by using Facebook Zero or other instant message services such as WhatsApp.

Although half of the South African population live below the poverty line, more than 75% among those in low-income groups, who are 15 years or older, own a mobile phone.

In terms of mobile ownership at the BoP, households with an income of less than R432 per month, per household member, is relatively high, compared to other African countries. This is according to research commissioned by infoDev, a global partnership programme within the World Bank Group, about the use of mobile phones amongst BoP users.

About 98.5% low-income groups who own mobile phones in South Africa have a prepaid SIM card, but there is a small percentage (1.5%) of BoP mobile owners who have post-paid contracts.

According to the GHS 2018, only 0.1% of South African households living in metropolitan areas exclusively used landlines, compared to 86.9% that exclusively used cellular phones. The exclusive use of cellular phones was most common in the City of Tshwane (91.1%), City of Johannesburg (90.3%), and Ekurhuleni (89.6%). Almost one-fifth (19.9%) of households in Cape Town used both landlines and cellular phones compared to 6.7% in the Buffalo City and 8.1% in the City of Tshwane.

PostNet

PostNet is South Africa's largest privately owned counter network in the document and parcel industry, trading across more than 330 owner-managed retail stores.

It serves in excess of 60 000 walk-in customers per day, countrywide.

There are five product types within PostNet: courier, copy and print, digital, stationery and mailboxes.

The media

South Africa has vibrant and independent media.

According to the Bill of Rights, as contained in the Constitution of South Africa, 1996, everyone has the right to freedom of expression, which includes:

- freedom of the press and other media;
- freedom to receive or impart information or ideas;
- freedom of artistic creativity; and
- academic freedom and freedom of scientific research.

Several laws, policies and organisations act to protect and promote press freedom in South Africa.

Radio

Radio is a great communications medium and still enjoys the broadest reach of any media category in South Africa. The diversity of stations, formats, voices and offerings ensures that most of the public's needs are catered for.

It also fulfils a vital need for information and entertainment, with relatively low costs to the distributors and the listeners.

As a communication medium, radio has very few barriers to access. SABC radio has more than 25 million listeners weekly in South Africa.

In May 2020, South Africa joined the world in observing World Telecommunication and Information Society Day. Proclaimed by the United Nations General Assembly 51 years ago, on 17 May 1969, this day is aimed at raising awareness on the possibilities that the use of the Internet and other ICT can bring to societies and economies, as well as of ways to bridge the digital divide.

The government recognised the need for effective deployment, uptake and usage of ICT and global interconnectedness to speed up human progress and to bridge the prevailing digital divide in South Africa. The DCDT, through its entities, including the BBI; Sentech; the SABC and the communications sector as whole, is contributing towards the realisation of the 2030 Sustainable Development Goals.

The fact that radio cuts across boundaries of illiteracy strengthens the importance of the medium to the consumer and the advertiser.

The SABC's national radio network comprises 18 radio stations, of which 15 are dedicated specifically to public service broadcasting.

These include 11 full-spectrum stations, one in each of the official languages of South Africa: a cultural service for the Indian community broadcasting in English; a regional community station broadcasting in isiXhosa and English; and a community station broadcasting in the !Xu and Khwe languages of the Khoisan people of the Northern Cape.

The SABC has three stations in its commercial portfolio. These are 5FM, Metro FM and Good Hope FM. Channel Africa broadcasts live on three platforms: shortwave, satellite and the Internet. Its broadcasts are in Chinyanja, Silozi, Kiswahili, English, French and Portuguese.

Commercial radio stations

Commercial radio stations in South Africa include:

- YFM
- 702 Talk Radio
- Metro FM
- 5FM
- Channel Africa
- Good Hope FM
- 567 Cape Talk
- Radio 2000
- Capricorn FM
- Radio KFM
- Lotus FM

- X-K FM
- TruFM
- RSG
- Power 98.7.

Radio platforms such as 94.2 Jacaranda FM, 94.7 Highveld Stereo, OFM, Algoa FM, Classic FM, Kaya FM and East Coast Radio were initially SABC stations, but were sold to private owners to diversify radio ownership in South Africa as part of the transformation of the public broadcaster.

Many of South Africa's radio stations are also available online.

Community radio

Community broadcasting remains an important project for the DCDT. From the early days of Cape Town's Bush Radio, Africa's oldest community radio station project, to today's broadcasting landscape which boasts more than 200 stations across the country's nine provinces, community radio has provided communities with an indispensable platform from which to raise awareness of their grassroots issues, irrespective of race, gender, disability or economic class.

Still a relatively youthful sector, community radio can trace its origins back to Bush Radio, the idea for which started in the 1980s when community activists and alternative media producers explored ways in which media could be used for social upliftment. The radio was officially formed in 1992, broadcasting illegally following numerous attempts to apply for a broadcast license from the apartheid government.

It was however only after the first democratic elections of 1994 that South Africa saw the liberalisation of the airwaves with the establishment of an independent regulator, the Independent Broadcasting Authority, now ICASA.

Television

The SABC's television network comprises of three free-to-air channels and two other channels carried on a subscription digital satellite network. South African television is broadcast in all 11 official languages and in sign language.

The latest Broadcast Research Council data show improved figures for the SABC News channel which now leads the 24-hour news market in the country. The data also shows a 42% and 40% improvement in market share performance in the national, including digital terrestrial TV and DStv news markets, respectively. This is a substantial improvement in performance compared to previous years.

Community television

Soweto TV was the first community television station to obtain a seven-year broadcasting licence from ICASA in 2007.

Since then, more seven-year licences have been issued to stations operating in Soweto, Cape Town, Tshwane, Empangeni and Nelson Mandela Bay. The issuing of new community television licences is on hold until the migration from analogue to digital broadcasting is complete.

Free-to-air television

eMedia Holdings owns e.tv – South Africa's first private, free-to-air television channel, launched in 1998. It is the largest English-medium channel in the country and third-largest overall.

e.tv also has a pan-African presence through e.tv Africa, which is distributed on the DStv Africa bouquet and by local affiliates in African countries. The company launched a 24-hour news channel on the DStv platform, eNews Channel Africa (eNCA) in 2008.

Satellite broadcasting

MultiChoice started as the subscriber management arm of M-Net. It is the leading multichannel digital satellite television operator across the African continent. MultiChoice provides its DStv services to different market segments. The DStv bouquets cater for different lifestyles and pockets, from entry level to premium.

StarSat offers three main packages and multiple add-on packages that viewers can use to customise their experience.

eSat.tv (branded eNCA) supplies television, mobile and online news to various channels in South Africa, including the 24-hour eNCA (Channel 403). The company provides live news bulletins to viewers each night on e.tv in English, on eKasi+ in IsiZulu (available on OpenView HD) and on kykNET through eNuus in Afrikaans (available on DStv).

Newzroom Afrika is a premier South African 24-hour television news channel on DStv Platform (Channel 405). The, channel which is 100% black-owned, went on air in May 2019. It is 100% black-owned, 50% female-owned and 50% youth-owned.

Print

Technical handling of the print media in South Africa rates among the best in the world. This is one reason why newspapers and magazines have held their own in a volatile information era, characterised by the vast development of various new forms of media-delivery platforms via the Internet.

Newspapers

Most South African newspapers and magazines are organised into several major publishing houses. These include:

- Media24 (part of Naspers, the largest media group in Africa);
- Independent News & Media (Pty) Ltd group;
- Caxton Publishers & Printers Ltd; and
- Arena Holdings.

Other important media players include:

- M&G Media Ltd;
- The Natal Witness Printing & Publishing Company (Pty) Ltd;
- Primedia Publishing Ltd;
- Ramsay Media; and
- Kagiso Media.

Some of the prominent daily and weekly newspapers in South Africa include, *The Sunday Tim*e, Citizen, *Sowetan, The Daily Sun, The Witness, Sunday World, City Press, The Weekly Mail and Guardian, Beeld, Pretoria News, The Star, Die Burger, The Cape Argus, Cape Times, Son, Daily Dispatch, The Herald,The Daily News, The Mercury, The Witness, Business Day, Die Volksblad, Diamond Fields Advertiser, Isolezwe, Rapport, Sunday Tribune, Sunday Sun, Ilanga, The Post* and *Soccer Laduma*.

Magazines

Some of the prominent magazines in South Africa are: *The Financial Mail, Finweek, Entrepreneur, Forbes Africa, Noseweek, BusinessBrief, Leadership, Farmer's Weekly, Landbouweekblad, Plaastoe, Veeplaas, Personal Finance, TV Plus, Drum, Huisgenoot, YOU, The Big Issue, Taalgenoot, Leisure, Easy DYI, Sarie Kos, Elle, Decoration, SA Home Owner, Tuis Home, VISI, Woolworths' Taste, Fresh Living/Kook en Kuier, Braintainment, Destiny Man, Blaque Magazine, GQ, Men's Health, Popular Mechanics, Stuff, Tjop & Dop, Amakhosi, Kick Off, Golf Digest, Compleat Golfer, Magnum's Game, Hunt/*

Wild, Jag, SA Hunter, Zigzag, Modern Athlete, CAR, Leisure Wheels, Drive Out/WegRy, Auto Trader, Bike SA, SA 4×4, Speed and Sound, Getaway, Weg/Go, Glamour, Elle, Fair Lady, Finesse, Destiny Magazine, Ideas/Idees, Leef, Move!, True Love, Fitness Magazine, Kuier, Marie Claire, Sarie, Women's Health and Longevity

In 2020, South Africa's print media said goodbye to a number of magazines, including *Cosmopolitan SA* which was published by Associated Media Publishing – one of the largest independent media houses in South Africa. The company announced that it would be closing down from 1 May 2020 due to challenges presented by the COVID-19 outbreak. The company also published *House & Leisure* and *Good House Keeping magazines*.

Caxton Publishers, which houses at least 10 of the country's most iconic magazines, announced similar news in May 2020. Affected magazines include *Bona, People, Women & Home, Country Life, Essentials, Food & Home, Garden & Home, Rooi Rose, Vrouekeur, and Your Family.*

Media organisations and role players

The non-profit-making Print and Digital Media South Africa (PDMSA) was originally formed to bring together under one roof, publishers of diverse print genres.

The PDMSA recognised the advantages of extending its footprint online by extending its membership to include digital media publications.

The members include the Times Media Group, Caxton and CTP Publishers and Printers; Independent Newspapers; Media24; M&G Media, and the Association of Independent Publishers (AIP).

The purpose of the PDMSA is to represent, promote, interact with and intervene in all matters concerning the collective industry and of common interest. It represents more than 700 newspaper and magazine titles in South Africa.

The PDMSA is a member of a number of international bodies such as the World Association of Newspapers and the Federation of Periodical Press. Allied to the PDMSA, but not a constituent member, is the Audit Bureau of Circulations, responsible for auditing and verifying print media circulation figures.

The AIP represents the interests of more than 250 independent publishers in southern Africa.

The South African National Editors' Forum (SANEF) was formed at a meeting of the Black Editors' Forum, the Conference of Editors and senior journalism educators and trainers, in October 1996.

SANEF membership includes editors and senior journalists from the print, broadcast and online/Internet media, as well as journalism educators from all the major training institutions in South Africa.

The Forum of Black Journalists addresses issues that directly affect its members.

Members of the public who have complaints or concerns about reports in newspapers and magazines can submit their grievances to the Office of the Press Ombudsman. Should they not be satisfied with the resultant ruling, they can lodge an appeal with an independent appeal panel. The Office of the Press Ombudsman was set up by the PDMSA, SANEF and the Media Workers' Association of South Africa.

The Freedom of Expression Institute was established in 1994 to protect and foster the rights to freedom of expression and access to information, and to oppose censorship.

The Forum of Community Journalists is an independent body that represents, promotes and serves the interests of all community-newspaper journalists in southern Africa. The decision to become an independent body followed the restructuring of the Community Press Association into the AIP.

The Broadcasting Complaints Commission of South Africa is an independent self-regulatory body that serves as a voluntary watchdog, to adjudicate complaints from the public about programmes flighted by members who subscribe to its code of conduct. Members include the SABC, M-Net, Radio 702 and the Trinity Broadcasting Network. However, the commission does not deal with x-rated material, the broadcast of which is prohibited under criminal law.

Media Monitoring Africa (formerly Media Monitoring Project) is a non-profit organisation that acts in a watchdog role to promote ethical and fair journalism that supports human rights.

The National Community Radio Forum (NCRF) lobbies for the airwaves in South Africa to be diversified, and for a dynamic broadcasting environment through the establishment of community radio stations.

The NCRF is a national, member-driven association of community-owned and run radio stations and support-service organisations.

Radio station members are independent, non-profit community-based organisations.

Other press organisations operating in the country are the:

- Foreign Correspondents' Association of Southern Africa;
- Printing Industries Federation of South Africa;
- South African Typographical Union;
- South African Guild of Motoring Journalists;
- Professional Photographers of South Africa;
- Media Institute of Southern Africa;
- Publishers' Association of South Africa; and
- Press clubs in major centres.

News agencies

The African News Agency, Africa's first syndicated multimedia content service, began publishing South African and international news stories in 2015.

The main foreign news agencies operating in South Africa are:

- Reuters
- Agence France-Presse
- Associated Press
- Deutsche Presse Agentur
- United Press International.

Journalism and media awards

South Africa's most important awards include the:

- Mondi Shanduka Newspaper Awards,
- Vodacom Journalist of the Year Awards,
- South African Breweries Environmental Media and Environmentalist of the Year Awards,
- Sanlam Financial Journalist of the Year Award,
- CNN MultiChoice African Journalist Awards,
- Discovery Health Journalism Awards,
- SANEF's Nat Nakasa Award, and
- Local Media Excellence Awards.

Advertising

South Africa has a vibrant and dynamic advertising industry. Local advertising agencies are often recognised internationally for their excellence.

Advertising Standards Authority (ASA)

The ASA is the protector of the ethical standards of advertising in South Africa, and protects consumers against manipulative advertising and unfair claims.

It is an independent body established and funded by the marketing communication industry to manage advertising in the public interest by means of self-regulation.

The ASA cooperates with government, statutory bodies, consumer organisations and industry to ensure that advertising content complies with the Code of Advertising Practice.

The code is the ASA's guiding document based on the International Code of Advertising Practice, prepared by the International Chamber of Commerce.

Drawn up by the ASA with the participation of representatives of the marketing communication industry, the code is amended from time to time to meet the changing needs of the industry and the South African society.

Advertising awards

The 41st annual Loeries Awards ceremony, celebrating the best the African advertising industry has to offer, took place on 23 and 24 August 2019 at the Durban Convention Centre. The awards were held under the theme, "telling better stories". Of the 2 500 entries that were received, 16% came from outside South Africa.

The Agency of the Year award was won by Joe Public United. Ogilvy Johannesburg took second place and TBWA\Hunt Lascaris came out third. In the regional agency category, first, second and third place went to TBWA, Ogilvy EMEA and Joe Public United respectively.

Five Grand Prix awards were announced, including the Grand Prix for Design, which was awarded to David Krynauw for the architecture project "Kleine Rijke". The Typography Design Grand Prix went to TBWA\Istanbul for Theatre Hours' "Acting Identity", M&C Saatchi Abel SA won the Film, TV and Cinema Commercials Grand Prix for Nando's "Afrotising", TBWA\Hunt Lascaris SA won the Internet and Mobile Audio Commercials Grand Prix for City Lodge Hotel Group's "The Real Cost" and Ogilvy Johannesburg was awarded the Live Activations Grand Prix for "Mandela Centenary" for Philips and the Nelson Mandela Foundation.

Public relations

Public Relations Institute of Southern Africa (PRISA)

Established in 1957, the PRISA represents professionals in public relations and communication management throughout the southern African region and has registered practitioners in Botswana, Namibia, Lesotho, Eswatini and South Africa.

It is a founding member of the Global Alliance for Public Relations and Communication Management, and initiated the formation of the Council for Communication Management in South Africa. The council is the coordinating body representing various groupings of professionals in South Africa.

PRISA plays a leading role in uniting professionals and driving transformation. As the recognised leader of the public relations and communication management profession in southern Africa and beyond, PRISA provides the southern African industry with the local professional advantage.

2019/20 SOUTH AFRICA YEARBOOK

Education, Science and Innovation

Education

The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996 declares basic education as an inalienable basic human right for all South Africans. In 2015, the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO) adopted the global education agenda, Education 2030, which is part of the 17 United Nations Sustainable Development Goals (SDGs) that make up the Agenda 2030 for sustainable development. SDG 4 calls for an "inclusive, quality and equitable education and lifelong opportunities for all".

The National Development Plan (NDP) states that by 2030 South Africans should have access to education and training of the highest quality, leading to significantly improved learning outcomes. The education system will play a greater role in building an inclusive society, providing equal opportunities and helping all South Africans to realise their full potential.

Education is governed by two national departments namely; the Department of Basic Education (DBE), which is responsible for primary and secondary schools, and the Department of Higher Education and Training (DHET), which is responsible for tertiary education and vocational training.

Accessibility to education has improved significantly over the years ensuring that South Africans are exposed to education in all levels to ensure that socio-economic challenges in the country are addressed.

The Inclusive Education system plays a major role in ensuring that there is access to quality basic education for leaners with special needs. This system contributes immensely towards the achievement of an inclusive economy and inclusive society.

The Early Childhood Development (ECD) programme has ensured that early child development is expanded to all socio-economic levels of society. This programme ensures that school readiness is a priority among South Africans and equal basic education is achieved by the government.

Evaluation and research has been a serious deficiency in the country and the education sector, but over the years, with the introduction of Monitoring, Research and Evaluation in the sector, performance has also improved. There is substantial research conducted within the sector which assists in identifying gaps and also creates a platform to monitor the sector through evidence-based evaluations.

Basic education

The DBE is mandated to monitor the standards of education provision, delivery and performance across South Africa, annually or at other specified intervals, to assess compliance with provisions of the Constitution and national education policy.

The functions of the DBE include:

- managing the development, evaluation and maintenance of policy, programmes and systems for ECD in the reception years;
- developing, evaluating and maintaining an accreditation system for providers and trainers;
- developing and maintaining policy concerning programmes, qualifications and assessment for early childhood development; and;
- rendering support to qualifications and quality assurance authorities concerning early childhood development.

Schooling 2025, the overarching plan for the basic education sector, encapsulates the long-term vision of education priorities, targets and programmes articulated for the sector in the NDP. Over the medium term, the DBE will continue to focus on improving school infrastructure; providing high-quality learner and teacher support materials; developing skills for a changing world; planning for the migration of the ECD function from the social development sector to the basic education sector; providing support to improve matric completion rates; facilitating the increase in supply of quality teachers; and providing nutritious meals for learners through the National School Nutrition Programme.

Improving school infrastructure

The DBE is committed to improving the physical infrastructure and environment at every public school in the basic education sector. To this end, spending on the Education Infrastructure Grant and the School Infrastructure Backlogs Grant in the Planning, Information and Assessment programme accounts for 51% (R41.4 billion) of the department's total budget over the Medium Term Expenditure Framework (MTEF) period.

The Education Infrastructure Grant is allocated R35 billion over the MTEF period, which is transferred to provinces as a supplementary conditional grant for the provision of school infrastructure. Funds from this grant are intended to assist in accelerating the construction, maintenance, upgrading and rehabilitation of new and existing infrastructure in the basic education sector, including district and circuit accommodation. Cabinet has approved reductions on the grant amounting to R1.9 billion over the medium term. Although the reductions are not expected to affect existing projects, provinces will be required to revise their infrastructure plans going forward.

Funds from the School Infrastructure Backlogs Grant are intended to provide water, sanitation and electricity to schools that do not have these basic services; and replace schools that are constructed with inappropriate materials such as mud, wood and tin. Of the grant's R6.5 billion allocation over the MTEF period, R2.8 billion is allocated for the provision of appropriate sanitation facilities. In 2020/21, the DBE plans to spend R1.7 billion of the grant's allocation to build 31 new schools, provide sanitation to 691 schools and water to 125 schools, thereby ensuring that all schools have access to water by the end of 2020/21. Cabinet has approved reductions on the grant, amounting to R122.8 million over the medium term. These reductions could result in delays in the completion of projects.

The Policy on Screening, Identification, Assessment and Support (SIAS) was developed over a period of 10 years through a rigorous process of field testing and consultation. It aims to ensure that all children of school-going age who experience barriers to learning, including people with disabilities, will be able to access inclusive, quality, free, primary and secondary education on an equal basis with other young people in the communities in which they live.

The policy aims to standardise procedures to identify, assess and provide programmes for all learners who require additional support to enhance their participation and inclusion in school, making teachers and parents central to the support processes.

The successful implementation of the SIAS Policy will be an important step towards meeting the obligations of government in respect of the UN Convention on the Rights of Persons with Disabilities as ratified by Cabinet in November 2007, in terms of ensuring an inclusive education system at all levels.

Providing high-quality learner and teacher support materials

Over the the medium term, the DBE will continue ensuring that learners have access to quality learner and teacher support

materials by providing workbooks to learners in grades R to 9. The DBE expects to print and deliver an estimated 58 million workbooks for learners in grades R to 9 in each year over the medium term in life skills, languages and mathematics. These workbooks are expected to be distributed to more than 24 000 public schools across South Africa. To this end, R3.7 billion over the MTEF period is allocated in the Curriculum and Quality Enhancement programme, a subprogramme in the Curriculum Policy, Support and Monitoring programme. The DBE has set aside R6.9 million over the MTEF period in the same programme to introduce a planning and monitoring system to ensure that the correct number and type of workbooks and learner-teacher support materials are delivered to the correct schools. Life skills workbooks for grades 1 to 3 will not be provided to quintiles 4 and 5 schools, due to Cabinet having approved reductions amounting to R93 million over the MTEF period on allocations for workbooks.

Developing skills for a changing world

To prepare learners for jobs in a changing and increasingly digitised world, the DBE plans to enhance the curriculum by introducing new technical subjects. These new subject choices include coding, robotics and data analytics at primary school level. Several public ordinary secondary schools will be transformed into focus schools over the MTEF period. In addition to prioritising mathematics, science and aviation, new technology subjects and specialisations will be introduced at these focus schools. This initiative will be funded through the Maths, Science and Technology Grant, which will also provide resources for workshops and laboratories, information and communications technology (ICT) equipment and support to 1 000 schools, including 200 technical high schools and 300 primary or feeder schools over the same period. The grant has a total allocation of R1.3 billion over the medium term.

Planning for the migration of the ECD function

The NDP envisions quality ECD as a priority for South Africa to improve the overall quality of education and the long-term prospects of its future generations. In line with this vision, President Cyril Ramaphosa announced, in the 2019 State of the Nation Address, that South Africa will proceed towards implementing two years of compulsory preschool for all children before they enter Grade 1. Accordingly, over the medium term, the DBE will work closely with the Department of Social Development and other partners to oversee the migration of the responsibility for ECD from the social development sector to the basic education sector, and the process of introducing two years of compulsory preschool for all children before they enter Grade 1. In 2020/21, the DBE plans to conduct an ECD audit to determine the need across all affected age groups, as well as the quality of provision of these services.

Providing support to improve matric completion rates

In response to the NDP's call to reduce the learner drop-out rate, the Second Chance programme provides support to matric learners who do not meet the pass requirements of the National Senior Certificate (NSC) examinations. Over the MTEF period, the programme's new policy priority will be to include learners with disabilities. Accordingly, the DBE will use the existing 23 special schools for the blind and 43 schools for the deaf as sites of support for learners with disabilities in the Second Chance programme. In addition, as a measure to support the performance of all learners, the DBE will develop a web-based system that will allow multiple users to upload subject support for learners to access. The programme will provide support in subjects such as mathematics, science, accounting and languages; and will facilitate the establishment of 80 face-to-face centres, and appoint more than 800 teachers and 80 centre managers to teach after school hours and over weekends. The programme is allocated R183.2 million over the medium term. However, Cabinet-approved reductions on the Second Chance programme amounting to R67 million over the MTEF period are likely to affect its expansion.

Facilitating an increase in the number of quality teachers

Over the medium term, the DBE plans to continue facilitating an increase in the number of newly qualified teachers in mathematics, science and technology in various phases. This is expected to be achieved by providing 37 500 Funza Lushaka bursaries to prospective teachers. The number of bursary awards is expected to be maintained at 12 500 per year over the MTEF period. This is on condition that general increases in university costs do not exceed average annual increases in allocations to the bursary scheme of approximately 5% over the same period. While prospective Funza Lushaka bursary recipients may qualify for fee-free funding at universities, the DBE expects the demand for Funza Lushaka bursaries to remain unchanged as the guarantee of employment provided by the bursary's work-back provision remains a strong incentive. The bursary scheme is allocated R4.1 billion over the MTEF period.

Providing meals for learners

The National School Nutrition Programme is directly aligned with the NDP's priority of eliminating poverty and supporting food security. Accordingly, in each year over the medium term, nine million learners in 19 950 quintile 1 to quintile 3 schools, as well as identified special schools, will be provided with meals through the programme. The programme is funded through the National School Nutrition Programme Grant, which is allocated R24.3 billion over the MTEF period. The decrease in schools covered by the programme over the medium term is mainly due to the closing and merging of small schools. Reductions approved by Cabinet on the grant amounting to R123.1 million over the medium term will not affect the current provision of meals to learners in quintile 1 to quintile 3 schools. However, the programme's extension to include breakfast and provide meals to selected learners in quintile 4 and quintile 5 schools will be slower.

Legislation

The DBE derives its mandate from the following legislation:

- the National Education Policy Act, 1996 (Act 27 of 1996), which inscribed into law the policies, legislative and monitoring; responsibilities of the Minister of Basic Education, and the formal relations between national and provincial authorities;
- the South African Schools Act, 1996 (Act 84 of 1996), which promotes access to quality education and democratic governance; in the schooling system, and makes schooling

compulsory for children aged seven to 15 to ensure that all learners have access to quality education without discrimination; and
- the Employment of Educators Act, 1998 (Act 76 of 1998), which regulates the professional, moral and ethical responsibilities of educators, as well as the competency requirements for teachers.

Budget

The DBE was allocated R24.5 billion for the 2019/20 financial year. Allocations to the department are set to increase at an average annual rate of 5.3%, from R24.5 billion in 2019/20 to R28.6 billion in 2022/23. Transfers and subsidies account for the bulk of the department's expenditure, increasing at an average annual rate of 5.4%, from R20.1 billion in 2019/20 to R23.5 billion in 2022/23.

Entity

South African Council for Educators (SACE)

The SACE aims to enhance the status of the teaching profession through registering educators appropriately, managing professional development and promoting a code of ethics for all educators. It was established in terms of the SACE Act, 2000 (Act 31 of 2000).

Before their employment, educators are required to register with the SACE, which has a register of about 500 000 educators. The council has strengthened entry requirements by checking applicants' professional standing.

The SACE has a number of programmes that promote the development of educators and enhance the status and image of the teaching profession. These include:
- the Professional Development Portfolio Project, which aims to encourage educators to reflect on their practice and take responsibility for their own professional development;
- teacher education and development research activities;
- setting up the Continuing Professional Teacher Development (CPTD) System;
- celebrating World Teachers' Day to acknowledge the work of educators; and ensuring that educators adhere to the SACE Code of Professional Ethics, and
- the CPTD System, which recognises professional development undertaken by educators on their own initiative. The council's total budget for 2020/21 was R107.3 million.

Role players

Provincial departments of education

The role of the DBE is to translate government's education and training policies and the provisions of the Constitution into a national education policy and legislative framework.

The DBE works closely with the provincial education departments (PEDs) to ensure that provincial budgets and strategies are in line with and support national policies.

The national department shares a concurrent role with the PEDs for basic schooling and ECD, but it is the responsibility of each PED to finance and manage its schools directly.

District offices are the PEDs' main interface with schools. Not only are they central to the process of gathering information and diagnosing problems in schools, but they also perform a vital support and intervention function.

This includes organising training for personnel; dealing with funding; resourcing bottlenecks; and solving labour-relations disputes. District offices are key to ensuring that school principals remain accountable to PEDs and that accountability lines within the school to the principal and to the school governing body are maintained.

Equity in education expenditure between and within provinces is achieved through the equitable division of national revenue between provinces, making use of the Equitable Shares Formula, the National Norms and Standards for School Funding, and the national post-provisioning norms.

The norms are progressive, with 60% of a province's non-personnel expenditure going to the poorest 40% of learners in public schools. The poorest 20% of learners receive 35% of non-personnel resources, while the richest 20% receive 5%.

Council of Education Ministers (CEM)

The CEM, comprising of the Ministers of Basic Education, and Higher Education and Training as well as the nine provincial members of the executive councils for education, meets regularly to discuss the promotion of the national education policy, share information and views on all aspects of education in South Africa and coordinate action on matters of mutual interest.

Heads of Education Departments Committee (HEDCOM)

The HEDCOM comprises the Director-General (DG) of the DBE, the deputy DGs of the national department and the heads of provincial departments of education.

The purpose of the committee is to facilitate the development of a national education system, share information and views on national education, coordinate administrative action on matters of mutual interest and advise the DBE on a range of specified matters related to the proper functioning of the national education system.

Umalusi Council for Quality Assurance in General and Further Education and Training

The council sets and maintains standards in general, and further education and training, through the development and management of the sector's qualifications sub-framework.

It is tasked with the certification of the following qualifications:
- Schools: NSC.
- Technical and Vocational Education and Training (TVET) colleges: the National Technical Certificate (Level N3) and the National Certificate Vocational.
- Adult learning centres: the General Education Training Certificate – Adults.

To issue learners with certificates that are credible, the council:
- develops and evaluates qualifications and curricula to ensure that they are of the expected standard;
- moderates assessment to ensure that it is fair, valid and reliable;
- accredits providers of education and training, as well as assessment;
- conducts research to ensure educational quality; and
- verifies the authenticity of certificates.

National Education Evaluation and Development Unit (NEEDU)

The NEEDU ensures effective evaluation of all educators based on the extent to which learner performance improves. Its core responsibilities include:

- providing the Minister of Basic Education with an independent account of the state of schools, including the quality of teaching and learning in all schools;
- providing an independent account on the development needs of the school education system;
- accounting for the attainment of the standards by all schools through a monitoring and evaluation system;
- identifying, on a systemwide basis, the critical factors that inhibit or advance school improvement and making focused recommendations for redressing problem areas that undermine school improvement;
- proposing appropriate sanctions to ensure that schools offer effective education for all learners;
- strengthening internal evaluation capacity within schools in ways that inform and complement external evaluation;
- monitoring the different levels of school support and the extent action is considered on proposed interventions, whether in the form of developmental support or disciplined action;
- reviewing and assessing existing monitoring, evaluation and support structures and instruments regularly, to ensure clarity and coherence in the way schools and teachers are assessed and supported;
- providing schools with evidence-based advice on how to pursue school improvement in their particular context; and
- promoting school improvement through the dissemination of good practice.

The NEEDU completed its first five-year cycle of systemic evaluations by identifying, on a system-wide basis at school, district and provincial levels, the factors that inhibit or advance school improvement. The findings were in the following areas:

- Reading: Teachers in the 134 rural schools visited did not have a good method to teach foundational level learners how to read. Actions taken include a Reading Advisory Committee to advise on reading matters, prioritising reading support in the provinces, and piloting the Early Grade Reading Assessment.
- Curriculum delivery: Gaps such as the development and implementation of Provincial Literacy and Numeracy were observed in curriculum delivery. Actions taken included asking for learners' books to monitor quality of writing and held school management teams and principals accountable for curriculum delivery.
- Use of learning and teaching support materials: Most learners in primary schools did not have sufficient learning and teaching support materials as well as textbooks for Mathematics and languages due to an ineffective retrieval system from previous learners. Actions taken included developing policies that ensured that textbooks were retrieved from schools that did not have a good retrieval system.
- Time management: Many schools experienced time management issues such as tardiness and absenteeism by learners and teachers; and teachers did not follow the time allocated to subjects on the timetable. Actions taken included monitoring of time management in schools by district and provincial officials. The DBE and the Minister of Basic Education engaged district and provincial officials in a discourse on time management.
- Assessment: Teachers in most schools were not able to construct/set assessment items of good quality. Learners perform "well" in school-based assessments but poorly in common and international assessments. Teachers assess what they have taught, not what they ought to have taught. Few schools had school improvement plans that were informed by assessments. Actions taken by the DBE included aligning PED school improvement plans with DBE plans. Subject committees and school-based assessment workshops were conducted in provinces to train advisors in setting up quality tasks.
- Special schools: The preliminary findings indicated that special schools did not have a systemic way of admitting learners and different curricula were used in each special school. Findings at the school level were presented to districts and PEDs to take necessary actions.

During the second five-year cycle (2017 – 2021), the focus shifted to development to ensure the system-wide impact of the NEEDU's findings.

Education Labour Relations Council (ELRC)

The ELRC serves the public education sector nationally. It is a statutory council, initially established by the Education Labour Relations Act, 1993 (Act 146 of 1993), but draws authority from the Education Labour Relations Act, 1995 (Act 66 of 1995).

The main purpose of the council is to maintain labour peace within public education through processes of dispute prevention and resolution.

These include collective bargaining between the educator unions and the DBE as the employer. The ELRC also conducts various workshops to increase the level of awareness and understanding of sound labour-relations procedures.

Educator unions

Educators are organised into six educator unions:

- National Professional Teachers' Organisation of South Africa.
- National Teachers' Union.
- South African Teachers' Union.
- Professional Educators' Union
- Cape Professional Teachers' Association.
- South African Democratic Teachers' Union.

A labour-relations framework was agreed on by the then Ministry of Education and the unions. This encompasses both traditional areas of negotiation and issues of professional concern, including pedagogy and quality-improvement strategies.

An agreement was reached on the Framework for the Establishment of an Occupation-specific Dispensation (OSD) for educators in public education. The OSD provides for dual career paths, where educators and specialists in classrooms can progress to levels where they earn salaries that are equal to or higher than those of managers without moving into management/supervisory posts.

It also provides for a new category of posts for teaching and learning specialists and senior learning and teaching specialists, as well as the creation of a cadre of education managers at school and office level.

Education during COVID-19

The COVID-19 pandemic brought heightened uncertainly in the education space. The government set out an evolving plan

of action to ensure that the academic year was not lost. This included a phased approach to opening schools which were closed in March 2020, the postponement of the May/June examinations and digital curriculum support.

Back to school phased approach

The closing of schools in March 2020, due to the COVID-19 pandemic, necessitated the need for government to revise the original school calendar which would have ended on 4 December 2020.

The education sector, health experts and the Coronavirus National Command Council worked together to ensure that the DBE complied with set COVID-19 protocols before schools could reopen. These included sanitation measures, availability of water, provision of masks and social distancing in the schools.

Once schools were given the greenlight for compliance, learners would return to the classroom in a phased and staggered approach, starting with the exit stage grades, which are grades 7 and 12. The return of learners was dependant on the preparedness of schools. The DBE also postponed the May/June Matric rewrite examinations, which were due to be written by more than 350 000, mainly part-time candidates, from 4 May 2020.

The DBE had not been able to complete its preparations, which included the printing and distribution of question papers, the appointment of invigilators, markers and the general readiness in marking centres, due to lockdown restrictions.

The 2020 May/June examinations were expected to be merged with the November examinations. The DBE estimated that over one million candidates would sit for the end-of-year matric examinations in this merged format, which included the Amended Senior Certificate and NSC. This would be the biggest matric examination ever seen in the country.

Home learning

According to the Social Impact of COVID-19 (Wave 3): Mobility, Migration, and Education in South Africa Survey by Statistics South Africa, 72.9% of children were participating in home learning during COVID-19 restrictions – a national lockdown period which began on 26 March 2020 where all South African residents, except a few categories of essential workers, had to stay home.

Home learning was also mostly supervised by mothers (59%) and 75.9% indicated that they had smart phones that could be used for this educational purpose, 36.1% had access to tablets, 61.2% to laptops and 6.1 % reported not having access to the internet. The survey also highlighted that 68.4% of children had difficulty in adapting with the new mode of learning. In addition, one out of four respondents thought it was safe for children to attend school, whilst eight out of 10 said attending school posed a risk to children.

Teacher Connect application

In September 2020, the DBE launched the Teacher Connect application (app) – a free real-time based mentorship platform available via WhatsApp. The app allows users to connect, be a helpdesk, and provide learning and mentoring through real-time dashboards. The app is also integrated with Health Check – a COVID-19 digital risk assessment and mapping tool that enables the Department of Health (DoH) to track and monitor potential cases.

The platform offers a one stop digital solution for teachers and learners in the time of COVID-19 pandemic. It was expected to assist in the phased reopening of schools. The tool is also expected to help the government to align with the DoH's protocols on screening, testing and linkages to care. It also places non-pharmaceutical measures in the hands of the schooling community, teachers, non-teaching staff, parents and learners.

To make use of the app, teachers, parents and learners can log into the platform to answer a few questions relating to COVID-19 symptoms and risk. Teachers and the school communities are required to do the health screen test all the time. Before entering the school premises, learners and staff should show that they have completed the daily health check and are cleared to continue to the school premises. Those classified as moderate or high risk are entered into the DoH's tracking and tracing process.

The app was endorsed by the director of the UNESCO regional office for Southern Africa Professor Hubert Gijzen – an important factor in light of the global education coalition, a flagship intervention driven by the UNESCO, which is aimed at protecting the right to education, under unprecedented disruption and beyond. The endorsement by the UNESCO confirms that South Africa is on the right track to protecting and supporting the most powerful influence on education – the teachers.

To access the app, teachers, parents and learners should save the Teacher Connect app number: 060 060 3333.

Higher Education, Science and Innovation

The DHET and the Department of Science and Innovation (DSI) now report to the Minister of Higher Education, Science and Inovation, but will still exist as separate votes. The two departments agreed that the DSI will carry the costs of the office of the Minister of Higher Education, Science and Innovation, and the DHET will carry the costs of the office of the Deputy Minister in the 2019/20 financial year.

Higher Education and Training

The NDP envisages that by 2030, South Africans should have greater access to post-school education and training opportunities through a system that is responsive to their needs. This is supported by Priority 2 (education, skills and health) of government's 2019 – 2024 Medium Term Strategic Framework. Over the medium term, the DHET will aim to give expression to these guiding policies by focusing on transforming universities and increasing student financial aid; expanding access to TVET colleges and improving their performance; developing artisans; and strengthening the governance of the community education and training sector.

The objective is to develop and support a quality higher and vocational education sector, and promote access to higher education, vocational education and skills development training opportunities.

Transforming universities and increasing student financial aid

Over the medium term, the DHET will focus on transforming the higher education sector into a high quality, demographically

representative system that provides students and staff with opportunities for access and success. To support transformation in the sector, the department will implement the University Capacity Development programme at a projected cost of R1.1 billion in 2020/21, the Historically Disadvantaged Institutions Development programme at a projected cost of R536.3 million in 2020/21, and the Infrastructure and Efficiency programme at a projected cost of R2.8 billion in 2020/21. These programmes are intended to increase student access; enhance staff development, particularly in teaching, research and leadership; and enhance management and curriculum development in priority areas in the university system by increasing allocations to universities with a high proportion of students and staff from historically disadvantaged population groups.

Ensuring that universities have adequate infrastructure for learning and student accommodation is pivotal for the sector over the medium term. However, spending in this regard has been slow due to delays in procurement, and poor performance by contractors and implementing agents. The DHET will prioritise the resolution of these issues over the medium term through the implementation of the Macro Infrastructure Framework to improve the delivery of infrastructure within the sector. Despite Cabinet approving reductions of an estimated R621.3 million over the MTEF period on allocations for university infrastructure in the University Education programme, R8.8 billion is allocated in the University Subsidies subprogramme for spending on university infrastructure. This allocation is expected to contribute to the department's aim of developing 200 000 new university beds by 2026.

The University Education programme constitutes 68.3% (R252.6 billion) of the department's budget over the medium term. Transfers of government subsidies to 26 universities through grants constitute the bulk of spending in this programme, and are projected to increase at an average annual rate of 5.3%, from R42.4 billion in 2019/20 to R49.4 billion in 2022/23. These transfers are intended for operational costs such as compensation of employees and the maintenance of assets related to university teaching, and learning and research activities. Transfer payments to the National Student Financial Aid Scheme (NSFAS) for bursaries to support undergraduate students from poor and working-class backgrounds in universities and TVET colleges are expected to amount to R109.6 billion over the medium term. These are set to increase at an average annual rate of 7.7%, from R30.5 billion in 2019/20 to R38.2 billion in 2022/23, despite R899.2 million of Cabinet's approved reductions to the programme being on the scheme's allocation for TVET colleges.

Expanding access to TVET colleges and improving their performance

Expanding access to skills programmes that address the labour market's need for intermediate skills that include practical components is one of the DHET's key mandates. Over the medium term, the department will work towards improving the quality of the post-school education and training system by establishing more entrepreneurship hubs to enable TVET college students to realise their potential and become actively engaged in the economy, either through employment in the labour market or self-employment. To facilitate this, teaching and learning support plans will be implemented in TVET colleges. Transfer payments to 50 colleges, in the TVET System Planning and Institutional Support subprogramme, are projected to increase at an average annual rate of 6.5%, from R11.6 billion in 2019/20 to R14 billion in 2022/23. This increase is despite Cabinet's approved reduction on allocations to the TVET programme of R2.6 billion over the MTEF period. The transfers include R1.2 billion for the operationalisation of three new TVET college campuses and R2.9 billion for the TVET Infrastructure Efficiency Grant.

Spending on compensation of employees accounts for an estimated 52.8% (R23.1 billion) of the TVET programme's budget of R43.7 billion over the medium term, increasing at an average annual rate of 5%. The TVET component accounts for an estimated 57.4% (more than 19 000) of the total number of personnel in the DHET.

Developing artisans

Over the medium term, the DHET aims to improve the public skills development system by managing the performance of service-level agreements with Sector Education And Training Authorities (SETAs) more effectively, and by providing funding to trade and quality assurance institutions for occupational qualifications. These institutions play a pivotal role in increasing the number of qualified artisans by rolling out skills programmes, learnerships, internships and apprenticeships, and by establishing partnerships with TVET colleges, universities and the labour market to provide opportunities for workplace experience.

Through the SETAs, over the medium term, 93 000 new artisans are expected to be registered for training and 75 000 artisan learners are expected to qualify. For this purpose, R347.8 million over the medium term is allocated.

Income generated through the skills development levy, which is collected from employers by the South African Revenue Service (SARS) and transferred to SETAs and the National Skills Fund (NSF) as a direct charge against the National Revenue Fund, contributes significantly to key performance areas of the public skills development system, including artisan development. This transfer is in the Skills Development programme, and is projected to increase at an average annual rate of 5.8%, from R18.6 billion in 2019/20 to R22 billion in 2022/23.

In August 2020, the Department of Public Works and Infrastructure signed a training agreement following the provision of R66 million to the Agricultural Sector Education Training Authority (AgriSETA) to train 400 Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP) participants to become artisans. This was part of the NSF to provide training through the EPWP on skills programmes, learnerships and artisan development programmes over a multi-year period.

AgriSETA was responsible for sourcing relevant workplaces for all 400 trainees in artisan development, as well as to certify all accreditation requirements of training and appointment of service delivery agents for the duration of the project.

The project aligns to the National Skills Development Strategy (NSDS) 3 and the National Skills Development Plan 2030 which prioritise artisan development programmes to address technical skills shortages.

Strengthening governance of the community education and training sector

The DHET recognises that improving the community education and training sector is key for development as it has the potential to provide students with access to a comprehensive range of programmes that lead to part and full qualifications and employment opportunities, including entrepreneurial opportunities. To ensure that the sector rises to its potential, the DHET will continue to prioritise the development and training of lecturers in community education and training colleges and learning centres by enabling them to upgrade their qualifications, with a particular focus on mathematics and science. The DHET has also strengthened its recruitment policies so that only qualified lecturers are employed in the sector.

Expenditure in the Community Education and Training programme is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 9.1%, from R2.1 billion in 2019/20 to R2.8 billion in 2022/23, with 93.4% of this spending earmarked for compensation of employees. About 39.2% of the department's personnel, mainly community education and training educators, are in this programme, in 3 276 community learning centres throughout the country.

Legislation

Key policies and legislation relating to Higher Education and Training in South Africa include:

- the Continuing Education and Training Act, 2006 (Act 16 of 2006), which provides for the regulation of continuing education and training, the establishment of governance structures for and the funding of public TVET colleges and community education and training colleges, the registration of private colleges, and the promotion of quality in continuing education and training;
- the Higher Education Act, 1997 (Act 101 of 1997), which provides for a unified national system of higher education;
- the National Qualifications Framework (NQF) Act, 2008 (Act 67 of 2008), which provides for the NQF, the South African Qualifications Authority and quality councils for the issuing and quality assurance of qualifications required by the sub-frameworks of the NQF.
- the NSFAS Act, 1999 (Act 56 of 1999), which provides for the granting of loans and bursaries to eligible students attending public higher education and training institutions, and the subsequent administration of such loans and bursaries;
- the Skills Development Act, 2008 (Act 37 of 2008), which enables the creation of the National Skills Authority, sector education and training authorities, the establishment of the Quality Council for Trades and Occupations, and the regulation of apprenticeships, learnerships and other matters relating to skills development; and
- the Skills Development Levies Act, 1999 (Act 9 of 1999), which provides for the imposition of skills development levies.

Budget

The DHET was allocated R107.8 billion for the 2019/20 financial year. It has a total budget of R369.5 billion over the medium term, of which 90.6% is earmarked for transfers and subsidies mainly to departmental agencies and accounts, and higher education institutions. Cabinet has approved budget reductions amounting to R4.5 billion over the MTEF period to be effected mainly on transfers and subsidies in the University Education programme and the TVET programme; a technical inflation adjustment amounting to R62.2 million in 2020/21 and R66.2 million in 2021/22 on compensation of employees across programmes; and R60.1 million on compensation of employees and goods and services as a result of the consolidation of the offices of the Ministers and Deputy Ministers of the DHET and the DSI through the 2019 National Macro Organisation of Government.

National Skills Development Strategy

The key driving force of the NSDS 3 (2011 – 2020) was improving the effectiveness and efficiency of the skills development system. It promotes the linking of skills development to career paths, career development and promoting sustainable employment and in-work progression. The emphasis is particularly on people who do not have relevant technical skills or adequate reading, writing and numeracy skills to enable them to find employment.

The development strategy promotes partnerships between employers, public education institutions, TVET colleges and universities and private training providers to ensure that cross-sectoral and intersectoral needs are addressed.

The NSDS 3 is guided by, and measured against, several key developmental and transformation imperatives, such as race, class, gender, geographic considerations, age differences, disability, and HIV and AIDS.

The NSDS 3 addresses the scope and mandate of the SETAs. The SETAs are expected to facilitate the delivery of sector-specific skills interventions that help achieve the goals of the strategy, address employer demand and deliver results. They must be recognised experts in relation to skills demand in their sectors.

The strategy emphasises the relevance, quality and sustainability of skills training programmes focusing on eight goals, namely:

- establishing a credible institutional mechanism for skills planning, and ensuring that the national need in relation to skills development is researched, documented and communicated to enable effective planning across all economic sectors;
- increasing access to occupation-specific programmes targeting intermediate and higher-level professional qualifications;
- promoting the growth of a public TVET college system that is responsive to sector, local, regional and national skills needs and priorities;
- addressing the low level of youth and adult language and numeracy skills to enable additional training;
- encouraging better use of workplace-based skills development;
- encouraging and supporting cooperatives, small enterprises, worker-initiated non-governmental organisation and community-training initiatives;
- increasing public-sector capacity for improved service delivery and supporting the building of a developmental state; and
- building career and vocational guidance.

Entities

National Skills Fund

The NSF was established in 1999 in terms of Section 27 of the Skills Development Act, 1998 (Act 97 of 1998).

The fund focuses on national priority projects identified in the NSDS, projects related to the achievement of the purposes of the Act, as determined by the DG of Higher Education and Training, and any activity undertaken by the Minister of Higher Education, Science and Innovation to achieve a national standard of good practice in skills development.

To create greater opportunities for young people who are out of school, the fund will invest in skills development initiatives in areas of national priority such as artisan development. The fund will also continue to provide training opportunities through work-integrated learning programmes at public and private institutions for learners to acquire skills, and provide financial support for bursaries and infrastructure to grow and enhance the quality of the post-school education and training system.

Over the MTEF period, the fund aims to contribute to the development of skills for 3 300 small, medium and micro enterprises (SMMEs) and cooperatives; facilitate the acquisition of various skills for 31 500 learners through community-based skills development initiatives; fund education and training for occupations in high demand for 111 000 learners; fund education and training programmes for 106 200 learners from rural areas; and pursue priority projects such as the development of infrastructure at TVET and community colleges aimed at expanding, integrating and improving the effectiveness of the post-school education and training system. To fund these skills development and infrastructure initiatives, total expenditure over the medium term is projected to be R16.1 billion, increasing from R4.3 billion in 2019/20 to R5.2 billion in 2022/23 at an average annual rate of 6.4%.

To improve its reporting on performance and financial management over the medium term, the fund will prioritise the implementation of a new ICT system funded from its administration budget, which is set to increase from R279.8 million in 2019/20 to R315.8 million in 2022/23 at an average annual rate of 4.1%.

The fund is set to derive an estimated 86.4% (R12.4 billion) of its total revenue over the medium term through the Skills Development Levy, which is collected from employers by the SARS and transferred to the fund as a direct charge against the National Revenue Fund. This transfer is projected to increase at an average annual rate of 5.8%, from R3.7 billion in 2019/20 to R4.4 billion in 2022/23.

National Student Financial Aid Scheme

The NSFAS was established in terms of the NSFAS Act of 1999. The scheme is responsible for providing loans and bursaries; developing criteria and conditions for the granting of loans and bursaries to eligible students in consultation with the Minister of Higher Education, Science and Innovation; raising funds; recovering past loans; maintaining and analysing a database of funded students; undertaking research for the better use of financial resources; advising the Minister on matters relating to student financial aid; and undertaking other functions assigned to it by the Act or the Minister.

Over the MTEF period, the scheme will continue to provide financial assistance to undergraduate university and TVET college students from households with a combined annual income of less than R350 000, and students with disabilities from households with a combined annual income of less than R600 000. To ensure that this core function is fulfilled, over the medium term, the scheme will focus on reviewing the business processes necessary for it to function optimally and improving efficiency. Funding for these activities over the medium term is within operational transfers from the DHE of R943.7 million and administration fees from stakeholders of R144.8 million.

The scheme aims to support an estimated 945 854 undergraduate students in universities and 871 401 students in TVET colleges over the MTEF period. Due to a lower than anticipated intake of students at TVET colleges, Cabinet has approved a reduction of R899.2 million over the medium term on the allocation for TVET student bursaries. Despite these reductions, the scheme's allocation from the DHET is set to increase at an average annual rate of 7.7%, from R30.8 billion in 2019/20 to R38.5 billion in 2022/23.

Transfers from the DHET for student funding constitute an estimated 91.5% (R109.6 billion) of the scheme's total projected revenue over the period ahead. The balance of R10.2 billion is derived mainly through transfers from the DBE, the NSF and SETAs; fees charged for administering bursaries; and interest on funds held in call accounts prior to disbursement.

Strengthening governance and administration

When the NSFAS was put under administration in 2018/19, it responded by focusing on disbursing funds to qualifying students instead of securing new funding. Since then, significant effort has been directed towards maintaining stability through making systematic monthly payments to institutions and students, rebuilding relationships across the sector, increasing the scheme's visibility, providing hands-on support at institutions across the country to expedite the resolution of queries that halted the flow of student funding, and restoring public trust. The re-establishment of the scheme is expected to be completed over the MTEF period through the institutionalisation of sound governance and management structures. This will be followed by the appointment of a new executive team, a focus on hiring technical human capital, and the transfer skills from consultants and advisers to permanent staff. Although the number of personnel in the scheme is set to decrease from 529 in 2019/20 to 509 in 2022/23, mainly due to planned retirements and the conclusion of contracts, spending on compensation of employees is set to increase from R220.1 million in 2019/20 to R252.2 million in 2022/23 at an average annual rate of 4.6%.

Improving efficiency

There has been a stagnation in recoveries since the announcement of free higher education and the settlement of historic debt. This has implications for the sustainability of the scheme's funding model. To address this, the NSFAS will focus on recovering loans from existing debtors through obtaining deduction agreements from public and private sector employees in terms of the National Credit Act, 2005 (Act 34 of 2005). As a result, the principal repayment of loaned funds is projected to be R2.7 billion over the medium term, increasing from R675.4 million in 2019/20 to R980.8 million in 2022/23 at an average annual rate of 13%. Based on these estimates, spending on debt collection is set to increase from R28.8 million in 2019/20 to R37.9 million in 2022/23.

In line with National Treasury's guidelines, the scheme has implemented a number of cost-containment measures that are not expected to have a negative impact on service delivery.

The payment of allowances for books, food, accommodation and transport directly into students' bank accounts instead of to institutions is expected to result in a decrease of R33 million in projected expenditure on administration fees over the medium term. Spending on consultants is expected to decrease from R40.6 million in 2019/20 to R12.6 million in 2022/23 due to the completion of forensic investigations and the integration and streamlining of data systems and processes. Further, by making better use of meetings, spending on workshops and conferences, and travel and subsistence is expected to be contained to an average annual rate of only 1.9% over the medium term, from R18.6 million in 2019/20 to R19.7 million in 2022/23.

Sector education and training authorities

The Skills Development Act of 1998 mandates SETAs to implement national, sector and workplace strategies to develop and improve skills in the South African workforce, provide learnerships that lead to recognised occupational qualifications, and fund skills development. The authorities derive their objectives directly from the NSDS, which aims to increase access to occupationally directed programmes, promote the growth of public TVET colleges, address low levels of youth and adult literacy and numeracy skills, and encourage the better use of workplace-based skills development.

Over the medium term, the authorities' core focus will be on strengthening and delivering relevant priority skills to South Africa's labour market, with particular emphasis on artisan development; apprenticeships; learnerships; internships; bursaries; partnerships with TVET colleges, universities and the market; improved institutional research capacity, monitoring and evaluation; and the development of SMMEs to provide work experience opportunities. Over the medium term, R29.5 billion from the Skills Development Levy Discretionary Grant is expected to fund the awarding of 45 529 bursaries to unemployed people and 32 763 bursaries to workers to attain higher education and training qualifications. An estimated 476 861 people are expected to enter skills programmes funded through payments made to employers for training and developing the skills of their workers or of unemployed people.

The authorities are expected to derive 88.3% (R49.6 billion) of their revenue over the MTEF period through the skills development levy, which is collected from employers by the SARS and transferred to the authorities as a direct charge against the National Revenue Fund. Levy payments are expected to increase at an average annual rate of 5.8%, from R14.9 billion in 2019/20 to R17.6 billion in 2022/23.

Universities

South Africa's higher education landscape comprises the following institutions:

- Cape Peninsula University of Technology
- Central University of Technology, Free State
- Durban Institute of Technology
- Mangosuthu University of Technology
- National Institute for Higher Education, Northern Cape
- National Institute for Higher Education, Mpumalanga
- Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University (NMMU)
- North-West University (NWU)
- Rhodes University
- Sefako Makgatho Health Sciences University
- Sol Plaatje University, Northern Cape
- Tshwane University of Technology
- University of Cape Town (UCT)
- University of Fort Hare
- University of the Free State
- University of Johannesburg
- University of KwaZulu-Natal
- University of Limpopo
- University of Mpumalanga
- University of Pretoria
- University of South Africa
- University of Stellenbosch
- University of Venda (UNIVEN)
- University of the Western Cape
- University of the Witwatersrand (Wits)
- University of Zululand
- Vaal University of Technology
- Walter Sisulu University, Eastern Cape

Science and Innovation

The DSI derives its mandate from the *1996 White Paper on Science and Technology,* which introduced the concept of the National System of Innovation (NSI), a set of interacting organisations and policies through which the country creates, acquires, diffuses and puts into practice new knowledge to help achieve individual and collective goals. A coordinated and efficient NSI will help South Africa achieve its national development priorities by promoting change through innovation, enabling all South Africans to enjoy the economic, sociopolitical and intellectual benefits of science, technology and innovation (STI).

The NDP also identifies STI as primary drivers of economic growth, job creation and socio-economic reform. Central to this identification is the emphasis of the *2019 White Paper on Science, Technology and Innovation* on the themes of inclusivity, transformation and partnerships. The White Paper is aimed at improving policy coherence, developing human capabilities, expanding knowledge, improving innovation performance and increasing investment. The work of the DSI is pivotal in realising these goals, particularly the initiatives it champions for innovation in the challenging fields of energy, food security, poverty alleviation and health care.

The DSI's strategic goals are to:

- develop the innovation capacity of the NSI to contribute to socio-economic development;
- enhance South Africa's capacity for generating knowledge to produce world-class research outputs and turn some advanced findings into innovation products and processes;
- develop appropriate human capital in the STI sector to meet the needs of society;
- build world-class infrastructure in the STI sector to extend the frontiers of knowledge, train the next generation of researchers, and enable technology development and transfer as well as knowledge exchange; and
- position South Africa as a strategic international research and development, and innovation partner and destination through the exchange of knowledge, capacity and resources between South Africa and its regional and other international partners, thus strengthening the NSI.

Over the medium term, the DSI will focus on developing human capital, generating and exploiting knowledge and innovation, and building and maintaining infrastructure for research and innovation.

Developing high-end human capital

High-end, innovative human capital is key to the development of a globally competitive, expanded and transformed NSI that is responsive to South Africa's developmental needs, in line with the imperatives articulated in the *2019 White Paper on Science, Technology and Innovation.* Accordingly, R15.3 billion over the medium term is allocated to the Research Development and Support programme for the development of human capital through the provision of postgraduate bursaries and scholarships, internships,support for emerging and established researchers, and strategic instruments such as the South African Research Chairs Initiative. This expenditure is designed to attract and retain talent in research and innovation at South African public universities and centres of excellence, which act as hubs to tackle persistent and emerging challenges in critical areas such as health, food security, human development, energy and biodiversity.

To date, the DSI has established 239 research chairs and 14 centres of excellence. Included in the programme's allocation is a transfer of R6.3 billion over the medium term to the National Research Foundation (NRF). This transfer is aimed at awarding 20 600 bursaries to postgraduate (bachelor of technology, honours and master's) students and 7 400 bursaries to doctoral students, mainly in the fields of science, engineering and technology, as part of programmes to prepare them for work; and improving the foundation's infrastructure.

Generating and exploiting knowledge and innovation

In its efforts to generate and exploit knowledge and innovation that is in line with government's priorities for inclusive economic growth, the DSI plans to invest R5.8 billion over the medium term in the development of industry, particularly in high-potential fields such as aresospace, advanced manufacturing, chemicals, advanced metals, mining and ICT; the creation of instruments to increase the competitiveness of SMMEs; and youth, by fully funding and co-funding 1 454 master's and doctoral students, and 590 interns over the medium term.

An estimated R3.4 billion of this amount, in the Sector Innovation and Green Economy subprogramme, is earmarked for advancing technology-based interventions intended to enhance South Africa's economic competitiveness and increase exports. The DSI plans to do this by creating an environment in which government can effectively partner with industry to co-fund research, development and innovation. Of this R3.4 billion, R123.6 million is expected to be invested in a range of ICT initiatives such as artificial intelligence, nanotechnology, quantum computing and biotechnology. Activities related to advancing the development of a joint industry-government mining R&D hub will be funded through an allocation of R1.2 billion over the medium term.

The DSI is set to receive an additional R1.2 billion over the medium term to set up the Sovereign Innovation Fund, which is expected to leverage co-investment by the public and private sectors to address gaps in technology commercialisation. The fund will be designed to complement and enhance existing funding instruments, and provide large-scale funding for the development and maturation of radical innovations and emerging industries.

Investing in infrastructure for research and innovation

The DSI's research infrastructure roadmap is intended to provide a strategic framework for planning, implementing, monitoring and evaluating the provision of research infrastructure necessary to create and maintain a competitive and sustainable NSI. Accordingly, the department aims to improve the outcomes and quality of research by providing and increasing access to research equipment and facilities through an allocation of R3.4 billion over the medium term in the Basic Science and Infrastructure subprogramme. A significant portion of this investment is earmarked for the ongoing implementation of roadmap projects in the thematic areas of humans and society; health, biological and food security; earth and environment; materials and manufacturing; energy; and physical sciences and engineering.

The national integrated cyberinfrastructure system supports the successful and sustainable implementation of national projects such as the MeerKAT and the Square Kilometre Array (SKA), as well as large research infrastructure required for the processing and transmission of large amounts of data dependent on the presence of a robust cyberinfrastructure system. To complete the installation of receivers on the MeerKAT project; maintain the MeerKAT telescope and operations; expand the MeerKAT telescope; and continue with strategic interventions such as the SKA, the human capital development bursary programme, and science outreach and socio-economic projects, the Astronomy subprogramme is allocated R2.6 billion over the MTEF period.

For scientific research in strategic research areas defined by South Africa's geographic advantage, such as palaeosciences, astronomy, climate change, indigenous knowledge, and marine and polar research, R782.5 million over the MTEF period is allocated to the Science Missions subprogramme.

Legislation

The DSI is governed by the following legislation:

- the Intellectual Property (IP) Rights from Publicly Financed Research and Development Act, 2008 (Act 51 of 2008), provides for the more effective use of IP emanating from publicly financed research and development (R&D), through the establishment of the National Intellectual Property Management Office (NIPMO), the Intellectual Property Fund, and offices of technology transfer at institutions;
- the Technology Innovation Act, 2008 (Act 26 of 2008), intends to promote the development and exploitation in the public interest of discoveries, inventions, innovations and improvements, and for that purpose establishes the Technology Innovation Agency;
- the South African National Space Agency (SANSA) Act, 2008 (Act 36 of 2008), establishes the SANSA to promote space science research, cooperation in space-related activities and the creation of an environment conducive for the development of space technologies by industry;
- the Natural Scientific Professions Act, 2003 (Act 27 of 2003), establishes the South African Council for Natural Scientific

Professions, and legislates the registration of professional natural scientists, natural scientists-in-training, natural science technologists and natural science technologists-in-training;

- the NRF Act, 1998 (Act 23 of 1998), establishes the NRF to promote basic and applied research, as well as the extension and transfer of knowledge in the various fields of science and technology;
- the National Advisory Council on Innovation (NACI) Act, 1997 (Act 55 of 1997), establishes the NACI to advise the Minister of Science and Innovation on the role and contribution of science, mathematics, innovation and technology in promoting and achieving national objectives;
- the Africa Institute of South Africa (AISA) Act, 2001 (Act 68 of 2001), establishes the AISA to promote knowledge and understanding of African affairs by encouraging leading social scientists;
- the Human Sciences Research Council (HSRC) Act, 2008 (Act 17 of 2008), provides for the HSRC, which carries out research that generates critical and independent knowledge relative to all aspects of human and social development;
- the Scientific Research Council Act, 1988 (Act 46 of 1988), refers to the activities of the Council for Scientific and Industrial Research (CSIR), one of the leading scientific and technological research, development and implementation organisations in Africa, which undertakes directed R&D for socio-economic growth in areas including the built environment, defence, the environmental sciences, as well as biological, chemical and laser technologies;
- the Astronomy Geographic Advantage Act, 2007 (Act 21 of 2007), provides for the preservation and protection of areas in South Africa that are uniquely suited to optical and radio astronomy, and for intergovernmental cooperation and public consultation on matters concerning nationally significant astronomy advantage areas;
- the Geoscience Amendment Act, 2010 (Act 12 of 2010), amends the Geoscience Act, 1993 (Act 100 of 1993), to mandate the Council for Geoscience to be the custodians of geotechnical information; to act as a national advisory authority in respect of geohazards related to infrastructure and development; and to undertake exploration and prospecting research in the mineral and petroleum sectors;
- the South African National Research Network (SANReN), which is responsible for the roll-out of a high-speed broadband network to all academic and research institutions in the country, was awarded a private electronic communications network licence exemption under the Electronic Communications Act, 2005 (Act 36 of 2005); and
- the Science and Technology Laws, Amendment Act, 2014 (Act 7 of 2014), seeks to, among other things, streamline the process for the nomination and appointment of members of the boards or councils of such entities as well as the filling of vacancies on the boards.

Budget

For the 2019/20 financial year, the DSI was allocated R8.1 billion. It plans to direct its allocation of R27.9 billion over the medium term towards investment in its key focus areas of developing human capital, generating and exploiting knowledge and innovation, and building and maintaining infrastructure for research and innovation. As the work of fostering, promoting and supporting innovation in scientific research and technology is conducted primarily by the department's entities, universities and non-profit organisations, transfers account for an estimated 92.6% (R25.9 billion) of the department's total budget over the MTEF period. Overall expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 5.8%, from R8.2 billion in 2019/20 to R9.7 billion in 2022/23. Compensation of employees is the second-largest spending item in the DSI, accounting for an estimated 4.8% (R1.3 billion) of the total expenditure over the medium term, increasing at an average annual rate of 6.4% mainly due to the expected filling of critical posts.

Cabinet has approved reductions to the department's baseline of R460.9 million over the medium term to be effected mainly on discretionary transfers and non-core goods and services. As such, these reductions are not expected to affect service delivery. An additional R1.2 billion over the medium term is allocated to set up the Sovereign Innovation Fund to ensure more effective technology commercialisation; R185 million to the CSIR to invest in infrastructure aimed at improving the efficiency and competitiveness of scientific research; and R100 million to the SANSA to invest in its space science programme. This allocation is expected to enable the agency to contribute to a range of national priorities, including job creation.

Entities

Council for Scientific and Industrial Research

The CSIR was established in 1945 and is governed in terms of the Scientific Research Council Act of 1988. The council fosters industrial and scientific development in the national interest through multidisciplinary research and technological innovation to improve the ability of the State to efficiently deliver basic services, in fields such as health, education, social security, energy and shelter, to all South Africans, and in so doing, reduce inequality. Over the medium term, the council will focus on conducting high-quality and relevant research, pursuing technological innovation to foster industrial and scientific development, and building on industrial development opportunities in fields such as pharmaceutical innovation and agro-processing.

The council's ability to generate revenue directly relates to its ability to attract and retain the requisite expertise to deliver favourable research outcomes. Competitive remuneration is a vital enabling factor for the retention of critical skills. As such, spending on compensation of employees accounts for an estimated 56.6% of the council's total expenditure over the medium term, increasing at an average annual rate of 6.8%, from R1.7 billion in 2019/20 to R2.1 billion in 2022/23. To retain a high calibre of staff, the council also offers nonmonetary employee benefits, such as training and exchange programmes, to strengthen its value proposition.

Transfers from the DSI of R2.4 billion over the medium term account for an estimated 23.7% of the council's total revenue over the period. Included in this amount is an allocation of R185 million for investment in infrastructure to improve the efficiency and competitiveness of scientific research. The council generates the remainder of its revenue through services rendered, such as contract research and development, income from IP, proceeds from technology transfer, and royalties. Total revenue over the MTEF period is expected to be R10.4 billion.

National Research Foundation

The NRF is mandated to support research through funding, the development of human resources and the provision of research facilities to enable knowledge creation, innovation and development in all fields of science and technology. It is also mandated to promote indigenous knowledge.

Over the medium term, the foundation will focus on the implementation of its 10-year strategy: Vision 2030. This will entail interventions to catalyse transformation in the science and technology system through measures such as creating grant-funding instruments that focus on women and black researchers, and fast-tracking black women doctoral graduates towards obtaining their foundation rating. The NRF aims to invest 19.1% (R2.5 billion) of its estimated total expenditure over the MTEF period to develop the next generation of researchers by providing free-standing scholarships, grant holder-linked bursaries and academic development programmes to honours, master's, doctoral and postdoctoral students. This investment is expected to support 3 770 master's and 2 987 doctoral students in 2020/21, although these numbers are likely to decrease in 2021/22 in line with the increase in fees for the 2021 academic year.

Total expenditure over the MTEF period is expected to be R13.8 billion, with spending on transfers and subsidies accounting for 60%. Estimated capital expenditure of R644 million over the medium term is earmarked primarily for the SKA, specialised equipment at iThemba Laboratory for Accelerator-Based Science for the isotope facility project, and the South African Radio Astronomy Observatory for the MeerKAT extension, comprising 20 antennae.

The foundation receives funding through the parliamentary grant, transfers from the DSI, contract funding for specific projects and programmes from other government departments and entities, and income generated through sales and interest earned. The Parliamentary Grant, which accounts for an estimated 91.7% (R12.5 billion) of projected revenue over the MTEF period, is used primarily to fund the foundation's programmes and operational activities. Due to Cabinet's decision to reduce expenditure across government, transfers from the DSI are projected to increase from R4 billion in 2019/20 to R4.2 billion in 2022/23, due to the completion of Phase 1 of the SKA.

The NRF Strategy 2020 will enable the organisation to intensify and strengthen African and global networks to position South Africa in the international arena in order to drive the knowledge economy.

In identifying a five-year strategy that supports the execution of its mandate, the organisation took stock of past performance and the realisation of its previous strategy, the NRF Vision 2015. In the NRF Strategy 2020, the organisation places renewed emphasis on the agency function of the NRF and its role as a policy implementer within the NSI. Playing a critical integration role across the National Science System, the NRF has the ability to catalyse societally beneficial R&D in support of knowledge generation, human capacity development and innovation.

Through the NRF Strategy 2020, the organisation will:

- continue to stimulate transformation across the sector through the use of targeted funding instruments;
- continue to support excellence with relevance – support knowledge generation that continues to have a positive impact on the quality of life of the people of South Africa;
- leverage off the NRF brand to accelerate engagement between countries on the African continent and globally; by funding human capacity development and knowledge generation for the benefit of Africa and the world; and
- practice the highest standards of corporate governance, fiscal management and compliance, whilst ensuring business efficacy. The core intent will remain an unwavering commitment to the transformation of the research landscape and a focus on excellence, thereby ensuring global relevance.

The foundation approaches the implementation of the NRF Strategy 2020 as an evolutionary process and will continue to develop customised instruments to address new challenges. In doing so, the NRF will engage within and beyond government-funded programmes and include the private sector in its endeavours to address the planned initiatives as set out below.

Role player

South African Council for Natural Scientific Professions (SACNASP)

The SACNASP's mandate is to provide a credible professional registration and regulatory body that allows natural scientists to establish, direct, sustain and ensure a high level of professionalism and ethical conscience in the natural scientific professions sector. The council will develop strategic priority science areas in which South Africa enjoys a competitive advantage through promoting research and training activities and outputs by installing eight large survey projects correlators in 2019/20, and 64 S-band science mode receivers on the MeerKAT telescope by 2020/21.

Policy mandate and programmes

The DSI derives its mandate from the *1996 White Paper on Science and Technology*, which introduces the concept of the NSI – a set of interacting organisations and policies through which a country creates, acquires, diffuses and puts into practice knowledge to help achieve individual and collective goals. A coordinated and efficient NSI will help the country achieve its national development priorities by promoting change through innovation, enabling all South Africans to enjoy economic, socio-political and intellectual benefits of STI.

The department supports the NSI in a number of ways, including:

- coordinating the development and implementation of country-level policies and strategies;
- creating systems and structures to coordinate the science, technology and innovation related work of government departments and agencies;
- developing measurement systems and undertaking analyses to create an evidence base for improving the performance of the NSI; and
- optimising the governance of publicly funded STI institutions to support government's priority outcomes.

Technology Innovation

The programme aims to enable R&D in space science and technology, energy security and the bioeconomy, and in the emerging and converging areas of nanotechnology, robotics, photonics and indigenous knowledge systems (IKS), to promote the realisation of commercial products, processes and services. It also promotes the protection and utilisation of intellectual property, technology transfer and technology

commercialisation through the implementation of enabling policies and interventions along the entire innovation value chain. Its subprogrammes include:

- Space Science, which supports the creation of an environment conducive to the implementation of the national space strategy and South African earth observation strategy, and that addresses the development of innovative applications and human capital to respond to national priorities and support socio-economic development.
- Hydrogen and Energy, which provides policy leadership in research, development and innovation initiatives in the energy sector. This subprogramme plays a key role in developing a sustainable and globally competitive South African energy knowledge base and industry.
- Bio-innovation, which leads the implementation of the national bio-economy strategy.
- Innovation Priorities and Instruments, which supports and strengthens the innovation policy package aimed at creating and sustaining an enabling environment for innovation, technology and development, and the commercialisation of publicly funded R&D initiatives.
- NIPMO – the implementing agency established to provide for the more effective use of IP emanating from publicly financed research and development.

International Cooperation and Resources

The programme strategically develops, promotes and manages international partnerships that strengthen the NSI. It enables an exchange of knowledge, capacity and resources between South Africa and its international partners, with a focus on building capacity to support STI in Africa. It also supports South African foreign policy through science diplomacy. Its subprogrammes include:

- Multilateral Cooperation and Africa, which advances and facilitates South Africa's participation in bilateral STI cooperation initiatives with other African partners; in African multilateral programmes, especially those of the Southern African Development Community and African Union; and in broader multilateral STI and innovation partnerships, with a strategic focus on South-South cooperation.
- International Resources, which works to increase the flow of international funding into South African STI initiatives, as well as African regional and continental programmes, through concerted efforts to promote foreign investment and the fostering of strategic relations with partners such as the European Union, as well as foundations and philanthropic organisations and the multinational private sector.
- Overseas Bilateral Cooperation, which promotes and facilitates South Africa's cooperation in bilateral STI agreements with partners in Europe, the Americas, Asia and Australasia, especially for human capital development and collaborative research and innovation; and secures support for joint cooperation with other African partners.

South Africa is regarded by many countries and private sector partners as a preferred and privileged partner for international cooperation in STI. On average, approximately 15% of annual R&D funding in South Africa comes from international investors.

Research, Development and Support

The programme provides an enabling environment for research and knowledge production that promotes the strategic development of basic sciences and priority science areas through the promotion of science human capital development, and the provision of research infrastructure and relevant research support, in pursuit of South Africa's transition to a knowledge economy. Its subprogrammes include:

- Human Capital and Science Promotions, which formulates and implements policies and strategies that address the availability of human capital for STI; provide fundamental support for research activities; and contribute to the development of a society that is knowledgeable about science, critically engaged and scientifically literate.
- Science Missions, which promotes the development of research, the production of scientific knowledge, and the development of human capital in fields of science in which South Africa enjoys a geographic advantage.
- Basic Science and Infrastructure, which facilitates the strategic implementation of research and innovation equipment and facilities to promote knowledge production in areas of national priority, and sustain innovation led by research and development.
- Astronomy, which supports the development of astronomical sciences around a new multiwavelength astronomy strategy, and provides strategic guidance and support to relevant astronomy institutions in the implementation of strategic astronomy programmes.

Socio-economic Innovation Partnerships

The programme enhances government's growth and development priority areas through targeted science and technology-based innovation interventions, and the development of strategic partnerships with other government departments, industry, research institutions and communities. Its subprogrammes include:

- Sector Innovation and Green Economy, which provides policy, strategy and direction for research and the development-led growth of strategic sectors of the economy; and supports the transition to a green economy.
- Innovation for Inclusive Development, which supports the development of science and technology-based innovations for tackling poverty, including the creation of sustainable jobs and human settlements, and the enhanced delivery of basic services.
- Science and Technology Investment, which leads and supports the development of indicators and instruments for monitoring investments in science and technology, the performance of the NSI, and ways of strengthening policy in relation to the NSI.
- Technology Localisation, Beneficiation and Advanced Manufacturing, which funds technology and innovation development programmes to advance strategic, sustainable economic growth for the medium and long term; sector development priorities; and service delivery.

National Research Facilities

The national research facilities managed by the NRF are clustered on the basis of their areas of specialisation aligned to the science missions of the National Research and Development Strategy.

South African Astronomical Observatory (SAAO)

The SAAO is the national centre for optical and infrared astronomy in South Africa. Its prime function is to conduct fundamental research in astronomy and astrophysics by providing a world-class facility and by promoting astronomy and astrophysics in southern Africa.

The SAAO contributes to South Africa's future development by creating and disseminating scientific knowledge, providing research infrastructure and providing an interface between science and society. It is also responsible for managing the operations of the South African Large Telescope.

Hartebeesthoek Radio Astronomy Observatory (HartRAO)

The HartRAO is a national facility of the NRF. Its radio astronomy research focuses on stellar evolution, pulsars and masers; and its Space Geodesy research uses space-based techniques to study the earth. The facility is also used by university students for carrying out research. It also undertakes science awareness programmes for schools and the general public.

South African Institute for Aquatic Biodiversity (SAIAB)

A national facility of the NRF, the SAIAB is famous for its association with the discovery of the enigmatic coelacanth and is internationally recognised for ichthyological research, dynamic research staff and active postgraduate school. The SAIAB provides unique skills and infrastructure support in marine, estuarine and freshwater ecosystems research, molecular research, collections and bioinformatics.

South African Environmental Observation Network (SAEON)

The SAEON is a business unit of the NRF and serves as a national platform for detecting, translating and predicting environmental change through scientifically designed observation systems and research. The SAEON also captures and makes long-term datasets freely accessible, and runs an education outreach programme. The SAEON has six nodes dispersed geographically across the country.

National Zoological Gardens (NZG)

The NZG is a rapidly transforming facility reporting to the NRF. It has an impressive animal collection, conservation centres, a Centre for Conservation Science as well as an NZG Academy. The NZG is well placed as an education and awareness platform for visitors comprising educators, learners, students, special interest groups and the general public.

iThemba Laboratory for Accelerator-Based Sciences

The iThemba Laboratory for Accelerator-Based Sciences is the continent's largest facility for particle and nuclear research as well as one of only a handful of facilities in the world producing radionuclides for commercial, research and medical applications. In addition, its facilities include a full radiotherapy clinic for the treatment of certain cancers using both proton and neutron therapy.

The facilty has secured government support to finance its strategic flagship project, South Africa Isotape Facility (SAIF) – an initiative that seeks to secure future sustainability of the facility by procuring a dedicated 70 MeV cyclotron accelerator to boost the production rate of a range of accelerator-based radioisotopes.

The strategic vision of the facility is to configure its radioisotope production division and establish SAIF in a flagship project geared to triple the current radioisorope income. The move is set to establish the facility as a formidable international entity with a secure market niche in the accelerator-based radiophamarceutical sector. An annual average of more than 155 000 patients worldwide benefit from cancer diagnostic radioisotopes produced using the separated sector cyclotron particle at iThemba Laboratory for Accelerator-Based Sciences.

Projects

Space science and technology

Square Kilometre Array

The multibillion-rand SKA, to be hosted in South Africa and Australia, will eventually extend into eight African countries and will be the world's biggest telescope. It is also one of the biggest-ever scientific projects and multinational collaborations in the name of science.

The radio telescope was expected to be operationally mature by 2020.

With thousands of linked radio wave receptors in Australia and in southern Africa, the SKA radio telescope will constantly scan space and feed the data to astronomers around the world.

The amounts of data being collected and transmitted by the SKA in a single day would take nearly two million years to play back on an iPod. This means the project requires supercomputing power and Big Data Management and Analytics capabilities on an unprecedented scale. The SKA is working with the world's most significant ICT powerhouses on the project.

One aspect of the project will see the Netherlands Institute for Radio Astronomy and the International Business Machines Corporation collaborating to research extremely fast, but low-power exascale computer systems, data transport and storage processes, and streaming analytics that will be required to read, store and analyse all the raw data that will be collected daily.

The SKA project will also have unprecedented data-connectivity needs. Meeting the advanced technological and engineering needs of this project will result in significant local skills development, revolutionise science and technology research and enable innovative new businesses and employment in the science, technology and engineering fields.

Aside from the benefits to African science, Big Data Management and Analytics capabilities could be the biggest spin-off from the SKA project.

The innovations, skills development and commercial potential emerging as a result of the project are huge. The potential is not just academic – the taxpayer-funded IP is developed to a point where it is ready to become commercialised and benefit the economy.

Human capital development is already taking place as a result of the SKA project, with bursaries and scholarships being granted to allow students to learn the necessary cutting-edge science, technology, mathematics and engineering skills to support the project. Because the SKA is a long-term project, over decades its effect will increase.

The Centre for High Performance Computing is a member of the international SKA Science Data Processing Consortium. With funding from the DSI, it is also supporting eight African

The DSI in cooperation with the CSIR, commissioned the set-up of a core situational awareness platform. The centre, led by the DoH, provides near real-time analytics and dashboards on the coronavirus outbreak per province, district, local municipality and ward.The centre is housed in a secure facility at the CSIR in Pretoria and provides a central situational awareness, giving a single view of the reality of the spread of the coronavirus across the country.

The COVID-19 Information Centre is one of several projects the DSI is working on in support of the government's response to the pandemic. Among the centre's capabilities is the Command and Control Collaborator (Cmore) app – a mobile visualisation platform used by community health workers to record screening data and symptoms in the field and transmit the information to the centre.

The Cmore app enables a near-live display of the results of the work being conducted by the government's Household Screening and Testing programme. The data and insights generated by the centre provide significant input for decision-making by the National Coronavirus Command Council.

SKA partner countries through an initiative where they have installed its new supercomputer to provide 1 000 teraflops (1 petaflop) of computing power to researchers. The facility was upgraded to meet the growing demand for use by university and industrial researchers. The SKA remains a major platform for cutting-edge innovation in domains such as supercomputing the high-speed transmission and processing of massive data sets.

Going forward, there will be a strong drive to leverage the SKA as a spearhead for other programmes – including next generation high performance computing challenges and Big Data challenges.

Two engineering consortia have been hard at work at their sites in Murchison, Western Australia and the Northern Cape, South Africa respectively, designing all the essential infrastructure required for the construction of this complex global project to get under way. This includes access roads, power, water and sanitation, buildings, antenna foundations, and the communication, security and site monitoring equipment required to support the SKA telescope.

The South African consortium, Infrastructure South Africa was led by the South African Radio Astronomy Observatory, which designed, built and operates the 64-dish SKA precursor telescope, the MeerKAT.

Following the successful review of the key infrastructure components of the SKA – considered a major engineering victory – the project will now move on to the bridging phase.

Information and communications technology

The DSI is leading the implementation of the national ICT Research, Development and Innovation Strategy. Its main purpose is to create an enabling environment for the innovation and manufacturing facilities and resources in South Africa.

The Centre for High-Performance Computing (CHPC), SANReN and the Very Large Databases are the three pillars of cyberinfrastructure that the DSI supports. Hosted by the UCT and managed by the CSIR's Meraka Institute, the CHPC was the first of its kind in South Africa and is making scientific supercomputing a reality for the country.

A major project for SANReN is the national backbone network, which aimed to connect all major metros in the country with a 10 gigabyte per second link.

SANReN, linking 215 research sites, consists of 1 500 kilometres (km) of dark fibre and 5 000 km of managed bandwidth. This network is complemented by significant international broadband capacity on the West Africa Cable System and the east coast SEACOM system, ensuring that the DSI's projects support competitive research and innovation as it prepares the national innovation system for the future.

SANReN connects more than 200 sites from Thohoyandou to Cape Town, including all the main campuses of all South African universities and most public research institutions, as well as global projects such as the SKA and the MeerKAT.

Indigenous knowledge systems

The IKS Policy serves as a guide for the recognition, understanding, integration and promotion of South Africa's wealth of indigenous knowledge resources.

One of the areas of action identified by the policy is the protection of indigenous knowledge and the holders of such knowledge against exploitation.

This includes ensuring that communities receive fair and sustained recognition and, where appropriate, financial remuneration for the use of this knowledge.

The indigenous knowledge of many communities embodies a deeply spiritualised and ancient relationship with the Earth's systems and cycles.

Traditional songs and languages, clothing, architecture, foods, motifs, daily rituals and mythological epics contain local survival information. Moreover, the diversity of indigenous cultures provides unique insights into how to live harmoniously within nature.

By sharing indigenous stories of vulnerability and adaptation, people learn how communities share ideas on how ancestral wisdom is being incorporated into climatic adaptation strategies.

By cherishing the value of indigenous knowledge, people can discover how best to adapt to a changing climate.

The DSI has three IKS priorities:

- The development of a regulatory environment for the protection of IKS.
- The development of the National Recordal System for the collection, recording, documenting, storage and management and dissemination of IKS in communities in the nine provinces of the country. Until orally transmitted and rapidly disappearing indigenous knowledge is recorded, it will be difficult to protect. The National Recordal System is the largest fingerprint initiative of the region to document and record indigenous knowledge.
- Applied research, specifically bio-prospecting activities. An example would be the Moritela Tshwene Tea Project near Zeerust in the North West.

In April 2020, a team of international astronomers uncovered unusual features in the radio galaxy ESO 137-006 using MeerKAT data. ESO 137-006 is a fascinating galaxy residing in the Norma cluster of galaxies, and one of the brightest objects in the southern sky at radio wavelengths.

The classical picture of a radio galaxy consists of an active galactic nucleus (hosting a growing supermassive black hole), shooting out two jets of plasma filled with particles that move at speeds close to the speed of light. The material within the jets eventually slows down and billows out, forming large radio lobes. ESO 137-006 is characterised by two such lobes of very bright radio emission.

The nature of these unusual features is unclear. It is possible that these features may be unique to ESO 137-006, because of its harsh environment, but it is equally possible that these features are common in radio galaxies but, so far, the team have been unable to detect them due to sensitivity and resolution limits. According to the team that made this discovery, which is composed of collaborators from South Africa and Italy and is partly funded by the European Research Council, further observations and theoretical efforts are required to clarify the nature of these newly discovered features.

A major achievement was to put in place an information infrastructure that would hold IKS in oral format.

In addition, two United Kingdom-South Africa bilateral research chairs have been awarded for research into food security – one co-hosted by the universities of the Western Cape and Pretoria, and the other based at the NMMU.

The DSI has also established indigenous knowledge studies centres of excellence at some of the country's universities. The centres will play a defining role in generating highly qualified Human Resources capacity in IKS.

Private sector involvement

South Africa's gold-mining industry works at deeper levels and under more difficult conditions than any other mining industry in the world.

The research into gold mining conducted by the CSIR's Mining Technology Group is concerned primarily with ensuring the health and safety of the workforce.

It includes those working in the areas of rock engineering and the underground environment.

Mining Technology's coal-mining research takes place on a smaller scale than that of gold mining, because the coal-mining industry is able to make use of various developments overseas.

Areas in which research is undertaken include strata control, mining, maximising the extraction of coal and the underground environment.

Research is also carried out by a large number of industrial companies with facilities to meet their specific needs.

The DSI continues to invest through Pelchem in the Fluorochemical Expansion Initiative.

The Auckland Park-based mining precinct, in Johannesburg, aims to safeguard the future of South Africa's mining industry through developing new people-centred technology and techniques to empower mines and prepare them for modern mining methods.

The mining precinct aims to arrest the current general decline in the local mining industry in south africa and to help it overcome significant obstacles in the future, which stem from narrower ore bodies and mines having to venture to deeper depths to find reserves.

This collaborative effort aims to link to other institutions, such as universities and research entities nationally and internationally.

Natural resource development

To reinvigorate the South African mining sector and to harness the vast amounts of existing and potential opportunities for industrial and manufacturing growth, it is crucial for the country to create the technologies and mining methods to push mining deeper in a commercially viable manner. South Africa needs a competitive mining industry. This will only be possible if science and innovation plays the quintessential role of changing the cost and exploitation horizons of the sector. None of the existing mining stakeholders (publically funded research institutions, private sector companies, universities, unions or government) have the scale to impact the situation alone in the long run. To achieve this, a critical mass of science and knowledge to push the frontiers of mining will require a national effort consisting of deep partnerships and collaborations across institutions and industries.

Women in Science Awards

The 2019 South African Women in Science Awards (SAWiSA) took place at the Boardwalk Hotel in Port Elizabeth. The aim of awards is to recognise the participation of women in research.

The event, which took place on 15 August 2019, was held under the theme, "Making the Fourth Industrial Revolution Work for Women".

The 2019 SAWiSA winners are:

- Distinguished Women Researchers: Natural (Physical and Life) and Engineering Sciences: Professor Michèle Ramsay, Wits.
- Distinguished Women Researchers: Humanities and Social Sciences: Professor Lunic Base Khoza, UNIVEN.
- Distinguished Woman Researchers: Research and Innovation: Professor Tania Samantha Douglas, UCT.
- Distinguished Young Women Researchers: Natural (Physical and Life) and Engineering Scienced: Professor Michéle Ramsay, Wits.
- Distinguished Young Women Researchers: Humanities and Social Sciences: Professor Martinette Kruger, NWU.
- Distinguished Young Women Researchers: Research and Innovation: Dr Sibongiseni Thomasia Tunzelana Thotsejane, UCT.

2019/20 SOUTH AFRICA YEARBOOK

Environment and Tourism

Environment, Forestry and Fisheries

The Department of Environment, Forestry and Fisheries (DEFF) is mandated to give effect to the right of citizens to an environment that is not harmful to their health or wellbeing, and to have the environment protected for the benefit of present and future generations. To this end, the department provides leadership towards sustainability in environmental management, conservation and protection for the benefit of South Africans and the global community.

The National Development Plan (NDP) sets out a vision for promoting environmental sustainability in South Africa by making an equitable transition to a low-carbon economy and transforming human settlements for improved local governance and spatial integration. Broadly, the NDP envisions environmental sustainability and transformation within the context of an integrated and inclusive economy that is supported by a capable and developmental state. This vision is given expression by Priority 1 (economic transformation and job creation), Priority 4 (spatial integration, human settlements and local government) and Priority 6 (a capable, ethical and developmental state) of government's 2019 – 2024 Medium Term Strategic Framework (MTSF), with which the work of the DEFF is closely aligned.

Accordingly, the department's ongoing objective is to develop strategies and policies aimed at regulating and promoting the sustainable use of inland and coastal natural resources; and reducing carbon emissions, atmospheric pollutants and the effect of climate change. As part of the national macro organisation of government, the Forestry and Fisheries functions of the former Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries have been shifted to the DEFF, with effect from 1 April 2020. Over the medium term, the DEFF will focus on creating jobs and work opportunities through the Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP). Other focus areas over the period include enforcing and monitoring compliance with environmental legislation, conserving marine ecosystems, investing in biodiversity, monitoring climate change and air quality, and managing waste activities.

Creating jobs and work opportunities through the EPWP

The DEFF's commitment to job creation is reflected in its targets to provide 115 880 full-time equivalent jobs (including 22 650 forestry full-time equivalent jobs) and 184 618 work opportunities through the EPWP over the medium term. These jobs and work opportunities will be made available through projects and initiatives that focus on:

- restoring and rehabilitating degraded ecosystems (environmental protection and infrastructure programme);
- expanding the conservation estate (Working for Ecosystems);
- protecting, restoring and rehabilitating wetlands (Working for Wetlands);
- protecting water resources (Working for Water);
- managing land use sustainably (Working for Land);
- sustaining production, growth and transformation in the forestry sector (Working for Forests); and
- addressing the challenges faced by the fisheries sector (Working for Fisheries).

Through the Working for Forests project, the department aims to sustain production, growth and transformation in the forestry sector. The programme is expected to achieve this through the replantation of temporary unplanted areas, handing plantations over to communities, placing hectares (ha) of land under silvicultural practice (which includes weeding, pruning, coppice reduction and thinning), and restoring and rehabilitating ha of state indigenous forests and woodlands.

To address the challenge faced by the fisheries sector, R894.8 million is expected to be transferred to the Marine Living Resources Fund as part of the Working for Fisheries project over the medium term. The broader aim of the programme is to alleviate poverty while empowering beneficiaries to participate in the mainstream fishing economy. Projects include conserving fish stocks, constructing and maintaining aquaculture production systems and cleaning coastal areas. This investment is expected to result in the creation of 1 638 full-time equivalent jobs over the medium term.

The Working for Ecosystems project aims to reverse environmental degradation through ecological restoration and maintenance programmes. It also aims to regain natural habitat composition, structure and function and thereby enhancing ecosystem services, such as: carbon sequestration, water regulation and purification, reducing the risk of natural disasters by improving landscape/catchment stability and resilience.

The Working for Water project considers the development of people as an essential element of environmental conservation. Short-term contracts jobs created through the clearing activities are undertaken, with the emphasis on endeavouring to recruit women (the target is 60%), youth (20%) and people living with disabilities (5%).

The Working for Land project is an essential programme of the Natural Resource Management programmes. Its key objective is to ensure that degraded ecosystems are restored to their formal or original state wherein they are able to maintain or support the natural species of that system.

The Working for Wetlands project pursues its mandate of wetland rehabilitation and wise use in a manner that maximises employment creation, supports small emerging businesses, and transfers skills to its beneficiaries. In line with the EPWP norms, the programme targets those groups most excluded from the mainstream economy, with particular emphasis on women, youth and people with disabilities.

The Working on Fire project employs more than 5 000 young people who have been fully trained as veld and forest fire fighters and are stationed in more than 200 teams throughout South Africa. It addresses the prevention and control of wildland fires to enhance the sustainability and protection of life, poverty and the environment through the implementation of integrated fire management practices.

The Working on Waste project is a proactive and preventative measure which recognises that inadequate waste services may lead to litter which is not only visual pollution but may lead to health hazards and environmental degradation.

Spending on initiatives in the EPWP collectively accounts for 44.1% (R12 billion) of the DEFF's total budget over the Medium Term Expenditure Framework (MTEF) period.

Enforcing and monitoring compliance with environmental legislation

Effective compliance and enforcement underpins environmental

justice and the integrity of South Africa's regulatory system. As such, the DEFF will continue to enforce legislation and regulations governing international trade in wild animals and plants at ports of entry and exit. Deploying Environmental Management Inspectors (EMIs) and compliance and enforcement officials at all ports will require the procurement of office space, equipment to handle animals, safes and microchip scanners.

This will enable officials to inspect an estimated 495 environmental permits over the MTEF period to ensure that protected species and alien plants are not smuggled into and out of the country. An estimated R661 million is provided over the medium term for these activities.

Conserving marine ecosystems

The DEFF plans to continue supporting research voyages to Antarctica, Marion Island and Gough Island. These expeditions support long-term biological, environmental and meteorological research. To carry out this work, the operation and manning of two research vessels accounts for an estimated 23.6% (R380.5 million) of total expenditure in the Oceans and Coasts programme over the medium term.

A further R330.6 million is allocated to implementing the Oceans Economy Strategy, which includes manufacturing for marine transport, offshore oil and gas exploration, aquaculture, marine protection services, and ocean governance.

Investing in biodiversity

In its efforts to ensure that a representative sample of the country's biodiversity is placed under formal protection, the DEFF plans to increase the area of land under conservation from 13.5% in 2018/19 to a projected 14.7% in 2021/22. This entails facilitating the identification of 2 000 ha for the cultivation of indigenous species across the country and providing training to 800 biodiversity entrepreneurs as part of the department's efforts to ensure that biodiversity contributes substantially to the economy. This is expected to result in expenditure of R156 million over the medium term, representing 6.1% of the programme's total budget of R2.6 billion over the same period. The bulk of this expenditure is for operational transfers to the South African National Parks (SANParks), the United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change (UNFCCC), the South African National Biodiversity Institute (SANBI), and the iSimangaliso Wetland Park Authority.

Monitoring climate change and air quality

To contribute towards the reduction in air pollution, the DEFF plans to increase the number of government-owned air quality monitoring stations reporting to the South African Air Quality Information System (SAAQIS) from 117 in 2018/19 to 125 in 2021/22. This will be made possible by an allocation of R148 million over the medium term. This allocation will also enable the department to roll out the Let's Respond Toolkit to a projected 40 municipalities to integrate their climate change responses into its planning documents.

This entails reviewing the development plans of municipalities and guiding them to be responsive to climate change, with particular focus on the effects of climate change on vulnerable communities and sustainable economic development.

Legislation and policies

The DEFF's mandate is derived from the following legislation:

- the National Environmental Management Act (NEMA), 1998 (Act 108 of 1998), which provides for specific legislation on biodiversity and heritage resources, oceans and coasts, climate change and air quality management, and waste and chemicals management;
- the National Environmental Management Amendment Act, 2004 (Act 8 of 2004), which streamlines the process of regulating and administering the Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA) process;
- the National Environmental Management: Air Quality Act, 2004 (Act 39 of 2004), which reforms the law regulating air quality in order to protect the environment by providing reasonable measures for preventing pollution and ecological degradation, and securing ecologically sustainable development; and provides for national norms and standards that regulate the monitoring of air quality;
- the National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act (NEMBA), 2004 (Act 10 of 2004), which significantly reforms South Africa's laws regulating biodiversity;
- the National Environmental Management: Integrated Coastal Management Act, 2008 (Act 24 of 2008), which promotes the conservation of the coastal environment, and ensures sustainable development practices and the use of natural resources;
- the National Environmental Management: Waste Act, 2008 (Act 59 of 2008), which reforms the law regulating waste management in order to protect health and the environment by providing reasonable measures for the prevention of pollution;
- the National Environmental Management: Protected Areas Amendment Act, 2009 (Act 15 of 2009), which provides for the assignment of national parks, special parks and heritage sites to South Africa in terms of the World Heritage Convention Act, 1999 (Act 49 of 1999);
- the National Forests Act, 1998 (Act 84 of 1998), which promotes the sustainable management and development of forests for the benefit of all and creates the conditions necessary to restructure forestry in state forests in relation to protection and sustainable use;
- the National Veld and Forest Fire Act, 1998 (Act 101 of 1998), which provides for the prevention and combating of veld, forest and mountain fires across South Africa; and
- the Marine Living Resources Act, 1998 (Act 8 of 1998), which deals with the long-term sustainable utilisation of marine living resources.

Budget and funding

The DEFF was allocated R7.5 billion for the 2019/20 financial year. Expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 3.5%, from R8.7 billion in 2019/20 to R9.6 billion in 2022/23, mainly due to the department's added functions. Spending on goods and services accounts for 54.6% (R15.1 billion) of the department's total expenditure, while spending on compensation of employees' accounts for 23.2% (R6.5 billion). In spite of its added functions, the department's funded establishment is expected to decrease from 4 226 posts in 2019/20 to 3 980 posts by 2022/23, due to the department implementing headcount reduction strategies. As such, the DEFF will terminate 459 positions (40 permanent and 419 fixed contracts) over the period.

Cabinet has approved reductions on the DEFF's baseline budget amounting to R1.5 billion over the medium term. These reductions will mainly be effected on goods and services, primarily for allocations to the EPWP. However, the DEFF will receive additional allocations amounting to R200 million over the MTEF period to strengthen the capacity of the Waste Bureau. An amount of R404.5 million has been reprioritised in the Environmental programmes over the medium term for implementing initiatives as part of Operation Phakisa (R117 million for the Chemicals and Waste Economy programme and R107.5 million for the Biodiversity Economy programme); and to support the full-scale rollout of the Youth Environmental programme in municipalities to coordinate and implement awareness and education initiatives on waste management (R180 million).

International environment days

South Africa has adopted the entire month of June to heighten awareness of environmental issues through various pertinent activities. It is during the month of June that the country celebrates World Environment Day, World Oceans Day and the World Day to Combat Desertification.

World Environment Day

World Environment Day is the biggest, most globally celebrated day for positive environmental action. Every year, participants organise clean-up campaigns, art exhibits, tree-planting drives, and concerts, dance recitals, recycling drives, social media campaigns and different contests themed around caring for the planet.

World Environment Day is the UN's principal vehicle for encouraging worldwide awareness and action for the environment. Over the years, it has grown to be a broad, global platform for public outreach that is widely celebrated by stakeholders in over 100 countries. It also serves as the 'people's day' for doing something positive for the environment, galvanising individual actions into a collective power that generates an exponentially positive impact on the planet.

The day is marked annually on 5 June as per the declaration of the UN in 1972. Each World Environment Day is organised around a theme that focuses attention on a particularly pressing environmental concern. The theme for 2019, "Beat Air Pollution," was a call to action to combat this global crisis.

World Oceans Day

World Oceans Day is aimed at appreciating, protecting, restoring and honouring ecosystem services and resources provided by oceans.

The international theme for the 2019 World Oceans Day was "Gender and the Ocean." This theme served as an opportunity to explore the gender dimensions of mankind's relationship with the ocean space. The theme opened a platform to address the importance of gender equality towards achieving effective and sustainable use of ocean resources and realising their full socio-economic potential. Gender equality refers to the equal valuing, by society, of both the similarities and differences among men and women, and the different roles they play in society. The theme aimed to build greater ocean and gender literacy as well as to encourage ways of promoting gender equality in marine-related activities. South Africa celebrated the day under the theme, "Women and the Ocean."

Historically, women's work and contributions in labour at sea, fisheries, policy making and resource management, marine scientific research, and marine and coastal conservation have been completely undermined and undocumented, however, there has been a gradual increase in documentation in the past two decades. Globally, women have made important contributions to inshore aquaculture and fisheries, processing and trading of fish and marine products, in coastal and marine solid waste management, and marine disaster risk reduction initiatives, however, gender challenges and injustices still persist.

World Day to Combat Desertification and Drought

World Day to Combat Desertification and Drought is commemorated on 17 June. It aims to promote community and ecosystem resilience while improving the human condition particularly in dry lands. The period 2010 – 2020 has been declared the UN Decade for Deserts and the Fight against Desertification.

World Day to Combat Desertification and Drought 2019 was held under the theme "Let's Grow the Future Together".

World Wildlife Day

World Wildlife Day is celebrated annually on 3 March. The theme of World Wildlife Day 2020, "Sustaining all life on Earth", encompassed all wild animal and plant species as a component of biodiversity, as well as the livelihoods of people, especially those who live closest to the nature.

Celebrations came at a time when South Africa is making progress in the fight against rhino poaching, with figures showing a steady decline for the fourth consecutive year. Plans to combat wildlife crime are constantly being updated and adapted to meet the incessant and ever-present threat. Entities such as the SANParks, the SANBI, Council for Scientific and Industrial Research, iSimanagaliso, and provincial conservation agencies work together to ensure that

Important dates on the world's environmental calendar

2 February	World Wetlands Day
20 March	Earth Day
22 March	World Water Day
23 March	World Meteorological Day
27 March	Earth Hour
22 April	Earth Day
22 May	International Day for Marine Biological Diversity
5 June	World Environment Day
8 June	World Oceans Day
17 June	World Day to Combat Desertification
5 – 11 September	World Water Week
16 September	International Day for the Protection of the Ozone Layer
18 September	International Coastal Clean-up Day
22 September	World Car-Free Day
5 October	World Habitat Day
11 December	International Mountain Day

plant and animal life is preserved and conserved for current and future generations.

Marine Week

Each year, the DEFF observes the National Marine Week to highlight the importance of oceans and the role they play in the life of all citizens. Commemoration of National Marine Week takes place during the second week of October annually.

The 2019 National Marine Week was celebrated under the theme: "My Ocean Future". The aim was to educate and encourage the general public, particularly the youth, about curbing the pollution problem. Emphasis was placed on countering pollution at the individual level and at the source. Most pollution originates from land before it gets transported to the coastal areas and the oceans through rivers.

The far-reaching impacts of marine litter pollution is recognised by the UN and several other key international organisations.

Projects, programmes and initiatives

Low carbon and climate resilient economy

South Africa is a board member of three significant funding bodies: namely the Green Climate Fund (GCF); the World Bank's Climate Investment Fund and the Global Environment Facility. The memberships enable the country to shape the policies, programming and governance of these respective institutions. The country is also a member of the Partnership for Action on Green Economy.

The SANBI and the Development Bank of Southern Africa (DBSA) are accredited as South African Direct Access Entities of the GCF. The increasing frequency and intensity of extreme weather events around South Africa – from flash flooding in some parts of the country to devastating drought in other parts, has prompted the government to sign the Paris Agreement to Combat Climate Change as an acknowledgement that the problem requires a global effort.

The country continues to play an active role on the international stage through participation in a number of key multilateral environmental agreements and their associated negotiations.

In addition to finalising the National Climate Change Adaptation Strategy, the country has developed a draft Climate Change Bill to provide effective national response for both mitigation and adaptation action.

South Africa is also in the process of implementing phase one of the greenhouse gas (GHG) emission reduction system, with carbon budgets already allocated to most of the significant emitters.

South Africa's Green Economy Strategy

There is increasing global recognition that today's economic growth and development trajectory is driven by the worldwide shift towards sustainable green economies.

South Africa views green economy as a sustainable development path based on addressing the interdependence between economic growth, social protection and natural ecosystem. The South African approach is to ensure that green economy programmes are to be supported by practical and implementable action plans, emphasising the importance of building on existing best processes, programmes, initiatives and indigenous knowledge in key sectors towards a resource efficient, low carbon and pro-employment growth path and that government alone cannot manage and fund a just transition to a green economy, that the private sector and civil society must play a fundamental role.

Through the DEFF's Green Economy Strategy, the department continues to work towards promoting equitable, inclusive, sustained and environmentally sound economic growth and social development to the benefit of all.

The Green Economy Strategy has eight key pillars, namely:

- green buildings and the built environment;
- sustainable transport and infrastructure;
- clean energy and energy efficiency;
- natural resource conservation and management;
- sustainable waste management;
- water management;
- sustainable consumption and production; and
- agriculture food production and forestry.

As outlined in the Integrated Resource Plan, by 2030 the DEFF aims to have sliced the country's energy demand significantly through technological innovation, good behavioural practice and public commitment to more efficient, sustainable and equitable energy use.

National Green Fund

The National Green Fund focuses on innovative projects that require financing to cover funding gaps. The fund has a portfolio of 20 active and two completed investment projects, representing investment of R679.8 million since the its inception.

Established in 2011, the fund provides catalytic finance for investment in green initiatives that will support South Africa's transition towards a green economy.

The fund is additional and complementary to existing fiscal allocations, focusing on innovative projects that need to cover a funding or financing gap. It is managed by the DBSA on behalf of the DEFF.

Over the medium term, the National Green Fund is expected to receive additional allocations from the economic competitiveness and support package of R95 million in 2018/19, R111 million in 2019/20 and R117.1 million in 2020/21. Direct investment into projects, including co-investments and additional support realised thus far, amount to R285 million, with contributions from the private sector amounting to R91 million.

Drawing investment from the private sector is one of the key mandates of the fund. As investments begin to show favourable returns, it is expected that private sector investors will invest without any state involvement. As a result, direct investment is expected to exceed R500 million over the medium term.

Over 1 600 direct job opportunities and at least 11 300 indirect job opportunities have been created. The majority of these job opportunities are created under the investment projects portfolio. More than 7 400 individuals have been directly trained and capacitated in the area of green skills.

Sustainable development and the green economy

South Africa continues to play an instrumental role within other global coordination mechanisms.

The final adoption of the Paris Agreement to Combat Climate Change in December 2015 represented a major step forward in international cooperation towards sustainable green, low-carbon and climate-resilient economies globally. During the Paris

negotiating process, South Africa played a key role as Chair of the Group of 77 plus China, representing 134 developing countries, and as lead negotiator for the Africa group.

In April 2016, South Africa joined 174 other countries in New York as a signatory to the Paris Agreement. The DEFF has started domestic ratification processes to enable the entry into force of the agreement in 2020.

This new legal framework will guide international efforts to limit GHG emissions and enable the transition to climate resilient societies and economies, particularly through the commitment by developed countries to provide financial, technology and capacity building support to developing countries in their effort to address the climate change challenge.

In the lead-up to the Paris climate change negotiations, South Africa submitted its Intended Nationally Determined Contribution (INDC) to the UNFCCC. South Africa's INDC is guided by the National Climate Change Response Policy and outlines the national goals for the country's adaptation effort; and it clearly outlines that South Africa will peak and plateau its GHG emissions by 2030.

Good Green Deeds

In 2019, the government launched the Good Green Deeds programme to mobilise citizens and social partners to act now to be a Good Samaritan for Green Deeds.

The programme is led by the DEFF and aims to promote environmental actions that take into consideration sustainable living practices. At the centre of this campaign are principles of environmental justice, an understanding that becoming environmentally conscious starts with one small action, and one small action can go on to inspire a global change. South African citizens have to work together to restore and maintain mother nature's majesty.

Climate Change Response Policy

The National Climate Change Response Policy is guided by the vision of the NDP of a transition to an inclusive, equitable, low-carbon and climate-resilient economy and society by 2030.

By 2030, South Africa plans to have an efficient, lower-carbon public transport system that makes everyday use of private vehicles an unnecessary extravagance.

The development of the first phase of desired emission reduction objectives and carbon budgets are well underway. The Carbon Budget system will be introduced in five-year phases – an initial phase from 2016 to 2020, and the subsequent phases from 2021 onwards.

Priority focus areas are communities most vulnerable to the impacts of climate change, namely the indigent, rural dwellers and women.

Given its demonstrated capacity, the SANBI has been appointed the national implementing entity of the Global Adaptation Fund.

Pilot projects include the Greater uMngeni Catchment area in KwaZulu-Natal, the Mopani District in Limpopo and the Namaqua District in Northern Cape.

These projects, to the value of US$10 million, include the enhancement of early warning systems, protecting local communities from extreme weather events, and promoting climate smart agriculture practices.

The South African Weather Service (SAWS) continues to host the Global Atmospheric Watch Station at the Cape Point, which is one of only three in Africa. This network arose from the need to understand and control the increasing influence of human activity on the global atmosphere and provide climate change information and services.

People and parks

South Africa is home to more than nine million ha of protected areas network, which includes national parks, nature reserves and world heritage sites, equating to about 8% of the country's land.

These protected areas, among other things, serve as sites for conserving South Africa's ecosystems, protecting high biodiversity value and providing ecosystem services. Most of these protected areas are geographically located in rural areas, forming an integral system with rural communities whose livelihoods and cultures are closely dependent on by these communities.

Wildlife Economy

South Africa is the third most biologically diverse country in the world, and therefore has one of the largest natural capital assets. This biodiversity is not only viable to the economic wellbeing of the country but can be used as a vehicle for social upliftment.

The country's biodiversity comes with a number of challenges, ranging from poaching to overexploitation. The Wildlife Economy in South Africa is centred on the sustainable use of indigenous biological resources, including biodiversity-derived products for trade and bio-prospecting, the hunting industry, agriculture and agro-processing of indigenous crops and vegetables and livestock breeds and indigenous marine resources and fisheries.

The focus of the Wildlife Economy is centred on the socio-economic benefits of eco-tourism, co-managed conservation areas and ancillary services to protected areas.

Harvesting indigenous biological resources is a significant source of income for communities. In many cases, one harvester supports an entire household, but the overdependence on these have led to the depletion and, at the extreme, the extinction of some of the biodiversity.

For example, the existing commercial market for trade in South African Bitter Aloe, or Aloe Ferox is well established, as is the trade in Pelargonium Sidoides, Buchu, Rooibos, Honey Bush, Devil's Claw and crocodile fat/oil. These indigenous biological resources are predominantly used in the manufacturing of herbal medicines, cosmetics, food flavours and fragrances.

Additional products with commercial potential for industrial or pharmaceutical application are micro-organisms, marine organisms, gums and resins, and venoms. Other significant drivers of the biodiversity economy include trophy hunting and the associated industry of taxidermy, sale of live game and sale of game meat. Further opportunities exist in the sale of game meat and skins for leather, bones and horns.

Another example of biodiversity-based industry is in silk production. Other biodiversity-based products include bee-keeping products (honey, wax, propollis and royal jelly), mopane worms, and ostrich eggshells and feathers.

Managing oceans and coastal conservation

The DEFF continues to support annual research voyages to Antarctica, Marion Island and Gough Island.

Servicing the contract with African Marine Solutions for the manning and operation of two research vessels, SA Agulhas II and SA Algoa, is one of the major cost drivers in the Oceans and Coasts programme, amounting to a projected R557 million over the medium term.

Implementing the Oceans Economy Strategy forms part of Operation Phakisa, a fast results delivery programme launched by the government in 2014. An estimated R311.1 million is provided over the MTEF period in the Oceans and Coasts programme for implementing the Oceans Economy Strategy, which includes activities in marine transport and manufacturing, offshore oil and gas exploration, aquaculture, marine protection services, ocean governance, small harbours, and coastal and marine tourism.

Entities

South African National Parks

The SANParks was established in terms of the National Environmental Management: Protected Areas Act of 2003. Its mandate is to conserve, protect, control and manage national parks and other defined protected areas and their biodiversity. The entity plays a significant role in the economy, as the presence of an efficiently managed system of national parks is a key component of the national tourism economy, and acts as a catalyst for local development. Through the implementation of the EPWP, the entity has provided significant support to small, medium and micro-enterprises, particularly in rural areas. Other initiatives that are intended to stimulate the development of rural enterprises include Wildlife Economy programmes, which involve the donation and loaning of wildlife, and the provision of technical expertise to communities and emerging game farmers to participate in the wildlife industry value chain. The entity also forms part of the National Wildlife Crime Reaction Unit, a multi-stakeholder operation established to combat poaching crimes in South Africa. Over the medium term, the entity aims to: fight poaching, particularly rhino poaching in the Kruger National Park and abalone poaching in Western Cape; roll out its infrastructure plan; and acquire land as part of its land inclusion plan.

Strategies to combat wildlife crime such as poaching involve the technological improvement of early warning systems and risk assessments, better coordination with law enforcement agencies, and the deployment of additional rangers. Accordingly, R788.6 million is allocated over the medium term for combating wildlife trafficking, and R77.8 million is allocated to combat poaching in marine protected areas (MPAs).

The entity's infrastructure plan, which was adopted in 2019, entails the construction of new roads and the development of new tourism infrastructure. This includes undertaking critical upgrades and refurbishing existing infrastructure, mainly in the Kruger National Park, for which R338 million is allocated over the MTEF period. In partnership with the DEFF, the park will finalise the construction of the Golden Gate Highlands National Park Dinosaur Interpretation Centre, valued at R120 million.

The entity manages almost four million ha of state-owned terrestrial protected areas. As per its land inclusion plan, over the medium term, the entity aims to acquire an additional 6 900 ha of land that represents South Africa's biodiversity, landscapes and associated heritage at a price to be established by the market.

The SANParks is responsible for 21 national parks in seven of the nine provinces of South Africa, with a total area of just over four million ha and comprising 67% of the protected areas under state management.

The national parks include:

- Addo Elephant National Park
- Agulhas National Park
- Ai-Ais/Richtersveld Transfrontier Park
- Augrabies Falls National Park
- Bontebok National Park
- Camdeboo National Park
- Garden Route (Tsitsikamma, Knysna and Wilderness) National Park
- Golden Gate Highlands National Park
- Karoo National Park
- Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park
- Kruger National Park
- Mapungubwe National Park
- Marakele National Park
- Mokala National Park
- Mountain Zebra National Park
- Namaqua National Park
- Table Mountain National Park (which incorporates the Cape of Good Hope, Table Mountain and Silvermine nature reserves)
- Tankwa Karoo National Park
- West Coast National Park.

Tourism activities within the parks include self-drive safaris, game-viewing, accommodation tariffs, adventure activities such as guided walks and hiking, birdwatching, 4x4 trails, sightseeing, cultural and historical experiences, mountain biking, golf, canoeing and swimming.

The organisation is working to increase commercial activities revenue to R1.6 billion in 2019/20.

Expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 4.8%, from R3.2 billion in 2019/20 to R3.7 billion in 2022/23. Spending on goods and services accounts for 47.5% (R5 billion) of the entity's total expenditure over the MTEF period, while spending on compensation of employees accounts for 41.3% (R4.3 billion). Revenue is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 4.1%, from R3.2 billion in 2019/20 to R3.6 billion in 2022/23. The entity derives 24.6% (R2.5 billion) of its revenue from transfers from the DEFF over the MTEF period, while 71.7% (R7.5 billion) of revenue is expected to be generated from visitor fees to national parks.

National Parks Week

Due to COVID-19 regulations, the 15th annual SANParks Week was moved from September to November 2020.

The free access week was postponed due to the COVID-19 regulations, which restricted the number of people allowed in public spaces.

The SANParks has implemented extra visitor management procedures in the parks to manage visitor volumes, in line with regulations to further mitigate the risk of the spread of the COVID-19 pandemic.

The SANParks Week is an annual campaign that gives all South African citizens the opportunity to enter most of the

parks, managed by the SANParks, for free, with the exclusion of Namaqua National Park and Boulders section at Table Mountain National Park.

The free access to parks does not include free access to accommodation facilities and other tourist activities.

Every year, the SANParks aims to increase the number of citizens that are granted free access to national parks during this time. Since the programme started in 2006, around 551 393 South Africans have been afforded the opportunity to enter national parks.

iSimangaliso Wetland Park Authority

The iSimangaliso Wetland Park Authority was established in 2000 in terms of the World Heritage Convention Act of 1999. It's mandate is to ensure that effective and active measures are taken in the park for the protection and conservation of the World Heritage Convention values; promote the empowerment of historically disadvantaged communities living adjacent to the park; promote, manage, oversee, market and facilitate optimal tourism and related development in the park; and encourage sustained investment and job creation. Its total budget for 2019/20 was R174.2 million.

The Marine Living Resources Fund

The fund was established in terms of the Marine Living Resources Act of 1998. Its mandate and core business is to manage the development and sustainable use of South Africa's marine resources and protect the integrity and quality of the marine ecosystem. The fund also ensures fair and equitable access to South Africa's marine resources for the benefit of all citizens. The fund's total budget for 2019/20 was R490.2 million.

South African Weather Service

The SAWS was established in terms of the SAWS Act, 2001 (Act 8 of 2001). Its core mandate is to provide two distinct services: the public good service, funded by government; and commercial services, where the user-pay principle applies. Key activities include:

- maintaining, extending and improving the quality of meteorological services;
- providing risk management information;
- collecting meteorological data over South Africa and the surrounding southern oceans; and
- fulfilling government's international obligations under the conventions of the World Meteorological Organisation and the International Civil Aviation Organisation.

In an effort to combat climate change, the SAWS has adopted the approach of building a WeatherSMART nation. This is expected to enhance the early warning system to ensure that climate and weather data, products and applications are available to all South Africans. A WeatherSMART nation is Safe, More informed, Alert, Resilient, and has Timeous access to relevant information and services.

The entity's total budget for 2019/20 was R463.8 million.

Role players

United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change

In support of the NDP, the government is working through the SANBI to spearhead an innovative programme of work on analysing ecological infrastructure and costing natural capital. This body of knowledge will empower the DEFF to make informed development-related decisions.

Its research management covers systematics and collections expansion, conservation and applied biodiversity science, and climate change. The SANBI is also responsible for ensuring that biodiversity knowledge influences policy, management and decision making.

Its biome programmes, which focus on South Africa's biodiversity hotspots, ensure that the country's most important biodiversity regions such as the grasslands, wetlands and succulent Karoo are protected in a sustainable and beneficial way.

The SANBI is increasingly embracing biodiversity in its broadest sense through the inclusion of the country's fauna as part of its taxonomic research mandate. It is coordinating a catalogue of all South Africa's species (at least 100 000), including animals, through the South African Tree of Life Project.

The institute operates environmental education programmes within its national botanical gardens, while outreach greening programmes focus on promoting indigenous gardening at disadvantaged schools in surrounding areas.

The SANBI is South Africa's official body for facilitating access to the Adaptation Fund, set up to help developing countries cope with climate change. It was established by the parties to the Kyoto Protocol of the UNFCCC to finance concrete adaptation projects and programmes in developing countries that are parties to the protocol.

The Department of Science and Innovation, the DEFF, the National Research Foundation (NRF) and the SANBI signed a business transfer agreement to enable the transfer of the national zoological gardens in Pretoria from the NRF to SANBI with effect from 1 April 2018.

For this purpose, amounts of R73.6 million in the 2019/20 financial year and R77.6 million in the 2020/21 financial year are being shifted from the foundation to the institute.

Environmental resources

National botanical gardens

The SANBI manages the 10 national botanical gardens, classified as conservation gardens, in seven of South Africa's nine provinces. Together, they conserve more than 7 500 ha of natural vegetation and associated biodiversity within their boundaries.

The national botanical gardens are natural escapes close to some of the country's urban centres, offering visitors a taste of the country's uniquely rich and colourful biodiversity. They feature facilities such as restaurants, function rooms and conference venues and include activities such as hikes, picnics and shopping.

The botanical gardens are:

- Kirstenbosh, Cape Town
- Pretoria, Tshwane
- Harold Porter, Betty's Bay
- Walter Sisulu, Roodepoort
- Hantam, Nieuwoudtville
- Free State, Bloemfontein
- Karoo Desert, Worcester
- KwaZulu-Natal, Pietermaritzburg
- Lowveld, Nelspruit

- Kwelera, East London.

The SANBI is also managing what is scheduled to become South Africa's 11th national botanical garden – the Thohoyandou Botanical Garden, in the far north-eastern corner of Limpopo.

National Herbarium

The National Herbarium, situated within the Pretoria National Botanical Garden, houses over one million scientific plant specimens in southern Africa.

The Crompton Herbarium in Cape Town focuses mainly on the flora of the winter rainfall region of southern Africa, while the KwaZulu-Natal Herbarium in Durban primarily focuses on the flora of the subtropical eastern region of South Africa, in particular the flora of the province.

Protected areas

The Convention on Biological Diversity (CBD), founded in 1992 at the Rio Summit, is a legally binding agreement on the use and conservation of biological diversity.

The CBD provides the framework for 196 parties to guide efforts to conserve and sustainably use biological diversity and equitably share the benefits from the use of genetic resources. In October 2010, the parties approved the Strategic Plan for Biodiversity for 2011 – 2020, including 20 Aichi Targets. There are a number of management categories of protected areas in South Africa, which conform to the accepted categories of the International Union for Conservation of Nature (IUCN).

South Africa has 528 protected areas, of which 20 are marine, totalling 7.5 million ha or 6.2% of the country's land area.

South Africa plans to expand the conservation areas under formal protection to the international standard of 10% of the total area of the country. The DEFF works closely with landowners to ensure their participation in the Stewardship programme, which allows land owners to use their land for biodiversity and conservation purposes. This is aimed at expanding the country's conservation estate.

Scientific reserves

Scientific reserves are sensitive and undisturbed areas managed for research, monitoring and the maintenance of genetic sources. Access is limited to researchers and staff. Examples of such areas are Marion Island and the Prince Edward Islands near Antarctica.

Wilderness areas

These areas are extensive, uninhabited and underdeveloped. Access is strictly controlled, with no vehicles allowed. The highest management priority is the maintenance of the intrinsic wilderness character.

Wilderness areas include the Cederberg Wilderness Area and Dassen Island in the Western Cape, and the Baviaanskloof Wilderness Area in the Eastern Cape.

Transfrontier conservation areas (TFCAs)

A TFCA is a cross-border region. The conservation status of the areas within a TFCA ranges from national parks, private game reserves and communal natural resource management areas to hunting-concession areas. Although fences, highways, railway lines or other barriers separate the constituent areas, they are managed jointly for long-term sustainable use of natural resources.

Unlike in transfrontier parks, free movement of animals between the components of a TFCA is not always possible. TFCAs facilitate and promote regional peace, cooperation and socio-economic development.

The success of TFCAs depends on community involvement. In turn, TFCAs provide local communities with opportunities to generate revenue.

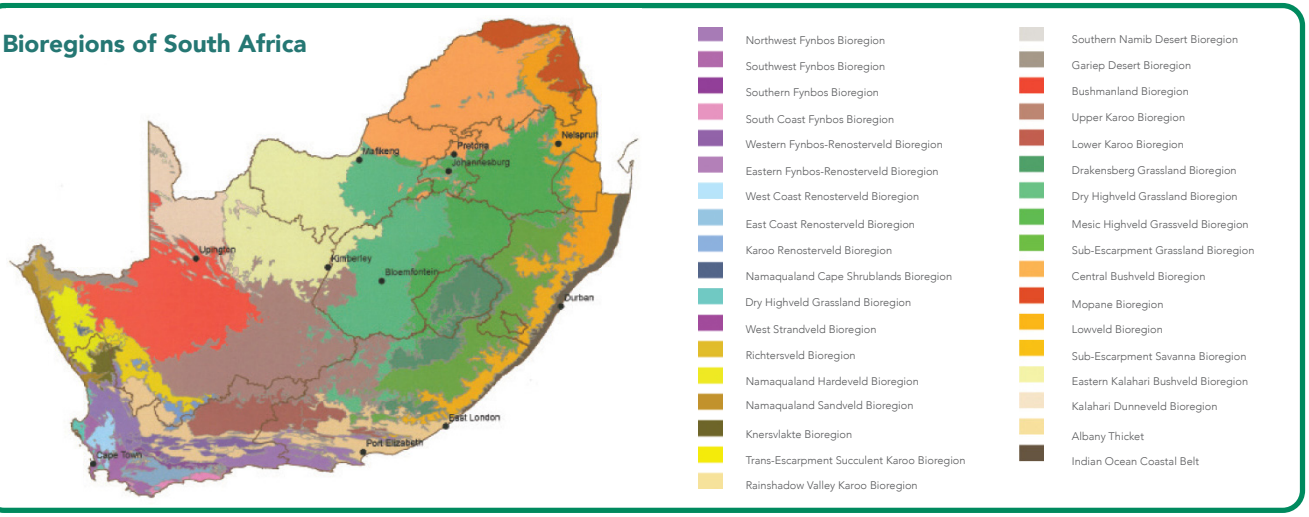
The seven TFCAs are:

- Ai-Ais/Richtersveld (Namibia, South Africa)
- Great Limpopo Transfrontier Park (Botswana, South Africa, Zimbabwe)
- Greater Mapungubwe
- Kavango-Zambezi (Angola, Botswana, Namibia, Zambia, Zimbabwe)
- Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park (Botswana, South Africa)
- Lubombo Transfrontier Conservation and Resource Area (Mozambique, South Africa, Eswatini)
- Maloti-Drakensberg Transfrontier Conservation and Development Area (Lesotho, South Africa).

Biosphere reserves

A biosphere designation is given by the UN Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO) to special landscapes where people are collaborating to ensure their environmental integrity as the basis for their economic development. Biosphere reserves are nominated by their governments for inclusion in the Man and the Biosphere programme.

Bioregions of South Africa



Whether they are terrestrial, freshwater, coastal or marine in nature, all are experimental areas where different approaches to integrated environmental management are tested. This helps to deepen knowledge of what works in conservation and sustainable development.

South Africa's biosphere reserves include:

- The 100 000-ha Kogelberg Reserve on the country's southern coast is in the middle of the Cape Floral Region and home to 1 880 different plant species, 77 of which are found only in this region.
- The Cape West Coast Biosphere Reserve starts in Cape Town in the southern suburb of Diep River and stretches up the west coast as far as the Berg River, encompassing parts of the Cape Floral Region. The reserve includes the Ramsar-protected Langebaan Lagoon as well as Dassen Island, which is home to a penguin colony.
- The Cape Winelands Biosphere Reserve includes a part of the Cape Floral Region, as well as the wine-growing region.
- In the north there is the Waterberg Biosphere Reserve, an area of some 400 000 ha in Limpopo. It is an important catchment area for the Limpopo Basin, with four large rivers originating within its borders – the Lephalale, Mokolo, Matlabas and Magalakwena rivers.
- The Kruger-to-Canyons Biosphere Reserve stretches from the Kruger National Park to the Blyde River Canyon. It is an important conservation area as it covers three biomes.
- The Gouritz Cluster Biosphere Reserve is recognised by the UNESCO in terms of the Man and Biosphere programme.

World heritage sites

A UNESCO world heritage site is listed by the organisation as being of special cultural or physical significance.

It catalogues, names and conserves sites of outstanding cultural or natural importance to the common heritage of humanity.

While each world heritage site remains part of the legal territory of the province wherein the site is located, the UNESCO considers it in the interest of the international community to preserve each site.

For a site to be awarded a world heritage status, it has to be recognised as having global historical or environmental significance, signify a phenomenal achievement of humanity, or reveal ancient civilisations. The recognition allows the country to access funds for conservation from the World Heritage Fund.

To be accepted onto the list, a country must meet stringent criteria and show how the site will be conserved.

South Africa has 10 world heritage sites proclaimed by the UNESCO:

- **Robben Island** is situated 11 kilometres (km) offshore from Cape Town – the island is most famous as the place where Nelson Mandela was imprisoned. It is now home to the world-renowned Robben Island Museum and has become a popular tourist attraction.
- **The iSimangaliso Wetland Park** was listed as South Africa's first world heritage site in December 1999 in recognition of its natural beauty and unique global values. The 332 000-ha park contains three major lake systems, eight interlinking ecosystems, 700-year-old fishing traditions, most of South Africa's remaining swamp forests, Africa's largest estuarine system, 526 bird species and 25 000-year-old coastal dunes – among the highest in the world. The name iSimangaliso means "miracle" and "wonder". The park also has four Ramsar sites.
- **The Cradle of Humankind** consisting of the hominid fossil sites at Swartkrans, Sterkfontein and Kromdraai. The world heritage status of Sterkfontein's fossil hominid sites was extended in July 2005 to include the Taung skull fossil site in North West province and the Mokopane Valley in Limpopo. The Cradle of Humankind has one of the world's richest concentrations of hominid fossils that provide evidence of human evolution over the past 3.5 million years. Found in Gauteng and North West, the fossil sites cover an area of 47 000 ha. The remains of ancient forms of animals, plants and hominids are encased in a bed of dolomite deposited around 2.5 billion years ago. In April 2010, a new species of hominid, Australopithecus sediba, estimated to be two million years old, was discovered in the Cradle of Humankind.
- **The Ukhahlamba-Drakensberg Park** (a mixed natural and cultural site) is a world heritage site covering 242 813 ha (2 428 square km (km²). The park spans parts of South Africa and Lesotho. The park includes the Royal Natal National Park, a provincial park, and the Drakensberg National Park, which covers part of the Drakensberg, the highest mountain in southern Africa. Under the Ramsar Convention, the park is in the List of Wetlands of International Importance.
- **Mapungubwe Heritage Site**: In September 2011, the DEFF, SANParks and Coal of Africa Limited signed a historical Memorandum of Agreement (MoA) as part of the environmental authorisation issued in accordance with the NEMA of 1998, to ensure the integrity of the Mapungubwe Cultural Landscape World Heritage Site. According to the MoA, the integrity of the world heritage site will be maintained through comprehensive biodiversity offset programmes, thereby optimising benefits to local communities.
- **Cape Floral Region:** The smallest of the six recognised floral kingdoms of the world, is an area of extraordinarily high diversity and home to more than 9 000 vascular plant species, of which 69% are endemic. Much of this diversity is associated with the fynbos biome. The economical worth of fynbos biodiversity, based on harvests of fynbos products (e.g. wildflowers) and ecotourism, is estimated to be in the region of R77 million a year. In July 2015, the UNESCO approved the extension of the Cape Floral Region Protected Areas World Heritage Site. At the time of inscription, the site was made up of eight protected areas comprising about 553 000 ha. The eight protected areas are located in the Eastern Cape and the Western Cape. The extension brings the size of the world heritage site to 1 094 742 ha and increases the number of protected area clusters making up the Cape Floral Region from eight to 13.
- **The Richtersveld Cultural and Botanical Landscape** covers 160 000 ha of dramatic mountainous desert in the North West province. It is the only area where the Nama still construct portable rush-covered domed houses, or Iharu oms.
- **Vredefort Dome**: About 120 km south-west of Johannesburg, is a representative part of a larger meteorite impact structure, or astrobleme. Dating back more than two million years, it is the oldest astrobleme yet found on Earth. With a radius of 190 km, it is also the largest and the most deeply eroded.

The Vredefort Dome bears witness to the world's greatest known single energy release event, which had devastating global effects including, according to some scientists, major evolutionary changes. It provides evidence of the Earth's geological history and is crucial to understanding of the evolution of the planet. Despite the importance of impact sites to the planet's history, geological activity on the Earth's surface has led to the disappearance of evidence from most of them, and Vredefort is the only example to provide a full geological profile of an astrobleme below the crater floor.

- **The Khomani Cultural Landscape** covers 959 100 ha, forming part of the Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park and including the whole Kalahari Gemsbok National Park, associated with the former San hunter-gatherers. It is a vast desert area associated with Khomani San culture since the Stone Age.

In South Africa, numerous private bodies are involved in conservation activities. More than 400 organisations concentrate on conservation, wildlife and the general environment, while more than 30 botanical and horticultural organisations concentrate on the conservation of the country's fauna and flora. These include the:

- BirdLife South Africa
- Botanical Society of South Africa
- Centre for Rehabilitation of Wildlife
- Conservation International
- Delta Environmental Centre
- Dolphin Action Protection Group
- EcoLink
- Endangered Wildlife Trust (EWT)
- Ezemvelo KZN Wildlife
- Green Trust
- Keep South Africa Beautiful
- KwaZulu-Natal Sharks Board
- National Conservancy Association of South Africa
- Peace Parks Foundation
- Southern African Foundation for the Conservation of Coastal Birds
- Trees and Food for Africa
- Wildlife and Environment Society of South Africa
- World Wildlife Fund of South Africa.

- **The Barberton Makhonjwa Mountains**: Situated in Mpumalanga, the site comprises 40% of the Barberton Greenstone Belt, one of the world's oldest geological structures. These represent the best-preserved succession of volcanic and sedimentary rock dating back 3.25 to 3.6 billion years. It features meteor-impact fallback breccias resulting from the impact of meteorites formed just after the Great Bombardment (4.6 to 3.8 billion years ago). It has attracted researchers from all over the world because of its most exposed layers of rock formations. Scientists found fossilised bacteria under thin layers of rock thought to be 3.2 billion years old.

Habitat and wildlife management areas

These areas are subject to human intervention, based on research into the requirements of specific species for survival. They include conservancies; provincial, regional or private reserves created for the conservation of species habitats or biotic communities; marshes; lakes; and nesting and feeding areas.

Protected land and seascapes

These areas are products of the harmonious interaction of people and nature, and include natural environments protected in terms of the Environment Conservation Act, 1989 (Act 73 of 1989), scenic landscapes and historical urban landscapes.

Sustainable-use areas

These emphasise the sustainable use of protected areas such as the Kosi Bay Lake System in KwaZulu-Natal.

Nature areas in private ownership are proclaimed and managed to curtail undesirable development in areas with high aesthetic or conservation potential.

Conservancies are formed to involve the ordinary landowner in conservation. Landowners can establish a conservancy where conservation principles are integrated with normal farming activities.

Wetlands

The IUCN identifies wetlands as the third most important support system on Earth.

Wetlands make up only 2.4% of South Africa's surface area but they are responsible for a disproportionately high value of ecological infrastructure that provides critical ecosystem services such as water purification and flood regulation, among others.

Wetlands support a range of specialised plant, insect and mammal life and also supply food, grazing, building and craft material. They are able to improve water quality, reduce flood impacts, control erosion and sustain river flows. Of special importance is the role wetlands play in ensuring a steady supply of clean water for communities and helping the government save hundreds of millions of rands that would be required to set up purification plants/facilities.

South Africa was one of the first six countries to become a signatory to the Convention on Wetlands of International Importance, called the Ramsar Convention, when it came into force in 1975. It is an intergovernmental treaty that provides the framework for national action and international cooperation for the conservation and wise use of wetlands and their resources.

The DEFF is responsible for the South African Wetlands Conservation programme, which ensures that the country's obligations in terms of the Ramsar Convention are met.

South Africa has 22 Ramsar sites, including:

- Barberspan
- Blesbokspruit Nature Reserve
- De Hoop Vlei
- De Mond (Heuningnes Estuary)
- Kosi Bay
- Langebaan
- Makuleke Wetlands
- Ndumo Game Reserve
- Ntsikeni Nature Reserve
- Nylsvley Nature Reserve
- Orange River Mouth Wetland
- Prince Edward Islands in Antarctica
- Seekoeivlei
- St Lucia
- the turtle beaches and coral reefs of Tongaland Ukhahlamba-Drakensberg Park
- Verlorenvlei Nature Reserve

- Wilderness Lakes.

South Africa is seen as a leader in the rehabilitation of wetlands. The damage done to wetlands can be reversed, as is seen at the Rietvlei Dam in Gauteng.

The government has pledged more than R75 million to rehabilitating wetlands. Rehabilitation is ongoing, with attention given to poverty-stricken areas.

World Wetlands Day is celebrated annually on 2 February. World Wetlands Day 2020 was held under the theme, "Wetlands and Biodiversity". Wetlands are rich with biodiversity and are a habitat for a dense variety of plant and animal species. Latest estimates show a global decline of biodiversity, while wetlands are disappearing three times faster than forests. The theme is a unique opportunity to highlight wetland biodiversity, its status, why it matters and promote actions to reverse its loss.

South Africa is one of the contracting parties to the Ramsar Convention. One of the obligations of the contracting parties to the convention is to commemorate World Wetlands Day.

South Africa is a water scarce country, and the water in many streams is polluted. Both droughts and floods are common. In this regard, wetlands play a vital role by removing toxic substances and sediment from water, while also improving downstream water quality and the overall health of communities.

Wetlands are able to reduce the severity of droughts and floods by regulating stream flow. They also help to purify water and provide habitat for many different plants and animals. Besides these indirect benefits to society, wetlands provide many direct benefits in the form of resources such as fibre for making crafts as well as recreational opportunities. However, lack of community awareness on the value and benefits of wetlands often leads to their transformation by humans.

Marine protected areas

MPAs conserve natural environments and assist in the management of fisheries by protecting and rebuilding economically important stocks. They are also used to develop and regulate coastal ecotourism opportunities.

The government shares joint responsibility for South Africa's MPAs with the SANParks and Ezemvelo KwaZulu-Natal Wildlife.

South Africa's MPAs include:

- Aliwal Shoal, KwaZulu-Natal
- Betty's Bay, Western Cape
- Bird Island, Eastern Cape
- De Hoop, Western Cape
- Dwesa-Cwebe, Eastern Cape
- False Bay, Western Cape
- Goukamma, Western Cape
- Hluleka, Eastern Cape
- iSimangaliso, KwaZulu-Natal
- Langebaan Lagoon, Sixteen Mile Beach, Malgas Island, Marcus Island, Jutten Island, Western Cape
- Pondoland, Eastern Cape.
- Robberg, Western Cape
- Sardinia Bay, Eastern Cape
- Stilbaai, Western Cape
- Table Mountain, Western Cape
- Trafalgar, KwaZulu-Natal
- Tsitsikamma, Western Cape.

Zoological gardens

Established in 1899 in Pretoria, and given national status in 1916, the National Zoological Gardens (NZG) of South Africa is the largest zoo in the country and the only one with national status. Over 600 000 people visit it every year.

The 85-ha NZG and houses 3 117 specimens of 209 mammal species, 1 358 specimens of 202 bird species, 3 871 specimens of 190 fish species, 388 specimens of four invertebrate species, 309 specimens of 93 reptile species, and 44 specimens of seven amphibian species.

It plays a major role in the conservation of wildlife, maintaining one of the largest animal collections in Africa.

The species are managed across two facilities stretching into Gauteng (Pretoria) and Limpopo (Mokopane). About 70% of the species are of African origin and 30% of global representation.

As a member of the World Association of Zoos and Aquariums and the African Association of Zoos and Aquaria, the NZG participates in several endangered species management programmes and successfully breeds several endangered species of both continental and global significance.

Among the endangered species the NZG contributes to conserving are the cheetah, rhino, ground hornbill, red-billed oxpecker and several endangered antelope species.

The animal collections of the NZG are the direct responsibility of the Animal Collection and Conservation Department which operates in two facilities: the main facility in Tshwane and the Mokopane Biodiversity Conservation Centre 200 km north of Tshwane.

The Johannesburg Zoological Gardens' core business is the accommodation, enrichment, husbandry and medical care of wild animals.

It also plays an important role in conservation projects of both indigenous and internationally endangered animals. The zoo joins other conservation organisations in programmes involving:

- wattled crane recovery;
- amphibian conservation;
- ground hornbill breeding and off-site surveys;
- vulture conservation; and
- chimpanzee conservation with the Jane Goodall Institute.

The EWT is a major partner. Mitchell Park in Durban is the country's second-oldest zoo after the NZG. There are about 30 projects on the cards for the zoo, including cheetah and chimpanzee enclosures.

Breeding centres

There are a number of game-breeding centres in South Africa. The NZG of South Africa is responsible for the management of the Mokopane Biodiversity Conservation Centre, covering 1 333 ha.

The centre supplements the NZG's breeding programme for various endangered animals, and its own animal collection.It is home to an abundance of exotic and indigenous fauna such as the lemur, the rare tsessebe, roan antelope and black rhino.

The De Wildt Cheetah and Wildlife Centre near Pretoria is best known for its captive breeding programme that contributed to the cheetah being removed from the endangered list in the South African Red Data Book – Terrestrial Mammals in 1986. De Wildt also breeds a number of rare and endangered African species.

The most spectacular of these is the magnificent king cheetah, which is a true cheetah, but with a variation in coat pattern and colouring. De Wildt also plays a major role in breeding and releasing wild dogs.

It has donated breeding nuclei of the highly endangered riverine rabbit and suni antelope to the Kruger National Park.

The De Wildt Vulture Unit is a rehabilitation and holding facility for injured, poisoned and disabled vultures.

The Hoedspruit Endangered Species Centre in Limpopo was established as a breeding programme for the then endangered cheetah.

The centre caters for, among other animals, five species of vulture: Cape griffins as well as white-backed, hooded, whiteheaded and lappet-faced vultures. The centre is also known for its wild dog breeding programme.

The Hoedspruit Research and Breeding programme includes the rare black-footed cat, vulnerable African wild cat, ground hornbills (in cooperation with the NZG), the bald ibis and the endangered blue crane. Elephant, white rhino, buffalo, caracal, sable antelope, bushbuck and tsessebe have also been cared for and rehabilitated there.

Aquariums and oceanariums

There are aquariums in Pretoria, Port Elizabeth, Cape Town, Durban and East London.

The Aquarium and Reptile Park of the NZG in Pretoria is the largest inland aquarium in Africa, with the largest collection of freshwater fish.

It is also the only aquarium in South Africa that exhibits a large variety of marine fish in artificial sea water and the only inland aquarium housing ragged-tooth sharks.

The Port Elizabeth Oceanarium is one of the city's major attractions. Exhibits include an underwater observation area, a dolphin research centre and various smaller tanks containing 40 different species of bony fish and two larger tanks that display sharks and stingrays.

The Two Oceans Aquarium at the Victoria and Alfred Waterfront, Cape Town, has more than 3 000 specimens representing some 300 species of fish, invertebrates, mammals, birds and plants supported by the waters along the Cape Coast.

The aquarium at uShaka Marine World in Durban incorporates both fresh and sea water species, and is the fifth-largest aquarium in the world by water volume. It comprises of Sea World, Dolphin World, Beach World, and Wet and Wild World.

Sea World has a unique shipwreck-themed aquarium, a penguin rookery and a 1 200-seater dolphin stadium, the largest dolphinarium in Africa.

Snake and reptile parks

The Port Elizabeth Snake Park at Bayworld has a wide variety of South African and foreign reptiles, including tortoises, boa constrictors, pythons, crocodiles, lizards and venomous snakes such as cobras, mambas and rattlers. Rare and threatened species, including the Madagascar ground boa, are housed in realistically landscaped glass enclosures.

The Aquarium and Reptile Park at the NZG houses 80 reptile species from all over the world.

The Hartbeespoort Dam Snake and Animal Park near Pretoria features one of the finest reptile collections in southern Africa. It offers seal shows and snake-handling demonstrations.

The Pure Venom Reptile Farm is one of the largest of South Africa's reptile parks. It is inland from Shelly Beach, on KwaZulu-Natal's South Coast.

The CrocRiver Enviro Park in Nelspruit is the largest facility of its type in Africa. The park offers, among other things, turtle, crocodile and fish ponds; the water monitor lizard pond; and the Desert House, in which a desert-like atmosphere has been created – this is home to the reptile gallery where indigenous and exotic reptiles from all over the world are displayed.

Khamai Reptile Centre's primary aims are conservation, breeding of endangered reptiles and education. Located outside Hoedspruit in Mpumalanga, it offers a close-up look at many local as well as exotic snakes, crocodiles and lizards.

Managing environmental resources

Wildlife protection

The Convention on the International Trade in Endangered Species of Wild Fauna and Flora (CITES) states that big cats, which are among the most widely recognised and admired animals, are facing many and varied threats caused mostly by human activities worldwide.

South Africa adheres to the principle of sustainable utilisation of natural resources, as well as principles set out in the NDP aimed at creating a climate-resilient society while growing the economy and increasing jobs. As such, a range of measures have been introduced to ensure that lion, leopard and cheetah populations are conserved and properly managed. This includes the implementation of a Biodiversity Management Plan for the African Lion. The Scientific Authority of South Africa conducted a Non-Detriment Finding (NDF) as required by the CITES. The NDF for lions state that there are currently no major threats to the wild and managed lion populations in South Africa, although the management of re-introduced wild lion needs some improvement. Minor, but non-detrimental threats include over-utilisation, disease, poaching and conflict with communities around protected areas.

Wildlife crime not only threatens natural resources, but also the economy through financial burdens and the loss of economic and development opportunities. As a country richly endowed with natural resources, South Africa is not immune to these challenges with criminal syndicates targeting iconic species, such as the cycad, rhino, elephant and lion, as well as species not often considered as being under threat – birds, tortoises, lizards and snakes.

The declaration of wildlife crime as a priority crime in South Africa has resulted in a multidisciplinary, multi-sectoral approach focused on collaboration through the national security structure. This involves border and customs officials, the National Prosecuting Authority (NPA), the South African Police Service (SAPS) and institutions such as the Airports Company of South Africa which manages international airports.

The country has also introduced the development of critical skills aimed at increasing its capacity to detect and investigate these crimes. The DEFF is currently working with World Wide Fund for Nature on a project to increase the country's ability to tackle wildlife trafficking. This project, funded by the United States Department of State's Bureau of International & Law Enforcement Affairs, focuses on the development of further training materials to bolster the country's national compliance

and enforcement programme, including an e-learning platform for officials, audio visual materials, specific curriculum and manuals.

Traveller awareness material has also been developed to highlight the threat that wildlife crime poses to the rich biodiversity and encouraging people not to support the illegal trade in wildlife.

EMIs in the DEFF check consignments of wildlife for exports from South Africa to ensure that that they meet all legal requirements. About 300 legal wildlife-related consignments are exported/imported on a monthly basis at the OR Tambo International Airport.

The South African Revenue Service (SARS) K9 unit at OR Tambo International Airport use specialist sniffer dogs to detect attempts to smuggle wildlife into South Africa.

Rhino poaching

Rhino poaching has been declared a National Priority Crime, and government continues to work as a team in the implementation of the Integrated Strategic Management of Rhinoceros.

This is a multi-sectoral, interdisciplinary approach which involves other stakeholders such as the SANParks, the Department of Home Affairs (DHA), the Department of Defence, the SAPS and the Hawks, the State Security Agency, the SARS, the Department of Justice and Constitutional Development (DOJ&CD), and provincial conservation authorities.

South Africa's largest game reserve, the Kruger National Park, houses a court which will combat rhino poaching. The Skukuza Regional Court periodically sits once a week.

For the fourth consecutive year, there has been a decline in rhino poaching, particularly in national parks. During 2019, 594 rhinos were poached in South Africa, down from 769 rhinos killed during the previous year. A total of 327 rhinos were poached in the Kruger National Park during 2019, compared to 421 in the previous year. During 2019, a number of successes were recorded through the number of arrests and convictions linked to rhino poaching and the illicit trade in rhino horns, which reflects the joint and integrated work of law enforcement entities. This includes: the Stock Theft and Endangered Species Unit of the SAPS, the Hawks, the SANParks, provincial park authorities and EMIs (Green Scorpions) and Customs as well as the NPA.

From January to December 2019, 178 alleged poachers were arrested within the Kruger National Park. At a national level, 332 arrests were effected in respect of both rhino poaching and rhino horn trafficking, and in excess of 57 major investigations were undertaken across the country. A total of 85 firearms were recovered during the year. The arrests resulted in a number of convictions as well as various high-profile cases presently before the courts. The lifting of the moratorium on the domestic trade in rhino horn does not mean that rhino horn in private possession can be sold without a permit. Nobody is allowed to trade rhino horn (including selling, donating, or in any way acquiring or disposing of a rhino horn) without a permit issued by the DEFF as well as relevant possession or transport permits issued by the provincial conservation departments. Commercial international trade in rhino horn is, and remains, prohibited in terms of the CITES provisions.

Rhino poaching decreased by almost 53% in the first six months of 2020, with 166 animals being killed for their horns across the country since the beginning of the year. During the first six months of 2019, 316 rhino were poached in South Africa.

Between 27 March 2020 and the end of June 2020, 46 rhinos were poached across the country. Of these, 14 rhinos were poached during April, 13 in May and 19 in June. In the Kruger National Park, 88 rhinos were poached in the first six months of 2020. The decrease in rhino poaching can also be attributed to the disruption of the supply chain resulting from the national travel restrictions, including limitations placed on movement across the country.

Managing rhino populations

The biological management initiative focuses on continued movement of rhinos to expand ranges and support rhino strongholds. In small parks and provincial reserves, the translocation of rhinos seeks to mimic how young animals disperse naturally. Within Kruger National Park, the translocation of rhinos from Kruger as part of South Africa's biological management innovations of expanding ranges and establishing additional rhino strongholds are challenged by the emergence of bovine tuberculosis in both black and white rhino, albeit at low incidence.

South Africa's veterinary regulations require several procedures to ensure that translocated rhinos do not serve as a source of spreading the disease into commercial stock production areas of South Africa. The development of efficient systems to overcome this challenge is in progress.

Even so, innovative biological management have used translocations within Kruger National Park as a mechanism to direct poaching to focus less on cows. This goes hand in hand with initiatives to dehorn rhinos embedded in strategic approaches that target individuals that frequent poaching hotspots, but more importantly, approaches that minimize the losses of cows. Complimenting these interventions are guarding initiatives that focus on regular individual monitoring of individual rhinos. These combinations of interventions seek to maximise the breeding potential of both black and white rhinos.

The integrated initiatives of the SANParks to manage its rhino population have had varied successes. Within Kruger National Park, the continued onslaught of poaching resulted in a continued decline of rhinos.

World Ranger Day

The DEFF celebrated World Ranger Day on 31 July 2020. The department paid tribute to the men and women committed to protecting the country's natural heritage, sometimes at the expense of their own safety. Rangers have remained at the forefront of the battle against poaching.

World Ranger Day, which is supported by the International Rangers Federation, is held annually to commemorate rangers who lose their lives in the line of duty, and to celebrate the commitment of rangers who battle poaching in protected areas.

To support the efforts of rangers, the DEFF, in collaboration with the provincial conservation and parks authorities, the private sector and non-governmental organisations (NGOs) continues to implement the decisions of the Rhino Lab (a discussion platform with outcomes aligned with key areas of rhino conservation, including management of rhino populations and law enforcement), with the latest initiative focusing on demarcating specific wildlife zones to ensure that additional

resources are directed to high risk areas. The DEFF is also in the process of establishing the Environmental Enforcement Fusion Centre, which is aimed at coordinating and improving the reactive and proactive response to rhino poaching and other wildlife crime. It has begun to consolidate rhino protection efforts across the country, standardising and boosting tactical level anti-poaching and introducing integrated information-led enforcement.

This is expected to strengthen the essential collaboration with the SAPS, the Directorate for Priority Crime Investigation, the DOJ&CD, and other sectors of the security forces to gather, analyse and share intelligence on wildlife trafficking to ensure that the international syndicate-related crimes can be effectively dealt with

International cooperation

International cooperation remains a critical component of the overall response strategy to halt rhino poaching, and related wildlife crime. South Africa continues to engage countries where rhino horn seizures take place in order to request that samples of the rhino horn DNA be sent to the country for analysis in line with the CITES resolutions. This enables the country to link the seized horns to poaching cases and live rhino or rhino horn stockpiles, thus providing key information to further support investigations and understand transit routes.

Since the last report on the rhino poaching situation and efforts being made to address the crime, rhino horn samples have been received for analysis from Vietnam to determine if the horns confiscated are linked to crimes in South Africa. The Hawks have also received very good co-operation from China, Hong Kong, Malaysia, Singapore, Vietnam and Japan in their efforts to combat wildlife trafficking.

Marine pollution and sustainability

South Africa has one of the world's busiest shipping routes and has experienced many oil spills over the years. It is estimated that 80% of the world's tanker traffic passes South Africa's coast.

The DEFF developed the National Contingency Plan for the Prevention and Combating of Pollution from Ships, in consultation with the South African Maritime Safety Authority and the Department of Transport (DoT). This includes disposing of, recovering or stabilising spilt oil and rehabilitating the environment.

With 80% of marine pollution emanating from land-based activities, the DEFF will be implementing the National Programme of Action for Land-based Sources of Pollution, while refining strategies for combating marine pollution from oil spills.

The DEFF has embarked on a process to adopt a new protocol on land-based sources of marine pollution under the amended Nairobi Convention for the Protection, Management and Development of the Marine and Coastal Environment of the Western Indian Ocean.

The department has also developed the Cape Zone Oil Spill Plan.

Protecting the coastline

To counter illegal activities along the coastline, as well as the country's 1 155 000-km^2 Exclusive Economic Zone (EEZ), the DEFF boosted its compliance unit with the appointment of more than 80 fishery-control officers and 100 honorary fishery-control officers, after the implementation of the Honorary Fishery-Control Officers Policy.

The department took delivery of four environmental protection vessels, as part of measures to protect marine and coastal resources, namely the Lillian Ngoyi, Ruth First, Victoria Mxenge and Sarah Baartman. They patrol up to the 200 nautical mile limit from the shore and the most remote reaches of the EEZ as well as around the Prince Edward Islands.

The vessels also conduct multilateral patrols in the Southern African Development Community coastal states.

The Phakisa approach

Operation Phakisa enables the government to implement its policies and programmes better, faster and more effectively.

The initiative was designed to fast-track the implementation of solutions on critical development issues. This is a unique initiative to address issues highlighted in the NDP Vision 2030 such as poverty, unemployment and inequality.

The DEFF has registered notable progress with regards to Operation Phakisa: Oceans Economy; Chemicals and Waste Phakisa, and Operation Phakisa: Biodiversity Economies.

Operation Phakisa: Oceans Economy

The DEFF continues to unlock the economic potential of South Africa's oceans, growing the gross domestic product (GDP) and creating more sustainable jobs – while ensuring that the country's oceans and coastal ecosystems are sustainably managed.

Highlights include the development of the National Guideline Towards the Establishment of Coastal Management Lines. This is intended to minimise risks posed by short- and long-term coastal processes such as storm surges, erosion and sea level rise. A national coastal access strategy is also being development to provide guidance around the public's access to closed off beaches.

Marine pollution is another challenge that threatens fragile ecosystems. South Africa has a number of measures in place to tackle this problem, including the National Pollution Laboratory operated by the Walter Sisulu University which is expected to start working in the near future. The lab will allow for in depth analysis of the samples that could not be done through mobile laboratories.

In addition, South Africa is amongst the countries that have endorsed the UN Environmental Programme's Clean Seas Campaign. The campaign is aimed at stepping up international, regional and national efforts to combat marine litter. As part of the campaign, the DEFF has announced the piloting of its Source-to-Sea Initiative – a strategy to investigate and combat pollution, in particular plastic pollution which threatens both freshwater and marine ecosystems.

The oceans have the potential to contribute up to R177 billion to the GDP and create just over one million jobs by 2033.

Operation Phakisa: Oceans Economy MPAs

The gazetting of a network of 20 new representative Operation Phakisa: Oceans Economy MPAs, has increased South Africa's marine ecosystem area under protection in the country's EEZ, from 0.4% to 5.4%, to provide protection to 90% of habitat types, as well as contribute to global protection in line with South Africa's international commitments.

New Operation Phakisa MPAs:

- Orange Shelf Edge
- Namaqua Fossil Forest
- Namaqua National Park
- Childs Bank
- Benguela Muds
- Cape Canyon
- Robben Island
- Southeast Atlantic Seamounts
- Brown Bank Corals
- Agulhas Bank Complex
- Agulhas Muds
- Southwest Indian Seamounts
- Agulhas Front
- Port Elizabeth Corals
- Addo Elephant National Park
- Amathole Offshore
- Protea Banks
- Aliwal Shoal
- uThukela
- iSimangaliso

The new network strives to support multiple objectives for biodiversity in alignment with Oceans Economy goals. The new MPAs represent seamounts, submarine canyons, volcanic pinnacles, and a variety of ecosystem types on the shelf, continental margin, and abyss in both the Indian and Atlantic oceans. The new network also provides the first protection for several threatened and fragile ecosystem types, including threatened mud, gravel, and shelf edge habitats and sensitive deep water scleractianian, stylasterine, and soft coral-dominated ecosystem types.

This new network of 20 MPAs will, among other things, contribute to fisheries sustainability, advance marine ecotourism, and help maintain resilience in ecosystems that are under stress from climate change.

Work on the new approved network of MPAs dates back to 2014, when the South African government endorsed a plan to achieve, as part of Operation Phakisa: Ocean Economy, a viable network of MPAs. South Africa's ocean space, which is one of the most varied in the world, is highly productive with rich biodiversity providing for living and non-living resources that contribute significantly to the country's economy and to job creation.

MPAs provide safe spaces in which fish can breed undisturbed. They are essential to maintain eco-certification of the South African deep-sea trawl fishery. This certification process assesses whether habitat and nursery areas for the hake fishery, are adequately protected. MPAs also contribute to growing South Africa's marine eco-tourism sector by providing undisturbed natural habitat for whales, sharks, seals, dolphins, turtles and seabirds for international and domestic tourists to experience.

An adequate network of MPAs will also provide the basis for ongoing resilience to the impact of climate change. Oceans are an essential component of the climate system, absorbing and transferring heat, and regulating the exchange of carbon dioxide with the atmosphere. With increasing carbon dioxide levels, and rising ocean temperatures, this regulatory capacity is at risk. The network of MPAs will assist in building ecological resilience, and therefore social and economic resilience in the growing ocean economy.

The new MPA network is a product of extensive consultation and negotiation with all stakeholders, which sought to ensure that the network is aligned with relevant policies and priorities for fisheries, aquaculture, tourism, as well as marine mining and oil exploration, while also protecting ecologically important areas.

Operation Phakisa: Biodiversity Economy

South Africa has a multi-faceted approach to the management of its rich natural heritage. The approach focuses on an inclusive, value-chain approach to the development of the biodiversity economy, taking into consideration the fact that communities are the primary custodians of the country's biodiversity.

Operation Phakisa: Chemicals and Waste

Waste economy has the potential to address inequality, poverty alleviation and create jobs. The DEFF continues to support waste pickers through various programmes such as the Recycling Enterprise Support programme.

The primary objective of the programme is to provide developmental funding for projects in the form of start-up grants. These projects are either start-up or pre-existing enterprises establishing buy-back centres, material recovery facilities, construction and demolishing solutions and plastic palletisation plants in line with the Operation Phakisa initiatives.

With regards to chemicals, Cabinet has recommended that South Africa should ratify the Minamata Convention on Mercury and the Kigali Amendment to the Montreal Protocol on the Protection of the Ozone Layer. The Kigali amendment will have co-benefits for mitigating climate change and ozone-depletion.

The South African government is also committed to minimize plastic pollution. The DEFF recently conducted a Plastic Material Study and is in the process of consulting with the cosmetics industry to phase out the use of microbeads in cosmetics. Plans are also underway to review the impact of the implementation of plastic bag policies.

In addition, the DEFF will continue to work with the packaging sector (paper, glass, plastic and metal) to increase over and above 58% the amount of waste diverted from landfill.

The department is expected to launch the Keep South Africa Clean Campaign with the aim of mobilizing citizens to become environmentally conscious and create a South Africa free of litter and illegal dumping.

Chemicals and waste management

South Africa has taken a number of steps to promote environmentally sound management of chemicals and waste throughout the life cycle, including being a party to a range of multilateral environment agreements and an active member in instruments on chemicals and waste. These include the:

- Rotterdam Convention on the Prior Informed Consent Procedure for Certain Hazardous Chemicals and Pesticides in International Trade;
- Stockholm Convention on Persistent Organic Pollutants;
- Montreal Protocol on Substances that Deplete the Ozone Layer;
- Basel Convention on the Control of Trans-boundary Movement of Hazardous Wastes; and

- Strategic Approach to International Chemicals Management, which is governed by the International Conference on Chemicals Management.

South Africa had a significant role in negotiations concerning the Intergovernmental Negotiating Committee to prepare a global legally binding instrument on mercury, including research into coal-dependent power or electric stations and the situational analysis of mercury in the country.

To align fragmented legislation, the DEFF established a National Multi-Stakeholder Committee for Chemicals Management to facilitate coordination.

In September 2020, Cabinet approved the 2020 National Waste Management Strategy (NWMS) to replace the 2011 NWMS. The strategy gives into effect the terms of the National Environmental Management: Waste Act of 2008. It directs the environmental protection programmes. It also drives a sustainable and environmentally friendly, inclusive economic growth, with three focus pillars – waste minimisation, effective and sustainable services, and waste awareness and compliance.

Waste Management Bureau

The Waste Management Bureau aims to reduce waste through recycling. The bureau monitors recycling plans and provides specialist services to government and recycling companies.

Over the medium term, the bureau plans to introduce tyre recycling initiatives, which were set to receive operational funding of R245 million in 2019/20.

The bureau also plans to introduce the recycling enterprise support programme, which will provide support services, training and advice to transporters, storage depot operators and tyre recyclers.

An amount of R155 million over the medium term has been allocated to the plastics programme, which will promote waste minimisation, create awareness in the plastics industry, expand collector networks and support rural collection through building the capacity of small, medium and micro-enterprises.

The National Regulator for Compulsory Specifications also receives transfers of R22.5 million over the medium term to implement compulsory specifications for plastic bags.

Youth Jobs in Waste and Township Greening

These projects are funded by the DEFF through its Environmental Protection and Infrastructure programme and aims to contribute towards poverty alleviation while empowering beneficiaries to participate in the mainstream economy.

Youth will benefit from this project, through the formation of self-help groups, which will positively impact on their knowledge of financial literacy and self-empowerment.

The Youth Jobs in Waste initiative is focused on landfill operation and management, planning administration relating to waste collection and planning and undertaking waste awareness campaigns. The people who will be assisting with the activities will be located in the municipalities for a year.

The DEFF aims to create eco-friendly greener open spaces that are safe, attractively designed, well managed for the benefit of all the country's communities as well as promoting maximum use of alternative energy sources and promote an environment that is clean, green and healthy for all.

The department has funded numerous projects within the Randfontein Municipality, which are being implemented using labour-intensive methods in line with the EPWP, with an aim of 58% women employment, 65% youths and 2% being people with disabilities.

The waste sector has been identified as a key role player in achieving the goal of economic upliftment through job creation as the DEFF works towards reaching the NDP's goal of creating an environmentally sustainable, climate change resilient, low-carbon economy and just society by 2030.

The Youth Jobs in Waste programme was designed to address some of the critical areas of assistance, including capacity-building, where youths are placed in municipalities for a period of a year to assist with administration relating to waste collection and planning.

Recycling

The National Recycling Forum is a non-profit organisation created to promote the recovery and recycling of recyclable materials in South Africa.

Members of the forum include representatives of:

- the formal recycling industry in South Africa
- government departments;
- regional recycling forums;
- local government-based organisations; and
- local government utilities and co-opted advisory members.

To promote the interests of its members and the formal recycling industry in South Africa, the National Recycling Forum:

- provides a national communication forum for key players in the field of recycling;
- interacts with central and provincial government to encourage the recycling of glass, paper, plastics, tin plate steel, used oil and electrical and electronic waste;
- facilitates the formation of regional forums that draw their memberships from enthusiastic and interested volunteers as well as small recyclers, in the major centres of South Africa; and
- encourages the establishment of buy-back centres and drop-off points through the activities of its members in the various centres.

Collect-a-Can, one of the oldest recycling initiatives in South Africa, has been instrumental in creating a culture of recycling in the country. It has obtained local and international acclaim for its contribution towards protecting the environment, as well as its significant contribution to job creation and poverty alleviation.

The founders of Collect-a-Can, ArcelorMittal South Africa and Nampak, started the company 23 years ago to proactively address the steel beverage can industry's responsibility to the environment. Their Cash for Cans initiative encourages cans to be collected and sold to Collect-a-Can for cash, because recovery and recycling aids job creation in many communities and creates an additional source of income for schools, NGOs, and other community groups.

Collect-a-Can has introduced millions of schoolchildren to the caring for the environment through its schools' competition.

Recycling has been valued at a contribution of as much as R50 billion to the South African economy. In effect, waste is now a renewable resource and not something to throw away.

Climate change and air-quality management

South Africa is making steady progress in implementing the National Climate Change Response Policy, despite having to balance its economic aspirations and environmental protection.

The government continues to engage actively and meaningfully in international climate change negotiations, specifically with the UNFCCC.

The policy implementation actions and activities flowing from this include the analysis of mitigation potential in key economic sectors as the basis for the establishment of desired emission reduction outcomes and defining the optimal mix of measures for achieving those outcomes, with the greatest benefit and least cost to the economy.

Air quality remains an important and challenging environmental issue in South Africa.

Technical and legislative tools have been developed to roll-out and monitor the implementation of national environmental management including the:

- National Framework for Air Quality Management;
- air quality model by-laws;
- Air-Quality Management Planning Manual; and
- National Ambient Air Quality Standards and Listed Activities and the Minimum Emission Standards.

Several of these tools were under review to accelerate the ongoing implementation of the Air Quality Act of 2004.

The SAAQIS contains the latest updated data on locations and can give the status of air quality or pollution for a specific day and time on its website: *www.saaqis.org.za*. The DEFF and the SAWS have upgraded the SAAQIS. South Africans can now view the state of air live from the government monitoring network on their smart phones and other gadgets.

A number of air-quality monitoring stations, mostly in Mpumalanga, eThekwini Municipality, the City of Johannesburg and the City of Tshwane, report to the SAAQIS.

South Africa reached the legally binding climate change agreement at the 21st Conference of the Parties (COP 21) to the UNFCC in Paris, France in December 2015.

The agreement was the culmination of a four-year negotiation process that was initiated in Durban in 2011 at the 17th Conference (COP17) of the Parties to the UNFCCC.

South Africa is among the countries that have signed the Paris Agreement – committing to ensuring that the country continued to play a positive role in the building of a low-carbon, job-creating and pro-development green economy.

To manage climate change and air quality effectively, the DEFF aims to increase the number of government-owned air quality monitoring stations reporting to the SAAQIS from 116 in 2017/18 to 125 in 2020/21.

Other activities include rolling out the Let's Respond Toolkit in 40 municipalities to provide a process map for integrating responses to climate change into municipalities' integrated development plans. To achieve this, R924 million is provided over the MTEF period.

Environmental impact management

The EIA is a tool to advance sustainable development. South Africa's EIA regulations are:

- streamlining the EIA process;
- introducing an approach where impact on the environment gets more attention; and
- introducing a listing notice dedicated to activities planned for predefined sensitive areas.

The Environmental Assessment Practitioners Association of South Africa (EAPASA) aims to:

- achieve effective quality assurance in environmental assessment practice in South Africa;
- promote the empowerment of black and female professionals within the environmental assessment field;
- encourage continued professional development for EAPs; and
- promote awareness of the purpose and practice of environmental assessment in South Africa.

The DEFF is already fully integrating impact assessments on waste and EIA.

In order to advance and fast-track environmental authorisations for key infrastructure projects, the department continues to undertake Strategic Environmental Assessments.

The vast scientific information from these assessments have aided in the streamlining of decision-making for South Africa's Strategic Infrastructure Projects led by The Presidency.

Aquaculture

Aquaculture incorporates the breeding, trading or rearing of aquatic organisms in a controlled or selected aquatic environment for recreational, commercial or subsistence purposes. It is divided into fresh-water culture and mariculture.

Species farmed in the latter include dusky kob, abalone, Pacific oysters, Mediterranean mussels and black mussels, among others. According to the National Aquaculture Strategic Framework, the sector is relatively small and the government wants to create a climate in which it can grow.

Special attention will be paid to freshwater aquaculture, as it has shown growth potential.

The government would also boost investments in research, development technology, transfer and extension, as well as education and training programmes in aquaculture.

Abalone fishing is severely restricted in South African waters, however, poaching is rife, as it is a lucrative trade.

Poaching has caused the decline in abalone numbers over the years. The species is highly coveted and fetches high prices, especially in the Far East.

The National Aquaculture Policy Framework was developed against the backdrop of a global aquaculture sector that has seen an increased demand for fishery products.

The policy provides a unified framework for the establishment and development of an industry that contributes towards sustainable job creation and increased investment.

In South Africa, marine and freshwater aquaculture presents a good opportunity to diversify fish production to satisfy local demand; contribute to food security, job creation, economic development and rural development; and improve export opportunities.

Aquaculture has been given a boost through its inclusion in the Oceans Economy: Operation Phakisa. While the marine-based mariculture part of aquaculture has been around for some years, focusing on species such as abalone, oysters and mussels, freshwater aquaculture is experiencing a rapid expansion, owing in part to government's multipronged aquaculture promotion campaign.

Globally, wild fish stocks have been dwindling, growing at a modest 1% per annum, while aquaculture has grown by 7%

and accounts for 44% of the global fish production. Therefore, aquaculture is seen as a quick win for growing the Oceans Economy.

Fisheries

The South African coastline covers more than 3 000 km, linking the east and west coasts of Africa. These shores are particularly rich in biodiversity, with some 10 000 species of marine plants and animals recorded. South Africa is among the global fishing nations that have identified the challenges within their fishing industry. With 22 commercial fisheries sectors and new fisheries being explored and experimented with, South Africa has two fisheries sector components:

- Wild capture fisheries include three distinct components, namely commercial, recreational and subsistence fisheries, each of which requires specific research and management interventions.
- The aquaculture (fish farming) sector is considered underdeveloped and as a result, has been prioritised, owing to declining wild stocks.

The productive waters of the West Coast support a variety of commercially exploited marine life, including hake, anchovy, sardine, horse mackerel, tuna, snoek, rock lobster and abalone.

On the east coast, squid, linefish and a wide range of intertidal resources provide an important source of food and livelihood for coastal communities.

Marine life that is not harvested, such as whales, dolphins and seabirds, is increasingly recognised as a valuable resource for nature-based tourism.

The main challenge in fisheries is to create a balance between maximising the social and economic potential of the fisheries industry, protecting the integrity and quality of the country's marine and coastal ecosystems, and addressing transformation in the sector.

In line with international trends, the DEFF recognises fisheries as an economic activity rather than a purely environmental or biodiversity matter.

The government has expanded the mandate for fisheries management by adding fresh-water and inland fisheries, as well as aquaculture, to the department's existing responsibilities.

The fisheries sector contributes roughly 0.1% to the GDP. It is more important for economic development in the Western Cape where 11 of the 13 proclaimed fishing harbours are situated. These contribute more than 5% to provincial GDP.

The total output is estimated at 600 000 tonnes (t) worth about R6 billion, depending on the pelagic catch of pilchards and anchovy, which could be as much as 600 000 t.

It is estimated that the direct employment in the industry constitutes approximately 27 000 jobs (16 000 in the primary sector and 11 000 in the secondary and tertiary sectors), while an additional 81 000 people are indirectly (net building, bait preparing, among others) employed in industries that are at least partially dependent on the fishing sector (figures based on industry estimates and the Total Allowable Catch (TAC) and Total Allowable Effort (TAE), calculated as a function of tonnage).

Fisheries output is determined by catch volumes, which in turn depends on the health and management of fish stocks, varying according to ecological changes and subjected to overexploitation through illegal, unreported and unregulated fishing activities.

The DEFF seeks to prevent overexploitation by means of assigning TAC and TAE per species, which are adjusted regularly depending on the estimated state of the resource. The department has also sought to promote transformation in the sector through inclusion of small-scale fishing communities. The Marine Living Resources Amendment Act, 2014 (Act 5 of 2014), grants small-scale fishing communities better access to fishing rights and resources.

The small-scale fishing sector is designed to address food security needs within the local community and allow fishers to derive maximum benefit through value-adding of products and accessing markets.

The effective management of the existing harbours and proclamation of additional new harbours support resource management.

Although wild catch fisheries appear unlikely to expand beyond their present levels, aquaculture is becoming more important as a substitute for wild capture fisheries.

South Africa has acceded to the Indian Ocean Tuna Commission and the Commission for the Conservation of Southern Bluefin Tuna, thereby allowing the country greater influence in negotiating for increased tuna quota allocations and access.

The associated benefits have resulted in the immediate increase in the allocation of Southern Bluefin Tuna from 150 t to 450 t until 2020.

As part of the transition to the new small-scale fishing sector, 20 small-scale fishing cooperatives with 1 591 members, in the Eastern Cape were awarded 15-year small-scale fishing rights in November 2019.The government awarded certificates to fishing cooperatives as recognition of their fishing rights, presenting fishing rights to the remainder of 53 cooperatives in the Eastern Cape.

The basket of species granted is made up of, amongst others, squid, hake hand line, traditional line fish, seaweed, East Coast Rock Lobster and abalone ranching. All species allocated for own use will be accessed by all members for food security whereas species requested for commercial purposes will be owned and controlled by the cooperative for the cooperatives' business operations.

During the assessment of fishing rights applications, it was noticed that the majority of species requested were line fish species. It was also noticed that some of the species require use of a vessel. Therefore, TAE will need to be availed through the apportionment of TAE between small-scale and commercial sector when the DEFF allocates commercial rights in 2021. In the meantime, cooperatives will be able to fish from shore using hook and line, and will further share an effort of 38 vessels while fishing rights allocation process 2021 is being concluded.

Small-scale fisheries sector

The Small-Scale Fisheries Policy seeks to address imbalances of the past and ensure that small-scale fishers are accommodated and properly managed. For the first time, fishing rights can be allocated on a group, rather than an individual. The policy further aims to support investment in community entities to take joint responsibility for sustainably managing the fisheries resources and to address the depletion of critical fisheries stocks.

The sector is aimed at redressing the inequality suffered by coastal fishing communities which, as a result of unintended consequences, have remained marginalised through previous rights allocation systems. Furthermore, the establishment of the small-scale sector seeks to empower small-scale fishers to contribute meaningfully to the national GDP and to play a meaningful role in food security and job creation.

This process is informed by the Marine Living Resources Act of 1998, and the regulations thereof which was amended to legally recognise small-scale fishers who have been living in coastal communities and depending on fishing and its related activities as a source of livelihood.

The small-scale fisheries regulations, along with the Marine Living Resources Amendment Act of 2014 provide the legal mechanism for the implementation of the small-scale fisheries policy. These reforms give legal recognition to small-scale fishers and will promote the transformation of the subsector to assist fishing communities living along the coastal areas in creating sustainable livelihoods, generating income and creating jobs.

Recreational fishing

While the illegal harvesting of abalone poses the greatest threat to management objectives, the DEFF will continue to work with all stakeholders in the abalone sector and continue to strengthen partnerships with other law-enforcement agencies and communities to ensure that the country grows and protects its resources.

South Africa's extensive coastline spanning two oceans and its numerous dams, lakes, rivers and streams, make the country a recreational fisher's paradise. However, recreational fishing may only be undertaken with a valid permit and is limited to certain times of the fishing season.

To reduce user conflicts between commercial and recreational fishing, and to, protect stocks during breeding periods, certain areas have been declared closed areas.

Recreational fishers are also subject to bag limits of fish on a per-day basis.

Annual recreational fishing licences in all industries total about 300 000, with income generated from these licences amounting to R18 million.

The actual annual catch is about 17 000 t of high-value species.

World Fisheries Day

South Africa celebrates World Fisheries Day every year on 21 November with fishing communities throughout the world.

World Fisheries Day helps in highlighting the critical importance to human lives, of water and the lives it sustains, both in and out of water.

Facts on fisheries:

- Small-scale fisheries (marine and inland) employ about 90% of those involved in fisheries.
- 65% of the reported catch from inland fisheries is from low-income food-deficit countries.
- Estimates vary, but from around 30 million to over 60 million people in the developing world are involved in inland fisheries; it is thought that about 50% are women.
- More than 25% of the world's dietary protein is provided by fish.
- The human population consumes over 100 million t of fish annually.
- Over 200 million, of Africa's one billion, people regularly consume fish and nearly half of this comes from inland fisheries.

National Environmental Impact Assessment and Management Strategy (EIAMS)

The EIAMS consists of voluntary and regulated instruments where:

- regulated EIAs are used only when it is the most appropriate tool;
- EIAM occurs within the strategic context of environmentally informed spatial instruments, sector strategies and policies;
- authorities have enough capacity with skilled and experienced officials;
- other stakeholders have the capacity and skills to ensure maximum impact on the effectiveness and efficiency of the strategy;
- government regulatory processes have been integrated and aligned; and
- government, EAPs, developers and the community are equally committed to making it work.

4x4 regulations

The Strategy Towards Co-Regulation of the Off-Road Sector in South Africa is aimed at minimising the impact of off-road driving on the environment by giving direction to off-road users and owners to develop and use inland routes in sensitive areas responsibly. The strategy applies to the inland recreational use of off-road vehicles, including two-wheel, three-wheel and four-wheel vehicles, which include 2x4 and 4x4 motor vehicles, quad bikes and motorbikes.

A key outcome of the strategy was the development, drafting and implementation of national norms and/or standards, with a supportive enabling legislative framework, to facilitate environmental compliance, responsible tourism and the long-term sustainability of the off-road industry.

The banning of off-road vehicles in coastal zones has enabled several shore-breeding birds, especially the Damara tern and the African black oystercatcher, to breed successfully on beaches again. The number of loggerhead and leatherback turtles hatching successfully on KwaZulu-Natal's northern beaches has also increased since the ban was enforced.

Coastal management

The ocean covers three quarters of the Earth, hence the importance of its protection. The DEFF recognises the challenges regarding the management of ocean spaces in South Africa's adjacent ocean areas.

Of the 200 estuaries found along the South African coast, 25% are in a degraded state. This is due to inappropriate developments along the banks of estuaries and in their catchment areas. The department is focusing its attention proactively on these degraded systems and prioritising developing management plans to improve the functioning of estuaries in associated hinterlands.

The Buoy Oceans Monitoring System, which provides information on the state of the oceans at Storms River in the Tsitsikamma National Park, is the first in a series of observation and monitoring platforms, which will form the basis of the South African National Oceans and Coastal Monitoring System. The DEFF reviewed the Recreational Water Quality Guidelines for Coastal Waters intending to develop effective early warning systems to pre-empt the catastrophic impacts of possible hazards.

Erosion and desertification

According to the UN Environment programme, desertification affects 900 million people in 99 countries with 24 million megatonnes (Mt) of topsoil being lost to erosion annually. The resultant land degradation costs Africa about US$9 billion every year.

Most South African soil is unstable. The country loses an estimated 500 Mt of topsoil annually through erosion caused by water and wind.

About 81% of South Africa's total land area is farmed. However, only 70% of this area is suitable for grazing. Overgrazing and erosion diminish the carrying capacity of the veld and lead to land degradation. This process has already claimed more than 250 000 ha of land in South Africa.

South Africa is a signatory to the UN Convention to Combat Desertification (UNCCD). Its main objectives include cooperation between governments, organisations and communities to accomplish sustainable development, especially where water resources are scarce.

South Africa also acts as the coordinator for the Valdivia Group for Desertification.

The group consists of Argentina, Australia, Brazil, Chile, New Zealand, South Africa and Uruguay. The aim is, among other things, to foster scientific and technological cooperation.

South Africa has introduced legislation such as the NEMBA of 2004 to promotes the conservation of biodiversity, and fight desertification and land degradation.

Biodiversity

South Africa is home to some 24 000 species, around 7% of the world's vertebrate species, and 5.5% of the world's known insect species (only about half of the latter have been described).

In terms of the number of endemic species of mammals, birds, reptiles and amphibians found in South Africa, the country ranks as the fifth richest in Africa and the 24th richest in the world.

Marine biodiversity is also high, with more than 11 000 species found in South African waters, which is about 15% of global species. More than 25% of these species (or 3 496 species) are endemic to South Africa, many of which are threatened, especially in river ecosystems (82%) and estuaries (77%).

South Africa ratified the Nagoya Protocol on Access to Genetic Resources and the Fair and Equitable Sharing of Benefits Arising from their Utilisation to the Convention on Biological Diversity, popularly referred to as the Nagoya Protocol on Access and Benefit Sharing. The protocol is a legally binding agreement outlining a set of terms prescribing how one country will gain access to another country's genetic resources and how the benefits derived will be shared.

The aim of the National Biodiversity and Business Network is to assist businesses from various sectors to integrate and mainstream biodiversity issues into their strategies and operations.

The government and businesses are realising that the economic and social development of the country depends on healthy ecosystems and biodiversity. The NDP: Vision 2030 confirms that national economic growth depends on the environmental sustainability of the country's proposed development path.

South Africa is the third most biodiverse country in the world, after Indonesia and Brazil. These countries harbour most of the Earth's species and collectively accommodate more than two thirds of global biodiversity.

South Africa is a signatory to several biodiversity-related multilateral agreements such as the:

- Convention on Biological Diversity Cartagena Protocol on Biosafety;
- Ramsar Convention;
- CITES;
- UNCCD; and
- Convention on Migratory Species.

The National Biodiversity Strategy and Action Plan 2015 – 2025 is aimed at establishing a framework and plan of action for the conservation and sustainable use of South Africa's biodiversity and the equitable sharing of benefits derived from this use.

The National Biodiversity Framework (NBF) provides a framework to coordinate and align the efforts of the many organisations and individuals involved in conserving and managing South Africa's biodiversity, in support of sustainable development. The NBF is a requirement of the NEMBA of 2004.

Three internationally recognised biodiversity hotspots are found in South Africa. They are the:

- Cape Floral Kingdom (equivalent to the fynbos biome);
- Succulent Karoo (shared with Namibia); and
- Maputaland-Pondoland-Albany Centre of Plant Endemism, which stretches from the Albany Centre in the Eastern Cape, through the Pondoland Centre of Plant Endemism and KwaZulu-Natal, and the eastern side of Eswatini, into southern Mozambique and Mpumalanga.

The Succulent Karoo Biome is one of only two arid biodiversity hotspots in the world, the other being the Horn of Africa.

There are eight major terrestrial biomes, or habitat types, in South Africa, which are divided into 70 veld types.

National biodiversity biomes

Savanna Biome

The Savanna Biome is the largest biome in southern Africa, occupying 46% of its area, and over a third of South Africa. It is an area of mixed grassland and trees, generally known as bushveld.

In the Northern Cape and Kalahari sections of this biome, the most distinctive trees are the camel thorn (*acacia erioloba*) and the camphor bush (*tarchonanthus camphoratus*).

In Limpopo, the portly baobab (*adansonia digitata*) and the candelabra tree (*euphorbia ingens*) dominate. The central bushveld is home to species such as the knob thorn (*acacia nigrescens*), bushwillow (*combretum spp.*), monkey thorn (*acacia galpinii*), mopani (*colophospermum mopane*) and wild fig (*ficus spp.*). In the valley bushveld of the south, euphorbias and spekboom trees (*portulacaria afra*) dominate.

Abundant wild fruit trees provide food for many birds and animals in the Savanna Biome. Grey loeries, hornbills, shrikes, flycatchers and rollers are birds typical of the northern regions.

The subtropical and coastal areas are home to Knysna loeries, purple-crested loeries and green pigeons. Raptors occur throughout the biome. The larger mammals include lion, leopard, cheetah, elephant, buffalo, zebra, rhino, giraffe, kudu, oryx, waterbuck and hippopotamus.

About 8.5% of the biome is protected. The Kruger National Park, Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park, Hluhluwe-Umfolozi Park,

iSimangaliso Wetlands Park and other reserves lie in the Savanna Biome.

Nama-Karoo Biome

The Nama-Karoo is the third-largest biome in South Africa, covering about 20.5% of the country or more than 260 000 km^2. It stretches across the vast central plateau of the western half of the country. This semi-desert receives little rain in summer.

Rainfall varies from about 200 millimetres (mm) a year in the west to 400 mm a year in the north-east. Summer is very hot and winter is very cold with frequent frost.

Most of the plants are low shrubs and grass. Many plants are deciduous. Trees such as the sweet thorn (*acacia karoo*) are usually only found along rivers or on rocky hillsides.

Common animals include the bat-eared fox, ostrich, spring hare, tortoises and brown locust. The riverine rabbit is a threatened species found in the Nama-Karoo Biome.

This biome includes the Namaland area of Namibia, and the central Karoo area of South Africa.

Because of low rainfall, rivers are non-perennial. Cold and frost in winter and high temperatures in summer demand special adaptation by plants.

Only 1% of the Nama-Karoo Biome falls within officially protected areas, of which the Karoo and Augrabies national parks are the largest.

Overgrazing and easily eroded soil surfaces are causing this semi-desert to advance slowly on the neighbouring savanna and grassland biomes.

Grassland Biome

The Grassland Biome is the second-largest biome in South Africa, covering an area of 339 237 km^2 and occurring in eight of South Africa's nine provinces. It is one of the most threatened biomes in South Africa, with 30% irreversibly transformed and only 1.9% of the biodiversity target for the biome formally conserved.

The Grassland Biome provides essential ecosystem services, such as water production and soil retention necessary for economic development. It holds important biodiversity of global and domestic significance and value.

Trees are scarce and found mainly on hills and along riverbeds. Karee (*rhus lancea*), wild currant (*rhus pyroides*), white stinkwood (*celtis africana*) and several acacia species are the commonest.

The Grassland Biome has the third-largest number of indigenous plant species in the country.

Eight mammal species endemic to South Africa occur in the wild in this biome.

The area is internationally recognised as having high species endemicity for birds. The black korhaan, blue crane and guinea fowl are among the birds found in the area.

Succulent Karoo Biome

The Succulent Karoo Biome covers a flat to gently undulating plain, with some hilly and "broken" veld, mostly situated to the west and south of the escarpment, and north of the Cape Fold Belt.

One of the natural wonders of South Africa is the annual blossoming of the Namaqualand wild flowers (mainly of the family asteraceae), which transforms the semi-desert of the Northern Cape into a fairyland. After rain, the drab landscape is suddenly covered with a multicoloured carpet of flowers (from August to October, depending on the rainfall). This is a winter rainfall area with extremely dry and hot summers. Succulents with thick, fleshy leaves are plentiful. Most trees have white trunks to reflect the heat.

The quiver tree (*aloe dichotoma*) and the human-like elephant's trunk (*pachypodium namaquanum*) are prominent in the Richtersveld. Grass is scarce.

The animal life is similar to that of the neighbouring Fynbos and Nama-Karoo biomes.

The biome includes 2 800 plant species at increased risk of extinction.

Fynbos Biome

The Fynbos Biome is one of the six accepted floral kingdoms of the world. This region covers only 0.04% of the Earth's land surface.

Fynbos, which is found mainly in the Western Cape, is the name given to a group of ever-green plants with small, hard leaves (such as those in the Erica family). It is made up mainly of the protea, heathers and restio.

The Fynbos Biome is famous for the protea, which is South Africa's national flower. The biome also contains flowering plants now regarded as garden plants, such as freesia, tritonia, sparaxis and many others.

Protected areas cover 13.6% of the Fynbos Biome and include the Table Mountain and Agulhas national parks.

This biome is not very rich in bird and mammal life, but does include the endemic Cape grysbok, the geometric tortoise, the Cape sugarbird and the protea seed-eater. Baboon, honey badgers, caracal, the buck and several types of eagle and dassies are found in the mountains.

Forest Biome

South Africa's only significant natural forests are those of Knysna and Tsitsikamma in the Western and Eastern Cape respectively. Other reasonably large forest patches that are officially protected are in the high-rainfall areas of the eastern escarpment (Drakensberg mountains), and on the eastern seaboard. Forest giants such as yellowwood (*podocarpus spp.*), ironwood (*olea capensis*) and lemonwood (*xymalos monospora*) dominate.

The indigenous forests are a magical world of ferns, lichens and colourful forest birds such as the Knysna loerie, the endangered Cape parrot and the rameron pigeon. Mammals include the endangered samango monkey, bushpig, bushbuck and the delicate blue duiker.

Thicket Biome

The Thicket Biome is the second-smallest biome in South Africa and is known for its high biodiversity. Subtropical thicket ranges from closed shrubland to low forest, dominated by evergreen succulent trees, shrubs and vines.

It is often impenetrable and has little herbaceous cover. Roughly 20% of the species found there are endemic to the Thicket Biome.

The Thicket Biome, which is predominantly in the Eastern Cape, supports four species of tortoise: the leopard tortoise (*geochelone pardalis*), angulate tortoise (*chersina angulata*),

tent tortoise (*psammobates tentorius*) and parrot-beaked tortoise (*homopus areolatus*).

Desert Biome

True desert is found under very harsh environmental conditions, which are even more extreme than those found in the Succulent Karoo and the Nama-Karoo biomes. The climate is characterised by summer rainfall, but also by high levels of summer aridity. Rainfall is highly variable from year to year. Desert is found mostly in Namibia, although it does occur in South Africa in the lower Orange River Valley.

The vegetation of the Desert Biome is characterised by the dominance of annual plants (often annual grasses). This means that after a rare season of abundant rain, the desert plains can be covered with a sea of short annual grass, whereas in drier years, the plains appear bare with annual plants persisting in the form of seeds.

Perennial plants are usually encountered in specialised habitats associated with local concentrations of water from broad drainage lines or washes. Nearer the coast, coastal fog also governs the distribution of certain species commonly associated with the desert.

The Desert Biome incorporates abundant insect fauna, which includes many tenebrionid beetles, some of which can use fog water. There are also various vertebrates, including reptiles, springbok, ostrich, gemsbok, snakes and geckos.

Some areas in this biome are formally protected in the Richtersveld National Park.

Forestry

The forestry sector employs around 157 500 workers with the forest sub-sector providing about 59 800 direct jobs and 27 500 indirect jobs. Forestry provides livelihood support to 688 000 people of the country's rural population. The pulp and paper industry provides about 13 200 direct and 10 800 indirect employment opportunities.

Some 20 000 direct workers are employed and 8 000 indirect in sawmilling, and 6 000 in the timber-board and 2 200 in the mining timber industries, while a further 10 000 workers are employed in miscellaneous jobs in forestry.

In terms of land use, the afforested area is about 1.21 million ha or about 1.0% of the total South African land area of 122.3 million ha. The forest sector (forestry and forest products) contributes about 0.90% to the GDP. In terms of regional GDP, forestry in KwaZulu-Natal contributes 3.3%; Mpumalanga 3.2%; the Eastern Cape 0.8%; Limpopo 0.7% and Western Cape about 0.2%.

Although forestry contributes a modest 0.6% to the GDP, it supports manufacturing subsectors such as pulp, paper and cellulose manufacture, sawmilling, pole treating, panel and fibre board manufacturing, as well as mining timber, tannin extract (used in leather tanning) and charcoal manufacture.

Of the total land area of 122.3 million ha in South Africa, only 1% or 1.221 million ha is used for commercial forestry.

Mpumalanga has the highest investment in plantations at R19.6 billion (41.9%) followed by KwaZulu-Natal with R16.6 billion (35.6%), the Eastern Cape at R6.4 billion (13.7%), Limpopo R2.1 billion (4.75%) and the Western Cape at R2.0 billion (4.4%).

The forest products industry ranks among the top exporting industries in the country. The sector continues to generate substantial net trade surpluses. Production from plantations has been declining in recent years.

While it is clear that the private sector does have good management capacity and has also ushered in efficiencies across the value chain, the State must still play a role to ensure adequate levels of investment in long-rotation sawlog plantations as the State produces sawlogs for the private sector to process. The State's role to forestry has, however, declined substantially since the partial privatisaon of the South African Forestry Company Limited (SAFCOL) through the leasing out of most of its plantation assets to the private sector. The SAFCOL, through Komatiland Forests, is nevertheless an important player in the industry and continues to play a role in providing the private sector sawmilling sector with sawlogs.

The government manages approximately 64 000 ha of plantations categorised into category B and C. These plantations have vast areas suitable for planting but are currently unplanted. Plans are underway to revitalise the plantations, which will create jobs for people in surrounding communities.

South Africa is currently experiencing a shortage of timber and is constrained to meet the national demand for saw log timber. Approximately 30 000 ha of currently fallow areas could be a strategic contribution to timber supply in order to meet needs along the value chain.

National Arbor Month

South Africa celebrates Arbor Month in September every year. Arbor Week is commemorated in the first week of September annually.

Arbor Month 2020 took place under the theme, "Forests and Biodiversity", signifying the importance of protecting and conserving the country's biodiversity as the backbone of South Africa's economy and livelihoods. With September also being Heritage Month, the DEFF focussed on the country's champion trees, which include some of the oldest, largest and culturally significant trees – Sophia Town Oak Tree and the Sagole Baobab Tree in Limpopo.

Tree planting activities for the 2020 National Arbor Month campaign also focussed on remembrance, commemorative tree planting and greening of settlements. The government opened a memorial garden to honour all South Africans who succumbed to the COVID-19 panemic and frontline professionals who worked tirelessly to treat patients with the virus.

National Arbor Month is an opportune for South Africans to plant indigenous trees as a practical and symbolic gesture of sustainable environmental management.

To promote greening, especially the planting of indigenous trees that are becoming scarce, the concept of the trees of the year was born some years ago. Two trees are selected – a rare and a common species. The common tree of the year for 2020 is *Ekebergia capensis* (Cape ash) and the rare tree of the year is *Adansonia digitata* (Baobab).

Arbor City Awards

The National Arbor City Awards are greening competitions that take place in line with the national greening strategy.

The purpose of the competition is to encourage municipalities to green their areas of jurisdiction and promote environmental conservation and development, thereby securing a healthy

living environment for residents in all settlement areas. It provides incentives and rewards to municipalities that are doing their best in terms of greening and landscape management, especially in townships and new settlement areas.

The competition further encourages the municipalities to create awareness around the importance of green landscapes and provide a platform for the diagnosis of challenges facing municipalities in the area of greening.

There are three categories – metropolitan municipalities, local municipalities and rural-based municipalities. For each category the winner receives prize money to promote greening in their area.

Champion Tree Project

The purpose of the Champion Tree Project is to identify and protect trees that are of national importance and worthy of special protection, due to their remarkable size, age, aesthetic, cultural, historic or tourism value.

Since the start of the project in 2003, 86 trees or groups of trees have been declared as champion trees, based on criteria such as size, age and historical value. These trees are all protected under the National Forests Act of 1998. They include the Tsitsikamma Big Tree along the Garden Route, the Post Office Milkwood Tree of Mossel Bay, the Sagole Baobab in Limpopo and camphor trees planted at Vergelegen Estate in the Western Cape three centuries ago. The Sagole Baobab has the second-biggest trunk in the world, while a stand of saligna gum trees planted in 1906 near Tzaneen in Limpopo are the tallest trees in Africa.

A few champion trees have died since the launch of the project, including the Platland Baobab in Limpopo, which collapsed in 2017. In Cape Town, the Tokai Arboretum was damaged by fire, and extensive work had to be undertaken by arborists to fell trees and prune or treat others.

The oldest planted tree in South Africa is a saffron pear, brought from the Netherlands and planted in the Dutch East India Company's gardens in Cape Town more than three centuries ago, supposedly by Jan van Riebeeck. Historic trees include a poplar tree, which served as a landmark for refugees during the apartheid regime who found a safe haven in the Johannesburg house of Ruth Fischer, the daughter of Bram Fischer, who was a founding member of the South African Communist Party.

In 2015 a new record-breaking tree was discovered in an old tree lane in the Boschendal wine estate. This karri gum tree of 50.4 metres (m) tall has a massive crown and a trunk circumference of over 8 m and is now officially the largest tree in South Africa.

Million Trees Programme

The Million Trees programme was launched in 2007 as part of a UN greening initiative to encourage countries worldwide to plant more trees. Its purpose is to ensure that at least one million trees, including fruit trees and indigenous ornamental shade trees, are planted every year in various member states of the UN.

In South Africa, the Million Trees programme is a partnership between the three spheres of government, non-governmental and community-based organisations, schools and the corporate sector.

It is part of the South African contribution to the UN Environment programme "Plant for the Planet: Billion Tree Campaign", where communities, industry, civil society organisations and governments are encouraged to plant at least one billion trees worldwide.

Indigenous forests

Only about 0.5% of South Africa's total land area is covered by natural forests. About half of the more than 1 700 indigenous tree and shrub species, representing some 530 000 ha of dense growth, grow along the south and east coasts and on the southern and south-eastern slopes of inland mountains. The other half is spread over the interior plateaux in isolated valleys and ravines.

A number of these natural forest regions, such as the Tsitsikamma National Park, are important tourist attractions.

The large Afro-temperate forests of the southern Cape, although distributed close to the coast, are aligned with the inland forest types of the Eastern Cape, KwaZulu-Natal, Mpumalanga and Limpopo. This is because the southerly temperate latitudes compensate for the altitude of inland forests.

Almost half of all-natural forests in South Africa are found on private property or land under communal tenure. A detailed inventory of natural forests helps government to monitor changes in forest areas.

Although the country's low natural forest coverage has led to the development of the commercial forestry sector over the last 100 years, natural forests have continued playing a major role in the livelihoods and well-being of many rural communities. The use of natural forests as sources of building material, fuel wood, food and medicine is increasing, with an estimated 80% of South Africa's population still using medicinal plants, most of which are sourced from natural forests.

The forest-type classification for natural forests represents 24 broad forest types. The Natural Forests Protected Areas System guides the setting aside and demarcation of natural forests as protected areas.

Systematic timber harvesting occurs in certain areas of southern Cape forests and on a smaller scale, in the Amathole forests in the Eastern Cape.

This sustainable harvesting system concentrates on the removal of small quantities of senile trees dying off within the forest. On average, 3 750 cubic metres (m^3) of round logs are harvested annually (150 m^3 of stinkwood, 750 m^3 of yellowwood, 2 500 m^3 of Australian blackwood and 350 m^3 of other species).

The seven-week fern (*Rumohra adiantiformis*), harvested in the Knysna and Tsitsikamma forests, is another valuable product of indigenous forests. The South African market for this fern is considerable and reaches its peak in September, when sales have been known to exceed 420 000 bunches.

Woodlands

The woodlands, also known as savannahs, constitute a forest resource of major importance in South Africa. It is the most accessible forest resource for poor communities and contributes in the region of R2 000 to R5 000 to poor households annually. Natural forests cover less than one million ha of land in total, plantation forestry covers less than 1.3 million ha and the woodlands collectively cover between 29 million and 46 million ha.

The cover includes extensive areas in the low-lying, drier areas of Limpopo, KwaZulu-Natal and Mpumalanga. Rich biodiversity is found in savannah woodland comprising 5 900 plants, 540 bird species and 175 mammals.

These include iconic species such as the Big Five group of mammals that are important to the tourism industry. Several protected tree species of the savannah, such as camel thorn and leadwood, contribute substantially to the lucrative braai wood market, and guidelines have been set for licensing processes to assist with the control of their use.

Kathu Forest in the Northern Cape is the first woodland area to be declared protected woodland under the National Forests Act of 1998.

In the past, this resource was not really recognised as a forestry responsibility, except where woodland occurred on state-forest land in conservation areas. However, the National Forestry Action programme of 1997 identified woodland management as a key area of operation for forestry.

The National Forests Act of 1998 also includes woodland in its definition of forests and mandates monitoring and reporting on the state of the woodlands. This legislation protects woodlands on private and communal land, as well as in state forests, while promoting sustainable use.

Savannah woodlands are the most extensive vegetation type in southern Africa and dominate Africa as a whole. Globally, woodlands cover between an eighth and a sixth of the Earth's land surface.

The woodlands are a valuable source of fuel, building material, craft timber and a variety of non-timber products. These include fruit, fodder, medicinal compounds, honey, meat and mushrooms. They form the backbone of the livelihoods of millions of people. The annual marula fruit (*Sclerocarya birrea*) harvest, for example, is worth some R1.1 billion a year to rural communities.

There are 87 savannah woodland types, and although the biome as a whole is fairly well protected in formal and private reserves, many underprotected savannah types have been identified.

Another woodland type is the Albany Thicket Biome, characterised by dense growth of woody and succulent plant species. There are 13 thicket types, which together cover about three million ha. Extensive spekboom plantings are underway in the Eastern Cape to restore the carrying capacity of degraded thicket areas, and to capitalise on the high carbon sequestration rates of this species as a climate change offset.

Commercial forests

Commercial forest plantations predominantly meet South Africa's demand for wood. During the 1930s, government started extensive commercial plantations to make South Africa self-sufficient in its timber requirements, and to provide more job opportunities.

Commercial plantations of exotic species proved to be a sound investment and the private sector established large plantations of pine, eucalyptus and wattle. South Africa's plantation forests cover about 1% of the combined cultivated (arable) and grazing land.

The commercial forestry industry in South Africa is committed to practising sustainable forest management and is a world leader in forest certification. Stringent environmental codes of practice are implemented in all plantation and processing activities.

The Institute for Commercial Forestry Research completed its role in developing the National Forest Protection Strategy for the department, a project funded by the Food and Agriculture Organisation of the UN.

Another development which will assist in enhancing forest protection is the memorandum of understanding (MoU), formalising Forestry South Africa's support and funding for these activities at the Forestry and Agriculture Biotechnical Institute, which has been entered into with the University of Pretoria.

Plantation yields

South Africa's intensively managed commercial forestry plantations are recognised as some of the most productive in the world. Consequently, from a limited geographic footprint of 1.2 million ha, the industry can produce, on a sustainable and annual basis, between 15 and 18 million t of timber a year.

Sappi Forests supplies over 70% of the wood requirements of Sappi Southern Africa from both its own and committed commercial timber plantations covering 492 000 ha. This equates to approximately 30 Mt of standing timber.

The Lomati Sawmill produces 102 000 m³ per year of sawn timber for the construction and furniture manufacturing industry.

All wood grown on Sappi-owned land and a large proportion grown on plantations managed by the company, is Forest Stewardship Council certified.

Approximately 150 000 ha of land is set aside and maintained by Sappi Forests to conserve the natural habitat and biodiversity found there, including indigenous forests and wetlands.

The timber is used in wood products such as roof trusses. It is also pulped, with the wood fibre used for newspapers, boxes, paper bags and paper.

Socio-economic reform and growth

The forestry vision states that forests are managed for people and that there is a need to create an enabling environment for economic and social development through sustainable forestry, especially at local level.

Strategies to achieve this vision include forestry enterprise development, aimed at creating opportunities for people to use forests, including indigenous forests, woodlands and plantations, and forest-based resources for economic growth, income-generation and job creation.

The forestry enterprise development concept is central to government's pro-poor agenda and also a key component of Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment (BBBEE) in the forestry sector.

Community forestry

Community forestry is designed and applied to meet local social, household and environmental needs and to benefit local economic development.

Community forestry is implemented by communities or with the participation of communities and includes tree-centred projects in urban and rural areas, woodlots, and woodland being managed by communities and individuals.

Community forestry has gained impetus through more focused core functions, particularly in urban greening and forest enterprise development.

Participatory forest management of the DEFF is an integrated approach that contributes to achieving the sustainable management of South African forests.

Elements of participatory forest management were initially developed for indigenous state forests.

However, the aim is to use participatory forest management as an approach to managing all forest types, where feasible (indigenous forests, plantations, woodlots and woodlands) and where different types of ownership and management (state, provincial, communal, private and community) exist.

World Soil Day

World Soil Day is observed and celebrated every year on 5 December by all UN member states, organisations of the UN system and other international and regional organisations, civil society, NGOs and individuals to emphasise the importance of soil.

The 2019 theme for World Soil Day was "Stop soil erosion, Save our future". It was aimed at raising awareness on the importance of sustaining healthy ecosystems and human well-being.

International cooperation

Benguela Current Large Marine Ecosystem (BCLME)

The BCLME is regarded as one of the richest ecosystems on Earth, with ecosystem goods and services estimated to be worth at least US$54.3 billion a year. Offshore oil and gas production, marine diamond mining, coastal tourism, commercial fishing and shipping are some of the most important industrial activities that take place in the region.

The accord, signed in Angola, is a formal agreement between Angola, Namibia and South Africa that seeks to provide economic, environmental and social benefits for the three countries.

The Benguela Current Commission is a permanent intergovernmental organisation, with a mandate to promote the long-term conservation, protection, rehabilitation, enhancement and sustainable use of the BCLME.

South Africa has signed several international conventions, treaties, protocols and other agreements supporting the principles of sustainable development including the:

- CBD (ratified in 1995);
- Cartagena Protocol on Biosafety (South Africa became a party in 2003);
- Kyoto Protocol (signed in 2003);
- UNCCD;
- World Heritage Convention (ratified in 1997);
- Convention on Wetlands of International Importance (Ramsar Convention) (ratified in 1975); and
- Convention on the Conservation of Migratory Species (acceded in 1991).

United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change

South Africa ratified the UNFCCC in 1997. The UNFCCC is aimed at:

- implementing urgent action, from 2013 to 2020, including the adoption of a second commitment period under the Kyoto Protocol and a number of institutional mechanisms such as the GCF;
- acknowledging the inadequate commitments to reduce emissions made thus far; a work programme was agreed upon to increase pre-2020 levels of ambition; and
- action for the future with the negotiation of a legal agreement for the period beyond 2020.

The UNFCCC entered into force in 1994. The COP to the UNFCCC meets annually to assess progress in grappling with climate change. The COP is the supreme body of the convention and is its highest decision-making authority.

With 195 parties, the UNFCCC has near universal membership and is the parent treaty of the 1997 Kyoto Protocol. The Kyoto Protocol has been ratified by 193 of the UNFCCC parties.

Under the protocol, 37 states, consisting of highly industrialised countries and those making the transition to a market economy, have legally binding emission limitation and reduction commitments.

The ultimate objective of both treaties is to stabilise GHG concentrations in the atmosphere at a level that will prevent dangerous human interference with the climate system.

The launch of negotiations to shape the new global climate change agreement and first discussions on how to raise ambition took place at the UNFCCC in Bonn, Germany, in May 2012, which prepared decisions for adoption at the UNFCCC in Qatar later in 2012.

UN Commission on Sustainable Development (CSD)

The UN CSD was established by the UN General Assembly in December 1992 to ensure effective follow-up of the UN Conference on Environment and Development, also known as the Earth Summit.

From its inception, the CSD was highly participatory in structure and outlook by engaging in its formal proceedings a wide range of official stakeholders and partners through innovative formulae.

Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species of Wild Fauna and Flora

South Africa was a founding member of the CITES Treaty, which was adopted on 3 March 1973, but only came into force on 1 July 1975.

Signed by 149 countries, the CITES is an international agreement between governments to protect endangered species against over-exploitation through regulations regarding imports and exports and in some cases prohibiting trade.

The CITES was drafted as a result of a resolution adopted in 1963 at a meeting of members of the IUCN. The CITES accords varying degrees of protection to more than 30 000 animals and plant species, whether they are traded as live specimens, fur coats or dried herbs.

The DEFF, SANBI, the Scientific Authority and provincial authorities are working together to ensure full compliance with decisions taken at the 17th Conference of Parties to the CITES.

These include identifying and implementing protocols for the registration of over 1 000 facilities for breeding captive bred parrots; strengthening the monitoring of leopard populations to improve science-based decision making; and initiating a research project to understand how trade in lion bone may impact wild lion populations.

Montreal Protocol on Substances that Deplete the Ozone Layer

The International Ozone Day is an annual event that commemorates the date of the signing the Montreal Protocol in 1987. South Africa, which became a signatory to the Montreal Protocol in 1990, has phased out chlorofluorocarbons, halons, methyl chloroform and carbon tetrachloride.

International Day for the Preservation of the Ozone Layer

The International Day for the Preservation of the Ozone Layer is commemorated annually on 16 September. Due to COVID-19 regulations, the 2020 event was held virtually under the theme, "Ozone for Life"– acknowledging 35 years of ozone layer protection, preserving of the environment and human health.

During the celebrations, the DEFF shared details of its amended regulations aimed at protecting the ozone layer – in an effort to ensure that South Africa closes the potential gaps in illegal trade, hence the amendment of regulations regarding the phasing-out and management of ozone-depleting substances was undertaken.

The government's collaboration with industry birthed the Chemicals Management Phakisa Initiatives. This is aimed at impacting positively on both the environment and economy, such as the training of refrigeration and air conditioning technicians in the informal servicing sector in the country by 2023.

The government is also extending its reach to learning institutions in order to develop and raise a generation of environmentalists.

South Africa also participates and plays an important role in leading Africa in international negotiations, making sure that the needs of the continent in phasing out and managing ozone depleting substances are met.

South Africa is the President of the African Ministerial Conference on the Environment for 2020, and has co-chaired the Open Ended-Working Group Meeting in 2020.

World Summit on Sustainable Development

At the UN World Summit on Sustainable Development Goals (SDGs), 2030, held in September 2015, world leaders adopted 17 SDGs of the 2030 Agenda for Sustainable Development. Over the next 15 years, with these new goals that universally apply to all, countries would mobilise efforts to end all forms of poverty, fight inequalities and tackle climate change, while ensuring that no one is left behind.

The SDGs build on the success of the Millennium Development Goals and aim to go further to end all forms of poverty. The goals are unique in that they call for action by all countries, poor, rich and middle income to promote prosperity while protecting the planet.

The 17 SDGs are:

- End poverty in all its forms everywhere.
- End hunger, achieve food security and improved nutrition and promote sustainable agriculture.
- Ensure healthy lives and promote well-being for all at all ages.
- Ensure inclusive and equitable quality education and promote lifelong learning opportunities for all.
- Achieve gender equality and empower all women and girls.
- Ensure availability and sustainable management of water and sanitation for all.
- Ensure access to affordable, reliable, sustainable and modern energy for all.
- Promote sustained, inclusive and sustainable economic growth, full and productive employment and decent work for all.
- Build resilient infrastructure, promote inclusive and sustainable industrialisation and foster innovation.
- Reduce inequality within and among countries.
- Make cities and human settlements inclusive, safe, resilient and sustainable.
- Ensure sustainable consumption and production patterns.
- Take urgent action to combat climate change and its impacts.
- Conserve and sustainably use the oceans, seas and marine resources for sustainable development.
- Protect, restore and promote sustainable use of terrestrial ecosystems, sustainably manage forests, combat desertification, and halt and reverse land degradation and halt biodiversity loss.
- Promote peaceful and inclusive societies for sustainable development, provide access to justice for all and build effective, accountable and inclusive institutions at all levels.
- Strengthen the means of implementation and revitalise the Global Partnership for Sustainable Development.

UN Conference on Sustainable Development (Rio+20)

Rio+20 refers to the UN Conference on Sustainable Development that took place in Rio de Janeiro, Brazil, in June 2012. The meeting took place 20 years after the landmark 1992 Earth Summit in Rio, when more than 108 Heads of State agreed to work together to develop national strategies to reduce carbon emissions, stabilise GHG, protect forests from destruction, and pay for their share of the damage caused to the Earth through pollution.

At the Rio+20 talks, 50 of the 193-member states of the UN launched new energy strategies, and private investors pledged more than US$50 billion to carry out the goal of doubling the share of global renewable energy and the rate of energy efficiency improvement by 2030.

Tourism

Tourism has the potential to make a significant contribution to the South African economy and it is targeted by government as one of the industries for future economic growth in the country. Tourism therefore is regarded as a potential sector where large-scale employment opportunities can be created.

The mandate of the Department of Tourism, as outlined in the Tourism Act, 2014 (Act 3 of 2014), is to promote the growth and development of the tourism sector; promote quality tourism products and services; provide for the effective domestic and international marketing of South Africa as a tourist destination; enhance cooperation and coordination between all spheres of government in developing and managing tourism; and promote responsible tourism for the benefit of South Africa and for the enjoyment of all its residents and foreign visitors.

In recognition of tourism as a national priority with the potential to contribute significantly to economic development, the *1996 White Paper on the Development and Promotion of Tourism in South Africa* provides for the promotion of domestic and international tourism. The national tourism sector strategy

provides a blueprint for the sector to meet the growth targets contained in the NPD.

The NDP identifies tourism as a labour-intensive sector with the potential to stimulate economic growth and transformation. This vision is given expression by Priority 1 (economic transformation and job creation) of government's 2019 – 2024 MTSF, with which the work of the Department of Tourism is directly aligned.

In line with government's emphasis on growing the sector over the medium term, the Department of Tourism will focus broadly on accelerating transformation in the sector and creating employment. Specific activities include promoting South Africa as a preferred tourism destination, ensuring that there is investment in tourism infrastructure, upskilling and training tourism professionals, reintroducing tourism safety initiatives, enhancing visitor experience, managing destinations, and improving the regulatory environment.

Accelerating transformation

To accelerate transformation in the sector, the Department of Tourism will incentivise programmes that increase the ownership value, management control and skills, enterprise, supplier and socio-economic development of previously disadvantaged people. In this regard, the department has set aside R856.4 million over the medium term for the implementation of 31 capacity-building programmes and 15 incentives to transform the sector and provide developmental support to rural tourism enterprises. The department also plans to restructure the Tourism Transformation Fund (TTF), a collaboration with the National Empowerment Fund (NEF) to make funding more accessible. Similarly, the department plans to scale up the implementation of its Women in Tourism empowerment programme along with other industry-led initiatives such as Tourism Marketing South Africa.

Creating employment

The Working for Tourism initiative focuses on job creation through the development of tourism infrastructure and skills. It is expected to contribute to the creation of 15 946 work opportunities over the medium term. Spending on the initiative, which is funded through the EPWP, is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 5.4%, from R371.3 million in 2019/20 to R434.7 million in 2022/23, in the Destination Development programme.

Legislation and policies

The Department of Tourism operates under the following legislation and policies:

- The Tourism Act of 2014 provides for the development and promotion of sustainable tourism for the benefit of South Africa, its residents and its visitors. It also provides for the continued existence of the South African Tourism (SAT) Board, the establishment of the Tourism Grading Council of South Africa (TGCSA), and the regulation of the tourist guide profession.

The Act aims to:

- promote the practising of responsible tourism for the benefit of South Africa and for the enjoyment of all its residents and visitors;
- provide for the effective domestic and international marketing of South Africa as a tourist destination;
- promote quality tourism products and services;
- promote growth in and development of the tourism sector; and
- enhance cooperation and coordination between all spheres of government in developing and managing tourism.

In terms of the Act, responsible tourism:

- seeks to avoid negative economic, environmental and social impacts;
- generates greater economic benefits for local people, enhances the wellbeing of host communities and improves working conditions and access to the tourism sector;
- involves local people in decisions that affect their lives;
- makes positive contributions to the conservation of natural and cultural heritage and to the maintenance of the world's diversity;
- provides enjoyable experiences for tourists through meaningful connections with local people and a greater understanding of local cultural, social and environmental issues;
- provides access for people with physical challenges; and
- is culturally sensitive, engenders respect between tourists and hosts, and builds local pride and confidence.

Budget and funding

For the 2019/20 financial year, the Department of Tourism was allocated R2.4 billion. Allocations for marketing South Africa as a destination of choice account for an estimated 56.3% (R4.4 billion) of total expenditure, increasing at an average annual rate of 4.6%, from R1.3 billion in 2019/20 to R1.5 billion in 2022/23. Of this amount, 93.8% (R4.1 billion) is earmarked for transfers to the SAT. Cabinet has approved reductions on the department's baseline amounting to R179.9 million over the MTSF period, mainly on goods and services and transfers and subsidies. The department plans to mitigate the effect of these reductions through the realignment of allocations in the Tourism Incentive Programme (TIP) subprogramme.

Tourism and traveller statistics

According to the Statistical Release; Tourism and Migrations, January 2020, routine data collected by the DHA at ports of entry into South Africa shows that a total of 3 930 440 travellers (arrivals, departures and transits) passed through South African ports of entry/exit in January 2020.

These travellers were made up of 1 087 571 South African residents and 2 842 869 foreign travellers. A further breakdown of the figures for South African residents indicates that there were 656 050 arrivals, 430 762 departures and 759 travellers in transit. The corresponding volume for foreign arrivals, departures and travellers in transit was 1 595 388, 1 193 534 and 53 947, respectively.

A comparison between the movements in January 2019 and January 2020 indicates that the volume of arrivals and departures increased for both South African residents and foreign travellers. Travellers in transit decreased for both groups of travellers. For South African residents, the volume of arrivals increased by 4.8% (from 626 128 in January 2019 to 656 050 in January 2020).

Departures increased by 6.3% (from 405 062 in January 2019 to 430 762 in January 2020), and transits decreased by 8.7%

(from 831 in January 2019 to 759 in January 2020). For foreign travellers, arrivals increased by 2.2% (from 1 561 510 in January 2019 to 1 595 388 in January 2020), departures increased by 2.0% (from 1 169 796 in January 2019 to 1 193 534 in January 2020), and transits decreased by 2.2% (from 55 135 in January 2019 to 53 947 in January 2020).

A comparison between the movements in December 2019 and January 2020 indicates that the volume of arrivals increased for both South African residents and foreign travellers. The volume of departures and travellers in transit decreased for both groups of travellers. For South African residents, the volume of arrivals increased by 2.7% (from 638 708 in December 2019 to 656 050 in January 2020), departures decreased by 48.6% (from 838 048 in December 2019 to 430 762 in January 2020), and transits decreased by 8.8% (from 832 in December 2019 to 759 in January 2020).

For foreign travellers, arrivals increased by 2.3% (from 1 559 368 in December 2019 to 1 595 388 in January 2020), departures decreased by 23.5% (from 1 561 121 in December 2019 to 1 193 53 388 in January 2020), departures decreased by 23.5% (from 1 561 121 in December 2019 to 1 193 534 in January 2020), and transits decreased by 9.1% (from 59 373 in December 2019 to 53 947 in January 2020).

Impact of COVID-19 on tourism

Tourism has been one of the worst affected sectors in South Africa. The UN Conference on Trade and Development (UNCTAD) has listed South Africa as one of the top 15 countries that were negatively impacted by the near-closure of the international travel industry during the pandemic. Accordingly, the UNCTAD predicts that tourism in South Africa is going to lose 3% in GDP contribution, and the loss of unskilled jobs in the sector could be as high as 12%. It is estimated that R54.2 billion in output may already have been lost between mid-March and the end of May 2020.

The sector now faces a potential 75% revenue reduction in 2020, putting a further R149.7 billion in output, 438.000 jobs and R80.2 billion in foreign receipts at risk.

According to Statistics South Africa's Tourist Accommodation, May 2020 report, the COVID-19 pandemic and lockdown regulations that started on 27 March 2020 had an extensive impact on economic activity. Measured in nominal terms (current prices), total income for the tourist accommodation industry decreased by 98.0% in May 2020, compared with May 2019. Income from accommodation decreased by 98.5% year-on-year in May 2020, the result of a 98.0% decrease in the number of stay unit nights sold and a 24.2% decrease in the average income per stay unit night sold.

In May 2020, all accommodation types recorded large negative year-on-year growth in income from accommodation. The main contributors to the 98.5% year-on-year decrease in income from accommodation were:

- hotels: -98.2% and contributing -65.9 percentage points; and
- 'other' accommodation: -98.8% and contributing -27.4 percentage points.

Income from accommodation decreased by 77.0% in the three months ended May 2020 compared with the three months ended May 2019. The main contributors to this decrease were:

- hotels: -77.1% and contributing -51.0 percentage points; and
- 'other' accommodation: -76.4% and contributing -216 percentage points.

Seasonally adjusted income from accommodation decreased by 96.8% month-on-month in April 2020 and decreased by a further 20.7% month-on-month in May.

Role players

South African Tourism

The Tourism Act of 2014 mandates the South African tourism industry to market South Africa, internationally and domestically, as a preferred tourism and business events destination; ensure that tourist facilities and services are of the highest standard; and monitor and evaluate the performance of the tourism sector. Over the medium term, the entity will focus on: boosting domestic and international tourism, improving customer relations management and increasing trade partnerships.

With regards to international tourism, the entity plans to focus on country-specific marketing campaigns for the hosting of international trade-related events. Spending on international marketing activities amounts to R1.9 billion over the medium term. As a result, international tourist arrivals are expected to increase from an estimated 11.4 million in 2019/20 to an estimated 13 million in 2022/23. Revenue that is expected to be generated from international tourism is projected to increase from R90.7 billion in 2019/20 to R115.1 billion in 2022/23. In addition to intensifying its marketing efforts internationally, the entity plans to boost domestic tourism through designated marketing campaigns for targeted groups at an estimated cost of R190.3 million over the MTEF period. This is expected to increase the number of domestic holiday trips from 2.7 million in 2019/20 to three million in 2022/23. As a result, revenue generated from domestic tourism is expected to amount to R353.7 million over the period ahead.

In June 2019, Table Mountain was named Africa's Leading Tourist Attraction at the Africa and Indian Ocean World Travel Awards in Mauritius. The awards recognise excellence in customer service and experience across the travel, tourism and hospitality industries.

It won against Mount Kilimanjaro and the Ngorogoro Crater in Tanzania, the Pyramids of Giza in Egypt, as well as Robben Island and V&A Waterfront in South Africa.

Those who voted include travel and tourism professionals and consumers globally.

Tourism Enterprise Partnership (TEP)

The TEP is a non-profit company that facilitates the growth, development and sustainability of small tourism businesses. This is achieved through a number of products and services that provide hands-on, step-by-step support and guidance, ultimately leading to improved product quality, operational efficiency and market reach.

Funding for the TEP's small tourism business development interventions is provided by the Department of Tourism as well as the Business Trust, the Tourism Micro-Enterprises Support Fund (a sister company that provides funding specifically for the support of micro-enterprises), global financial services company Credit Suisse, and the Eastern Cape Development Corporation.

Africa's Travel Indaba

Africa's Travel Indaba is one of the largest tourism marketing events on the African calendar and one of the top three "must visit" events of its kind on the global calendar.

Sixty-four Blue Flags were awarded at the 2019/20 launch of South Africa's Blue Flag season, including 45 beaches, nine marinas and 10 sustainable tourism boats across South Africa. The season officially opened on 1 November 2019. To achieve Blue Flag status, 33 main criteria covering four aspects of coastal management have to be met. These four aspects are water quality, environmental education and information, environmental management, and safety and services. The Blue Flag programme is a recognised international accreditation initiative that acknowledges excellence in maintaining the highest standards of environmental management, safety, services and amenities. South Africa was the first country, outside of Europe, to introduce the Blue Flag programme, in November 2001 in Cape.

Beaches with Blue Flag status for 2019/20 are:

Western Cape:

- Bikini Beach, Gordon's Bay
- Brenton-on-Sea Beach, near Knysna
- Camps Bay Beach, Cape Town
- Castle Beach, Overstrand
- Clifton 4th Beach, Cape Town
- De Bakke Beach, Mossel Bay
- Fish Hoek Beach, Cape Town
- Glentana Beach, Mossel Bay
  Gouritzmond Beach, near Mossel Bay
- Grotto Beach, Hermanus
- Hartenbos Beach, Mossel Bay
- Hawston Beach, near Hermanus
- Jongensfontein Beach, Hessequa
- Singing Kettle beach
- Keurboomstrand Beach, near Plettenberg Bay
- Kleinbrak River Beach, near Mossel Bay
- Kleinmond Beach, near Hermanus
- Lappiesbaai Beach
- Stilbaai Wes Beach, Hessequa
- Struisbaai Beach, Cape Aguslhas
- Lookout Beach, near Plettenberg Bay
- Melkbosstrand Beach, Cape Town
- Mnandi Beach, Cape Town
- Muizenberg Beach, Cape Town
- Nature's Valley Beach, near Plettenberg Bay
- Preekstoel Beach, near Still Bay
- Robberg 5th Beach, Plettenberg Bay
- Santos Beach, Mossel Bay
- Silwerstroomstrand Beach, Cape Town
- Witsand Beach, mouth of the Breede River
- The Dunes Beach, near Plettenberg Bay

KwaZulu-Natal

- Hibberdene Beach, Hibberdene
- Marina/San Lameer Beach, near Southbroom
- Southport Beach, near Port Shepstone
- Trafalgar Beach, near Southbroom
- Umzumbe (Pumula) Beach, near Hibberdene
- Ushaka Beach, Durban Westbrook Beach, Durban

Eastern Cape

- Dolphin Beach, Jeffrey's Bay
- Hamburg Beach, near East London
- Hobie Beach, near Port Elizabeth
- Humewood Beach, Port Elizabeth
- Kariega Beach, Kenton-on-Sea
- Kelly's Beach, Port Alfred
- Kings Beach, Port Elizabeth

It showcases the widest variety of southern Africa's best tourism products and attracts international buyers and media from across the world.

Africa's Travel Indaba is owned by the SAT and organised by Synergy Business Events. It has won various awards for Africa's best travel and tourism show, presented by the Association of World Travel Awards.

Meetings Africa

Meetings Africa is the African continent's largest trade show for the business events industry.

Meetings Africa has been lauded as the premier business event in this industry, showcasing Africa's diverse offering of services and products.

Positioned as "Advancing Africa Together", the sole ambition of the trade show is to contribute to the growth of Africa's potential as the world's fastest-growing and most sought-after business events destination.

Culture, Art, Tourism, Hospitality, and Sport Sector Education and Training Authority (CATHSSETA)

The CATHSSETA is one of 21 sector education and training authorities established in 2001 under the Skills Development Act, 1998 (Act 97 of 1998). It was formally known as the Tourism and Hospitality Education and Training Authority. Its mandate is to facilitate skills development within its subsectors through the disbursement of grants for learning programmes and monitoring of education and training as outlined in the National Skills Development Strategy.

The CATHSSETA operates in the following subsectors:

- Arts, culture and heritage
- Conservation
- Gaming and lotteries
- Hospitality.

Tourism Grading Council of South Africa

The TGCSA is South Africa's only officially recognised and globally credible quality assurance body for national tourism products. It uses a star grading system for the evaluation of the quality of accommodation establishments.

Of the 11 categories of establishments from which travellers can choose (hotels, lodges, bed and breakfasts, country houses, guest houses, self-catering units, caravan and camping parks, backpackers and hostelling facilities as well as meetings, exhibitions and special events venues), establishments that have been graded by one of the TGCSA's accredited grading assessors will clearly display the TGCSA star insignia. The TGCSA star plaque and certificate guarantees quality and service excellence in line with internationally benchmarked standards.

Tourism BBBEE Charter Council

The Tourism BBBEE Charter Council's roles include:

- providing guidance on sector-specific matters effecting BBBEE in entities within the sector;
- compiling reports on the status of BBBEE within the sector for the Minister of Tourism and the BEE Advisory Council; and
- sharing information with sector members, approved accreditation agencies and the Minister of Tourism pertaining to BBBEE in the sector.

Programmes and projects

Tourism Incentive Programme

The TIP received a budget of R552.9 million over the medium term and will focus on supporting tourism attractions to enhance destination competitiveness. Underused and unused public recreational facilities and resorts will be redeveloped as tourism destination sites.

Besides its job creation and economic growth outcomes, the TIP is aimed at the following:

- enhancing infrastructure facilities to maximise tourism benefits;

- promoting greater participation in tourism and leisure activities, particularly among low-income people and families;
- attracting private sector investment in those facilities;
- sector transformation; and
- addressing the challenges of uneven geographical spread of tourism products and seasonality.

The programme will further support SMMEs by assisting them to participate in local and international trade exhibitions, thus creating direct linkages with international tourism companies.

The programme will start by focusing on creating better access to new markets and customers, encouraging greater participation in the grading system, and providing key tourist attractions with clean and renewable energy sources.

The programme comprises the following:

- A subsidy towards the costs incurred by tourism establishments to participate in trade exhibitions and marketing roadshows. This will include a capped reimbursement towards predetermined expenses such as airfare, accommodation and exhibition fees for participation in marketing platforms supported by the SAT.
- Support for owners of establishments who want to be graded by the TGCSA in the form of a structured system of retroactive discounts or rebates on the assessment fee for grading. This aims to make grading more affordable for smaller businesses and encourage more establishments to become graded.
- A pilot project to retrofit facilities at state-owned destinations and attractions such as world heritage sites and national botanical gardens with renewable energy technology. This will guide the design of a programme to help make establishments, including those in the private sector, more environmentally sustainable.
- The TIP supports the objectives of South Africa's overall industrial policy, which includes creating jobs, building the local industrial base and transforming to a green economy.

Green Tourism Incentive Programme (GTIP)

The recent and ongoing electricity supply challenges, combined with persistent drought conditions in many parts of South Africa poses a threat to sustainable tourism operations. Added to this, a greater awareness amongst tourists around the impact of climate change has led to growing market demand for responsible tourism experiences that supports environmental sustainability.

In line with its responsible tourism development objectives, the Department of Tourism has established the R142.5 million GTIP over a three-year period (2017/18 to 2019/20) with a key objective of encouraging privately-owned tourism enterprises to implement responsible tourism practices, utilising cleaner and renewable energy sources and the efficient utilisation of water.

This initiative will not only alleviate pressure on the electricity and water resources of the country and ensure an uninterrupted visitor experience for tourists but will also reduce input costs and facilitate increased competitiveness and operational sustainability for tourism enterprises.

The programme is part of the department's broader initiative to assist the South African tourism sector to adopt practices for the sustainable management and usage of water and electricity resources whilst adhering to responsible tourism principles. The GTIP provides grant funding of up to R1 million to qualifying small and micro tourism enterprises to reduce their energy and water consumption and costs. The programme is managed by the Industrial Development Corporation (IDC) on behalf of the Department of Tourism.

In order to strengthen the programme, the partnership has also been widened to include the National Cleaner Production Centre and the Small Enterprise Finance Agency.

The government introduced the GTIP, administered by the IDC, to encourage private tourism enterprises to move towards more efficient utilisation of energy and water resources. The Department of Tourism is reviewing the implementation modalities of the GTIP to ensure that the much-needed relief for businesses to retrofit is speedily disbursed, so that they can reduce operational costs. A total of R40 million has been put aside for this programme – providing relief in the COVID-19 environment and beyond.

Tourism Transformation Fund

Transformation and more inclusive growth of the tourism sector remains a key priority for the Department of Tourism, in line with broader government objectives and legislation for B-BBEE. As part of its efforts to support sector transformation, the department partnered with the NEF to establish a dedicated capital investment funding mechanism to encourage capital investment by majority black-owned investors in the tourism sector. The TTF aims to utilise grant funding to stimulate accelerated sector transformation and more inclusive growth and is expected to give rise to a new generation of black-owned youth, women and community-based tourism enterprises that will take the tourism sector to new heights.

The fund offers a combination of debt finance from the NEF and grant funding from the department for new and expansionary tourism development projects with majority black shareholding.

The TTF is managed by the NEF and is capitalised by the Department of Tourism to the tune of R40 million annual grant funding, over a period of three financial years up to 2020. The grant funding will be used to reduce the gap that may exist between the prospective investor's own contribution and the approved loan finance and/or equity contribution by the NEF for tourism projects. The grant component will be capped at a maximum of R5 million per successful applicant to unlock investment.

Market Access Support Programme

The cost and difficulty of accessing and engaging international travel buyers serves as a major barrier to unlocking growth potential of small tourism product owners and inbound operators. The aim of the Market Access Support programme is to reduce the cost burden for small tourism enterprises to participate in selected international trade platforms and thereby improving their access to buyers in new and growth markets to unlock demand growth and allow market penetration.

The programme offers financial support to qualifying small tourism enterprises to participate in, and exhibit at selected international trade platforms. Relevant trade platforms (exhibitions and marketing roadshows) included in the programme are identified in consultation with the SAT.

The support offered under the Market Access Support programme typically includes contributions towards the cost of participation, accommodation and economy-class return airfare for applicants approved for support. The cost of participation

(i.e. exhibition fees) at a particular trade platform is paid upfront to the event organiser by the department on behalf of approved applicants.

Tourism Grading Support Programme

The Tourism Grading Support programme was introduced to encourage wider participation in the tourism grading system and to reduce the cost burden of grading on small tourism enterprises. The programme also aims to stimulate an increase in conformity to quality standards in tourism that will enhance the overall visitor experience and improve South Africa's competitiveness as a tourism destination.

The programme offers discounts of between 80% and 90% on the cost of star grading assessment fees for accommodation establishments and meeting venues. The programme is administered by the TGCSA.

National Tourism Sector Strategy (NTSS)

The vision of the NTSS is to position South Africa as one of the top 20 tourism destinations globally. The overall goal of the strategy is to drive the tourism economy, enhance visitor experiences, position South Africa as a destination of choice and sustain good governance in the industry.

The key focus areas of the NTSS are arrivals, GDP and job creation. To achieve all of its objectives, the NTSS focuses on domestic tourism with the intention to increase the number of domestic trips from 30.9 million in 2009 to 54 million by 2020.

Regional tourism is also being targeted with South Africa looking to take advantage of hitherto untapped markets such as outbound tourists.

This strategy represents the government's commitment to intelligent planning and policy formulation. It was developed over two years in close collaboration with local and provincial government, an advisory panel of top industry minds, representatives of various professional bodies, academia, tourism marketing agencies, civil society and the broader public.

The NTSS is a document that the entire sector is committed to and includes coordinated and credible targets. The strategy rests on three pillars, namely:

- driving the tourism economy;
- enhancing visitor experiences; and
- ensuring sustainability and good governance in the industry.

Tourism Month

Tourism Month is celebrated annually in September and provides a heightened month-long focus on the importance of the sector to the South African economy.

Tourism Month features themed activities that are aligned to the UN World Tourism Organisation's (UNWTO) World Tourism Day celebrations that take place annually on 27 September.

The 2019 UNWTO theme for World Tourism Day was: "Tourism and jobs – a better future for all," which highlighted the tourism sector's vast capability to create jobs and reduce the country's unemployment rate.

South Africa adopted the UNWTO theme and remains confident that tourism will contribute to more jobs to its maximum potential.

The 2019 Tourism Month activities were hosted in collaboration with KwaZulu-Natal – known as the Kingdom of the Zulu, a melting pot of African, European and Indian cultures. This province boasts of two world heritage sites, the iSimangaliso Wetland Park and the majestic Ukhahlamba-Drakensberg Park.

Women in Tourism Programme

The majority of workers in the tourism sector are women, yet many of these women are still relegated to menial or junior roles within tourism establishments. The Women in Tourism Programme is an initiative that propels and supports the development and empowerment of women in the tourism sector.

Premised on the principles of respect; recognition; representation and reward, the programme integrates women from diverse backgrounds to converge on a set of common goals and interests that will ensure their success in the sector.

The programme serves as a mechanism to elevate the status of women in tourism by providing training, empowerment and networking opportunities that facilitate their competitiveness as entrepreneurs, professionals and leaders. In January 2019, the Department of Tourism hosted its annual Women in Tourism Conference in Rustenburg in the North West province under the theme, "Promoting empowerment and jobs for shared growth, the Women in Tourism".

Discussions included:

- accelerating the economic empowerment and progression of women in the tourism sector;
- expanding the role of women in the tourism sector through the Women in Tourism platform; and
- exploring new and varied business opportunities to advance women entrepreneurs and contribute to job creation.

The Executive Development Programme for Black Women Tourism Managers builds strong business skills and leadership capabilities among black women in the tourism sector to lead key parts of tourism businesses and form a pool of future top leadership, entrepreneurs and industrialists in the sector.

National tourism service excellence requirements

The national tourism service excellence requirements are aimed at improving and maintaining service levels at all service touch points in the tourism value chain as well as guiding the sector to achieve the NTSS objective of positioning South Africa as one of the top 20 global tourism destinations.

Previously, the tourism value chain in South Africa did not have integrated standards and norms, and this contributed to inconsistencies in service levels.

The service excellence requirements provides a yardstick to be used by all tourism service providers to deliver quality service and experiences that equal or surpass world standards.

The South African Bureau of Standards developed the standards on behalf of the tourism sector and benchmarked them against international requirements. The requirements have four key focus areas, namely marketing, products, delivery of service, and monitoring and evaluation.

National Minimum Standard for Responsible Tourism (NMSRT)

Responsible tourism is a management strategy in which the tourism sector and tourists take responsibility for protecting and conserving the natural environment, respecting and conserving local cultures and ways of life, and contributing to stronger local economies and a better quality of life for local people.

It includes providing better holiday experiences for guests and good business opportunities for tourism enterprises. The concept of responsible tourism is gaining ground as a newly emerging trend worldwide.

The Department of Tourism, in partnership with tourism stakeholders and the private sector, particularly accreditation agencies, developed the NMSRT. In doing so, South Africa has taken the lead on the continent by publishing a set of national minimum standards that are aligned with the International Organisation for Standardisation/International Electrotechnical Commission 17011.

The NMSRT comprises 39 criteria divided into four categories, namely:

- sustainable operations and management;
- economic criteria;
- social and cultural criteria; and
- environmental criteria.

Other projects

Tourism Enterprise Development Programme

The programme is part of the greater objective of the revised NTSS 2016 – 2026 that seeks to ensure sustainable development and growth of tourism enterprises in a manner that facilitates inclusive participation, job creation and contributes to the competitiveness of tourism destinations. The programme provides training and support for emerging and existing tourism businesses to ensure their sustainability in the sector. The programme includes an incubator programme in Pilanesberg with 50 incubatees.

The incubator services are designed to address the identified needs of the SMMEs, and constant monitoring conducted by the Department of Tourism's Monitoring and Evaluation, and Enterprise Development units respectively.

The objective is to create a programme that is aligned to government's focus on SMMEs and facilitate the transformation of the tourism sector to make it inclusive and accessible to new entrants, especially businesses owned and managed by the women and the youth.

Lilizela Tourism Awards

The Lilizela Tourism Awards recognises industry players within four focus areas reflecting eight categories, with the 9th category being the Minister's Award. The awards acknowledge and applaud the efforts of people whose work sets global benchmarks in excellence. The 2019 national awards ceremony took place on 9 November at the Sun International Time Square Arena.

The 2019 Lilizela Tourism award winners were:

- Tour Operator: Earthstompers Adventures (Western Cape).
- Accommodation Mobility: Soli Deo Gloria (Western Cape).
- Experience Mobility: Cape Town International Convention Centre Company (Western Cape).
- Scenic Beauty: Kagga Kamma Nature Reserve (Western Cape).
- Wildlife Encounters: Hayward's Grand Safaris (Gauteng).
- Emerging Tourism Entrepreneur of the Year Award: Camping RetrEats (Gauteng).
- Beach Experience: Chokka Trail (Eastern Cape).
- Action & Adventure: Baviaans Camino (Eastern Cape).
- Roots & Culture: Traditional African homestays South Africa, (Limpopo).
- Culture & Lifestyle: The Workshop to ko Kasi (Northern Cape).
- Lap of Luxury: Oceana Beach & Wildlife Reserve (Eastern Cape).
- Marine Adventure: Raggy Charters (Eastern Cape).

Caravan & Camping:

- Mahai Caravan Park Royal Natal (KwaZulu-Natal).
- Dibiki Holiday Resort (Western Cape).
- Jackalberry Ridge (Mpumalanga).

Backpackers & Hostelling:

- Saltycrax Backpackers (Western Cape).
- Once in Joburg (Gauteng).
- Coffee Shack Backpackers & Surf School (Eastern Cape).

Bed & Breakfast:

- The Kingsman (Eastern Cape).
- Bushbaby River Lodge (Limpopo).
- African Tulip Guesthouse (Western Cape).

Guesthouse:

- River Place Manor (Northern Cape).
- La Lechere Guesthouse (Limpopo).
- Panorama Guest House King William's Town (Eastern Cape).
- Naba Lodge Guest House (Northern Cape).

Country House:

- Welgelegen Manor (Mpumalanga).
- Pleasant Places Country Guest House (KwaZulu-Natal).
- Hamilton Parks Country Lodge (Mpumalanga).

Lodge:

- The Gorge Private Game Lodge & Spa (KwaZulu-Natal).
- Kagga Kamma Nature Reserve (Western Cape).
- Ebundu (Pty) Ltd (Mpumalanga).

Game Lodge:

- Bayala Game Lodge (KwaZulu-Natal).
- Phelwana Game Lodge (Limpopo).
- Palala Boutique Game Lodge and Spa (Limpopo).

Self-Catering Shared Vacation:

- Haga Haga (Eastern Cape).
- Thunzi Bush Lodge (Eastern Cape).
- Mjejane Bush Camp (Mpumalanga).

Self-Catering Exclusive:

- Bethesda Exclusive Accommodation (Free State).
- Aquarius Luxury Suites (Western Cape).
- Burlington Bush Cottages (Eastern Cape)
- N'Wambu Safari Lodge by Elite Residences (Mpumalanga).

In-Hotel Conference Centre:

- Mont d' Or Hotel (Free State).

Events Venue:

- Naba Lodge Conference Facility (Northern Cape).
- Mthatha Dam Resort Luchaba Nature Reserve (Eastern Cape).
- Sun Arena (Gauteng).

Function Venue:

- Monakaladi Gardens Wedding and Conference Venue (North West).
- AnnVilla Conference Venue (North West).

Conference Venue:

- The Forum I The Campus (Gauteng).

Convention & Exhibition Centre:

- Sandton Convention Centre (Gauteng).
- Olive Convention Centre (KwaZulu-Natal).

Meetings, Exhibitions & Special Events (MESE):
- Birchwood Hotel and OR Tambo Conference Centre (Gauteng).
- Forever Hotel@ Centurion (Gauteng).

Small Hotel:
- Eendracht Hotel (Western Cape).
- Mayfair Hotel (Eastern Cape).

Apartment Hotel:
- The Hyde Hotel (Western Cape).

Boutique Hotel:
- Ekhaya Boutique Hotel (KwaZulu-Natal).
- Oceana Beach & Wildlife Reserve (Eastern Cape).

Hotel:
- Road Lodge Potchefstroom (North West).
- Town Lodge Port Elizabeth (Eastern Cape)
- Lesedi African Lodge & Cultural Village (North West).
- The Oyster Box Hotel (KwaZulu-Natal).
- Thaba Eco Hotel (Gauteng).

Tour Guides:
- Fhumulani Sidney Mikosi, Nature Guide (Limpopo).
- Bulelani Gerald Futshane, Cultural Guide (Western Cape).
- Kwandiwe Waxa, Adventure Guide (Eastern Cape).

Guidelines for international tourists

Every international traveller to South Africa must have a valid passport and, where necessary, a visa.

The Immigration Act, 2002 (Act 13 of 2002), stipulates that all visitors to South Africa are required to have at least one blank page (both back and front) in their passport to enable the entry visa to be issued.

If there is insufficient space in the passport, entry will be denied.

Enquiries may be directed to South African diplomatic representatives abroad or to the DHA in Pretoria, Gauteng. Visas are issued free of charge.

Visitors who intend travelling between South Africa and neighbouring countries are advised to apply for multiple-entry visas.

Passport holders of certain countries are exempt from visa requirements.

Tourists must satisfy immigration officers that they have the means to support themselves during their stay and that they have return or onward tickets. They must also have valid international health certificates.

Visitors from the yellow fever belt in Africa and America, and those who travel through or disembark in these areas, have to be inoculated against the disease.

Malaria is endemic to parts of KwaZulu-Natal, Mpumalanga and Limpopo. It is essential to take anti-malaria precautions when visiting these areas.

Foreign tourists visiting South Africa can have their value-added tax (VAT) refunded, provided the value of the items purchased exceeds R20. VAT is refunded on departure at the point of exit.

South Africa's transport infrastructure – airlines, railroads, luxury touring buses (coaches) and motor vehicles – is such that tourists can travel comfortably and quickly from their port of entry to any part of the country.

The South African Airways, as well as a number of international airlines, operate regular scheduled flights to and from South Africa.

Several domestic airlines operate in the country. There are also mainline trains to all parts of the country.

The tourist accommodation industry in South Africa provides a wide spectrum of accommodation, from formal hotels to informal holiday flats and cottages, game lodges and reserves, guest houses, youth hostels and bed-and-breakfast establishments.

Tourist guiding

The Department of Tourism entered into an agreement with the CATHSSETA, seeking to prioritise tourist-guide training and development throughout South Africa.

The MoU with the CATHSSETA also addresses areas of transformation within the tourist guide sector, as well as the maintenance of standards through quality training and effective skills development programmes aimed at existing tourist guides.

The department engaged the Road Traffic Management Corporation to educate traffic officials, throughout South Africa, on how to enforce the legislation pertaining to tourist guides. It works closely with the DoT with a view to ensuring enforcement of tourist-guiding issues relating to tour operators and related regulations in the National Land Transport Act, 2009 (Act 5 of 2009).

The Department of Tourism wants industry bodies that are committed to growing the tourist-guiding sector and elevating the profession to enter into formal agreements with stakeholder bodies that share department's vision.

It undertook a process to review the Regulations in Respect of Tourist Guiding. This included wide consultations with tourist guides and key stakeholders throughout the country to improve processes and systems to register tourist guides and ensure compliance within the sector.

The department is working with the provinces to establish a centralised database of tourist guides. Once a viable database is in place, the department will be able to engage the departments of Home Affairs, and Justice and Correctional Services, and other relevant authorities to ensure that the information received from the provinces is subjected to a vetting process as prescribed in the Tourism Act of 2014.

The training programmes for tourist guides taking place in provinces focus on skills development for existing tourist guides to make them more marketable and employable within the sector.

Tourism niche markets

Domestic tourism (Sho't Left)

The Sho't Left Campaign aims to promote a culture of local holiday travel, targeting ordinary South Africans and their families who have a desire to see more of the country but do not know where to go.

The Sho't Left Campaign was relaunched in August 2007, challenging South Africans to "see your world differently", even when only visiting family or friends. The campaign is aimed at young upcoming individuals, independent couples and families, with research into the domestic tourism market indicating that over five million South Africans have both the resources and the desire to travel.

Adventure tourism

The country's diverse terrain, together with an ideal climate for outdoor activities, makes it perfect for the adventure tourism niche market. Activities such as climbing, surfing, diving, hiking, horseback safaris, mountain-biking, river-rafting and just about any other extreme activity are supported by dedicated operators.

South Africa offers some of the best rock climbing and abseiling opportunities in the world. Those who prefer rivers have a choice of trips ranging from mostly scenic to Grade 5 white-water rafting. Opportunities for escorted or self-guided trips are also available.

For those who want to take to the skies, there are more than 100 listed paragliding or hang-gliding launch sites as well as numerous lesser known sites. There are also many opportunities for helicopter rides balloon and microlight flights, aerobatics and skydiving.

Thousands of km of hiking trails wind through the country in desert, forest, mountain or coastal terrains, many with adjacent mountain-biking trails.

In addition, South Africa offers a wide variety of horse trails through vineyards, on beaches and in the mountains. For the more adventurous there are also horseback safaris in game reserves. The 216-m Bloukrans Bridge on the border of the Eastern and Western Cape offers the highest commercial bungee jump in the world.

Business tourism

South Africa remains one of the top 15 long-haul business-events destinations in the world and is the premier business-events destination in Africa. The business-events industry was identified as an important contributor towards the NTSS's target of 15 million international arrivals by 2020.

The government recognises business events tourism as an area with significant growth potential and has therefore established the South Africa National Convention Bureau (SANCB) to further promote growth in the conferencing industry. The SANCB is tasked with coordinating national bidding, undertaking research and collaborating with city and provincial convention bureaus and the business events industry to present a united front for destination South Africa.

Cruise tourism

The Department of Tourism works closely with the cruise line industry to ensure that packages and excursions are developed and that passengers are encouraged to visit the country's shores, enjoy what it has to offer and inspire other travellers to visit South Africa.

Cultural tourism

Heritage and cultural tourism is the fastest-emerging competitive niche within domestic and international tourism markets. This category accounts for about two-thirds of international tourism.

The National Heritage and Cultural Strategy is aimed at guiding the integration of heritage and cultural resources with mainstream tourism. It is set to stimulate sustainable livelihoods through heritage and cultural tourism products, as well as to diversify the sector and raise awareness of heritage and cultural resources.

South Africa's diversity is reflected in its cultural tourism, with many destinations commemorating the past. These range from the ancient nomadic San culture to European settlement, apartheid rule and the struggle for political freedom.

Cultural tourist destinations include the following:

- Ukhahlamba-Drakensberg Park in KwaZulu-Natal is home to the ancient rock art of the San.
- Cradle of Humankind near Johannesburg is the richest hominid fossil site in the world.
- Mapungubwe in Limpopo is one of the richest archaeological sites in Africa, where an advanced South African culture prospered between 1 200 AD and 1 270 AD.
- Soweto's Heritage Trail is a reminder of the events that characterised South Africa's liberation struggle, such as the student uprising on 16 June 1976.

Many cultural villages have been established throughout South Africa to reflect the different cultures and traditions of the country's people.

Medical tourism

South Africa has emerged as a medical tourism destination of choice for travellers from other African countries as well as further afield; and the industry is proving to have extensive growth potential.

Most medical tourists come to South Africa for cosmetic surgery, but the country's skilled surgeons can also perform organ transplants, cardiac, orthopaedic and obesity surgery, and dentistry.

Nature-based tourism

South Africa's fauna and flora, and varied landscapes have enormous recreational value and attract several million tourists each year.

Protected natural areas serve not only to maintain biodiversity, but sustainable visitor access to these areas adds economic, recreational and aesthetic value to that which is being conserved within their borders. It also helps to preserve a wealth of traditional indigenous knowledge related to biodiversity, which is in itself a tourism resource.

South Africa has 20 national parks as well as numerous private game farms and nature reserves.

Four of the country's UNESCO world heritage sites are natural sites, while one is a mixed cultural/natural site. These are the Cape Floral Region, the iSimangaliso Wetland Park, the Vredefort Dome, Barberton Makhonjwa Mountains and the uKhahlamba Drakensberg Park.

South Africa's popularity as an avitourism destination is due to the large number of birds, endemic species and major bird habitats. Birdlife South Africa, the country's national birding organisation, has more than 8 000 members and 40 branches nationwide.

Rural tourism

The National Rural Strategy is aimed at creating community-driven bed-and-breakfast operations, catering for international and domestic tourists.

In supporting the geographic spread of tourism and in particular tourism growth in rural areas and enhancing the supply of rural tourism products, the Department of Tourism is focusing on rural communities.

Culture and heritage products are the fastest emerging competitive niche offerings in the domestic and international markets.

Sustainable development will be achieved if the people, whose land, culture and natural resources are used for tourism, benefit from such use in a meaningful way.

Sports tourism

It is estimated that sports tourism contributes more than R6 billion to the South African tourism industry. More than 10% of foreign tourists come to South Africa to watch or participate in sports events, with spectators accounting for 60% to 80% of these arrivals.

The world-class sporting events on South Africa's annual calendar include:

- the annual Cape Argus Cycle Race, which caters for 35 000 people riding and pushing their bikes over a 10-km course;
- the Midmar Mile in KwaZulu-Natal, which attracts 18 000 open-water swimmers annually; and
- the Comrades Marathon.

The Sports and Events Tourism Exchange is the only event of its kind in Southern Africa and provides a platform that brings together businesses from the sports, events and tourism industries.

Township tourism

Township tours have the potential to present South Africa's culture and heritage and the Department of Tourism plans to develop packages to achieve that goal. The government wants to capitalise on job-creation opportunities in this sector.

Wine tourism

Wine tourism is growing fast worldwide and plays an especially important role in South Africa with its centuries-old reputation for making high-quality wine. International Wine Review, one of the world's most influential opinion formers on wine, has rated South Africa's wine tourism the best developed in the world.

The country's vineyards are mostly situated in the Western Cape near the coast.

All South African wine routes fall under the auspices of the Wine of Origin Scheme.

Stylistically, South African wines fit somewhere between Old World and New World.

Regional tourism

Western Cape

The Western Cape lies at the southern tip of Africa. The province's unmatched natural beauty, famous hospitality, cultural diversity, excellent wine and rich cuisine make it one of the world's greatest tourist attractions.

The tourism industry in the province has grown faster and created more jobs than any other province. Tourism directly contributes R17 billion to the provincial economy and accounts for 204 000 formal jobs in the province.

Cape Metropole

Tourism in the city of Cape Town, which lies at the foot of the magnificent Table Mountain, centres on the V&A Waterfront. A working harbour, the V&A Waterfront offers everything from upmarket shopping malls, arts and craft markets, and a variety of restaurants to theatres, live music and museums.

Table Mountain, which forms part of the Table Mountain National Park, is one of the New Seven Wonders of Nature. A modern cableway takes visitors to the top of the mountain, providing spectacular views.

Other major attractions in the city include the Bo-Kaap Museum, the Castle of Good Hope, the Company's Garden, the District Six Museum, flea markets, the Grand Parade, the Houses of Parliament, the South African Cultural History Museum and the South African National Gallery.

The Gold of Africa Museum, established by Anglo Gold, houses a celebrated collection of more than 350 gold artefacts.

Air flips and trips are available, as are many boat and yacht trips from Table Bay Harbour.

There are also trips to Robben Island (proclaimed a world heritage site and also the place where former President Nelson Mandela was imprisoned for 18 of his 27 years in prison).

The Nelson Mandela Gateway to Robben Island is in the Clock Tower Precinct at the V&A Waterfront. The gateway houses interactive multimedia exhibitions, an auditorium, boardrooms, the Robben Island Museum and a restaurant.

Jazz is big in Cape Town. From traditional blues through progressive jazz to African-influenced jazz, every taste is catered for at a number of restaurants, jazz cafés, cigar bars, pubs and wine farms. The top jazz event in the Western Cape is the annual Cape Town International Jazz Festival.

The South African Rugby Museum in Newlands reflects the history of the sport as far back as 1891.

The Rhodes Memorial in Rondebosch on the slopes of Table Mountain was built from granite from the mountain as a tribute to the memory of Cecil John Rhodes, Prime Minister of the Cape from 1890 to 1896.

The University of Cape Town is worth a visit for its historic Middle Campus and many buildings designed by Sir Herbert Baker.

Cape Point, part of the Table Mountain National Park, offers many drives, walks, picnic spots and a licensed restaurant. Care has been taken to protect the environmental integrity of this 22 100 ha reserve of indigenous flora and fauna.

Simon's Town's naval atmosphere and Historic Mile are major attractions in the area. A statue of the famous dog and sailors' friend Able Seaman Just Nuisance stands at Jubilee Square.

Hout Bay is renowned for its colourful working harbour. Seafood outlets, round-the-bay trips to the nearby seal colony, shell and gift shops, and a famous harbour-front emporium attract many visitors. Duiker Island is a seal and seabird sanctuary.

The World of Birds Wildlife Sanctuary is one of the largest bird parks in the world and houses some 3 000 birds of 400 different species.

Big Bay in Bloubergstrand is a surfers' paradise and hosts an international windsurfing event.

Rietvlei Nature Reserve is a unique wetland area with over 110 bird species, including pelicans and flamingos.

Canal Walk in the suburb of Century City is one of the largest shopping centres in Africa, with close to 400 shops, and is home to the largest cinema complex in South Africa.

New Year in Cape Town is a festive affair, when the Cape minstrels take to the streets with their upbeat music and fancy costumes.

The Monkey Town Primate Centre is home to over 200 individual primates and is located east of Somerset West on the N2.

Strawberry-picking in Cape Town on the Mooiberge Strawberry Farm is available in season, which begins in November.

Cape winelands

The Cape winelands feature dramatic mountains, rolling farmlands and peaceful vineyards. They are home to Route 62 – the world's longest wine route.

The Stellenbosch Wine Route comprises over 100 wine estates, most of which offer cellar tours.

Stellenbosch is the oldest town in South Africa. The town is a gracious blend of old Cape Dutch, Georgian and Victorian architecture. Dorp Street consists of one of the longest rows of old buildings in the country.

The Stellenbosch Village Museum consists of four homesteads and gardens ranging from the late-17th to the mid-19th centuries. The Stellenbosch Toy and Miniature Museum houses a collection of 1:12 scale miniatures such as room boxes, miniature houses, antique dolls, cars and cuddly toys.

The Spier Summer Arts Festival livens up summer nights from November to March at the Spier Wine Estate near Stellenbosch. Supervised pony and cart rides for children are available on the lawns of the Spier Estate. There is also a horse-carriage tour and equestrian centre for older children.

The Freedom Monument at Pniel commemorates the freed slaves who were the first settlers at the mission station, established in 1843.

Franschhoek has become known as the "Gourmet Capital" of the Cape. The Huguenot Monument was built in 1944 to commemorate the arrival in 1688 of the Huguenots who were predominantly French. In April each year, the region hosts the South African Cheese Festival. Visitors can also enjoy various hiking trails and historical walks, as well as the Vignerons de Franschhoek Wine Route. There is also an annual book/literary festival in Franschhoek. Butterfly World, one of the more unique attractions of the Western Cape winelands, consists of a tropical garden in a 1 000 m^2 greenhouse.

The Giraffe House Wildlife Awareness Centre comprises 15 ha and focuses mainly on African wildlife. Giraffe House provides a place for people to enjoy a picnic in the fresh air, while experiencing and learning about animals and conservation.

The Drakenstein Lion Park was established as a sanctuary for lions born in captivity. The Jonkershoek Nature Reserve, which includes the smaller Assegaaibosch Nature Reserve, is near Stellenbosch, comprising the Jonkershoek Mountains and portions of the upper Jonkershoek Valley. The reserve stretches over 9 800 ha and its rugged terrain is ideal for hiking. Assegaaibosch is much smaller and is suitable for shorter walks and picnics.

At Le Bonheur Estate, visitors can experience guided croc-pond tours, which lead across open dams via rampways. Over 1 000 crocodiles are housed in these dams. Visitors can touch a baby crocodile and, during summer months, witness them being fed.

Paarl is famous for its Cape Dutch and Victorian architectural treasures found along a 1-km stretch of the main street. The area's fynbos supports many south-western Cape endemics, such as the Cape sugarbird and orange-breasted sunbird. The Afrikaans Language Monument is on the slopes of Paarl Mountain, while the Afrikaanse Taalmuseum (Language Museum) is in the centre of the town.

The town of Wellington lies in a picturesque valley, with the majestic Hawequa Mountains on its eastern border. Wellington is also the home of South Africa's dried-fruit industry.

Experience life as the pioneers did in years gone by at the Kleinplasie Living Museum. The KWV Brandy Cellar, the largest of its kind in the world, offers cellar tours and brandy tastings.

The Hex River Valley is the largest producer of table grapes in southern Africa. Visitors can pick their own grapes at harvest time and sample the variety of export-quality produce.

The well-known Hex River 4x4 trail and the ochre San rock art trail is a must for nature lovers. De Doorns lies in the heart of the Hex River Valley. Bonnievale, on the Breede River, features several cheese factories.

For the adventurous outdoor enthusiast there are canoe trips, as well as birdwatching and riverboating.

Surrounded by vineyards, orchards, and roses, Robertson is known as "The Valley of Wine and Roses". It is known for its connoisseur-quality wines and its thoroughbred horses. Renowned for its muscadel wines, Montagu is the gateway to the Little Karoo.

Relax in the healing waters of the Avalon Springs or visit the Montagu Museum, which houses, among other things, original cartoons and books by well-known cartoonist Thomas Ochse Honiball.

The picturesque village of Gouda is known for the Parrotts Den pub, a living museum in the Gouda Hotel.

McGregor has a variety of charming thatched cottages and well-preserved Victorian houses, making it one of the best-preserved examples of mid-19th-century architecture in the Western Cape.

Prince Alfred Hamlet is the gateway to the Gydo Pass, known for its scenic views. This quaint village lies in an important deciduous-fruit farming area. Hidden amid vineyards and wine estates lies Rawsonville, known for its award-winning wines.

Tourists can enjoy an afternoon drive along the beautiful Slanghoek Valley with its lush vineyards and panoramic views or relax in the mineral springs at Goudini Spa.

Garden Route

The Garden Route spans roughly 200 km of the southern coast, incorporating a stretch of coastline that includes Mossel Bay, George, Wilderness, Sedgefield, Knysna, Plettenberg Bay and Nature's Valley – each with its own charm and attractions. Famed for its lush greenery and the vast Tsitsikamma Forest, the Garden Route is the most biodiverse region in the world.

The Garden Route features the Pont at Malgas, which is one of the two remaining ponts in the country, ferrying vehicles and livestock across the Breede River. The Grootvadersbosch Nature Reserve outside Heidelberg comprises the popular Bushbuck Trail, a wilderness trail and two mountain-biking trails. Riversdale is one of South Africa's most important fynbos export areas. Other attractions include the Julius Gordon Africana Museum.

At the historical Strandveld Architectural Heritage Site at Still Bay, visitors can watch tame eels being fed. Ancient fish traps can be seen at Morris Point and the harbour.

At the aloe factories at Albertinia, aloe juice is extracted for medicine and high-quality skincare products. Nearby, bungee-jumping at the Gouritz River Gorge, hiking, mountain-biking and angling are popular pastimes.

The Point in Mossel Bay is not only popular among surfers, but its natural pool formed by rock is also a favourite swimming spot

at low tide. The Saint Blaize trail starts here and is the ideal place from which to watch the whales and dolphins at play in season.

The harbour at Mossel Bay is one of the most modern commercial and recreational harbours on the southern coastline of the Western Cape. Other attractions include the Attequas Kloof Pass, Anglo-Boer/South African War blockhouses and the Bartolomeu Dias complex. Great Brak River offers a historic village with many opportunities for whale watching and dolphin watching along the extensive coast.

The Slave Tree in George, located just outside the Old Library, was planted in 1811, when George was laid out. It is known to be the biggest English oak in the southern hemisphere. George is popular among golfers and is home to the renowned Fancourt Country Club and Golf Estate, as well as various other acclaimed golf courses. Visitors can board the Power Van at the Outeniqua Transport Museum and enjoy a glimpse of the Garden Route Botanical Garden from this rail bus. The Big Tree at Woodville, an Outeniqua yellowwood, is estimated to be around 850 years old. It is located about 40 km outside of George in the direction of Knysna.

The George Airport, Outeniqua Pass, railway line and the N2 offer convenient access to this region, making George the ideal hub from which to explore the Garden Route and Little Karoo.

Victoria Bay and Wilderness are popular for their unspoilt beaches. Wilderness is the western gateway to the southern Cape lakes area. It is a nature lover's paradise, best known for its beaches, lakes, placid lagoon and lush indigenous forests.

The Langvlei and Rondevlei bird sanctuaries in the Wilderness National Park, which hosts over 230 different bird species, is popular among birdwatchers. Sedgefield borders Swartvlei Lagoon, the largest natural inland saltwater lake in South Africa. Activities include beach horse riding, hiking, angling and birdwatching.

Knysna nestles on the banks of an estuary, guarded by The Heads (two huge sandstone cliffs) and surrounded by indigenous forests, tranquil lakes and golden beaches.

This natural wonderland is home to the largest and smallest of creatures, from the Knysna seahorse to the Knysna elephants, rare delicate butterflies and the endemic Knysna loerie, a colourful forest bird.

The abundant fynbos and forest settings host over 200 species. Knysna is also famous for its delectable homegrown oysters, enjoyed with locally brewed beer in quaint pubs and restaurants. The Knysna Oyster Festival, a celebration of the good life, has established itself as one of the most popular annual events in the Western Cape.

An eclectic mix of art galleries presents the diversity of talent in the area. There are also lagoon cruises, forest hikes, golf and adventure sports on offer.

Plettenberg Bay is adventure country, offering boat-based whale watching, blackwater tubing, hiking, as well as forest and cycling trails. The Keurbooms River Nature Reserve at Plettenberg Bay offers a canoeing trail, while the Robberg Nature Reserve is a treasure trove of land, marine, geological and archaeological wealth.

Little Karoo

The Little Karoo's fascinating landscape is fashioned almost entirely by water. Its vegetation ranges from lush greenery in the fertile river valleys to short, rugged Karoo plants in the veld. Gorges feature rivers that cut through towering mountains, while breathtakingly steep passes cross imposing terrain. The region is also home to the world's largest bird – the ostrich. The Little Karoo is rich in culture and history. Oudtshoorn, the world's ostrich-feather capital, is the region's main town.

The annual Klein-Karoo Nasionale Kunstefees (National Arts Festival) is held in the town. Some 29 km from Oudtshoorn lie the Cango Caves, a series of subterranean limestone caverns. Bearing evidence of early San habitation, the cave features magnificent dripstone formations.

Amalienstein and Zoar are historic mission stations midway between Ladismith and Calitzdorp. Visitors can go on donkey-cart and hiking trails through orchards and vineyards, while the Seweweekspoort is ideal for mountain-biking, hiking, and protea and fynbos admirers. Calitzdorp has four wine estates, three of which are open to the public.

The spring water of the Calitzdorp Spa is rich in minerals and reputed to have medicinal properties. The Gamka Mountain Reserve is home to the rare and endangered Cape mountain zebra.

Excellent wines and port are produced in the Calitzdorp and De Rust areas. The Swartberg Nature Reserve and Pass with its gravel roads is also worth a visit. De Rust lies at the southern entrance to Meiringspoort. The Meiringspoort Gorge extends 20 km through the Swartberg Mountain Range. Halfway through is a beautiful 69-m waterfall. Wine farms in the area are open to the public.

Ladysmith is home to the Towerkop Cheese Factory. There are various hiking, mountain-biking and 4x4 trails in the area, as well as the Anysberg, Little Karoo and Towerkop nature reserves.

Uniondale, on the main route between George and Graaff-Reinet, features the largest water wheel in the country, the Old Water Mill. Uniondale Poort is a scenic drive linking Uniondale with Avontuur in the Langkloof Valley.

At Vanwyksdorp, visitors can see how fynbos is dried and packed for the export market. Donkey-cart rides take visitors to Anglo-Boer/South African War grave sites.

Central Karoo

The Central Karoo, a fascinating semi-desert area, lies in the heart of one of the world's most unique and interesting arid zones. This ancient, fossil-rich land is five times the size of Great Britain. Here, visitors will find the Earth's largest variety of succulents. Beaufort West, the oldest town in the Central Karoo, is often referred to as the "Oasis of the Karoo". The local museum displays awards presented to heart-transplant pioneer, Professor Chris Barnard, a son of this town.

A township route introduces visitors to the Xhosa culture in the area. The Karoo National Park, on the town's doorstep, is home to a variety of game, as well as the highly endangered riverine rabbit.

Matjiesfontein, a national monument, offers tourists a peek into yesteryear and the opportunity to overnight in Victorian splendour. The village houses a transport museum and the Marie Rawdon Museum.

Experience the vastness of the Great Karoo in Murraysburg, an ecotourist and hunter's paradise.

Laingsburg, a tiny village that was devastated by floods about a century after it was established, was rebuilt afterwards. It is the best place to study the geology of the region.

Prince Albert is a well-preserved town at the foot of the Swartberg Mountains. It is the ideal place to sample Karoo cuisine, see examples of local architecture dating back to the early 1800s and enjoy several scenic drives.

The Fransie Pienaar Museum introduces visitors to the cultural history of the area. It has a fossil room and an exhibit covering the gold rush in this area in the 19th century. The museum has a licence to distil and sell "witblits" (literally white lightning, also known as "firewater" in the local parlance). Prince Albert is the closest town by road to Gamkaskloof.

The Hell, a little valley in the heart of the Swartberg Mountains, was the home of one of the world's most isolated communities for almost 150 years. Gamkaskloof is a nature reserve and national monument managed by Cape Nature Conservation. It has overnight facilities and can be accessed by a 57-km long (but two-hour drive) winding road which starts at the peak of the Swartberg Pass.

West Coast

The West Coast is a region of outstanding beauty and contrast. The coast's scenic beauty is matched only by culinary experiences of mussels, oysters, calamari, crayfish and abalone in season, or linefish pulled from the Benguela Current's cold waters.

During April every year, Lambert's Bay has the Crayfish and Cultural Festival. The area is not only a birder's paradise, but every year migrating whales visit the coastal waters from July.

Vredenburg, the business centre of the area, has a popular golf course with a bird hide. Lambert's Bay is a traditional fishing village, with Bird Island as a popular tourist attraction. It is a breeding ground for African penguins, the Cape cormorant and other seabirds.

Within two months of the first good winter rains, wild flowers on the West Coast explode in a brilliant display of colour.

The Swartland region is known for its wheat fields, vineyards, wineries and outdoor activities.

Further north, visitors encounter the Olifants River Valley and the vast plains of the Knersvlakte with its wealth of indigenous succulent plants.

The citrus area in the Olifants River Valley is the third-largest in South Africa.

The town of Darling draws visitors to its country museum and art gallery, annual wild flower and orchid shows, basket factory and wine cellars.

The entertainment venue "Evita se Perron" is situated at the old Darling Railway Station and offers top performances by South African entertainers.

Malmesbury is the biggest town in the Swartland. Major attractions include the Malmesbury Museum and the historical walkabout.

The Riebeek Valley is known for its scenic beauty. The area has become a popular haven for well-known artists of various disciplines. Wines and olives can be tasted at various cellars.

Elands Bay is a popular holiday resort and surfer's paradise. Khoi and San rock art can be viewed at the Elands Bay caves.

Moorreesburg and Koringberg are major wheat-distributing towns. Tourists can visit the Wheat Industry Museum, one of only three in the world. Birdwatching, hiking, 4x4 routes, clay-pigeon shooting, mountain-biking trails, canoeing and waterskiing at the Misverstand Dam are popular activities.

Yzerfontein is famous for its unspoilt beaches, fynbos, beautiful views and whale watching. Another major attraction is the historical lime furnaces.

Langebaan, a popular holiday destination, is home to the West Coast National Park. An internationally renowned wetland that houses about 60 000 waterbirds and waders, the park attracts thousands of visitors each year. The oldest anatomically modern fossilised human footprints were also discovered here.

The Langebaan Lagoon forms part of the park and is zoned for specific activities. The Postberg section of the park, across the lagoon, is famous for its wild flowers that bloom mainly during August and September.

Cape Columbine at Paternoster is the last manned lighthouse build on the South African coast. The Columbine Nature Reserve is home to a variety of seabird species.

Saldanha is a water sport enthusiast's paradise. Its attractions include Doc's Cave, a landmark on the scenic breakwater drive, and the Hoedjieskoppie Nature Reserve.

There are various hiking trails in the SAS Saldanha Nature Reserve.

St Helena Bay is best known for the Vasco Da Gama Monument and Museum. Visitors can enjoy fishing (snoek in season), hiking as well as whale watching and birdwatching.

Piketberg offers arts and crafts, fauna and flora, wine culture and recreation.

The Goedverwacht and Wittewater Moravian mission stations are close to the town. Porterville is famous for its Disa Route (best in January and February).

The Groot Winterhoek Mountain Peak in the Groot Winterhoek Wilderness Area is the second highest in the Western Cape.

The Dasklip Pass is popular with hang-gliders. At Velddrif/Laaiplek, visitors can indulge in bokkems (a West Coast salted-fish delicacy) at factories along the Berg River. Tourists can also visit the salt-processing factory and the West Coast Art Gallery in town.

The wine route from Citrusdal to Lutzville produces a selection of internationally acclaimed wines. Citrusdal is famous for its citrus products and wines. The Citrusdal Museum depicts the pioneering days of the early colonists. The Goede Hoop Citrus Co-Op is the largest single packing facility in South Africa. World-renowned Rooibos tea is also produced here.

The annual Citrusdal Outdoor Calabash features 4x4 outings, lectures and visits to rock-art sites and an arts and crafts market. Annually, scores of skydiving enthusiasts visit Citrusdal for a skydiving "boogie" that lasts several days. The oldest orange tree in the country, calculated to be more than 250 years old, grows in the Citrusdal Valley. The Sandveldhuisie is an example of a typical Sandveld dwelling.

The Cederberg Wilderness Area features the elephant's foot plant, the rare snow protea and some of the best examples of San rock art in the Western Cape.

Visitors to Clanwilliam can visit the Rooibos and Velskoen factories as well as the grave of the well-known South African poet Louis Leipoldt.

Various historical buildings can also be viewed. The Clanwilliam and Bulshoek dams are popular among water sport enthusiasts.

Wuppertal, at the foot of the Cederberg mountains, features the oldest Rhenish Mission Station. Proceeds from 4x4 trails in

the area fund the creation of new hiking trails and the building of more overnight huts and guest houses.

The town, which is well-known for its Rooibos and Buchu production, has added one more attraction to its tourism offerings – the Cederberg Donkey Cart Route. The project entails a three-day tour through the Cederberg Mountain area and Heuningvlei, with accommodation facilities for overnight visitors.

Vredendal is the centre of the Lower Olifants River Valley. Major attractions include marble-processing and manufacturing, industrial mines (dolomite and limestone), the KWV Grape Juice Concentrate Plant and Distillery and the South African Dried Fruit cooperative. The town is also home to the Vredendal Wine Cellar, the largest cooperative wine cellar under one roof in the southern hemisphere.

The picturesque town of Doringbaai with its attractive lighthouse is well known for its seafood.

Strandfontein, about 8 km north of Doringbaai, is essentially a holiday and retirement resort with a panoramic view of the ocean. Klawer was named after the wild clover that grows in the area. During the flower season, the area is a symphony of colour. The Doring River features hiking trails and opportunities for river-rafting. Lutzville and Koekenaap are synonymous with wine and flowers in season.

Visitors can also view the Sishen-Saldanha Railway Bridge. Where the railway line spans the Olifants River, it is divided into 23 sections, each 45 m long. The 14 100-t deck was pushed into position over teflon sheets with hydraulic jacks from the bridgehead. It is the longest bridge in the world built using this method.

Vanrhynsdorp houses the largest succulent nursery in South Africa. The Latsky Radio Museum houses a collection of old valve radios, some dating back to 1924. The Troe Troe and Rietpoort mission stations are a must-see for history enthusiasts.

Overberg

In the most southerly region of Africa east of Cape Town, lies the Overberg.

The Hangklip-Kleinmond area comprises Kleinmond, Betty's Bay, Pringle Bay and Rooi Els. It is a popular holiday region, ideal for whale watching, and includes the Kleinmond Coastal Nature Reserve and the Harold Porter Botanical Garden.

The Penguin Reserve at Stoney Point, Betty's Bay, is one of two breeding colonies of the jackass penguin off Africa.

South Africa's first international biosphere reserve, the Kogelberg Biosphere Reserve, was proclaimed by the UNESCO in 1999. It runs along the coast from Gordon's Bay to the Bot River Vlei, stretching 2 km out to sea, and inland to the Groenlandberg Mountains near Grabouw.

Hermanus is a popular holiday resort and famous for the best land-based whale watching in the world.

Stanford is one of the few villages in South Africa where the market square has been retained. The central core of the village has been proclaimed a national conservation area. Award-winning wines are produced in the area.

Gansbaai is known for its excellent rock and boat angling, diving, shark-cage diving and whale watching.

The Danger Point Lighthouse, named as such because of the ships that have been wrecked and lives lost on this dangerous coast, is open to the public.

De Kelders is the only freshwater cave on the African coast. Spectacular views of southern right whales can be enjoyed from the cliffs at De Kelders and along the coast to Pearly Beach.

Also popular are white-shark tours, diving safaris and fishing trips.

Elim was founded by German missionaries in 1824, with its only inhabitants being members of the Moravian Church. Visitors are welcome to attend services.

The Old Watermill (1833) has been restored and declared a national monument.

Popular sites in Napier include the Militaria Museum and Rose Boats and Toy Museum.

The Shipwreck Museum in Bredasdorp, founded in 1975, specialises in shipwrecks found along the South African coastline. The town also has the Audrey Blignault Museum.

De Mond Nature Reserve is home to some rare bird species, including the Damara tern and giant tern.

The Geelkop Nature Reserve derives its name from the mass of yellow flowering plants that cover the hill during spring.

The lighthouse at L'Agulhas, which forms part of the Agulhas National Park, is the country's second-oldest working lighthouse. It celebrated its 150th anniversary in 1999. The Agulhas National Park is a ruggedly beautiful coastal plain of 20 959 ha.

At Cape Agulhas, the southernmost tip of the continent, the waters cleave into the Indian and Atlantic oceans.

The wrecks of some 130-seafaring craft yachts, Spanish galleons, Dutch East Indiamen, the legendary Birkenhead, and even modern-day fishing trawlers, have found a watery grave around the notorious Cape of Storms.

Struisbaai has the longest white coastline in the southern hemisphere. Arniston was named Waenhuiskrans (coach-house cliff) by the local fishers in honour of the huge sea cave capable of housing several oxwagons. For outsiders, it was named after the Arniston, a ship wrecked there in 1815. The Waenhuiskrans Cave can be explored at low tide.

The De Hoop Nature Reserve on the way to Swellendam includes an internationally renowned wetland and bird sanctuary. It is a winter retreat for the Southern Right whale and the Western Cape's only Cape Griffon Vulture Colony. The red Bredasdorp lily and many species of protea and erica are found in the Heuningberg Nature Reserve.

Swellendam is well-known for its youngberries and eclectic architecture. The Drostdy Museum consists of a group of buildings containing a huge selection of period furniture.

The Bontebok National Park, about 7 km from Swellendam, provides sanctuary to the threatened bontebok and other species. Known for its world class wine, Barrydale offers the visitor fruit and fresh air in abundance. Situated on the N2, about 160 km from Cape Town, Riviersonderend offers beautiful mountain and river scenery, a nine-hole golf course and sightings of the blue crane.

Caledon is famous for its natural mineral waters, hot springs and wildflower shows. Southern Associated Maltsters is the only malt producer for the South African lager beer industry and the largest in the southern hemisphere.

Genadendal is the oldest Moravian village in Africa, with church buildings and a school dating back to 1738.

The Genadendal Mission and Museum complex documents the first mission station in South Africa.

Villiersdorp houses the Dagbreek Museum that dates back to 1845 and was declared a monument in 1994. The historical home, Oude Radyn, is possibly the only building in the Western Cape to have Batavian wooden gutters and down pipes.

The Theewaterskloof Dam, outside Villiersdorp, is the seventh-largest dam in the country. The Villiersdorp Wild Flower Garden and Nature Reserve has an indigenous herb garden and a reference library.

The Grabouw/Elgin district produces about 60% of South Africa's total apple exports and fine wines. The valley is also renowned for cultivating fresh chrysanthemums, roses and proteas.

The Elgin Apple Museum is one of only two in the world. Sir Lowry's Pass offers spectacular views of False Bay from Gordon's Bay to Cape Point.

Northern Cape

Characterised by its vast expanses of space and silence, warm sunny climate, friendly people and hospitality, the Northern Cape is a province with a rich culture heritage.

Diamond fields

The Big Hole in Kimberley is the largest hand-dug excavation in the world. In 1871, diamonds were discovered at the site and mined manually by prospectors.

The Kimberley Tram Service dates back to the beginning of the 20th century and still transports passengers from the City Hall to the Mine Museum.

Underground mine tours are a big attraction, as are the famous ghost tours, during which many historical buildings are seen from a different perspective.

Hand and mechanical diamond-digging by private diggers can be viewed by appointment.

The McGregor Museum houses invaluable collections of the archaeological finds in the area, as well as San art works.

The house where Sol Plaatje (African National Congress founding member and human rights activist) lived in Kimberley, has a library of Plaatje's and other black South African writers' works, and several displays, including a portrayal of black involvement in the Anglo-Boer/South African War.

The Pioneers of Aviation Museum near Kimberley Airport houses a replica of the Compton-Paterson biplane, which was used for pilot training by the flying school operated by the Paterson Aviation Syndicate at Alexandersfontein.

A township tour of Galeshewe provides a fresh perspective on South Africa's socio-historical realities. Pan African Congress founder Robert Sobukwe's house is there.

The Magersfontein Battlefield outside Kimberley, with its original trenches and other defences intact, is the site of the Boers' crushing defeat of the British during the Siege of Kimberley.

A cultural centre at Wildebeestkuil outside Kimberley features ! Xun and Khwe artwork for sale and a tour of rock engravings by these indigenous people.

Barkley West attracts many water sports enthusiasts and anglers. Tucked along the Vaal River near Barkley West lies the Vaalbos National Park.

The park is not only home to large raptors, but also a breeding centre for endangered African herbivores such as rhino, roan and sable antelope and disease-free buffalo.

Kalahari

At Black Rock, visitors can view a worked-out manganese mine. Danielskuil lies at the foot of the Kuruman hills. The Tswana people occupied the area before it became home to the Griquas. Boesmansgat, on the farm Mount Carmel outside Danielskuil, is a unique natural sinkhole – the second-deepest and largest of its kind in the world.

Known as the "Oasis of the Kalahari", Kuruman is blessed with a permanent and abundant source of water that flows from Gasegonyana (Setswana for "the little water calabash") – commonly called the "Eye of Kuruman" – which yields 20 million litres of water per day.

Moffat's Mission in Kuruman features the house of missionary Robert Moffat, the church he built as well as several other historic buildings. Moffat translated the Bible into Setswana – the first African language in which the Bible was made accessible.

The printing press on which he printed the first 2 000 copies can still be viewed. The church he built seats 800 people and is still in use. Explorer David Livingstone married Moffat's daughter and started many famous travels from this mission station.

The Wonderwerk Cave at Kuruman features extensive San paintings that may be viewed by appointment. The Kalahari Raptor Centre cares for injured birds. Many of these majestic creatures can be seen at close quarters.

The Witsand Nature Reserve, situated about 80 km south-west of Postmasburg, features a 100-m high dune of brilliant white sand. It stretches for about 9 km and is about 2 km wide.

Green Kalahari

The Roaring Sands site on the farm Doornaar, near Groblershoop, is a popular tourist attraction. Its high sand dunes, surrounded by typically red Kalahari dunes, are said to "roar" when the wind blows.

Along the hand-built irrigation canals at Kakamas 11 waterwheels are still used. Kanoneiland is a settlement on the biggest island in the Orange River. At Keimoes, the Orange River flows at its widest.

The Tierberg Nature Reserve offers spectacular views of the Keimoes Valley and the many islands in the Orange River. The original irrigation canal system is still in use. The Orange River Wine Cellar's largest cellar is situated here.

Kenhardt is the oldest town in the Lower Orange River area. The Quiver Tree Forest and Kokerboom Hiking Trail, consisting of between 4 000 and 5 000 quiver trees, are within easy driving distance of the town.

Upington is the commercial, educational and social centre of the Green Kalahari, owing its prosperity to agriculture and its irrigated lands along the Orange River. A camel-and-rider statue in front of the town's police station pays tribute to the "mounties", who patrolled the harsh desert territory on camels.

The Kalahari Desert SpeedWeek is an annual eight-day speed festival held in a far north-western corner of South Africa. It is a motorsport event where anybody is welcome to enter, and anything with an engine is eligible. Over the years, the event has also become a meeting place for all sorts of eccentric machinery and people.

The Orange River displays its impressive power at the Augrabies Falls in the Augrabies Falls National Park. Visitors can hire canoes to ensure closer contact with the natural heritage surrounding the world's sixth-largest waterfall.

The Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park comprises 38 000 m² of land, making it one of the largest conservation areas in the world. Straddling the Green Kalahari and Botswana, the park is a two-million-ha sanctuary for various raptors, antelope, gemsbok, springbok, blue wildebeest, red hartebeest, eland, Kalahari lion, black-maned lion, brown and spotted hyena, leopard, cheetah and smaller game, including mongoose, porcupine and the endangered honey badger.

Namaqualand

The Namas are the indigenous people of Namaqualand. Their traditional Nama reed huts still abound in Leliefontein, Nourivier and Steinkopf. Namaqualand is famous for an annual show in spring when an abundance of wild flowers covers vast tracts of desert.

The flowers sprout and survive for a brief period before they wilt and disappear in the heat and dry conditions just as suddenly as they appeared. The small town of Garies is the centre for those setting out to enjoy this show of exuberance in the Kamiesberg.

Since diamonds were discovered along the West Coast in 1925, Alexander Bay has become known for its mining activities. The town is no longer a high-security area and no permits are needed to enter. The Alexkor Museum paints a picture of the history of the area. The town also features the world's largest desert lichenfield, which has some 26 species.

At Hondeklip Bay, visitors can dive for crayfish and watch the local fisherfolk conduct their trade. Port Nolloth is a centre for the small-scale diamond-recovery and crayfish industries. It is the only holiday resort on the Diamond Coast. The local factory sells fish and crayfish in season.

Set in a narrow valley bisecting the granite domes of the Klein Koperberge lies Springbok.

South of Springbok, near Kamieskroon, lies the Skilpad Wild Flower Reserve, part of the Namaqua National Park, which captures the full grandeur of the flower season. The 1 000-ha reserve is open only during the flower season.

The Goegap Nature Reserve comprises 15 004 ha of typically granite, rocky hills and sandy flats. The reserve also offers a 4x4 trail, as well as several hiking and mountain-biking trails.

Namaqualand is also home to the Ai-Ais Richtersveld National Park. It is managed jointly by the local Nama people and the SANParks.

Upper Karoo (Bo-Karoo)

Flanked by the Towerberg, Colesberg is one of the Northern Cape's most beautiful towns. The town features one of the country's last working horse mills. An Anglo-Boer/South African War tour is also on offer. A weekend tour includes a visit to the Norval's Pont prisoner-of-war camp and cemetery.

Colesberg has bred many of the country's top Merino sheep. It is also renowned for producing high-quality racehorses.

De Aar is the most important railway junction in South Africa. The author Olive Schreiner lived in the town for many years. Visitors can dine in her former house, which has been converted into a restaurant.

Hanover is known for its handmade shoes and articles made mostly from sheepskin and leather.

The "Star of South Africa" diamond was discovered at Hopetown. The town also features an old toll house and a block house dating from the Anglo-Boer/South African War.

At Wonderdraai, near Prieska, visitors can see the horseshoe-shaped island formed by the flow of the Orange River. It seems as if the river turns to flow uphill.

Vanderkloof, built to house the people building the Vanderkloof Dam, was turned into a flourishing holiday resort. Visitors can enjoy waterskiing, boardsailing, boating and swimming, or visit the Eskom hydro-electric power station within the dam's wall.

The rare riverine rabbit is found in the Victoria West Nature Reserve.

Hantam Karoo

Near Brandvlei lies Verneukpan where Sir Malcolm Campbell unsuccessfully attempted to break the world land-speed record in 1929.

Carnarvon is well known for its corbelled dome-roofed houses built of flat stones because of a lack of wood.

The floors of these interesting houses were smeared and coloured with a rich red mixture of fat and oxblood and polished with smooth stone.

A few km outside Fraserburg lies the Gansfontein palaeo-surface. Discovered in 1968, it comprises several trackways of large, four-footed and five-toed mammalian reptiles. The prints are estimated to be some 190 million years old.

Sutherland, birthplace of Nicolaas Petrus van Wyk Louw, well-known Afrikaans author and poet, is also known for its brilliant night skies and cold, biting winters.

The South African Astronomical Observatory's observation telescopes, including the Southern African Large Telescope, are in Sutherland. The sterboom (star tree), which blossoms in September, is found only in Sutherland.

The Tankwa Karoo National Park, on the southern border of the Northern Cape, 70 km west of Sutherland, encompasses the Succulent Karoo Biome, the world's only arid hotspot, stretches 116 000 km² from the south-western Cape into southern Namibia.

The landscape offers seasonal contrasts of coloured wild flowers and stark desert, set against the backdrop of the Roggeveld Escarpment to the east, Klein Roggeveld to the south and the Cederberg to the west. Its extensive desert plateaus are ideal for viewing game such as gemsbok, Cape mountain zebra, springbuck and bustards.

Free State

The Free State lies in the heart of South Africa, with the Kingdom of Lesotho nestling in the hollow of its bean-like shape.

Between the Vaal River in the north and the Orange River in the south, this rolling prairie stretches as far as the eye can see.

This central region is characterised by rolling fields of wheat, sunflowers and maize, and forms the principal bread basket of South Africa.

Motheo

With its King's Park Rose Garden containing more than 4 000 rose bushes, the Free State's major city, Bloemfontein, has rightfully earned the nickname "City of Roses". The city also hosts an annual rose festival.

The Eerste Raadsaal (First Parliament Building), built in 1849 as a school, is Bloemfontein's oldest surviving building. Still in

its original condition, this historical building is used as the seat of the provincial legislature.

The National Afrikaans Literary Museum and Research Centre has works by prominent Afrikaans authors. Exhibits in the Afrikaans Music Museum and Theatre Museum (part of the centre) include old musical instruments, sheet music, costumes, photographs and furniture.

The museum is notable for its wide collection of fossils, cultural-historical exhibits and archaeological displays, including the Florisbad Skull, which was discovered in the 1930s at the Florisbad Spring.

The National Women's Memorial is a sandstone obelisk, 36.5 m high, which commemorates the women and children who died in concentration camps during the Anglo-Boer/South African War. Visitors get a glimpse of life in the concentration and prisoner-of-war camps. The research library contains an extensive collection of Africana.

The Old Presidency dates back to 1885 and was the official residence of three presidents of the former Republic of the Orange Free State. It houses a museum depicting their respective terms of office, and is a cultural centre for art exhibitions, theatrical productions and musical events.

The Observatory Theatre in Bloemfontein's Game Reserve is a unique attraction. Naval Hill is the biggest game reserve completely surrounded by a city. Bloemfontein hosts the Mangaung African Cultural Festival, popularly known the MACUFE, in September every year. The Sand du Plessis Theatre and Art Gallery at Oliewenhuis are also worth visiting.

Botshabelo (Place of Refuge), 45 km from Bloemfontein on the N8 road to Lesotho, is believed to be the largest township settlement in the Free State – and the second-largest in South Africa after Soweto.

Nearby, the town of Thaba Nchu features luxury hotels and a casino, with the Maria Moroka Nature Reserve surrounding Thaba Nchu Sun and the Setlogelo Dam.

Xhariep

Bethulie used to be a London Missionary Society station. The original mission buildings still stand.

The Pellissier House Museum depicts the history of the area. There is an Anglo-Boer/South African War concentration camp cemetery in Bethulie.

The Gariep Dam, more than 100 km long and 15 km wide, is part of the Orange River Water Scheme, the largest inland expanse of water in South Africa. Between the dam and Bethulie is the Gariep Dam Nature Reserve. On the southern side of the dam lies the Oviston Nature Reserve.

Philippolis, the oldest town in the Free State, was founded as a London Missionary Society station in 1824. It was the first mission station in the province.

Trompsburg is the hub of the Free State Merino sheep-farming industry. The Tussen-die-Riviere Nature Reserve reputedly supports more game than any other sanctuary in the Free State.

A fountain near Koffiefontein was a favourite resting place for transport riders in the 19th century. In June 1870, one of these transport riders picked up a diamond near the fountain. This prompted a rush, and by 1882 Koffiefontein was a booming town with four mining companies.

Thabo Mofutsanyana

Snowcapped mountains and beautiful scenery provide a backdrop to this pristine area.

Clocolan is known for the beauty of its cherry trees when they are in full bloom in spring. San rock paintings and engravings are also found in the area.

Clarens is often described as the "Jewel of the Free State", owing to its exceptionally beautiful scenery. San paintings are found on farms in the area. Close by, the Highlands Route meanders along the foothills of the Maluti Mountains and follows the Lesotho border via Ladybrand and ends at Zastron in the south. The town is known for the many arts and crafts shops, which offer the visitor a wide range of curios and original artwork.

Ficksburg is known for its asparagus and cherry farms. Every November, a cherry festival is held there. The town is a gateway to the Mountain Kingdom of Lesotho.

Rosendal, surrounded by the Witte Mountains, celebrated its centenary in 2011.

The Golden Gate Highlands National Park, known for its impressive sandstone cliffs and rock formations, is a popular holiday destination.

The birdwatching mecca of Seekoeivlei Nature Reserve near Memel constitutes a wetland with Ramsar status, and is surrounded by private game and holiday farms.

Lejweleputswa region

Bethlehem, which lies on the banks of the Jordaan River, was founded by the Voortrekkers in the 1840s. The banks of the Jordaan River form part of the Pretoriuskloof Nature Reserve. This is a sanctuary for birds and small game. The museum in Miller Street depicts the history of the area.

Van Reenen's Pass winds through the Drakensberg, and was originally used by migrating herds of zebra, hartebeest, blesbok and wildebeest. The Llandaff Oratory in the nearby village of Van Reenen is believed to be the smallest Roman Catholic church in the world.

At Harrismith, there are various memorials in honour of those who fought in the Anglo-Boer/South African War and World War I. Of particular interest is a memorial for the Scots Guards and Grenadier Guards.

Platberg, the 2 394-m "flat mountain", is the town's landmark. A well-known race, claimed by some to be the toughest in the country, is run annually up, along and back down the mountain.

Sterkfontein Dam is ideal for water sports and fishing. An open-water swimming race takes place there annually.

The Riemland Museum in Heilbron depicts the heritage and agricultural activities of the region.

The QwaQwa district is a traditional home to the Basotho people. The Basotho Cultural Village in the QwaQwa Nature Reserve is a living museum where visitors can witness the Sotho traditions and lifestyle in the chief's kraal.

Karakul carpets, mohair, wall hangings, copper, glassware and brass are made and sold at Phuthaditjhaba. The nearby Metsi Matsho and Fika Patso dams are renowned for trout fishing.

Welkom is known for its gold mines. It is also the only city in the country where traffic circles are used instead of traffic lights.

The world's deepest wine cellar is at the St Helena Mine, which is 857 m below the Earth's surface. Bothaville is regarded as the centre of the Free State Maize Route. The Nampo Harvest Farm and Festival attracts more than 20 000 visitors

each year and is the second-largest private agricultural show in the world. Bothaville also hosts the annual Food and Witblits festival, drawing visitors from all over South Africa.

The sandstone church in Kestell is possibly the most impressive of all the Eastern Free State's sandstone buildings. Winburg is the oldest town and first capital of the former Republic of the Orange Free State. The Voortrekker Museum depicts the daily routine of the trekkers. A concentration camp cemetery is situated nearby.

Sasolburg originated in 1954 with the establishment of Sasol, the synthetic fuel producer. Parys, situated on the banks of the Vaal River, offers tourists a tranquil river retreat. The nearby Vrederfort Dome World Heritage Site was caused by the collision of a meteorite with the Earth many years ago. It is the only world heritage site in the Free State. It features unique fauna and flora, including 100 different plant species, more than 300 bird types and a variety of small mammals.

Jukskei is the first indigenous game that has developed to international participation. The Jukskei Museum in Kroonstad has over 3 500 objects that depict the development of the game.

Jagersfontein has the deepest man-made hole in the world. The Excelsior diamond of 971 carats was found in this open-cast mine in 1893. Eagles nest against the cliffs of the mine.

Eastern Cape

The main feature of the Eastern Cape is its magnificent coastline with its open sandy beaches, secluded lagoons and towering cliffs.

Added to the diverse coastal experiences are more than 60 state-owned game reserves and over 30 private game farms, which collectively cover an area greater than the Kruger National Park.

Amatola Mountain region

The Amatola Mountains are famous for their scenery and history, and stretch from Adelaide in the east to Stutterheim in the west. With its lush forests and ancient battlefields, it is an area steeped in Xhosa culture and early settler history.

The dense forests of the Amatolas are a haven for the endangered Cape parrot, and were also home to the first dinosaur to be identified in South Africa, the Blinkwater Monster, a large fossilised reptile discovered near Fort Beaufort.

Outdoor enthusiasts enjoy Cathcart where trout fishing, hiking, riding and birdwatching are among the attractions. The Amatole Hiking Trail is a well-known scenic, but strenuous, trail.

The coastal city of Port Elizabeth is a superb holiday destination offering a diverse mix of eco-attractions. It also hosts the annual Buoy open-water swim and the Isuzu National Sailing Week held annually in April in Algoa Bay.

The Red Location Museum of the People's Struggle in New Brighton – winner of three international awards – was designed to be a monument to South Africa's struggle against apartheid and an integral part of community life in a township that acted as a crucible for the struggle.

Bay World has an oceanarium and snake park, and many splendid museums. Within the city there are some beautiful parks with well-landscaped gardens. These include: St George's Park, which covers 73 ha and houses the famous Port Elizabeth Cricket Club, the oldest bowling green in South Africa; Prince Alfred's Guard Memorial; the 1882 Victorian Pearson Conservatory; and the 54-ha Settlers' Park.

Tourists can also explore the Donkin Heritage Trail, take a ride on the famous Apple Express, and hike along the site of ancient shipwrecks on the Sacramento Trail. At King William's Town, tourists can visit the Amathole Missionary Museum. The grave of the Black Consciousness activist, Steve Biko, is also in the town.

Other attractions include the Greater Addo Elephant National Park and game reserves; the traditional healing village, Kaya Lendaba, birdwatching; air tours; canoeing; various mountain-biking and horse-riding trails; and organised outdoor excursions.

Wild Coast

Since Portuguese mariners first pioneered the sea route around the Cape to India, this notorious coast has claimed countless ships.

Southern right and humpback whales and their calves are regularly spotted from the high dunes, usually between May and November, while common and bottlenose dolphins are often seen close to shore.

The entire region is the home of a major section of the isiXhosa-speaking southern Nguni (or Pondo) tribes. Brightly coloured examples of their beadwork, together with traditional pottery and basketry, can be bought from roadside vendors and at some trading posts.

Visitors to the rural village of Qunu can view the childhood home of Nelson Mandela. In Mthatha, the Nelson Mandela Museum tells the story of this great figure through a display reflecting the life and times of Mandela.

Mandela received thousands of gifts from presidents, groups and ordinary people. Accepted on behalf of the people of South Africa, they are in safekeeping at the museum for the benefit and appreciation of the nation. Artefacts range from children's letters to bejewelled camel covers.

Coffee Bay is popular among surfers, anglers and shell collectors. To the south is the prominent rock formation, the Hole in the Wall. The local Xhosa people call this place Izi Khaleni ("Place of Thunder"). During high tide, the waves break through the hole in such a way that the concussion can be heard throughout the valley.

East Griqualand

East Griqualand is an area of great beauty, featuring colourful, living history. Kokstad lies in the Umzimhlava River basin between Mount Currie and the Ngele Mountains.

The original town hall, built in 1910, is a national monument, now serving as the local library. The former library, built in 1907, is also a national monument and houses the Kokstad Museum.

The Weza State Forest runs through indigenous forests and commercial plantations. The forest is home to several antelope species and a huge variety of birds. The southernmost portion of the Ukhahlamba Drakensberg World Heritage Site, the impressive Swartberg, Bokkiesberg, Cedarberg and Ngele mountain ranges lie in East Griqualand.

Between Kokstad and Matatiele, the hamlet of Cedarville provides tranquil canoe-borne excursions into its surrounding, water-filled hollows. Steam-train journeys can be undertaken between Swartberg and Creighton.

Karoo

The vast plains of the Karoo have an air of grandeur, and its many picturesque towns are steeped in history. The Owl House in Nieu-Bethesda displays the creative talent of the late Helen Martins. Statues of mermaids, wise men, camels, owls and churches create a wonderland in the garden. All the artworks were created with broken bottles, bits of mirror and cement.

More than 200 houses in Graaff-Reinet have been restored to their original Victorian appearance and proclaimed national monuments. The Old Library Museum houses the Lex Bremner Fossil Collection of Karoo reptile fossils and a collection of Khoi and San art reproductions. Urquhart House has a popular genealogical research centre.

Almost 50 km south-west of Graaff-Reinet is the Kalkkop Crater, which is of major scientific importance. To the north-west of Graaff-Reinet lies the Valley of Desolation. A steep and narrow road leads into the mountains that surround the valley.

The Valley of Desolation is a national monument within the Karoo Nature Reserve, and was formed millions of years ago by weathering erosion. The first evidence of the presence of dinosaurs in South Africa can be viewed at Maclear.

The Mountain Zebra National Park is a haven for the Cape mountain zebra species, which at one time inhabited most of the Cape. The park saved these animals from extinction and their population stands at about 300. Other species found in the park include various antelope such as eland, the African wildcat, bat-eared fox, and more than 200 bird species, including the pale-winged starling, the booted eagle and the blue crane.

N6 Route

This route runs from Bloemfontein to East London. Popular attractions include the slopes of the Tiffindell Ski Resort and the trout-filled streams, as well as the many caves adorned with ancient rock art. Several historic towns can be found in the region, including Smithfield, Barkly East, Lady Grey, Elliot, Aliwal North, Burgersdorp, Queenstown and Rhodes.

Sunshine Coast

The Sunshine Coast comprises miles of beaches. Port Alfred lies at the mouth of the Kowie River. Coastal hills are home to the oribi – a small territorial buck that was recently near extinction.

Inland, Makhanda (previously Grahamstown) is sometimes referred to as the "City of Saints" due to the more than 40 churches in the town. It is also known for the National Arts Festival, which is held annually. During the festival, Grahamstown is transformed into a dedicated arts venue where performers, visual artists, audiences, writers and crafts people fuse in a celebration of creative energy.

Other attractions include various museums and historical buildings, the oldest post box in South Africa, botanical gardens, the cathedrals of St Michael and St George, nature reserves and hiking trails. Situated north-east of Makhanda, the Great Fish River Reserve consists primarily of valley bushveld habitat and is surrounded by tribal land and commercial game reserves and farms.

The reserve has abundant wildlife such as white rhino, giraffe, waterbuck, Cape buffalo, hippo, kudu, springbok and eland.

There are several historic forts and remains from the frontier wars located in the area.

East London, which forms part of the Nelson Mandela Bay Metropolitan Municipality, is South Africa's only river port city. It was originally established as a supply port to serve the colonial British military headquarters at King William's Town. The East London Aquarium houses approximately 400 different marine and freshwater species.

The museum depicts the natural environment and rich heritage of the region. Best known for the prehistoric coelacanth, the museum also displays reconstructions of the extinct dodo of Mauritius, along with the only extant dodo egg in the world.

The Baviaanskloof Wilderness Area is the largest of the inland protected areas and provides opportunities to visit fynbos-covered mountains on foot or in off-road vehicles. There is a fascinating shell collection at the Shell Museum at Kei Mouth.

Tsitsikamma

This region, stretching from Plettenberg Bay to Jeffreys Bay, is renowned for its dense forests, majestic mountains and deep river gorges. It forms the eastern end of the Garden Route.

The word "tsitsikamma" is derived from the Khoekhoen words "tse-tsesa" meaning "clear", and "gami" meaning "water". South Africa's first marine park, the Tsitsikamma National Park, extends along a rocky coastline of 50 km and 3 km out to sea.

Inland, adventure seekers will find deep gorges and temperate evergreen forests crisscrossed by six hiking trails, including the five-day Otter Trail. The varied wildlife includes dolphins and whales, caracal, genet, chacma baboon, dassie and mongoose. Prominent bird species in the area are the African black oystercatcher, the orange-breasted sunbird, the Nerina trogon and the colourful Knysna loerie. A lucky few may catch a glimpse of the rare Cape clawless otter, after which the Otter Trail is named. Another popular adventure is a blackwater tubing experience on the Storms River.

Limpopo

The Limpopo landscape is made up of dramatic contrasts characterised by hot savanna plains and mist-clad mountains, age-old indigenous forests and cycads alongside modern plantations, ancient mountain fortresses and the luxury of contemporary infrastructure and modern-day facilities.

Steeped in history, Limpopo celebrates a rich cultural heritage, and at many archaeological sites the mysteries of the past and ancient peoples are still being unearthed.

Much of the land, particularly in the Kruger National Park and other game and nature reserves, is unspoilt, and provides sanctuary to large numbers of game.

Waterberg

The Nylsvley Nature Reserve has one of the greatest concentrations of waterfowl and bushveld birds in South Africa. More than 400 species frequent the area. The Mokopane vicinity has several nature reserves.

The Arend Dieperink Museum features a fine cultural-historical collection.

The Makapansgat Caves are notable for their fossils and the caves are being developed into an archaeological site. Makapan Valley is an extension of the Cradle of Humankind World Heritage Site.

The Thabazimbi district has a large concentration of private game reserves and is one of the fastest-growing ecotourism areas in the country.

The Marakele National Park is home to some rare yellowwood and cedar trees and the world's largest colony of Cape vultures.

Bela Bela is known for its hot springs. There are also a number of game reserves and leisure resorts in the area.

The Waterberg range is rich in indigenous trees, streams, springs, wetlands and birdlife. Cliffs known as the "Palace of The Vultures" harbour a large breeding colony of Cape vultures.

Modimolle is the region's main town.

Capricorn district

The Bakone Malapa Open-Air Museum outside Polokwane is a traditional Northern Sotho kraal. Men and women practise traditional skills such as making baskets, clay pots, furniture and utensils, as well as preparing hides.

Polokwane is considered the premier game-hunting destination in South Africa. Polokwane offers a variety of museums and art galleries, including the Bakone Malapa Museum, the Polokwane Museum and the Hugh Exton Photographic Museum. Zion City at Moria, near Polokwane, is the headquarters of the Zion Christian Church, which attracts more than a million pilgrims every Easter.

Vhembe district

The Mapungubwe archaeological site, 80 km west of Musina, lies within the boundaries of the Mapungubwe National Park. It is one of the richest of its kind in Africa and a world heritage site.

Excavations in the 1930s uncovered a royal graveyard, which included a number of golden artefacts, including the famous gold-foil rhinoceros.

The Schoemansdal Voortrekker Town and Museum, west of Makhado, is built on the site of an original Voortrekker village and depicts their lifestyle between 1848 and 1852.

Also, worth visiting is the Big Tree in the Mutale Municipality, the Tshatshingo potholes, the mystical lake of Dzivhafundudzi and the holy forest and waterfalls at Phiphidi.

Mopani district

The Lekgameetse Nature Reserve in the northern foothills of the Drakensberg is part of the Cloud Mountain Biosphere.

This 18 000 ha nature reserve is well known for its abundant butterflies.

The Modjadji Nature Reserve, north of Tzaneen, is named after the legendary Rain Queen, Makobo Constance Modjadji, who is believed to have settled in the area early in the 16th century. The reserve encompasses the world's largest concentration of the cycad species Encephalartos transvenosus, also known as the Modjadji cycad.

The Hans Merensky Nature Reserve and Mineral Spa on the southern banks of the Great Letaba River supports a large variety of game. At the adjoining Tsonga Kraal Open-Air Museum, arts, crafts and traditional huts reflect the Tsonga lifestyle of 100 years ago.

The Kruger National Park (northern section) is home to a large number and wide variety of amphibians, reptiles and birds, as well as 147 mammal species, including the Big Five.

Thulamela, in the northern part of the Kruger National Park, yielded the skeletons of two ancient royals and a multitude of artefacts, including gold bangles, beads and a double gong.

Bohlabela district

On the way to the Kruger National Park, visitors can enjoy wildlife experiences at Manyeleti, home to the Big Five. Adventurers can attempt mountain-climbing at the Mangwazi Nature Reserve, enjoy the Mapulaneng Trail at Zoeknog and the Injaka Dam at Bushbuckridge.

North West

North West has several cultural villages that entertain and enrich visitors. A number of game reserves have been established, including the Pilanesberg National Park, situated in the transition zone between the Kalahari and the Lowveld.

Home to the Big Five, the park offers a wide variety of accommodation and is close to popular attractions such as Sun City and only a two/three-hour drive from Johannesburg. The park has an area of approximately 550 km², making it the fourth largest park in South Africa supporting more than 7 000 head of game and 350 bird species.

Central district

The historic route of Mahikeng includes an Anglo-Boer/South African War siege site, the Molema House where Sol Plaatje lived while writing his Mafikeng Diary, and the Mahikeng Museum. The Lichtenburg Biodiversity Conservation Centre and the Botsalano Game Reserve are well worth a visit.

The Groot Marico region is known as mampoer country and visitors can explore the Mampoer Route. The Kortkloof Cultural Village is dedicated to the Tswana people.

Other attractions include the Wondergat; the Bosbult Monument, which commemorates a battle fought during the Anglo-Boer/South African War; the Kaditshwene Iron Age Village Ruins; and various hiking trails.

Ottosdal is in the centre of North West. It was established as a Dutch Reformed Church parish on the farm Korannafontein in 1913 and named after its owner, Gerhardus Petrus Otto.

It is the only place in South Africa where the unique "wonderstone", or pyrophyllite, is found and mined. The annual agricultural show in Ottosdal is one of the oldest in the province.

Trenches and cemeteries dating from the Anglo-Boer/South African War can be found on the farms Gestoptefontein and Driekuil. In the Garden of Remembrance are graves of soldiers killed during the war. The Old Farmhouse built in 1910 houses a unique African collection. The Old Watermill built around 1860 is a national monument.

The Ottosdal Night Race is organised in conjunction with the Diamond Marathon Club. The event consists of 42.2-km, 21.1-km and 10-km races and a 5-km fun run.

San rock engravings, Stone Age implements and structures are found on farms such as Witpoort, Gestoptefontein, Driekuil and Korannafontein.

Eastern district

Hartbeespoort Dam is a popular spot for weekend outings, breakfast runs and yachting. The Hartbeespoort Reptile and Animal Park is on the banks of the dam. Cultural experiences in

the area include the popular Mapoch and Gaabo Motho cultural villages as well as the Ring Wagon Inn.

The Ann van Dyk Cheetah Centre (formerly the De Wildt Cheetah Breeding and Research Centre) specialises in breeding cheetah and other endangered wildlife species.

Other places of interest include the Borakalalo Game Reserve, the Margaret Roberts Herb Farm and the Phaladingwe Nature Trail.

Bophirima district

The Taung Skull Fossil Site and Blue Pools are renowned for the Taung skull found in the Buxton quarries. The Taung Skull Fossil Site is an extension of the Sterkfontein Fossil Hominid Site. This region is popular with adventure seekers – especially those who enjoy 4x4 routes and hunting farms.

Rustenburg district

The 60 000-ha Madikwe Game Reserve is home to 66 large mammal species. Over 10 000 animals of 27 major species have been reintroduced under Operation Phoenix. Hot-air balloon trips, day and night game drives and bushwalks are available.

The reserve has the second-largest elephant population in South Africa and guests are assured of sighting not only the Big Five but also the elusive cheetah and endangered wild dog.

Sun City and the Palace of the Lost City are very popular tourist attractions, offering gambling, golf, extravaganza shows, water sports and an artificial beach. There are various hiking trails in the region. The Heritage Route starts at the Sterkfontein Caves World Heritage Site and ends at Pilanesberg.

Southern district

The OPM Prozesky Bird Sanctuary in Potchefstroom has over 200 bird species and is situated adjacent to the Mooi River.

The Oudorp Hiking Trail takes visitors through the old part of Klerksdorp, where 12 Voortrekker families settled.

Other attractions in the region include the Potchefstroom Lakeside Resort, the Faan Meintjies Nature Reserve in Klerksdorp, mine tours at Orkney, the Diggers Route at Wolmaransstad and the Bloemhof Dam Nature Reserve.

Mpumalanga

Mpumalanga – "The Place Where the Sun Rises" – epitomises every traveller's dream of the true African experience. Located in the north-eastern part of South Africa, the province is bordered by Mozambique to the east and the Kingdom of Eswatini to the south and east.

The climate and topography vary from cool highland grasslands at 1 600 m above sea level, through the Middleveld and escarpment, to the subtropical Lowveld towards the Kruger National Park and many private game reserves.

Scenic beauty, climate and wildlife, voted the most attractive features of South Africa, are found in abundance in this province. Attractions range from game viewing and birdwatching to scenic drives across the valleys and peaks of the vast Drakensberg escarpment, and include agritourism, industrial and adventure tourism and cultural experiences.

Historical sites and cultural villages, old wagon routes and monuments mark events and characters who passed this way in search of adventure and wealth.

Ndebele bead work and wall-painting in the north-west, the arts and crafts of the Lowveld. The different traditional villages throughout the province offer a unique insight into the people's history and cultures.

Mbombela

Mbombela is the capital of Mpumalanga and the commercial and administrative hub of the Lowveld.

The Mbombela Historical Trail is an hour-long walking route stretching from the Promenade Centre to the Civic Centre.

The Blue Train runs between Pretoria and Mbombela on a chartered route called the Valley of the Olifants Route. Rovos Rail trains also travel to Mbombela.

The Green Heritage Hiking Trail in the Mbombela Nature Reserve is one of several walks in the reserve and one of many in the region.

Not to be missed is the Lowveld Botanical Garden, as well as the Reptile Park, the Sudwala Caves and the PR Owen Dinosaur Park.

The tranquil town of White River to the north of Mbombela is well known as an artist's haven and a gateway to the Kruger National Park. Rottcher Wineries have taken advantage of the area's prime production of oranges to make a truly unique wine, which has been a hallmark of the area for over 50 years.

Panorama

Barberton features many reminders of the early gold-rush era. Museums include Belhaven, Fernlea House and Stopforth House. The only known verdite deposits in the world are found in the rocks of the Barberton district. The annual Diggers Festival is held in September.

The Blyderivierspoort Nature Reserve near Graskop is characterised by striking rock formations and a rich diversity of plants. Within the reserve, the Bourke's Luck potholes were formed by river erosion and the action of floodwater.

The Blyde River Canyon is a 26-km-long gorge carved out of the face of the escarpment, and is one of the natural wonders of Africa. The canyon is the third-largest in the world, the only green canyon, and hosts three rivers that feed the Blydepoort Dam at Swadini. God's Window provides a magnificent panoramic view across miles of densely forested mountains, the green Lowveld and the canyon.

The Blyderivierspoort Hiking Trail is one of the most popular in the country. The southern section of the Kruger National Park, which is a major tourist attraction, falls within this region.

Kaapsehoop is a historical village known for the wild horses that frequent the district. Blue swallows are regular visitors from September to April.

The Lydenburg Museum is in the Gustav Klingbiel Reserve, which is the site of archaeological ruins from the Later Iron Age.

The Lydenburg Heads, human-like masks dating back to 500 AD, were discovered in this area.

Sabie is the centre of the largest man-made forest in South Africa and a popular mountain-biking destination.

The Cultural Historical Forestry Museum depicts various aspects of the country's forestry industry. The Bridal Veil, Horseshoe and Lone Creek waterfalls, and Mac Mac pools and falls just outside Sabie are well worth a visit.

The 69-km Prospector's Trail starts at the Mac Mac Forest Station and leads to the Bourke's Luck potholes.

At the Montrose Falls in Schoemanskloof, the Crocodile River cascades 12 m into a series of rock pools. It is also the starting point of the annual Lowveld Crocodile Canoe Marathon, held in February.

Pilgrim's Rest is a living museum and a replica of the early gold-mining town. The Alanglade House Museum offers guided tours of the former mine manager's house, while the Diggings Museum just outside the town arranges guided tours of gold-panning activities.

This area was the setting for Jock of the Bushveld, the novel by Sir Percy Fitzpatrick about the experiences of a man and his dog as they shared adventures in the world of African gold-mining. The Dredzen Shop Museum features a range of items in use nearly a century ago.

Mount Sheba Nature Reserve, south of Pilgrim's Rest, is best known for its indigenous forest – one of few left in the region.

Highlands Meander

The Highlands Meander is a mecca for fly fishers. It is in the pristine waters of this region that one finds various stocks of fish, with trout as the major drawcard.

At the Verloren Vlei and Steenkampsberg nature reserves at Dullstroom, one can get a rare glimpse of the endangered blue, wattled and crowned cranes.

The Loskop Dam Nature Reserve offers game-watching, boating and fishing. Many hiking trails are available, such as the Elandskrans Trail, which includes a 30-minute train ride between Waterval-Boven and Waterval-Onder.

Cultural Heartland

Visitors to the Cultural Heartland can immerse themselves in the true cultural heritage of Mpumalanga. Here, one can learn about the proud and welcoming Ndebele people, revered for the striking and colourful geometric patterns on their houses, clothing and beadwork.

This region also has illuminating historical sites such as the Botshabelo Historical Village near Middelburg.

Cosmos Country

Cosmos Country covers parts of what is known as the energy belt of Mpumalanga, which is home to a number of power stations. This region also has the world's largest underground coal-mining complex and the Sasol plant that is renowned for its oil-from-coal technology. The carpet of cosmos flowers that blossom in late summer lures visitors to this region.

Wild Frontier

Various archaeological discoveries dating back almost three billion years were made in the imposing mountains of this region. Visitors can enjoy a rare glimpse of the San paintings embossed in some rocks. The region also holds rich historical sentiments centred on the monument of the late Mozambican President Samora Machel, constructed in the village of Mbuzini.

Grass and wetlands

Grass and wetlands are a paradise with their variety of bird species. This region stretches across the deep valleys and mountains of the east where thermal springs bubble to the surface. There are 270 pans and lakes within a 20 km radius of Lake Chrissie. In this region, visitors can take part in the unusual "frogging expedition" or simply gaze at the stars during "star-gazing weekends".

Gauteng

Gauteng, the "Place of Gold", is the commercial powerhouse of the country, but its offerings are not limited to commerce and industry. Anchored by the cities of Johannesburg and Pretoria, Gauteng provides plenty in the way of entertainment through its network of upmarket shopping malls, casinos, street markets, theatres, restaurants, museums and parks.

Gauteng is characterised by a cosmopolitan mix of people from all walks of life. The province's unique cultural and social legacy is evident from the many excellent museums, theatres, cultural precincts and craft markets.

Although Gauteng is the most populated, built-up and industrialised province, it still has natural areas offering a variety of leisure activities such as day hikes, picnic spots and sports activities.

The Vaal Dam, which supplies water to most of Gauteng's residents, covers some 300 km^2 and is a popular venue for water sports. Numerous resorts line the shore. The dam also attracts diverse bird species.

Tourism attractions in and around the Cradle of Humankind have grown to more than 380, with over half of these offering graded accommodation.

The broader 47 000-ha Cradle of Humankind site has many caves, the most famous of which are the Sterkfontein caves.

In 1999, Sterkfontein and its environs were declared a world heritage site. About 40% of all the world's human ancestor fossils have been found here, including several of the world's most famous and important fossils. A further 500 hominid fossils and more than 9 000 stone tools have been excavated in the area during ongoing work. The famous skull of Mrs Ples, an estimated 2.5-million-year-old hominid fossil, and Little Foot, an almost complete hominid skeleton some 3.3 million years old, were discovered at the Sterkfontein Caves near Krugersdorp.

The Krugersdorp Game Reserve provides sanctuary for several game species, including four of the Big Five. The African Fauna and Bird Park houses various species of wildlife and birds.

The Walter Sisulu National Botanical Garden has a 70-m high waterfall and a breeding pair of black eagles.

Some 40 km north of Pretoria is a ring of hills 1 km in diameter and 100-m high. These are the walls of the Tswaing Meteorite Crater, left by an asteroid that hit the area some 200 000 years ago. There is a museum adjacent to this site. The crater is covered with indigenous trees and bushes, which attract a variety of bird life.

The old mining town of Cullinan has developed around the Premier Diamond Mine. The mine has produced some of the world's most famous diamonds, including the Cullinan Diamond, the world's largest at 3 106 carats.

Johannesburg

The Adler Museum of the History of Medicine depicts the history of medicine, dentistry and pharmacy in South Africa. The Pharmacy Museum in Melrose houses a large variety of

medicines, including more than 670 traditional medicines that have been collected throughout southern Africa.

Newtown is at the heart of initiatives to revitalise the inner city of Johannesburg. Here, visitors will find the renowned Market Theatre, jazz bars, dance studios and artists' communes among museums, libraries and other places of historic interest.

The Absa Money Museum lies in downtown Johannesburg. Historical records stretch all the way back to the beginnings of Johannesburg, and displays ranges from fairly early money forms, like cowrie shells and Venetian glass beads, through to gold coins recovered from sunken ships. The scientific study of money and its history, or Numismatics, is the essence of the museum's displays.

The Nelson Mandela Bridge is a landmark gateway into Newtown. It is the largest cable-stayed bridge in southern Africa.

Museum Africa in Newtown tells the story of life in South Africa from the Stone Age to the Nuclear Age and beyond.

The Market Theatre complex comprises three theatres, an art gallery, restaurants and pubs. A bronze statue of the champion of passive resistance, Mahatma Gandhi, can be seen in the city centre.

Gold Reef City is a theme park based on Johannesburg during the gold rush era.

The Apartheid Museum in Johannesburg is a state-of-the-art tribute to the rise and fall of apartheid, with 22 exhibition areas that take the visitor on an emotional journey through the state-sanctioned system of apartheid.

Constitution Hill features the impressive building housing South Africa's Constitutional Court, which offers visitors the chance to view the fort, the so-called native gaol, the women's gaol and the awaiting-trial block.

A large, well-established park surrounds Zoo Lake, which breeding bird colonies frequent. Other attractions include jazz concerts, rowing boats for hire, a tea garden and a restaurant.

The James Hall Museum of Transport was founded in 1964 and houses an historical collection of various modes of land transport used in South Africa, dating back 400 years.

The South African Museum of Military History holds an impressive collection of weaponry and uniforms from the two world wars.

The two-bedroom house where Mandela lived before his incarceration has been declared a national monument and converted into a museum.

The Walter Sisulu Square in Kliptown, Soweto, is the place where the Freedom Charter was signed in 1955. The Kliptown Project comprises a hotel, the Kliptown Museum, retail outlets, restaurants and offices.

Soweto is a popular tourist destination. No tour of Soweto would be complete without a visit to the Hector Pieterson Museum, which commemorates the people who died during the Soweto Uprising of 16 June 1976.

The Nelson Mandela Foundation's Centre of Memory is open to the public as a place of memory-sharing and reflection on the life and times of former President Mandela.

At the Lesedi Cultural Village in the Swartkops hills north of Johannesburg, visitors can families of different cultural groupings. It features four traditional homesteads where visitors can spend the night with a family of their choice. The Phumangena Zulu Kraal is home to traditional Zulu people living and working there.

The Melville Koppies in Johannesburg was once the site of a Stone Age African village and iron-smelting works. Flora include 80% of the species recorded on the Witwatersrand. It is open to the public from September to April.

Pretoria

A variety of historical buildings is found in the city, such as the Union Buildings, which celebrated its centenary in 2013. Designed by Sir Herbert Baker, construction started in 1910 and was completed in 1913.

It is the setting of many national celebrations, including Women's Day and Freedom Day. In December 2013, a bronze statue of former President Mandela was unveiled at the Union Buildings.

Church Square is built around a statue of the former President of the Zuid-Afrikaansche Republiek, Paul Kruger, and includes buildings such as the Old Raadsaal and the Palace of Justice.

Ten minutes' drive from Church Square is Freedom Park, which commemorates the country's political history. The 35-ha site comprises a garden of remembrance, a museum, and statues and sculptures to honour South Africans who contributed to the country's freedom and development.

The Kruger House Museum contains the personal belongings of President Kruger.

Melrose House is a beautiful example of Victorian architecture. The Peace Treaty of Vereeniging, which ended the Anglo-Boer War/South African War, was signed there in 1902.

Demonstrations at the Pioneer Open-Air Museum include milking, butter- and candle-making, bread-baking and coffee-bean grinding.

Other museums include the South African Air Force Museum, Police Museum, Coert Steynberg Museum and the Transvaal Museum of Natural History.

The Voortrekker Monument commemorates the Great Trek. Some 260 steps lead to the dome, where spectacular views of the city can be enjoyed.

Fort Schanskop has been refurbished and has a 375-seat amphitheatre.

The Sammy Marks Museum near Pretoria dates from 1885. Rooms in the house are filled with Victorian paintings, furniture, silverware and porcelain.

Visitors can relax at the tea garden and restaurant on the premises.

The General Smuts House Museum in Irene in the south-east of Pretoria, contains the original furnishings of the Smuts family home.

The Rietvlei Nature Reserve is notable for its grass types, herbs, large number of game, including rhino, hippo and many bird species.

The Mapoch Ndebele Village, north of Pretoria, is the first living cultural village in South Africa owned and managed by its residents.

Mamelodi is about 20 km from the city centre and features Solomon Mahlangu Square, which is dedicated to this freedom fighter.

The Willem Prinsloo Agricultural Museum outside Pretoria features a farmstead dating from 1880. Traditional farming activities are demonstrated, and annual events include a prickly

pear festival, a mampoer festival and the Agricultural Museum Show.

The Pretoria National Botanical Garden houses the National Herbarium of South Africa, which is the largest in the southern hemisphere.

KwaZulu-Natal

The garden province of South Africa, KwaZulu-Natal, is a subtropical region of lush and well-watered valleys, washed by the warm Indian Ocean. One of the country's most popular tourist destinations, the province stretches from Port Edward in the south to the borders of Eswatini and Mozambique to the north. History-filled towns lead to adventure sports and game viewing, along with outlets for unique arts and crafts.

Durban and surroundings

The city of Durban, overlooking Africa's busiest seaport, is warm and inviting. It is not only South Africa's domestic tourism leader, but is also popular among visitors from throughout Africa and the rest of the world who seek a unique blend of vibrancy, sophistication, cultural diversity and excitement in a beautiful setting.

The Golden Mile skirts the main beaches of the Indian Ocean. Attractions include an amusement centre, paddling pools, paved walkways and fountains.

The uShaka Marine World has a theme park, oceanarium, dolphinarium and oceanographic research institute. It is home to a wide variety of sea life, including sharks, dolphins and seals. One of its main attractions is the long lane of shops and the multitude of restaurants, especially those in the old wreck (a replica of a ship wreck in the centre of the park), and a tourism information office at its entrance.

The Durban area has more than 50 reserves, developed parks and specialised gardens, the most renowned being the Municipal Botanical Garden. Besides the botanical gardens, Mitchell Park is one of the most popular green spaces and includes an outdoor restaurant and a zoo, plus a sizeable playground for children.

MiniTown is a model city depicting Durban's best-known buildings.

Museums include the Natural History Museum, the Natural Science Museum, the Old House Museum and the Old Fort. One of the most intriguing museums is the Maritime Museum, complete with two floating ships in the harbour.

The Shree Ambalavaanar Alayam Temple (the Second River Temple) in Cato Manor was the first Hindu temple in Africa. It is a national monument.

The Juma Musjid Mosque is the largest mosque in the southern hemisphere.

Annual events in and around the city include the popular Comrades Marathon between Durban and Pietermaritzburg, an international surfing competition, the Duzi canoe marathon, the Midmar Mile and Dolphin Mile open-water swimming events, the July Handicap horserace and the Amashova-shova cycle tour.

Umhlanga Rocks, just north of Durban, is notable for its ski-boating facilities and the Ski-Boat Festival held every April.

The KwaZulu-Natal Sharks Board offers shark dissections and interesting displays. Guided tours of the Hawaan Forest are also on offer. Hawaan is the last relic of coastal forest in the region and has rare indigenous trees.

The Umgeni River Bird Park overlooks the Umgeni River and ranks among the world's best bird sanctuaries. Walk-in aviaries hold many varieties of indigenous and exotic birds.

The maritime offices, which control the entry of ships into and out of the busiest port in Africa, are in the Millennium Town at the end of the Bluff.

North Coast

Throughout the year, frolicking dolphins and impressive seasonal whale migrations make the coastline between the Umdloti and the Thukela rivers aptly called the "Dolphin Coast". The rarely seen larger humpback dolphins are also found here.

Many of the first Indian immigrants settled here, and the area's markets, mosques and temples give it an authentic Eastern flavour.

Tongaat is an area where sugar was first planted in 1854. The town's Indian ambience is accentuated by two prominent Hindu temples – the Juggernath Puri and Vishwaroop temples.

Other towns along the Dolphin Coast include Shaka's Rock, Salt Rock, Ballito, Verulam, KwaDukuza, Darnall and Umdloti.

Zululand and the Elephant Coast

Zululand's north-east quadrant, between Mozambique, Eswatini and the warm Indian Ocean, has its own unique tale to tell. This is the Elephant Coast or Maputaland, named after the mid-17th-century king who established dominion here some 200 years before King Shaka consolidated his Zulu empire to the south.

The Tembe Elephant Park in the far north is home to herds of the massive African elephant.

The Hluhluwe-Imfolozi Park is one of South Africa's largest game parks. Visitors should look out for the Big Five as well as the elusive cheetah and wild dog.

The eMakhosini Valley, birthplace of King Shaka, is known as "The Valley of Zulu Kings". A joint public-private sector project aims to preserve the culture and history of the Zulu people. This heritage park is near a nature reserve that supports the Big Five of the animal kingdom. At the eMakhosini Memorial Site, seven Zulu kings are buried.

Umgungundlovu was once the royal capital of King Dingaan and was reconstructed. The beehive huts and the layout of the original Zulu village have been reproduced. Authentic Zulu villages such as Shakaland, Kwabhekithunga Kraal, Damazulu and Stewart's Farm offer accommodation and the opportunity to experience traditional Zulu culture.

St Lucia and its surroundings comprise a globally important wetland and have five separate ecosystems. It is a fishing and birdwatching paradise, and boat trips on the lake offer opportunities for crocodile and hippo sightings. St Lucia is the only town in the world that is surrounded by a natural world heritage area.

The Kosi Bay Nature Reserve is part of the Coastal Forest Reserve between Mozambique and Sodwana Bay. The adjacent Indian Ocean provides exciting snorkelling and fishing opportunities. On offer is a four-day guided walking trail around the estuarine system.

uMkhuze is a small trade and transport centre. The Mkuze River cuts through the Ubombo Mountains before serving as a natural boundary for Zululand's popular Mkuzi Game Reserve.

The Border Cave, a site of immense archaeological interest on the border of Eswatini, now also has an interpretation centre.

Lake Sibaya is South Africa's largest natural freshwater lake, covering some 77 km^2. Sibaya Lake Lodge is the first South African ecotourism development jointly owned by private enterprise and the local community.

The coral reef in the Sodwana Bay National Park attracts hundreds of scuba divers throughout the year, and in summer, power boaters arrive for some of the best marlin fishing in the world.

South Coast

Amanzimtoti is popular for its safe swimming beaches and a variety of fun activities and attractions for the whole family.

The Hibiscus Coast stretches between Umkomaas and the Wild Coast. Margate is the largest resort town along this coast, and is very popular during the holidays. The Hibiscus Festival is held there in July.

The Oribi Gorge Nature Reserve encompasses forest, rivers, rapids and ravines. Birdlife, including five kingfisher species and seven eagle species, is prolific. There is also a variety of mammals and a 140-m abseil and gorge swing for adrenalin junkies.

Port Edward offers safe swimming and good fishing opportunities. Nearby, the Umthamvuna Nature Reserve is noted for its beautiful scenery, birdlife and many rare plant species.

The Shell Museum at Shelly Beach is well worth a visit. Other popular coastal towns include Port Shepstone, Ramsgate, St Michael's-on-Sea, Uvongo and Scottburgh. Nature's annual extravaganza, the unforgettable sardine run, strikes the South Coast around the end of June every year, when people flock to the beaches and anglers await the arrival of the game fish following the sardines.

Pietermaritzburg and the Midlands

Pietermaritzburg has various museums, including the Msunduzi Museum that depicts the heritage of different cultural groups of KwaZulu-Natal, a replica Hindu Shiva temple and a beautiful herb garden, the Natal Museum and the Natal Steam Railway Museum, which offers steam-train rides on the second Sunday of every month. The Tatham Art Gallery is also extremely popular.

The Albert Falls Public Resort Nature Reserve and the Albert Falls Dam provide opportunities for sailing, canoeing and fishing. Birdwatching, horse riding and hiking are also popular activities.

The Howick Falls are in the Nature Valley Reserve, where the river tumbles 100 m in a single fall. There are several climbing routes.

The Midlands Meander is a scenic drive between Hilton and Mooi River, with some 430 ports of call en route, ranging from art studios, potters and painters, to herb gardens and cheese makers.

Midmar Dam is zoned for yachting and powerboating. The 1 000-ha Midmar Game Park is inhabited by rhino, zebra, a wide variety of antelope species and waterfowl. The popular yearly Midmar Mile attracted 18 000 swimmers in 2013.

Drakensberg

The mountainous "Barrier of Spears" uKhahlamba-Drakensberg Park World Heritage Site, adorned with Stone Age cave paintings, forms the north-western border of KwaZulu-Natal. The entire area is a bird sanctuary, featuring, among other species, the endangered bearded vulture. The highest concentration of walks and trails in South Africa is found here.

The uKhahlamba-Drakensberg Park consists of almost the entire Drakensberg mountain range from Bushman's Neck in the south to the Royal KwaZulu-Natal National Park in the north.

Peaks soar to over 3 000 m and are often snow-covered in winter. There are trout hatcheries in the Kamberg Reserve area and at Cathedral Peak.

Lotheni Nature Reserve is notable for its trout-fishing facilities (angling permits are required). Relics of the area's history have been preserved in the Settler Museum.

The Himeville Nature Reserve has two lakes stocked with trout. The nearby Swamp Nature Reserve attracts a variety of waterfowl, including the rare wattled crane.

The Ndedema Gorge in the Mdedelelo Wilderness Area near Cathedral Peak has examples of Khoi and San art.

Sani Pass is the only road across the high escarpment between KwaZulu-Natal and the Kingdom of Lesotho. The top section is only passable in 4x4 vehicles. The Giant's Cup Hiking Trail, starting at the foot of the pass, is described as one of South Africa's finest.

Giant's Castle Game Reserve is especially known for its more than 5 000 San paintings. The Bushman Site Museum is worth a visit.

Royal Natal National Park offers many scenic highlights, including the Amphitheatre, Mont-aux-Sources and the Thukela Falls.

Battlefields

The KwaZulu-Natal Battlefields Route has the highest concentration of battlefields and related military sites in South Africa.

The Battlefields Route starts at Estcourt, winding north through Colenso and Ladysmith to Newcastle and Volksrust, and eastwards to Utrecht, Glencoe, Dundee, Nqutu, Paulpietersburg, Vryheid, Babanango and Ulundi.

All the towns along the route have their own unique charm and range of attractions: arts and crafts, scenic hiking trails, farm resorts, Zulu culture and roadside stalls. Game viewing, natural hot springs, horse trails and water sports can also be enjoyed.

The Chelmsford Nature Reserve near Newcastle is a birdwatcher's paradise. Powerboating and carp fishing are added attractions. Game includes springbok, zebra, rhino and blesbok. Majuba Hill and O'Neill's Cottage are other interesting places to visit.

The Ladysmith Siege Museum provides insight into the battles of Colenso, Spioenkop, Vaalkrans and Tugela Heights. Museum staff arrange guided tours to nearby battlefields such as Wagon Hill. Other attractions include the statue of Gandhi, the All Saints Church, the Soofi Mosque and the Spioenkop Dam and Nature Reserve.

Near Dundee, tourists can visit various battlefields, including the Ncome-Blood River, Isandlwana, Rorke's Drift and Talana. The Talana Museum depicts various facets of the coal industry, and local Zulu, Boer and British history. Rorke's Drift was the setting for one of the most famous battles of the war. The main attraction is the Rorke's Drift Battle Museum.

Top 10 reasons to visit South Africa:

- Affordable – In South Africa, you can even afford luxury and have spending money for shopping and other treats.
- Natural beauty – South Africa's scenic wonders are legendary. From Table Mountain to God's Window, the mountains, forests, coasts and deserts will sooth your soul and delight you.
- World-class facilities – You will find it easy to get around, find a comfortable place to stay and have a great meal.
- Adventure – South Africa is the adventure capital of the world. With over 130 adventures, there is something for everyone from mountain walks to shark-cage diving.
- Good weather – In sunny South Africa, with great weather, you can enjoy the outdoors, play golf year-round and take advantage of the nearly 3 000 km of coastline.
- Rainbow Nation – The Rainbow Nation celebrates all its African and immigrant cultures. South Africans are known for their friendliness and hospitality.
- Diverse experiences – Go almost anywhere in South Africa and experience the ultimate combination of nature, wildlife, culture, adventure, heritage and good vibe.
- Wildlife – The abundant and diverse wildlife include the Big Five (African lion, African elephant, Cape buffalo, African leopard and black rhinoceros).
- Freedom Struggle – Discover a nation's struggle for freedom whilst following the footsteps of Nelson Mandela, Hector Pieterson and many other celebrated revolutionaries.
- Responsible tourism – In South Africa, you can travel with care as you explore protected areas, contribute to social and conservation projects, and collect arts and crafts.

2019/20 SOUTH AFRICA YEARBOOK

Finance and Economy

Finance and Economy

More rapid and sustained economic growth is the central requirement to building a prosperous and equitable South Africa. This remains government's core policy objective. Higher growth would also reduce pressure on the public finances. Achieving this requires decisive steps to build confidence, promote investment and employment, reduce anti-competitive practices and eliminate regulatory blockages.

Over the past year, economic growth has been weaker than forecast and is only expected to reach 0.9% in 2020, rising to just 1.6% in 2022. Electricity shortages have put the economy under great strain and demands from Eskom and other financially distressed state-owned companies (SOCs) drain public resources. In 2019/20, revenue collected was expected to be R63.3 billion lower than forecast in the 2019 Budget Review.

By 2022/23, gross government debt is expected to rise to 71.6% of the gross domestic product (GDP).The most immediate and crucial reform is to ensure adequate electricity supply for businesses and households.

The South African economy contracted by 1.4% in the fourth quarter of 2019, following a contraction of 0.8% (revised) in the third quarter. Transport and trade were the main drags on overall activity. Seven of the ten industries contracted in the fourth quarter. Finance, mining and personal services managed to keep their heads above water, but this was not enough to prevent the economy from sliding into its third recession since 1994.

A decline in both freight and passenger transport dampened growth in the transport and communication industry, which slumped by 7.2%. The transport and communication industry contributed the most to the 1.4% fall in GDP (-0.6 of a percentage point). Retail trade sales and restaurant trade were up in the fourth quarter, but this was insufficient to counteract the fall in motor trade, wholesale and accommodation, which dragged the trade industry lower by 3.8%. The industry was the second biggest drag on the GDP.

The country produced less motor vehicles and transport equipment in the fourth quarter, contributing to the 1.8% dip in manufacturing. Wood, paper and publishing production was also down, further hurting the industry. Petroleum production was up, however, as a result of recovery from plant maintenance in the previous quarter, but this was not enough to lift overall manufacturing growth into positive territory.

The prize for the longest losing streak goes to construction. With its sixth consecutive quarter of economic decline, the beleaguered industry has only seen one quarter of positive growth since the beginning of 2017. Non-residential construction fell sharply in the fourth quarter, with approvals for office space construction – in square metres – falling to its lowest point in two decades.

Agriculture experienced its fourth consecutive quarter of negative growth, falling by 7.6%. Late rains and heatwave conditions across the country – in particular the Eastern Cape and Free State provinces – affected the production of field crops. The country also produced less horticulture products in the fourth quarter. Ironically, as drought affected one industry, heavy rains damaged another. Flooding at some power stations and disruptions to coal deliveries, caused by rain, contributed to the electricity, gas and water supply industry's poor showing in the fourth quarter.

The industry didn't escape the shock of the heatwave either. Falling dam levels in various parts of the country resulted in water restrictions, reducing activity in the water supply industry.

The number of civil servants employed decreased across all levels of government, with the exception of municipalities. This dragged the industry lower by 0.4%. In particular, contracts for part-time employees came to an end across a number of higher education institutions. There were also a number of terminations and retirements across other spheres of government.

In contrast, three industries contributed positively to GDP growth in the fourth quarter. Personal services – which includes activities related to healthcare, social work, recreation and education – increased by 0.7%. Mining growth in the fourth quarter was driven largely by platinum group metals, iron ore and gold. Coal production fell in the quarter, mainly as a result of lower demand and heavy rains affecting production. Manganese and diamonds also pulled growth lower. The growth of 1.8% contributed only 0.1 of a percentage point to the growth of the economy.

The finance industry, once again, posted positive growth, showing resilience against tough economic conditions. The industry, which includes banking and insurance services, has enjoyed consistent growth over the last decade. The increase of 2.7% contributed 0.6 of a percentage point to overall growth.

The South African economy grew by 0.2% in 2019, the lowest reading since 2009 when the economy contracted by 1.5%. Agriculture was the main drag on growth in 2019, followed by construction, mining and manufacturing. Finance and government were the main positive contributors to growth.

Economic indicators

Domestic outlook

Real GDP growth slowed from 0.8% in 2018 to a projected 0.3% in 2019. The National Treasury forecasts economic growth of 0.9% in 2020, 1.3% in 2021 and 1.6% in 2022. Downward revisions to domestic and global demand mean that average growth is projected at 1.3% over the next three years, well below the 1.8% average from 2010 to 2018. With the population growing at 1.4% over the next three years, per capita GDP is set to decline.

Serious risks to the forecast include further deterioration in the financial condition of SOCs, with attendant demands on the fiscus; unreliable power supply; and policy inertia and slow implementation of structural reforms.

Household consumption

Household consumption growth averaged 1.1% in the first nine months of 2019, down from 2.1% in the same period of 2018. This was a result of weaker employment, low growth in disposable income, fragile consumer confidence and high administered prices. The consumer confidence index remained at -7 index points in the second half of 2019, its lowest level since late 2017. Real disposable income growth decelerated sharply in the third quarter to 0.1% as nominal compensation growth slowed in line with moderating inflation.

Annual growth in credit extended to households, which averaged 6.4% in 2019 compared to 4.6% in 2018, continued to support consumption. Reductions in the prime lending rate have not been fully matched by declining debt-service costs. This is likely driven by debt growth outpacing growth in disposable

income, and by rapid growth in costly unsecured credit (10.2%), compared with growth in secured credit (5.3%).

Over the next three years, household consumption is expected to recover gradually. A sustained increase in consumption requires faster growth in economic activity, employment and net wealth, and a reduction in household debt.

Global outlook

Global growth slowed to a post-crisis low of 3% in 2019, and will decelerate further in 2020. The COVID-19 outbreak has severely reduced output in the first quarter of the year, and the disruption was expected to intensify in the second quarter. After that, the outlook is uncertain, but most analysts expect a rebound which will push up growth by 2021, although more adverse scenarios are conceivable. In China, where the outbreak began, the economy likely contracted in quarter-on-quarter terms at the start of the year, but is now recovering. By contrast, in the euro area and the United States (US) – the other largest blocs in the global economy – the disease effects only became widespread towards the end of the first quarter, with the turning point not yet in sight. A number of other large economies have also locked down, often pre-emptively, which is prudent but will massively reduce economic activity in the short term. In the major economies, monetary policies have become even more stimulative. In particular, the US Federal Reserve has lowered its policy rate to just above 0%, completely unwinding the interest rate normalisation of 2015 – 2018, and restarted quantitative easing. Similarly, the Bank of England has cut interest rates to almost zero, while the European Central Bank has expanded its quantitative easing programme and established a new asset-purchase facility. Inflation in these economies is likely to slow further in 2020, having already been below targets in 2019 (at 1.5% in the US, 1.8% in the United Kingdom and 1.3% in the euro area). Advanced economy central banks are now, once again, all encumbered by the zero lower bound, which prevents interest rates from being lowered too far into negative territory. In the emerging markets, by contrast, interest rates have not dipped to zero and inflation has not persistently undershot targets, leaving these central banks with more policy space.

In April 2020, the government announced a massive social relief and economic support package of R500 billion – amounting to around 10% of the GDP to mitigate against the blow of COVID-19 in the country. President Cyril Ramaphosa announced the intervention as the country saw a rise of COVID-19 cases.

The package formed part of the second tier of the country's three phase economic response to stabilise the economy, address the extreme decline in supply and demand and protect jobs. The social relief and economic support package was to cater for an extraordinary health budget to respond to the pandemic, the relief of hunger and social distress, support for companies and workers and the phased re-opening of the economy. The third phase would be the economic strategy implemented to jumpstart the recovery of the economy as the country emerges from the pandemic. In March and April 2020, the South African Reserve Bank (SARB) cut the repo rate by 100 basis, taking it down to 5.25% and 4.25%. respectively.

In addition to continued easing of interest rates, the bank took steps to ensure adequate liquidity in money and government bond markets, and to ease capital requirements to free capital for on lending by financial institutions. By June 2020 more than 18 million South Africans had received temporary COVID-19 grants which, along with other interventions for vulnerable households, costed about R41 billion. In its first few weeks of operation, the COVID-19 loan guarantee scheme had provided small businesses with over R10 billion worth of loans.

As of mid-June 2020, the Unemployment Insurance Fund (UIF) had provided R23 billion in COVID-19 relief to over 4.7 million workers. Balance sheets and operational capacity of the broader public sector were adjusted to form part of the national response. These included SOCs, the social security funds and public entities such as the National Health Laboratory Service and the South African Social Security Agency.

In addition, the government strengthened its working partnership with the private sector in response to the national emergency. The private health sector made valuable contributions, providing critical care beds at a favourable rate and complemented efforts to ramp up testing. The Solidarity Fund, a private-sector initiative, augmented government's efforts to procure medical and personal protective equipment. To support economic relief efforts, the banking sector extended nearly R12 billion in debt relief to over 124 000 small and medium-sized enterprises.

Commercial banks granted 90-day payment holidays to more than two million clients for relief, totalling R16.5 billion by August 2020. Initiatives such as the Sukuma Relief Programme and the South African Future Trust provided interest-free loans and grants to small and medium-sized firms.

Investment

Investment contracted by 0.7% in the first nine months of 2019, due to slowing private sector investment growth and continued contractions in public investment. Weak balance sheets have contributed to pervasive capital underspending, and the winding down of construction activity at Medupi and Kusile power stations has also reduced investment. Growth in private sector capital spending is expected to have declined from 2.1% in 2018 to 1.7% in 2019.

Private sector investment, which is expected to average 12.6% of GDP in 2019, is forecast to recover moderately, reaching 12.8% of GDP in 2022. This pattern will be supported by improved global growth, the need to replace capital stock and an uptick in confidence over the forecast period. Large investment projects, such as the renewable energy Bid Window 4 projects, provide further support.

Although investment in SOCs is expected to remain constrained, initiatives such as the Infrastructure Fund are expected to crowd in private and public investment towards the end of the forecast period.

Credit rating

In March 2020, Moody's Investors Service (Moody's) downgraded South Africa's long term foreign and local currency debt ratings to 'Ba1' from 'Baa3' and maintained the negative outlook – one notch below investment grade. According to Moody's, the key drivers behind the downgrade were:

- structurally very weak growth and constrained capacity to stimulate the economy; and
- inexorable rise in government debt over the medium term.

The negative outlook reflects the risk that economic growth will prove even weaker and the debt burden will rise even faster and further than currently expected, weakening debt affordability and potentially, access to funding.

In April 2020, Standard & Poor (S&P) also lowered South Africa's long term foreign and local currency debt ratings further into non-investment grade to 'BB-' and 'BB' respectively. The agency revised the outlook to stable from negative. According to S&P, the downgrade was a result of COVID-19 related pressures that would have significant adverse implications for South Africa's already deficient growth and fiscal outcomes. The stable outlook reflected the balance between pressures related to very low GDP growth and high fiscal deficits against the country's deep financial markets and monetary flexibility.

Employment

Job creation and wage growth are not easily achievable in the context of low economic growth. In 2019, formal non-agricultural employment fell 0.7%, bringing total employment to 11.3 million people. Annual private sector wage growth per worker was just 2.4% in the first nine months of 2019, compared with public sector wage growth of 7.2%. Total wage growth has outpaced profit growth since 2008.

Price inflation

Weak domestic demand continues to limit firms' ability to pass higher prices on to consumers – a trend reinforced by low global inflation. Consumer price index (CPI) inflation and core inflation averaged 4.1% in 2019. CPI inflation is expected to rise to 4.5% in 2020, mainly due to rising meat and electricity prices, and is forecast to remain about 4.6% over the medium term. Inflation expectations remain well-anchored.

There is a risk that higher administered prices and exchange-rate depreciation could put upward pressure on inflation. Downward pressure could emanate from weaker-than-expected global inflation and continued pressure on retailer margins.

Annual consumer price inflation was 4.6% in February 2020, up from 4.5% in January 2020. The CPI increased by 1.0% month-on-month in February 2020. The main contributors to the 4.6% annual inflation rate were food and non-alcoholic beverages; housing and utilities; transport; and miscellaneous goods and services. Food and non-alcoholic beverages increased by 4.2% year-on-year and contributed 0.7 of a percentage point to the total CPI annual rate of 4.6%. Housing and utilities increased by 4.7% year-on-year and contributed 1.2 percentage points. Transport increased by 6.2% year-on-year and contributed 0.9 of a percentage point. Miscellaneous goods and services increased by 6.3% year-on-year and contributed 1.0 percentage point. The annual inflation rates for goods and services were 4.9% and 4.3% respectively.

Government expenditure

Government spending remains highly redistributive, with 55.4% of the budget allocated to learning and culture, health and social development.

Total consolidated government spending is expected to be R6.14 trillion over the medium term. Main budget non-interest expenditure will grow from R1.54 trillion in 2020/21 to R1.65 trillion in 2022/23. Relative to the 2019 budget, main budget non-interest spending is reduced by R156.1 billion over the medium term. This is largely due to proposed measures, amounting to R160.2 billion, to reduce growth in the public-service wage bill.

The 2019 Medium Term Budget Policy Statement (MTBPS) noted that weak economic performance, revenue outcomes and balance sheets of several SOCs have necessitated reductions in government spending over the Medium Term Expenditure Framework (MTEF) period. The 2020 budget includes baseline reductions of R66 billion in 2020/21, R88.1 billion in 2021/22 and R106.8 billion in 2022/23. These include reductions to compensation ceilings and government programmes.

Cost pressures, including new and urgent priorities, have been funded through a combination of reallocations and reprioritisations over the MTEF period. Despite these fiscal measures, government debt as a share of GDP continues to increase. Debt-service costs remain the fastest-growing expenditure item at an annual average rate of 12.3% and will increase to R290.1 billion in 2022/23.

Total consolidated government spending is expected to grow at an average annual growth rate of 5.1%, from R1.84 trillion in 2019/20 to R2.14 trillion in 2022/23. Debt-service costs are the fastest-growing expenditure item over the medium term, rising at an annual average rate of 12.3% – more than double the average growth rate for total expenditure.

Despite proposed reductions in compensation ceilings, compensation of employees continues to account for the largest portion of total spending, at 32.7% over the medium term.

Transfers and subsidies, including transfers to local government and public entities, account for 33.1% of total spending. Public sector infrastructure spending remains proportionately low, as capital spending continues to be crowded out by rising consumption spending pressures, including the Public Service Wage Bill, and debt-service costs.

In June 2020, the National Treasury revised the 2020 Budget national share from R758 billion to R790 billion.

The revision of the budget would also see the provincial share decrease from R649 billion to R645 billion. The local government share increased from R133 billion to R140 billion due to its centrality in South Africa's response to the COVID-19 pandemic.

An additional R11 billion was allocated to local government through the equitable share. A further R9 billion was reprioritised within allocated conditional grants to fund additional water and sanitation provision and the sanitisation of public transport.

The National Treasury also announced that the country's economy was projected to contract by 7.2% in 2020 as a result of the COVID-19 pandemic – the largest contraction in nearly 90 years. Inflation was likely to register 3% in 2020. The February budget forecast growth of 0.9% and expected that the global economy would expand by 3.3% in 2020. The National Treasury now expects a global contraction of 5.2% – bringing about the broadest collapse in per capita incomes since 1870. It further elaborated that while the scenarios outlined in the special adjustments budget are intended to illustrate potential policy outcomes, data and projections may change significantly in the months ahead.

Special Adjustments budget

In June 2020, the government announced a special adjustments budget with the aim of reporting on the COVID-19 fiscal measures and the resulting adjustments to the division of revenue and departmental allocations; and setting out government's commitment to strengthen the public finances, and to position the economy for faster and inclusive growth.

The budget highlighted that in 2020, fiscal deterioration accelerated and for 2020/21, significant tax revenue underperformance was expected, and expenditure would increase as government reprioritised and allocated funds to contain COVID-19. The main budget deficit and gross borrowing requirement would increase sharply.

Gross national debt is expected to reach 81.8% of the GDP in 2020/21 compared to the 2020 budget estimate of 65.6%.

The National Treasury expected the economy to contract by 7.2% in 2020. Households and firms were grappling with the combined effects of economic restrictions and the continued spread of the virus. The public finances, which had reached an unsustainable position before the pandemic, were dangerously overstretched. Without urgent action in the 2021 budget process, a debt crisis would follow. Failure to arrest the debt trajectory could see debt-service costs consume around 31% of main budget revenue by 2024/25. The stock of debt could cross the 100% mark in 2023/24, reaching 140% in 2028/29.

A fiscal crisis could deduct more than R2 trillion from the GDP over the next decade. The special adjustments budget was a bridge to the October 2020 MTBPS. This would be followed by preparation of a set of far-reaching reforms which are expected to stabilise public debt, contain the budget deficit, and fully restore economic activity to build confidence, increase investment and promote job creation.

Spending was adjusted by removing funds underspent due to delays caused by the lockdown from the baselines of affected departments; suspending allocations for capital and other departmental projects that could be delayed or rescheduled to 2021/22 or later; suspending allocations to programmes with a history of poor performance or slow spending and redirecting funds towards the COVID-19 response within functions or towards government's fiscal relief package. In addition, the following measures were taken:

- A total of R40 billion would be drawn down from social security funds' cash surpluses to provide wage support to vulnerable employees due to the pandemic.
- Consolidated spending for 2020/21 has been revised from R1.95 trillion in the 2020 budget to R2.04 trillion, mainly due to additional funding of R145 billion allocated for government's COVID-19 response.

The allocations increase spending on transfers to almost 35% of total expenditure, while the share of all other components declines. Debt-service costs are now the fourth-largest spending item, similar in size to what government spends on health services.

The special adjustments budget for 2020 showed a tax revenue shortfall of R304.1 billion in 2020/21. The consequences of COVID-19 will lead to a drop in year revenue estimates compared to the prior budget. According to the budget, South Africans can expect a temporary shrinkage in tax base as businesses close and jobs are lost. Revenue shortfalls include tax relief measures amounting to R26 billion in foregone revenue. Improved tax collection and administration will be key to achieving fiscal stabilisation.

Trade, Industry and Competition

The Department of Trade, Industry and Competition (dtic) was established in June 2019 by merging the Department of Economic Development and the Department of Trade and Industry (dti).

The mandate of the department is to:

- lead economic development policy formulation and planning;
- facilitate access to sustainable economic activity and employment for all South Africans through an understanding of the economy, knowledge of economic opportunities and potential, and anticipation of future economic trends;
- catalyse economic transformation and development, and provide a predictable, competitive, equitable and socially responsible environment for investment, enterprise and trade for economic citizens; and
- contribute to achieving government's vision of an adaptive and restructured economy, characterised by accelerated economic growth, employment creation and greater equity.

The National Development Plan (NDP) presents a broad vision for sustainable industrialisation and economic development and transformation in South Africa and, by extension, Africa. This vision is expressed specifically in terms of Priority 1 (economic transformation and job creation) and Priority 7 (a better Africa and world) of government's 2019 – 2024 Medium Term Strategic Framework (MTSF). The work of the dtic is directly aligned with these priorities through its reimagined industrial strategy, which is premised on the development of sectoral master plans aimed at improving performance in identified sectors.

The strategy sets out the department's focus areas over the medium term. These are: providing industrial finance, developing industrial infrastructure, strengthening export capabilities and enhancing competition regulation.

Providing industrial finance

In support of job creation and economic transformation, activities in the Industrial Financing programme are aimed at growing sustainable and competitive enterprises through providing access to industrial finance, either directly or indirectly. Activities in the programme's Manufacturing Incentives subprogramme are informed by evidence-based programme designs and are expected to be achieved through the effective administration and monitoring and evaluation of manufacturing incentive programmes in labour-intensive sectors. These incentives include the Automotive Incentive Scheme, the Black Industrialist Scheme, the Agro-processing Support Scheme and the Aquaculture Development Enhancement programme. Allocations to the subprogramme account for 54.8% (R8.6 billion) of the Industrial Financing programme's total budget over the MTEF period.

Other planned activities in the Industrial Financing programme include development and implementation of various master plans, to stimulate various sectors of the economy, including: chemicals and plastics, clothing and textiles, steel and metals fabrication, furniture, sugar production and poultry.

In recognition of the need to accelerate growth in the manufacturing and internationally traded services sectors, the department aims to strengthen partnerships to leverage accessible industrial finance. In this regard, over the MTEF period, activities in the Industrial Financing programme are aimed at leveraging more than R45 billion in investments from the private sector by providing financial support to an estimated 1 950 enterprises or projects that will create approximately 56 500 jobs over the medium term.

Developing industrial infrastructure

The Infrastructure Investment Support subprogramme in the Industrial Financing programme provides grants for three industrial infrastructure initiatives: special economic zones (SEZs), industrial parks and the Critical Infrastructure programme. These initiatives are aimed at enhancing the development of industrial infrastructure that has the potential to increase investment and exports. Accordingly, over the medium term the dtic plans to continue its support programmes for SEZs and industrial parks with greater emphasis on the development of township and rural infrastructure. Allocations for SEZs in the Infrastructure Investment Support subprogramme are expected to increase at an average annual rate of 13%, from R1.1 billion in 2019/20 to R1.6 billion in 2022/23. Financial support to industrial parks is estimated to increase an average annual

rate of 2.8%, from R122.9 million in 2019/20 to R133.4 million in 2022/23, to support the refurbishment of 27 industrial parks across South Africa.

Strengthening export capabilities

The dtic plans to continue implementing the Iintegrated National Export Strategy in line with its ongoing effort to build capacity for increasing the export of South African goods and services. Accordingly, over the MTEF period, more than 2 000 South African companies will be assisted to participate at organised national pavilions, trade missions and other export promotion initiatives that will be facilitated by the department.

These initiatives are aimed at increasing the participation of historically disadvantaged enterprises and individuals. To carry out these activities, R751.1 million is allocated over the medium term to the export marketing and investment assistance scheme in the Industrial Financing programme.

Enhancing competition regulation

The Competition Amendment Act, 2018 (Act 18 of 2018) expanded the mandates of competition authorities to include the initiation of market inquiries, a number of which have already commenced in key economic sectors. Over the medium term, the dtic plans to oversee the implementation of these expanded mandates. For this purpose, an additional R65 million is allocated over the MTEF period to the Competition Commission and the Competition Tribunal to enhance their capacity to investigate cartels, and elements of dominance and collusion in identified sectors.

Legislation

The mandate of the dtic is derived from a broad legislative framework, which includes:

- the Companies Act, 2008 (Act 71 of 2008);
- the Manufacturing Development Act, 1993 (Act 187 of 1993);
- the Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment (BBBEE) Act, 2003 (Act 53 of 2003);
- the Consumer Protection Act, 2008 (Act 68 of 2008);
- the Industrial Development Act, 1940 (Act 22 of 1940);
- the Competition Act, 1998 (Act 89 of 1998), as amended; and
- the International Trade Administration Act, 2002 (Act 71 of 2002).

Budget

For the 2019/20 financial year, the dtic was allocated R10.6 billion.

Expenditure is expected to decrease at an average annual rate of 1.6%, from R11 billion in 2019/20 to R10.5 billion in 2022/23. Allocations to the Industrial Financing programme account for the bulk of the department's expenditure.

Spending in the programme is expected to decrease at an average annual rate of 4%, from R6 billion in 2019/20 to R5.3 billion in 2022/23. These decreases are due to Cabinet-approved reductions on the department's budget over the medium term.

Entities

Companies and Intellectual Property Commission (CIPC)

The CIPC was established in terms of Section 185 of the Companies Act of 2008 to register companies, close corporations, cooperatives, trademarks, patents, designs and copyright; and enforce rules and regulations. Over the medium term, the commission will focus on upgrading its information and communications technology (ICT) systems and creating a reputable business environment by effectively regulating the behaviour of companies and the intellectual property system.

In its endeavour to provide services globally and at all times, the commission plans to upgrade its ICT systems. The project accounts for an estimated 15% (R302 million) of expenditure over the medium term. The commission will further spend R302 million over the same period to create a reputable business environment.

Expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 6%, from R596.5 million in 2019/20 to R710.4 million in 2022/23. Spending on compensation of employees accounts for 61.9% (R1.3 billion) of the commission's total budget over the MTEF period. Revenue is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 6%, from R596.5 million in 2019/20 to R710.4 million in 2022/23, as the upgraded ICT system is expected to simplify the process of submitting annual returns.

An estimated 91.4% (R1.8 billion) of the commission's projected revenue over the medium term is generated by fees charged for the registration of companies, cooperatives, trademarks, patents and copyrights.

Regulatory and development finance institutions

Competition Commission

The Competition Commission is a statutory body constituted in terms of the Competition Act of 1998. It is empowered to investigate, control and evaluate restrictive business practices, including the abuse of dominant positions and mergers; and to promote the advocacy of competition issues to achieve equity and efficiency in the South African economy.

The commission's total budget for 2019/20 was R376.8 million.

Competition Tribunal

The Competition Tribunal was established in terms of the Competition Act of 1998. All large corporate mergers and allegations of restrictive practices are brought before the tribunal by the Competition Commission and interested parties for adjudication. The tribunal's total budget for 2019/20 was R59.7 million.

International Trade Administration Commission of South Africa (ITAC)

The ITAC is mandated to manage an efficient and effective trade administration system. It was established in terms of the International Trade Administration Act of 2002. The ITAC is mandated to foster economic growth and development to raise incomes and promote investment and employment in South Africa and within the Common Customs Union Area.

This is done by establishing an efficient and effective system for the administration of international trade, subject to this Act and the Southern African Customs Union (SACU) Agreement. The core functions are customs tariff investigations, trade remedies, and import and export control. The commission's total budget for 2019/20 was R108.9 million.

Industrial Development Corporation of South Africa (IDC)

The IDC is a national development finance institution established in terms of the Industrial Development Act of 1940 with the objective of leading industrial capacity development.

This entails aligning its priorities with those identified in terms of government policies and programmes related to industrial development, including relevant elements of the NDP, the New Growth Path (NGP) and the Industrial Policy Action Plan (IPAP).

Small Enterprise Finance Agency

The agency was established in 2012 and combines the operations of Khula Enterprise Finance, the South African Micro-Finance Apex Fund and the IDC's small business operations. The agency's total budget for 2019/20 was R461.4 million.

Industrial parks/SEZs

SEZs are geographically designated areas of a country set aside for specifically targeted economic activities, supported through special arrangements (that may include laws) and systems that are often different from those that apply in the rest of the country.

The purpose of the SEZ programme is to:

- expand the strategic industrialisation focus to cover diverse regional development needs and context;
- provide a clear, predictable and systemic planning framework for the development of a wider array of SEZs to support industrial policy objectives, the IPAP and the NGP;
- clarify and strengthen governance arrangements, expand the range and quality of support measure beyond provision of infrastructure; and
- provide a framework for a predictable financing framework to enable long-term planning.

There are currently five operating Industrial Development Zones (IDZs) in South Africa:

- The Coega is the largest IDZ in southern Africa. It was designated in 2001 and became South Africa's first IDZ. It lies in the Nelson Mandela Bay Metropolitan Municipality in the Eastern Cape, which is strategically located on the east-west trade route to service both world and African markets. The Coega IDZ leverages public sector investment to attract foreign and domestic direct investment in the manufacturing sector with an export orientation. It has attracted investment in the agro-processing, automotive, aquaculture, energy, metals logistics and Business Process Services (BPS) sectors. This has advanced socio-economic development in the Eastern Cape region through skills development, technology transfer and job creation.
- The Richards Bay IDZ is a purpose-built and secure industrial estate on the north-eastern South African coast. The N2 business corridor links the province's two major ports, Durban and Richards Bay, and connects with Maputo in Mozambique and, ultimately, areas of East Africa. It is linked to an international sea port of Richards Bay, tailored for manufacturing and storage of minerals and products to boost beneficiation, investment, economic growth and, most importantly, the development of skills and employment. First-world infrastructure allows for the full exploitation of the areas' natural and strategic advantages. Through the superb industrial infrastructure, well-established network of shipments, tax and duty-free incentives, the IDZ aims to encourage international competitiveness and the attraction of export-orientated manufacturing investment.
- The East London IDZ has become a prime industrial park in South Africa, renowned for its customised solutions for various industries, including automotive, agro-processing and aqua-culture. The IDZ offers growth-oriented companies a specialised manufacturing platform, innovative industrial and business solutions access to new markets and strategic industry networks. The IDZ, one of the country's leading specialised industrial parks, is located in Buffalo City, the municipal area which also incorporates Bhisho, the province's capital and King William's Town. It was one of the first IDZs in South Africa to become operational and represents an ideal choice for the location of exported manufacturing and processing. Its location provides investors with connections to major markets both locally and across the globe.
- The Saldanha Bay IDZ in the Western Cape is expected to serve as the primary oil, gas and marine repair engineering and logistics services complex in Africa, servicing the needs of the upstream oil exploration industry and production service companies operating in the oil and gas fields off sub-Saharan Africa. Situated approximately two hours north of Cape Town, the IDZ will include logistics, repairs and maintenance, as well as fabrication activities.
- The Dube TradePort is a catalyst for global trade and a portal between KwaZulu-Natal and the world. It is the only facility in Africa that brings together an international airport, a cargo terminal, warehousing, offices, a retail sector, hotels and an agricultural area. Located 30 km north of Durban, the Dube TradePort is positioned between the two biggest sea ports in southern Africa and linked to the rest of Africa by road and rail. The following two areas have been designated as comprising the IDZ: the Dube TradeZone and the Dube AgriZone. The Dube TradeZone aims to focus on manufacturing and value-addition primarily for automotive, electronics and fashion garments. The facility involves warehousing, manufacturing, assembling real estate resource, complete with a single facility in which all freight forwarders and shippers are located (Dube TradeHouse), which enjoys a direct link to the adjacent Dube Cargo Terminal via an elevated cargo conveyor system. The Dube AgriZone – a high-tech, future farming facility and host to the continent's largest climate-controlled growing area under glass – will focus on high-value, niche agricultural and horticultural products. The AgriLab will look into specialised tissue culture, greenhouses, flowers and plants, all of which require swift air transportation.

According to the 2018/19 – 2020/21 IPAP, SEZs have proven to be an effective policy instrument for propelling industrialisation in some of the world's leading developing economies.

A number of incentives are available to ensure SEZs growth, revenue generation, creation of jobs, attraction of foreign direct investment (FDI) and international competitiveness.

These SEZ incentives include:

- **Preferential 15% Corporate Tax**: Businesses (prescribed in Section 24 (4) of the SEZ Act, 2014 (Act 16 of 2014)) that are located in a SEZ may be eligible for tax relief, including the reduced rate of corporate income taxation. In addition to satisfying the requirements of the Act, further criteria for some

of the available tax incentives are stipulated in the Income Tax Act, 1962 (Act 58 of 1962.)

- **Building Allowance**: Businesses and operators (prescribed in Section 1 of the SEZ Act of 2014) operating within a SEZ may be eligible for tax relief, including the building allowance, subject to requirements contained in the Income Tax Act of 1962.
- **Employment Incentive**: Businesses and operators operating within a SEZ may be eligible for tax relief, including the employment tax incentive subject to requirements contained in the Employment Tax Incentive Act, 2013 (Act 26 of 2013).
- **Customs Controlled Area**: Businesses and operators located within a customs-controlled area of a SEZ will be eligible for tax relief as per the Value-Added Tax (VAT) Act, 1991 (Act 89 of 1991), the Customs and Excise Act, 1964 (Act 91 of 1964), the Customs Duty Act, 2014 (Act 30 of 2014) and the Customs Control Act, 2014 (Act 31 of 2014).
- **12i Tax Allowance**: The 12i Tax Incentive is designed to support Greenfield investments (new industrial projects that utilise only new and unused manufacturing assets), as well as Brownfield investments (expansions or upgrades of existing industrial projects). The new incentive offers support for both capital investment and training.

Black industrialists

The Black Industrialists Policy aims to leverage the government's capacity to unlock the industrial potential that exists within black-owned and managed businesses that operate within the South African economy through deliberate, targeted and well-defined financial and non-financial interventions as described in the IPAP and other government policies.

This policy targets entities that should have extensive experience, operations and track record in their respective or envisaged industrial sectors and value chains. It is expected that the entities supported will:

- expand their current operations or businesses to become major players in the domestic and/or global markets within 10 years of being in the programme;
- start a new operation or business that can enable them to become major players in the domestic and/or global markets within 10 years of being in the programme; and
- acquire an existing or new business that can enable them to become major players in the domestic and/or global markets within a specified period.

Such entities should be operating in the manufacturing sectors of the economy in line with the industrialisation path as articulated in the IPAP.

Black Business Supplier Development Programme

The Black Business Supplier Development Programme is a cost-sharing grant offered to black-owned small enterprises to help them improve their competitiveness and sustainability, to become part of the mainstream economy and create employment.

The programme provides grants to a maximum of R1 million: R800 000 for tools, machinery and equipment on a 50:50 cost-sharing basis; and R200 000 for business development and training interventions per eligible enterprise to improve their corporate governance, management, marketing, productivity and use of modern technology.

The objectives of the incentive scheme are to:

- draw existing Small, Medium and Micro Enterprises exhibiting potential for growth into the mainstream economy;
- grow black-owned enterprises by fostering linkages between black SMMEs and corporate and public-sector enterprises;
- complement current affirmative procurement and outsourcing initiatives of corporate and public-sector enterprises; and
- enhance the capacity of grant-recipient enterprises to successfully compete for corporate and public-sector tenders.

Role players

Presidential Infrastructure Coordinating Commission (PICC)

The PICC has the following 18 strategic integrated projects:

- Durban-Free State-Gauteng Logistics and Industrial Corridor;
- South Eastern node and corridor development;
- Unlocking economic opportunities in North West;
- Saldanha-Northern Cape Development Corridor;
- Integrated Municipal Infrastructure Project;
- Integrated Urban Space and Public Transport programme;
- Green Energy in Support of the South African Economy;
- Electricity Generation to Support Socio-economic Development;
- Electricity Transmission and Distribution for All;
- Agri-Logistics and Rural Infrastructure;
- Revitalisation of Public Hospitals and Other Health Facilities;
- Rational School-build Programme;
- Higher Education Infrastructure;
- Expanding Access to Communication Technology;
- Square Kilometre Array and MeerKat;
- Regional Integration for African Cooperation and Development; and
- Water and Sanitation Infrastructure Master Plan.

The main objective of the PICC awareness campaign is to promote infrastructure development initiatives across the country, whilst showcasing the tangible benefits in terms of job creation and mainstreaming access to social services.

Business Partners Limited

Business Partners Limited is a specialist risk-finance company that provides customised financial solutions, technical assistance, mentorship, business premises and other added-value services for formal small and medium enterprises in South Africa and selected African countries. The company is passionate about funding, supporting and mentoring entrepreneurs.

The company considers financing applications up to R50 million in all sectors of the economy — with the exception of on-lending activities, direct farming operations, underground mining and non-profit organisations — to those formal small and medium businesses whose gross assets are under R100 million, where annual turnover does not exceed R200 million and/or employees are less than 500 in number.

Applications for financing below R500 000 are usually not considered; and the company does not operate in the informal or micro enterprise sectors.

National Empowerment Fund (NEF)

The NEF was established by the NEF Act, 1998 (Act 105 of 1998), to promote and facilitate black economic equality and transformation.

The NEF provides finance and financial solutions to black businesses across a range of sectors. It also structures accessible retail savings products for previously disadvantaged people based on state-owned equity investments.

Its mandate and mission is to be government's funding agency in facilitating the implementation of BBBEE, in terms of the BEE codes of good practice.

The fund has five core divisions: small and medium enterprises, rural development, venture capital, corporate finance, and women empowerment funds.

South African Women Entrepreneurs' Network (SAWEN)

The SAWEN is a South African national network that facilitates and monitors the socio-economic advancement of women entrepreneurs and their positive impact on the country's economy.

The objectives of SAWEN are to:

- provide a national vehicle that brings women and women's groups together to address the challenges they face;
- lobby government, public and private institutions on such issues, but not limited to policy, legislation and/or proposed legislation affecting either directly and indirectly the trade and commerce activities of women entrepreneurs;
- align SAWEN with other bodies or organisations with similar business interests at both national and international level, and to leverage the relationships arising out of these alignments for the benefit of its members;
- facilitate access to business resources, information and opportunities for South African women entrepreneurs in a way that promotes their effective participation in the global economy; and
- profile and affirm women in business leadership positions in both public and private sectors.

Isivande Women's Fund (IWF)

The IWF is an exclusive fund that aims to accelerate women's economic empowerment by providing more affordable, usable and responsive finance than is currently available. The IWF assists with support services to enhance the success of businesses. It pursues deals involving start-up funding, business expansion, business rehabilitation, franchising and bridging finance.

The fund is managed by the IDC on behalf of the dtic through a development fund manager.

The Identity Development Fund (IDF) Managers is a small to medium enterprise financier aimed at supporting the creation of self-sustaining black-owned and women-owned businesses in South Africa by providing primarily financial and non-financial support to its investee companies.

The IDF Managers are responsible for reviewing eligible business plans requiring funding of R30 000 to R2 million.

The women-owned enterprises have to meet the following criteria:

- at least six months in operation;
- requires early stage, expansions and growth capital;
- 50% plus one share owned and managed by women;
- have potential for growth and commercial sustainability; and
- improved social impact in the form of job creation.

Programmes and projects

Industrial Policy Action Plan

The adoption of the National Industrial Policy Framework in 2007 introduced a very significant reorientation of South Africa's industrial policy landscape. Its main thrusts have been captured, developed and refined over the past 10 years in successive annual iterations of the IPAP. This has become the 'laboratory' for government's broad approach to industrialisation

Focus areas of the IPAP 2018/19 – 2020/21:

- public procurement and local content;
- industrial financing and incentives;
- developmental trade policy;
- african integration and industrial development;
- SEZs; and
- innovation and technology.

Sectoral focus areas

Automotives

The automotive industry remains an important pillar of South Africa's industrial landscape. The automotive sector has performed exceptionally well. The government has established a team of technical experts to develop a post-2020 Automotives Master Plan. The mandate of the team is to examine the entire automotive sector and not just the existing Automotive Policy Development Plan.

The purpose is to ensure that in the context of long-term policy certainty, a post-2020 master plan will create a framework to secure even higher levels of investment and production, higher exports, deepening localisation and expanding employment.

The dtic initiated the Medium and Heavy Commercial Vehicles Automotive Investment Scheme (MHCV-AIS), a subcomponent of the Automotive Investment Scheme (AIS), an incentive designed to grow and develop the automotive sector through investment in new and/or replacement models and components that will increase plant production volumes, sustain employment and/or strengthen the automotive value chain.

The MHCV-AIS provides for a non-taxable cash grant of 20% of the value of qualifying investment in productive assets by medium and heavy commercial vehicle manufactures and 25% of the value of qualifying investment in productive assets by component manufactures and tooling companies for MHCVs as approved by the dtic.

Some of the conditions are that the applicant must:

- be a registered legal entity in South Africa in terms of the Companies Act of 2008 (as amended); the South African Companies Act, 1973 (Act 62 of 1973) or the Close Corporations Act, 1984 (Act 69 of 1984), and must undertake manufacturing in South Africa;
- be a taxpayer in good standing and must, in this regard, provide a valid tax clearance certificate before the MHCV-AIS Grant is disbursed; the grant will only be applicable to investment in assets that will be used in the entity's South African operations; and
- submit a business plan with a detailed marketing and sales plan, a production plan, budget and projected financial income statement, cash-flow statement and balance sheet, for a

period of at least three years for the project submit a BBBEE certificate, ITAC registration certificate, projected financial income statement, cash-flow statement and balance sheet for a period of at least three years of the relevant division, cost centre or branch where the project is located, if applicable submit a cost benefit analysis for the project in cases where it cannot provide information in respect of a cost centre.

Clothing and textiles

After government set a 100% local content requirement, the clothing, textiles, leather and footwear sector saw the reintroduction of products where local production had been discontinued.

These include technical fabrics, protective footwear, protective fabrics and chambray fabrics.

This intervention, supported also by the Clothing and Textile Competitiveness Improvement Programme, has contributed to turning the sector around. In response to the flood of cheap clothing imports, government has increased the Import Duty on clothing to 45% in line with World Trade Organisation regulations.

Business Process Services

South Africa's BPS sector continued to maintain its status as a leading global outsourcing destination, while steadily moving up the value chain in terms of service offerings.

BPS already accounts for 200 000 jobs nationally and is one of the country's fastest-growing sectors, with double digit growth over the past five years.

South African Emerging Black Filmmakers Incentive Scheme

The South African Emerging Black Filmmakers Incentive is available to South African black-owned qualifying productions. It aims to nurture and capacitate emerging black filmmakers to take up big productions and contribute towards employment opportunities.

World Economic Forum (WEF) 2020

The 50th WEF took place from 21 – 24 January 2020 in Davos, Switzerland.

The 2020 theme for this international gathering was, "Stakeholders for a Cohesive and Sustainable World". The South African delegation reassured the international business community that the country is working on stabilising its power supply and fiscal management.

The WEF is an independent, international organisation whose aim is to contribute to more positive outcomes in the world by engaging business, political leaders, academia and other leaders of society to inform and shape the global, regional and industry agendas.

South African Premier Business Awards

The South African Premier Business Awards is an annual event hosted by the dtic in partnership with Proudly South African and Brand South Africa. The awards recognise business excellence and honour enterprises that promote the spirit of success and innovation as well as job creation, good business ethics and quality. These awards bring together all single sectored awards, among others technology, manufacturing and women in business.

The 6th South African Premier Business Awards ceremony was held in March 2019 at the Sandton Convention Centre in Johannesburg.

The winners were:

- Black Industrialist Award: Afro-zonke Projects and Investment.
- Enterprise Development Award: Saab Grintek Defence (Pty) Ltd.
- Exporter Award: Saab Grintek Defence (Pty) Ltd.
- Investor Award: Coega Development Corporation.
- Manufacturer Award: J Bunyan Timbercraft CC T/A Timbercraft.
- Proudly South African: Jane Massey Trading RSAMade.
- SMME Award: Eco Smart and Ndoukhulu Hydraulic and Mining Supplier.
- Women-owned Award: CTE Investments (Pty) Ltd Eco Smart.
- Play Your Part Award: Intercessor Army Franchising.
- Young Entrepreneur Award: Bathu Swag (Pty) Ltd.

International cooperation

The Investment and Trade Initiative (ITI) is part of the dtic's objective to create market penetration for South African value-added products and services, and to promote South Africa as a trade and investment destination.

The ITI focuses on showcasing South Africa's diverse range of capabilities to produce world-class products and services in the targeted sectors, which include agro-processing (rooibos tea, dried fruits, spices, sauces, frozen fish and sparkling 100% fruit juice), industrial chemicals and automotive components.

South African companies have developed highly specialised skills and products and there are various opportunities for them to market their expertise and collaborate in projects with their Brazilian counterparts.

The programme of the ITI includes trade and investment seminars, business-to-business meetings and sector-specific business site visits to companies in São Paulo and Porto Alegre.

Department of Public Enterprises (DPE)

The DPE is the shareholder representative for government with oversight responsibility for seven SOCs in its portfolio, namely the South African Airways (SAA), the South African Express Airways, Transnet, Eskom, Denel, the South African Forestry Company (SAFCOL) and Alexkor. The mandate of the DPE is to fulfil oversight responsibilities over these SOCs to ensure that they contribute to the realisation of government's strategic objectives, as articulated in the NDP, MTSF, the NGP and IPAP

SOCs are crucial to driving the State's strategic objectives of creating jobs and enhancing equity and transformation. The DPE does not directly execute programmes but seeks to use State ownership in the economy to support the achievement of these objectives.

In the current economic climate, SOCs have emerged as key instruments for the State to drive its developmental objectives of creating jobs, and for enhancing equity and transformation.

The SOCs in the DPE's portfolio form the cornerstone of the economy and their capacity would be strategically used to support the delivery of the NDP outcomes, making the strengthening of oversight tools for the SOCs crucial to socio-economic transformation.

A Presidential State-Owned Enterprises (SOEs) Council has been established to provide political oversight and strategic

management in order to reform, reposition and revitalise SOEs, so that they can play their role as catalysts of economic growth and development.

Where SOEs are not able to raise sufficient financing from banks, from capital markets, from development finance institutions or from the fiscus, other mechanisms, such as strategic equity partnerships or selling off non-strategic assets will be explored.

Chapter 13 of the NDP identifies the potential of SOCs to build a capable and developmental state. This is given expression by Priority 1 (economic transformation and job creation) of government's 2019 – 2024 MTSF, with which the mandates of SOCs are closely aligned. In overseeing SOCs' fulfilment of their mandates, over the medium term the DPE will continue to focus on enhancing reforms to stabilise these entities and strengthening its oversight capacity to ensure that the companies in its portfolio are sustainable and contribute to investment in key infrastructure.

By ensuring that these companies contribute to lowering the cost of doing business in South Africa, the department aims to reduce the burden of administered prices on the economy by reducing the cost of electricity and freight transport.

Enhancing reforms to stabilise SOCs

In 2018, Cabinet approved a number of reforms for SOCs. These include determining an appropriate shareholder ownership model and an overarching shareholder policy and developing a standardised approach to the appointment of boards. Accordingly, by 2020/21, the DPE expects to develop a state-owned enterprise Bill and a shareholder management policy. The legislation and policy will be drafted with the intention of improving the entities' overall performance in terms of setting explicit goals; ensuring that boards and management monitor performance effectively; and transparently and directly linking executives' performance incentives with desired results, including audit outcomes. Once a shareholder management policy is adopted and a performance evaluation framework is put in place, boards' performance will be evaluated annually.

The DPE's oversight activities are mainly funded in the SOCs Governance Assurance and Performance, and Business Enhancement, Transformation and Industrialisation programmes. The combined budget for these programmes is expected to decrease at an average annual rate of 67.6%, from R56.7 billion in 2019/20 to R1.9 billion in 2022/23. This is due to an additional R56.6 billion allocated in 2019/20 to settle SOCs' debts and provide working capital. Excluding provisional allocations to Eskom and the SAA over the medium term, additional allocations will be made, including R33 billion for Eskom in 2020/21; R9.9 billion for the SAA (R3.8 billion in 2020/21, R4.3 billion in 2021/22 and R1.8 billion in 2022/23); R576 million for Denel in 2020/21; and R164 million for South African Express Airways in 2020/21. Additional allocations will be used to settle government guaranteed debt and for working capital in certain instances, and are subject to conditions that include restructuring, the implementation of turnaround plans, the review of business models, the sale of non-core assets and the identification of strategic equity partners, among other things.

Over the MTEF period, the DPE intends to closely monitor and assist the SOCs in implementing and complying with these conditions.

Strengthening oversight capacity

In 2019/20, the DPE concluded an assessment to identify risk and governance shortfalls in SOCs. It intends to work with the companies to develop and implement a SOCs' Risk and Integrity Framework by 2021/22. The framework will be geared towards establishing minimum norms and standards as measures to restore good corporate governance within the entities.

With regards to specific SOCs, over the medium term, the department plans to oversee the implementation of the 2019 roadmap for Eskom in a reformed electricity supply industry, which aims to transform and stabilise the company. The DPE also plans to work closely with the business rescue practitioners for the SAA and monitor the implementation of their recommendations. The viability of the corporatisation of Transnet's National Ports Authority will also be assessed.

This is in line with findings from the World Bank suggesting that rail, ports and pipeline infrastructure managed by a single company could create conflicts of interest that negatively impact on the overall performance of a country's freight system.

Budget

The DPE's budget for the 2019/20 financial year was R56.9 billion. Total expenditure is set to decrease at an average annual rate of 66.6%, from R56.9 billion in 2019/20 to R2.1 billion in 2022/23. This is due to significant additional allocations made to SOCs in 2019/20. Excluding payments for financial assets, compensation of employees is the department's largest cost driver, spending on which is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 8.8%, from R170.2 million in 2019/20 to R219.1 million in 2022/23. However, in 2019/20 Cabinet approved baseline reductions amounting to R9.6 million over the MTEF period on the department's compensation of employees, and goods and services budget.

The DPE is in the process of implementing a realigned organisational structure, which is expected to enable it to be responsive and efficient in fulfilling its oversight and monitoring role.

State-owned companies

Alexkor

Alexkor mines diamonds in the Alexander Bay area, including marine mining and land mining. Alexkor was established in terms of the Alexkor Limited Act, 1992 (Act 116 of 1992) to mine marine and land diamonds in Alexander Bay.

The land-mining rights and 49% of the mining operations were ceded to the Richtersveld community following the conclusion of the land restitution agreement with government in 2007. Alexkor remains the owner of the sea-mining rights and 51% of the mining operations.

The mining operations with the land and sea-mining rights have been pooled into an unincorporated entity called the Alexkor Pooling and Sharing Joint Venture. The mining operations employ 250 people.

The settlement agreement included, among other things, the restoration of land and mineral rights, the formation of the pooling and sharing joint venture, environmental rehabilitation, and the establishment and development of the town at Alexander Bay.

As a result, since November 2013, the town has been made official and now forms part of the Richtersveld Municipality.

Progress to date includes the upgrade of residential properties' electrical and water reticulation systems, and the transfer of the mine operations restored with the land mining rights to the Richtersveld Mining Company. The implementation of the plan to rehabilitate mining areas has also begun.

The Alexkor Richtersveld Mining Company Pooling and Sharing Joint Venture commenced with the exploration of new shallow water channels which were previously unexplored. Over 6 000 carats were produced against a target of 5 000 carats at the shallow water operations.

Over the medium term, the company will continue to execute its remaining deed of settlement obligations, which include the transfer of public and residential properties to the Northern Cape government and the Richtersveld community. In 2019, the DPE appointed an administrator to oversee the business and ensure that the company is appropriately restructured. As such, the department's immediate focus is to review the current operating structures of Alexkor to restore the sustainability of its operations.

Denel

Denel is the largest manufacturer of defence equipment in South Africa and operates in the military aerospace and landward defence environment. Incorporated as a private company in 1992 in terms of the South African Companies Act of 1973, Denel's sole shareholder is the government. Denel is a national security asset, with the primary purpose of designing, developing, manufacturing and supporting defence materiel. It supplies the South African National Defence Force with strategic and sovereign capabilities. The company's broad focus over the medium term will be on restructuring, which entails optimising its cost structure and reviewing its business model to improve its global competitiveness. Emphasis will also be placed on the company's internal cost structure, efficiency, effectiveness, disposal of non-core businesses, improved supply chain policies and alignment of information technology infrastructure with its new organisational structure. In 2019/20, the company commenced with its restructuring process, which is focused on optimising labour, consolidating its group corporate structure, reviewing its property portfolio and plant utilisation, and introducing strategic sector participation.

The restructuring process was necessitated by the company's steady decrease in revenue over the past four years. Total revenue generated in 2018/19 was R3.8 billion compared to R8.2 billion in 2015/16. A loss of R1.7 billion was recorded in 2018/19 compared to a loss of R1.1 billion in the previous year. This decrease in revenue was mainly due to liquidity challenges that constrained operations and, in turn, affected sales. However, cost savings and restructuring initiatives that are already in place, as well as recapitalisation allocations from the department (R1.8 billion in 2019/20 and R576 million in 2020/21), are expected to stimulate revenue generation through the expansion of the company's export base and improvement of its access to markets. Accordingly, the company expects to increase its revenue to more than R7 billion by 2022/23.

Eskom

Eskom generates 95% of the electricity used in South Africa and 45% of the electricity used in Africa. It is governed by the Eskom Conversion Act, 2001 (Act 13 of 2001), and is mandated to generate, transmit and distribute electricity to industrial, mining, commercial, agricultural and residential customers and redistributors.

In response to the company's persistent financial, operational and structural challenges, the government announced that Eskom will be unbundled into three subsidiaries (generation, transmission and distribution) under a holding company, Eskom Holdings. The announcement led to the drafting and adoption of the 2019 roadmap for Eskom in a reformed electricity supply industry, which outlines actions to overcome the crisis, defines key steps in transforming the electricity supply system, addresses steps to restore the company's finances, identifies measures to reduce the company's cost structure and details the process of restructuring the entity.

However, while the roadmap has been adopted and a nine-point plan to improve generation is in place, Eskom's coal generation plants have been performing poorly due to an ageing fleet, poor maintenance practices and poor performance of new units within the Medupi and Kusile power stations. As a result, rotational load shedding has been implemented because of insufficient capacity to meet demand. Although some progress has been made, Eskom's operational performance remains inadequate, with persistent technical and plant faults. The company aims to address supply constraints through interventions as set out in the nine-point plan, which are short-term, medium-term and long-term in nature. These interventions primarily involve fixing new plant defects, reducing trips and full load losses, accelerating the return of serviced units on long-term forced outages, fixing partial load losses and boiler tube leaks, rebuilding coal stockpiles, increasing diesel stocks and recruiting critical staff for the generation division.

To stabilise Eskom's financial position in the short term, an additional R33 billion has been allocated to the company in 2020/21 through the Special Appropriations Act, 2019 (Act 25 of 2019) in addition to the provisional allocation of R23 billion. These allocations are subject to conditions, which include providing updates on strategies to manage municipal and other consumer debts, coal contract renegotiation and cost containment measures.

South African Airways

The SAA is the South African national flag carrier. It operates a full-service network in the international, regional and domestic markets. The airline is responsible for promoting air links with South Africa's key business, trading and tourism markets across the world, and contributing to key domestic air linkages.

In December 2019, the SAA was placed under business rescue to restore confidence in the airline and safeguard the company's assets. The business rescue process is also intended to restructure and reposition the company towards greater sustainability and attract strategic equity partners. Over the medium term, the airline's future will be guided by the recommendations of its business rescue practitioners. This is expected to take place in conjunction with the continued implementation of the company's long-term turnaround strategy, which aims to assist the airline in returning to solvency and profitability. The company refined its long-term turnaround strategy in 2019/20 to focus on: liquidity and balance sheet restructuring, revenue stimulation and network optimisation, organisational design, supply chain transformation, and business process transformation at SAA Technical.

In 2019/20, R5.5 billion was allocated to the SAA for repayment of debt and working capital. Over the MTEF period, R9.9 billion (R3.8 billion in 2020/21, R4.3 billion in 2021/22 and R1.8 billion in 2022/23) has been allocated to the airline for the repayment of government guaranteed debt and the provision of working capital. The airline is expected to continue relying on government support under business rescue.

South African Express

The South African Express Airways serves as a regional air carrier, providing transportation and other related aviation services on low-density domestic and African regional routes. The airline faced serious financial and liquidity challenges and was grounded by the South African Civil Aviation Authority in May 2016, May 2018 and August 2019. The airline's continuing liquidity challenges are driven by a number of factors, including unfavourable contracts entered into with service providers, an inability to raise financing facilities with local banks, suppliers placing the airline on a cash basis and demanding very stringent payment plans to settle old debt, and increased legal expenses due to disputes with suppliers where proper procurement processes were not followed.

The airline resumed operations in August 2018 with a new turnaround strategy focusing on governance, profitability, operations, customer service and human capital. The strategy mainly includes initiatives to optimise the airline's route network, cancel or renegotiate contracts and agreements, strengthen revenue collection and management, fill key positions and reduce employee costs, enhance its organisational culture and values, and improve schedule and aircraft reliability. The airlines' current business model is unsustainable and is being reviewed as part of the plan to consolidate the two state-owned airlines. The placing of the SAA under business rescue provides a structured opportunity to reorganise state aviation assets to better position them as sustainable and attractive to investors.

The airline received a recapitalisation allocation of R1.2 billion in 2018/19, which was earmarked for the repayment of government guaranteed debt, and an additional R300 million in 2019/20. These allocations temporarily restored the solvency of the airline. A total of R164 million has been allocated to eliminate government's contingent liability exposure relating to aircraft lease payments and letters of credit for the 2020/21 financial year.

South African Forestry Company

The SAFCOL was established in 1992 in terms of the Management of State Forests Act, 1992 (Act 128 of 1992). It is mandated to ensure the sustainable management of plantation forests, increase downstream timber processing, and play a catalytic role in rural economic development and transformation.

Over the medium term, the company plans to continue fulfilling its commitments to communities near its operations, and diversify its product offering by increasing its production of timber for public facilities, poles for the electricity distribution sector, and furniture. The company supports communities around its operations and is developing suitable land settlement models in partnership with the newly formed Department of Agriculture, Land Reform and Rural Development.

Its revenue is expected to increase to R1.6 billion in 2021/22 as a result of planned investments in new projects.

Transnet

Transnet is the largest freight transport company in the continent and most crucial part of the freight logistics chain that delivers goods in South Africa. The company's current operating model is geared towards lowering the cost of doing business in South Africa. As such, Transnet aims to improve the competitiveness of South African goods and services to stimulate economic growth, and ensure the security of supply in providing ports, rail and pipeline infrastructure in a cost-effective manner.

To sustain and expand its capacity, over the five-year period ending 2024/25, Transnet plans to invest R153.5 billion in capital expenditure, particularly in rail, port and pipeline infrastructure, across its operating divisions. The company is also addressing operational challenges with regards to rail and ports, with the aim of improving performance and increasing the volume of freight transported by rail. The DPE is investigating the implications of giving effect to the National Ports Act, 2005 (Act 12 of 2005), to ensure that this is done in a manner that is prudent and responsible.

Department of Small Business Development (DSBD)

The mission of the DSBD is to create a conducive environment for the development and growth of small businesses and cooperatives through the provision of enhanced financial and non-financial support services.

The DSBD creates a conducive environment for the development and growth of small businesses and cooperatives through the provision of:

- enhanced financial and non-financial support services;
- competitiveness, market access;
- promotion of entrepreneurship, advancing localisation; and
- leveraging on public and private procurement.

The DSBD leads an integrated approach on the promotion and development of small businesses and cooperatives, focusing on the economic and legislative drivers that would stimulate entrepreneurship to contribute to radical economic transformation.

Key elements of the NDP emphasise the importance of the contribution of SMMEs and cooperatives to inclusive economic growth and employment. This is given expression by Priority 1 (economic transformation and job creation) of government's 2019 – 2024 MTSF, with which the work of the department is directly aligned. Accordingly, over the medium term, the department plans to focus on increasing support for small enterprises and developing cooperatives.

Increasing support for small businesses and developing cooperatives

The DSBD provides direct and indirect support to small businesses through the Small Enterprise Development Agency (Seda), and support programmes such as the Black Business Supplier Development programme and the National Informal Business Upliftment Scheme. Accordingly, over the medium term, the department will focus on establishing a one-stop SMME platform for businesses to access financial and non-financial support; and improving access to finance by implementing the blended finance model in the Township Entrepreneurship Fund and extending blended finance to SMMEs and cooperatives.

Applying the model entails the mixture of grants and loans that ultimately lower the cost of capital for borrowers, and ensuring access to finance for SMMEs and cooperatives. In terms of developing cooperatives, over the medium term, the department will oversee the implementation and monitoring of the Integrated Cooperatives Strategy, which is intended to ensure the successful establishment of sustainable cooperatives through funding, training and providing access to markets. These activities are carried out in the Enterprise Development and Entrepreneurship programme, which receives allocations amounting to R6.9 billion over the MTEF period.

Developing the Small Enterprise Development Masterplan

To ensure the development of an enabling policy, legal and regulatory environment for small enterprises, the DSBD will develop the Small Enterprise Development Masterplan, which will enable small enterprises to realise their full potential. The masterplan will ensure the delivery of an integrated, targeted and effected support interventions aimed at promoting entrepreneurship as well as providing financial and non-financial support to qualifying small enterprises, using the life cycle approach.

Legislation and policies

The DSBD's mandate is guided by a legislative framework that includes:

- the National Small Business Act, 1996 (Act 102 of 1996);
- the National Small Business Amendment Act, 2004 (Act 29 of 2004);
- the Small Business Development Act, 1981 (Act 112 of 1981);
- the Cooperatives Act, 2005 (Act 14 of 2005); and
- the Cooperatives Amendment Act, 2013 (Act 6 of 2013).

Budget

For the 2019/20 financial year, the DSBD was allocated R8.15 billion. Expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 6.8%, from R2.3 billion in 2019/20 to R2.8 billion by 2022/23. The bulk of the department's spending over the medium term is on transfers to the Seda, amounting to R2.8 billion, and for the implementation of the Township Entrepreneurship Fund, amounting to R2.8 billion, as well as for internally administered incentives amounting to R1.5 billion.

Department of Public Works and Infrastructure (DPWI)

The DPWI is mandated to be the custodian and portfolio manager of national government's immovable assets.

Following the operationalisation of the Property Management Trading Entity in 2015/16, the DPWI's role consists of policy formulation, coordination, regulation and oversight relating to the provision of accommodation and expert-built environment services to client departments at the national level; and, through the entity, the planning, acquisition, management and disposal of immovable assets in the department's custody. The department is further mandated to coordinate and provide strategic leadership in initiatives for the creation of jobs through the implementation of the Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP). Public works is constitutionally designated as a concurrent function exercised by the national and provincial spheres of government.

Over the medium term, the DPWI will continue to focus on creating work opportunities; providing better oversight, cooperation and service delivery; facilitating skills development in construction and property sectors; reviewing and developing policy; and improving governance and mitigating risk. These areas of focus contribute towards the realisation of the NDP's vision of facilitating job creation and improving public infrastructure, and Priority 1 (economic transformation and job creation) and Priority 6 (a capable, ethical and developmental State) of government's 2019 – 2024 MTSF.

Creating work opportunities

The DPWI will continue to lead and coordinate the EPWP. To date, through the programme, an estimated 4.5 million work opportunities have been created through the use of labour-intensive methods in the infrastructure, social, non-state, environmental and cultural sectors. The department will seek to generate a further three million work opportunities over the MTEF period through an allocation of R7.9 billion for transfers and subsidies, mainly to provinces, municipalities and non-profit organisations.

To provide and enhance the management and technical capacity of the 290 public bodies that implement the programme each year, the department has set aside R1.1 billion in the EPWP. An estimated R600 million of this amount is earmarked for compensation of employees for the administration of the programme, and R535.9 million for goods and services, particularly data capturing and verification, and monitoring and evaluation. The programme has a total budget of R9.1 billion over the MTEF period, increasing at an average annual rate of 6.4%, from R2.7 billion in 2019/20 to R3.2 billion in 2022/23.

Better oversight, cooperation and service delivery

Through the Property Management Trading Entity, the DPWI is authorised to provide office accommodation to client departments and ensure that its buildings are well maintained and that property rates are paid to municipalities. The entity's projected expenditure over the medium term accounts for an estimated 61.0% (R13.6 billion) of the department's total budget.

The DPWI also leads and coordinates policies and legislative frameworks that guide the implementation of the public works function at the provincial and municipal levels and oversees and manages the performance of provinces. In its continued efforts to monitor and support planning and performance management in provinces and municipalities, the department plans to increase the number of cooperation and protocol agreements for joint service delivery signed with provinces and municipalities per year; from 13 in 2018/19 to 15 in 2022/23. For the department to carry out this oversight role, R87.6 million over the MTEF period is allocated to the Intergovernmental Relations and Coordination subprogramme in the Intergovernmental Coordination programme, with spending on compensation of employees accounting for an estimated 80.5% (R70.5 million) of this amount.

Skills development in the construction and property sectors

To improve the delivery of infrastructure in the public works sector, the DPWI plans to increase the throughput of built environment graduates. This imperative is facilitated by the department's skills pipeline strategy, which makes provision for technical bursary schemes, internships, learnerships, property management training and artisan development, with structured workplace training to expedite professional development and registration. The department's investment in young built environment professionals extends to ensuring the participation of an estimated 1 200 beneficiaries per year over the medium term in the department and Property Management Trading Entity's skills development programme. An allocation of R99.9 million over the medium term for skills development activities is made available in the Professional Services subprogramme in the Intergovernmental Coordination programme.

Reviewing and developing policy

The DPWI is responsible for regulating the construction and property sectors and ensuring that they transform in line with the inclusive vision of the NDP. As part of its efforts to develop a public works Act to provide an overarching legislative framework for the sector, over the medium term, the department will continue to review the Construction Industry Development Board (CIDB) Act, 2000 (Act 38 of 2000); the Council for the Built Environment (CBE) Act, 2000 (Act 43 of 2000); the founding Acts for the six built environment professional councils; and the 1997 and 1999 White Papers on public works. The DPWI has engaged all relevant stakeholders, including the CIDB, the CBE and the six built environment professional councils, towards the finalisation of these reviews. These reviews are expected to culminate in a draft document in 2020/21 that will inform amendments to the CIDB Act of 2000 and the CBE Act of 2000 to ensure greater transformation and the inclusion of historically disadvantaged groups in the infrastructure sector, and to avoid the duplication of functions between the department and its entities. These amendment bills will ultimately inform the development of a public works Act.

Expenditure for activities related to the regulation and transformation of the construction and built environment sectors is expected to amount to R106 million over the medium term in the Property and Construction Industry Policy and Research programme. This programme has a total budget of R14.6 billion over the MTEF period, with expenditure set to increase at an average annual rate of 3.2%, from R4.6 billion in 2019/20 to R5.1 billion in 2022/23.

Improving governance and mitigating risk

To achieve greater efficiencies in service delivery and contribute towards good governance and ethical practices, the DPWI will continue to improve various internal policies, processes and systems, including the implementation of a holistic strategy aimed at preventing fraud. The strategy seeks to establish key controls that manage the risk of fraud by aligning internal financial and business control systems with the department's fraud risk management plan to increase awareness about the risk of fraud.

Through these measures, the DPWI aims to curtail fraud and corruption, ensure the efficient use of state resources, and improve service delivery and stakeholder confidence. To carry out governance, risk and compliance activities, an estimated R162.6 million over the medium term is allocated in the Management subprogramme in the Administration programme.

Legislation and policies

The DPWI's mandate is guided by a legislative framework that includes:

the Government Immovable Asset Management Act, 2007 (Act 19 of 2007);

- the Infrastructure Development Act, 2014 (Act 23 of 2014);
- the Land Affairs Board Act, 1987 (Act 101 of 1987;
- the CIDB Act of 2000;
- the CBE Act of 2000;
- the State Land Disposal Act, 1961 (Act 48 of 1961);
- the Municipal Property Rates Act, 2004 (Act 6 of 2004);
- the Spatial Planning and Land Use Management, 2013 (Act 16 of 2013);
- the National Environmental Management Act, 1998 (Act 107 of 1998);
- the Integrated Coastal Management Act, 2008 (Act 24 of 2008);
- the Occupational Health and Safety Act, 1993 (Act 181 of 1993);
- the National Building Regulations and Building Standards Amended Act, 1984 (Act 36 of 1984);
- the Water Services Act, 1997 (Act 108 of 1997);
- the Critical Infrastructure Protection Act, 2019 (Act 8 of 2019);
- the Public Finance Management Act (PFMA), 1999 (Act 1 of 1999);
- the Preferential Procurement Policy Framework Act, 2000 (Act 5 of 2000)
- the Public Service Act,1994 (Act 30 of 2007) as amended;
- the Promotion of Equality and Prevention of Unfair Discrimination Act, 2000 (Act 4 of 2000);
- the Employment Equity Act, 1998 (Act 55 of 1998);
- the Public Administration Management Act, 2014 (Act 11 of 2014);
- the Basic Conditions of Employment Act, 1997 (Act 75 of 1997);
- the BBBEE Act of 2003;
- the Labour Relations Act, 1995 (Act 66 of 1995) as amended;
- the Protected Disclosure Act, 2000 (Act 26 of 2000);
- the Promotion of Access to Information Act, 2000 (Act 2 of 2000); and
- the Promotion of Administrative Justice Act, 2000 (Act 3 of 2000).

Budget

For the 2019/20 financial year, the DPWI's budget allocation was R7.9 million.

An estimated 86.7% (R22.4 billion) of the department's total budget over the MTEF period is allocated to transfers and subsidies for the operations of its entities, and conditional grants to provinces and municipalities for the implementation of the EPWP. An estimated 7.2% (R1.9 billion) of the department's budget over the period ahead is earmarked for spending on compensation of employees. The number of personnel in the department is expected to decrease from 840 in 2019/20 to 769 in 2022/23 mainly, due to contracts not being renewed for

contract employees. Despite this, spending on compensation of employees is expected to increase from R557.8 million in 2019/20 to R662.5 million in 2022/23 at an average annual rate of 5.9%.

Role players

Property Management Trading Entity

The Property Management Trading Entity was established following a decision that costs related to accommodation be devolved from the DPWI to client departments. The entity performs the immovable asset management function on behalf of the department, including the provision of residential and office accommodation for user departments at the national government level; and acquires, manages, operates, maintains and disposes of immovable assets in the department's custody. The entity was established to apply professional business approaches in managing and optimising the State's immovable asset portfolio for maximum return. On a cost recovery basis, the entity finances the purchase, construction, refurbishment and maintenance of nationally owned government properties; and manages the leases of privately-owned properties accommodating national departments.

Over the medium term, the entity will focus on developing precincts to support efficient and integrated government planning by grouping departments that provide similar services to make service delivery more efficient; refurbishing and maintaining government buildings in its portfolio; and developing 12 small fishing harbours. To achieve these objectives, the entity plans to spend R61.2 billion over the MTEF period, increasing at an average annual rate of 9.3%, based on projections that there will be an increase in services provided to client departments, from R16.7 billion in 2019/20 to R21.8 billion in 2022/23. An estimated 80.4% (R49.5 billion) of the entity's total budget is allocated to goods and services, mainly for repairs and maintenance of state-owned buildings, and lease payments.

A key component of the entity's funds will be channelled towards improving access for people with disabilities. As such, the entity intends to complete 58 accessibility infrastructure projects over the medium term. These include the construction of new office buildings for 24 departments; and 77 refurbishment projects, including at correctional centres, police stations, courts, office buildings and prisons.

The execution of these projects is projected to cost R7.4 billion over the MTEF period. A further R4.5 billion has been allocated over the medium term for ad hoc building maintenance. The entity generates revenue mainly through charging management fees for the payment of municipal services and charging rental fees to user departments for accommodation. Some of the entity's revenue consists of transfers from the department. Transfers account for an estimated 18.3% (R13.6 billion) of total projected revenue of R76.9 billion over the medium term. Total revenue is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 8.6%, from R21.4 billion in 2019/20 to R27.4 billion in 2022/23.

Construction Industry Development Board

The CIDB provides leadership to stakeholders; stimulates the growth, reform and improvement of the construction sector; and enhances the industry's role in the South African economy.

Council for the Built Environment

The CBE is an overarching body that coordinates the six built-environment professional councils – architecture, engineering, landscape architecture, project and construction management, property valuation and quantity surveying – to promote good conduct within the professions, transform them and advise government on built-environment related issues.

The CBE is also an appeal body to ensure protection of the public interest. As such, the CBE and the six councils for the professions maintain and apply standards for built environment professionals' conduct and practice to effectively protect the interests of the public

Agrément South Africa

The board is mandated to certify non-standardised or unconventional built environment construction products, materials and systems through technical assessments that verify whether such products, materials and systems are fit for purpose.

Independent Development Trust (IDT)

The IDT has evolved from a grant-making organisation into a responsive development agency with a well-established footprint across South Africa.

Department of Employment and Labour

The Department of Employment and Labour was created in recognition of the need to respond to increasing levels of unemployment, inequality and poverty in South Africa.

It plays a significant role in reducing unemployment, poverty and inequality by pursuing the objectives of decent work through employment creation and enterprise development; setting of standards and the protection of rights at work, including the facilitation of equal opportunities and social dialogue; and the provision of social protection.

The mandate of the department is to regulate the labour market through policies and programmes developed in consultation with social partners. These aim to:

- improve economic efficiency and productivity;
- facilitate the creation of decent employment;
- promote labour standards and fundamental rights at work;
- provide adequate social safety nets to protect vulnerable workers;
- promote and enforce sound labour relations;
- promote equity in the workplace;
- eliminate inequality and unfair discrimination in the workplace;
- enhance occupational health and safety awareness and compliance in the workplace; and
- give value to social dialogue in the formulation of sound and responsive legislation and policies to attain labour market flexibility for the competitiveness of enterprises, balanced with the promotion of decent employment.

By facilitating the resolution of workplace disputes, improving labour relations, enhancing occupational health and safety, and facilitating job creation, the Department of Employment and Labour supports the realisation of the NDP's vision of eliminating poverty and reducing inequality. In giving effect to this vision, Priority 1 (economic transformation and job creation) of government's 2019 – 2024 MTSF provides the overall strategic direction for the department's work. Over the medium term, the

department will focus on providing support to work seekers, increasing safety and fairness in the workplace, and regulating the workplace to establish minimum working conditions and fair labour practices.

Supporting work seekers

The country's unemployment rate is among the highest in the world. In June 2019, according to the official definition, it reached 29%; according to the expanded definition, 38.5%. Young people aged between 15 and 35 are the most affected group, with an unemployment rate of 41% according to the official definition and 52% according to the expanded definition. More than half of unemployed youth find it difficult to access opportunities in the labour market because of their low levels of education and skills, lack of experience, and other social and economic factors.

In response to some of these challenges, the 2018 Presidential Jobs Summit delivered a framework agreement consisting of high-impact actions aimed at driving job creation, job retention and economic growth. This agreement is an enabler for the creation of an estimated 275 000 jobs per year over the medium term. Cabinet has approved budget increases of R16 million over the MTEF period for transfers to the National Economic Development and Labour Council (Nedlac) to fund the establishment of the Presidential Jobs Summit Secretariat, which will support the effective implementation, monitoring and evaluation of the agreement. To leverage this momentum, the department plans to develop an employment policy, in line with the International Labour Organisation guidelines, to coordinate all employment initiatives. This will be funded from the existing budget allocations of the Work Seeker Services and Employer Services subprogrammes. In addition, an employment schemes framework will be developed to facilitate the provision of short-term employment in response to the oversupply of labour and the lack of available opportunities for adequate employment. This framework, set to be implemented within the MTEF period, aims to provide short-term employment, especially for young people, to stimulate the economy through multiple strategies that will allow participants to generate their own income.

The establishment of four youth employment centres within existing labour centres over the MTEF period will create an enabling environment for the accelerated employment of young work seekers. These centres will be equipped with free internet, curriculum vitae drafting facilities, and self-help and assessment facilities, and will provide a mobile platform through which registered work seekers can be dynamically matched to available job opportunities registered on the Employment Services of South Africa database. Through the platform, work seekers will be profiled so that those who require less intervention and job preparation can be fast-tracked to job opportunities, thereby availing career counsellors to focus on work seekers who require more assistance and enhancing their prospects of securing employment. It is estimated that each youth employment centre will cost R3 million to set up. This expenditure is in the Work Seeker Services subprogramme in the Public Employment Services programme. The number of work seekers registered on the Employment Services of South Africa database is set to increase from 700 000 in 2019/20 to 800 000 per year from 2021/22 due to a planned increase in advocacy campaigns and the number of employment counsellors employed. Employment counselling will be provided to an estimated 690 000 registered work seekers over the medium term at a projected cost of R45 million in the Work Seeker Services subprogramme.

Through these advocacy campaigns targeted at potential employers, the department also hopes to increase the number of work seekers placed in registered employment opportunities and reduce the time it takes to facilitate placement. To streamline the placement process, the employment services system will be integrated with the systems of the UIF and the Compensation Fund (CF), as well as the national learners record database.

The Department of Employment and Labour will also play a more active role in facilitating job creation by establishing partnerships with stakeholders such as the Department of Higher Education and Training, the DPWI, the National Youth Development Agency, municipalities and the private sector. To ensure stakeholders remain able to provide employment to work seekers, the department will work closely with Productivity South Africa in implementing the training layoff scheme, the workplace challenge, business recovery and turnaround solutions, and job-saving programmes.

As a result of these efforts, the number of registered employment opportunities filled by registered work seekers is expected to increase from 90 000 in 2019/20 to 105 000 in 2022/23 at an estimated cost of R140.4 million over the medium term in the Work Seeker Services subprogramme.

Increasing safety and fairness in the workplace

The Department of Emplyment and Labour aims to ensure that employers adhere to employment equity plans and decent workplace principles, and that vulnerable workers are protected. Key to achieving this is the inspection of workplaces for compliance with employment law. In its efforts to create healthy and safe workplaces and respond to persistent non-compliance by employers, the department has amended the Occupational Health and Safety Act of 1993 to introduce compulsory provisions such as permitting inspectors to administer fines, permitting health and safety representatives in the service of employers to check for compliance through routine inspections, and allowing employees to leave the workplace if conditions are unhealthy or unsafe. The amended Act is targeted for implementation in 2020/21.

To provide improved services to employees and employers, and ensure that the most vulnerable employees are protected, the department will collaborate with the CF to increase the number of compliance inspections conducted from 218 732 in 2019/20 to a targeted 220 692 in 2022/23. For the inspection and enforcement of employment law, R1.7 billion is allocated over the medium term in the Compliance, Monitoring and Enforcement Services subprogramme in the Inspection and Enforcement Services programme.

Regulating the workplace to establish minimum working conditions and fair labour practices

To accelerate the attainment of the NDP's vision of reducing unemployment, poverty and inequality, the Department of Employment and Labour, with social partners at the Nedlac, will continue to set standards, institute minimum wages for vulnerable workers, and monitor compliance with the

Employment Equity Act of 1998. The National Minimum Wage Commission and secretariat established in 2019 will be responsible for reviewing, adjusting and monitoring the social and economic impact of the national minimum wage, which is set at R20 per hour. The commission is funded as part of the budget allocation of R100 million over the medium term in the Employment Standards subprogramme in the Labour Policy and Industrial Relations programme.

To assess the impact of policies and programmes aimed at increasing the protection of vulnerable workers, research will be conducted on the national minimum wage, employment policy, migration policy, transformation in the labour market, and occupational safety. For this purpose, R5 million has been budgeted for in 2020/21 in the Research, Policy and Planning subprogramme in the Labour Policy and Industrial Relations programme.

Legislation and policy

The Department of Employment and Labour derives its legislative mandate from the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996 particularly the Bill of Rights, which is given effect through a number of Acts that regulate labour matters in South Africa. The most important of these are:

- the Labour Relations Act of 1995;
- the Basic Conditions of Employment Act of 1997;
- the Employment Equity Act of 1998;
- the Occupational Health and Safety Act of 1993; and
- the Employment Services Act, 2014 (Act 4 of 2014).

Role players

Compensation Fund

The CF is mandated to administer the Compensation for Occupational Injuries and Diseases Act, 1993 (Act 130 of 1993), which makes provision for the compensation of employees with disabilities resulting from occupational injuries or sustain or contract diseases, or the compensation of the nominated beneficiaries of employees who die from such injuries or diseases. The fund's main focus over the medium term will be on restoring its reputation as a trusted provider of social services to workers. It plans to do this by improving access to social insurance for workers; providing an efficient and effective safety net that strengthens social protection, particularly for vulnerable workers, by rehabilitating, reintegrating and returning to work employees who have been injured or have contracted work-related diseases; and enhancing its capacity to deliver services by improving performance, administration and operational efficiency.

In line with the fund's increased focus on improving operational efficiency, expenditure on claims and pension benefits is expected to increase from R946.3 million in 2019/20 to R1.3 billion in 2022/23 at an average annual rate of 10%. Total expenditure on benefits is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 7.2%, from R3.8 billion in 2019/20 to R4.7 billion in 2022/23. Included in this amount is expenditure for 4 200 university bursaries and 800 bursaries to technical and vocational education and training colleges to upskill unemployed workers who have suffered occupational injuries.

The cost of administering the fund, paying compensation benefits and medical expenses, and rehabilitating and reintegrating injured and diseased workers is funded through levies paid by registered employers and revenue earned from investments. The fund's total revenue in 2019/20 is expected to be R13.2 billion, increasing at an average annual rate of 5.4% to a projected R15.4 billion in 2022/23.

Unemployment Insurance Fund

The mandate of the UIF is to alleviate poverty by providing effective short-term unemployment insurance to all workers who qualify for unemployment and related benefits, as legislated in the Unemployment Insurance Act, 2001 (Act 63 of 2001). Over the medium term, the fund will focus on providing social insurance benefits and improving coverage to vulnerable groups and contributors.

The fund will review all claims affected by the changes created by the retrospective implementation date of the Unemployment Insurance Amendment Act, 2016 (Act 10 of 2016). Applications from an estimated 1.7 million claimants lodged between 19 January 2017 and 31 December 2018 that were assessed and paid at a lower rate based on the old Act, need to be reassessed and paid based on the amended Act. The UIF plans to finalise the reassessment and payment of these retrospective claims by 2020/21. As a result, expenditure on the payment of claims is expected to be R30.6 billion in 2020/21, R24.9 billion in 2021/22 and R27.4 billion in 2022/23.

To ensure the retention and smooth re-entry of contributors into employment, the fund has budgeted an estimated R7.5 billion over the medium term for the implementation of labour activation programmes such as training and business development aimed at enhancing the employability of contributors.

To reduce the time spent by clients in labour centres, the UIF has set aside R6.7 million per year over the medium term for the maintenance of the queue management system. A self-service application that can be used on smartphones and unstructured supplementary service data will be implemented in 2020/21 at a projected cost of R2.3 million in an effort to enable clients to use the fund's services without having to visit its offices. A further R10 million has been allocated in 2020/21 for the digitisation of documents, and R85 million for the implementation of systems applications and products in data processing.

An estimated 20% of the fund's investment portfolio (R33 billion) has been set aside for socially responsible investment in employment creation initiatives in agriculture, education, renewable energy, financial services, health, housing, agro-processing, mining and beneficiation, construction, petroleum, student accommodation, road infrastructure and technology. The Public Investment Corporation (PIC) manages this investment on behalf of the UIF. The fund is financed through contributions from employees and employers, as legislated in the Unemployment Contributions Act, 2002 (Act 4 of 2002), and through interest earned on investments. Over the medium term, the fund expects to receive an estimated 63.5% (R66.8 billion) of its total revenue through unemployment contributions. Income earned through returns on investments is expected to increase from R11 billion in 2019/20 to R13.9 billion in 2022/23.

Commission for Conciliation, Mediation and Arbitration (CCMA)

The CCMA aims to promote social justice and economic development in the world of work, and to be the best dispute management and dispute resolution organisation. The commission's total budget for 2019/20 was R1 billion.

National Economic Development and Labour Council

The Nedlac requires organised labour, organised business, community-based organisations and government to work as a collective to promote the goals of economic growth, and social and economic equity. The council's total budget for 2019/20 was R41.5 million.

Productivity South Africa

Productivity South Africa aims to improve the productive capacity of the economy through interventions that encourage social dialogue and collaboration between government, labour and business. The entity's total budget for 2019/20 was R232.5 million.

Employment figures

According to the Quarterly Labour Force Survey (QLFS) by Statistics South Africa, unemployment in South Africa rose to 30.1% in the first three months of 2020. In the quarter, employment decreased by 38 000 to 16.4 million.

The number of unemployed persons increased by 344 000 to 7.1 million. As a result, the official unemployment rate increased by 1 percentage point to (30.1%) compared to the fourth quarter of 2019.

During this period, the South African working-age population increased by 147 000 to 38.9 million and the labour force increased by 306 000 to 23.5 million.

The percentage of South Africans aged 15 – 64 years with jobs (the absorption rate) has declined by 0.3 of a percentage point to 42.1%, and the labour force participation rate increased by 0.5 of a percentage point to 60.3% in the first quarter of 2020 compared to the fourth quarter of 2019. The number of discouraged work-seekers increased by 63 000 and those who were not active in the labour market for other reasons, other than discouragement, decreased by 222 000, resulting in a net increase of 107 000 in the number of those who were not economically active.

The QLFS showed that a net decline in total employment in the first quarter of 2020 was mainly driven by decreases in the number of people employed in the formal sector (50 000) and agriculture (21 000). Increases in employment were observed in the informal sector (3 000) and private household (30 000) during this period.

The report highlighted that industries experienced job losses in the first quarter of 2020 compared to the fourth quarter of 2019.

During this period, finance shed the most jobs (50 000), followed by community and social services (33 000), agriculture (21 000), transport (17 000), manufacturing (15 000), construction (7 000) and utilities (4 000) industries.

Year-on-year, there was a net increase of 91 000 in total employment, with community and social services (185 000), agriculture (27 000) and mining (18 000) being the largest contributors to the observed increase. There were approximately 10.3 million persons aged 15 – 24 years in quarter 1:2020.

The proportion of these young people, who were not in employment, education or training, increased by 2.1 percentage points from 32.0% in quarter 4:2019 to 34.10% (3.5 million) in quarter 1:2020. Of the 20.4 million young people aged 15 – 34 years, 41.7% were not in employment, education or training in quarter 1:2020 – an increase of 1.6 percentage points compared to quarter 4:2019.

According to the Quarterly Employment Survey (QES) for the first quarter of 2020, total employment decreased by 3 000 quarter-on-quarter, from 10 234 000 in December 2019 to 10 231 000 in March 2020. This was largely due to decreases in the following industries: trade (-17 000 or -0.7%), construction (-14 000 or -2.4%) and manufacturing (-2 000 or -0.2%).

The electricity industry remained unchanged. However, there were increases in the following industries: community services (17 000 or 0.6%); business services (8 000 or 0.3%), mining (3 000 or 0.7%) and transport (2 000 or 0.4%). Total employment increased by 3 000 or 0.0% year-on-year between March 2019 and March 2020.

Full-time employment decreased by 37 000 or -0.4% year-on-year between March 2019 and March 2020. Part-time employment decreased by 21 000 or -2.0% quarter-on-quarter, from 1 059 000 in December 2019 to 1 038 000 in March 2020. This was largely due to decreases in the following industries: trade (-16 000 or -6.6%), business services (-8 000 or -3.3%), construction (-5 000 or -7.1%); manufacturing (-3 000 or -3.9%) and transport (-1 000 or -4.8%). The electricity industry remained unchanged. However, the community services industry reported a quarterly increase of 12 000 or 2.9%.

Part-time employment increased by 40 000 or 4.0% year-on-year between March 2019 and March 2020. Total gross earnings paid to employees decreased by R46.7 billion or (-6.0%) from R777.0 billion in December 2019 to R730.3 billion in March 2020. This was largely due to decreases in the following industries: community services (R10.8 billion or -4.3%), manufacturing (R8.2 billion or -10.2%), trade (R8.2 billion or -7.3%), business services (R8.0 billion or -3.9%), transport (R5.5 billion or -12.2%), construction (R4.5 billion or -12.2%) and electricity (R1.6 billion or -16.5%). However, the mining industry reported quarterly increase R22 million or 0.1%.

The QES showed that year-on-year, total gross earnings increased by R30.3 billion or (4.3%). Bonus and overtime paid to employees decreased by R42.4 billion (-40.9%) from R103.7 billion in December 2019 to R61.3 billion in March 2020. Year-on-year, bonus and overtime payments increased by R0.7 billion or (1.2%).

Average monthly earnings paid to employees in the formal non-agricultural sector decreased by -0.2% quarter-on-quarter and increased by 5.4% year-on-year.

Youth Employment Service (YES)

In 2018, President Ramaphosa launched the YES. The initiative aims to see more than one million young South Africans being offered paid work experience over three years.

This is a collaborative effort between government, business, labour and civil society. YES is informed by research, which has shown that one year of work experience, coupled with a curriculum vitae and reference letter, increases a young person's chances of finding employment by three times.

The programme has three channels through which employment opportunities can occur:

- Corporate work experiences: businesses that participate in the programme create one-year paid positions for youth aged between 18 and 35, in addition to these organisations' current employment numbers, YES is an additive.

- SMME host placements: businesses that do not have the capacity to place more people in their organisations, have the option of sponsoring the salary for a one-year placement in small and medium enterprises (in year one for seven to 10 months)
- SMME development: young people are empowered to start and grow their own businesses, with support from YES in the form of training, seed funding and value-chain integration.

Finance

The National Treasury's legislative mandate is based on the Constitution, which calls for the establishment of a national treasury to ensure transparency, accountability and sound financial controls in the management of the country's public finances.

This role is further elaborated in the PFMA of 1999. The department is mandated to:

- promote national government's fiscal policy and the coordination of its macroeconomic policy;
- ensure the stability and soundness of the financial system and financial services;
- coordinate intergovernmental financial and fiscal relations;
- manage the budget preparation process; and
- enforce transparency and effective management in respect of revenue and expenditure, assets and liabilities, public entities, and constitutional institutions.

The NDP details a vision of building an inclusive economy that advances social equality. This vision is supported by Priority 1 (economic transformation and job creation), Priority 2 (education, skills and health), Priority 4 (spatial integration, human settlements and local government), Priority 6 (a capable, ethical and developmental state) and Priority 7 (a better Africa and world) of government's 2019 – 2024 MTSF. The work of the National Treasury is closely aligned with these priorities, particularly in its aim to address the challenges of inequality and poverty. In giving expression to these guiding policies over the medium term, the National Treasury will focus on reviewing tax policy and strengthening regulation in the financial sector, supporting sustainable employment, supporting infrastructure development and economically integrated cities and communities, making government procurement more efficient, strengthening financial management in government, and facilitating regional and international cooperation.

Reviewing tax policy and strengthening regulation in the financial sector

To improve fairness in the tax system, over the medium term, the National Treasury plans to propose amendments to tax policy that seek to meet government's revenue requirements and eliminate tax loopholes. In working towards this, the department will conduct research on appropriate tax designs for all proposed amendments, prepare discussion documents, hold workshops and meetings with affected parties, and prepare draft tax legislation before any legislation is introduced in Parliament. It will also advise the Minister of Finance on amendments to tax rates and thresholds, which are announced each year in the annual budget. Recent proposals for amendments to tax policy have included the implementation of the carbon tax from 1 June 2019, and adjustments to the Personal Income Tax (PIT) and the Excise Duty. These activities will be carried out in the Tax Policy subprogramme in the Economic Policy, Tax, Financial Regulation and Research programme. Allocations to the subprogramme account for 21.4% (R107.8 million) of the programme's total budget over the medium term.

The Financial Sector Laws Amendment Bill and Financial Matters Amendment Bill were published for public comment in 2018/19. These bills provide for the licensing of state banks, the orderly curatorship and resolution of banks in distress, and the establishment of a deposit insurance scheme at the SARB. A deposit insurance corporation will be established to administer the scheme as an entity within the bank, and will be mandated to establish, maintain and administer a deposit insurance fund to protect the deposits of bank customers in the event of a bank failure. The department will support these bills through relevant parliamentary processes over the medium term.

The National Treasury will also aim to table a financial sector levies Bill during this period. To streamline regulations applicable to financial institutions, a new Bill for the proportionate regulation of the market conduct of all institutions in the financial sector will be developed over the medium term. Furthermore, the department intends to introduce the National Payment System Amendment Bill in Parliament in 2020/21, which seeks to, among other things, provide the SARB with clear legal, regulatory, supervisory and oversight powers in respect of the national payment system in the National Payment System Act, 1998 (Act 78 of 1998). All activities for the development and introduction of proposed legislation will be carried out in the Financial Sector Policy subprogramme in the Economic Policy, Tax, Financial Regulation and Research programme. Allocations to the subprogramme account for 16.4% (R84.1 million) of the programme's total budget over the medium term.

Supporting sustainable employment

The Jobs Fund was launched in 2011 with a total operating budget of R9 billion to create 150 000 permanent jobs. As at 30 September 2019, the fund's 133 contracted projects reported that 118 867 new permanent jobs had been created, 56 660 previously unemployed people had been placed in permanent employment, and 250 124 people had benefitted from work-readiness and technical training interventions. After eight funding rounds since 2011/12, the fund has allocated the full R9 billion to a portfolio of 153 projects, 20 of which are still contracting phase and are expected to be fully implemented by 2025. A total of R14.1 billion has been committed to these 153 projects in the form of matched funding from Jobs Fund partners.

The National Treasury anticipates spending R2.5 billion over the medium term in the Government Technical Advisory Centre subprogramme in the Public Finance and Budget Management programme on activities related to the creation of sustainable employment. These activities include supporting innovative and partnership-based approaches to employment, enterprise development and providing support to work seekers.

Supporting infrastructure development and economically integrated cities and communities

The National Treasury facilitates conditional grants and provides financial incentives for infrastructure planning and development. This support is provided to municipalities through the Local Government Financial Management Grant, the Neighbourhood Development Partnership Grant, the

Integrated City Development Grant, and the Infrastructure Skills Development Grant. Transfers to the grants and programmes for the development of infrastructure that facilitates the establishment of economically and socially integrated cities and communities amount to a projected R4.9 billion over the MTEF period in the Facilitation of Conditional Grants subprogramme in the Public Finance and Budget Management programme.

Making government procurement more efficient

Over the medium term, the Office of the Chief Procurement Officer will continue to monitor government procurement to identify malpractices that result in procurement irregularities. The office will aim to ensure compliance by analysing and monitoring the procurement plans of organs of state; and reviewing, investigating and reporting on various bids. The process for finalising the Draft Public Procurement Bill will be accelerated over the medium term, with public consultations expected to be held in 2020/21 subject to the bill's approval by Cabinet. Once effected, the legislation will introduce a series of governance reforms to the public procurement process and improve access to opportunities for SMMEs.

The National Treasury will continue to support government institutions in strategic procurement over the medium term, and guide institutions, particularly in the health, education and travel sectors, through procurement and delivery management processes. To formalise this support, the rollout of the Framework for Infrastructure Delivery and Procurement Management is expected to be completed in 2020/21. These activities will be carried out in the Office of the Chief Procurement Officer subprogramme in the Financial Accounting and Supply Chain Management Systems programme. Allocations to the subprogramme account for 7.2% (R233.5 million) of the programme's total budget over the MTEF period.

Strengthening financial management in government

The government's integrated financial management system is designed to enhance the effectiveness of back-end public service functions by improving access to information, raising the quality of data, eliminating the duplication of systems and resources, and limiting the use of manual processes through modernisation and streamlining. By the end of 2020/21, a template for the system's software interface is expected to be designed and implemented at the National Treasury and the Department of Public Service and Administration. Key stakeholders at these pilot sites have been trained to participate in the design process. Spending on these activities is expected to amount to R807.3 million over the medium term in the Financial Systems subprogramme in the Financial Accounting and Supply Chain Management Systems programme.

Facilitating international and regional cooperation

The New Development Bank was established in 2014 to strengthen cooperation among the Brazil, Russia, India, China, South Africa group of countries, and complements the efforts of multilateral and regional financial institutions for global development. As at January 2020, South Africa had made capital contributions to the bank amounting to R18.5 billion, with further capital contributions amounting to R9.2 billion expected over the medium term. By the end of December 2019, the bank had approved almost US$2 billion to fund South Africa's development initiatives in the energy, transport and logistics sectors. In addition, an estimated US$1.5 billion per year is available for funding South Africa's infrastructure build programme over the medium term.

To facilitate regional cooperation, compensation to member countries of the Common Monetary Area (Namibia, Lesotho and Eswatini) for the use of the rand currency amounts to R4 billion over the medium term in the African Integration and Support subprogramme in the International Financial Relations programme. As part of the National Treasury's multilateral development commitment to institutions that continue to be strategic partners in the region's development agenda, transfers for the recapitalisation of the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development, a member institution of the World Bank Group, are projected to amount to R261.1 million over the MTEF period, and transfers for the recapitalisation of the African Development Bank and African Development Bank Fund are projected to amount to R1.3 billion. This expenditure is allocated in the International Development Funding Institutions subprogramme in the International Financial Relations programme.

Improving government services

Public procurement reforms

Initiatives led by the Office of the Chief Procurement Officer aim to deliver lower-cost goods and services more efficiently and transparently through streamlined processes, strategic sourcing, transversal tenders and improved use of technology. The goal is to reduce bureaucratic inertia and red tape and stamp out corrupt procurement practices.

Central Supplier Database (CSD)

The CSD maintains a database of organisations, institutions and individuals who can provide goods and services to government.

It serves as the single source of key supplier information for organs of state, providing consolidated, accurate, up-to-date, complete and verified supplier information to procuring organs of State.

This is expected to reduce the administrative and cost burden of procurement, as the requisite documents will only need to be submitted once for a predetermined period.

eTender Publication Portal

The portal provides a single point of entry to identify business opportunities with government. Utilisation of the eTenders Publication Portal has improved. There are more than 37 500 tenders published on the portal. More than 14 500 tenders were published by public entities, more than 5 400 by provincial departments, more than 3 600 by national departments and more than 7 000 by municipalities.

Vulekamali Portal

In an effort to ensure that its services are accessible to the broader South African society, the National Treasury launched an online portal that makes information on the country's budget more accessible to ordinary South Africans. The portal, called Vulekamali, presents information in a simplified format and shows citizens how public resources are generated and used.

The portal enables the public to make their inputs, not only in influencing government policy directive as articulated through the budget but also having access to the budget process and the information contained in the budget.

The portal is a private-public partnership between Imaliyethu and the National Treasury. It is a good platform for young South Africans, especially the academia, to access budgeting information to help them gain critical insights.

Legislation and policies

The National Treasury's mandate is guided by a legislative framework that includes:

- the PFMA of 1999, which ensures that public funds are managed by a less rigid environment for financial management, with a stronger emphasis on the prudent use of state resources, improved reporting requirements and the use of management information to enhance accountability;
- the Municipal Finance Management Act, 2003 (Act 56 of 2003), which applies to all municipalities and municipal entities, and national and provincial organs of state, to the extent of their financial dealings with municipalities;
- the Cooperative Banks Act, 2007 (Act 40 of 2007) provides for the establishment of the Cooperative Banks Development Agency (CBDA) as a public entity under the executive authority of the Minister of Finance;
- the SARB Act, 1989 (Act 90 of 1989);
- the Division of Revenue Act, 2012 (Act 5 of 2012);
- the Appropriation Act, 2012 (Act 7 of 2012);
- the Rates and Monetary Amounts and Amendment of Revenue Laws Act, 2012 (Act 13 of 2012);
- the Adjustments Appropriation Act, 2012 (Act 17 of 2012);
- the Division of Revenue Amendment Act, 2012 (Act 18 of 2012);
- the Financial Markets Act, 2012 (Act 19 of 2012);
- the Tax Administration Laws Amendment Act, 2012 (Act 21 of 2012);
- the Taxation Laws Amendment Act, 2012 (Act 22 of 2012);
- the Credit Rating Services Act, 2012 (Act 24 of 2012);
- the Development Bank of Southern Africa (DBSA) Act, 1997 (Act 13 of 1997);
- the Land and Agricultural Development Bank Act, 2002 (Act 15 of 2002);
- the Financial Advisory and Intermediaries (FAIS) Act, 2002 (Act 37 of 2002);
- the Financial Intelligence Centre (FIC) Act, 2001 (Act 38 of 2001);
- the PIC Act, 2004 (Act 23 of 2004);
- the South African Revenue Service (SARS) Act, 1997 (Act 34 of 1997);
- the Tax Administration Act, 2011 (Act 28 of 2011);
- the Lotteries Act, 1997 (Act 57 of 1997);
- the National Gambling Act, 2004 (Act 7 of 2004);
- the Lotteries Amendment Act, 2013 (Act 32 of 2013); and
- the National Credit Act (NCA), 2005 (Act 34 of 2005).

Budget

For the 2019/20 financial year, the National Treasury was allocated R753.5 billion.

The department's total budget over the medium term is R2.6 trillion, with transfers to provincial governments for the provincial equitable share accounting for 65.5% (R1.7 trillion) of this amount. Cabinet has approved reductions on the department's baseline amounting to R21.4 billion over the medium term mainly on the provincial equitable share, and increases to the department's baseline amounting to R30.9 billion over the same period mainly to service government's debt. With this additional allocation, the department anticipates spending 28.9% (R777.9 billion) of its total budget over the medium term to service debt. Distributing the General Fuel Levy to metropolitan municipalities is the department's third-largest cost driver, amounting to R45.3 billion over the medium term. Cabinet has approved a baseline increase of R240 million over the medium term to defray costs associated with retirement without penalisation of pension benefits in the Public Service. The National Treasury will use this allocation to pay penalties on behalf of departments to the Government Employees Pension Fund (GEPF) for the early withdrawal of pension funds. This allocation is in response to calls for a sustainable public wage bill through reducing government spending on compensation of employees.

Entities

A total of 16 entities report to the Minister of Finance through governance arrangements that give them autonomy but also enable them to align their strategies with government policy.

Nine of these entities receive transfers from the National Treasury. The remaining seven are self-funded and generate their own revenue. Each entity develops and reports on its own strategic and corporate plan.

Entities receiving transfers are the:

- Accounting Standards Board (ASB).
- FIC.
- Government Technical Advisory Centre.
- Independent Regulatory Board for Auditors (IRBA).
- Office of the Ombud for Financial Service Providers (FSPs).
- Office of the Pension Funds Adjudicator.
- SARS.
- CBDA.
- Financial and Fiscal Commission (FFC).

Entities not receiving transfers are the:

- DBSA.
- Government Pensions Administration Agency (GPAA).
- Land and Agricultural Development Bank of South Africa (Land Bank).
- PIC Limited.
- South African Special Risks Insurance Association (SASRIA).

Development Bank of Southern Africa

The DBSA was reconstituted in terms of the DBSA Act of 1997 as a development finance institution with the primary purpose of promoting economic development and growth. The bank also promotes the development of human resources and institutional capacity building by mobilising financial and other resources from national and international private and public sector partners for sustainable development projects and programmes in South Africa and other Southern African countries.

Over the medium term, the bank will focus on:

- driving financial and non-financial investments and support in the education, energy, health, housing, transport, water and communications sectors;

- accelerating the financing of infrastructure in South Africa, paying particular attention to municipalities, SOCs, independent power producers and public-private partnerships; and
- providing infrastructure support in the rest of Africa targeted at SOCs and public-private partnerships.

It also aims to play a role in supporting economic infrastructure project planning and financing. The bank plans to increase the total value of disbursements to infrastructure projects from R13.5 billion in 2019/20 to R18.7 billion in 2022/23. To complement these activities, as part of the bank's development finance programme, R127 million per year over the MTEF period is set aside to subsidise interest repayments and support the planning and implementation of infrastructure projects in more than 20 selected municipalities with capacity constraints. In 2019/20, the bank disbursed R7.3 billion to municipalities for investments in water and sanitation, energy, transport and roads infrastructure. The bank expects to receive R300 million from government over the medium term to assist with the preparation of catalytic projects, which will be submitted to the budget facility for infrastructure for financing.

Total expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 7.3%, from R6.1 billion in 2019/20 to R7.6 billion in 2022/23. The bulk of the bank's spending is on interest, which is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 4.8%, from R4.1 billion in 2019/20 to R4.7 billion in 2022/23, in line with the expected increase in disbursements. To ensure that the bank has adequate capacity to deliver on its mandate, its number of personnel is expected to remain constant over the medium term. Spending on compensation of employees is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 6.7%, from R890.4 million in 2019/20 to R1.1 billion in 2022/23.

The bank mainly derives its revenue from interest income and fees from investment income and is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 9.8%, from R8.6 billion in 2019/20 to R11.4 billion in 2022/23. This is due to the anticipated increase in disbursements and more effective management of the nonperforming loan book, which is expected to improve net loan impairments.

Government Pensions Administration Agency

The GPAA provides pension administration services to the GEPF in terms of the Government Employees Pension Law (1996). Post retirement medical subsidies are administered, as provided for, and regulated by resolutions of the Public Service Coordinating Bargaining Council; military pensions are administered in terms of the Military Pensions Act, 1976 (Act 84 of 1976); injury-on-duty payments are administered in terms of the Compensation for Occupational Injuries and Diseases Act of 1993; and special pensions are administered in terms of the Special Pensions Act, 1996 (Act 69 of 1996).

The agency will continue to focus on its modernisation project, which is aimed at improving service delivery by enhancing information technology infrastructure, optimising office space and employing new personnel as client service agents. Outdated and obsolete systems and applications will be replaced to enhance staff productivity, speed up the processing of claims and effectively manage pension queries. Core pension administration functions, including benefit payments and membership maintenance processes, are also expected to be improved. The project is expected to be completed over the MTEF period. Accordingly, the agency's expenditure on ICT is expected to increase from R54.5 million in 2019/20 to R77 million in 2022/23.

Expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 5%, from R1.1 billion in 2019/20 to R1.3 billion in 2022/23, driven by an increase in spending on consultants for the Modernisation programme. Spending on compensation of employees is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 7.6%, from R514.2 million in 2019/20 to R640.6 million in 2022/23, in line with an increase in the number of personnel over the period. Revenue, which is derived mainly from administration fees, is in line with spending over the period ahead.

Land and Agricultural Development Bank of South Africa

As a development finance institution, the mandate of the Land Bank of is to address agricultural and rural development in South Africa. The bank operates in the primary agriculture and agribusiness sectors and is regulated by the Land and Agricultural Development Bank Act of 2002 and the PFMA of 1999.

The bank plays a pivotal role in advancing agriculture and rural development. The Land and Agricultural Development Bank Act of 2002 promotes:

- the equitable ownership of agricultural land, particularly by historically disadvantaged people;
- agrarian reform, land redistribution or development programmes for historically disadvantaged people;
- land access for agricultural purposes;
- productivity, profitability, investment and innovation in agriculture;
- the growth of agricultural sectors and better use of land;
- rural development and job creation;
- commercial agriculture; and
- food security.

The bank's loan book is expected to increase from R45.2 billion in 2019/20 to R49 billion in 2022/23. In line with this increase, total operating expenses are expected to increase at an average annual rate of 3.2%, from R4.8 billion in 2019/20 to R5.3 billion in 2022/23, and expenses related to funding liabilities are expected to increase at an average annual rate of 4.1%, from R3.7 billion in 2019/20 to R4.2 billion in 2022/23.

The bank's number of personnel is expected to increase in 2022/23 as it fills vacant positions. This will contribute to an increase in spending on compensation of employees at an average annual rate of 6.7%, from R424.6 million in 2019/20 to R515.3 million in 2022/23.

Revenue is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 3.7%, from R5 billion in 2019/20 to R5.6 billion in 2022/23, in line with projected growth in the loan book. Interest income is expected to account for 97.4% (R15.7 billion) of the bank's total revenue over the MTEF period.

Public Investment Corporation

The PIC, established by the PIC Act of 2004, is a registered financial services provider wholly owned by government, with the Minister of Finance as its shareholder representative. The corporation is mandated to invest funds on behalf of its clients,

as agreed upon with each client and approved by the Financial Sector Conduct Authority. The corporation's clients are public sector entities, most of which are pension, provident, social security, development and guardian funds.

The corporation makes investments through the Isibaya Fund under the guidance of the Developmental Iinvestment Framework of the GEP. This requires the corporation to find a balance between financial returns and support for long-term economic, social and environmental outcomes. The corporation's developmental investments are focused on economic and social infrastructure; sustainability projects; enterprise development; and SMMEs in the manufacturing, tourism, mining and agro-processing sectors.

Over the medium term, the corporation plans to commit R9 billion towards development property investments, including new developments, refurbishments and upgrades, and developments in rural areas. Through these investments, the corporation aims to make favourable returns on its clients' portfolios and contribute towards the growth and transformation of South Africa's economy. At least 30% of the corporation's approved unlisted property transactions for new developments or acquisitions will be compliant with black economic empowerment regulations, targeted at 50% representation by women.

As the corporation intensifies its investment activities, the value of the assets under its management is expected to increase from R2.3 trillion in 2019/20 to R2.8 trillion in 2022/23. This will necessitate the appointment of an estimated 18 additional asset managers. As a result, spending on compensation of employees is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 7.3%, from R864.9 million in 2019/20 to R1.1 billion in 2022/23. Total expenditure is expected to increase from R1.4 billion in 2019/20 to R1.7 billion in 2022/23, at an average annual rate of 6.9%.

The corporation derives its revenue mainly through the fees it charges for managing its clients' assets, including the GEPF; board fees; and interest. Revenue is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 7%, from R1.7 billion in 2019/20 to R2.1 billion in 2022/23, mainly due to an anticipated increase in management fees, growth in the equities portfolio, and an increase in assets under management for the CPI.

South African Special Risks Insurance Association

The SASRIA was established in 1979 and was registered in terms of Section 21 of the Companies Act of 1973. In line with the amendments of the SASRIA Act, 1998 (Act 134 of 1998) and the Companies Act of 2008, government became the company's sole shareholder. The association is mandated to support the insurance industry by providing cover for special risks such as riots, strikes, political unrest, terrorist attacks, civil commotion, public disorder and labour disturbances.

Over the medium term, the association will focus on the sustainability of its business by establishing new distribution channels; enhancing customer service by conducting a needs analysis to understand its clients better; and improving brand awareness and product development by creating awareness of the industry, collating market intelligence and conducting research.

Over the MTEF period, expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 8.5%, from R2.5 billion in 2019/20 to R3.2 billion in 2022/23. This is mainly due to projected increases in administrative, marketing and underwriting expenses. In response to the anticipated increase in claims, additional regulatory requirements and the development of new products, its number of personnel is expected to increase over the period ahead. Accordingly, spending on compensation of employees is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 8.4%, from R216.8 million in 2019/20 to R276.1 million in 2022/23. Similarly, spending on goods and services is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 8.6%, from R2 billion in 2019/20 to R2.6 billion in 2022/23. Revenue is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 8.3%, from R3 billion in 2019/20 to R3.8 billion in 2022/23. The association expects to derive 79.9% of its revenue over the medium term through underwriting premiums.

South African Revenue Service

The SARS is mandated to collect all revenue due to the State and administer trade to support government in meeting its key developmental objectives for growth. This involves facilitating legitimate trade, protecting South Africa's ports of entry, and eliminating illegal trade and tax evasion.

As its principal contribution to South Africa's economic and social development, the revenue service's focus over the medium term will continue to be on providing government with more than 90% of the revenue it requires to meet its policy and delivery priorities. It aims to do this by modernising its ICT systems to encourage eFiling, improve the experience of taxpayers, monitor compliance and make tax collection more efficient. These improvements are expected to enable the revenue service to keep up with the evolving tax and customs legislative environment, and lead to changes in compliance behaviour by responding to the needs and expectations of taxpayers. An additional allocation of R1 billion over the medium term will be made available to execute strategic projects over the medium term, with a significant portion of this amount (R844 million) allocated for implementing the generally recognised accounting practice system.

The revenue service's total expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 7.4%, from R11.1 billion in 2019/20 to R13.8 billion in 2022/23. As the revenue service requires a diverse skill set to expand its footprint, improve compliance and revenue collection, and drive key initiatives, its number of personnel is expected to increase over the medium term. Accordingly, expenditure on compensation of employees is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 6.8%, from R7.6 billion in 2019/20 to R9.2 billion in 2022/23. The revenue service aims to ensure this increase in expenditure remains modest by filling only critical vacancies and recruiting scarce and high-end skills only in key areas. Revenue is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 4.7%, from R10.2 billion in 2019/20 to R11.7 billion in 2022/23. The service's revenue is derived mainly from transfers from government, which account for 96.3% of total revenue over the MTEF period.

It is also responsible for administering the South African tax system and customs service. By encouraging tax and customs compliance, the SARS also aspires to contribute to the building of fiscal citizenship reflected by a law-abiding society.

Tax administration

The National Treasury is responsible for advising the Minister of Finance on tax policy issues that arise in local, provincial

and national government. As part of this role, the National Treasury must design tax instruments that can optimally fulfil their revenue-raising function and policy objectives. These tax instruments must be aligned to the goals of government's economic and social policies.

A single, modern framework for the common administrative provisions of various tax Acts administered by the SARS, generally excluding customs and excise, was established by the Tax Administration Act of 2011. The Act simplifies and provides greater coherence in South African tax administration law. It eliminates duplication, removes redundant requirements and aligns disparate requirements that previously existed in different tax acts administered by the SARS.

The Act provides for common procedures across the various tax Acts and strives for an appropriate balance between the rights and obligations of the SARS and the rights and obligations of taxpayers in a transparent relationship.

Office of the Tax Ombud

The Office of the Tax Ombud is intended to provide taxpayers with an impartial and low-cost mechanism to address service, procedural or administrative difficulties that taxpayers have not been able to resolve through the SARS's complaints management channels.

South African tax system

South Africa has a residence-based income tax system. Residents are, subject to certain exclusions, taxed on their worldwide income, irrespective of where their income was earned. Non-residents are taxed on their income from a South African source, subject to relief under Double Taxation Agreements (DTAs). Foreign taxes are credited against South African tax payable on foreign income.

The PIT, Company Income Tax (CIT) and VAT in aggregate, remain the largest sources of tax revenue and comprise about 80.7% of total tax revenue collections.

Taxes on income and profits

This category comprises taxes on persons and individuals; taxes on companies – both inclusive of Capital Gains Tax and withholding tax on royalties; interest on overdue Income Tax; Dividends Tax (DT) and withholding tax on interest.

Personal Income Tax

The PIT is a tax levied on the taxable income of individuals and trusts. It is determined for a specific year of assessment. Taxable capital gains form part of taxable income. The main contributors to the PIT are employment income from salary and wage earners, pensioners, income generated from sole-proprietor activities and partnerships, and other income such as rental, interest above a certain threshold. The tax rates applicable to PIT-related taxable income are progressive, marginal rates ranging from 18% to 45%.

As a means of collecting the PIT from salary, wage and pension income, a mechanism known as Pay-As-You-Earn (PAYE) is in operation that enables employers to withhold tax due to the SARS from employees and pay this over to the authority monthly and reconciled biannually.

Company Income Tax

The CIT is a tax levied on the taxable income of companies and close corporations and cooperatives. After the PIT and VAT, the CIT has been the largest contributor to total tax revenue for the past decade.

Although the current headline CIT rate is 28%, some sectors of the economy have different effective tax rates due to sector-specific tax dispensations and deductions.

Exceptions to the 28% flat rate are the lower, progressive tax rates that apply to qualifying small and micro enterprises, as well as a reduced tax rate that applies to companies operating in designated SEZs.

Dividends Tax

The DT is a final tax at a rate of 20% on dividends paid by resident companies and by non-resident companies in respect of shares listed on the Johannesburg Stock Exchange (JSE). Dividends are tax exempt if the beneficial owner of the dividend is a South African company, retirement fund or other exempt person.

Non-resident beneficial owners of dividends may benefit from reduced tax rates in limited circumstances. The tax is to be withheld by companies paying the taxable dividends or by regulated intermediaries in the case of dividends on listed shares.

The tax on dividends in kind (other than in cash) is payable and is borne by the company that declares and pays the dividend.

Taxes on payroll and workforce

Taxes on payroll and workforce include the Skills Development Levy (SDL) and the UIF contributions. The SDL is a compulsory levy intended to fund training costs incurred by employers.

Skills Development Levy

Affected employers contribute to a skills development fund that is used for employee training and skills development.

This SDL is payable by employers at a rate of 1% of the total remuneration paid to employees. Employers paying annual remuneration of less than R500 000 are exempt from the payment of this levy.

Taxes on property

Taxes on property comprise the Donations Tax, Estate Duty, Securities Transfer Tax (STT) and Transfer Duty.

Donations Tax

The Donations Tax is levied at a rate of either 20% or 25% on the value of the donation, depending on the aggregate value of the property being disposed of in a specific tax year. An annual exemption of R100 000 is available to natural persons.

Estate Duty

The Estate Duty is levied at a rate of 20% and at 25% on the dutiable amount of the deceased estate that exceeds R30 million. Specific deductions and abatements are allowed from the total value of the estate.

Securities Transfer Tax

The STT is levied at a rate of 0.25% on the transfer of listed or unlisted securities. Securities consist of shares in companies or members' interests in close corporations.

Transfer Duty

The Transfer Duty is levied on the acquisition of property at progressive rates from 0% to 13% for all persons including companies, close corporations and trusts.

The marginal rate of 13% applies to the portion of the value of property exceeding R11 million from 1 March 2020.

Domestic taxes on goods and services

Domestic taxes on goods and services comprise the VAT, specific excise duties, ad valorem excise duties, Fuel Levy, Road Accident Fund (RAF) Levy, environmental levies and Health Promotion Levy. The VAT is the largest source of revenue in this category.

Value-Added Tax

The VAT is levied at a rate of 15% on goods and services with some exemptions and zero-ratings and is also levied on the importation of goods and services into South Africa. The quoted or displayed price of goods and services must be VAT-inclusive.

A person who supplies goods or services is liable to register for VAT, if the income (taxable supply) earned is more than R1 million in a 12-month period, or when there is a reasonable expectation that the income will exceed this amount.

A person can also register voluntarily for VAT, if the income earned from supplying goods or services for 12 months exceeded R50 000.

Fuel taxes

The General Fuel Levy is imposed on petrol and diesel (including biodiesel) manufactured in or imported into South Africa. The Fuel Levy is not earmarked, but it implicitly increases the cost of road transport to encourage more efficient and sustainable road use.

The increased General Fuel Levy is R3.70/litre (l) for petrol and R3.55/ litre for diesel from 1 April 2020. The RAF Levy is imposed on petrol and diesel manufactured in or imported into South Africa. The RAF Levy funds the RAF's motor vehicle accident insurance scheme. The increased RAF Levy is R2.07/l for both petrol and diesel from 1 April 2020.

Environmental levies

The government has responded to the serious global challenge of environmental pollution and climate change by introducing several environmental taxes that are intended to modify behaviour of the country's citizens for sustainable development of the economy.

International Air Passenger Departure Tax

Passengers departing on flights to Botswana, Lesotho Namibia and Eswatini (known as the BLNS countries) pay a departure tax of R100 per passenger while passengers on other international flights pay R190 per passenger.

Plastic Bag Levy

The Plastic Bag Levy was introduced to reduce litter and encourage plastic bag reuse. It is charged at 25 cents per bag as from 1 April 2020.

Electricity Generation Levy

The levy was introduced to encourage sustainable electricity generation and use. The levy is applied to electricity generated from non-renewable sources and costs 3.5 cents per kilowatt hour.

Incandescent Bulb Levy

The levy was introduced to promote energy efficiency by discouraging the use of incandescent light bulbs. It is charged at R10 a bulb from 1 April 2020.

Carbon dioxide (CO_2) Motor Vehicle Emissions Levy

The CO_2 Motor Vehicle Emissions Levy on passenger and double-cab vehicles was introduced to encourage the manufacture and purchase of more energy efficient motor vehicles. It is charged at R120 for every gram (g) above 95gCO_2/kilometre (km) for passenger vehicles and R160 for every gram above 175gCO_2/km for double cab vehicles.

Tyre Levy

The levy on new pneumatic tyres was introduced to encourage efficient tyre use. Although the Tyre Levy is not earmarked, it indirectly supports the responsible recycling of obsolete tyres. The current rate is R2.30/kilogram.

Health Promotion Levy

The levy applies to specific sugary drinks and concentrates used in the manufacture of sugary drinks to combat obesity and promote healthier consumer beverage choices.

The current rate is 2.21cent/g of the sugar content that exceeds 4g/100 millilitres.

Diamond Levy

A diamond export levy on unpolished diamonds exported from South Africa was introduced, effective from November 2008 at a rate of 5% of the value of such diamonds.

Trade agreements

The SARS administers a number of trade agreements or protocols or other parts or provisions thereof, and other international instruments, in terms of the Customs and Excise Act of 1964, which are enacted into law when published by notice in the Gazette. The full texts of these types of agreements contain the following:

- Treaty of the Southern African Development Community (SADC) and protocols concluded under the provisions of Article 22 of the Treaty.
- Agreement between South Africa and the US regarding mutual assistance between their Customs Administrations.
- Southern African Customs Agreement between the governments of the Botswana, Lesotho, Namibia, South Africa and Eswatini.
- Memorandum of Understanding between South Africa and China on promoting Bilateral Trade and Economic Cooperation.
- Free Trade Agreement between the European Free Trade Association states and the SACU states.
- Common Market of the South comprising of Argentina, Brazil, Paraguay and Uruguay and the SACU comprising of Botswana, Lesotho, Namibia, South Africa and Eswatini which was implemented on 1 April 2016.
- Economic Partnership Agreement between the SADC

Economic Partnership Agreement states, of the one part, and the European Union and its member states of the other part which was implemented on 10 October 2016.

Southern African Customs Union

The SACU Secretariat is located in Windhoek, Namibia. The union was established in 1910, making it the world's oldest customs union. Negotiations to reform the 1969 agreement started in 1994, and a new agreement was signed in 2002. The member states form a single customs territory in which tariffs and other barriers are eliminated on substantially all the trade between the member states for products originating in these countries; and there is a common external tariff that applies to non-members of the SACU.

Excise duties

Excise duties are levied on certain locally manufactured goods and their imported equivalents. Specific excise duties are levied on tobacco and liquor products. Ad valorem excise duties are levied on products such as motor vehicles, cellular telephones, electronics and cosmetics.

Customs duties

Customs duties are imposed by the Customs and Excise Act of 1964. Ordinary Customs Duty is a tax levied on imported goods and is usually calculated on the value of goods imported and collected by the customs unit within the SARS. Customs Duty rates in Part 1 of Schedule 1 and trade remedies relating to the importation of goods – anti-dumping, countervailing and safeguard duty are set out in Schedule 2 of the schedules to the Act and are determined through trade policy in terms of the International Trade Administration Act of 2002 administered by the International Trade Administration Commission.

The Customs Control Act of 2014 and the Customs Duty Act of 2014 were promulgated in July 2014 to provide a platform for the modernisation of customs administration that achieves a balance between effective customs control, the secure movement of goods and people into and from South Africa and the facilitation of trade and tourism.

In addition, the VAT is also collected on goods imported and cleared for home consumption.

Rates on property

Property-related taxes include municipal rates and charges for refuse and sewerage which are collected by municipalities.

Compliance levels

Tax Register

The SARS continues to broaden the tax base and expand its taxpayer and trader register. Contributing positively to the ease of registration are bulk registrations at places of employment and an online facility to register staff when submitting their monthly PAYE returns. The SARS registration policy stipulates that everyone formally employed regardless of their tax liability must be registered for the PIT. If employees are not registered, it is the duty of the employer to register them with the SARS.

Tax compliant

Tax compliance is mirrored in the tax collected from the various types of tax. It is the duty of every taxpayer to ensure that they are registered for the necessary taxes, that all tax returns are submitted by the relevant due dates and that all taxes are paid as and when is required.

Payment channels

The majority of taxpayers are now using electronic payment platforms which significantly improve turnaround times. Cash collections at branches have been reduced because of the risks associated with them. From 1 May 2020, cheque payments in South Africa may not be in excess of R50 000. Payment methods other than branch payments are:

- eFiling: this requires a taxpayer to register as an eFiling client in order to make electronic payments using this channel; and
- payments at banks: taxpayers can make either an internet banking transfer or an over-the-counter (OTC) deposit.

Voluntary Disclosure Programme

A permanent Voluntary Disclosure Programme (VDP) was introduced in terms of the Tax Administration Act of 2011, in October 2012. The permanent VDP is part of a package of compliance measures aimed at encouraging non-compliant taxpayers to regularise their tax affairs.

International tax treaties

South Africa has a number of DTAs and tax information exchange agreements. In 2014, the Organisation for Economic Cooperation and Development, working with the group of twenty countries and other stakeholders, developed the Standard for Automatic Exchange of Financial Account Information – the Common Reporting Standard (CRS).

The CRS requires the reporting to tax authorities by certain financial institutions of information in relation to financial accounts they hold for non-resident taxpayers. This information is then automatically exchanged between tax authorities each year in order to tackle cross-border tax evasion. South Africa is an early adopter of the CRS. The USA Foreign Account Tax Compliance Act Intergovernmental Agreement is also in force between the governments of the USA and South Africa to exchange information automatically under the provisions of the DTA between the two countries.

Other entities

Accounting Standards Board

The ASB develops uniform standards of generally recognised accounting practice for all spheres of government in terms of Section 216(1)(a) of the Constitution and the PFMA of 1999. A further function of the board is to promote transparency in and the effective management of revenue, expenditure, assets and liabilities of the entities to which the standards apply. The board's total budget for 2019/20 was R14.7 million.

Cooperative Banks Development Agency

The CBDA was established in terms of the Cooperative Banks Act of 2007, as amended, with the SARB as the sole supervisor of cooperative banks. The agency is mandated to provide for the registration and supervision of deposit-taking financial services cooperatives, and savings and credit cooperatives, collectively referred to as cooperative financial institutions. The agency also facilitates, promotes and funds the education and training

of these institutions. The agency's total budget for 2019/20 was R23 million.

Financial and Fiscal Commission

The FFC derives its mandate from the FFC Act, 1997 (Act 99 of 1997). The commission's legislative mandate is to advise the relevant legislative authorities on the financial and fiscal requirements for the national, provincial and local spheres of government in terms of Section 220 of the Constitution.

Financial Intelligence Centre

The FIC was established by the FIC Act of 2001 and began operations in 2003. The Act mandates the centre to identify the proceeds of unlawful activities, combat activities related to money laundering, combat the financing of terrorist and related activities, exchange information with law enforcement and other local and international agencies, supervise and enforce compliance with the Act, and facilitate effective supervision and enforcement by supervisory bodies. The organisation's total budget for 2019/20 was R311.5 million.

Financial Sector Conduct Authority

The Financial Sector Conduct Authority is an independent institution established by statute to oversee the South African non-banking financial services industry in the public interest. The authority's legislative mandate is primarily derived from the Financial Sector Regulation Act, 2017 (Act 9 of 2017). Its total budget for 2019/20 was R829.3 million.

Government Technical Advisory Centre

The Government Technical Advisory Centre is mandated to assist organs of state in building their capacity for efficient, effective and transparent financial management. Its overarching objectives are to render consulting services to government departments and other organs of state; provide specialised procurement support for high-impact government initiatives; render advice on the feasibility of infrastructure projects; and provide knowledge management for projects undertaken and any ancillary support. The centre's total budget for 2019/20 was R381.3 million.

Independent Regulatory Board for Auditors

The IRBA develops and maintains auditing and ethical standards that are internationally comparable, provides an appropriate framework for the education and training of properly qualified auditors, inspects and reviews the work of registered auditors, and investigates and takes appropriate action against registered auditors who do not comply with standards and are guilty of improper conduct. The board's total budget for 2019/20 was R142.2 million.

Office of the Ombud for Financial Services Providers

The Office of the Ombud for Financial Services Providers is mandated to consider and dispose of complaints against financial services providers, primarily intermediaries selling investment products. The organisation's total budget for 2019/20 was R58.1 million.

Office of the Pension Funds Adjudicator

The Office of the Pension Funds Adjudicator investigates and determines complaints lodged in terms of the Pension Funds Act, 1956 (Act 24 of 1956). The office ensures a procedurally fair, economical and expeditious resolution of complaints and has jurisdiction only over funds that are registered under the Act. The organisation's total budget for 2019/20 was R70.4 million.

Role players

National Gambling Board

The NGB is governed by the National Gambling Act of 2004. The Act makes provision for the coordination of concurrent national and provincial legislative competence over matters relating to casinos, racing, gambling and wagering; and provides for the regulation and development of uniform norms and standards.

The NGB maintains a national gambling database that contains information on national gambling statistics such as turnover, gross gambling revenue, gambling taxes and levies, as well as returns to players and punters.

Provincial licensing authorities are required to submit statistics to the NGB quarterly for consolidation and reporting on the national status.

Responsible gambling

The NGB has a legislated responsibility to educate the public about gambling and the negative socio-economic impact of the gambling industry on society.

The National Responsible Gambling Programme (NRGP) integrates research and monitoring, public education and awareness, training, treatment and counselling.

The NRGP is managed by the South African Responsible Gambling Foundation. The main thrust of the NRGP's prevention programme is to educate gamblers, potential gamblers and society as a whole about responsible gambling.

The NRGP has various operational components, such as public awareness and prevention, the toll-free counselling line, a countrywide treatment network for outpatient counselling and therapy, research and monitoring initiatives, training for regulators and industry employees, a crisis line service available to gambling industry employees and management, as well as the Taking Risks Wisely life-skills programme – a teaching resource for grades 7 to 12.

National Lotteries Commission (NLC)

The NLC was launched in June 2015 with the mandate to regulate the National Lottery as well as other lotteries, including society lotteries to raise funds and promotional competitions.

The NLC evolved out of the National Lotteries Board. The NLC members are also trustees of the National Lottery Distribution Trust Fund, into which the National Lottery proceeds that are intended for allocation to good causes are deposited.

The NLC does not adjudicate applications for funding or make allocations to organisations. This is done by committees known as distributing agencies which are also appointed by the Minister of Trade, Industry and Competition, in conjunction with other relevant Ministers, after a process of public nomination. The NLC provides administrative support to the distributing agencies.

Auditor-General of South Africa (AGSA)

The AGSA strengthens South Africa's democracy by enabling oversight, accountability and governance in the public sector through auditing, thereby building public confidence.

The AGSA is one of the Chapter 9 institutions mandated by the Constitution to fulfil certain functions. These institutions are not part of government and do not have a duty to be part of the mechanisms of cooperative government. The independence of the AGSA is, therefore, respected and strengthened.

As mandated by the Constitution and the Public Audit Act, 2004 (Act 25 of 2004), the AGSA is responsible for auditing national and provincial departments and administrations, all municipalities and any other institution or accounting entity required by national and provincial legislation to be audited by the AGSA.

Various business units provide auditing services, corporate services and specialised audit work, such as performance audits, information system audits and audit research and development. The AGSA also has an international auditing complement.

Financial sector

South African Reserve Bank

The primary purpose of the SARB is to achieve and maintain price stability in the interest of balanced and sustainable economic growth in South Africa. Together with other institutions, it also plays a pivotal role in ensuring financial stability.

The SARB is the central bank of South Africa. It was established in 1921, in terms of a special Act of Parliament and the Currency and Banking Act, 1920 (Act 10 of 1920), which was the direct result of abnormal monetary and financial conditions that had arisen during and immediately after World War I.

The SARB is governed by the SARB Act of 1989, as amended. In terms of the Constitution, it has been given an important degree of autonomy in the execution of its duties.

Since its establishment, the SARB has always had private shareholders who have limited rights. It has more than 700 shareholders. Its shares are traded on the OTC share-trading facility managed by the SARB. Its operations are not motivated by a drive to return profits, but to serve the best interests of all South Africans.

The SARB's head office is in Pretoria and it has cash centres in Cape Town, Durban and Johannesburg. The SARB must submit a monthly statement of its assets and liabilities to the National Treasury and an annual report to Parliament. The Governor of the SARB holds regular discussions with the Minister of Finance and appears before the Parliamentary Portfolio and other select committees on finance, from time to time.

The SARB has a unique position in the economy, as it performs various functions and duties not normally carried out by commercial banks. Although the functions of the SARB have changed and expanded over time, the formulation and implementation of monetary policy has remained one of the cornerstones of its activities.

The SARB publishes monetary policy reviews, and regular regional monetary-policy forums are held to provide a platform for discussions on monetary policy with broader stakeholders from the community.

Functions

The primary function of the SARB is to protect the value of South Africa's currency. In discharging this role, it takes responsibility for, amongst others:

- ensuring that the South African money, banking and financial system as a whole is sound, meets the requirements of the community and keeps abreast of international developments;
- assisting the South African Government, as well as other members of the economic community of southern Africa, with data relevant to the formulation and implementation of macroeconomic policy; and
- informing the South African community and all stakeholders abroad about monetary policy and the South African economic situation.

System of accommodation

The SARB's refinancing system is the main mechanism used to implement its monetary policy. Through its refinancing system, the SARB provides liquidity to banks, enabling them to meet their daily liquidity requirements. Liquidity refers to the banks' balances at the central bank, which are available to settle their transactions with one another, over and above the minimum statutory level of reserves that they have to hold.

The main instrument for managing liquidity in the money market is repurchase (repo) transactions conducted at the prevailing repo rate. The repo rate is the price at which the SARB lends cash to the banking system and is the key operational variable in the monetary-policy implementation process. The objective of the Monetary Policy Implementation Framework is to ensure that the money market interest rates are aligned to changes in the repo rate.

The refinancing system also provides for supplementary and automated standing facilities in the end-of-day square-off to bridge the banking sector's overnight liquidity needs, as well as a concession to banks to use their cash-reserve balances with the SARB to square off their daily positions.

Creating a liquidity requirement

To promote price discovery in the domestic money market, the SARB calculates the South African Benchmark Overnight Rate (Sabor) on deposits and the average rate on funding in the forward foreign exchange market, the Overnight Foreign Exchange Rate, on a daily basis, in addition to conducting surveillance on the calculation of the Johannesburg Interbank Average Rate (Jibar).

The refinancing system, or Monetary Policy Implementation Framework, together with the toolkits used to manage money market liquidity, is currently under review, in terms of its effectiveness and efficiency.

To enhance the price transparency in the money market, and for the SARB to better monitor the interest rate transmission, additional initiatives involve the improvement and broadening of existing money market benchmark and reference rates according to global guidelines. The SARB also engages with other stakeholders to promote the efficient functioning of markets.

Promoting the efficient functioning of domestic financial markets

To promote price discovery in the domestic money market, the SARB calculates the Sabor and the average rate on funding in the forward foreign exchange market, the overnight foreign exchange rate, on a daily basis, in addition to conducting surveillance on the calculation of the Jibar.

To keep the refinancing system effective, the SARB stays abreast of market and other structural developments.

Following the review of the rate setting of the Jibar and the subsequent code of conduct, additional initiatives involve the improvement and broadening of existing money-market benchmark and reference rates according to global guidelines.

The SARB also engages with other stakeholders to promote the efficient functioning of markets.

Special liquidity assistance and stability in the financial sector

In terms of its "lender-of-last-resort", the SARB may, in certain circumstances, provide liquidity assistance to banks experiencing liquidity problems, for example to provide liquidity against a broader range of collateral as was the case in 2007. The type and conditions of emergency assistance will vary according to specific conditions.

Also, as part of the broader mandate of the SARB and the upcoming Financial Sector Regulations Bill, resolution planning, crisis preparedness and monitoring systemic risks in the financial sector are priority, all aimed at protecting and enhancing financial stability, as well as to deepen South Africa's resilience to external shocks.

In view of the interrelationship between price and financial system stability, the bank monitors the macro-prudential aspects of the domestic financial system. The objective of financial stability is to prevent costly disruptions in the country's financial system.

Service to government

The SARB manages the country's official gold and foreign exchange reserves. In addition, the SARB provides portfolio management, debt issuance, and custody and settlement services to the government and other clients/counterparties, while also managing the inherent market and operational risks associated with these services.

Gold and foreign-exchange reserves

The bank is the custodian of the country's official gold and foreign-exchange reserves. Subsequent to the conversion of the negative net open foreign currency position in May 2003 into a positive position, foreign reserves grew until 2011 and have remained stable since then.

The accumulation and management of reserves is guided by the risk tolerance of the bank through the Strategic Asset Allocation, which seeks to ensure capital preservation, liquidity, and return.

Banker and adviser to government as well as funding agent

As the funding agent for government, the main services provided are administering the auctions of government bonds and Treasury Bills, participating in the joint standing committees between the SARB and the National Treasury, and managing the flow of funds between the exchequer account and tax and loan accounts. The SARB also acts as banker to government and as such, manages the Exchequer and Paymaster General Accounts in the books of the SARB.

Administration of exchange control

The SARB is responsible, on behalf of the Minister of Finance, for the day-to-day administration of exchange controls in South Africa.

Provision of economic and statistical services

The bank collects, processes, interprets and publishes public information, economic statistics and other information, and uses this information in policy formulation.

Prudential Authority (PA)

The passing of the Financial Sector Regulation (FSR) Act, 2017 (Act 9 of 2017) was the culmination of collaboration on financial sector reform by the SARB, the National Treasury and the Financial Services Board (FSB), and marked an important milestone on the journey towards a safer and fairer financial system that is able to serve all citizens.

The Act gave effect to three important changes to the regulation of the financial sector:

- It gave the SARB an explicit mandate to maintain and enhance financial stability.
- It created a prudential regulator, the PA. The authority is responsible for regulating banks, insurers, cooperative financial institutions, financial conglomerates and certain market infrastructures.
- It established a market conduct regulator, which is located outside of the SARB.

The PA is a juristic person operating within the administration of the SARB and consists of four sections: Financial Conglomerate Supervision; Banking, Insurance and Financial Market Infrastructure Supervision; Risk Support; and Policy, Statistics and Industry Support.

The national payment system

The bank is responsible for overseeing the safety and soundness of the national payment system. The main aim is to reduce interbank settlement risk, with the objective of reducing the potential of a systemic risk crisis emanating from settlement default by one or more of the settlement banks.

Banker to other banks

The bank acts as the custodian of the cash reserves that banks are legally required to hold or prefer to hold voluntarily, with the bank.

Banknotes and coins

The South African Mint Company, a subsidiary of the SARB, mints all coins on behalf of the bank. The South African Bank Note Company, another subsidiary of the SARB, prints all banknotes on behalf of the bank.

Banknotes are distributed to the commercial banks through the bank's three branches. Coins, however, are distributed by SBV. It is the responsibility of the SARB to ensure that there is an adequate supply of new banknotes available to meet peak demand, and also to replace unfit banknotes. The SARB is responsible for the quality of banknotes in circulation.

Monetary policy

The SARB is responsible for monetary policy in South Africa. Its constitutional mandate in this regard is to protect the value of the currency in the interest of balanced and sustainable economic growth.

To give effect to this mandate, the SARB uses a flexible inflation targeting framework with a continuous target for consumer price inflation of 3 – 6%. The SARB has expressed its preference for inflation expectations to converge towards the mid-point of the target range, so as to minimize the risk of prolonged deviations from target in the event of unexpected price shocks.

According to the Monetary Policy Review (April 2020), the 2019 inflation came out well below expectations, ultimately averaging 4.1% for the year. This was a rare instance of inflation in the bottom half of the target range: since 2010, monthly inflation has been at or above the 4.5% midpoint of the target range for 77% of the time. Notable contributors to this relatively low inflation rate were food prices, which remained below longer-run averages, as well as housing inflation, which decelerated to an all-time low of 2.2% in December. Inflation picked up temporarily at the end of the year, as anticipated, on base effects from oil price weakness the year before. The inflation prints were 4.5% for January and 4.6% for February 2020.

Inflation was expected to remain well contained within the target range across the forecast horizon. Recent Monetary Policy Committee forecasts show inflation in the bottom half of the target range again 2020, averaging 3.8%, before recovering to 4.6% in 2021 and 4.4% in 2022. The main driver of low inflation is fuel prices, following a collapse in world oil prices. Weaker demand is also exerting downward pressure on inflation, partly offset by the more depreciated exchange rate. The distribution of risks to this forecast, as captured in the inflation fan charts, indicates a high probability that inflation will be within the target range throughout this period, with 92% of the probability distribution between 3% and 6%. The chance of target misses is quite small, with 4% of the distribution above the upper bound and 4% under it, over the forecast period (2020 – 2022). The chance of a target undershoot is marginally higher in 2020, however, with 5% of the distribution under the lower bound of the target range.

Inflation expectations were well within the target range, having declined steadily in recent years. The average two-year-ahead expectation measure was down to 4.8%, from around 6% in 2016, while current-year expectations have fallen to 4.4% – a 14-year low.

The COVID-19 outbreak would provide a test of whether expectations are resistant to shocks, helping reveal how firmly they are anchored. Expectations were better positioned than they were historically, because they awere no longer close to, or above, the top of the target range. This means the SARB has monetary policy space at a moment of crisis, which was a major objective of the strategic initiative, begun in 2017, to anchor expectations closer to 4.5%.

Banking entities registered in South Africa

2019	
Banks[1]	19
Local branches of foreign banks	16
Mutual banks	4
Cooperative banks	4
Representative offices	30

[1]Includes active banks and banks exempted by the Registrar of Banks (with effect from 1 July 1996) in terms of the Supervision of Financial Institutions Rationalisation Act 32 of 1996 and Section 1(cc) of the Banks Act, 1990 (Act 94 of 1990).

The banking industry

As at the end of December 2019, 35 banking institutions were registered and supervised by the PA of the SARB:

- 19 banks, and
- 16 local branches of international banks.

South Africa's banking sector is dominated by the five largest banks, which collectively held 90.4% of total banking sector assets as at 31 December 2019. Local branches of international banks contributed 5.6% as at 31 December 2019. The remaining banks operating in South Africa represented 4.0%.

In addition, as at the end of December 2019, four mutual banks and four cooperative banks were registered and supervised by the PA. At that date, there were also 30 authorised representative offices of international banks in South Africa:

Furthermore, the PA has taken over the regulatory oversight of cooperative financial institutions (CFIs) from the CBDA and is currently supervising 22 CFIs.

The insurance industry

As at the end of December 2019, 169 insurance institutions were registered and supervised by the PA of the SARB:

- 76 life insurers,
- 84 non-life insurers, and
- Nine professional reinsurers.

South Africa's life insurance sector is dominated by the five largest insurers, which collectively held 72.5% of the total assets, while the non-life insurance sector is dominated by eight large insurers, which held 56.0% of gross premiums as at December 2019. All nine professional reinsurers are foreign-owned and constitute less than 2% of the total insurance industry assets.

In addition to the above, the PA was also regulating the RAF and the South African branch of Lloyd's.

Financial Market Infrastructures

The PA is also responsible for the prudential supervision of Market Infrastructures (MIs) which includes exchanges, central securities depositories, clearings houses, central counterparties, and trade repositories.

Exchange rates

South Africa's total external debt decreased from US$180.6 billion at the end of June 2019 to US$177.7 billion at the end of September, mainly as a result of a decrease in market value of domestic non-resident bond holdings. South Africa's gross external debt, expressed in rand terms, increased from R2 555 billion to R2 700 billion over the same period. Foreign currency-denominated external debt increased from US$87.4 billion at the end of March 2019 to US$93.2 billion at the end of September. This increase was mainly due to the issuance of two international government bonds. Rand-denominated external debt, expressed in US dollars, decreased from US$93.2 billion at the end of June 2019 to US$84.5 billion at the end of September. Although the external debt of all sectors decreased, it mainly reflected a decrease in market value in domestic non-resident bond holdings and a decline in the US dollar value of rand-denominated external debt due to the depreciation in the exchange rate of the rand over the period.

Exchange controls

Exchange control regulations are administered by the SARB, on behalf of the Minister of Finance. The Minister has delegated to the Financial Surveillance Department of the SARB the responsibility of appointing certain banks to act as authorised dealers in foreign exchange, as well as certain entities to act as authorised dealers in foreign exchange with limited authority, which gives them the right to buy and sell foreign exchange, subject to conditions and within limits prescribed by the department. Authorised dealers are not agents for the Financial Surveillance Department, but act on behalf of their customers.

As at the end of February 2020, a total of 25 banks were authorised to act, for the purposes of the regulations, as authorised dealers; two banks as restricted authorised dealers in respect of permissible credit card transactions and 19 entities as authorised dealers in foreign exchange with limited authority. In terms of exchange control policy, there are no limitations as to how much money may be brought into South Africa, but there are certain limitations on the amount of money that may be transferred out of South Africa.

For all non-South Africans, there is no limitation on transferring money out of South Africa that has been previously introduced into the country. Up to R25 000 in cash, per resident (natural person), may be taken when proceeding on visits outside the Common Monetary Area, to meet travellers' immediate needs on return to South Africa. Foreign visitors to South Africa may introduce foreign currency in any amount and in any form (e.g. foreign bank notes, travellers' cheques) and may export any funds originating from instruments of foreign currency (including foreign bank notes) imported into South Africa on their arrival. No more than R25 000 may be exported in SARB notes.

South Africans (including emigrants and South African residents who are temporarily abroad), for example, are currently able to transfer up to R10 million, per calendar year, out of the country for investment purposes, subject to a Tax Compliance Status (TCS) Personal Identification Number (PIN) letter being provided.

The authorised dealer must verify the individual's tax compliance status via the TCS system on the SARS eFiling through the use of the TCS PIN. In addition, South Africans can transfer up to R1 million abroad for any legal purpose, including investments, without the requirement to obtain a TCS PIN letter. Requests by individuals to transfer additional funds are considered by the Financial Surveillance Department. As of 31 October 2019, South Africans may individually or collectively acquire up to 40% equity and/or voting rights, whichever is the higher, in a foreign target entity, which may in turn hold investments and/or make loans into the Common Monetary Area (the so called 'loop structure'). Loop structures created prior to the date and loop structures in excess of 40% still have to be regularised with the Financial Surveillance Department.

Non-residents living and working in South Africa may now be granted lending facilities (i.e. mortgage bonds) for residential property, subject to normal lending criteria. Companies may transfer up to R1 billion per calendar year for outward FDIs. South African entities listed on any South African authorised exchange may register with the Financial Surveillance Department and transfer funds from the parent company to a Domestic Treasury Management Company (DTMC) – a South African holding company for African and offshore operations, incorporated in South Africa and with its effective management place in South Africa – up to R3 billion a calendar year. Up to this amount, there is no restriction on transfers in and out of the holding company, provided such transfers are not undertaken to avoid tax.

Additional amounts of up to 25% of the listed company's market capitalisation are considered, on application to the Financial Surveillance Department, provided there are demonstrated benefits to South Africa. Unlisted entities may establish one DTMC for African and foreign operations, subject to certain administrative requirements. Annual transfers up to R2 billion a calendar year into a DTMC may be effected. In addition, companies operating in the financial sector, such as banks and insurance companies may also apply to the Financial Surveillance Department for the DTMC dispensation, provided they meet certain set criteria. Transfers from the parent company to the DTMC up to R3 billion a calendar year may be effected. Additional amounts may be considered, on application, to the Financial Surveillance Department and the PA.

South African companies investing in countries outside of the Common Monetary Area are required to obtain a minimum of 10% of equity and/or voting rights in a foreign target entity. South African companies wishing to make bona fide new outward foreign portfolio investments may acquire less than 10% of the equity and/or voting rights in a foreign target entity. Such companies may also acquire up to 40% equity and/or voting rights in a foreign target entity, which may hold investments and/or make loans into the loop structure.

Institutional investors are all retirement funds, long-term insurers and collective investment scheme management companies. Investment managers may elect to register with the Financial Surveillance Department as institutional investors. The limit on foreign portfolio investments by institutional investors is applied to an institutional investor's total retail assets under management. The foreign exposure of retail assets may not exceed 30% in the case of retirement funds and the underwritten (non-linked) policy business of long-term insurers. Investment managers registered as institutional investors, collective investment scheme management companies and the investment-linked business of long-term insurers are restricted to 40% of total retail assets. It should be noted that compliance with the foreign portfolio investment limit does not preclude an institutional investor from also having to comply with any relevant prudential regulations as administered by the Financial Sector Conduct Authority. In addition to the foreign portfolio investment allowance, institutional investors also qualify for an additional 10% African allowance.

Since 2014, South African listed companies have been permitted to secondary list on foreign exchanges and/or list depository receipt programmes in the offshore market to facilitate local and offshore FDI expansions, subject to certain administrative requirements.

Non-resident entities, local authorised dealers and the JSE Limited (Ltd) are allowed to issue inward listed instruments referencing foreign assets on the JSE Ltd. Local collective investment scheme management companies registered with the Financial Sector Conduct Authority and regulated under the Collective Investment Scheme Control Act, 2002 (Act 45 of 2002) are allowed, with the prior approval of the Financial Surveillance Department, to inward list exchange traded funds referencing foreign assets on the JSE Ltd.

In 2017, the Minister of Finance announced South Africa's undertaking to review and benchmark its capital flows management framework against best practices in other developing economies and other fast-growing markets.

Following the outcome of the review and benchmarking exercise, the Minister announced in the 2019 MTBPS that, in order to promote investment and reduce unnecessary burdensome approvals, the SARB would propose a more modern, transparent and risk-based approvals framework for cross-border flows.

As stated in the Budget Review 2020, over the next 12 months, a new capital flow management system will be put in place. All foreign-currency transactions will be allowed, except for a risk-based list of capital flow measures and/or transactions that pose a high risk in respect of illegitimate cross border financial flows. This change will increase transparency, reduce burdensome and unnecessary administrative approvals, and promote certainty.

Some of the main features of the new capital flow management are:

- a shift from exchange controls to capital flow management measures to regulate cross-border capital flows;
- stronger measures to fight illegitimate financial cross-border flows and tax evasion;
- strengthening cooperation between the FIC, SARB, SARS and other law enforcement agencies; and
- enhanced cross-border reporting requirements.

Foreign exchange

The Foreign Exchange Operations section within the Financial Markets Department is entrusted with the responsibility of conducting foreign exchange operations of the SARB and monitoring foreign exchange activities of authorised dealers and the broader market participants. This function also involves engaging with various market participants locally and offshore, including official institutions to gather market information and intelligence to support internal decision-making in the implementation of monetary policy, exchange rate policy and management of the SARB's foreign exchange reserves. To this end, the Foreign Exchange Section performs the following functions:

- conducting spot and forward foreign exchange transactions for the purpose of accumulating foreign exchange reserves;
- conducting foreign exchange swap transactions in the domestic forward market for domestic liquidity management;
- management of the foreign exchange reserves working capital portfolio by investing funds in term deposit accounts with foreign banks and official institutions;
- servicing the foreign exchange needs of the SARB and its clients, including the government;
- conducting research and analysis into movements and trends across financial markets;
- analysing the impact of the SARB's foreign exchange operations;
- promoting the effective function of the domestic financial markets by monitoring and gathering of market information and market intelligence in developments in the local and international markets;
- providing management information on the foreign exchange markets to the Senior Management of the department as well as the Executive Management of the SARB; and
- performing administrative function of the South African Foreign Exchange Committee, which has been established under the sponsorship and leadership of the SARB.

The microlending industry

The then dti introduced the NCA of 2005 to allow the credit market to function in a robust and effective manner.

The NCA of 2005 replaced the Usury Act, 1968 (Act 73 of 1968), and the Credit Agreements Act, 1980 (Act 75 of 1980).

The Act regulates the granting of consumer credit by all credit providers, including micro-lenders, banks and retailers.

The NCR and the NCT play a vital role in ensuring enforcement, promoting access to redress and adjudicating contraventions of the Act. Out of a population of over 54 million, South Africa has over 18 million credit-active consumers.

The NCR is responsible for regulating the South African credit industry. Its mandate includes:

- carrying out education, research and policy development;
- registering industry participants;
- investigating complaints; and
- ensuring that the Act is enforced.

In terms of the Act, the NCR has to promote the development of an accessible credit market to meet the needs of people who were previously disadvantaged, earn a low income or live in remote, isolated or low-density communities.

The National Consumer Tribunal adjudicates various applications and hears cases against those who contravene the Act. The Act provides for the registration of debt counsellors to assist over-indebted consumers. Debt counsellors are required to undergo training approved by the NCR through approved training service providers appointed by the regulator.

Other financial institutions

Collective investment schemes

These are investment structures where individual investor funds are pooled with those of other investors. Qualified asset managers regulated by the FAIS Act of 2002 invest these funds on behalf of the investor. Each investor owns units (participatory interest) in the total fund.

Recognised representative bodies

Section 6(3)(iii) of the FAIS Act of 2002 provides for the Registrar of FSPs to delegate any of its powers, in terms of the Act, to anybody recognised by the Act.

Two such functions, the consideration of applications for licences under Section 8 and the consideration of applications for approval of compliance officers under Section 17(2) of the Act, were delegated to two recognised representative bodies. As recognised examination bodies, another four bodies are responsible for developing and delivering the regulatory examination.

Advisory Committee on FSPs

The Minister of Finance appointed the Advisory Committee on FSPs, whose function is to investigate and report, or advise on any matter covered by the FAIS Act of 2002.

The advisory committee comprises a chairperson, a representative of the Council for Medical Schemes, established by Section 3 of the Medical Schemes Act, 1998 (Act 131 of 1998), persons representative of product suppliers, FSPs and

clients involved in the application of this Act. The members of the advisory committee, except for the Registrar and Deputy Registrar, who are *ex officio* members, hold office for a period determined by the Minister.

Licensing of FSPs

The Registrar of FSPs authorises and renders ongoing supervision of the following FSPs:

- financial advisers and intermediaries who provide financial services without discretion;
- those who offer discretionary intermediary services, in terms of financial product choice, but without implementing bulking;
- hedge-fund managers;
- investment administrators specialising mainly in the bulking of collective investments on behalf of clients (linked investment services providers); and
- those who represent assistance business administrators who render intermediary services, in terms of the administration of assistance business (funeral policies), on behalf of an insurer to the extent agreed to in a written mandate between the two parties.

Insurance companies

Insurance is an agreement between a policyholder and an insurance company. It is divided into long and short-term insurance.

In terms of the Long-Term Insurance Act, 1998 (Act 52 of 1998) and the Short-Term Insurance Act, 1998 (Act 53 of 1998), all insurance companies must be registered by the FSB and must comply with the provisions of these Acts.

The insurance industry has appointed a short-term and long-term insurance Ombudsman to mediate dispute resolution between insurers and policy holders.

Retirement funds

The purpose is to encourage South Africans to save more. Employer contributions to retirement funds have become an employee fringe benefit for tax purposes. Individuals will be able to receive a tax deduction on employer and employee contributions to a pension fund, provident fund or retirement annuity fund up to 27.5% of the greater of remuneration and taxable income. An annual cap on deductible contributions of R350 000 apply.

In addition, government is exploring ways to increase retirement fund coverage to all workers.

Government bonds

The National Treasury has been working with the JSE, the SARB, Share Transactions Totally Electronic (STRATE), primary dealer banks and the World Bank to develop an electronic trading platform for government bonds.

The rise in non-resident holdings is partly a result of extremely low interest rates in advanced economies, which has prompted global investors to look for higher yields in developing countries. South Africa's sophisticated capital markets and strong institutions also support continued investment flows.

As a category, international investors remain the largest holders of domestic government bonds, with 37.1% of the portfolio. Moreover, foreign holdings increased by R95 billion in 2019, relative to an increase of R8 billion in 2018, showing global investors remain positive about South African assets despite concern about sovereign credit risk.

Domestic long-term borrowing

Domestic long-term borrowing consists of fixed-rate, inflation-linked and retail savings bonds. Between April 2019 and January 2020, government raised R250.6 billion by issuing domestic long-term debt. Fixed-rate bonds accounted for 82.6% of bond issuances, with inflation-linked instruments making up the remainder. Fixed-rate bonds were issued across a range of maturities. About half were issued for between four and 15 years, as the bond exchange programme created space to issue more bonds in the short-to-medium term. In 2019/20, interest rates on long-term bonds increased compared with the previous year. Government was able to issue more bonds in the short to-medium term, lowering its average borrowing costs. For instance, in 2018/19, fixed-rate bonds were funded at an average interest rate of 9.3% while in 2019/20, they were funded at an average interest rate of 9.1%. Over the medium term, domestic long-term borrowing will increase from R298.9 billion in 2019/20 to R385.8 billion in 2022/23.

International borrowing

Government issues debt in global capital markets to meet part of its foreign-currency commitments, set benchmarks and diversify funding sources.

The rand equivalent of these loans and interest payments changes with the exchange rate. To manage this risk, portfolio benchmarks limit foreign-currency debt to 15% of the portfolio.

Over the medium term, borrowing in global markets will average US$2 billion per year.

The government started to fully finance its foreign currency commitments in 2017 – by borrowing in global capital markets. This marked a shift from previous practice. The rand value of this international debt fluctuates with exchange rates, which is why the strategic risk portfolio benchmark limits foreign currency debt to 15% of the total portfolio.

The government's foreign-currency bonds, mainly denominated in dollars and euros, are issued to meet foreign currency commitments. In 2019/20, favourable pricing and continued investor interest allowed the government to raise US$5 billion in 10-year and 30-year bonds, compared with the US$4 billion required for the year. Over the medium term, an additional US$8.5 billion will be raised in global capital markets.

Government debt

Over the past year, government's gross borrowing requirement, the budget balance plus maturing loans, increased by 21.4% to R407.3 billion. Borrowing is expected to reach R497.5 billion in 2022/23. The steep increase is the result of weak economic growth, the deteriorating fiscal position, an increase in domestic bond redemptions and large-scale support to distressed SOCs. About 90% of government debt is rand-denominated, shielding government from some volatility in debt costs due to fluctuations in the exchange rate. However, higher yields, especially on longer-dated domestic bonds, have increased borrowing costs. Debt and debt-service costs will continue to rise over the medium term. Gross loan debt is estimated to increase from R3.18 trillion (61.6%) in 2019/20 to R4.38 trillion (71.6%) in 2022/23. Net loan

debt is estimated to increase from R2.94 trillion (57% of GDP) in 2019/20 to R4.15 trillion (67.8% of GDP) in 2022/23. Contingent liabilities, mainly guarantees to SOCs, were projected to reach R979.9 billion on 31 March 2020. The government's long record of prudent debt management has enabled the National Treasury to consistently match higher borrowing requirements without dramatically increasing the cost of debt. Nonetheless, prudent debt management cannot substitute for sustainable public finances, or for a growing economy. Debt is not expected to stabilise over the medium term.

Johannesburg Stock Exchange

The JSE Ltd is privately owned, and funded and governed by a board of directors. Its activities are licensed and regulated by the Stock Exchanges Control Act, 1985 (Act 1 of 1985), which governs the equities markets, and the Financial Markets Control Act, 1989 (Act 55 of 1989), which governs the derivatives markets.

In keeping with international practice, the JSE Ltd regulates its members and ensures that markets operate in a transparent way, ensuring investor protection. Similarly, issuers of securities must comply with the JSE Ltd listings requirements, which ensure sufficient disclosure of all information relevant to investors.

The role of the JSE Ltd includes regulating applications for listing and ensuring that listed companies continue to meet their obligations. It monitors applications for alterations to existing listings, and scrutinises company disclosures to the public. It also provides the Stock Exchange News Service through which company news, including price-sensitive information, is distributed to the market.

The JSE Ltd has been bold in restructuring, in view of increasingly tough global competition, adopting new technologies and outsourcing aspects of its business.

The JSE Ltd opened to corporate membership, resulting in a stampede by foreign banks, which have bought out most of the major local broking firms, using these as platforms for other financial services, such as corporate and government advisory work.

The electronic settlement system, STRATE, has replaced the previous manual settlement method. STRATE is the licensed Central Securities Depository for the electronic settlement of financial instruments in South Africa.

The JSE Ltd's trading and information systems were replaced with the London Stock Exchange's (LSE) Sequence and the London Market Information Link systems, branded JSE SETS and InfoWiz, respectively.

The trading engine and information dissemination feed-handler is hosted in London and connected remotely to the JSE Ltd 9 000 km away, via a transcontinental undersea cable and an innovative, integrated solutions design. More than 1 500 traders and information users access the system, using a sophisticated application service provider with sub second response time.

The JSE Ltd has also aligned its equities trading model with that of Europe, and reclassified its instruments in line with the Financial Times of London Stock Exchange (FTSE) Global Classification System. This has led to the introduction of the FTSE/JSE Africa Index Series that makes the South African indices comparable to similar indices worldwide.

One of the most reliable trading platforms worldwide serves the investment community. The LSE can now disseminate trade information about instruments listed on the JSE Ltd to more than 104 000 trading terminals around the world, raising the profile of the JSE Ltd among the members of the international investor community.

2019/20 SOUTH AFRICA YEARBOOK

Government Systems

Government Systems

South Africa is a constitutional democracy with a three-tier system of government and an independent judiciary.

The national, provincial and local levels of government all have legislative and executive authority in their own spheres, and are defined in the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996 as distinctive, interdependent and interrelated.

Operating at both national and provincial levels are advisory bodies drawn from South Africa's traditional leaders.

It is a stated intention in the Constitution that the country be run on a system of cooperative governance.

Government is committed to building a free, non-racial, non-sexist, democratic, united and successful South Africa.

The Constitution

The Constitution was approved by the Constitutional Court on 4 December 1996 and took effect on 4 February 1997.

The Constitution is the supreme law of the land. No other law or government action can supersede the provisions of the Constitution.

The signing of the Constitution was a commemorative gesture in remembrance of the people who died during a peaceful demonstration against the pass laws on 21 March 1960.

South Africa's Constitution is one of the most progressive in the world and enjoys high acclaim internationally. Human rights are given clear prominence in the Constitution.

The Preamble

The Preamble states that the Constitution aims to:

- heal the divisions of the past and establish a society based on democratic values, social justice and fundamental human rights;
- improve the quality of life of all citizens and free the potential of each person;
- lay the foundations for a democratic and open society in which government is based on the will of the people, and in which every citizen is equally protected by law; and
- build a united and democratic South Africa that is able to take its rightful place as a sovereign State in the family of nations.

Founding provisions

South Africa is a sovereign and democratic State founded on the following values:

- human dignity, the achievement of equality and the advancement of human rights and freedom;
- non-racialism and non-sexism;
- supremacy of the Constitution and the rule of law; and
- universal adult suffrage, a national common voters' roll, regular elections and a multiparty system of democratic government to ensure accountability, responsiveness and openness.

Fundamental rights

The fundamental rights contained in the Constitution seek to protect the rights and freedom of individuals.

The Constitutional Court guards these rights and determines whether actions by the State are in accordance with constitutional provisions.

Government

The government consists of national, provincial and local spheres, which are distinctive, interdependent and interrelated. The powers of the law-makers (legislative authorities), government (executive authorities) and courts (judicial authorities) are separate from one another.

Parliament

Parliament is the legislative authority of South Africa and has the power to make laws for the country, in accordance with the Constitution.

It consists of the National Assembly (NA) and the National Council of Provinces (NCOP). Parliamentary sittings are open to the public.

The role of Parliament, as the representative of the people, is to promote and oversee adherence to the values of human dignity, equality, non-racialism, non sexism, and all other rights enshrined in the Bill of Rights, and to oversee the implementation of constitutional imperatives. Through legislative and other measures, Parliament also ensures that the independence, impartiality, accessibility and effectiveness of the Judiciary and other State institutions is upheld.

The Preamble

We, the people of South Africa,
Recognise the injustices of our past;
Honour those who suffered for justice and freedom in our land;
Respect those who have worked to build and develop our country; and
Believe that South Africa belongs to all who live in it, united in our diversity.
We therefore, through our freely elected representatives, adopt this Constitution as the supreme law of the Republic so as to:

- heal the divisions of the past and establish a society based on democratic values, social justice and fundamental human rights;
- lay the foundations for a democratic and open society in which government is based on the will of the people and every citizen is equally protected by law;
- improve the quality of life of all citizens and free the potential of each person; and
- build a united and democratic South Africa able to take its rightful place as a sovereign state in the family of nations.

May God protect our people. *Nkosi Sikelel' iAfrika. Morena boloka setjhaba sa heso.*
God seën Suid-Afrika. God bless South Africa. *Mudzimu fhatutshedza Afurika. Hosi katekisa Afrika.*

The mandate of Parliament is based on the provisions of Chapter 4 of the Constitution, which establishes Parliament and sets out the functions it performs. Parliament is elected to represent the people, ensure government by the people under the Constitution, and represent the interests of provinces in the national sphere of government. Members of Parliament (MPs) elect the President, provide a national forum for the public consideration of issues, pass legislation, and scrutinise and oversee executive action.

Parliament's policy priorities set out long-term policy and outcomes. These are aligned with the priorities and outcomes of the National Development Plan (NDP). To ensure that these outcomes and priorities are met over feasible timeframes, five-year, 10-year and 15-year milestones have been set.

Since 1994, a number of steps have been taken to make it more accessible and to motivate and facilitate public participation in the legislative process. The official governmental website, *www.parliament.gov.za*, encourages comment and feedback from the public.

Legislative and policy framework

The mandate and functions of Parliament are based on the following core pieces of legislation:

- The Constitution, which sets out the composition, powers and functions of Parliament;
- the Powers, Privileges and Immunities of Parliament and Provincial Legislatures Act, 2004 (Act 4 of 2004), which defines and declares certain powers, privileges and immunities of Parliament, provincial legislatures, members of the NA, delegates to the NCOP and members of provincial legislatures;
- the Money Bills Amendment Procedure and Related Matters Act, 2009 (Act 9 of 2009), which provides for a procedure to amend Money Bills before Parliament, and for norms and standards for amending Money Bills before Provincial Legislatures; and
- the Financial Management of Parliament and Provincial Legislatures Act, 2009 (Act 10 of 2009) as amended by Act 34 of 2014, which regulates the financial management of Parliament in a manner consistent with its status in terms of the Constitution. Its objective is to ensure that all revenue, expenditure, assets and liabilities of Parliament are managed efficiently.

Other legislation relevant to the work of Parliament are:

- the Permanent Delegates Vacancies Act, 1997 (Act 17 of 1997);
- the Determination of Delegates (NCOP) Act, 1998 (Act 69 of 1998);
- the Mandating Procedures of Provinces Act, 2008 (Act 52 of 2008); and
- the Remuneration of Public Office Bearers Act, 1998 (Act 20 of 1998).

The joint rules of parliament, rules of the NA and rules of the NCOP augment these Acts, as the Constitution empowers Parliament to make rules and orders concerning its business.

Additional frameworks of relevance to the work of Parliament include the United Nations (UN) Sustainable Development Goals, the African Union Agenda 2063, The Southern African Development Community (SADC) Regional Indicative Strategic Plan, the NDP 2030 and the Medium Term Strategic Framework (MTSF).

Cabinet

The Cabinet consists of the President, as head, the Deputy President and Ministers. The President appoints the Deputy President, Ministers and Deputy Ministers, assigns their powers and functions, and may dismiss them.

The President may select any number of Ministers from the members of the NA, and may select no more than two Ministers from outside the assembly.

The President appoints a member of the Cabinet to be the leader of government business in the NA.

National Assembly

The NA is elected to represent the people and to ensure democratic governance as required by the Constitution. It does this by electing the President, providing a national forum for public consideration of issues, passing legislation, and scrutinising and overseeing executive action.

The NA consists of no fewer than 350 and no more than 400 members elected through a system of proportional representation.

The NA, which is elected for a term of five years, is presided over by the Speaker, assisted by the Deputy Speaker.

Office Bearers of the NA

At its first sitting after a general election, the NA elects the Speaker, the principal office bearer of the NA. The Speaker has many responsibilities which include constitutional, statutory (in terms of the law), procedural and administrative powers and functions. The duties of the Speaker fall broadly into three categories:

- presiding over sittings of the House, maintaining order and applying its rules;
- acting as representative and spokesperson for the NA and (with the Chairperson of the Council) for Parliament; and
- acting as Chief Executive Officer for Parliament, in conjunction with the Chairperson of the Council.

Though the Speaker is a member of a political party, he or she is required to act impartially and protect the rights of all parties. The Speaker is assisted by the Deputy Speaker and three House Chairpersons, each with specific areas of responsibility determined by the Speaker.

The leader of the opposition – a leader of the largest minority party (or largest party that is not in government) – enjoys a special status in Parliament. The post is specified in the Constitution and is accorded a specific salary, though the holder has no specific duties in terms of the rules.

Committees

In accordance with the powers given to it by the Constitution, the NA establishes a range of committees with assigned powers and functions. The committees are required to report regularly on their activities and to make recommendations to the House for debate and decision.

There is a portfolio committee for each corresponding government department. The composition of the committees reflects, as far as is practicable, the numerical strengths of the parties represented in the NA. The committee deliberates on Bills that cover the respective department's area of jurisdiction and scrutinises and reports on its annual budget and strategic plan. Members of the committees determine whether government departments are delivering on what they promised and whether they are spending the public money they receive in a responsible manner. As part of their oversight work, committees may also do site visits where they find out directly from the people at ground level whether the government is delivering on its promises.

If a committee reports on a matter and makes certain recommendations, the report is debated in a full sitting or plenary to give other members of the House an opportunity to engage with the content. Once the report has been debated, the House decides whether to adopt the committee's recommendations. The House may also decide to only note the report or it may refer the report back to the committee with an instruction to do further work.

Portfolio	
President	Cyril Ramaphosa
Deputy President	David Mabuza

National Council of Provinces

The NCOP is mandated to represent the provinces to ensure that provincial interests are taken into account in the national sphere of government.

The NCOP consists of 90 provincial delegates (10 delegates for each of the nine provinces). A provincial delegation consists of six permanent delegates and four special delegates. The permanent delegates, who are appointed by the nine provincial legislatures, are based at Parliament in Cape Town.

The four special delegates consist of the Premier of the province and three special delegates, assigned by each province from Members of the Provincial Legislature and rotated depending on the subject matter being considered by the NCOP.

The Premier of a province is the head of the province's delegation but he or she can assign any other delegate to lead the delegation in his or her absence.

Organised local government is also represented in the NCOP through the South African Local Government Association (SALGA). The SALGA is entitled to 10 representatives who may participate in the debates and other activities of the NCOP but may not vote.

The NCOP must have a mandate from the provinces before it can make certain decisions.

Special calculations of the popular vote in elections make sure that minority interests are represented in each province's delegation to the NCOP.

The NCOP Online links Parliament to the provincial legislatures and local government associations. It also provides information on draft legislation and allows the public to make electronic submissions.

The NCOP came into existence in February 1997.

Function of Parliament

The core functions of Parliament include making laws, overseeing the work of the Executive and state institutions, facilitating public participation, international participation and cooperative governance.

Law-making

Section 43(a) of the Constitution vests the legislative authority of the national sphere of government in Parliament. This confers on the NA the power to consider, pass, amend or reject any legislation before the NA and to initiate or prepare legislation, except Money Bills. It also confers on the NCOP the power to consider, pass, amend, propose amendments or reject any legislation before the council and initiate or prepare legislation falling within a functional area listed in Schedule 4 of the Constitution or other legislation referred to in Section 76(3), except Money Bills.

The Constitution distinguishes between four categories of Bills:

- Bills amending the Constitution (Section 74);
- Ordinary Bills not affecting provinces (Section 75);
- Ordinary Bills affecting provinces (Section 76); and
- Money Bills (Section 77).

Whilst any of these categories of Bills may be introduced in the NA, only Bills referred to in Section 76(3) of the Constitution may be introduced in the NCOP.

Money Bills, such as the Appropriation Bill and the Division of Revenue Bill, may only be introduced in the NA and not in the NCOP.

The Constitution and the Rules of the NA and NCOP outline the processes that Parliament must follow when passing each category of Bills. Furthermore, Section 18(1) of the Traditional Leadership and Governance Framework Amendment Act, 2003 (Act 41 of 2003), obliges the Secretary to Parliament to refer any Parliamentary Bill relating to customary law or customs of traditional communities to the National House of Traditional Leaders (NHTL) for comment before it is passed by the House of Parliament in which it was introduced. The NHTL has 30 days to comment on a Bill so referred.

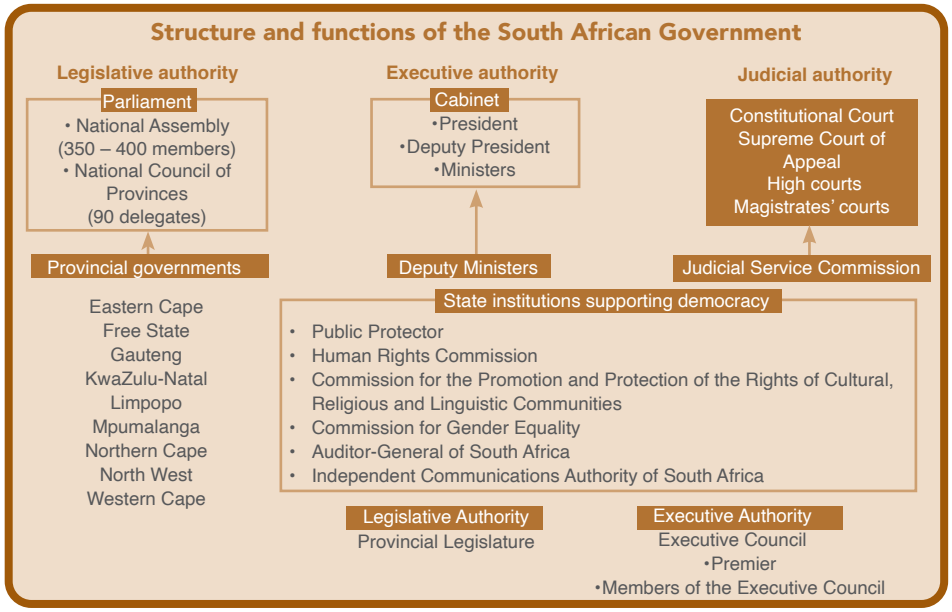
As the representative of the people of South Africa, Parliament realises the importance of processing and/or passing quality legislation aimed at improving the quality of life of the people and involving the public in the processing of legislation. To this end, it plans to develop a legislative model to guide MPs and staff in the processing of legislation.

The main aim of the model is to enhance the law-making processes and procedures of Parliament to enable the institution to pass quality laws that will improve the quality of life of all.

Oversight

The parliamentary oversight function is one of the cornerstones of democracy. It holds the Executive accountable for its actions and ensures that it implements policies in accordance with the laws and budget passed by Parliament.

The robust monitoring of the Executive by Parliament is an indicator of good governance, as it is through oversight that Parliament can ensure a balance of power and asserts its role as the defender and/or the legitimate custodian of the people's interests. The Constitution envisages a specific oversight role for the NA and the NCOP, respectively.



To this end, it places an obligation on the NA to provide for mechanisms to ensure that all Executive organs of state in the national sphere of government are accountable to it and to maintain oversight of the exercise of national executive authority, including the implementation of legislation.

The Constitution requires the NCOP to exercise oversight over national aspects of provincial and local government.

The Oversight and Accountability Model makes provision for various oversight mechanisms, including exercising oversight through committees, oversight visits, the passing of budget votes, questions for executive reply, members' statements, notices of motion, debates on matters of public importance and constituency work. One of the significant features provided for in the model is the establishment of a Joint Parliamentary Oversight and Governance Assurance Committee to pursue all assurances, undertakings and commitments given by Ministers on the floor of the Houses and the extent to which these assurances have been fulfilled.

Public participation

Participatory democracy is based on the premise that public participation processes strengthen institutions of representative democracy by actively involving the public in the decision-making processes of government. The Constitution requires the NA and the NCOP, respectively, to facilitate public involvement in the legislative and other processes of the houses and committees by conducting business in an open manner. Whilst Parliament may take reasonable measures to regulate access, it may only exclude the public from a sitting of a House or Committee if it is reasonable and justifiable to do so in an open and democratic society.

In an effort to streamline public participation processes and make it more effective, the legislative sector has developed a Public Participation Framework to guide the public participation activities of Parliament and Provincial Legislatures.

The framework provides certain minimum norms and standards to ensure alignment in public participation processes and activities. Based on this framework, Parliament has developed a Public Participation Model.

The model provides the institution with minimum requirements for public involvement and participation. Specific public participation mechanisms outlined in the model include the People's Assembly, the NCOP Taking Parliament to the People programme, oversight visits by parliamentary committees, sectoral engagements such as youth and women's parliaments, petitions and other forms of participation in law making and other processes.

International participation

Parliamentary international relations is the continuation of a political process and dialogue among legislatures of the world. At different international meetings, MPs and presiding officers have the opportunity to exchange views with their counterparts from other countries on a range of international challenges.

The Parliament of South Africa participates in several international forums and organisations, including the:

- Pan-African Parliament;
- SADC Parliamentary Forum;
- Commonwealth Parliamentary Association;
- Inter-Parliamentary Union; and
- African, Caribbean, Pacific-European Union Forum.

Parliament has identified four guidelines that inform its international relations programme of action:

- Developing and strengthening partnerships in Africa: Parliament, in line with the country's foreign policy, gives special attention to Africa in its overall international relations policy framework. This includes engaging proactively with some of the legislative

Cabinet Ministers and Deputy Ministers, as at May 2019

Portfolio	Minister	Deputy Minister
Agriculture, Land Reform and Rural Development	Thoko Didiza	Sidumo Dlamini Mcebisi Skwatsha
Basic Education	Angie Motshekga	Regina Mhaule
Communications and Digital Technologies	Stella Ndabeni-Abrahams	Pinky Kekana
Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs	Nkosazana Dlamini-Zuma	Obed Bapela Parks Tau
Defence and Military Veterans	Nosiviwe Mapisa-Nqakula	Thabang Makwetla
Employment and Labour	Thulas Nxesi	Boitumelo Moloi
Environment, Forestry and Fisheries	Barbara Creecy	Maggie Sotyu
Finance	Tito Mboweni	David Masondo
Health	Zweli Mkhize	Joe Phaahla
Higher Education, Science and Innovation	Blade Nzimande	Buti Manamela
Home Affairs	Aaron Motsoaledi	Njabulo Nzuza
Human Settlements, Water and Sanitation	Lindiwe Sisulu	Pam Tshwete David Mahlobo
International Relations and Cooperation	Naledi Pandor	Alvin Botes Candith Mashego-Dlamini
Justice and Correctional Services	Ronald Lamola.	John Jeffery Inkosi Phathekile Holomisa
Mineral Resources and Energy	Gwede Mantashe	-
Police	Bheki Cele	Cassel Mathale
The Presidency	Jackson Mthembu	Thembi Siweya
The Presidency for Women, Youth and Persons with Disabilities	Maite Nkoana-Mashabane	Hlengiwe Mkhize
Public Enterprises	Pravin Gordhan	Phumulo Masualle
Public Service and Administration	Senzo Mchunu	Sindy Chikunga
Public Works and Infrastructure	Patricia De Lille	Noxolo Kiviet
Small Business Development	Khumbudzo Ntshavheni	Rosemary Capa
Social Development	Lindiwe Zulu	Hendrietta Bogopane-Zulu
Sport, Arts and Culture	Nathi Mthethwa	Nocawe Mafu
State Security	Ayanda Dlodlo	Zizi Kodwa
Tourism	Nkhensani Kubayi-Ngubane	Fish Mahlalela
Trade and Industry	Ebrahim Patel	Fikile Majola Nomalungelo Gina
Transport	Fikile Mbalula	Dikeledi Magadzi

assemblies of countries where the South African government has been involved in peace building efforts.

- Advancing multilateralism: evolving international structures have placed a greater responsibility on parliamentarians, in view of their oversight role, to interact with one another on matters such as respect for the rule of law, human rights, and governments' transparency and accountability. Parliament's participation in international parliamentary bodies is also aimed at making significant progress towards achieving the Millennium Development Goals and getting support for Africa's development agenda.
- Bilateralism through friendship societies and strategic groups: at this stage, Parliament is focusing on building bilateral relations with other legislative bodies through proactively forming "friendship groups" with those bodies rather than establishing formal ties. However, the NA recently signed a Memorandum of Understanding with the People's Assembly of the People's Republic of China, the only formal bilateral agreement it has entered into to date.
- Providing for public input: Parliament makes provision, through the relevant offices, committees and other mechanisms, to ensure that there is ongoing engagement with the public on important international relations issues, in line with the vision and programmes of Parliament.

Cooperative governance

The Constitution creates three spheres of government at national, provincial and local level as distinctive, interdependent and interrelated. It enjoins all spheres of government to observe and adhere to the principles of cooperative governance.

Parliament plays a significant role in facilitating cooperative governance through its work with the other arms and spheres of government. This includes the appointment and dismissal of office bearers of the Institutions Supporting Democracy, various commissions, boards and councils. Parliament also ratifies international protocols and conventions, confirms the provisional suspension of magistrates, approves the salaries, allowances and benefits of magistrates and judges.

The NCOP provides a forum for the representation of local government at national level through the SALGA. Specific cooperative governance mechanisms spearheaded by the NCOP include the NCOP Oversight Week, Provincial Week and Local Government Week. The NCOP Oversight Week was established to enable members to follow up on matters arising from the Taking Parliament to the People programme to verify information received.

During the Provincial Week, permanent delegates return to the provinces to conduct joint oversight with the respective provincial legislatures on a theme decided upon in consultation with the relevant Provincial Legislature. Provincial Week is a vehicle through which the NCOP seeks to realise its mandate of conducting effective oversight on matters affecting provinces. During this week permanent delegates meet with provincial and local government leaders as well as community-based forums regarding service delivery in their areas.

The 2019 Provincial Week was held from 16 to 20 September 2019, under the theme, "Building Sustainable, Responsive and People Centred Municipalities".

The Provincial Week is one of the flagship oversight programmes of the NCOP for all spheres of the legislative sector, including Provincial Legislatures and Municipalities, to reconnect with the local communities to identify service delivery challenges, seek solutions, as well as innovative ways to drive effective development for all communities.

The Local Government Week aims to strengthen the relationship between the NCOP and the SALGA by, amongst others, debating matters relating to local government and seeking solutions to challenges facing the local sphere of government within the context of cooperative government and intergovernmental relations.

The 2020 annual Local Government Week was held virtually from 8 to 11 September under the theme, "Ensuring Capable and Financially Sound Municipalities".

The theme focused mainly on how the national and provincial spheres of government intend to assist the local sphere of government in improving service delivery, financial management, and governance.

Sessions included conversations on building a coherent oversight plan for capable and financially sound municipalities, the challenges and opportunities of local government in advancing the fundamental tenets of a developmental state, and the role of the NCOP in overseeing a district-wide framework to enhance the functioning and financial sustainability of municipalities.

Government clusters

Government clusters are groupings of government departments with cross-cutting programmes. They foster an integrated approach to governance that is aimed at improving government planning, decision-making and service delivery. The main objective is to ensure proper coordination of all government programmes at national and provincial levels.

The main functions of the clusters are to ensure the alignment of government-wide priorities, facilitate and monitor the implementation of priority programmes and to provide a consultative platform on cross-cutting priorities and matters being taken to Cabinet.

The clusters of the Forum of South African Directors-General (FOSAD) mirror the ministerial clusters. The FOSAD clusters provide technical support to the ministerial clusters.

The Director-General (DG) in The Presidency is the chairperson of FOSAD. Ministers enter into delivery agreements with the President, having to give progress reports on their departments' set targets.

Economic Sectors, Investment, Employment and Infrastructure Development Cluster

The departments in this cluster are:

- Mineral Resources and Energy (Chair)
- Tourism (Chair)
- Agriculture, Land Reform and Rural Development
- Communications and Digital Technologies
- Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs
- Environment, Forestry and Fisheries
- Employment and Labour
- Finance
- Higher Education, Science and Innovation
- Human Settlements, Water and Sanitation
- International Relations and Cooperation
- The Presidency

- The Presidency for Women, Youth and Persons with Disabilities
- Police
- Public Enterprises
- Public Works and Infrastructure
- Small Business Development
- State Security
- Trade, Industry and Competition
- Transport

Co-Chairpersons:
- Minister of Mineral Resources and Energy
- Minister of Tourism

Governance, State Capacity and Institutional Development Cluster

The departments in this cluster are:
- Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs (Chair)
- Public Service and Administration (Chair)
- Finance
- Home Affairs
- Justice and Correctional Services
- The Presidency
- The Presidency for Women, Youth and Persons with Disabilities
- Public Enterprise

Co-Chairpersons:
- Minister of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs
- Minister of Public Service and Administration

Social Protection, Community and Human Development Cluster

The departments in this cluster are:
- Health (Chair)
- Basic Education (Chair)
- Agriculture, Land Reform and Rural Development
- Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs
- Environment, Forestry and Fisheries
- Employment and Labour
- Higher Education, Science and Innovation
- Human Settlements, Water and Sanitation
- Justice and Correctional Services
- The Presidency
- The Presidency for Women, Youth and Persons with Disabilities
- Public Works and Infrastructure
- Small Business Development
- Social Development
- Sport, Arts and Culture
- Transport

Co-Chairpersons:
- Minister of Health
- Minister of Basic Education

International Cooperation, Trade and Security Cluster

The departments in this cluster are:
- Sports, Arts and Culture (Chair)
- Environment, Forestry and Fisheries (Chair)
- Communications and Digital Technologies
- Defence and Military Veterans
- Finance
- International Relations and Cooperation
- Justice and Correctional Services
- Mineral Resources and Energy
- The Presidency
- State Security
- Tourism
- Trade, Industry and Competition

Co-Chairpersons:
- Minister of Sport, Arts and Culture
- Minister of Environment, Forestry and Fisheries

Justice, Crime Prevention and Security Cluster

The departments in this cluster are:
- Defence and Military Veterans (Chair)
- Police (Chair)
- Finance
- Home Affairs
- International Relations and Cooperation
- Justice and Correctional Services
- The Presidency
- The Presidency for Women, Youth and Persons with Disabilities
- Social Development
- State Security
- Small Business Development

Co-Chairpersons:
- Minister of Defence and Military Veterans
- Minister of Police

The Presidency

As the executive manager of government, The Presidency is at the apex of South Africa's government system. It is situated in the Union Buildings in Pretoria, and has a subsidiary office in Tuynhuys, Cape Town.

The Presidency comprises six political principals:
- The President, who is the Head of State and Government;
- The Deputy President, who is the Leader of Government Business (in Parliament);
- The Minister in The Presidency;
- The Minister in The Presidency for Women, Youth and Persons with Disabilities;
- The Deputy Minister in The Presidency for Women, Youth and Persons with Disabilities; and
- The Deputy Minister in The Presidency.

The Presidency has three structures that support governance operations directly. They are:
- The Cabinet Office, which provides administrative support to Cabinet. It implements administrative systems and processes to ensure the overall optimal functioning of the Cabinet and its committees. It also facilitates the management of decision-making processes of the Cabinet and its committees.
- Policy Coordination Advisory Services comprises a Deputy DG and five chief directorates, which support policy processes developed by respective clusters of DGs.
- Legal and Executive Services provides legal advice to the President, Deputy President, the Minister, as well as The Presidency as a whole, and is responsible for all litigation involving the political principals.

The President, as the Head of State, leads the Cabinet. He or she is elected by the NA from among its members and leads the

country in the interest of national unity, in accordance with the Constitution and the law.

The President appoints the Deputy President from among the members of the NA.

The Deputy President assists the President in executing government functions.

National Development Plan 2030

The NDP is South Africa's socio-economic policy blueprint that focuses, among other things, on:

- eliminating poverty by reducing the proportion of households with a monthly income below R419 per person from 39% to zero, and the reduction of inequality;
- increasing employment from 13 million in 2010 to 24 million by 2030;
- broadening the country's ownership of assets by historically disadvantaged groups;
- ensuring that all children have at least two years of pre-school education and that all children can read and write by Grade 3;
- providing affordable access to healthcare; and
- ensuring effective public transport.

Monitoring and evaluation

Institutional Performance Monitoring and Evaluation (IPME)

IPME monitors the quality of management practices in government departments through the Management Performance Assessment Tool.

The Frontline Service Delivery Monitoring programme of IPME is responsible for designing and implementing hands-on service delivery monitoring activities with Offices of the Premier and for setting up and supporting the implementation of citizens-based monitoring systems. The programme has also been successful in elevating monitoring and evaluation to strategic levels in certain sector departments, several of which have developed their own iterations of the programme. One of the key focuses of the programme is on monitoring the implementation of the National Youth Policy. The Presidential Hotline is also located in this branch.

The programme assesses the following:

- Transport: driver's licence testing centres.
- Education: schools.
- Health: hospitals, clinics, community health centres.
- Home Affairs.
- Local Government: municipal customer care centres.
- National Youth Development Agency.
- South African Police Service: police stations.
- South African Social Security Agency: local offices.
- Justice: magistrates' courts.

Government priorities

The NDP sets out a long-term vision for the country and is the programme through which South Africa aims to advance radical economic transformation through development planning. The government's 2019 – 2024 MTSF outlines the priorities to be implemented in the Sixth Administration and the interventions required across South Africa's national development pillars. The seven priorities, introduced by the President in his State of the Nation Address in June 2019 constitute the roadmap for the administration.

The seven priorities are:

- Economic transformation and job creation;
- Education, skills and health;
- Consolidating the social wage through reliable and quality basic services;
- Spatial integration, human settlements and local government;
- Social cohesion and safe communities;
- A capable, ethical and developmental state; and
- A better Africa and World.

Transforming South Africa into a developmental state requires building critical and necessary capabilities to foster an environment, which mobilises government and non-government contributions to realise changes in the socioeconomic structure and the culture of society. In the next five years, government will prioritise engagement between the leadership of the executive, legislature and judiciary on strengthening governance and accountability. During this period, government further commits to manage the political administrative interface more effectively, reduce the levels of fraud and corruption in the private and public sectors, and rationalise the Public Service Governance System.

Elections

National and provincial elections are held once every five years. All South African citizens aged 18 and over are eligible to vote. The Constitution places all elections and referendums in the country in all three spheres of government under the control of the Electoral Commission of South Africa (IEC), established in terms of the IEC Act, 1996 (Act 51 of 1996).

The obligations of the IEC are to:

- manage elections of national, provincial and municipal legislative bodies;
- ensure that the elections are free and fair;
- declare the results of the elections; and
- compile and maintain a voters' roll.

The duties of the IEC are to:

- compile and maintain a register of parties;
- undertake and promote research into electoral matters;
- develop and promote the development of electoral expertise and technology in all spheres of government;
- continuously review electoral laws and proposed electoral laws, and make recommendations;
- promote voter education;
- declare the results of elections for national, provincial and municipal legislative bodies within seven days; and
- appoint appropriate public administrations in any sphere of government to conduct elections when necessary.

The IEC manages an average of approximately 130 by-elections a year. By-elections are held when ward councillors vacate their seats for a variety of reasons, including death, resignation or expulsion from the party or the council.

Election process

There are two kinds of electoral systems:

- Constituency-based elections – voters in each local area (constituency) elect an individual candidate to represent them in Parliament. The person who wins the majority of votes in each constituency becomes an MP. The party with the majority of MPs forms the government. In this kind of elections system, the individual MP holds the seat, not the political party he or she belongs to.

- Proportional representation elections – voters in a large area vote for political parties. The political party chooses the people who will become its MPs. Each party is allocated a number of seats proportional to how many votes it got in the election.

Before 1994, South Africa made use of constituency-based elections, but since then national and provincial elections have used proportional representation and party lists. Local government elections use a mixture of proportional representation and constituency-based elections.

In August 2020, Cabinet approved the Electoral Laws Amendment Bill of 2020, which amends the Electoral Commission Act, 1996 (Act 51 of 1996); the Electoral Act, 1998 (Act 73 of 1998) and the Local Government Municipal Electoral Act, 2000 (Act 27 of 2000).

Parliament elections

Parliament is elected using proportional representation and party lists. Before the election, each political party submits a list of candidates in a numbered order of preference. The seats of Parliament are allocated in proportion to the number of votes cast in the election. This means a party that won 10% of the votes gets 10% of the seats. If a party wins 20 seats, the first 20 people on its party list become MPs.

Department of Cooperative Governance

The Department of Cooperative Governance is mandated to develop and monitor the implementation of national policy and legislation aimed at transforming and strengthening key institutions and mechanisms of governance in national, provincial and local government to fulfil their developmental role; develop, promote and monitor mechanisms, systems and structures to enable integrated service delivery and implementation within government; and promote sustainable development by providing support to and exercising oversight of provincial and local government. Chapter 13 of the NDP outlines a vision for building a capable and developmental state through interdepartmental coordination and strengthening local government. This vision is expressed specifically through Priority 4 (spatial integration, human settlements and local government) of government's 2019 – 2024 MTSF, with which the work of the Department of Cooperative Governance is closely aligned. Over the medium term, the department plans to focus on: strengthening intergovernmental coordination and spatial development, delivering municipal infrastructure and sustainable basic services, alleviating poverty by creating employment opportunities, and providing disaster relief and enhancing proactive disaster planning.

Strengthening intergovernmental coordination and spatial development

A significant strategic undertaking, over the medium term, is to implement the District-Metro Development Model, which emphasises integration and intergovernmental coordination in the planning, funding and implementation of programmes in all spheres of government. The model is aimed at improving the responsiveness of all spheres of government to ensure that basic services are planned for and delivered jointly with communities and stakeholders. The model emanates from the Department of Cooperative Governance's overarching Back to Basics Strategy, which calls for putting people first, promoting good governance, ensuring sound financial management, building institutional capacity and delivering basic services.

Over the Medium Term Expenditure Framework (MTEF) period, the department expects to implement the model in 44 district municipalities and eight metropolitan municipalities. Related activities will be carried out in the Regional and Urban Development and Legislative Support programme, which has a total budget of R3.4 billion over the medium term, increasing at an average annual rate of 8%, from R970 million in 2019/20 to R1.2 billion in 2022/23. Of this amount, R3 billion is allocated to the Integrated Urban Development Grant to support 18 secondary cities in implementing the Integrated Urban Development Framework, which seeks to foster a shared understanding across government and society about how best to manage urbanisation and achieve the goals of economic development, job creation and improved living conditions.

In June 2020, the Constitutional Court declared parts of the Electoral Act of 1998 unconstitutional. The court ruled that the Act was unconstitutional in requiring that only candidates of political parties contest national and provincial elections.
The court gave Parliament 24 months to revise the legislation and the Electoral Commission stands ready to provide technical assistance into this process to help enhance the country's electoral system.

Delivering municipal infrastructure and sustainable basic services

The department administers and transfers the local government equitable share to all municipalities for the provision of water, sanitation, electricity, refuse removal and basic municipal administration. Over the medium term, transfers to the local government equitable share constitute 99.7% (R243 billion) of spending in the Institutional Development programme, increasing at an average annual rate of 8%, from R69.2 billion in 2019/20 to R87.5 billion in 2022/23.

The Municipal Infrastructure Grant, which is intended to expand basic social infrastructure in poor communities, is expected to receive R47.5 billion over the MTEF period. These transfers account for 97% of spending in the programme and are expected to increase at an average annual rate of 4.4%, from R14.8 billion in 2019/20 to R16.9 billion in 2022/23.

As part of the Department of Cooperative Governance's ongoing plan to support municipalities in addressing challenges related to infrastructure planning, project implementation, management and contracting, the department expects to transfer R1.1 billion over the medium term to the Municipal Infrastructure Support Agent.

Alleviating poverty by creating employment opportunities

In response to South Africa's high unemployment rate, the Community Work Programme (CWP) is implemented in 208 sites across 201 municipalities with the aim of providing work opportunities through community initiatives such as food gardens, home-based care, the agrarian revolution project and auxiliary care for vulnerable individuals. The department expects 247 466 work opportunities to be created through the programme per year over the MTEF period. As a result, spending in the CWP is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 7.5%, from R3.7 billion in 2019/20 to R4.6 billion in 2022/23.

Providing disaster relief and enhancing proactive disaster planning

As part of its strategies to mitigate the impact of climate change and reduce risks related to natural disasters, the Department of Cooperative Governance intends to implement early warning systems and rapid response interventions to proactively detect disasters and enable communities to become more resilient. Activities related to this are carried out in the National Disaster Management Centre programme, in which spending is expected to decrease at an average annual rate of 1.7%, from R696.3 million in 2019/20 to R661.9 million in 2022/23, due to a once-off allocation for drought relief to municipalities in 2018/19.

Legislation and policies

The department oversees the implementation of, among other things, the following legislation:

- the Intergovernmental Relations Framework Act, 2005 (Act 13 of 2005);
- the Municipal Property Rates Act, 2004 (Act 6 of 2004);
- the Municipal Property Rates Amendment Act, 2009 (Act 19 of 2009);
- the Municipal Finance Management Act, 2003 (Act 56 of 2003);
- the Disaster Management Act, 2002 (Act 57 of 2002);
- the Municipal Systems Act, 2000 (Act 32 of 2002);
- the Municipal Systems Amendment Act, 2011 (Act 7 of 2011);
- the Municipal Structures Act, 1998 (Act 117 of 1998);
- the Local Government: Municipal Structures Act, 1998 (Act 117 of 1998);
- the Local Government: Municipal Demarcation Act, 1998 (Act 27 of 1998);
- the NHTL Act, 2009 (Act 22 of 2009), and the Traditional Leadership and Governance Framework Act, 2003 (Act 41 of 2003), which were consolidated by the National Traditional Affairs Bill to simplify the process.
- the Local Government: Municipal Property Rates Amendment Act, 2014 (Act 29 of 2014); and
- the *White Paper on Local Government (1998).*

Budget

The Department of Cooperative Governance was allocated R90.7 billion for the 2019/20 financial year. The budget is expected to increase to R106 billion by the end of the MTEF. This translates to a total budget of R295.8 billion overall, of which, R274.1 billion (94%) is allocated to transfers and subsidies to provinces and municipalities, mainly for the local government equitable share and the Municipal Infrastructure Grant.

The department's total expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 7%, from R90.2 billion in 2019/20 to R111.7 billion in 2022/23. This is mainly driven by transfers to municipalities through the local government equitable share and the Municipal Infrastructure Grant, which support infrastructure delivery and the provision of basic municipal services. Transfers to provinces and municipalities constitute an estimated 95% (R295 billion) of the department's total budget over the medium term, increasing at an average annual rate of 7%, from R85.2 billion in 2019/20 to R105.7 billion in 2022/23.

Entities

Municipal Demarcation Board

The board is an independent authority responsible for determining municipal boundaries. It is also mandated to declare district management areas, delimit wards for elections, and assess the capacity of municipalities to perform their functions. The board's total budget for 2019/20 was R57.4 million.

.

Municipal Infrastructure Support Agent

The agent is mandated to provide immediate support to municipalities struggling with infrastructure delivery by facilitating the deployment of engineers, scientists and technicians to those municipalities, and providing oversight.

The agent's total budget for 2019/20 was R355.6 million.

South African Local Government Association

The SALGA is mandated to assist in the comprehensive transformation of local government. National Treasury and the Department of Cooperative Governance are discussing the delisting of the association from Schedule 3, Part A of the Public Finance Management Act, 1999 (Act 1 of 1999).

Provincial government

In accordance with the Constitution, each province has its own legislature, consisting of between 30 and 80 members.

The number of members is determined according to a formula set out in national legislation. The members are elected in terms of proportional representation.

The executive council of a province consists of a premier and a number of MECs. Premiers are appointed by the President. Decisions are taken by consensus, as is the case in the national Cabinet.

Besides being able to make provincial laws, a provincial legislature may adopt a constitution for its province if two thirds of its members agree.

A provincial constitution must correspond with the national Constitution.

According to the Constitution, provinces may have legislative and executive powers, concurrent with the national sphere, over:

- agriculture
- casinos, racing, gambling and wagering
- cultural affairs
- education at all levels, excluding university and university of technology education
- environment
- health services
- human settlements
- language policy
- nature conservation
- police services
- provincial public media
- public transport
- regional planning and development
- road traffic regulation
- tourism
- trade and industrial promotion
- traditional authorities
- urban and rural development
- vehicle licensing
- welfare services.

These powers can be exercised to the extent that provinces have the administrative capacity to assume effective responsibilities.

Provinces also have exclusive competency over a number of areas, including:

- abattoirs
- ambulance services
- liquor licences
- museums other than national museums
- provincial planning
- provincial cultural matters
- provincial recreational activities
- provincial roads and traffic.

The President's Coordinating Council is a statutory body established in terms of the Intergovernmental Relations Framework Act of 2005, which brings together the three spheres of government on matters of common interest and national importance, thereby strengthening cooperative governance.

Local government

In accordance with the Constitution and the Organised Local Government Act, 1997 (Act 52 of 1997), up to 10 part-time representatives may be designated to represent municipalities and participate in proceedings of the NCOP.

The Department of Cooperative Governance aims to build and strengthen the capability and accountability of provinces and municipalities.

This includes:

- continued hands-on support through the established system and capacity building programme, focusing on critical areas such as integrated development planning, local economic development (LED), financial management, service delivery and public participation;
- evaluating the impact of government programmes in municipal areas, enhancing performance and accountability by improving the quality of reporting on the Local Government Strategic Agenda and improving the monitoring, reporting and evaluation of capacity in local government; and
- coordinating and supporting policy development, implementing the Local Government Strategic Agenda, and monitoring and supporting service delivery.

Municipalities

There are 278 municipalities in South Africa, comprising eight metropolitan, 44 district and 226 local municipalities. They are focused on growing local economies and providing infrastructure and service.

As directed by the Constitution, the Local Government: Municipal Structures Act of 1998 contains criteria for determining when an area must have a category-A municipality (metropolitan municipalities) and when municipalities fall into categories B (local municipalities) or C (district municipalities).

The Act also determines that category-A municipalities can only be established in metropolitan areas.

Metropolitan councils have single metropolitan budgets, common property ratings and service-tariff systems, and single-employer bodies.

South Africa has eight metropolitan municipalities, namely:

- Buffalo City (East London)
- City of Cape Town
- Ekurhuleni Metropolitan Municipality (East Rand)
- City of eThekwini (Durban)
- City of Johannesburg
- Mangaung Municipality (Bloemfontein)
- Nelson Mandela Metropolitan Municipality (Port Elizabeth)
- City of Tshwane (Pretoria).

Metropolitan councils may decentralise powers and functions. However, all original municipal, legislative and executive powers are vested in the metropolitan council.

In metropolitan areas, there is a choice of types of executive system: the mayoral executive system where executive authority is vested in the mayor, or the collective executive committee system where these powers are vested in the executive committee.

Non-metropolitan areas consist of district councils and local councils. District councils are primarily responsible for capacity-building and district-wide planning. The Local Government: Municipal Structures Act of 1998 provides for ward committees whose tasks, among other things, are to:

- prepare, implement and review integrated development plans;
- establish, implement and review municipalities' performance management systems;
- monitor and review municipalities' performances;
- prepare municipalities' budgets;
- participate in decisions about the provision of municipal services; and
- communicate and disseminate information on governance matters.

Local Government Turnaround Strategy

The Local Government Turnaround Strategy was introduced as a government programme of action and a blueprint for better service delivery aimed at responsive, accountable, effective and efficient local government. Five focus areas aimed at fast-tracking implementation of the strategy have been identified. These are:

- service delivery
- governance
- financial management
- infrastructure development
- fighting corruption

Municipal Infrastructure Grant

The MIG aims to eradicate municipal infrastructure backlogs in poor communities to ensure the provision of basic services such as water, sanitation, roads and community lighting.

The Department of Cooperative Governance is responsible for managing and transferring the MIG and provides support to provinces and municipalities on implementing MIG projects.

Community Work Programme

The CWP is a key government initiative aimed at mobilising communities to provide regular and predictable work opportunities at the local government level.

The purpose of the programme is to provide an employment safety net for those without access to opportunities designed to lift them out of poverty.

The programme recognises that policies to address unemployment and create decent work will take time to reach people living in marginalised areas where few opportunities exist.

Local economic development

LED is an approach towards economic development that allows and encourages local people to work together to achieve sustainable economic growth and development, thereby bringing economic benefits and improved quality of life to all residents in a local municipal area.

LED is intended to maximise the economic potential of municipal localities and enhance the resilience of macro-economic growth through increased local economic growth, employment creation and development initiatives within the context of sustainable development. The "local" in economic development points to the fact that the political jurisdiction at local level is often the most appropriate place for economic intervention, as it carries alongside it the accountability and legitimacy of a democratically elected body.

LED programmes provide support in the following areas:

- developing and reviewing national policy, strategy and guidelines on LED;
- providing direct and hands-on support to provincial and local government;
- managing the LED Fund;
- managing and providing technical support to nodal economic development planning;
- facilitating, coordinating and monitoring donor programmes; and
- assisting LED capacity-building processes.

Through these interventions and resources, local role players and interest groups are mobilised to achieve economic growth and creating jobs to reduce poverty.

Department of Traditional Affairs

The department is mandated to oversee issues related to traditional affairs and support the development of stable and cohesive interfaith communities. The *2003 White Paper on Traditional Leadership and Governance* sets out a national framework, and the norms and standards that define the role of the institutions of traditional leadership in South Africa. It seeks to support and transform the institutions in accordance with constitutional imperatives and restore the integrity and legitimacy of traditional leadership in line with the African indigenous law and customs subject to the Constitution.

South Africa also has provincial houses of traditional leaders in the following provinces: Eastern Cape, Free State, KwaZulu-Natal, Limpopo, Mpumalanga and North West.

National and provincial houses of traditional leaders enhance the cooperative relationships within national and provincial government.

Local houses of traditional leaders deepen and cement the relationship between municipalities and traditional leaders on customary law and development initiatives.

In supporting the NDP's vision to create an inclusive rural economy and transform traditional communities, over the medium term, the department intends to support and strengthen institutions of traditional leadership by focusing on ensuring legislative compliance and exercising oversight.

The department's mandate is informed by the following legislation:

- the Traditional and Khoi-San Leadership Act, 2019 (Act 3 of 2019); and
- the Commission for the Protection and Promotion of the Rights of Cultural, Religious and Linguistic Communities Act, 2002 (Act 19 of 2002).

Legislative compliance and oversight

Over the medium term, the Department of Traditional Affairs plans to ensure legislative compliance and exercise oversight specifically in terms of monitoring the implementation of the Traditional and Khoi-San Leadership Act of 2019, conducting research to strengthen capacity for the successful implementation of the Act; and creating capacity for queenships, kingships and principal traditional leaders.

The Traditional and Khoi-San Leadership Act of 2019 was enacted to improve the administration of the broader system of traditional leadership. The Act provides a standard legal mechanism for the recognition of traditional leaders. Over the medium term, the department will monitor the implementation of the Act and conduct a targeted seven research studies on matters of traditional leadership. These activities will be carried out in the Research, Policy and Legislation programme, in which expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 3%, from R19.4 million in 2019/20 to R21 million in 2022/23.

As part of its oversight function, in each year over the MTEF period, the department plans to facilitate compliance with the Traditional and Khoi-San Leadership Act of 2019 for one queenship, one kingship and one principal traditional leader and their constituencies; and capacitate a targeted eight kingships to fulfil their roles and responsibilities as traditional leaders more effectively. Spending on these activities is in the Institutional Support and Coordination programme which is increasing at an average annual rate of 4%, from R98.6 million in 2019/20 to R111.3 million in 2022/23.

Budget

For the 2019/20 financial year, the Department of Traditonal Affairs was allocated of R168.4 million. The department's expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 5%, from R168.4 million in 2019/20 to R192.3 million in 2022/23. Compensation of employees is the department's largest spending item and is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 6%, from R79.5 million in 2019/20 to R94.4 million in 2022/23.

Entity

Commission for the Promotion and Protection of the Rights of Cultural, Religious and Linguistic Communities

The commission promotes and protects cultural, religious and linguistic rights. The commission focuses on conflict resolution, research, advocacy and community engagement. The commission's total budget for 2020/21 is R47.9 million.

Traditional leadership

The Constitution states that the institution, status and roles of traditional leadership, according to customary law, are recognised.

The government acknowledges the critical role of traditional leadership institutions in South Africa's constitutional democracy and in communities, particularly in relation to the Rural Development Strategy. It therefore remains committed to strengthening the institution of traditional leadership.

To this end, numerous pieces of legislation have been passed and various programmes implemented to ensure that traditional leadership makes an important contribution to the development of society.

The department is also working on a range of issues, which include policies on unity and diversity, initiation, traditional healing, traditional leaders' protocol, family trees, the remuneration and benefits of traditional leaders based on uniform norms and standards and involving the Khoisan people in the system of governance in South Africa.

Parliament extended the term of the Commission of Traditional Leadership Disputes and Claims from 2016 to 2020 – to allow the commission time to finalise outstanding disputes and claims, and deal with the 320 traditional leadership disputes and claims per year that were envisaged.

Traditional councils

Legislation has transformed the composition of traditional councils to provide for elements of democracy. It states that 40% of members must be elected and that one third of members must be women.

Legislation has also opened up an opportunity for municipalities and traditional councils to achieve cooperative governance.

Traditional councils have been given a strong voice in development matters and may now enter into partnerships and service-delivery agreements with government in all spheres.

The National Khoisan Council aims to unite the Khoisan communities and create a platform through which they can raise issues affecting them as a group of communities. The most important issue is the statutory recognition and inclusion of the Khoisan people in formal government structures.

National House of Traditional Leaders

The Constitution mandates the establishment of houses of traditional leaders by means of either provincial or national legislation.

The NHTL was established in terms of the then NHTL Act, 1997 (Act 10 of 1997).

Its objectives and functions are to promote the role of traditional leadership within a democratic constitutional dispensation, enhance unity and understanding among traditional communities and advise national government.

Provincial houses of traditional leaders were established in all six provinces that have traditional leaders. The national and provincial houses of traditional leaders enhance the cooperative relationships within national and provincial government, while the establishment of local houses of traditional leaders deepens and cements the relationship between municipalities and traditional leaders on customary law and development initiatives.

It was established to:

- represent traditional leadership and their communities;
- advance the aspirations of the traditional leadership and their communities at national level;
- advance the plight of provincial houses of traditional leaders, traditional leadership and their communities at national government level;
- participate in international matters that have to do with custom, traditions and matters of common interest; and
- influence government legislative processes at national level.

Commission on Traditional Leadership Disputes and Claims

The commission was established in terms of the Traditional Leadership and Governance Framework Act of 2003.

It is tasked with restoring the dignity of traditional leaders and their communities by investigating and ensuring that the institution of traditional leadership is restored to where it belongs. It also investigates all claims to any position of traditional leadership (king/queen/principal/senior traditional leader, as well as headmen and headwomen), including disputes over the boundaries of traditional councils.

Section 25 of the Traditional Leadership and Governance Framework Act of 2003 requires that the commission investigate and make recommendations on cases where there is doubt as to whether a kingship, principal traditional leadership or senior traditional leadership and headmanship was established in accordance with customary law and customs.

Public Service and Administration

The Department of Public Service and Administration (DPSA) draws its mandate from Section 195(1) of the Constitution, which sets out basic values and principles to which the Public Service should adhere to; and the Public Service Act, 1994 (Act 103 of 1994) which gives the Minister of Public Service and Administration the responsibility for establishing norms and standards relating to:

- the functions of the Public Service;
- organisational structures and the establishment of departments, and other organisational and governance arrangements in the Public Service;
- the conditions of service and other employment practices for employees;
- labour relations in the Public Service;
- the health and wellness of employees;
- information management in the Public Service;
- electronic government;
- integrity, ethics, conduct and anti-corruption in the Public Service; and
- transformation, reform, innovation and any other matter to improve the effectiveness and efficiency of the Public Service and its delivery of services to the public.

The DPSA is at the centre of government. It plays a major policy role in establishing norms and standards for Public Service, which ensure that service-delivery mechanisms, integrated systems and access, human resources, institutional development and governance initiatives are responsive to the needs of citizens.

The NDP articulates a vision of a capable and developmental state built through strengthening delegation, accountability and oversight in the Public Service. This vision is supported by Priority 6 (a capable, ethical and developmental state) of government's 2019 – 2024 MTSF, with which the work of the DPSA is closely aligned. Accordingly, over the medium term, the department intends to address governance and operational challenges in the Public Service sector, which, among others, include a lack of integration and coordination in services provided by departments; dissimilar experiences of the quality and quantity of government services by the public; departments'

non-compliance with the Public Service Act of 1994 and regulations; and different conditions of service for employees in the local, provincial and national spheres of government, including public entities. Responding to these and other challenges in the Public Service, over the medium term, will entail improving the implementation of Batho Pele Principles; ensuring efficiency and effectiveness, and the implementation of policies in the Public Service; stabilising the Public Service; and intensifying the fight against corruption.

Union leaders launched the Public Service Charter in August 2013. It is a commitment between the State as the employer and labour, which seeks to professionalise and encourage excellence in the Public Service and improve service delivery. It also introduces service standards in the Public Service, with a call to public servants to meet and exceed them.

Improving the implementation of Batho Pele

Adherence to Batho Pele Principles entails putting people first in the delivery of public services. As such, over the medium term, the DPSA will focus on restructuring the service delivery model to best serve the public. Emphasis will also be placed on improving the monitoring of and reporting on the quality of public services, and increasing responsiveness to concerns and views raised by citizens. To ensure stringent compliance with the principles across government, the department plans to consult and work with the Auditor-General of South Africa. These activities will be carried out in the Service Delivery Improvement Initiatives subprogramme in the Service Delivery Support programme at a projected cost of R8.7 million over the medium term. Expenditure in this programme is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 3.7%, from R99.2 million in 2019/20 to R110.6 million in 2022/23.

Ensuring efficiency and effectiveness, and the implementation of policies in the Public Service

In its pursuit of a unified, fully functioning Public Service, the DPSA will ensure that the Public Administration Management Act, 2014 (Act 11 of 2014) is fully implemented and monitored on an ongoing basis. This will include operationalising the office of standards and compliance within the department in 2020/21. The office will promote greater compliance with public administration norms and standards towards improved efficiency and effectiveness in the public administration system. Over the period ahead, activities carried out by the office will include institutionalising tools to measure efficiency and effectiveness, and capacity and capability; evaluating the appropriateness of norms and standards; monitoring adherence to norms and standards; and enforcing compliance with norms and standards. To operationalise the office, an estimated R5.7 million over the medium term is allocated in the Public Service Performance, Monitoring and Evaluation subprogramme in the Policy Development, Research and Analysis programme.

The department recognises that implementing all relevant policies across the Public Service is integral to an efficient and effective government. Accordingly, by March 2021, the department plans to conduct a system-wide analysis, which is expected to inform the development of a coordinated strategy to tackle critical challenges in policy implementation. Over the period ahead, the department will be proactive and systematic in supporting and assisting other departments in correctly interpreting and implementing its directives, policies, and norms and standards. These activities will also be carried out in the Policy Development, Research and Analysis programme, which has a total allocation of R123.9 million over the medium term.

Stabilising the Public Service

Cooperation between government and organised labour is necessary to address challenges while upholding all existing laws and collective agreements, which have thus far yielded significant achievements. In recognition of this, the DPSA has identified the management of the Public Service Wage Bill as a key challenge in maintaining labour peace. Accordingly, over the period ahead, the department plans to determine a wage bill strategy for updating the remuneration policy for public servants. Part of this process entails reviewing spending on compensation of employees and developing a job-grading system by 2021/22. Related activities are expected to be carried out at a cost of R6 million in the Remuneration and Job Grading subprogramme in the Public Service Employment and Conditions of Services programme. Spending in the programme is expected to increase at an annual average rate of 3.6%, from R75.6 million in 2019/20 to R84.1 million in 2022/23.

Intensifying the fight against corruption

Corruption impedes service delivery, compromises development and undermines the public's confidence in the State. In responding to the need within government to root out and fight corruption, the DPSA plans to inculcate a culture of accountability in the Public Service and limit the scope for conflicts of interest. This will be achieved through the introduction or enforcement of measures such as the prohibition of Public Service employees from conducting business with the State, conducting lifestyle audits on selected categories of employees, and monitoring the implementation of the Financial Disclosure Framework. The DPSA plans to develop a framework for conducting lifestyle audits, which is expected to be piloted in five national departments in 2021/22.

The department has established a Public Administration Ethics, Integrity and Disciplinary Technical Assistance Unit, which provides technical assistance and support to institutions in all spheres of government on matters relating to misconduct in the Public Service. Over the medium term, the unit plans to develop norms and standards on ethics, integrity, conduct and discipline management. For this purpose, R82.3 million has been allocated in the Ethics and Integrity Management subprogramme in the Governance of Public Administration programme, which has a total budget of R201.5 million over the medium term. Expenditure in the programme is expected to decrease to R72.1 million in 2022/23, as a result of the creation of a separate vote for the Public Service Commission (PSC).

Budget

For the 2019/20 financial year, the DPSA was allocated R993.3 million. The department's total allocation over the MTEF period is R1.8 billion. This reflects a decrease by R1.4 billion from the 2019 budget as a result of the reorganisation of vote structures, through which the PSC and the National School of Government (NSG) became standalone votes instead of departments within the DPSA. Accordingly, transfers to departmental agencies and accounts decrease to R129.7 million (7.2% of the department's

total budget) over the medium term. As the department's work is labour intensive, spending on compensation of employees accounts for an estimated 59.1% (R1.1 billion) of its total expenditure over the period.

Role players

Anti-Corruption Bureau

The Minister of Public Service and Administration launched the Anti-Corruption Bureau to fast-track disciplinary cases in the public sector. The bureau forms part of amendments to the Public Service Act of 1994.

The amendments also include banning all public servants from doing business with the government. Cabinet and provinces have adopted a manual on procedures for recruiting, and/or retaining officials that resign. Uniform standards will be applied to all public servants across government.

The bureau will conduct investigations, institute disciplinary proceedings and work with existing law enforcement agencies, such as the Special Investigating Unit and National Prosecuting Authority, and the other related agencies such as the Financial Intelligence Centre and the South African Revenue Service.Criminal cases will be referred to law enforcement agencies.

The bureau also has to provide technical assistance and advisory support to deal with disciplinary matters in the public administration, while ensuring that the public sector applies uniform disciplinary standards.

A case management system allows officials to monitor the progress of cases to ensure that they are finalised speedily.

By prohibiting officials from conducting business with the State, the government is eliminating incentives and opportunities for corruption and unethical conduct.

Centre for Public Sector Innovation (CPSI)

The CPSI is tasked to contribute to the improvement, effectiveness and efficiency of the Public Service and its delivery of services to the public. This is in line with the NDP's vision of a capable and developmental state, and contributes to Priority 6 (a capable, ethical and developmental state) of government's 2019 – 2024 MTSF.

The centre aims to encourage innovation in government through initiatives such as the Annual Public Sector Innovation Awards, and selects some of the innovative solutions submitted to the awards for replication in targeted government sectors, particularly for identified service delivery challenges. It also collaborates with other government departments, non-governmental organisations, the private sector, tertiary institutions, academics and international entities to find innovative solutions. Where existing solutions cannot be found, new solutions are developed through targeted innovation partnerships. These initiatives are allocated R1.3 million over the MTEF period in the Solution Support and Incubation subprogramme in the Public Sector Innovation programme. Spending on the compensation of an average of 32 employees per year over the medium term accounts for an estimated 54.8% (R70.9 million) of the centre's total budget, which is set to increase at an average annual rate of 5.9%, from R20.9 million in 2019/20 to R24.8 million in 2022/23.

National School of Government

The NSG offers training and development opportunities to public servants at national, provincial and local level of government.

This includes training of new Public Service employees as part of their probation, re-orientation of senior managers and orientation of unemployed youth graduates, preparing them for Public Service employment opportunities.

The school is intended to educate, train, professionalise and develop a highly capable, skilled and committed Public Service cadre, with a sense of national duty and a common culture and ethos.

It will nurture a culture of professionalism and innovative thinking and serve as a catalyst for reform and modernisation, in pursuit of a performance-oriented Public Service. Core training is not outsourced, but is performed internally.

The school provides everything from adult basic education and training to higher education courses, and is registered to carry out the necessary accreditation.

The school runs like a customer-focused business, with participants having to pay tuition fees. It is funded by the Public Service Sector Education and Training Authority and skills development levies are drawn from departments' payrolls.

All new public servants are required to undergo induction training.

Public Service Commission

The PSC is an independent institution established in terms of Chapter 10 of the Constitution. The commission derives its mandate from Sections 195 and 196 of the Constitution, which set out the values and principles that govern public administration. The commission is vested with custodial oversight responsibilities for the Public Service; and monitors, evaluates and investigates public administration practices. It has the power to issue directives on compliance with personnel procedures relating to recruitment, transfers, promotions and dismissals.

The NDP set out a vision for building a capable and developmental state and, in doing so, rooting out corruption by building a resilient anti-corruption system. Priority 6 (a capable, ethical and developmental state) of government's 2019 – 2024 MTSF gives expression to this vision. As the work of the PSC is directly aligned with this priority, over the medium term it intends to focus on promoting the implementation of constitutional values and principles and promoting professional ethics and sound human resource management practices in the Public Service.

Promoting the implementation of constitutional values and principles

To ensure the continuity of ongoing projects over the MTEF period, the commission plans to conduct 50 quantitative evaluation reports in 2020/21 and 12 qualitative evaluations in each of the remaining years of the MTEF period. The purpose of these reports and evaluations is to assess departments' compliance with constitutional values and principles with a view to promote a culture of excellence in the Public Service. Quantitative indicators are used to establish whether systems are in place, while qualitative indicators aim to establish whether those systems assist in effecting change. Related activities will be carried out in the Governance Monitoring subprogramme, which accounts for 22.4% (R32.5 million) of expenditure in the Monitoring and Evaluation programme over the medium term.

Based on these evaluation reports, the commission plans to schedule 30 workshops over the medium term in the national and provincial spheres of government that target participants at various levels, including senior management, to increase their awareness of constitutional values and principles. The commission will also continue to monitor that payments to suppliers are made within 30 days of receiving their invoices. This is to ensure that the Public Service is responsive to government's call for enterprise development and providing support to small, medium and micro enterprises.

Promoting professional ethics and sound human resource management practices in the Public Service

Professional ethics in the Public Service and the sound management of its human resources are crucial to building a capable developmental state that is aware of and responsive to the needs of all citizens. To promote professional ethics and quality leadership among national and provincial heads of departments, in 2020/21 the commission plans to conduct a capacity-building workshop focused on leadership and ethics, including principles of effective financial management. Workshops targeted at heads of department that are specifically focused on promoting awareness of financial misconduct and ethical behaviour in the Public Service will also be held over the medium term. Related activities will be carried out in the Leadership and Management Practices programme, spending in which increases at an annual average rate of 3.6%, from 46 million in 2019/20 to R51.2 million in 2022/23.

Over the period ahead, the commission plans to ensure that 80% of cases reported on the National Anti-Corruption Hotline are referred to the relevant departments within seven days of receipt. Related activities will be carried out in the Professional Ethics subprogramme, which accounts for 37.6% (R72.4 million) of expenditure in the Integrity and Anti-Corruption programme over the medium term.

Following the national macro organisation of government in 2019/20, over the MTEF period the commission plans to address grievances and complaints arising from the reorganisation process, and induct new heads of departments and executive authorities with the aim of strengthening compliance with the principles of reorganisation and effective public administration. Related activities will be carried out in the Governance Monitoring subprogramme in the Monitoring and Evaluation programme, which has a total budget of R145.0 million over the medium term. Expenditure increases at an average annual rate of 5.7%, from R278.2 million in 2019/20 to R328.2 million in 2022/23. Compensation of employees accounts for approximately 76.9% (R725.5 million) of the department's total expenditure over the medium term.

Public Service Month (PSM)

South Africa commeorates PSM in September each year.

It is a regular national event that requires all the national and provincial departments to participate by putting in place activities and campaigns to improve service delivery. PSM is a follow-up to and mirrors the UN and Africa Public Service Day, which takes place on 23 June every year.

The 2020 PSM celebrations took place when the country and the world was battling the COVID-19 pandemic.

The celebrations took an integrated government-wide programme of PSM from 1 September – 4 October 2020 across all three spheres of the government.

The 2020 PSM was commemorated under the theme: "Growing South Africa Together for an Ethical Public Service." The theme reinforced government's commitment to instil a sense of pride of being a public servant and called on government employees to abide by the Batho Pele Principles.

The overall goals of the PSM programme were to:

- instil and rebuild good ethics and professionalism in how public servants do their work;
- recommit and rededicate public servants to the Batho Pele Principles;
- improve the morale and inculcate a sense of pride of being a public servant;
- improve service delivery by exposing senior and middle managers to the coalface service delivery to identify challenges and develop plans for corrective action and interfacing with the citizens; and
- focus to the national government activities taking place in the month of September.

The Constitution demands that the Public Service, amongst others, maintains and promotes a high standard of professional ethics; promotes efficient, economic and effective use of resources; and is accountable for its actions.

Batho Pele

The Batho Pele Campaign is, aimed at improving service delivery to the public.

Batho Pele is a Sesotho phrase meaning "People First".

From this concept, eight principles for transforming Public Service delivery were derived. These are:

- regular consultation with customers;
- set service standards;
- increased access to services;
- higher levels of courtesy;
- more and better information about services;
- increased openness and transparency about services;
- remedying failures and mistakes; and
- giving the best possible value for money.

Batho Pele Awards

The annual National Batho Pele Excellence Awards serve to recognise public servants who are selfless, dedicated, committed and who go the extra mile in servicing the citizens. Eligible to public servants across the three spheres of government, the awards seek to entrench the transformation and professionalisation of the Public Service.

Public Works and Infrastructure

As set out in the Government Immovable Asset Management Act, 2007 (Act 19 of 2007), the Department of Public Works and Infrastructure (DPWI) is mandated to be the custodian and portfolio manager of government's immovable assets. Since the creation of the Property Management Trading Entity, the department's role consists of policy formulation, coordination, regulation and oversight relating to the provision of accommodation and expert built environment services to client departments at the national level; and, through the entity, the planning, acquisition, management and disposal of immovable assets in the department's custody. The department is further

mandated to coordinate and provide strategic leadership in initiatives for the creation of jobs through the implementation of the Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP).

The department is further mandated to coordinate and provide strategic leadership in job creation initiatives through the implementation of the EPWP. Public Works is constitutionally designated as a concurrent function exercised by both the national and provincial spheres of government.

Over the medium term, the DPWI will continue to focus on creating work opportunities; providing better oversight, cooperation and service delivery; facilitating skills development in the construction and property sectors; reviewing and developing policy; and improving governance and mitigating risk. These areas of focus contribute towards the realisation of the NDP's vision of facilitating job creation and improving public infrastructure, and Priority 1 (economic transformation and job creation) and Priority 6 (a capable, ethical and developmental state) of government's 2019 – 2024 MTSF.

Creating work opportunities

The DPWI will continue to lead and coordinate the EPWP. To date, through the programme, an estimated 4.5 million work opportunities have been created through the use of labour-intensive methods in the infrastructure, social, non-state, environmental and cultural sectors. The department will seek to generate a further three million work opportunities over the MTEF period through an allocation of R7.9 billion for transfers and subsidies, mainly to provinces, municipalities and non-profit organisations.

To provide and enhance the management and technical capacity of the 290 public bodies that implement the programme each year, the department has set aside R1.1 billion in the EPWP. An estimated R600 million of this amount is earmarked for compensation of employees for the administration of the programme, and R535.9 million for goods and services, particularly data capturing and verification, and monitoring and evaluation. The programme has a total budget of R9.1 billion over the MTEF period, increasing at an average annual rate of 6.4%, from R2.7 billion in 2019/20 to R3.2 billion in 2022/23.

Better oversight, cooperation and service delivery

Through the Property Management Trading Entity, the DPWI is authorised to provide office accommodation to client departments and ensure that its buildings are well maintained and that property rates are paid to municipalities. The entity's projected expenditure over the medium term accounts for an estimated 61.0% (R13.6 billion) of the department's total budget.

The department also leads and coordinates policies and legislative frameworks that guide the implementation of the public works function at the provincial and municipal levels, and oversees and manages the performance of provinces. In its continued efforts to monitor and support planning and performance management in provinces and municipalities, the department plans to increase the number of cooperation and protocol agreements for joint service delivery signed with provinces and municipalities per year from 13 in 2018/19 to 15 in 2022/23. For the department to carry out this oversight role, R87.6 million over the MTEF period is allocated to the Intergovernmental Relations and Coordination subprogramme in the Intergovernmental Coordination programme, with spending on compensation of employees accounting for an estimated 80.5% (R70.5 million) of this amount.

Skills development in the construction and property sectors

To improve the delivery of infrastructure in the public works sector, the department plans to increase the throughput of built environment graduates. This imperative is facilitated by the department's Skills Pipeline Strategy, which makes provision for technical bursary schemes, internships, learnerships, property management training and artisan development, with structured workplace training to expedite professional development and registration. The department's investment in young built environment professionals extends to ensuring the participation of an estimated 1 200 beneficiaries per year over the medium term in the department and Property Management Trading Entity's skills development programme. An allocation of R99.9 million over the medium term for skills development activities is made available in the Professional Services subprogramme in the Intergovernmental Coordination programme.

Reviewing and developing policy

The DPWI is responsible for regulating the construction and property sectors, and ensuring that they transform in line with the inclusive vision of the NDP. As part of its efforts to develop a public works Act to provide an overarching legislative framework for the sector, over the medium term, the department will continue to review the the Construction Industry Development Board (CIDB) Act, 2000 (Act 38 of 2000); the Council for the Built Environment (CBE) Act, 2000 (Act 43 of 2000); the founding Acts for the six built environment professional councils; and the 1997 and 1999 White Papers on public works. The department has engaged all relevant stakeholders, including the CIDB, the CBE and the six built environment professional councils, towards the finalisation of these reviews. These reviews are expected to culminate in a draft document in 2020/21 that will inform amendments to the CIDB Act of 2000 and CBE Act of 2000 to ensure greater transformation and the inclusion of historically disadvantaged groups in the infrastructure sector, and to avoid the duplication of functions between the department and its entities. These amendment Bills will ultimately inform the development of a public works Act. Expenditure for activities related to the regulation and transformation of the construction and built environment sectors is expected to amount to R106 million over the medium term. This programme has a total budget of R14.6 billion over the MTEF period, with expenditure set to increase at an average annual rate of 3.2%, from R4.6 billion in 2019/20 to R5.1 billion in 2022/23.

Improving governance and mitigating risk

To achieve greater efficiencies in service delivery and contribute towards good governance and ethical practices, the DPWI will continue to improve various internal policies, processes and systems, including the implementation of a holistic strategy aimed at preventing fraud. The strategy seeks to establish key controls that manage the risk of fraud by aligning internal financial and business control systems with the department's fraud risk management plan to increase awareness about the

risk of fraud. Through these measures, the department aims to curtail fraud and corruption, ensure the efficient use of state resources, and improve service delivery and stakeholder confidence. To carry out governance, risk and compliance activities, an estimated R162.6 million over the medium term is allocated in the Management subprogramme in the Administration programme.

Budget

For the 2019/20 financial year, the DPWI was allocated R7.9 billion. An estimated 86.7% (R22.4 billion) of the department's total budget over the MTEF period is allocated to transfers and subsidies for the operations of its entities, and conditional grants to provinces and municipalities for the implementation of the EPWP. An estimated 7.2 % (R1.9 billion) of the department's budget over the period ahead is earmarked for spending on compensation of employees. The number of personnel in the department is expected to decrease from 840 in 2019/20 to 769 in 2022/23 mainly due to contracts not being renewed for contract employees. Despite this, spending on compensation of employees is expected to increase from R557.8 million in 2019/20 to R662.5 million in 2022/23 at an average annual rate of 5.9%.

Entity

Property Management Trading Entity

The entity was established following a decision in 2006 that costs related to accommodation be devolved from the DPWI to client departments. The entity performs immovable asset management functions on behalf of the department, including the provision of residential and office accommodation for user departments at the national government level; and acquires, manages, operates, maintains and disposes of immovable assets in the department's custody. The entity was established to apply professional business approaches in managing and optimising the State's immovable asset portfolio for maximum return.

On a cost recovery basis, the entity finances the purchase, construction, refurbishment and maintenance of nationally owned government properties; and manages the leases of privately owned properties accommodating national departments.

Over the medium term, the entity will focus on developing precincts to support efficient and integrated government planning by grouping departments that provide similar services to make service delivery more efficient; refurbishing and maintaining government buildings in its portfolio; and developing 12 small fishing harbours. To achieve these objectives, the entity plans to spend R61.2 billion over the MTEF period, increasing at an average annual rate of 9.3%, based on projections that there will be an increase in services provided to client departments, from R16.7 billion in 2019/20 to R21.8 billion in 2022/23. An estimated 80.4% (R49.5 billion) of the entity's total budget is allocated to goods and services, mainly for repairs and maintenance of state-owned buildings, and lease payments.

2019/20 SOUTH AFRICA YEARBOOK

Health

Health

The National Development Plan (NDP) sets out nine long-term health goals for South Africa. Five of these goals relate to improving the health and well-being of the population, and the other four deal with aspects of health systems strengthening.

By 2030, South Africa should have:

- raised the life expectancy to at least 70 years;
- progressively improved tuberculosis (TB) prevention and cure;
- reduced maternal, infant and child mortality;
- significantly reduced prevalence of non-communicable diseases (NCDs);
- reduced injury, accidents and violence by 50% from 2010 levels;
- complete health system reforms;
- primary healthcare teams that provide care to families and communities;
- universal healthcare coverage; and
- filled posts with skilled, committed and competent individuals.

Department of Health (DoH)

The DoH derives its mandate from the National Health Act, 2003 (Act 61 of 2003), which requires that it provides a framework for a structured and uniform health system for South Africa. The Act sets out the responsibilities of the three levels of government in the provision of health services. The department contributes directly to the realisation of Priority 2 (education, skills and health) of government's 2019 – 2024 Medium Term Strategic Framework.

As the custodian of South Africa's national health system, the department contributes to the goals, indicators and actions of Chapter 10 of the NDP, such as reducing the burden of disease and strengthening the provision of healthcare to improve the lives and lifespans of the country's citizens. In terms of the National Health Act of 2003, provincial departments of health are mandated to provide healthcare services, whereas the national department is responsible for policy formulation, coordination and support to provincial departments, as well as the monitoring, evaluation and oversight of the sector. For carrying out the department's core responsibilities through the provision of healthcare, conditional grants to provinces comprise an estimated 88.9% (R159.7 billion) of the department's total budget over the Medium Term Expenditure Framework (MTEF) period.

Over the medium term, the DoH will focus on implementing the phased implementation of the National Health Insurance (NHI), investing in health infrastructure, preventing and treating communicable and NCDs, and financing tertiary hospital services.

Phased implementation of the NHI

The *2017 National Health Insurance White Paper* outlines the design and functioning of the NHI, and the department is preparing the legal foundation of this reform. Once the NHI Bill, which was submitted to Parliament in 2019, is enacted, it will reconfigure the way health services, both public and private, are financed. One of the central aspects of the Bill is the establishment of the NHI Fund as a public entity. To build a capable NHI unit, R55.6 million over the MTEF period in the NHI programme is reprioritised for building capacity within the department to be transferred to the new entity when it is created. This allocation brings the total amount earmarked for this purpose to R102.8 million over the medium term, to be periodically reviewed according to progress made in implementing the NHI.

Prior to the formation of the NHI Fund, the NHI will largely be funded through an indirect grant, which is managed and spent by the national department on behalf of provinces. The grant comprises three components. The non-personal services component funds initiatives to strengthen the health system in preparation for the NHI. These include information systems, the Ideal Clinic initiative, the centralised dispensing and distribution of chronic medicines, including antiretroviral (ARVs) drugs, and the piloting of the national quality health improvement plan. This component is allocated R2.2 billion over the MTEF period, and is expected to ensure that, by 2022/23, 54 million patients are registered on the NHI beneficiary registry, 4.5 million patients are registered to collect chronic medicines at their pick-up point of choice, and 3 830 facilities electronically report on medicines stock through the national stock surveillance system. In 2020/21, R25 million is reprioritised towards this component to fund the pilot implementation of the national quality health improvement plan developed in a collaboration between The Presidency and the DoH. Allocations for this purpose in subsequent years will be determined by progress made in the pilot phase.

The personal services component funds the contracting of healthcare services, and is allocated R935.9 million over the MTEF period. This amount is mainly used to contract private general practitioners to provide primary healthcare services in their own practices. These practitioners will be paid according to the number and risk profile of the patients for whom they care. The allocations and scope of the component has been significantly narrowed, as R1.4 billion over the MTEF period is reallocated towards direct conditional grants, which are transferred to provinces. These reallocations include R900.1 million to the Direct NHI Grant to fund the contracting of general practitioners to do session work in public and primary healthcare facilities, and R452 million to provinces to strengthen provision of mental health and oncology services. The third part of the NHI Indirect Grant is the health facility revitalisation component.

Investing in health infrastructure

The department is working with the National Treasury, and other stakeholders, to develop strategies to accelerate the delivery of infrastructure in the health sector for the implementation of the NHI. Although the details of these proposals are still being finalised, they are likely to draw on the budget facility for infrastructure and the Infrastructure Fund to complement existing budgets for health infrastructure. The Direct Health Facility Revitalisation Grant is the largest source of funds for public health infrastructure, with an allocation of R20.1 billion over the MTEF period, and is transferred to provincial departments of health through the Health Facilities Infrastructure Management subprogramme in the Hospital Systems programme. This subprogramme also houses the health facility revitalisation component of the NHI Indirect Grant, which is allocated R4.3 billion over the MTEF period and includes allocations for planning and building the Limpopo Central Hospital in Polokwane, which is planned to be completed in 2025/26.

Financing strategic disease programmes

Some health programmes are funded through conditional grants allocated to the national department. The HIV, TB, Malaria and Community Outreach Gant is the main vehicle for funding such programmes, with seven components over the medium term. The largest is the HIV and AIDS component, which is allocated R70.9 billion over the MTEF period. The bulk of the funding in this component is used for ARV treatment (ART), with the intention of ensuring it reaches 6.5 million people by 2022/23, but also includes considerable allocations for prevention activities such as condom distribution, medical male circumcision and HIV testing.

The community outreach services component was introduced in 2018/19 to ensure that the training, remuneration and monitoring and evaluation of the performance of community health workers, who play a pivotal role in ensuring access to healthcare to the most vulnerable people in South Africa, is more uniformly standardised. Accordingly, R800 million is reprioritised from the HIV and AIDS component to the community outreach services component in 2020/21 to ensure that the standardised stipend of R3 500 per month is implemented throughout the country for all community health workers. The TB component is allocated R1.6 billion over the MTEF period, and the malaria elimination component is allocated R345.4 million.

Three new components were introduced in the 2020 budget. From 2020/21, the Human Papillomavirus Vaccine programme will be integrated as a component within the HIV, TB, Malaria and Community Outreach Grant. It is allocated R701.7 million over the MTEF period. Similarly, the allocations for mental health and oncology are shifted from the NHI indirect Grant to new components within the HIV, TB, Malaria and Community Outreach Grant from 2021/22, each receiving R110.4 million in 2021/22 and R115.7 million in 2022/23.

Supporting tertiary healthcare services

Highly specialised referral services are offered at 29 tertiary hospitals throughout South Africa. However, these services are not equally distributed, which results in patients being referred to facilities in other provinces. This requires strong national coordination and funding mechanisms that compensate provinces for providing services to patients from elsewhere. The department subsidises tertiary services through the National Tertiary Services Grant, which is allocated R14.1 billion in 2020/21, R14.7 billion in 2021/22 and R15.3 billion in 2022/2. To increase equitable access to tertiary service across the country, a developmental allocation within the grant will be introduced from 2020/21. This is expected to reduce referrals to other provinces by bringing tertiary services closer to the patients in provinces where these services are relatively underdeveloped, such as the Eastern Cape, Limpopo, Mpumalanga and North West.

Coronavirus Disease 2019 (COVID-19)

On 31 December 2019, the World Health Organisation (WHO) reported a cluster of pneumonia cases in Wuhan City, China. Severe Acute Respiratory Syndrome Coronavirus 2 (SARS-CoV-2) was confirmed as the causative agent of what came to be known as COVID-19. Since then, the virus has spread to more than 100 countries, including South Africa.

To combat the spread of the virus in South Africa, the government put in place various measures, including declaring a national state of disaster which resulted in regulations that limited public gatherings, travel from high-risk countries and the sale of alcohol. In March 2020, President Cyril Ramaphosa announced a three-week nationwide lockdown with severe restrictions on travel and movement. People were only allowed to leave their homes to buy food, seek medical help or under other extreme circumstances. In addition, borders were closed to reduce the rate of infection from those travelling into South Africa from other countries. A quarantine was also enforced on inbound travellers and returning citizens. The government also established five alert levels:

- Level 5: at this level drastic measures were required to contain the spread of the virus to save lives.
- Level 4: some activity could be allowed to resume, subject to extreme precautions required to limit community transmission and outbreaks.
- Level 3: the easing of some restrictions, including on work and social activities, to address a high risk of transmission.
- Level 2: the further easing of restrictions, but the maintenance of physical distancing and restrictions on some leisure and social activities to prevent a resurgence of the virus.
- Level 1: most normal activity could resume, with precautions and health guidelines followed at all times.

In May 2020, the national COVID-19 alert level was lowered from level 5 to level 4. Other measures included the launching of 60 new mobile laboratories to boost the country's capacity to test for COVID-19. The sampling and testing units, procured by the National Health Laboratory Service (NHLS), were deployed nationwide to all priority districts and metros. A total of 10 000 community healthcare workers were deployed across the country for door-to-door household screening and referral of symptomatic people to clinics for testing.

In April 2020, 217 Cuban health specialists and workers arrived in South Africa to support the country's efforts in the fight against COVID-19. Their arrival followed a request made by President Ramaphosa to President Díaz Canel Bermúdez of Cuba. The group consisted of:

- experts in the fields of epidemiology, biostatistics, and public health;
- family physicians to guide interventions through door-to-door testing and to assist local health workers in health promotion and disease surveillance at the community level;
- healthcare technology engineers to assist in maintaining the inventory, deployment and repair of aged medical equipment; and
- experts to provide technical assistance working with local experts.

COVID Alert SA

In September 2020, the government launched COVID Alert SA – an official Bluetooth contact-tracing application (app) to help fight COVID-19. The mobile app is built on the Apple-Google Exposure Notifications application programmable interface. Anyone in South Africa who has a Bluetooth-enabled smartphone can access this app.

The app is under 3 megabytes, free and does not feature in-app purchases. The data to use the app has been zero-rated by all South Africa's mobile network providers.

One of the most critical aspects of combating COVID-19 is the ability to detect people who have tested positive for the virus early, followed by the process of contact tracing. The COVID Alert SA app uses Bluetooth contact-tracing technology to let people know if they have been in contact with someone who has COVID-19. It gives everyone the chance to understand

The first participants in South Africa's first clinical trial for a vaccine against COVID-19 were vaccinated in June 2020. This was the first clinical trial in South Africa and on the continent for a COVID-19 vaccine. The South African Ox1Cov-19 Vaccine VIDA-Trial aims to find a vaccine that will prevent infection by SARS-CoV-2, the virus that causes COVID-19.

Wits University is collaborating with the University of Oxford and the Oxford Jenner Institute on the South African trial. The study was subject to rigorous review and has been approved by the South African Health Products Regulatory Authority (SAHPRA) and the Human Research Ethics Committee of the Wits University. After eliciting and considering public comment, the Department of Environment, Forestry and Fisheries approved import of the investigational vaccine for use in the trial.

their exposure to the virus, so every member of the community is protected, especially those most at risk. It is an important tool to combating the epidemic, which can help slow the spread of the virus and save lives.

The COVID Alert SA app is the latest extension of the DoH's COVIDConnect's platform, which was launched in July 2020. While the COVID Alert SA app can only be downloaded to a smartphone, COVIDConnect works on any mobile phone. It offers news and information, a risk-assessment tool and COVID-19 test results via WhatsApp or SMS. In the case of positive test results, users are prompted to provide further information to identify close contacts. They are, in turn, immediately alerted of their potential exposure to COVID-19 via SMS, without disclosing the index patient's details. The system can also geo-locate the nearest quarantine or healthcare facility.

Both the COVID Alert SA app and COVIDConnect platforms function without infringing on users' privacy or data.

Legislation and policies

The legislative mandate of the DoH is derived from the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996 and several pieces of legislation passed by Parliament:

- The National Health Act of 2003 provides a framework for a structured health system within South Africa, taking into account the obligations imposed by the Constitution and other laws on the national, provincial and local governments regarding health services.
- The Medicines and Related Substances Act, 1965 (Act 101 of 1965), provides for the registration of medicines and other medicinal products to ensure their safety, quality and efficacy, and also provides for transparency in the pricing of medicines.
- the Hazardous Substances Act, 1973 (Act 15 of 1973), provides for the control of hazardous substances, in particular those emitting radiation.
- The Occupational Diseases in Mines and Works Act, 1973 (Act 78 of 1973), provides for medical examinations on people suspected of having contracted occupational diseases, especially in mines, and for compensation in respect of those diseases.
- The Pharmacy Act, 1974 (Act 53 of 1974), provides for the regulation of the pharmacy profession, including community service by pharmacists.
- The Health Professions Act, 1974 (Act 56 of 1974), provides for the regulation of health professions, in particular medical practitioners, dentists, psychologists and other related health professions, including community service by these professionals.
- The Dental Technicians Act, 1979 (Act 19 of 1979), provides for the regulation of dental technicians and for the establishment of a council to regulate the profession.
- The Allied Health Professions Act, 1982 (Act 63 of 1982), provides for the regulation of health practitioners such as chiropractors, homeopaths, and for the establishment of a council to regulate these professions.
- The South African Medical Research Council (SAMRC) Act, 1991 (Act 58 of 1991), provides for the establishment of the MRC and its role in relation to health research.
- The Choice on Termination of Pregnancy Act, 1996 (Act 92 of 1996), provides a legal framework for the termination of pregnancies based on choice under certain circumstances.
- The Sterilisation Act, 1998 (Act 44 of 1998), provides a legal framework for sterilisations, including for people with mental health challenges.
- The Medical Schemes Act, 1998 (Act 131 of 1998), provides for the regulation of the medical schemes industry to ensure consonance with national health objectives.
- The Tobacco Products Control Act, 1993 (Act 83 of 1993), provides for the control of tobacco products, the prohibition of smoking in public places and of advertisements of tobacco products, as well as the sponsoring of events by the tobacco industry.
- The NHLS Act, 2000 (Act 37 of 2000), provides for a statutory body that offers laboratory services to the public health sector.
- The Council for Medical Schemes (CMS) Levy Act, 2000 (Act 58 of 2000), provides a legal framework for the CMS to charge medical schemes certain fees.
- The Mental Health Care Act, 2002 (Act 17 of 2002), provides a legal framework for mental health in the country and, in particular, the admission and discharge of mental health patients in mental health institutions, with an emphasis on human rights for mentally ill patients.
- The Nursing Act, 2005 (Act 33 of 2005), provides for the regulation of the nursing profession.
- The Traditional Health Practitioners Act, 2007 (Act 22 of 2007), provides for the establishment of the Interim Traditional Health Practitioners Council, and registration, training and practices of traditional health practitioners in the country.
- The Foodstuffs, Cosmetics and Disinfectants Act, 1972 (Act 54 of 1972), provides for the regulation of foodstuffs, cosmetics and disinfectants, in particular quality standards that must be complied with by manufacturers, as well as the importation and exportation of these items.
- The Criminal Procedure Act, 1977 (Act 51 of 1977), sections 212 4(a) and 212 8(a), provides for establishing the cause of non-natural deaths.
- The Children's Act, 2005 (Act 38 of 2005), gives effect to certain rights of children as contained in the Constitution, to set out principles relating to the care and protection of children, to define parental responsibilities and rights, and to make further provision regarding children's court.
- The Occupational Health and Safety Act, 1993 (Act 85 of 1993), provides for the requirements with which employers must comply to create a safe working environment for employees in the workplace.
- The Compensation for Occupational Injuries and Diseases Act, 1993 (Act 130 of 1993), provides for compensation for disablement caused by occupational injuries or diseases sustained or contracted by employees in the course of their

employment, and for death resulting from such injuries or disease.

- The National Roads Traffic Act, 1996 (Act 93 of 1996), provides for the testing and analysis of drunk drivers;
- the Constitution has pertinent sections which provide for the rights of access to healthcare services, including reproductive health and emergency medical treatment.
- The Employment Equity Act, 1998 (Act 55 of 1998), provides for the measures that must be put into operation in the workplace to eliminate discrimination and promote affirmative action.
- The State Information Technology Act, 1998 (Act 88 of 1998), provides for the creation and administration of an institution responsible for the State's information technology system.
- The Skills Development Act, 1998 (Act 97 of 1998), provides for the measures that employers are required to take to improve the levels of skills of employees in workplaces.
- The Public Finance Management Act, 1999 (Act 1 of 1999), provides for the administration of state funds by functionaries, their responsibilities and incidental matters.
- The Promotion of Access to Information Act, 2000 (Act 2 of 2000), amplifies the constitutional provision pertaining to accessing information under the control of various bodies.
- The Promotion of Administrative Justice Act, 2000 (Act 3 of 2000), amplifies the constitutional provisions pertaining to administrative law by codifying it.
- The Promotion of Equality and the Prevention of Unfair Discrimination Act, 2000 (Act 4 of 2000), provides for the further amplification of the constitutional principles of equality and elimination of unfair discrimination.
- The Division of Revenue Act, 2015 (Act 1 of 2015), provides for the manner in which revenue generated may be disbursed;
- the Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment Act, 2003 (Act 53 of 2003), provides for the promotion of black economic empowerment in the manner that the State awards contracts for services to be rendered, and incidental matters.
- The Labour Relations Act, 1995 (Act 66 of 1995); establishes a framework to regulate key aspects of relationship between employer and employee at individual and collective level.
- The Basic Conditions of Employment Act, 1997 (Act 75 of 1997), prescribes the basic or minimum conditions of employment that an employer must provide for employees covered by the Act.

Budget

The DoH's budget for the 2019/20 financial year was R51.46 billion. Cabinet approved budget reductions to lower the national aggregate expenditure ceiling have resulted in decreases to the department's allocation – R1.2 billion in 2020/21, R1.3 billion in 2021/22 and R1.4 billion in 2022/23. These are effected in areas such as conditional grants to provinces, goods and services, transfers to public entities, and compensation of employees. They are not expected to lead to significant disturbances in service delivery as most of the affected areas were identified based on historical financial and non-financial performance, which was lower than anticipated. Despite the reductions, the department's expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 7.4%, from R51.2 billion in 2019/20 to R63.5 billion in 2022/23, largely driven by an increase in the HIV and AIDS component and the community outreach services component of the HIV, TB, Malaria and Community Outreach Grant and allocations towards the NHI.

Programmes and projects

National Health Insurance

South Africa is at the brink of effecting significant and much needed changes to its health system financing mechanisms. The changes are based on the principles of ensuring the right to health for all, entrenching equity, social solidarity, and efficiency and effectiveness in the health system in order to realise universal health coverage. The phased implementation of the NHI is intended to ensure integrated health financing mechanisms that draw on the capacity of the public and private sectors to the benefit of all South Africans. The policy objective of the NHI is to ensure that everyone has access to appropriate, efficient, affordable and quality health services. To achieve universal health coverage, institutional and organisational reforms are required to address structural inefficiencies; ensure accountability for the quality of the health services rendered and ultimately, to improve health outcomes particularly focusing on the poor, vulnerable and disadvantaged groups.

The NHI is defined as a health financing system that pools funds to provide access to quality health services for all South Africans, based on their health needs and irrespective of their socio-economic status. The goal of the NHI is to ensure that all South African citizens and residents, irrespective of their socio-economic status, have access to good quality health services provided by both the public and private sectors. The NHI seeks to eradicate financial barriers limiting access to healthcare.

By mid-2019, the department had already exceeded its annual target for the number of individuals registered on the NHI patient beneficiary registry. However, protracted negotiations with Gauteng provincial facilities caused delays in the implementation of the system in additional facilities. The number of facilities reporting to the national surveillance centre on the availability of medicine also steadily increased. The department expected to meet its target by the end of 2019/20. A total of 1 920 public healthcare facilities qualify as Ideal Clinics against a target of 1 800. The department also expected to complete the repair, maintenance or refurbishment of all health facilities in the NHI districts during the 2019/20 financial year.

Primary Healthcare Services

The programme develops and oversees the implementation of legislation, policies, systems, and norms and standards for a uniform district health system, environmental health services, communicable and NCDs, health promotion, and nutrition. It has five budget sub-programmes namely:

- District health services: This is the vehicle for the delivery of primary healthcare services. It is central to supporting the health system to be efficient and effective. There is a need for functional district health management offices to manage the primary healthcare facilities such that they meet the standards of the Office of Health Standards Compliance and Ideal Clinic status, as well as achieve set targets for their key population health indicators.
- Environmental and port health services**:** Environmental health is at the heart of public health interventions. The

service's mandate is to lead the implementation of public awareness, health promotion and disease prevention, surveillance and inspection of both private and public premises. It is responsible for strengthening, supporting and monitoring the provision of environmental health services by developing relevant legislation, policies, guidelines, norms and standards. These instruments are also used to assess and audit, through annual assessments, the compliance of municipalities and public health facilities to the relevant prescripts. It is also responsible for strengthening and monitoring the provision of port health services by controlling and preventing cross border movement of goods and people in order to control public health risks, prevent importation of communicable diseases and any events of international concern. During the first half of 2019/20, the department assessed 30 municipalities for adherence to environmental health norms and standards against an annual target of 31. This is in support of the DoH's programme to emphasise environmental determinants of health, such as sanitation and food safety monitoring, as part of the delivery of environmental health services by municipalities. In response to the department's focus on environmental health assessments in the first half of the year, compliance assessments of ports of entry was prioritised during the remaining months. The department expects to meet its annual target of ensuring that 20 points of entry have port health services that comply with international health regulations by the end of the financial year.

- Health promotion, nutrition and oral health: Optimal health promotion and disease prevention is essential to the success of primary healthcare. Recognising South Africa's quadruple burden of disease, the subprogramme has identified the need to strengthen the Tobacco Control programme. To achieve this, the Tobacco Products Control Act of 1993 was reviewed to tighten loopholes and address key issues pertaining to tobacco control in accordance with the WHO Framework Convention on Tobacco Control.
- NCDs: The 2030 Agenda for Sustainable Development recognises the huge impact of NCDs worldwide, with a target set to reduce premature deaths from NCDs by one-third by 2030. Around 40% of deaths and 33% of the burden of disease in South Africa are attributable to NCDs. The WHO estimates that the probability of premature mortality from NCDs in South Africa is 27%. Reducing NCDs and premature mortality requires a combination of redressing social and commercial determinants, promotion of good health through improved diet, increased physical activity, stopping tobacco use and reducing alcohol-related harm, increasing early diagnosis and treatment, and improved management and control of NCDs, including greater accessibility to services.
  Mental disorders continue to be a major and growing cause of Disability-Adjusted Life Years (DALYs). Importantly, the DALYs for mental disorders are high during youth and mid-adulthood. There is substantive evidence for both the effectiveness and cost-benefit of mental health interventions, including large benefits in treating common mental disorders such as depression and anxiety. Regarding forensic mental health services, the demand for forensic psychiatric evaluations for persons who allegedly committed criminal offences is mounting. This resulted in the backlogs for the service and the resultant accumulation of State patients waiting for hospital admissions in detention centres.
- Communicable diseases: These are major causes of morbidity and mortality, and life expectancy is expected to increase through effectively addressing these conditions. Communicable diseases are therefore central to obtaining the department's vision of a long and healthy life for all South Africans. Funding to the tune of R319 million has been secured from the National Treasury for the 2019/20 financial year, for the malaria endemic provinces of Limpopo, Mpumalanga and KwaZulu-Natal.

Hospital, Tertiary Health Services and Human Resource Development

The programme develops policies, delivery models and clinical protocols for hospitals and emergency medical services (EMS). It also ensures the alignment of academic medical centres with health workforce programmes, training of health professionals and that the planning of health infrastructure meets the health needs of the country. It also assists the government to achieve the population health goals of the country through nursing and midwifery, by the provision of expert policy and technical advice and recommendations on the role of nurses in attainment of desired health outputs. The programme has five budget subprogrammes namely:

- The hospitals and tertiary health services is responsible for tertiary services planning, policies that guides the management of and service standards in hospitals as well as to ensure the production of appropriate numbers, staff mix and appropriately qualified health professionals.
- The trauma, violence, EMS and forensic chemistry laboratory is responsible for improving the governance, management and functioning of EMS in the country through strengthening the capacity and skills of EMS personnel, identification of needs and service gaps, and provision of appropriate and efficient EMS by providing oversight of provinces. It is also responsible for ensuring the effective and efficient rendering of forensic chemistry services to support the criminal justice system and reduce the burden of disease and unnatural causes of death.
- The office of nursing services is responsible for ensuring that nursing and midwifery practitioners are competent and responsive to the burden of disease and population health needs.
- The health facilities infrastructure planning focuses on co-ordinating and funding health infrastructure to enable provinces to plan, manage, modernise, rationalise and transform infrastructure, health technology and hospital management, and improve the quality of care in line with national policy objectives.
- The workforce development and planning programme is responsible for effectively articulating human resource needs and optimising the performance of the health workforce to achieve the strategic goals of the national health system.

Health Regulation and Compliance Management

The programme promotes accountability and compliance by regulatory bodies and public entities for effective governance and the quality of healthcare. It has two budget subprogrammes namely:

- The compensation commissioner for occupational diseases and occupational health, which is responsible for the payment of compensation of active and ex-workers in controlled mines and workers who have been certified to be suffering from cardio-pulmonary related diseases as a result of workplace exposures in the controlled mines or works. Over the medium term, business processes will be re-engineered with regard to revenue collection; reducing the turnaround period in settling claims, amending the Occupational Diseases in Mines and Works Act of 1973; and improving governance, internal controls and relationships with the stakeholders.
- The public entities management subprogramme, which exercises oversight over the public entities and statutory councils in support of the Executive Authority's responsibility for public entities and statutory health professional councils falling within the mandate of the health legislation.

HIV, AIDS and TB

The DoH is on track to exceed its target for mother-to-child transmission of HIV, which at the end of August 2019 was 0.68% against the annual target of 0.9%. However, the ART programme is progressing somewhat slower than anticipated, with 4.8 million clients against a target of 5.8 million. The uptake is particularly slow among children and men, where the coverage is 60% and 62% respectively, compared to 72% among females. The department intends to intensify efforts to reach the target of 6.1 million total people on ART by December 2020.

In 2016, the government implemented the Universal Test and Treaty Policy, which states that the DoH should offer treatment to everyone diagnosed with HIV, regardless of their CD4 count, which is the marker for the strength of the immune system.

For this purpose, an additional R1 billion is allocated to the HIV and AIDS, TB, and Maternal and Child Health programme in 2020/21 for the Comprehensive HIV, AIDS and TB Grant for provinces to provide ART to an estimated six million people. As a result of the additional allocation in 2020/21, funding for the grant increases by 11.6% per year, with a total allocation of R66.4 billion between 2017/18 and 2020/21.

Community health workers play a pivotal role in ensuring access to primary healthcare services in South Africa's most vulnerable communities. In recognition of this, over the medium term, the department intends adding a community outreach services component to the Comprehensive HIV, AIDS and TB Grant. The new component is expected to enable the sector to improve the efficiencies of the ward-based primary healthcare outreach teams programme by standardising and strengthening the training, service package, and performance monitoring of community health workers.

By 2020/21, the number of ward-based primary healthcare outreach teams is expected to increase to 3 700. An estimated R4.4 billion over the MTEF period has been reprioritised in the Comprehensive HIV, AIDS and TB Grant to create the community outreach services component.

According to the Mid-year Population Estimates, 2020, the estimated overall HIV prevalence rate is approximately 13.0% among the South African population. Over a fifth of South African women in their reproductive ages (15 – 49 years) are HIV positive. HIV prevalence among the youth aged 15 – 24 has remained stable over time. The total number of persons living with HIV in South Africa increased from an estimated 3.8 million in 2002 to 7.8 million by 2020. For adults aged 15 – 49 years, an estimated 18.7% of the population is HIV positive. The number of AIDS-related deaths for 2020 are 79 625 (15.4 %).

National Strategic Plan (NSP) for HIV, TB and sexually transmitted infections (STIs) 2017 – 2022

The purpose of the NSP is to enable the many thousands of organisations and individuals who drive the response to HIV, TB and STIs to work as a concerted force and moving towards the same direction. It is the third NSP to be unveiled following the first one 10 years ago.

The document sets out intensified prevention programmes that combine biomedical prevention methods such as medical male circumcision and the preventative use of ARV drugs and TB medication, with communication designed to educate and encourage safer sexual behaviour in the case of HIV and STIs.

The goals of the NSP 2017 – 2022, among others, include:

- accelerating prevention to reduce new HIV and TB infections and new STIs;
- reducing illness and deaths by providing treatment, care and adherence support for all infected;
- addressing social and structural drivers of HIV and TB infections;
- grounding the response to HIV, TB and STIs in human rights principles and approaches;
- mobilising resources to support the achieving of NSP goals and ensure sustainable responses; and
- strengthening strategic information to drive progress towards achieving the NSP goals.

The plan will draw on the vision of the United Nations (UN) programme of zero new HIV infections, zero preventable deaths associated with HIV and zero discrimination associated with HIV. It is also in line with the WHO's goals for reducing TB incidents and mortality.

The NSP serves as the strategic guide for the national response to HIV, TB and STIs in South Africa. One of the objectives of the plan is to intensify focus on geographic areas and populations most severely affected by the epidemics. The slogan of this NSP is: "Let our Actions Count".

Operation Phakisa

Operation Phakisa was launched in 2014 to boost delivery initially in the Oceans Economy, education and health. The programme has since been expanded to mining and agriculture, in particular aquaculture.

Operation Phakisa 2 is a government programme aimed at prioritising 3 500 primary healthcare facilities. It aims at turning every public health clinic to a facility that is people-centred and provides comprehensive, quality healthcare services.

Operation Phakisa and the Ideal Clinic initiative

The Ideal Clinic Realisation and Maintenance process started in 2013 to systematically build on the work of the facility improvement teams.

An Ideal Clinic is a clinic with good infrastructure, adequate staff, adequate medicine and supplies, good administrative processes and adequate bulk supplies that use applicable clinical policies, protocols, guidelines as well as partner and stakeholder support, to ensure the provision of quality health

services to the community. An Ideal Clinic will cooperate with other government departments as well as with the private sector and non-governmental organisations (NGOs) to address the social determinants of health. Facilities must be maintained to function optimally and remain in a condition that can be described as the "Ideal Clinic".

Integrated clinical services management (ICSM) will be a key focus within an Ideal Clinic. ICSM is a health system strengthening model that builds on the strengths of the HIV programme to deliver integrated care to patients with chronic and/or acute diseases or who came for preventative services by taking a patient-centric view that encompasses the full value chain of continuum of care and support.

Access to medicine

To ensure that the necessary medicine is always in stock, the DoH has undertaken three initiatives:

- The Stock Visibility System;
- Rx Solution and other electronic stock management systems; and
- The Central Chronic Medicines and Dispensing and Distribution Programme.

Records Management and Unique Patient Identifier

This is a system whereby patients are registered on a central database, which enables quick and effective dispensing of the right medication to the right client, as well as serving as a deterrent to people visiting multiple clinics and medical centres on one day and collecting absurd and often illegal amounts of medication.

Working with the Council for Scientific and Industrial Research as well as the departments of Science and Innovation and Home Affairs, the DoH has rolled out this system as part of the NHI.

School health: Integrated School Health Programme (ISHP)

The departments of Basic Education and Health jointly implemented the ISHP. The programme will extend the coverage of school health services to all leaners in primary and secondary schools. The programme offers a comprehensive and integrated package of services, including sexual and reproductive health services for older learners.

The health services package for the ISHP includes a large component of health education for each of the four school phases (such as how to lead a healthy lifestyle, and drug and substance abuse awareness), health screening (such as screening for vision, hearing, oral health and TB) and onsite services (such as deworming and immunisation).

The ISHP services contribute to the health and well-being of learners by screening them for health barriers to learning.

Prevent, Avoid, Stop, Overcome and Protect (PASOP) Campaign

The PASOP Campaign was launched in an effort to call on all communities to join hands with the government in the fight against HIV and AIDS, and TB. It is aimed at influencing people's behaviour and attitude around these diseases, as the DoH works tirelessly to ensure that new HIV infections rates are reduced. The campaign calls on South Africans to:

P - prevent new infections and transmissions;
A - avoid re-infections, deaths, mother to child;
S - stop risky behaviour and practices;
O - overcome living with HIV and the stigma; and
P - protect themselves, loved ones and others.

PASOP targets all but with a distinct focus on lesbian, gay, bisexual, transgender and intersex, men-sleeping-with-men, the youth, commercial sex workers, migrant workers, informal settlements, women and drug users.

The campaign places high emphasis on the responsibility of self and non-stigmatisation.

The highest rates of new HIV infections are still found among young single women who have older boyfriends and/or multiple sex partners.

The DoH is set to intensify the PASOP campaign by reaching men who are partners to young women, especially the "3Ms" or Mobile Men with Money and men that have sex with men, but do not identify as gay or bisexual.

Role players

National Health Laboratory Service

The NHLS was established in terms of the NHLS Act of 2000 to provide cost-effective, high-quality diagnostic laboratory services primarily to public health facilities. The service also trains pathologists and other health professionals, monitors communicable and NCDs, and conducts research. It houses the National Institute for Communicable Diseases (NICD), the National Institute for Occupational Health (NIOH) and the South African Vaccine Producers, as its subsidiary.

It is the largest diagnostic pathology service in South Africa, servicing more than 80% of the population through a national network of 268 laboratories.

Over the medium term, the service will continue to focus on improving laboratory testing, particularly for HIV, TB and cervical cancer. Rapidly increasing access to HIV and TB care, and a predicted increase in the prevalence of cancer by at least 30% by 2030, is expected to place increased demand on the service. To accommodate this demand, the service will seek to further automate, modernise and consolidate its laboratory platforms and services to ensure affordability and sufficient capacity. Performing laboratory tests, mainly for public health facilities, accounts for an estimated 81.2% (R24.9 billion) of the service's projected expenditure over the medium term and is the source of 90.5% (R28 billion) of its total revenue.

To train pathologists, medical scientists and medical technologists, and increase research output, an allocation of R1 billion is made available over the MTEF period. This is expected to ensure that 57 registrars are admitted to be trained as pathologists, and that 36 intern medical scientists and 248 intern medical technologists are also trained. This allocation is also expected to ensure that the service publishes 2 050 peer-reviewed articles over the medium term, and that 95% of national central laboratories are accredited by the South African National Accreditation System.

The service will aim to strengthen its disease surveillance through the NICD, and its research and training outputs to support occupational and environmental health through the NIOH. Both institutes are largely funded through transfers from the DoH, which are projected to decrease at an average

annual rate of 6%, from R785.5 million in 2019/20 to R824.1 million in 2022/23. These transfers will be used mainly for operations to enable the institutes to respond to all outbreaks within 24 hours of notification, and conduct 90% of occupational and environmental health laboratory tests within specified turnaround times.

South African Medical Research Council

The SAMRC conducts and funds health research and medical innovation. It was established in terms of the SAMRC Act, 1969 (Act 19 of 1969). In terms of the amended SAMRC Act of 1991, the council is mandated to contribute to improved health and quality of life for South Africans through research, development and technology transfer that provides policymakers with the tools to make informed decisions on healthcare. Over the medium term, the council will focus on funding and conducting core research; developing innovations and technology; and building South Africa's medium-term and long-term capacity in health research, particularly in relation to risk factors associated with TB, HIV and AIDS, cardiovascular diseases, NCDs, gender, and alcohol and other drug abuse.

Over the MTEF period, the council will continue to collaborate with the United States National Institutes of Health. Each organisation is expected to contribute R135 million over the medium term towards the Collaborative Biomedical Research programme. Over the same period, the council is also expected to contribute R21 million, and the national institutes of health R67 million, to fund a new project involving multiple clinical and laboratory sites to conduct biomedical and clinical research on TB. Additional research on the burden of mental health, suicide and depression in tertiary institutions is expected to support the priorities of the Department of Higher Education and Training, at an estimated cost of R5 million in 2020/21. Expenditure on core research accounts for an estimated 53.9% (R2.1 billion) of the council's total projected spending over the medium term, increasing at an average annual rate of 5.3%. This spending is expected to enable authors affiliated to or funded by the council to publish 2 250 journal articles, books and book chapters over the MTEF period, and enable the council to award 420 research grants.

The council has also entered into partnerships with the Bill & Melinda Gates Foundation, the Newton Fund, and the United Kingdom Medical Research Council to fund innovation and technology activities. These partnerships address priority research areas in TB, HIV, NCDs and mental health. For each partnership, the council will invest a targeted R26 million per year over the medium term and each partner will invest a targeted R36 million per year. Another key collaboration is with the Beijing Genomics Institute for the first genomics sequencing facility in Africa, which is expected to result in expenditure of R15 million over the medium term. Total spending in the council's innovation and technology programme is expected to increase from R201.9 million in 2019/20 to R312.5 million in 2022/23 at an average annual rate of 15.7%.

The council will continue to support the next generation of scientists by awarding scholarships and creating partnerships to leverage and contribute to the sustainability of health research. Through a partnership with the DoH and the Public Health Enhancement Fund to support young scientists from all health professions to acquire PhD degrees, the council aims to increase the number of bursaries, scholarships and fellowships awarded from 106 in 2019/20 to 140 in 2022/23, and the number of master's and doctoral students graduating from 65 to 81 over the same period. Although spending in the capacity development programme is expected to decrease at an average annual rate of 0.8%, from R98.2 million in 2019/20 to R95.9 million in 2022/23, this is not expected to affect performance as all of the council's programmes contribute to the capacity development function.

The council is set to derive 57.7% (R2.2 billion) of its revenue over the MTEF period through transfers from the department, and the remainder through contracts with international donors and other research funders, and interest and dividends. Total revenue is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 8%, from R1.1 billion in 2019/20 to R1.4 billion in 2022/23.

South African National AIDS Council (SANAC)

The SANAC is a voluntary association of institutions established by Cabinet to build consensus across government, civil society and all other stakeholders to drive an enhanced country response to the scourges of HIV, TB and STIs.

Under the direction of the SANAC, government created the SANAC Trust as the legal entity that is charged with achieving its aims.

South African Health Products Regulatory Authority

The SAHPRA is an entity of the DoH, created by the government to ensure that the health and well-being of human and animal health is at its core.

The organisation assumed the roles of both the Medicines Control Council and the Directorate of Radiation Control, which were housed at the DoH.

It is tasked with regulating – monitoring, evaluating, investigating, inspecting and registering – all health products. This includes clinical trials, complementary medicines, medical devices and in vitro diagnostics. Furthermore, the organisation has the added responsibility of overseeing radiation control in South Africa. The authority's total budget for 2019/20 was R308.3 million.

Compensation Commissioner for Occupational Diseases in Mines and Works

It is mandated to compensate workers and ex-workers in controlled mines and works for occupational diseases of the cardiorespiratory organs and reimburse them for any loss of earnings incurred while being treated for TB. The commissioner's total budget for 2019/20 was R211.3 million.

Council for Medical Schemes

The CMS was established in terms of the Medical Schemes Act of 1998 as the regulatory authority responsible for overseeing the medical schemes industry in South Africa. Section 7 of the Act sets out the functions of the council, which include protecting the interests of beneficiaries, controlling and coordinating the functioning of medical schemes, collecting and disseminating information about private healthcare, and advising the Minister of Health on any matter concerning medical schemes. The council's total budget for 2019/20 was R185.3 million.

Office of Health Standards Compliance

It was established in terms of the National Health Amendment Act, 2013 (Act 12 of 2013), which mandates the office to monitor and enforce the compliance of health establishments with the norms and standards prescribed by the Minister of Health in relation to the national health system; and ensure the consideration, investigation and disposal of complaints relating to non-compliance with prescribed norms and standards in a procedurally fair, economical and expeditious manner. The office's total budget for 2019/20 was R136.5 million.

Health Professions Council of South Africa (HPSCA)

The HPCSA is committed to promoting the health of the population, determining standards of professional education and training, and setting and maintaining excellent standards of ethical and professional practice.

To safeguard the public and indirectly the professions, registration in terms of the Health Professions Act of 1974 is a prerequisite for practising any of the health professions with which the council is concerned.

The council guides and regulates the health professions in the country in aspects pertaining to registration, education and training, professional conduct and ethical behaviour, ensuring continuing professional development, and fostering compliance with healthcare standards.

All individuals who practise any of the healthcare professions incorporated in the scope of the HPCSA are obliged to register with the council. Failure to do so constitutes a criminal offence.

Its mandate includes:

- coordinating the activities of the professional boards;
- promoting and regulating interprofessional liaison;
- determining strategic policy;
- consulting and liaising with relevant authorities;
- controlling and exercising authority over the training and practices pursued in connection with the diagnosis, treatment or prevention of physical or mental defects, illnesses or deficiencies in people;
- promoting liaison in the field of training; and
- communicating to the Minister of Health information that is of public importance.

Allied Health Professions Council of South Africa (AHPCSA)

The AHPCSA is a statutory health body established in terms of the Allied Health Professions Act of 1982 to control all allied health professions, which includes ayurveda, Chinese medicine and acupuncture, chiropractic treatment, therapeutic reflexology, therapeutic massage therapy, homeopathy, naturopathy, therapeutic aromatherapy, osteopathy, phytotherapy and Unani Tibb:

The AHPCSA is mandated to:

- promote and protect the health of the public;
- manage, administer and set policies relating to the professions registered with the AHPCSA;
- investigate complaints relating to the professional conduct of practitioners, interns and students;
- administer the registration of people governed by the AHPCSA; and
- set standards for the education and training of intending practitioners.

South African Dental Technicians Council (SADTC)

The SADTC controls all matters relating to the education and training of dental technicians or dental technologists and practices in the supply, making, altering or repairing of artificial dentures or other dental appliances.

Its mandate includes:

- promoting dentistry in South Africa;
- controlling all matters relating to the education and training of dental technicians, dental technologists and practitioners who supply, make, alter or repair artificial dentures or other dental appliances; and
- promoting good relationships between dentists, clinical dental technologists, dental technicians and dental technologists.

South African Pharmacy Council (SAPC)

The SAPC is the regulator established in terms of the Pharmacy Act of 1974 to regulate pharmacists, pharmacy support personnel and pharmacy premises in South Africa. Its mandate is to protect, promote and maintain the health, safety and well-being of patients and the public by ensuring quality pharmaceutical service for all South Africans.

The council is tasked with:

- assisting in promoting the health of South Africans;
- promoting the provision of pharmaceutical care with universal norms and values;
- upholding and safeguarding the rights of the general public to universally acceptable standards of pharmacy practice;
- establishing, developing, maintaining and controlling universally acceptable standards; and
- maintaining and enhancing the dignity of the pharmacy profession.

South African Nursing Council (SANC)

The SANC is the body entrusted to set and maintain standards of nursing education and practice in South Africa. It is an autonomous, financially independent, statutory body, initially established by the Nursing Act, 1944 (Act 45 of 1944), and operating under the Nursing Act of 2005.

The SANC controls and exercises authority, in respect of the education, training and manner of practices pursued by registered nurses, midwives, enrolled nurses and enrolled nursing auxiliaries.

The council's mandate includes:

- inspecting and approving nursing schools and nursing education programmes;
- conducting examinations and issuing qualifications;
- registering and enrolling nurses, midwives and nursing auxiliaries and keeping registers;
- removing or restoring any name in a register;
- issuing licences to nursing agencies; and
- requiring employers to submit annual returns of registered and enrolled nurses in their employ.

Non-governmental organisations

Many NGOs at various levels play a crucial role in healthcare, and cooperate with government's priority programmes.

They make an essential contribution, in relation to HIV and AIDS, and TB, and also participate significantly in the fields of mental health, cancer, disability and the development of primary healthcare systems.

The involvement of NGOs extends from national level, through provincial structures, to small local organisations rooted in individual communities. All are important and bring different qualities to the healthcare network.

Resources

Medical practitioners

These include doctors working for the State, those in private practice and specialists. The majority of doctors practise in the private sector. In selected communities, medical students supervised by medical practitioners provide health services at clinics.

In terms of the continuing professional development system, all doctors, irrespective of earlier qualifications, must obtain a specified number of points to retain their registration.

The system requires that doctors attend workshops, conferences, refresher courses, seminars, departmental meetings and journal clubs. Non-compliance with the requirements of the system could result in a doctor being deregistered.

Applications by foreign health professionals are subject to assessment by the Examinations Committee of the Medical and Dental Professions Board. Those admitted have to write an examination and thereafter can be registered in the particular category for which they applied and were assessed.

Pharmacists

All pharmacists are obliged to perform one year of remunerated pharmaceutical community service in a public health facility.

Nurses

Nurses are required to complete a mandatory 12-month community service programme, thereafter they may be registered as nurses (general, psychiatric or community) and midwives.

Provincial hospitals

Provincial hospitals offer treatment to patients with or without medical aid cover. Patients are classified as hospital patients, if they can't afford to pay for treatment. Their treatment is then partly or entirely financed by the particular provincial government or the health authorities of the administration concerned.

Provincial hospital patients pay for examinations and treatment on a sliding scale in accordance with their income and number of dependants.

Patients with medical aid are charged a private rate that is generally lower than the rate charged by private hospitals.

Health facilities

There are 4 200 public health facilities in South Africa. The number of people per clinic is 13 718, exceeding the WHO guidelines of 10 000 per clinic.

According to the General Household Survey (GHS), 2018, published in May 2019, nationally, 71.5% of households reported that they would first go to public clinics, hospitals or other public institutions when a member falls sick or is involved in accident, while 27.1% of households said that they would first consult a private doctor, private clinic or hospital. Only 0.7% of responding households said that they would first go to a traditional healer. The use of public health facilities were least common in the Western Cape (56.1%), Free State (63.5%) and Gauteng (63.9%), and most common in Limpopo (86.1%), the Eastern Cape (79.8%) and KwaZulu-Natal (79.0%).

Users of private healthcare facilities seemed to be more satisfied with those facilities than users of public healthcare facilities across all provinces. Whereas 97.6% of users were satisfied or somewhat satisfied with private facilities (92.6% were very satisfied), only 80.3% of users of public healthcare facilities were somewhat satisfied or very satisfied. Only 53.8% of individuals that used public healthcare facilities were very satisfied.

Of those that used private healthcare facilities, households in Mpumalanga were most likely to be very satisfied (95.8%) followed by households in Eastern Cape (95.5%), Western Cape (93.7%) and Gauteng (93.2%). Households in Limpopo (72.1%) were most likely to be very satisfied with public healthcare facilities while those in North West (40.3%) were least likely to be very satisfied.

Medical aid coverage

According to the GHS, 2018, between 2002 and 2018, the percentage of individuals covered by a medical aid scheme increased marginally from 15.9% to 17.1% in 2016 before declining to 16.4% in 2018. During this period, the number of individuals who were covered by a medical aid scheme increased from 7.3 million to 9.4 million persons. More than one-fifth (22.6%) of South African households had at least one member who belonged to a medical aid scheme.

Individuals were more frequently covered by medical aid schemes in the Western Cape (25.1%) and Gauteng (23.9%), and least commonly in Limpopo (8.2%) and the Eastern Cape (10.0%).

Approximately one-quarter (24.0%) of individuals in metros were members of medical aid schemes, exceeding the national average of 16.4%. Membership was most common in Tshwane (29.6%) and the City of Cape Town (27.7%), while the lowest membership was measured in Nelson Mandela Bay (20.6%) and eThekwini (20.7%).

Approximately 72.9% of white individuals were members of a medical aid scheme compared to just over one-half (52.0%) of Indian/Asian individuals. By comparison, only 9.9% of black Africans were covered by a medical aid scheme.

Teenage pregnancy

The GHS, 2018 revealed that about 5.2% of females in the age group 14 – 19 years were at different stages of pregnancy during the 12 months before the survey was conducted. The prevalence of pregnancy increased with age, rising from 0.3% for females aged 14 years, to 9.7% for females aged 19 years.

World AIDS Day

World AIDS Day is commemorated each year on 1 December. This is a global opportunity for communities to unite in the fight against HIV and AIDS, show support for people living with HIV, and remember those who have died. The theme for the 2019 World AIDS Day was "communities make the difference".

The event was held at the James Motlatsi Stadium in the North West province.

The government has made progress in reducing the rate of new infections. There is also major progress on voluntary male medical circumcision, which is one of the other areas of

prevention. At the end of March 2019, four million men were circumcised.

Following the launch of the Checka Impilo National Wellness campaign in 2018, the government set a list of targets to be reached by December 2020:

- Screen and test 14 million people for HIV, TB, STIs and other NCDs.
- Find and treat at least seven million people living with diabetes, hypertension and common cancers.
- Initiate an additional two million HIV positive people on ART.
- Find and treat at least 80 000 of the 160 000 estimated missing TB patients.

The community of Eshowe in KwaZulu-Natal reached the 90-90-90 UN AIDS target ahead of the 2020 deadline. The ambitious target calls on countries to reach the goals of having 90% of people living with HIV diagnosed by 2020; 90% of diagnosed people on ART by 2020 and 90% of people on treatment with fully suppressed viral load by 2020. The community exceeded its target by obtaining a 90-94-95 target. This means that 90% of people living with HIV have been diagnosed, while 94% of those diagnosed are on ART, and 95% of people on treatment have a fully suppressed viral load.

Population estimates

For 2020, Statistics South Africa estimates the mid-year population at 59.62 million. The black African population is in the majority (48.2 million) and constitutes approximately 81% of the total South African population. The white population is estimated at 4.7 million, the coloured population at 5.2 million and the Indian/Asian population at 1.5 million.

Gauteng continues to record the largest share of South Africa's population, with approximately 15.5 million people (26.0%) living in this province. The second-largest population with approximately 11.5 million people has been recorded in KwaZulu-Natal. Northern Cape maintained its status as the province with the lowest population in the country with a population estimated at 1.29 million people. The Mid-year Population Estimates, 2020, indicates that approximately 51.1% (approximately 30,5 million) of the population is female.

According to the report, the life expectancy at birth for 2020 was estimated at 62.5 years for males and 68.5 years for females.

It also indicated that life expectancy is increasing, and this may be related to marginal gains in survival rates among infants and children under five post-HIV interventions in 2005. The infant mortality rate for 2020 was estimated at 23.6 per 1 000 live births – a decline from an estimated 55.5 infant deaths per 1 000 live births in 2002. Similarly, the under-five mortality rate declined from 75.3 child deaths per 1 000 live births to 34.1 child deaths per 1 000 live births between 2002 and 2020.

The population density in South Africa is 48 per km^2 (124 people per mi^2). The total land area is 1.213.090 km^2 (468.376 mi^2). A total of 63.0% of the population is urban (36 579 170 people in 2019). The median age in South Africa is 26.3 years.

2019/20 SOUTH AFRICA YEARBOOK

Home Affairs

Home Affairs

The Department of Home Affairs (DHA) is the custodian of the identity of all South African citizens, critical to which is the issuance of birth, marriage and death certificates; identity documents (IDs) and passports; as well as citizenship; naturalisation and permanent residency certificates.

This goes beyond merely issuing documents. The department endeavours to stimulate economic growth in the country through a responsive and efficient immigration regime that will maximise benefits and minimise risks to the country. It is also responsible for the effective, secure and humane management of asylum seekers and refugees.

The Minister of Home Affairs has oversight over three statutory bodies: the Immigration Advisory Board, the Refugee Appeal Authority (RAA) and the Standing Committee on Refugee Affairs (SCRA). The main responsibility of these bodies is to assist the department in discharging its mandate with regard to the Immigration Act, 2002 (Act 13 of 2002) and the Refugees Act, 1998 (Act 130 of 1998).

The DHA also receives funds on behalf of the Electoral Commission of South Africa and for the Represented Political Parties Fund. There are two entities that report to the Minister of Home Affairs, namely: the Electoral Commission and the Government Printing Works (GPW).

A major focus for the DHA is the transformation of the department, so that it can deliver a service that is efficient, accessible and corruption-free. Several closely related strategic drivers are used in this regard.

The mandate of the DHA is derived from the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996 and various Acts of Parliament and policy documents. The department's services are divided into two broad categories – civic services and immigration services. Accordingly, the department is mandated to manage citizenship and civic status, international migration, refugee protection, and the population register. Executing its mandate allows the department to be a key enabler of national security, citizen empowerment, efficient administration and socio-economic development. These functions must be managed securely and strategically.

In fulfilling its mandate to affirm and register official identities and civic statuses, including citizenship, as well as to regulate international migration, the department contributes to the attainment of the National Development Plan's vision of building a South Africa that is safe and conducive to inclusive development. Accordingly, the department's mandate is fulfilled in terms of Priority 1 (economic transformation and job creation), Priority 5 (social cohesion and safe communities), Priority 6 (a capable, ethical and developmental state) and Priority 7 (a better Africa and world) of government's 2019 – 2024 Medium Term Strategic Framework. In line with these priorities, over the medium term, the department plans to maintain the issuance of Smart ID cards and registration of births, simplify the issuance of permits and visas in support of economic growth, continue the Information Technology (IT) Modernisation programme to expand its client interfaces, and establish the Border Management Authority (BMA) and secure international migration.

Maintaining the issuance of Smart ID cards and registration of births

In its ongoing commitment to register official identities, the DHA plans to maintain the rollout of Smart ID cards to all eligible people. Accordingly, over the medium term, the department expects to issue nine million Smart ID cards. For this purpose, R7.5 billion is allocated over the medium term in the Service Delivery to Provinces subprogramme in the Citizen Affairs programme. Smart ID cards and other enabling documents are funded through the self-financing method, as such, revenue that is generated is appropriated to the department during the adjustments budgeting process. This revenue is projected to be R4 billion over the Medium Term Expenditure Framework (MTEF) period.

The department is also committed to ensuring that all births are registered within 30 days, as required by law, in line with government's priority to provide adequate services to all citizens. Over the medium term, the department plans to register 2.4 million births within 30 days. For this purpose, R289.9 million is allocated over the MTEF period in the Status Services subprogramme in the Citizen Affairs programme. The programme's expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 1%, from R5.7 billion in 2019/20 to R5.9 billion in 2022/23.

Simplifying the issuance of permits and visas

In line with the national priority of economic transformation and job creation, over the medium term, the DHA plans to promote business and leisure tourism, and economic development by improving its processing of permits and visas. This will be achieved generally by removing unnecessary barriers requirements. Accordingly, the department plans to continue implementing the simplification process, whereby selected and low-risk countries benefit from visa waivers and the relaxation of conditions as well as the rollout of the e-visa system. For this purpose, R759.5 million has been allocated over MTEF period in the Immigration Service subprogramme in the Immigration Affairs programme. The programme's expenditure is expected to increase at an annual average rate of 10.8%, from R1.3 billion in 2019/20 to R1.8 billion in 2022/23.

Modernising the department's IT infrastructure and expanding its client interfaces

Through the IT Modernisation Programme, the department has ensured higher efficiencies and predictability in its business processes and products. The programme has enabled the department to automate its business processes that involve capturing information and images, digitising supporting documents, and issuing IDs and passports by means of the paperless live capture system. To continue with the modernisation programme, R1.9 billion is allocated in the Administration programme over the MTEF period.

To improve its reach and accessibility, the department plans to expand its public-private partnership with the banking sector, to provide services at more branches, and with other service providers. The department also plans to procure new mobile units and refurbish its existing fleet, leading to a projected increase in the number of mobile units from 100 in 2019/20 to 115 in 2020/21, at cost of R20 million. Related activities are carried out at an estimated cost of R50 million in the Office Accommodation subprogramme in the Administration

programme. The programme's expenditure is expected to decrease at an average annual rate of 1.6%, from R2.5 billion in 2019/20 to R2.4 billion in 2022/23. This is due to the shifting of R77 million over the MTEF period to the Service Delivery to Provinces subprogramme to increase IT capacity in provinces.

Establishing the BMA and secure international migration

As part of government's priorities to promote social cohesion and build safe communities and a better Africa and world, the DHA is committed to adopting an integrated approach to border management that is characterised by a single command-and-control structure. This is in response to Cabinet's decision to establish the BMA. The authority's work will be aimed at improving South Africa's borders and will incrementally assume responsibility for enforcing border law at ports of entry.

In this regard, the BMA Bill was introduced to Parliament in 2016 and endorsed by the Portfolio Committee on Home Affairs and the National Assembly (NA) in 2017. The Bill was adopted with the proposed amendments by the National Council of Provinces in 2019. The Bill has now been referred back to the NA for adoption and it was anticipated that it would be finalised by Parliament in 2020. An amount of R109.5 million over the medium term has been allocated from the department's baseline budget for the establishment of the BMA. In addition, functions for the authority's operations will be transferred from departments and entities with the associated funding and other resources, including assets.

As part of the iBorders Strategy, which entails a risk-based approach to the management of migration, over the MTEF period, the department plans to focus on establishing necessary systems and a legislative framework. This is aimed at implementing a passenger name record system and an advance passenger processing system. The passenger name record is used to identify unknown threats based on passenger profiles and the Advance Passenger Processing System is used to identify known suspects (for example, those on stop and watchlists). An additional R606 million over the medium term has been allocated to implement the passenger name record system and R486 million over the medium term has been allocated for the Advanced Passenger Pocessing System.

The department is in the process of establishing public-private partnerships for the redevelopment and modernisation of six priority land ports of entry: Beitbridge, Maseru Bridge, Kopfontein, Lebombo, Oshoek and Ficksburg. Related activities will be carried out in the Office Accommodation subprogramme in the Administration programme at an estimated cost of R233 million over the MTEF period.

Legislation

The mandate of the DHA is derived from a broad legislative framework, which includes:

- the Constitution;
- the Births and Deaths Registration Act, 1992 (Act 51 of 1992), as amended (Act 18 of 2010);
- the Marriages Act, 1961 (Act 25 of 1961);
- the Recognitions of Customary Marriages Act, 1998 (Act 120 of 1998);
- the Civil Union Act, 2006 (Act 17 of 2006);
- the Alteration of Sex Description and Sex Status Act, 2003 (Act 49 of 2003);
- the National Archives and Records Service of South Africa Act, 1996 (Act 43 of 1996), as amended;
- the Identification Act, 1997 (Act 68 of 1997);
- the South African Citizenship Act, 1995 (Act 88 of 1995), as amended (current Act 17 of 2010); and
- the South African Passports and Travel Documents Act, 1994 (Act 4 of 1994).

Budget

During the 2019/20 financial year, the DHA received an initial budget allocation of R8.339 billion as voted funds. However, during the adjustment estimates of national expenditure, an additional funding of R1.188 billion was allocated to the department for self-financing. The self-financing mechanism was created by the National Treasury, whereby the department is allocated part of the revenue it collects during the financial year to pay for certain items of expenditure such as Smart ID cards for first-time applicants and citizens older than 60 years, infrastructure to implement the Who Am I Online project, fees for cash-in-transit and printing costs for enabling documents. The final appropriation was R9.527 billion.

Entities

Electoral Commission

The Electoral Commission is a Chapter 9 institution that reports directly to Parliament. It was established in terms of the Electoral Commission Act, 1996 (Act 51 of 1996), which sets out its composition, powers, functions and duties. The commission is mandated to manage national and provincial, and local government elections; ensure that those elections are free and fair; and declare results within a prescribed period. The commission's ongoing focus is on strengthening institutional effectiveness, delivering free and fair elections, informing and engaging citizens and stakeholders in electoral democracy, and contributing to the enhancement of the transparency of elections and party funding.

Over the medium term, the commission will focus on preparations for the 2021 local government elections and the 2024 national and provincial elections. These preparations entail extensive activities around creating awareness among citizens, registering voters, improving technologies, and delivering elections in accordance with the commission's governing legislation and mandate. Preparations for the 2021 local government elections will begin by conducting two general voter registration events across the country over two weekends, in March and May 2021. These registration events will be followed by the 2021 local government elections, which are expected to take place between August and November 2021. Preparations for the 2024 national and provincial elections will commence in 2022/23.

Over the medium term, the commission will undertake extensive outreach activities to keep the electorate informed and attain high voter turnouts on election days. Part of this entails democracy education and communications campaigns on various media platforms. For this purpose, R615 million has been budgeted for, over the MTEF period and R826.7 million, over the same period, has been budgeted for the technology improvements to enhance its registration, voting and counting

processes, including the updating of databases in line with electoral requirements. In addition, R255 million is allocated in 2020/21 for the procurement of 60 000 new and improved voter registration and voting management devices.

Significant cost drivers associated with delivering elections are the procurement, distribution and warehousing of registration and election materials; rental and infrastructure costs associated with voting stations (approximately 23 200); the procurement of items on the bill of electoral material, including ballot papers, ballot boxes and stationery used at voting stations during electoral events; and the maintenance of addresses on the voters' roll. For this purpose, R702 million is allocated in 2021/22 for the local government elections. Allocations for the 2024 national and provincial elections will be made during the next MTEF period.

To carry out preparations for the local government elections and the national and provincial elections; and operations for the 2021 local government elections, R614 million is allocated for the appointment of approximately 350 000 fixed-term and temporary electoral employees to work during registration and election periods. This allocation is also expected to enable the improvement of training programmes.

Expenditure is expected to decrease at an average annual rate of 7%, from R2.2 billion in 2019/20 to R1.7 billion in 2022/23, mainly as a result of capital expenditure amounting to R735.2 million over the MTEF period for the acquisition of a building. Revenue is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 6.5%, from R2.1 billion in 2019/20 to R2.5 billion in 2022/23. The commission derives 99% (R7.1 billion) of its revenue from transfer payments from the DHA.

Government Printing Works

The GPW is mandated to provide security printing and ancillary services to all organs of state in all spheres of government. It was converted to a full government component in 2009 in terms of the Public Service Act, 1999 (Act 5 of 1999), enabling it to operate on sound business principles. The entity fulfils its mandate subject to policies as prescribed by the Minister of Home Affairs. Accordingly, the entity's ongoing objectives are to provide secure printing services to South Africa and some countries in the Southern African Development Community (SADC), produce secure documents for identification and effective border security, and establish itself as the security printer of choice in the region. Over the medium term, the entity will focus on replacing old equipment and machinery, refurbishing its production facility, and developing and attracting specialised skills.

The equipment recapitalisation plan is expected to cost R1.9 billion over the medium term. An existing building in Pretoria has been identified for refurbishment to serve as the entity's new headquarters from 2020/21. The total cost in 2020/21 for refurbishing the building is estimated at R107 million. As a significant portion of the entity's personnel are nearing retirement, the number of personnel in the entity is expected to decrease from 884 in 2019/20 to 874 in 2022/23.

Expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 10.1%, from R1.5 billion in 2019/20 to R2.0 billion in 2022/23. Revenue is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 8.1%, from R1.6 billion in 2019/20 to R2.1 billion in 2022/23. The entity is set to generate 94.4% (R5.4 billion) of its revenue over the medium term through business operations.

Programmes

Civic Services

The Civic Services Branch within the DHA is responsible for ensuring secure, efficient and accessible services and documents for citizens and lawful residents in the country. It does this through execution of the following core functions:

- management of the National Population Register (NPR);
- management of passports and travel documents;
- determination of the status of citizens;
- management of South African IDs and Home Affairs National Identification System (HANIS)/ Automated Biometric System;
- management of births, marriages and death records; and
- registration of births, marriages, deaths as well as amendments of personal particulars.

In addition, the branch renders a verification of identity service to all government institutions, banks and other private sector institutions.

Citizenship

South African citizenship may be granted by way of:

- birth or descent;
- an application for naturalisation as a South African citizen;
- an application for resumption of South African citizenship;
- registration of the birth of children born outside South Africa to South African fathers or mothers;
- an application for exemption; and
- the South African Citizenship Amendment Act, 2010 (Act 17 of 2010), which, among others, ensures that a child:
  - born to a South African parent inside or outside the country is a South African by birth, as long as the child is registered according to South African law;
  - born of non-South African parents, but adopted by South African parents is a citizen by descent; and
  - born of non-South African parents in South Africa, may, at the age of 18 years, apply for naturalisation. While they are minors, such children will retain the citizenship of their parents with no claim to any citizenship.

Dual citizenship

South Africa allows dual citizenship. It occurs when a person is a citizen of more than one country. A South African who wishes to obtain the citizenship of another country must first apply to retain his/her South African citizenship and obtain the exemption before acquiring the foreign citizenship. This will allow him/her to hold dual citizenship.

All South African dual citizens must enter and leave South Africa on their South African passports. Their foreign passports must only be used outside South Africa. There is a penalty of a fine or imprisonment for failure to enter or leave the country using the South African passport.

National Population Register

Early registration of birth is essential to ensure the integrity and credibility of the NPR, which is used to affirm the identity, status and rights of citizens. Furthermore, the optimisation of early birth registration is aligned to the United Nations' (UN) Sustainable Development Goal 16, which is aimed at providing access to justice, ending the scandal of invisibility, trafficking

of children and providing legal identity for all, including birth registration by 2030.

Various public service institutions depend on the availability of the official birth registration figures for planning execution of their respective mandates. Currently the DHA is registering approximately 85% of births within 30 calendar days.

Immigration Services

The DHA's National Immigration Branch is responsible for for control over the admission of foreign nationals for purposes of visitation, work, study, business and residence into South Africa as well as their departure.

The Immigration Policy aims to:

- discourage illegal migration into South Africa by encouraging foreign nationals to apply for relevant permits to legalise their stay in the country;
- create an enabling environment for foreign direct investment in South Africa;
- attract scarce skills required by the economy, in accordance with the 2014 vision of eradicating poverty and underdevelopment;
- temporary and permanent residence permits issue as expeditiously as possible and according to simplified procedures;
- ensure that security considerations are fully satisfied and the State regains control over the immigration of foreign nationals to South Africa;
- ensure that economic growth is promoted through the employment of needed foreign labour; foreign investment is facilitated; the entry of exceptionally skilled or qualified people is enabled and academic exchange programmes in the SADC are facilitated;
- ensure that tourism is promoted;
- ensure that the contribution of foreigners to the South African labour market does not adversely affect existing labour standards and the rights and expectations of South African workers;
- ensure that a policy connection is maintained between foreigners working in South Africa and the training of South African citizens; and
- ensure that a human-rights-based culture of enforcement is promoted.

The Immigration Services Branch is also responsible for the regulation of migration through designated ports of entry and via foreign missions, as supported through its issuance of a range of visa and permits which prescribe conditions of entry into South Africa based on the category of the application made. The Corporate Accounts Unit assists public and private organisations with applications for the importation of scarce skills and business permits.

It is also responsible for the determination of the status of asylum seekers and refugees and the issuing of related permits, confirm and provide enabling documents in the form of Section 22 and Section 24 permits to qualifying clients.

An inspectorate function is responsible for enforcing the Immigration Act of 2002, and must ensure that all foreign visitors are legally residing within the country, and in the event of transgressions, enforce immigration legislation through measures which may include detaining them and in the event that their undocumented or illegal status is confirmed, to effect deportations. The inspectorate also manages a world-class holding facility for persons who may be detained and are awaiting deportation, and this facility has been opened to inspection by international bodies such as the UN High Commissioner for Refugees to confirm that all persons processed through the holding facility are treated with dignity and offered protection in the form of accommodation, meals and medical treatment (where it may be required).

The management of migration is an international phenomenon that provides opportunity for growth, expansion and economic investment to flourish, but it also poses risk to security of citizens and the sovereign integrity of the State if it is not well managed. Since 2008, immigration has adopted a risk-based approach in the execution of its mandate, applying a model that is based on a concentric elimination of risks through application of systems, country profiling, and analysis through liaison, applied business processes and placement of key resources within key international hubs.

The management of immigration must be risk-based and intelligence-led – integrated across international borders and domestic environments. The purpose of adhering to a risk methodology is to ensure that persons travelling to the country can be profiled well in advance, testing the credibility of travel documentation, personal identity and running background checks on the possible listings against national or international stop lists. Systems are powerful tools for development and for socio-economic inclusion, which contributes in turn to social stability and cohesion.

Secure identity systems can enable e-commerce and government, drastically reduce fraud and costs; thus attracting investment and giving the country a competitive edge. Knowing who is in the country, and why, is critical for national security and stability in a globalised world characterised by rapid movements of people, goods, and even spreading epidemics (such the COVID-19 pandemic). A risk-based methodology is thus underpinned by a seamless interface of technology, reporting systems and proactive management by Immigration Services.

Streamlining and securing international migration

The *2017 White Paper on International Migration* (WPIM) provides a policy framework giving a comprehensive review of immigration and related legislation. Elements of the WPIM that require only administrative action are already being implemented. However, those elements of the WPIM that require major changes could not be implemented immediately pending the finalisation of new legislation.

Following Cabinet's approval of the WPIM in March 2018, the DHA started a process of drafting legislation which was finalised in the 2019/20 financial year, having followed an extensive round of consultation across inter-departmental and external stakeholders. The legislative amendments as proposed will undergo the required parliamentary processes in 2020/21.

International engagements

- Policy and Cooperative Governance: the Immigration Services Branch is involved in numerous international engagements through participation in various bilateral and multilateral forums.
- Bilateral level: This includes regular engagements with all the SADC countries and other African countries. It also involves bilateral engagements with other countries outside of Africa

in line with South Africa's foreign policy, as directed by the Department of International Relations and Cooperation.

- Multilateral level: Engagements take place at a number of forums such as:
  - The African Union (AU): AU Summit of Heads of States and Government (presidential invites).
  - The International Organisation for Migration: Migration Dialogue for Southern Africa (The last one was held from 25 to 28 June 2019 in Namibia).
  - The UN: particularly the UN High Level Dialogue on Migration and Development.
  - The SADC: the Ministerial Committee of the Organ on Politics, Defence and Security Cooperation.

AU and Agenda 2063

South Africa, working through the SADC, recognises that the free movement of people and the African Passport, as identified in Agenda 2063 as part of the first 10 years flagship projects, should be accelerated for implementation.

The free movement of people and implementation of the African Passport are regarded as some of the pillars of African integration and accelerated growth of intra-African trade which aims at transforming Africa's laws, through removal of visa requirements, promoting the issuance of a single visa by member states and ultimately, a single African Passport.

Management of asylum seekers and refugees

The Administration of Refugees and Asylum Seekers section within the DHA is managed in line with the Constitution, the Refugees Act of 1998, the 1951 UN Convention on the Status of Refugees and its 1967 Protocol and the 1969 Organisation of African Unity Convention on Refugees.

Refugees enjoy all the human rights contemplated in the Bill of Rights except the right to vote. The Administration of Refugees and Asylum Seekers section has four directorates within the Immigration Branch. They are:

- Business Operational Support.
- Information and Cooperation Management (Country of origin reports).
- Repatriation and Integration.
- Stakeholder Management.

There are five Refugee Reception Offices (RROs): Musina RRO in Limpopo, Desmond Tutu RRO in Gauteng, Durban RRO in KwaZulu-Natal, Port Elizabeth RRO in the Eastern Cape and Cape Town RRO in the Western Cape.

Key operations at RROs include:

- receiving and capturing new asylum applicants, including biometrics with photo and full set of fingerprints stored in HANIS;
- booking clients that cannot be assisted on the same day;
- adjudicating their asylum claims;
- granting refugee status;
- referring manifestly unfounded, fraudulent and abusive decisions to the SCRA;
- referring unfounded decisions to the Refugee Appeal Board (RAB);
- processing failed asylum seekers through the Immigration Act of 2002;
- extending permits of clients awaiting final decisions;
- preparing and communicating SCRA and RAB decisions to asylum seekers;
- joining declared family members;
- processing resettlements and voluntary returns of refugees and asylum seekers;
- receiving applications for and handing over refugee ID and travel documents to persons granted refugee status;
- preparing submissions for SCRA reviews of refugee status in line with country of origin reports;
- preparing submissions for people applying to be refugees indefinitely; and
- administering transgressions (over-stayers, lost permits).

Following the implementation of the referred amendments to the Refugees Act of 1998, the business unit has observed a drastic decline in the number of new asylum applicants as more efficiencies at RROs, the RAA and the SCRA were starting to make an impact. The first three months of 2020 recorded only 2 414 new asylum applicants; most of them dependents born in the country and dependents that have reached the age of maturity, in comparison to the same period in 2019 where the unit recorded 5 118 newcomers.

Management of the inspectorate

The Administration of the Inspectorate section has two directorates within the Immigration Branch – Deportations and Central Law Enforcement.

The Deportation Branch manages the deportation of undocumented or illegal foreign nationals. Besides the coordination of deportations to the country of origin, scope is provided to manage visa and entry stop lists, receive and adjudicate appeals against deportations, prohibitions and to consider applications seeking upliftment of status.

Within the mandate of Central Law Enforcement, officials undertake special investigations and joint operations within the security cluster and participating enforcement arms. This includes investigation of syndicates involved in illegal migration and corruption, civics cases involving acquisition of South African documents illegally and the detection of international fugitives from justice, as well as investigating cases involving terror suspects. The department also cooperates with international bodies and foreign governments to ensure that potential illegal foreigners or terror suspects are detected.

Inspectorate officials are also trained to assist with the detection and fraudulent use of fake passports and IDs. This is specialised, and passports are often made to appear genuine at face value, however a proper investigation can reveal embedded flaws that enable the DHA to timeously react to institute appropriate measures to prevent further distribution and use. Such instances involve criminal cases that require officials to testify in prosecution cases to ensure conviction of the perpetrators.

The DHA also initiated the first ever community border crossing point between South Africa and Botswana at Tshidilamolomo in North West, with the aim to roll these out to other border crossings with selected neighbouring countries. The government is committed to contributing to regional integration in Africa and efforts to ease the movement of Africans on the continent.

Management of Visas and Permits

The section is responsible for providing policy direction and setting standards with regard to issuing of temporary residence visas and permanent residence permits.

Permitting renders a critical function supporting macro-economic investment and attraction of skills. The effective and efficient issuance of critical skills visas is a priority but with attention also being given to the overall improvement of turnaround times for issuance of other categories of permits and visas.

In this way, the DHA is supporting economic stimulus and simplification of the visa regime through attraction of sought-after academics, scientific and engineering skills. It is also an area where the department has made substantial investment to define the regulatory environment and enabling conditions under which priority applications can be processed within a targeted and monitored turnaround period.

The function performed by permitting is critical in respect of supporting the development of the economy and adding to the stimulus of trade, investment and tourism. It also facilitates attraction and retention of critical skills according to risk-based approach to enhance economic growth through skilled labour and investment, tourism, cross-border trades, business in consultation with key government departments and stakeholders. The DHA is in the process of reviewing the current Critical Skills List. Academic assistance has been requested from the Department of Higher Education and Training to help with a research-based methodology that will ensure that the final list is informed by thorough research.

Permitting supports inter-governmental policy to enhance bilateral and multilateral relations with countries that are of interest to South Africa and encourages contacts between business, representatives of cultural, scientific and educational and research institutions. It manages the process of visa exemption agreements that promote intra-regional trade; attract investment for development; promote cross-regional infrastructure projects; and remove the costs of overlapping regional memberships by harmonising integration programmes.

To promote investment and economic opportunity, the DHA has established a partnership with the Gauteng Provincial Government's Gauteng Growth and Development Agency (GGDA) and Visa Facilitation Services (VFS) to serve corporate clients at the DHA Premium Visa and Permit Services Centre, at GGDA's Gauteng Investment Centre in Sandton, whilst similar initiatives have also taken place in the Western Cape and KwaZulu-Natal in partnership with VFS and the Department of Trade, Industry and Competition (dtic). As a key deliverable of the Inter-Ministerial Committee on Investment, the department is also a member of the national one-stop-shop that was opened as part of efforts by government to ease the way of doing business in South Africa, and to attract investors.

The DHA contributes to the one-stop-shop centres by offering investors and their families reduced turnaround times for visas by establishing a dedicated centre at its back office to deal with applications received from the centres and offer immigration-related advice. The service is focused on supporting large corporates, businesses, organisations, and employers who make an important contribution to the economy in infrastructure, manufacturing, energy, retail, professional and financial services, research and development, and knowledge production.

The Immigration Act of 2002 requires any foreign national who enters the country and who is not a holder of a visa or a permanent residence permit, to produce a port of entry visa. As such, the DHA processes temporary visa applications in respect of visitor's visa, relative's visa, medical treatment visa and retired person's visas in accordance with published timeframes whilst permanent residence applications are dealt with under sections 26 and 27 of the Act, which makes provision for eleven different categories under which an application for a permanent residence permit can be lodged.

Exemptions and waivers require a client to substantiate his or her case and show exceptional circumstances in a form of a motivation. The circumstances are investigated, verified and forwarded to the Minister of Home Affairs for a decision. The decision on such cases is thus solely at the discretion of the Minister.

The DHA has also made provision for a person that may be aggrieved by the decision of the department to decline his or her application for a visa or permanent residence permit, to apply for a review of the decision, or submit an appeal application against that decision. Appeals may be submitted twice – first to the Director-General (DG), and if they are rejected on the first appeal, clients may appeal to Minister of Home Affairs.

The Appeals Unit was recently established in response to requirements for the department to demonstrate better efficiency in its management of such appeals and the turnaround times in which they are concluded. A performance target has also been set by the department to monitor achievement against this objective and to satisfy sustainable maintenance of the turnaround.

Special dispensations get considered by the DHA when there are exceptional circumstances that must be considered. Special dispensation applications are handled in accordance with Section 31(2)(b) of the Immigration Act of 2002, in terms of which the Minister of Home Affairs may "grant a foreigner or a category of foreigners the rights of permanent residence for a specified or unspecified period when special circumstances exist which justify such a decision." The special dispensation does not grant the holder the right to apply for permanent residence. Women, children and persons with disability who are eligible are assisted with applications. The DHA has approved special dispensations for approved categories of Zimbabwean and Lesotho nationals (and partially to Angolan cessation categories).

Management of Port Control

The mandate of the Port Control section is to facilitate the legal entry and departure of all persons into and out of South Africa through designated ports of entry.

Port Control focuses on facilitating the movement of bona fide visitors and tourists with the highest possible degree of certainty, security and efficiency in support of national security, priorities and interests whilst preventing illegal migration through the ports of entry.

South Africa shares borders with six countries: Lesotho, Eswatini, Mozambique, Zimbabwe, Botswana and Namibia.

There are 72 designated ports of entry (eight harbours, 11 airports and 53 land ports) that play a critical role in generating employment within the economy, stimulating international trade, investment and tourism.

The functions performed at a designated port of entry include:

- Facilitating travellers' entry and departure through immigration;
- Stakeholder management – government and industry stakeholders, including subcommittees of the BMA;

- International relations – cross border liaison with counterparts of the neighbouring countries;
- Reporting – including statistics and analysis of trends;
- Ensuring the issuance of administrative conveyance fines; and
- Participating in the modernisation efforts of the DHA to ensure transition to best practice international standards in the management and processing of migration.

Movement of persons and goods is managed efficiently and effectively through the border with the participation of other border management stakeholders who have clear responsibilities at the port of entry and borderline. Being faced with an ever-increasing number of travellers, the balance between efficient and effective traveller facilitation and security considerations becomes critical. By building risk-assessment profiles and conducting analysis against watch lists, it enables governments to make fast, accurate and informed decisions to secure borders whilst protecting legitimate travel, tourism and trade.

Whilst facilitating the legitimate movement of travellers and goods, border management staff are also faced with threats posed by transnational crime, terrorism, illegal migration, corruption, pandemics and environmental hazards.

To provide understanding of demand and volumes to be processed at designated ports of entry, it is relevant to note that approximately 42 million traveller movements occur through the country's ports of entry within an annual period.

National Targeting Centre (NTC)

The BMA Bill, 2016 entrusts the BMA Commissioner with the mandate of establishing and maintaining the effective functioning of an intelligence-driven NTC. The NTC is envisaged to have the capability to integrate/coordinate border law enforcement intelligence and operations, manage border risks holistically and operate a national risk management tool. As the NTC is a key component in the establishment of the BMA, a business case for the establishment of the BMA has therefore been developed. It is anticipated that the NTC will be rolled out in six phases in alignment with the BMA roll out phases.

Redevelopment of six priority ports of entry

The existing 72 ports of entry were designed in a different era for a different purpose and are not coping with the current volumes of movement of people and goods. The state of these ports has a negative impact on the economy of the country. In order to address this situation, the Minister of Home Affairs designated six priority ports to be targeted for infrastructure improvement. These are Beit Bridge, Lebombo, Maseru Bridge, Kopfontien, Oshoek and Ficksburg ports of entry.

There is a drive to develop one-stop border posts in Africa to address delaying factors in major transit corridors. Combining the border control formalities for exiting and entering two countries has the potential to reduce travel and processing time for passenger and freight vehicles, resulting in the reduction of transport costs for traders and the cost of goods to the consumers in the supply value chain. As such the six identified ports of entry will be developed as one-stop border posts.

Cognisant of the current fiscal constraints and the urgent need to improve efficiency at these strategic ports of entry, the department will pursue this project through a public-private partnership. This will allow for shared risk between government and the private sector, which is expected to reduce constraint on the national fiscus and allow government to access private sector infrastructure development expertise and financial flexibility. To this end, five bidders were pre-qualified to submit proposals for the redevelopment of these ports. This process will result in the appointment of private parties that will develop and maintain the ports of entry for a period of 20 years.

Consultations on the bilateral agreements between the countries that share the border posts are ongoing and will be concluded in the current financial year. The agreements will cover key aspects such as the one-stop border post model to be implemented and the governance structures.

The construction of the ports of entry will be undertaken in phases and is expected to be completed by 2025.

Visa requirements

Foreigners who wish to enter South Africa must be in possession of valid and acceptable travel documents. They must have valid visas, except in the case of certain countries whose citizens are exempt from visa control. Such exemptions are normally limited to permits, which are issued for 90 days or less at the ports of entry.

The visa system is aimed at facilitating the admission of acceptable foreign nationals at ports of entry. The visa becomes a permit upon entry; therefore, no additional permit will be issued.

In November 2019, requirements for children travelling to or from South Africa were revised to give effect to the Children's Act, 2005 (Act 38 of 2005). Under the regulations, children from visa exempt countries only need a passport if they are accompanied by an adult. If unaccompanied, a child should carry the following documents:

- Copy of his /her birth certificate.
- Parental consent letters.
- Copy of the passport(s)/ID(s) of the parent(s)/legal guardian(s).
- Contact details of the parent(s)/ legal guardian(s).
- Letter from the person who is to receive the child in South Africa, containing his/her residential address and contact details of where the child will reside.
- Copy of the ID/valid passport and visa or permanent residence permit of the person who is to receive the child in South Africa.

Where applicable:

- Copy of an adoption order.
- Copy of a death certificate of the deceased parent/ parents or legal guardian.
- Copy of a court order granting full parental responsibilities and rights or legal guardianship in respect of the child.

The requirements for parental consent and birth certificates remain unchanged in the case of South African children travelling – in view of the requirements of the Children's Act of 2005. Where the DHA has issued a child passport containing the particulars of the parents, a birth certificate is not required.

In respect of inbound travellers (international visitors) where visas are required, provision of original birth certificates or certified copies of required documents would be continued during the visa application process, as this is in line with practice in many other countries.

The DHA outsourced the handling and processing of visa applications to VFS Global. The company has opened 12 offices in nine provinces and 11 cities within South Africa.

Visa and permit applications are accepted across these 12 centres and subsequently assessed by the DHA head offices in Pretoria. Non-South Africans with a legal residency permit in South Africa can apply for a visa or permit at these centres.

These are found at:

- Bloemfontein, Free State
- Bruma (Bedfordview), Gauteng
- Cape Town, Western Cape
- Durban, KwaZulu-Natal
- George, Eastern Cape
- Johannesburg, Gauteng
- Kimberley, Northern Cape
- Nelspruit, Mpumalanga
- Port Elizabeth, Eastern Cape
- Pretoria, Gauteng
- Polokwane, Limpopo
- Rustenburg, North West.

Asylum and refugee cases are directly handled by the DHA. The VFS does not have the authority to grant or refuse visas as that decision still lies with the DHA.

Regulations state that one cannot change from a visitor's visa to another type of visa. Applications, for change of conditions, must be made at a mission abroad – an embassy or consulate, where the applicant is an ordinary resident or holds citizenship. However, exceptional circumstances include if an applicant needs life-saving medical treatment or is an accompanying spouse or child of a business or work visa holder who wishes to apply for a study or work visa.

Life partners looking to apply for temporary residency in South Africa based on a life partner visa will need to prove that they have been together for two years; those applying for permanent residency will need to prove that they have been together for five years. Spouses looking to apply for temporary residency in South Africa based on a spousal visa will not need to prove that they have been in a previous relationship for a certain number of years. If a partner or spouse was in a previous marriage, it is necessary to provide official documents that prove the dissolution of such marriage either by divorce or the death of the other spouse. Life partners will need to attend separate but simultaneous interviews to determine the authenticity of the existence of their relationship.

The DHA has officially eradicated the exceptional skills and quota permit categories. Current exceptional skills and quota permit holders will not be able to renew their permits going forward.

Those looking to renew their visa while in the country must do so 60 days before the current one expires.

Applications for a general work visa will have to include a certificate from the Department of Labour confirming the following:

- despite a thorough search, the prospective employer could not find a South African employee with the skills and experience equivalent to those of the applicant;
- the applicant has proven skills and experience in line with the job offer;
- the salary and benefits of the applicant are not inferior to those of citizens or permanent residents; and
- the contract signed by both the employer and applicant stipulates conditions that are in line with the labour laws of South Africa.

The applicant will need a document to prove that their qualifications have been approved by the South African Qualifications Authority. This document must be translated into one of the official languages of South Africa by a sworn translator. The work visa will be valid for a maximum of five years.

The critical skills work visa is based on a list of occupations that are considered critical (examples include agricultural engineers, land surveyor and forestry technicians) in South Africa. To apply for a visa in this category, the applicant does not need a job offer, but within one year of being granted a visa, will need to prove that he or she is gainfully employed within their field. This visa replaced the exceptional skills and quota visas.

Holders of visitor's visas who wish to change the terms or status of their visa must submit an application no less than 60 days prior to the current visa's date of expiration. It is no longer possible to change from a visitor's visa to another visa category within South Africa.

It is a requirement for businesses to get a recommendation letter from the dtic for a business visa. The dtic then conducts a thorough forensic assessment of the feasibility of the business entity as well as the contribution to the national interest of South Africa.

A minimum of R5 million must be invested into South Africa. Any accountant registered with the South African Institute of Professional Accountants or the South African Institute of Chartered Accountants can verify the availability of funds for a business visa.

The business owner's workforce must be 60% South Africans or must be permanent residents employed in various positions. Business visas will be granted for no longer than three years at a time. No business visa will be issued to a foreigner who intends to establish or invest in a business that is listed as an undesirable business undertaking.

To obtain an intra-company visa the employee in question must be employed with the foreign office/business for a minimum of six months before being eligible for transfer to South Africa. This visa is available for four years but is non-renewable.

Holders of a study visa may not conduct part-time work exceeding 20 hours of labour a week. Both study and exchange visas are only issued for the duration of the study period or exchange programme, respectively.

An exchange visa (for people under 25 years) will not be granted to conduct work pertaining to what is considered an undesirable work as published by the Minister of Home Affairs in the gazette, after consultation with the Minister of Trade, Industry and Competition.

An asylum transit visa issued at a port of entry is valid for a period of five days to enable the holder to report at a nearest refugee reception office.

Fines are no longer charged for overstaying. People who overstay for a prescribed number of times are declared as undesirable.

The DHA has implemented biometric capture at OR Tambo, King Shaka, Cape Town and Lanseria international airports, which has enabled it to abolish the transit visa and allow prospective travellers (mainly from China) to apply for visas through accredited tourism operators.

Control of travellers

People arriving in South Africa by air, sea or land have to pass through customs control, where they may be questioned and their baggage scanned or searched for dutiable, restricted or prohibited goods. Visitors found with undeclared, restricted or prohibited goods could be fined or may face prosecution.

South Africa acceded to the Admission Temporaire/ Temporary Admission (ATA) Convention in 1975, which means foreign visitors' companies and individuals can approach their local chambers of commerce for advice regarding the issuing of an ATA Carnet for the temporary import of certain goods in a simplified method. An example would be broadcasters or sponsors of international sporting events taking place in South Africa.

Court sojourn

Foreign nationals who are in the country illegally and are, therefore, guilty of an offence may be classified into three categories, namely those who:

- entered the country clandestinely;
- failed to renew the temporary residence permits issued to them at ports of entry; and
- breached the conditions of their temporary residence permits without permission, such as holiday visitors who took up employment or started their own businesses.

Depending on the circumstances, people who are in South Africa illegally are prosecuted, removed or their sojourn is legalised. Officers at the various regional and district offices of the DHA are in charge of tracing, prosecuting and removing illegal foreigners from the country. Employers of illegal foreigners may also be prosecuted.

Permanent residence

Government allows immigration on a selective basis. The DHA is responsible for:

- processing applications for immigration permits for consideration; and
- admitting people suitable for immigration, such as skilled workers in occupations in which there is a shortage in South Africa.

The department particularly encourages applications by industrialists and other entrepreneurs who wish to relocate their existing concerns, or to establish new concerns in South Africa.

The DHA is not directly involved in an active immigration drive. In categories where shortages exist, the normal procedure is for employers to recruit abroad independently and, in most cases, initially apply for temporary work permits.

The DHA considers the applications for immigration permits of prospective immigrants who wish to settle in the relevant provinces. Regions are responsible for issuing permits previously issued by the regional committees, in respect of permanent residence. They will also do so in respect of temporary residence. Enquiries, in this regard, may be made to the nearest office of the DHA in South Africa, to missions abroad, or to the DG of the DHA for the attention of the Directorate: Permitting, in Pretoria.

The department has prioritised temporary residence permits, as this category of foreigners is at risk of being in the country illegally, if their applications are not finalised in time.

The DHA will prioritise applications for permanent residence permits from holders of quota work permits and exceptional skills work permits, in line with the country's objective of attracting critical skills.

Temporary residence

The Zimbabwean Special Dispensation Permit (ZSP) replaced the Dispensation for Zimbabwe Project (DZP) which officially closed on 31 December 2014.

Under the DZP, Zimbabwean nationals, who were in the country illegally, were granted an opportunity to legalise their stay. The special dispensation was introduced in 2009 to regulate the stay of Zimbabweans working illegally in South Africa because of the political and socio-economic situation in their country.

Approximately 295 000 Zimbabweans applied for the permit. Just over 245 000 permits were issued, with the balance being denied due to lack of passports or non-fulfilment of other requirements. The ZSP was accepted by Cabinet in August 2014. Zimbabwean nationals who were in possession of the DZP permits were eligible to apply for the ZSP if they wished to extend their stay in South Africa. Certain conditions applied, which included a valid Zimbabwean passport; evidence of employment, business, or accredited study, and a clear criminal record.

The ZSP allowed permit-holders to live, work, conduct business and study in South Africa for the duration of the permit, which would be valid until 31 December 2017.

In August 2017, Cabinet approved the reopening of the application process for the current ZSP holders, under certain conditions. The ZSP allows applications from Zimbabweans with a valid Zimbabwean passport, evidence of employment, business or accredited study and a clear criminal record and if successful, grants them a permit to stay and work, study or run a business in South Africa.

VFS Global managed applications for ZSP permits while the DHA adjudicated applications. VFS Global opened four new offices in provinces where it was anticipated that there would be large numbers of applicants. These were Gauteng, Western Cape, Limpopo and Mpumalanga. The offices were in addition to the 11 offices already opened, all of which dealt with ZSP applications.

ZSP permit-holders, who wished to stay in South Africa after the expiry of their permits, would need to return to Zimbabwe to apply for mainstream visas and permits under the Immigration Act of 2002.

In January 2016, the Lesotho Special Permit (LSP) was launched. The purpose of the programme was to regularise the stay of Lesotho nationals residing in South Africa illegally.

It was meant to document Lesotho nationals who are working, studying or running businesses in South Africa, without appropriate documentation. A total of 90 314 permits were issued.

The special permits were valid for four years, until 31 December 2019. In November 2019, the DHA introduced the new Lesotho Exemption Permit which replaces the LSP. The new dispensation was only applicable to existing holders of the LSP and is valid for four years. Online applications opened on 18 November 2019 and closed on 31 March 2020.

wacom

2019/20 SOUTH AFRICA YEARBOOK

Human Settlements, Water and Sanitation

Human Settlements, Water and Sanitation

The Department of Human Settlements (DHS) and the Department of Water and Sanitation (DWS) report to the Minister of Human Settlements, Water and Sanitation.

Human Settlements

The DHS derives its core mandate and responsibilities from Section 26 of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996 and Section 3 of the Housing Act, 1997 (Act 107 of 1997). This allows the department, in collaboration with provinces and municipalities, to establish and facilitate a sustainable process for the development of housing. The DHS does this by determining national policy and national norms and standards for the development of housing and human settlements, setting broad national goals for the delivery of housing, providing funding to provinces and metropolitan municipalities, and monitoring the financial and non-financial performance of provinces and municipalities against these goals. In executing these roles and responsibilities, the department also builds capacity for provinces and municipalities, and promotes consultation with all stakeholders in the housing delivery chain, including other sector departments, civil society and the private sector.

The National Development Plan (NDP) expresses the need for a systematic response to South Africa's entrenched spatial patterns that exacerbate social inequality and economic inefficiency. Priority 4 (spatial integration, human settlements and local government) of government's 2019 – 2024 Medium Term Strategic Framework (MTSF) is aimed at addressing this need. To give effect to these guiding policies, the DHS will focus on four priority areas over the medium term: facilitating the development of integrated human settlements, upgrading informal settlements, providing affordable rental housing and providing affordable housing finance.

Integrated human settlements

The development of integrated human settlements is aimed at transforming spatial housing patterns in South Africa by creating more inclusive, denser, mixed-use urban areas, while striving for a more functional housing market that adequately responds to both supply and demand for all levels of affordability and need. The department is reviewing housing legislation and related policies to transition from a narrow focus on housing alone to a more holistic view of human settlements.

Integrated housing developments are funded mainly through the Urban Settlements Development Grant and the Human Settlements Development Grant. To deliver mixed-use, mixed-income and integrated settlements, the department, through housing and infrastructure subsidies delivered through provinces, municipalities and public entities such as the Housing Development Agency (HDA), is expected to spend R71.9 billion over the Medium Term Expenditure Framework (MTEF) period. Of this amount, an estimated R23.7 billion is allocated to metropolitan cities for bulk and related infrastructure through the Urban Settlements Development Grant, whereas provinces are allocated an estimated R41.5 billion for housing and related infrastructure through the Human Settlements Development Grant.

Upgrading informal settlements

According to Statistics South Africa's 2018 General Household Survey (published in May 2019), 14% (2.3 million) of South African households are in informal settlements. The DHS's plan to upgrade informal settlements is intended to provide security of tenure and basic services to poor and underserviced households, with the prospect of state assisted housing structures for those who meet the qualifying criteria.

The sector will rely on participation from communities and community-based organisations to inform the planning and design of informal settlements as it implements the upgrades. This will enable households to invest in their communities, especially those that do not qualify for full housing subsidies. An estimated R22.6 billion will be spent on the upgrading of informal settlements over the next three years. Of this amount, R2.3 billion is set to be spent in cities through a component in the Urban Settlements Development Grant in 2020/21; R2.4 billion in provinces through a component in the Human Settlements Development Grant in 2020/21; and R16.1 billion in cities and provinces through the new Informal Settlements Upgrading Partnership Grant in 2021/22 and 2022/23.

Affordable rental housing

The DHS is committed to providing rental and social housing to support the affordable housing market, which requires flexibility in tenure in a dynamic and changing economic environment. To support this objective, spending in the Rental and Social Housing programme is expected to increase from R850.8 million in 2019/20 to R971.1 million in 2022/23 at an average annual rate of 4.5%.

To accelerate the delivery of well-located, affordable rental and social housing, the DHS plans to provide capital subsidies to accredited social housing institutions through the Social Housing Regulatory Authority (SHRA) to lower the cost of construction for developers and the cost of occupation for tenants. The authority is expected to provide R2.3 billion in subsidies over the medium term.

Affordable housing finance

The provision of affordable housing is an important aspect of supporting the housing market. As household incomes have increased over time, many people have found themselves in a position where they earn too much to qualify for a full housing subsidy, but too little to qualify for a mortgage loan that matches income-related housing supply. The DHS is working to enhance affordable housing finance programmes to assist this growing segment by providing lump-sum deposits to qualifying beneficiaries to lower their monthly mortgage repayments. Funding for this priority area is in the Affordable Housing programme, in which spending is expected to increase from R233.6 million in 2019/20 to R633.4 million in 2022/23 at an average annual rate of 39.4%. This increase is largely driven by additional allocations of R1.3 billion over the MTEF period for the National Housing Finance Corporation's (NHFC) Finance-Linked Individual Subsidy Programme (FLISP).

Legislation and policy

The mandate of the DHS is derived from the following legislative framework:

- the Housing Act of 1997, which provides for the facilitation of a sustainable housing development process, and further lays down general principles applicable to housing development

in all spheres of government, including defining the functions of national, provincial and local governments in respect of housing development;

- the Estate Agency Affairs Board Act, 1976 (Act 112 of 1976), which provides for the establishment of an Estate Agency Affairs Board and an Estate Agents Fidelity Fund, including the control of certain activities of estate agents in the public interest;
- the Social Housing Act, 2008 (Act 16 of 2008), which provides for the establishment of the SHRA, as regulator of all social housing institutions, and further defines the functions of national, provincial and local governments in respect of social housing;
- the Prevention of Illegal Eviction and Unlawful Occupation of Land Act, 1998 (Act 19 1998), as amended, which provides for the prohibition of unlawful eviction and further provides procedures for the eviction of unlawful occupiers, including the repeal of the Prevention of Illegal Squatting Act, 1951 (Act 52 of 1951);
- the Housing Consumers Protection Measures Act, 1998 (Act 95 of 1998), which makes provision for the protection of housing consumers and also provides for the establishment and functions of the National Home Builders Registration Council (NHBRC);
- the Rental Housing Act, 1999 (Act 50 of 1999), which provides clear roles and responsibilities of government in respect of rental housing property and also makes a provision for promoting access to adequate housing through creating mechanisms for ensuring the proper functioning of the rental housing market;
- the Public Finance Management Act (PFMA), 1999 (Act 1 of 1999), as amended, which secures transparency, accountability, and sound management of the revenue, expenditure, assets and liabilities of the institutions to which it applies. The Act regulates financial management in the national government and provincial spheres of governments. It also assists in ensuring that all revenue, expenditure, assets as well as liabilities of those two spheres of governments are managed efficiently and effectively. The Act further provides for the responsibilities of persons entrusted with financial management in those two spheres of governments;
- the Home Loan and Mortgage Disclosure Act, 2000 (Act 63 of 2000), which promotes the practice of fair lending by requiring disclosure by financial institutions of information regarding the provision of home loans. It also serves to establish an Office of Disclosure. The Act requires lenders to compile and disclose annual data on the demographic makeup and geographic distribution of housing-related loans;
- the Intergovernmental Relations Framework Act, 2005 (Act 13 of 2005), which serves to establish a framework for the three spheres of government to promote and facilitate intergovernmental relations among them. The Act also provides for mechanisms and procedures in order to facilitate the settlement of intergovernmental disputes among spheres of government.;
- the HDA Act, 2008 (Act 23 of 2008), which serves to establish the agency and to provide for its functions and powers. It also outlines the roles of the agency, which is to facilitate the acquisition of land and landed property, in a way that complements the capacities of government across all spheres, and to fast-track land acquisition and housing development services for the purpose of creating sustainable human settlements;
- the Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act, 2013 (Act 16 of 2013), which provides a framework for spatial planning and land use management in South Africa. It specifies the relationship between the spatial planning and the land use management system and other kinds of planning. It also ensures that the system of spatial planning and land use management promoted social and economic inclusion;
- the Community Scheme Ombud Service Act, 2011 (Act 9 of 2011), which serves to provide for the establishment of the Community Schemes Ombud Service and to provide for its mandate and functions. The Act also provides for a dispute resolution mechanism in community schemes;
- the Broad-based Black Economic Empowerment Act, 2003 (Act 53 of 2003), which establishes a legislative framework for the promotion of black economic empowerment and empowers the relevant Minister to issue codes of good practice and to publish transformation charters for key sectors. The Act further establishes the Black Economic Empowerment Advisory Council;
- the Expropriation Act, 1975 (Act 63 of 1975), which serves to provide for the expropriation of land and other property for public and certain other purposes;
- the Development Facilitation Act, 1995 (Act 67 of 1995), which facilitates and speeds up the implementation of the Reconstruction and Development Programme and projects;
- the Less Formal Township Establishment Act, 1991 (Act 113 of 1991), as amended, which provides for shortened procedures for the designation, provision and development of land and for the establishment of township for less formal forms of residential settlement;
- the National Environment Management Act (NEMA), 1998 (Act 107 of 1998), as amended, which protects ecologically viable areas representative of South Africa‘s biological diversity and its natural landscapes and seascapes in a system of protected areas. The Act places a responsibility to the department to adhere to the sustainable development and conservation principles;
- the Sectional Titles Management Act, 2011 (Act 8 of 2011), which provides for the establishment of body corporates to manage and regulate sections and common property in sectional titles schemes and for that purpose to apply rules applicable to such schemes. It further requires the body corporates to establish a sectional titles schemes management advisory council; and
- the Division of Revenue Act, 2018 (Act 14 of 2018), as amended, which provides for the equitable division of revenue raised nationally among the national, provincial and local spheres of government for various financial years. It also makes a determination of each province’s equitable share and allocations to provinces, local government and municipalities from national government’s equitable share and the responsibilities of all three spheres pursuant to such division and allocations.

Budget

For the 2019/20 financial year, the DHS was allocated R33.9 billion. As a result of Cabinet-approved budget reductions of R14.6 billion over the MTEF period, the department's allocation is set to decrease at an average annual rate of 1.1%, from R33.9 billion in 2019/20 to R32.8 billion in 2022/23. These reductions are largely affected on conditional grants to provinces and metropolitan cities for the development of housing and related infrastructure due to government's broad imperative to reduce public spending.

Entity

National Housing Finance Corporation

The NHFC was established in 1996 as a Schedule 3A development finance institution. Its principal mandate is to broaden and deepen access to affordable housing finance for low-income to middle-income households by facilitating private-sector lending for housing. Over the medium term, the corporation will focus on providing incremental housing finance, mainly for rural housing; developer and emerging contractor finance; affordable rental housing finance; and finance-linked individual subsidies to qualifying households. Funding will be delivered through non-banking financial institutions and other retail intermediaries. It is expected that, over the medium term, a human settlements development bank, which will assume this function, will be formally established. The corporation derives its revenue mainly through interest on loans; interest and dividends on investments; rental income; and transfers from the DHS for the FLISP, which account for an average of 43.4% (R1.4 billion) of total revenue over the MTEF period and include an operational allocation. Expenditure is expected to increase from R475.6 million in 2019/20 to R918.8 million in 2022/23 at an average annual rate of 24.5%, largely driven by the significant increase in the funding for the FLISP.

Other entities

Community Schemes Ombud Service

The Community Schemes Ombud Service provides a dispute resolution service for community schemes, monitors and controls the quality of all documentation for sectional title scheme governance, and takes custody of, preserves and provides public access to scheme governance documentation. The entity's total budget for 2019/20 was R267.8 million.

Estate Agency Affairs Board

The board regulates, maintains and promotes the conduct of estate agents. The board is also responsible for managing and controlling the Estate Agents Fidelity Fund, issuing Estate Agents Fidelity Fund certificates, prescribing the standard of education and training for estate agents, and investigating complaints lodged against estate agents. The board's total budget for 2019/20 was R162.2 million.

Housing Development Agency

The agency identifies, acquires, holds, develops and releases state-owned and privately-owned land for residential and community purposes. The HDA is also responsible for managing housing development projects for the creation of sustainable human settlements. The agency's total budget for 2019/20 was R443.3 million.

National Home Builders Registration Council

The NHBRC protects and represents the interests of housing consumers by providing warranty protection against defined defects in new homes and regulates the homebuilding industry. The council also provides training and capacity building to promote and ensure compliance with technical standards in the home-building environment.

Social Housing Regulatory Authority

The authority regulates the social housing sector to ensure a sustainable flow of investment into accredited social housing projects in restructuring zones. The regulator's total budget for 2019/20 was R815.9 million.

Programmes and funding

Finance-Linked Individual Subsidy Programme

The Constitution enshrines the right of everyone to have access to adequate housing and makes it incumbent upon government to take reasonable measures to achieve this.

Among government's many programmes, the FLISP is specifically intended for the market segment whose income is inadequate to qualify for a home loan but exceeds the maximum limit applicable to access government's "free basic house" subsidy scheme. This market segment, generally known as the "affordable/gap" market, earns between R3 501 and R15 000 per month.

Households in this segment, if buying a home for the first time, may apply for a FLISP subsidy.

The subsidy attaches to the beneficiary and not to the property. This is used to decrease the mortgage bond and applies only to people who have never been assisted by government. It is disbursed as a once-off subsidy.

Rental and Social Housing

Social housing provides medium density rental housing to low income households. The programme promotes the provision of affordable rental housing, monitors the performance of the SHRA, and develops capabilities in the rental housing sector through intergovernmental collaboration and evidence-based research. Over the medium term, work under the programme will include promoting the delivery of affordable rental housing by conducting research, and developing policies and programmes as and when required, strengthening cooperation and collaboration by facilitating intergovernmental forums and stakeholder partnerships on an ongoing basis, and accelerate the provision of affordable rental housing by providing capital and operational funding to the SHRA to deliver 18 000 social housing units and monitoring and evaluating the financial and non-financial performance of affordable rental housing programmes and projects on a monthly and quarterly basis.

Integrated Human Settlements Planning and Development

The programme manages the development of policy, planning and research in the creation of sustainable and integrated human settlements, oversees the delivery of the Integrated Residential Development Programme, and coordinates intergovernmental partnerships with stakeholders. Over the medium term, work under the programme will include accelerating the delivery

of spatially integrated housing and human settlements development by transferring and monitoring the Human Settlements Development Grant and Title Deeds Restoration Grant to provinces, and the Urban Settlements Development Grant to metropolitan municipalities and undertaking research and developing housing and human settlements policies and programmes. It will also promote planning coordination and strengthen intergovernmental cooperation across and within different spheres of government by providing support to provinces and municipalities in the development of 57 integrated implementation plans over the medium term and facilitating intergovernmental forums and stakeholder partnerships on an ongoing basis.

Informal Settlements

The programme provides policy, planning and capacity support for the upgrading of informal settlements, and oversees the implementation of the Informal Settlements Upgrading Programme. Over the medium term, work under the programme will include accelerating the provision of security of tenure, basic services and related infrastructure by managing the transfer of the Informal Settlements Upgrading Partnership Grant to municipalities and provinces, undertaking evidence-based research and developing responsive policies and supporting provinces and municipalities through the National Upgrading Support Programme.

Affordable Housing

The programme facilitates the provision of affordable housing finance, monitors market trends, and develops research and policy that respond to demand. It also oversees housing finance entities reporting to the Minister of Human Settlements, Water and Sanitation. Over the medium term, work under the programme will include strengthening cooperation and collaboration by facilitating intergovernmental forums and stakeholder partnerships. It will also accelerate the provision of affordable housing finance by providing capital and operational funding to the NHFC for the administration of the FLISP, researching and developing policies and programmes that promote the provision of affordable housing finance for households as and when required and monitor and evaluate the financial and non-financial performance of affordable housing programmes and projects.

Housing subsidies

A housing subsidy is a grant given by government to qualifying beneficiaries to be used for housing purposes. The subsidy is either paid to a seller of a house or, in new developments, it is used to finance the construction of a house that complies with the ministerial minimum norms and standards. The house is then transferred to the qualifying beneficiary.

One of the DHS's areas of responsibility in the delivery of human settlements relates to the bottom-most end of the market, where it provides housing subsidies to the poor.

This is where the bulk of the housing backlog exists, affecting mainly those who earn below R3 500 a month.

Individual subsidies

An individual subsidy provides qualifying beneficiaries with access to housing subsidies to acquire ownership of improved residential properties (a stand or house) or to finance the acquisition of a serviced site linked to a house-building contract that is not part of an approved housing-subsidy project.

The latter option is only available to beneficiaries with access to housing credit. The subsidy amount of R84 000 comprises R6 000 for the raw land cost, R22 162 for internal municipal engineering services and R55 706 for the cost of constructing the top structure.

Consolidation subsidies

This subsidy mechanism gives former beneficiaries of serviced stands, financed by the previous housing dispensation (including the Independent Development Trust's site and service schemes), the opportunity to acquire houses.

Housing Development Finance Programme

The grant funds the delivery of housing and human settlements programmes, and manages all matters related to improving access to housing finance and developing partnerships with the financial sector. Its objectives are to:

- manage the performance of provinces and municipalities by monitoring the expenditure and non-financial performance of human settlements development and housing programmes on a monthly and quarterly basis;
- accelerate the delivery of housing and human settlements by providing funding from the Human Settlements Development Grant, the Urban Settlements Development Grant and transfers to public entities on a scheduled ongoing basis;
- improve access to housing finance by collaborating with the private sector and related entities to develop mechanisms to increase market penetration and provide loans to low and middle income households on an ongoing basis; and
- ensure equal access to housing finance through monitoring the lending practices of the financial sector by publishing an annual report on mortgage finance.

Institutional subsidies

Institutional subsidies are available to qualifying housing institutions. The subsidy is paid to approved institutions to provide subsidised housing on deed of sale, rental or rent-to-buy options.

This is done on condition that the beneficiaries may not be compelled to pay the full purchase price and take transfer within the first four years of receiving the subsidy. Institutions must also invest capital from their own resources in the project.

Subsidies for people with disabilities

People with disabilities who qualify for a housing subsidy receive additional amounts to improve their houses with special additions such as paving and ramps to their doors, grab rails in bathrooms, and visible doorbells for the deaf.

Enhanced Extended Discount Benefit Scheme

The scheme promotes home ownership among tenants of state-financed rental stock, including formal housing and serviced sites. The scheme is only available to beneficiaries who took occupation of such rented houses before 15 March 1991.

Rural subsidies

These housing subsidies are available to beneficiaries who enjoy only functional tenure rights to the land they occupy.

This land belongs to the State and is governed by traditional authorities.

These subsidies are only available on a project basis and beneficiaries are supported by implementing agents. Beneficiaries also have the right to decide how to use their subsidies, either for service provision, for the building of houses, or for a combination of these.

Farm resident subsidies

The Housing Subsidy Programme for Farm Residents addresses the wide variety of housing needs of people working and residing on farms by providing a flexible package of housing models to suit the local context.

In most instances, the programme is applied where farm residents are required to reside close to their employment obligations and where the farm land is distant from the nearest town, rendering the settlement of the farm residents in town impracticable.

Farm residents play an important role in all aspects of their housing solutions regarding the selection of options, the design and implementation phase, as well as the ongoing management of the housing stock.

In May 2020, the Minister of Human Settlements, Water and Sanitation announced 136 priority human settlements and housing development areas (PHSHDAs) across the country. The initiative is aimed at ensuring redress regarding the pre-1994 spatial plan, revitalising towns and cities and strengthening the livelihoods of households. It will enable residents to live closer to areas with economic activities and social amenities such as schools, health facilities and job opportunities while accessing adequate accommodation.

The initiative will be implemented in line with the national housing programmes namely, the Enhanced People's Housing Process, the Informal Settlements Upgrading, the Integrated Residential Development Programme and the Social Housing Programme.

The PHSHDAs will cover the entire country as follows:

- KwaZulu-Natal: 22
- Western Cape: 19
- Mpumalanga: 16
- North West: 14
- Eastern Cape: 12
- Limpopo: 11
- Free State: 10
- Northern Cape: 6

Human Settlements Development Grant

The grant reflects the conditional allocation transferred to all provinces for the delivery of housing projects, as per the National Housing Code.

Rural Housing Loan Fund

The Rural Housing Loan Fund is a wholesale lending institution. It is mandated to facilitate access to housing credit to low-income rural households by providing wholesale finance through a network of retail intermediaries and community-based organisations.

International relations

South Africa is party to the United Nations (UN) Millennium Development Goals, which provide for the significant improvement in the lives of at least 100 million slum dwellers by 2020. In addition to these conventions, South Africa adheres to the following declarations under the UN Habitat Programme:

- the Vancouver Declaration on Human Settlements of 1976; and
- the Istanbul Declaration on Cities and other Human Settlements of 1996 and the Habitat Agenda of 1996, the focus of which is to address the plight of people without adequate housing.

World Urban Forum (WUF)

The WUF was established by the UN to ensure that member states and the world responds to ensure proper and sustainable management of urbanisation in towns and cities across the globe. The matters which receive attention include eradicating the ill effects of urbanisation such as poverty, unemployment, inequality, and managing the negative consequences of climate change on communities.

It brings together government leaders, Ministers, mayors, diplomats, members of national, regional and local government, non-governmental and community organisations, professionals, academics, grassroots leadership of women and youth to debate and propose solutions to ensure proper, working, equitable and sustainable livelihoods for households and people living in urban areas.

The forum also advises the Executive Director of the UN-Habitat, and the UN-Habitat's Governing Council on key issues that should inform the work of UN Habitat and all key stakeholders in the field of human settlements and urban development.

The 10th session of the WUF was held from 8 – 13 February 2020 in Abu Dhabi, United Arab Emirates; the first time that an Arab country hosted the world's most important conference on cities and human settlements.

The event was convened by UN-Habitat in partnership with the Abu Dhabi Department of Urban Planning and Municipalities, the Abu Dhabi Department of Culture and Tourism, Ministry of Foreign Affairs and International Cooperation, General Secretariat of the Executive Council, and the Abu Dhabi National Exhibition Centre. It was held under the theme, "Cities of Opportunities: Connecting Culture and Innovation".

Water and Sanitation

The DWS legislative mandate seeks to ensure that the country's water resources are protected, managed, used, developed, conserved and controlled by regulating and supporting the delivery of effective water supply and sanitation. This is done in accordance with the requirements of water-related policies and legislation that are critical in delivering on people's right to have sufficient food and water, growing the economy, and eradicating poverty.

Chapter 4 of the NDP envisages a South Africa that recognises the importance of secure and equitable access to water and sanitation as catalysts for socio-economic development. This is given expression by Priority 1 (economic transformation and job creation) and Priority 4 (spatial integration, human settlements and local government) of government's 2019 – 2024 MTSF, with which the work of the DWS is aligned. Accordingly, the department will continue to focus on integrated water resources management, infrastructure planning, and developing and regulating water services.

Water resources management, infrastructure planning and development

The Water and Sanitation Master Plan details the requirements for appropriate investment into water resources and services,

and sets targets for adequate water conservation and demand management. To support the implementation of the master plan, the Water Infrastructure Development Programme is expected to receive allocations amounting to R41.6 billion over the MTEF period. These allocations will provide funding to the Regional Bulk Infrastructure Grant, the Water Services Infrastructure Grant and transfers to the Water Trading Entity for the development of key water infrastructure. Funding in these grants for new and existing projects amount to R33.2 billion over the medium term. Funding from these grants will be used to implement two mega projects and 26 large regional bulk infrastructure projects. Over the medium term, 280 small regional bulk and water services infrastructure projects will be implemented.

To address water infrastructure backlogs and improve operational sustainability, over the medium term, the DHS will continue to plan and maintain infrastructure. Related activities will be carried out in the Water Planning and Information Management programme, which is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 7.6%, from R907.9 million in 2019/20 to R1.1 billion in 2022/23. To continue funding short-term and long-term interventions in new and existing projects, the Water Trading Entity will receive transfers amounting to R7.2 billion over the medium term. Projects include acid mine drainage operations in Gauteng, phase 2D of the Olifants River Water Resources Development Project, the Mokolo-Crocodile River Water Augmentation Project, the raising of Tzaneen Dam, the Umdloti River Development Project, and the raising of the Hazelmere Dam.

Regulating water services

Over the period ahead, the DWS plans to reintroduce regulatory quality valuations on the provision of water services. These valuations are intended to measure the level of compliance with the green drop and blue drop standards. Accordingly, the department plans to assess 963 wastewater in 2020/21 and 1 010 water supply systems in 2021/22. To improve equitable access to water resources, the department plans to process 80% of the water use licence applications it receives within 120 days. In addition, the department plans to assess and determine the resource quality of the uThukela River system. These activities will be carried out in the Water Sector Regulation programme, which is expected to receive allocations amounting to R1.3 billion over the medium term.

Legislation

The Constitution enshrines the basic human right to have access to sufficient water, as well as a safe and healthy environment. The government fulfils these rights through the DWS, assisted by specific legislation:

- the National Water Act, 1998 (Act 36 of 1998), which ensures that South Africa's water resources are protected, used, developed, conserved, managed and controlled in a sustainable and equitable manner, for the benefit of all people;
- the Water Services Act, 1997 (Act 108 of 1997), which prescribes the legislative duty of municipalities as water-service authorities to provide water supply and sanitation according to national standards and norms. It also regulates water boards as important water service providers and gives the executive authority and responsibility to the Minister of Human Settlements, Water and Sanitation to support and strengthen the capacity of municipalities to manage their own affairs, exercise their powers and perform their functions;
- the Water Research Act, 1971 (Act 34 of 1971), which provides for the promotion of water-related research through a Water Research Commission (WRC) and a Water Research Fund; and
- the NEMA of 1998, which makes provision for cooperative environmental governance by establishing principles for decision-making on matters affecting the environment, institutions that promote cooperative governance and procedures for coordinating environmental functions exercised by organs of state.

Budget

The DWS was allocated R16.5 billion for the 2019/20 financial year.

Expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 2.9%, from R16.5 billion in 2019/20 to R17.9 billion in 2022/23. Transfers and subsidies, and payments for capital assets account for 78.2% (R40.9 billion) of the department's total expenditure over the MTEF period. The bulk of the department's remaining expenditure over the same period is on compensation of employees, which amounts to R6.3 billion; and goods and services, which amounts to R5.2 billion.

Spending in the Water Infrastructure Development programme accounts for 79.7% (R41.6 billion) of the DWS's total expenditure over the medium term. This is despite Cabinet having approved reductions amounting to R2.2 billion over the same period on the Regional Bulk Infrastructure Grant and the Water Services Infrastructure Grant, which are funded through the programme. As a result of these reductions, direct transfers to municipalities are expected to increase at an average annual rate of 1.4%, from R5.7 billion in 2019/20 to R6 billion in 2022/23.

Entities

Consolidated water boards

Water boards derive their mandates from the Water Services Act of 1997 and are listed under Schedule 3B in the PFMA of 1999. There are nine water boards, which are primarily mandated to provide bulk industrial and potable water services to municipalities and industries within their gazetted areas of operation. The water boards vary in size, activities, customer mix, revenue base and capacity. Rand Water and Umgeni Water, which are discussed separately, operate largely in urban areas, while others operate in rural areas. In addition to responding to their core mandate, some water boards provide retail water and sanitation services on behalf of municipalities as secondary activities.

Consolidated expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 9.9%, from R21.7 billion in 2019/20 to R28.8 billion in 2022/23. This is mainly due to increases in the purchase of raw water, and costs related to energy, pumping and chemicals. Accordingly, spending on bulk water activities is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 11.3%, from R15.7 billion in 2019/20 to R21.7 billion in 2022/23. The water boards' capital expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 12.5%, from R7.2 billion in 2019/20 to R10.2 billion in 2022/23. Revenue, which is expected to amount to R98.1 billion over the MTEF period, is generated from the sale of bulk water and other sources such as interest, dividends and rent on land.

Rand Water

Rand Water was established in terms of the Water Services Act of 1997 and is categorised as a national government business enterprise in terms of Schedule 3B of the PFMA of 1999. The water board serves approximately 19 million people, with the Vaal River system supplying 98% of its bulk water. Rand Water stores, treats and delivers potable water to municipalities, mines and industries in and around Gauteng.

Over the medium term, the water board will continue to focus on its primary bulk water activities at an estimated cost of R39.7 billion, accounting for 79.5% of its total expenditure. Spending on bulk water activities is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 12.9%, from R10.3 billion in 2019/20 to R14.8 billion in 2022/23. Accordingly, spending on goods and services is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 11.3%, from R10.7 billion in 2019/20 to R14.7 billion in 2022/23; and spending on compensation of employees is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 7.9%, from R2 billion in 2019/20 to R2.6 billion in 2022/23. This is in line with the water board's expected increase in personnel by 32 over the period ahead to assist with its planned expansion of service coverage.

Spending on capital assets is expected to increase at an annual average rate of 20.1%, from R3.7 billion in 2019/20 to R6.3 billion in 2022/23, mainly driven by spending on Zuikerbosch Pumping Station 5. Over the same period, the water board will also implement the Sedibeng Regional Sewer Scheme, which includes upgrading the Leeuwkuil and Meyerton wastewater treatment plants, at an estimated cost of R5.5 billion.

Bulk water sales constitute 98.3% (R61.7 billion) of total revenue over the medium term, increasing at an average annual rate of 10.4%, from R16.9 billion in 2019/20 to R22.7 billion in 2022/23.

The increase in revenue is driven by the volume of water sold, which is expected to increase to 1 770 345 megalitres by 2022/23, with tariffs expected to increase to R13.07 per kilolitre by 2022/23.

Trans-Caledon Tunnel Authority (TCTA)

The TCTA was established in 1986 as a specialised liability management entity. It is responsible for financing and implementing the development of bulk raw water infrastructure and providing treasury management services to the DWS. The authority plays an important role in providing financial advisory services such as structuring and raising project finance, managing debt and setting tariffs; project implementation services; and other technical support to the department and water boards. As such, the authority will continue with the planning and implementation of the Vaal River system through phase 2 of the Lesotho Highlands Water Project (LHWP), providing a short-term solution to acid mine drainage in Gauteng, and phase 2A of the Mokolo-Crocodile River Water Augmentation Project.

The authority's main cost driver is the Mokolo-Crocodile River Water Augmentation Project, spending on which is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 102.7%, from R396.3 million in 2019/20 to R3.3 billion in 2022/23, due to the escalation of construction activities. The project comprises the construction of a 160-kilometre (km) pipeline and pump station transferring water from the existing Mokolo-Crocodile Dam to supply water to the Lephalale Municipality, Exxaro's Grootegeluk coal mine, and Eskom's Matimba and Medupi power stations.

The authority's overall debt is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 11.4%, from R28.1 billion in 2019/20 to R38.9 billion in 2023/23. Revenue is generated by tariffs received from completed projects, as well as the subsequent management of debt incurred for the implementation of these. The TCTA's total revenue is expected to be R13.6 billion over the MTEF period.

Umgeni Water

Umgeni Water was established in terms of the Water Services Act of 1997 to provide water and sanitation services in its service area, which comprises mostly rural areas in KwaZulu-Natal and the eThekwini metropolitan area. The water board supplies water to approximately six million consumers. Its ongoing objective is to support socio-economic development through water infrastructure investment in its area of operation. Accordingly, over the medium term, the water board will construct phase 1 of the Greater Mpofana Regional Water Scheme, the Impendle Bulk Water Supply Scheme, and phase 3 of the Maphumulo Bulk Water Supply Scheme, targeting largely indigent municipal areas. In addition, to ensure water security, the water board will target augmentation, upgrades and the rehabilitation of projects such as the Lower Umkhomazi Bulk Water Supply Scheme and phase 1 of the Umkhomazi Water Project. As a result, capital expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 17.4%, from R1.5 billion in 2019/20 to R2.4 billion in 2022/23.

Total expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 8.5%, from R3.1 billion in 2019/20 to R4 billion in 2022/23. Spending on bulk water activities amounts to R5.8 billion over the medium term, largely driven by goods and services for the purification and transportation of bulk water. Revenue from the sale of bulk water is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 11.3%, from R4.2 billion in 2019/20 to R5.8 billion in 2022/23. The water board's revenue is mainly generated by the sale of bulk water to customers.

The Water Trading Entity

The Water Trading Entity was established in 1983 for the management of water infrastructure and resources, and the sale of raw water. It was converted into a trading entity in terms of the PFMA of 1999 in 2008. Over the medium term, the entity will continue to focus on maintaining existing water resource infrastructure, supporting the long-term sustainability of water resources, and supplying bulk water to strategic users such as large industrial companies to stimulate and support economic development. Accordingly, over the medium term, the entity anticipates the completion of three raw water projects (Tzaneen Dam, Clanwilliam Dam and Hazelmere Dam). Spending on these projects is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 8.7%, from R12.8 billion in 2019/20 to R16.4 billion in 2022/23. Capital expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 10.5%, from R1.6 billion in 2019/20 to R2.2 billion in 2022/23.

Revenue is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 9.6%, from R14.7 billion in 2019/20 to R19.3 billion in 2022/23.

Revenue from the sale of raw water is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 10.7%, from R11.9 billion in 2019/20 to R16.1 billion in 2022/23. Revenue derived from transfers from the DWS amounts to R7.2 billion over the medium term. These funds will be used to finance the TCTA's construction of raw water infrastructure.

Other entities

Breede-Gouritz Catchment Management Agency

The agency plays a key role in the use, protection and development of water resources in the Breede-Gouritz water catchment area. The agency's total budget for 2019/20 was R67.5 million.

Inkomati-Usuthu Catchment Management Agency

The Inkomati-Usuthu Catchment Management Agency plays a key role in the use, protection and development of water resources in the Inkomati-Usuthu water catchment area. Its total budget for 2019/20 was R130.4 million.

Water Research Commission

The WRC was established in terms of the Water Research Act of 1971 and is listed as a Schedule 3A public entity. The commission's mandate is to conduct research on water by determining needs and priorities for research, stimulating and funding water research, promoting the effective transfer of information and technology, and enhancing knowledge and capacity building in the water sector. Research is informed by government policies, needs and international trends. The WRC's total budget for 2019/20 was R332 million.

National Water Policy

The National Water Policy is underpinned by three fundamental principles for managing water resources: equity, (environmental) sustainability and efficiency.

All water users who do not receive their water from a service provider, local authority, water board, irrigation board, government water scheme or other bulk supplier, and who use water for irrigation, mining purposes, industrial use, feedlots or in terms of general authorisation, have a statutory obligation to register. This includes the use of surface and groundwater.

Other uses that must be registered are:

- diversion of rivers and streams;
- discharge of waste or water containing waste;
- storage, which includes any person or body storing water for any purpose from surface run-off, groundwater or fountain flow in excess of 10 000 cubic metres (m^3) or where the water area at full supply level exceeds one hectare in total on land owned or occupied by that person or body, and who is not in possession of a permit or permission;
- local authorities and other bulk suppliers with their own water sources and purification works; and
- controlled activities such as irrigating with waste, power generation with water, atmospheric modification or recharging of aquifers.

An assessment of the environmental requirements of the rivers and streams concerned is conducted before a licence can be issued.

To promote sustainable and equitable water resource management, the DWS has developed and continues to update a range of strategies for water management.

National Water Resource Strategy 2 (NWRS2)

The NWRS2 sets out the vision and strategic actions for effective water management, including the security of water supply, environmental degradation, and pollution of resources.

The NWRS2 outlines key challenges, constraints and opportunities in water resource management and proposes new approaches that ensure a collective and adequate response for the benefit of all people in South Africa.

The strategy also responds to the priorities set by government in the NDP and the National Water Act of 1998 imperatives that support sustainable development.

It is centred on these key objectives:

- Water supports development and the elimination of poverty and inequality. The strategy recognises that the manner in which water was allocated in the past was unequal and favoured certain sections of the population. The intention, therefore, is to redress past imbalances in the manner in which water was allocated, ensuring that water contributes to the economy and job creation.
- Water is protected, used, developed, conserved, managed and controlled in a sustainable and equitable manner.

The NWRS2 also focuses on water conservation and the management of water demand as key priorities.

Raw Water Pricing Strategy

There have been continued efforts to reform and realign the water value chain so that it can achieve government's objectives since 1994.

These include ensuring equitable access to water and sanitation, the sustainable use of water for social and economic benefit and ensuring the sustainability of water resources and water-services delivery.

As part of this process, the DWS is looking at pricing, financing and economic regulation reforms in the water sector. This project reviews the Raw Water Pricing Strategy, develops infrastructure funding models and recommends an appropriate model and institutional arrangements for an economic regulator for water.

It is generally agreed that pricing and economic regulations play a key role in the provisioning of infrastructure by assuring necessary investments to support socio-economic growth and ensuring that services are widely available and accessible and priced at levels that support current and future needs.

The project will contribute to the following:

- the revision of the Raw Water Pricing Strategy to ensure equitable and appropriate raw water tariffs that will enable sustainable operation and management of raw water infrastructure, and will fund catchment management funding models for water resources infrastructure; and
- the establishment of an economic regulator for the entire water value chain.

The project is strategic in nature and will enable the DWS to have sound water-pricing policies, cost-reflective tariffs for the entire water value chain in South Africa and a good funding framework for infrastructure.

National Groundwater Strategy

Groundwater is a strategic resource in many parts of South Africa, especially in rural areas. It also plays an important role in the supply of water to small towns and villages in the drier parts of the country. There is considerable potential for additional development of groundwater resources to augment existing resources.

The need for improved groundwater management to ensure sustainable and efficient use of the resource was recognised in the NWRS1 and led to the formulation of a National Groundwater Strategy through which strategic actions were undertaken.

Reuse Strategy

The DWS has developed a Water Reuse Strategy to encourage informed decisions relating to water reuse. Reuse could be increased significantly with return flows in coastal cities, where it would otherwise drain into the sea. In coastal cities, water reuse and desalination compete as two options for water conservation.

Reuse is becoming increasingly acceptable and feasible owing to increasing shortages, improved purification technology and decreasing treatment costs. Membrane technologies, also used for desalination of seawater, have become more affordable and have improved.

The reuse of treated wastewater would be managed to ensure public health safety.

Infrastructure upgrades and bilateral agreements

The DWS has made good progress with the preparatory work of the LHWP, which began in 2019.

The Polihali Dam, the Polihali-Katse Transfer Tunnel and other infrastructural aspects of the LHWP phase 2 should be completed by 2024. Once phase 2 has been completed, the amount of water supplied to South Africa through the LHWP will progressively increase from 780 million m³ to about 1.27 billion m³ a year over the following 20 years.

There is progress in the Mokolo and Crocodile River pipeline project, which will transfer water through a 46-km pipeline and pump station from the Mokolo Dam to the Lephalale area. Phase 1 of the Mokolo and Crocodile River West Water Augmentation Project (MCWAP), which will transfer water through a 46-km pipeline and pump station from the Mokolo Dam to the Lephalale area, is complete. A second pipeline will be constructed as phase 2A of the MCWAP to transfer water from the Crocodile River (West) to the Lephalale area.

The raising of the Hazelmere Dam wall will incorporate a Piano Key Weir, which is cutting-edge technology in dam-building. The additional water that will become available from this project is aimed at ensuring the supply of water and supporting the development of human settlements, King Shaka Airport and the Dube TradePort. The construction of the dam wall is completed and the capacity of dam can be increased to 120% on impoundment of the previous dam level which shall be beneficial to water users.

The DWS is proceeding with the planning of the Mzimvubu Water Project, which entails the development of a multipurpose dam (the Ntabelanga) to supply new irrigation development, and the Laleni Dam for hydropower generation. It has initiated the raising of the Tzaneen Dam and construction of the new N'wamitwa Dam for the Groot Letaba River Water Development Project in Limpopo.

The first phase of the multi-phase LHWP entailed the construction of Katse Dam, Mohale Dam, Matsoku Diversion Tunnel and the Muela hydropower station. Lesotho benefits from a sustainable, independent energy supply that will meet the country's electricity requirements and royalty revenue from the project, while South Africa benefits from the security of supply of high quality water that is transferred into the Vaal River system for domestic and industrial use in Gauteng.

Phase 2 of the LHWP will be implemented in terms of two distinct components: a water delivery system to augment the delivery of water to South Africa and a hydropower generation system, which will increase the electricity generation capacity in Lesotho.

The programme involves the construction of the Polihali Dam and the Transfer Tunnel in the Mokhotlong district, and a hydropower scheme, following the conclusion of a joint feasibility study.

As per the provisions of the phase 2 agreement between the governments of Lesotho and South Africa, the implementation of the Kobong Pump Storage Scheme or any other hydro scheme was subject to the outcome of a joint feasibility study. The technical and the economic feasibility studies for the Kobong Pump Storage Scheme were completed in 2013. However, the outcome was that further studies should be undertaken. These included, a market study, an integration study, geotechnical investigations and legal and commercial arrangements

Lesotho secured funding from the World Bank to undertake the above studies, including convectional hydropower options. The further feasibility studies have looked at pumped storage and conventional hydropower options. The decision was taken to defer the pump storage option (due to prevailing economic conditions) and advance the conventional options. This entails one site at Oxbow on Malibamatšo River and two sites on the Senqu River.

The topography of the region allows for the possibility of developing a hydro-power generation in Lesotho in conjunction with the provision of water supplies to South Africa. For South Africa, construction of this dam and related infrastructure will guarantee the desired level of water availability in Gauteng and the Vaal River system in the most cost-effective manner. In parallel with water conservation measures in the Vaal River, it will also influence the improvement of water quality amongst many benefits. Phase 2 water delivery and hydropower generation are expected to be commissioned at the same time – early 2026, and the project close out is forecast for December 2028.

The LHWP has two main goals:

- to contribute to South Africa's economic development by providing South Africa with a supply of low-cost high-quality water to meet the household and industrial water needs of Gauteng, the industrial heartland of South Africa; and
- to contribute to Lesotho's economic development by using the water transfer system to increase the country's capacity for generation of electricity that will meet its requirements and earn it revenue in the form of royalties on the water transferred to South Africa.

Each country has the opportunity to undertake ancillary developments within its borders. These developments include the provision of water for irrigation, potable water supply,

the development of tourism, fisheries and other projects for economic and social development.

Rainwater harvesting (RWH)

The National RWH Strategy is an adaptation to climate change. Climate change poses significant social, economic and environmental risks, especially in developing countries. This then necessitates the implementation of high impact climate change response measures that will realise considerable mitigation, adaptation and broader socio-economic benefits.

It is in this context that the DWS, in partnership with the Department of Environment, Forestry and Fisheries (DEFF), is developing a National RWH Strategy to provide a roadmap for enhanced planning, development and scaled-up implementation of RWH as a key component of South Africa's water resources and efforts to enhance climate resilience. The strategy will provide guidance for the implementation of a series of action programmes towards the mainstreaming of RWH in South Africa. This National RWH Strategy will also help serve as the guiding tool for district and local municipalities to effectively and economically put RWH into practice.

The DWS also supports a national RWH programme, which has a narrow but important focus on the construction of above and below-ground rainwater storage tanks by rural households for food gardens and other productive water uses.

Several municipalities now use roof rainwater tanks for domestic purposes. These have been found to be particularly effective when used in conjunction with other water supply options.

Though there are no hard figures yet on how many cubic millimetres per year RWH can contribute, it is an option that can be implemented in a short timeframe.

RWH gives people who live in areas where reticulation has not as yet been implemented access to water. The programme targets rural communities through the installation of tanks and awareness campaigns.

A resource guideline has been developed to assist municipalities that are providing RWH systems to communities as an interim service or to reduce demand on their water supply systems with best practices. In some areas RWH systems are provided as a drought relief but the DWS is using the programme to advise municipalities to plan for alternative water sources or the "water mix", since municipalities seem to rely on surface water for water services and a lot of water schemes are failing because of dependency on a single source. The same source is affected by issues of water allocation reform (not enough water for water services and other uses), climate change and droughts.

Desalination Strategy

The DWS has developed a supporting desalination strategy, which also includes desalination as a technology for treating water other than seawater for water reuse. Desalination of seawater could potentially provide an unlimited resource of fresh water. However, the rising cost of energy may be a deterrent.

As with other infrastructure projects with potential environmental impacts, the planning for a desalination plant will have to undergo an environmental impact assessment in compliance with the NEMA of 1998.

The DWS will ensure that desalination is considered as an option for meeting future water requirements, in particular in coastal cities where there is sufficient electricity for desalination.

The target is not only to implement desalination in several locations in South Africa, but also to become an international knowledge centre in this particular field.

Resources

South Africa's water resources are, in global terms, scarce and extremely limited. The precipitation per year for Africa is 22 300 cubic kilometres, of which the evaporation rate is 80% and the runoff rate is 20%. Southern Africa only has 12.25% of the total water in Africa, making it a highly arid region.

Rainfall is, however, relatively higher in the northern and eastern parts of southern Africa (the Democratic Republic of Congo (DRC), Zambia and Mozambique) with the drier parts of the region including Namibia, Botswana and South Africa.

South Africa has a mean annual rainfall of approximately 500 millimetres (mm), compared to the world's average of 860 mm. It is characterised by low, variably distributed rainfall as well as high evaporation rates, resulting in the uneven distribution of run-off across the country.

The country experiences severe and prolonged hydrological droughts, which may last as long as 10 years at a time. The quality of water in South Africa is also negatively impacted by dissolved salts from host rocks in certain areas such as Namaqualand in the Northern Cape.

The surface water potential of the major drainage systems in South Africa are dominated by the Orange and the Limpopo river basins, which are shared with neighbouring countries.

Over 60% of the country's river flow comes from 20% of the land area. To overcome the uneven spread of water resources and to manage floods and drought, more than two thirds of the country's mean annual rainfall is currently stored in dams.

The country's water security is mainly reliant on fresh surface water, with groundwater and return flows underused.

However, the freshwater available for use is currently at its limit, and alternative sources such as groundwater needs to be further exploited. In addition, the country shares four major rivers with six neighbouring states, namely Zimbabwe, Botswana, Mozambique, Eswatini, Lesotho and Namibia. Therefore, international agreements on water sharing are in place on all of these river basins.

There is well-developed infrastructure, with more than 4 395 registered dams in South Africa, including 350 dams belonging to the DWS, and a number of large-scale inter-basin water transfer schemes. Water services infrastructure covers more than 35 000 km of bulk pipelines and 200 000 km of reticulation systems that are managed by 152 water service authorities and providers.

However, this existing infrastructure needs maintenance and the country is already experiencing challenges with lack of focus on sustainable asset management. The schemes also require efficient and effective operations, for which specialised skills and capabilities at all levels are needed. Major challenges are experienced regarding the capabilities of water services authorities to effectively manage the schemes on a sustainable basis. This issue needs to be dealt with decisively through a review of the mandates and policies in relation to the management of water infrastructure, and available capacity.

Work is also required in terms of rolling out the establishment of appropriate institutions, such as regional water utilities, as

well as to better leverage private sector support. Non-revenue water is also a challenge to be dealt with.

Medium to long-term capital investment plans must be based on up-to-date reconciliation of changing water requirements and water availability from surface water, groundwater, reuse, desalination of seawater and RWH sources.

The main contributors to water quality problems and environmental concerns are mining (acidity and increased metals content), urban development (salinity, nutrients and microbiological), industries (chemicals and toxins) and agriculture (sediment, nutrients, agro-chemicals and salinity through irrigation return flows). Untreated or poorly treated wastewater is severely affecting the quality of water in many areas, as well as negatively impacting on the environment.

Climate change is expected to exacerbate the already substantial pressure on freshwater and estuarine ecosystems by altering rainfall patterns and the more frequent or intense occurrence of events, such changes in flow patterns, droughts and storms.

South Africa's water ecosystems are not in a healthy state. Of the 223 river ecosystem types, 60% are threatened, with 25% of these critically endangered. Less than 15% of river ecosystems are located within protected areas, of which many are threatened and degraded by upstream human activities. Of 792 wetland ecosystems, 65% have been identified as threatened and 48% as critically endangered.

A further key factor impacting on water quality is the treatment of wastewater. Maintenance of these systems is the responsibility of local government and is highly impacted by a lack of resources and requisite skills to manage and maintain the systems to the required standards, resulting in untreated effluent flowing into river systems, with detrimental effects on the ecosystems.

Acid mine drainage has also been reported from a number of areas in South Africa, including the Witwatersrand Gold Fields, the Mpumalanga and KwaZulu-Natal Coal Fields and the O'Kiep Copper District.

The government must continue to support and lead improvements in water quality and environmental protection across the value chain through a range of interventions, including the assessment of water supply and wastewater treatment systems and the close monitoring of non-compliant systems in terms of the Water Services Act of 1997.

Dams must be evaluated in terms of dam safety regulations, and water management institutions must be monitored to ensure they in turn effectively monitor affiliated water users. Non-compliance will continue to be investigated and punitive action taken where applicable and possible. In addition, the government must continue to monitor the level of compliance of mines against their water use entitlements.

South Africa's challenge into the future is to ensure that there is fair and equitable redistribution of water resources across the various sectors. This should take into account the country's socio-political and economic transformation agenda. As the country has a limited resource base, with competing sectoral interests, trade-offs must be made in prioritising uses, affordability and sustainability.

South Africa is still heavily reliant on surface water and its further development with more than two-thirds of the country's mean annual runoff already stored in dams. Where additional water is still available, such as in the uThukela, Mzimvubu and Pongola basins, it is located in areas far from the existing centres of demand.

Groundwater currently reflects only 9% use and is underused, undervalued and not well managed. With about 3 500 million m³ of groundwater estimated to be available for further development, much scope exists to exploit the potential of groundwater as a freshwater source.

At 14%, water reuse is already a major component of the water mix, albeit mostly indirectly. Direct reuse, especially in the coastal areas, must be further encouraged. There is also a large scope for increasing desalination, which is currently providing less than 1% of the country's water needs. Inland measures are in place to desalinate acid mine water and brackish water resources, while coastal areas have an opportunity to desalinate seawater.

From the above, the DWS is committed to improve integrated water resource management to ensure continued water security. This includes optimising dam storage and transfer systems, effectively managing the water resources mix and exploring various options for the reconciliation of water availability with demand.

The already constrained water resources is further impacted by the prolonged dry spells coinciding with the drought legacy conditions in a number of provinces. The predictions of climate forecasting models indicates that dry spell effects could last for up to seven years. Therefore, the construction of additional bulk water storage capacity, such as the LHWP phase 2 and others, are critical to ensuring water security in the long term.

Approximately 9.3% of available potable is water lost through leakage. In the short term, the government's mitigation measures include the implementation of the "war on leaks" programme that will train youth to repair leaking taps and pipes in their communities.

Infrastructure would also be upgraded, rainwater harvested and water desalination projects would be expedited.

Through various communication campaigns, the consumers within the various sectors within agriculture, domestic, industrial, power and mining would be encouraged to limit their water consumption patterns.

Dams and water schemes

In an attempt to respond adequately to demand and anticipate future demand, South Africa has built numerous large and medium-sized dams and developed sophisticated inter-basin transfer schemes. The country now has more than 350 government-owned dams countrywide. They range in storage capacity from a volume of 5 500 million m³ of water down to 0.2 million m³.

Most water consumption can be attributed to drinking, irrigation, electricity, mining processes and industrial processes.

The DWS follows an integrated approach to managing South Africa's water resources. Proposed new water schemes have to comply with the NWRS2, requiring that water demand management programmes be implemented before embarking on new infrastructure development.

Strict environmental impact assessments must also be performed in accordance with laws and regulations administered by the DEFF, while the guidelines issued by the World Commission on Dams must also be followed. Bulk infrastructure

is a critical element of water services infrastructure and an integrated part of water services management.

Groundwater resources

An estimated 80 000 to 100 000 boreholes are being drilled annually. The National Groundwater Archive is a web-enabled database system that allows capturing, viewing, modifying and extraction (dissemination) of groundwater-related data.

The DWS has a legal obligation to ensure that water resources (including groundwater) are protected, used, developed, conserved, managed and controlled in a sustainable and equitable manner.

The National Water Act of 1998 requires the establishment of national monitoring and information systems as the availability of information about water resources is regarded as critical to the main purpose of the Act.

The need for groundwater data and information continues to increase to assist in planning to provide water to people, monitoring, drought relief and climate change

Groundwater, despite its relatively small contribution to bulk water supply, represents an important and strategic water resource in South Africa, since it services between 52% and 82% of community water-supply schemes in the Eastern Cape, Limpopo, Northern Cape, North West and KwaZulu-Natal.

The lack of perennial streams in the semi-desert to desert parts means that two thirds of South Africa's surface area depend largely on groundwater.

Although irrigation is the largest user, the supply to more than 300 towns and smaller settlements is very important.

Through government's commitment towards meeting the basic water needs of communities, groundwater has become a strategic resource for village water supply in the wetter parts of the country, because of its cost-effectiveness in a widely scattered small-scale user situation.

Groundwater also contributes considerably to river flow. This requires reserving a significant share of groundwater resources to protect aquatic ecosystems in terms of the National Water Act of 1998. The maximum quantity of groundwater that can be developed economically is about 6 000 million m^3 a year, while some 4 000 million m^3 of groundwater (mainly in the dry season) contributes to surface water flow annually.

Southern Africa also has large hidden underground water reserves, with 12 to 15 aquifer systems, of which three are considered very important for the future.

In South Africa, a substantial resource lies in a massive dolomite aquifer system that covers a vast area, extending from Springs and Brakpan, east of Johannesburg to Lenasia, south of the city; Zuurbekom, Carltonville and Magaliesberg on the West Rand; Kuruman in the Northern Cape and even as far as parts of Botswana.

The Witwatersrand mining basin's aquifer storage capacity is about the size of Lake Kariba.

Managing and developing water resources

To facilitate the management of water resources, the country has been divided into 19 catchment-based water management areas, of which 11 share international rivers.

Sufficient water resources have been developed and are available to ensure that all requirements for water can reasonably be met, without impairing the socio-economic development of the country.

Where feasible, special management techniques may be applied to improve water quality to appropriate standards for particular uses. The quality of groundwater varies according to hydrogeological conditions and anthropogenic impact. However, most major aquifer systems contain potable water.

To underscore its commitment to the pursuit of universal access to water, the DWS is investing in new infrastructure and maintaining and rehabilitating dysfunctional systems to ensure operational efficiency.

This is particularly relevant to developing water infrastructure to meet the specific needs of different rural communities. Closely related to rural development is the need for mainstream support to local government to sustain the infrastructure underpinning efficient service delivery to communities.

Managing water quality and wastewater

To ensure compliance with minimum water quality norms and standards, the DWS started the annual Blue Drop and Green Drop assessments to guarantee that water and wastewater systems are managed according to set norms and standards.

The department has set a target of 99% compliance with drinking water quality standards and 80% compliance with wastewater effluent standards.

This incentive-based regulation system aims to improve the quality of municipal drinking water and management of wastewater.

Because of the scale and magnitude of resources needed for the National Certification Programme, the Green Drop and Blue Drop programmes take place every second year, alternating with each other. In a programme's "gap" year, progress in the wastewater sector is tracked and reported via the assessment of the cumulative risk status of treatment systems.

Strategic Integrated Projects (SIPs)

SIP 18, which was approved by the Presidential Infrastructure Coordinating Commission (PICC), aims to address water supply and sanitation backlogs to millions of households.

The PICC's 18 SIPs are divided into geographic, energy, spatial and social infrastructure development projects. These projects – headed by different departments – cover more than 150 specific infrastructure interventions in rail, road and ports, dams, irrigation systems, sanitation and electricity.

This 10-year plan will address the estimated backlog of adequate water to 1.4 million households and that of basic sanitation to 2.1 million households.

SIP 18 is expected to fast-track the issuing of water licences, expand the capacity of the water system, speed up build programmes, address backlog projects and rehabilitate and upgrade existing water and sanitation infrastructure.

The project, which focuses on priority small towns and rural areas where water service delivery is a problem, is also expected to create jobs, raise the quality of service delivery of water around the country and extend water supply to areas that are either underserviced or unserviced.

The DWS identified several projects that will be used to drive SIP 18, including the Sedibeng Regional Sewer Scheme – a R5-billion project to be implemented in the area.

Rand Water's BG3 pipeline, which is sub-Saharan Africa's largest water pipeline, running from the Vaal Dam to its Zoekfontein Plant, 8.6 km away, will increase water distribution in this district and surrounding areas.

The BG3 pipeline runs adjacent to Rand Water's existing BG1 and BG2 pipelines that supply water to Gauteng and parts of the neighbouring Free State, Mpumalanga and North West.

The Komati Water Scheme Augmentation Project was designed to resolve the water supply problems to Eskom's Duvha and Matla power stations in Mpumalanga.

The Komati Water Scheme Augmentation Project supplements the Komati Water Scheme from the Vaal Eastern Subsystem to help Eskom overcome its water supply challenges.

The interaction of the water resources of the Komati, Usutu and Vaal River systems provides a higher assurance of water supply to all Eskom's thermal power stations and other water users in Mpumalanga. The Komati Water Scheme Augmentation Project will deliver an additional 57 million m^3 of water a year to the Komati Water Scheme.

Dam Safety Rehabilitation Programme

The Dam Safety Rehabilitation Programme ensures the continued structural and operational safety of the dams owned by the DWS.

Water Allocation Reform Programme

The Water Allocation Reform programme's objectives are to ensure equitable access to water, eradicate poverty and promote social and economical development.

The programme's priorities are to meet the water needs of historically disadvantaged people, ensure their participation in water resources management and promote the beneficial and efficient use of water in the public interest.

Licences are required for storage and use of water, among other things. To facilitate the availability of water for historically disadvantaged people, attention is also given to the allocation of water following principles of equity and sustainability.

Women in Water

The Women in Water Project aims to strengthen the active participation of rural women in water resource management. Women identify water-related challenges in their communities and conceptualise ideas to address them. They are registered for Women in Water awards. The national winners receive cash prizes which are used for further project development and implementation.

Learning Academy

There is a shortage of skills in the water and sanitation sector. The DWS, as the custodian of South Africa's water resources, through its Learning Academy External Bursary Scheme, provides bursaries yearly to aid in closing this gap. Applications are open to people who would like to pursue careers that are in line with the department's core business.

The department scheme boasts an all-inclusive package recognised in South Africa as being highly competitive. The DWS External Bursary Scheme aims to attract exceptional young and innovative talent to the department.

Students pursuing the following fields of study are eligible to apply: Analytic Chemistry, Aquatic Sciences, Biochemistry, Biological Sciences, Water and Sanitation, Geographical Information Systems, Civil/Electrical/Mechanical Engineering, Water Resource Management, Environmental Law/Management/Science, Water Utilisation, Cartography, Geo-chemistry, Geo-hydrology, Geology, Hydrology, Limnology, Microbiology, Surveying and Water Care.

The purpose of the learning academy is to:

- investigate technical and scarce skills development needs within the department;
- address technical and scarce skills gaps in the overall water supply value chain;
- address scarce skills gaps in specific technical areas of the department;
- plan and build capacity for medium and long-term needs of the department and the water and sanitation sector;
- develop and implement structured training for engineering and scientific graduate trainees;
- develop and propose interventions (regarding mentoring, skills and knowledge transfer, and professional registration processes) with the Engineering Council of South Africa, the South African Council for Natural and Scientific Professions and the Surveying Council of South Africa in line with the Occupations Specific Dispensation.

Management of water conservation and demand

Although South Africa has been classified as a water-scarce country, water from the source to the consumer is often lost as a result of inappropriate and inadequate asset management.

Lack of education on the part of the consumer also leads to inefficiency in the day-to-day use of water. The loss of water depletes the country's resources and reduces revenue to water services authorities.

Water leaks account for nearly 36% of the nation's unaccounted for water and costs the country about R7 billion annually.

Realising that South Africa is a water-scarce country, the DWS is also putting in place medium to long-term interventions that are intended to reduce the risks for water scarcity in the future.

These include:

- RWH (drinking water, water for livestock, water for irrigation);
- integrating groundwater and surface water use in the future;
- desalination at a large scale;
- investing in innovative water-saving solutions, such as the Drop-the-Block Campaign;
- incorporating all municipal and privately-owned dams into the management system or the future;
- implementing further transfer schemes to improve drought resilience;
- building additional storage capacity; and
- rolling out large-scale reuse of water (recycling of effluent, focus on coastal towns where treated effluent is disposed of via sea outfalls and not taken into account in return flows).

Enhanced local government support approach

A rapid response unit in the DWS addresses poor performance of water and wastewater systems, which has resulted in community protests in some cases.

The unit deals with proactive and reactive non-compliance cases of municipal service delivery. The unit's specialists enable the department to intervene directly in high-risk operational

situations, where the lives of citizens and the environment are under threat because of water and wastewater treatment failures.

Freshwater Programme

Recognising the value and threatened status of South Africa's freshwater biodiversity, and the need to build competence and leadership in this area, the South African National Biodiversity Institute (SANBI) has established a programme focusing on freshwater biodiversity.

The programme aims to grow and consolidate freshwater activities within SANBI.

The Freshwater Programme focuses on supporting collaborative freshwater initiatives. These include Working for Wetlands, the National Wetland Inventory, National Freshwater Ecosystems Priority Areas Project, a wetlands mitigation banking scheme with the Grasslands Programme and coal-mining industry, and water-related payments for ecosystem services pilot projects.

Key to the programme's operation will be the further development of strategic relationships with other organisations with shared objectives. It includes managing the Working for Wetlands Programme on behalf of the departments of Water and Sanitation, Environment, Forestry and Fisheries, and Agriculture and Rural Development. Working for Wetlands champions the protection, rehabilitation and sustainable use of South Africa's wetlands through cooperative governance and partnerships.

Monitoring programmes

River flow is monitored at 1 200 flow-gauging stations and some 260 major reservoirs. The evaporation and rainfall station network has 360 stations.

The oldest flow-gauging station still operating in South Africa is on the Mooi River near Potchefstroom in North West.

There are 21 operational rainfall stations in the mountains of the Western Cape and five in the Mpumalanga escarpment. Observations are relayed through a cellular short message system.

Water levels are monitored at some 1 000 observation boreholes across South Africa. Particular attention is given to monitoring in dolomitic areas. In addition, a small network of rain gauges monitors rainwater quality.

The importance of qualitative information on South Africa's water resources has led to an increased drive towards creating a national water-quality monitoring network.

The formal protection, restoration and rehabilitation of wetlands is strengthened through improved land-use planning, land and development management policies, as well as operational and regulatory means at national, provincial and local level.

Adopting of ecosystem-based approaches and implementing the open-space planning and management programmes adds impetus to the protection of these systems and associated services, especially at local government level.

It requires integrated approaches and the involvement of multiple sectors, particularly those dealing with human settlements, development and planning.

The DWS is also designing programmes to assess and report on the radiological (radioactivity) and toxicological quality status of the country's water resources.

National Chemical Monitoring Programme (NCMP)

The NCMP assesses and reports on the chemical status of water resources in South Africa. The main water-quality challenges for domestic water users are high levels of dissolved salts and, in some places, high fluoride concentration. The other challenges facing irrigated agriculture are the high sodium-absorption ratio, high electrical conductivity, high pH and high levels of chloride.

Another global challenge affecting South Africa is eutrophication or excessive plant (including algae) growth in dams. This is because of high levels of nutrient input from point sources of pollution and diffuse sources of pollution from catchments.

Annual reports indicate that 50% of dams in South Africa are seriously affected (hypertrophic), while the rest range in quality from good (oligotrophic) to poor (mesotrophic).

Another problem is the sporadic outbreak of cholera and other water-borne diseases, mainly because of poor sanitation and hygiene at household level. The Eastern Cape and KwaZulu-Natal are prone to cholera outbreaks.

Integrated Water Quality Management Strategy

The pollution of South Africa's water resources, both surface and underground water, not only adversely affects human and environmental health but has severe consequences for the economy and social well-being. In response to the country's need to take an improved integrated approach to Water Quality Management (WQM), the DWS recently developed an integrated WQM Strategy. This strategy sets forth a number of objectives, each supported by key actions, which collectively aim to ensure that the government, in partnership with private sector and civil society, secures water that is fit for use for all. These actions range from the need to strengthen institutions, to the need to improve monitoring and information management, and to strengthen regulation of activities that degrade water quality.

Managing water resources under a changing climate

With climate change, water resources that are already under pressure due to increasing water demand will be under even greater stress in the future. Already, physical evidence suggests that there are changes in historical rain patterns and intensities, as observed in the increasing temperature and drought trends. Water distribution in South Africa is spatially skewed, with decreasing rainfall and increasing evaporation from east to west. Even though rainfall trends cannot be clearly defined, it can be said with high confidence that potential impacts of climate change in South Africa on water availability will be negative. Just with increasing temperatures alone without considering other climatic and non-climatic factors, evaporation rates will increase and that will affect water availability. Climate change impacts on the water sector will thus, amplify the current existing conditions.

The DWS has made good progress in trying to understand the impacts of climate change on the different water management areas through conducting Risk and Vulnerability Assessment Studies, and accordingly suggested adaptation strategies as appropriate. These studies reveal that catchments in the eastern side of the country, for example, the Mzimvubu-Tsitsikamma water management area, rainfall has shown an increasing trend, and the area is also projected to experience increasing

rain days both in the intermediate and distant futures. This, however, comes with other challenges such as severe erosion and siltation.

Evaporation rates, in most cases, have been shown to exceed precipitation, becoming relatively higher in areas where it rains less, for example, in the Lower Vaal and Lower Orange catchments. What needs to be considered even further is not only the direct impacts of climate change on the water sector, but secondary impacts on other water dependent sectors, such as agriculture, mining and energy. As such, any adverse impacts of climate change, may negatively affect progress towards development in a number of economic sectors in the country.

National Water and Sanitation Master Plan (NW&SMP)

The development of the NW&SMP aims at mobilising the commitment and efforts of all role players and stakeholders in the water and sanitation sector towards collectively achieving the desired future state of the sector, as defined by the government's vision, goals and targets until 2030 (NDP, Sustainable Development Goals, MTSFs and other key drivers). It will provide a critical overview of the present state in the sector and the key challenges it is currently facing, together with a consolidated plan of actions required to enable the achievement of the set targets.

The plan of actions include a detailed schedule of consolidated and prioritised interventions, actions, investments, projects and initiatives. For each action, the plan defines specific intermediate and final targets, the parties responsible for their achievement, the deadlines for delivery and the estimated costs or other required resources. The achievements will be monitored and evaluated annually by a dedicated project management unit managed by the DHS. The NW&SMP will be updated bi-annually to reflect the dynamics in the sector. It will act as the implementation tool for the Water and Sanitation Resources and Services Strategy, and the two documents will be aligned.

National Aquatic Ecosystem Health Monitoring Programme (NAEHMP)

The NAEHMP is a national programme managed by Resource Quality Services with support from the WRC, the Council for Scientific and Industrial Research and various regional and provincial authorities.

It is responsible for managing aquatic ecosystems. It focuses on the biological attributes of a river that serve as indicators of its ecological health. The NAEHMP's main objectives are to:

- generate a national perspective of the health of aquatic ecosystems in South Africa,
- develop the capacity and information base required to enable the DWS, and other role players, to report on the status of and trends in the ecological health of South Africa's river systems, in an objective and scientifically sound manner, and
- generate information products and audit-management strategies that could assist in distinguishing between aquatic ecosystems exposed to sustainable use, and those experiencing ecological deterioration.

The NAEHMP comprises three separate monitoring programmes namely:

- The River EcoStatus Monitoring Programme (REMP): This is the oldest component of the NAEHMP. It focuses on the monitoring of ecological conditions of river ecosystems as it is reflected by the system drivers and biological responses. The basis of the REMP is the establishment of a reference condition derived from best available information. Present conditions (ecological category) for the different indicators are determined as a change from reference. The REMP is built upon the use of particular models incorporating existing approved EcoStatus models. The assessment can be done on a sub-quaternary or site level and includes the use of the Index of Habitat Integrity, Fish Response Assessment Index, Macroinvertebrate Response Assessment Index, Vegetation Response Assessment Index and Integrated Ecostatus. Monitoring is conducted on a quarterly basis and technical reports produced annually. Currently a number of provinces are only partially implementing the REMP, focussing mostly on the macroinvertebrates and habitat components but the programme is fully implemented in the Inkomati-Usuthu as well as the Breede-Gouritz, Berg-Olifants and Pongola-Mtamvuna water management areas. Information obtained through the REMP is also used in monitoring the biological and habitat components of the Resource Quality Objectives.
- The National Estuaries Monitoring Programme (NEsMP): The purpose of this programme is the monitoring of water quality, physic-chemical and biological aspects for determining long-term trends and changes in the condition of South African estuaries. The NEsMP coordinates national monitoring efforts and provide support in the form of sampling equipment, training, data management and information dissemination, while collaborating institutions collect physic-chemical data and water samples.
- The National Wetland Monitoring Programme: The programme's design is based on minimising duplication of effort, while maximising the value of outputs of wetland assessment and monitoring, finding suitable methods for prioritising wetland to be assessed and monitored, adaptive management and maximum engagement and participation by stakeholders. It has not been implemented yet, but aims to assess and monitor the extent of wetlands, the threats to and the change in the present ecological state and ecosystem services provided by wetlands in South Africa. It is a "state-of-wetland" reporting programme, designed to demonstrate trends in the state or integrity (biological, physical & chemical components of its ecosystem and their interactions) of wetlands over time.

National Toxicity Monitoring Programme

The National Toxicity Monitoring Programme reports on the status of dichloro-diphenyl-trichloroethane (DDT) and other persistent organic pollutants. This information is reported internationally to the Stockholm Convention through the DEFF.

The National Toxicity Monitoring Programme was designed to assess the status of water resource through measuring the concentration of a selection of priority pollutants at a number of "hot spots", and also assessing the toxicity of the water to some aquatic organisms through direct measurement of effect. The priority pollutant selection is aligned to the extent possible with South Africa's responsibility for reporting under the Stockholm Convention. The geographic distribution of monitoring points is still largely determined by fiscal and operational constraints. It currently focuses on the upper reaches of the Crocodile (West)-Marico and Olifants River catchments. The combination

of chemical and biotic assessment in conjunction with the other national monitoring programmes also supports strategic and operational decision making by identifying areas of impairment of fitness for use. The first five years of monitoring indicated that the persistent priority pollutant concentrations were generally low but that mild seasonal toxicity occurs, possibly in conjunction with agricultural activity. It also tends to confirm that the major human exposure route of DDT (used in malaria vector control) is unlikely to be through the water. Future development includes extending analyses to riverine sediments.

Education and awareness

Youth development and National Water Week

The sub-directorate Youth Development, within the DWS, is responsible for the coordination of youth development programmes within the department, and the water and sanitation sector. Activities conducted by the unit are guided by the Youth Accord and National Youth Policy Vision 2020, which concentrate on the integrated approach towards job creation, skills development and entrepreneurship. A youth development strategy has been developed as a guiding document towards meeting the commitments made in the African Ministers Council on Water Youth Development Strategy.

The National Water Week is an awareness campaign by the DWS. It serves as a powerful campaign mechanism reiterating the value of water, the need for sustainable management of this scarce resource and the role water plays in eradicating poverty and underdevelopment in South Africa.

The campaign seeks to continue building on the ongoing awareness creation within the broader South African community.

This awareness creation is coupled with the responsibility that every citizen must take in ensuring the integrity of South Africa's water resources and its efficient use.

The 2020 National Water Week took place from 16 – 22 March. The event focused public attention on the importance of water, raising awareness on the use, management, conservation and protection of water resources.

The linkages between water services, supply, resource management, poverty eradication, social and economic development were emphasised in a number of innovative ways. The campaign is influenced by local needs and international sectoral trends.

Regional and international cooperation and initiatives

In line with the DWS's regional and international responsibilities in the water sector, the department entered into collaborative relationships with countries such as:

- Lesotho, Namibia, Botswana, Zimbabwe, the DRC and Eswatini in the region.
- Mozambique and Eswatini on the Inkomati and Maputo rivers.
- Botswana, Lesotho and Namibia on the establishment of the Orange Senqu River Commission.
- Botswana, Zimbabwe and Mozambique on the establishment of the Limpopo Watercourse Commission.
- Lesotho on the LHWP.
- Eswatini on the Komati River Development Project.

These agreements improve South Africa's bilateral and multilateral relations in the African Union. All the countries involved benefit, while sharing development costs.

South Africa shares four of its major river systems with six immediate neighbouring countries, namely Botswana, Lesotho, Mozambique, Namibia, Eswatini and Zimbabwe.

In the area of shared river basins, South Africa continued participating in joint water commissions to form part of Africa bilaterals with Botswana on Joint Permanent Cooperation, and with Mozambique regarding the breach of the Usuthu River, where a feasibility study was completed.

South Africa also has global relations with countries such as Iran, China, Denmark, Russia, Mexico, South Korea, Australia, Germany, the Netherlands and Japan.

Acid Mine Drainage

The DWS launched the Eastern Acid Mine Drainage Treatment Plant, which ensures that the rising water levels in the abandoned Grootvlei mine do not contaminate groundwater.

The Eastern Basin Plant in Springs is one of the largest of its kind in the world, treating approximately 110 megalitres (ML) per day.

The plant is among the three main basins in the Witwatersrand Goldfields. These include the Western Basin in the Krugersdorp area, Central Basin in the Germiston area and the Eastern Basin in the Springs area. Both western and central basins have been launched and are running smoothly.

The first long-term solution to acid mine drainage was launched at the Central Basin Acid Mine Drainage Treatment Plant in Germiston in 2016. This was the commencement of several integrated projects aimed at providing a long-term solution to acid mine drainage as well as a water-secure future for the economic hub of Gauteng.

The Eastern Basin Plant in Springs is one of the largest of its kind in the world, treating approximately 110 ML per day.

The Eastern Basin Plant is located in one of the three main basins in the Witwatersrand Goldfields. These include the Western Basin in the Krugersdorp area, Central Basin in the Germiston area and the Eastern Basin in the Springs to Nigel areas. Both the Western and Central Basins were commissioned previously and are running smoothly.

2019/20 SOUTH AFRICA YEARBOOK

International Relations

International Relations

According to the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996, the President is ultimately responsible for the country's foreign policy and international relations. It is the President's prerogative to appoint heads of mission, receive foreign heads of mission, conduct state-to-state relations, and negotiate and sign all international agreements.

International agreements that are not of a technical, administrative or executive nature only bind the country after being approved by Parliament. Parliament also approves the country's ratification of/or accession to multilateral agreements. All international agreements must be tabled in Parliament for information purposes. The Minister of International Relations and Cooperation is entrusted with the formulation, promotion, execution and daily conduct of South Africa's foreign policy. The Department of International Relations and Cooperation's (DIRCO) overall mandate is to work for the realisation of South Africa's foreign policy objectives. This is done by:

- coordinating and aligning South Africa's international relations abroad;
- monitoring developments in the international environment;
- communicating government's policy positions;
- developing and advising government on policy options, creating mechanisms and avenues for achieving objectives;
- protecting South Africa's sovereignty and territorial integrity;
- contributing to the creation of an enabling international environment for South African business;
- sourcing developmental assistance; and
- assisting South African citizens abroad.

The DIRCO's strategic objectives are to:

- protect and promote South African national interests and values through bilateral and multilateral interactions;
- conduct and coordinate South Africa's international relations and promote its foreign policy objectives;
- monitor international developments and advise government on foreign policy and related domestic matters;
- contribute to the formulation of international law and enhance respect for its provisions;
- promote multilateralism to secure a rules-based international system;
- maintain a modern, effective department driven to pursue excellence; and
- provide a world-class and uniquely South African state protocol service.

The National Development Plan (NDP) is the overarching apex policy framework that guides the work of the government. In the area of international relations, the NDP states that in order for South Africa to achieve its national goals of eradicating poverty, lowering inequality, creating jobs and making the transition to a resilient carbon economy, foreign relations must be driven by the country's domestic economic, political and social demands, as well as regional, continental and global obligations.

In pursuance of this injunction, the DIRCO has translated the NDP goals into a strategic programme that seeks to:

- sustain political, economic and social relations;
- strengthen political and economic integration and development of the Southern African Development Community (SADC);
- consolidate the African Agenda;
- strengthen and consolidate South-South relations;
- leverage relations with the North in advancement of national and continental priorities and the agenda of the South; and
- advocate for the reform and strengthening of the global system of governance.

South Africa maintains diplomatic relations with countries and international organisations through 125 diplomatic missions in 108 countries in which the country has representation, and through the accreditation of more than 160 countries and international organisations resident in South Africa.

South Africa's diplomatic and consular missions implement the country's foreign policy to enhance its international profile and serve as strategic mechanisms for the achievement of national interest.

In addition, training and policy analysis remain of strategic importance for the execution of the DIRCO's mandate. The work of the department is primarily realised through the diplomatic missions in countries in which South Africa has representation.

Chapter 7 of the NDP details a vision for facilitating South Africa's broad-based socio-economic development and fostering strong international ties. This articulation is supported by Priority 7 (a better Africa and world) of government's 2019 – 2024 Medium Term Strategic Framework.

Over the medium term, the DIRCO plans to give effect to these guiding policies by focusing on strengthening the African Agenda and regional integration; consolidating global economic, political and social relations; and developing and managing state-owned properties in foreign missions.

Strengthening the African Agenda and regional integration

The DIRCO will continue to play an active role in the African Union's (AU) structures and processes for the advancement of peace, security and conflict prevention in Africa. South Africa has been nominated to chair the AU in 2020, with a mandate to ensure that there are linkages between development, good governance, peace and stability. As Chair, the country will focus on promoting economic development, trade and investment by seeking ways to foster inclusive growth and sustainable development; enhancing peace and security efforts in Africa; and supporting good governance through the African Peer Review Mechanism (APRM), the AU structure responsible for driving the union's agenda of good governance. These activities will be carried out in the International Transfers programme, which has a total budget of R2.4 billion over the Medium Term Expenditure Framework period. South Africa's membership contribution to the AU is expected to decrease from R437.9 million in 2019/20 to R275.4 million in 2022/23. This is due to the country having contributed an additional amount of R413.3 million in 2019/20 and 2020/21, due to funding shortfalls. The decrease in contributions in 2021/22 and 2022/23 is expected to lead to a decrease in spending in the International Transfers programme, from R855.6 million in 2019/20 to R756.6 million in 2022/23.

Consolidating global economic, political and social relations

The DIRCO will continue to focus on consolidating economic, political and social relations through structured bilateral mechanisms, high-level engagements and the creation of country-specific strategies to promote national priorities.

South Africa will continue to accelerate its economic diplomacy and grow its regional, continental and global trade and investment partnerships through engagements and activities undertaken by South African missions abroad to promote the country's economic interests, investment opportunities, tourism, skills development and cultural exchange. Examples of this include foreign missions holding tourism promotional events and meetings to boost South African tourism and promote the country as a destination of choice for business and leisure.

Accordingly, in each year over the medium term, the department will seek to inform and promote South Africa's foreign policy to domestic and international audiences by producing a targeted 12 public participation programmes and publishing 90 media statements and nine opinion pieces. As a result of these activities, spending in the Public Diplomacy and Protocol Services programme is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 7.3%, from R318.9 million in 2019/20 to R393.7 million in 2022/23. This expenditure includes compensation of employees, property payments, operating leases, and travel and subsistence.

Developing and managing state-owned properties in foreign missions

Over the medium term, the DIRCO will seek to reduce its rental portfolio and operational costs associated with the rental of more than 1 000 properties abroad; and ensure the longevity of its 127 state-owned properties by conducting essential maintenance, repairs and renovations. As such, the department will focus on developing vacant state-owned land in Luanda (Angola), New Delhi (India) and Gaborone (Botswana); and renovating state-owned properties in Mbabane (Eswatini), the Hague (Netherlands), Windhoek and Walvis Bay (Namibia), and Brasilia (Brazil).

This is expected to lead to a decrease in expenditure on leases. The department also plans to assess the conditions of its properties in Europe that are more than 50-years old, particularly in London (England), Paris (France), Vienna (Austria), Rome (Italy), Brussels (Belgium), Madrid (Spain) and Copenhagen (Denmark) to inform decisions on their future holding and use.

For these capital investment objectives, R1.2 billion over the medium term has been set aside in the Office Accommodation subprogramme in the Administration programme.

Legislation

The DIRCO derives its mandate from the following legislation:

- the Foreign States Immunities Act, 1981 (Act 87 of 1981), which regulates the extent of the immunity of foreign states from the jurisdiction of the South African courts and provides for matters connected therewith;
- the Diplomatic Immunities and Privileges Act, 2001 (Act 37 of 2001), which provides for the immunities and privileges of diplomatic missions and consular posts and their members, Heads of State, special envoys and certain representatives of the United Nations (UN) and its specialised agencies, and other international organisations and certain people;
- the African Renaissance and International Cooperation Fund (ARF) Act, 2001 (Act 51 of 2001), which establishes an ARF to enhance cooperation between South Africa and other countries, in particular African countries, through the promotion of democracy, good governance, the prevention and resolution of conflict, socio-economic development and integration, humanitarian assistance and human resource development; and
- the International agreements (multilateral and bilateral): International agreements concluded by South Africa in terms of sections 231(2) and 231(3) of the Constitution.

Budget

For the 2019/20 financial year, the DIRCO was allocated R6.5 billion. As the department largely relies on its personnel to perform its functions, an estimated 45.6% (R9.8 billion) of its total expenditure over the medium term is earmarked for the compensation of employees. This includes the Foreign Service wage bill, allowances payable to transferred staff in terms of the Foreign Service Dispensation Policy, membership fees payable to international organisations, and the development and maintenance of infrastructure in foreign missions. Spending on the compensation of employees is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 5.9%, from R2.9 billion in 2019/20 to R3.4 billion in 2022/23. Total expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 4%, from R6.5 billion in 2019/20 to R7.3 billion in 2022/23.

Entity

African Renaissance and International Cooperation Fund

The ARF provides cooperation funding for initiatives between South Africa and other countries that relate to the promotion of democracy and good governance, the prevention and resolution of conflicts, socio-economic development and integration, humanitarian assistance and relief, and the development of human resources. The fund's total expenditure for 2020/21 is expected to be R50.8 million.

The ARF is a public entity that falls within the purview of the DIRCO's day-to-day responsibilities. It was established through the ARF Act of 2000. It strives to ensure that it complies with the laws and regulatory prescriptions which govern the management of public funds in South Africa. South Africa will continue to play an active role in supporting initiatives aimed at enhancing the African Agenda through the ARF.

The objectives of the ARF and South Africa's foreign policy and principles are aligned with the country's NDP, which is linked to the AU Agenda 2063 and the UN Sustainable Development Goals (SDGs).

The purpose is to enhance cooperation between South Africa and other countries, in particular African countries, through the promotion of democracy, good governance, the prevention and resolution of conflict, socio-economic development and integration, humanitarian assistance and human resource development.

Outputs are the disbursement of development aid to enhance cooperation between South Africa and other countries, to promote democracy and good governance, contribute to prevention and resolution of conflict, support socio-economic development and integration and provide humanitarian assistance.

Performance environment

South Africa's foreign policy is implemented within a highly dynamic and often unpredictable and complex international geopolitical environment. Africa remains central to South Africa's foreign policy imperatives. South Africa's engagements and priorities with respect to other countries on the African continent remain focussed and poised on the strengthening of bilateral relations, the promotion of peace, security and stability, economic cooperation and integration, and the overall enhancement of the African Agenda.

The Asia and Middle East regions are an integral component of South Africa's global trade and makes a significant contribution to efforts to address the triple challenges of poverty, unemployment and inequality. Scope exists for further growth and the challenge of reducing South Africa's trade deficits with the regions.

The DIRCO plans to increase high-level visits to the regions, in particular to countries with which South Africa wishes to establish closer diplomatic ties. The regions have also proven to be a significant contributor to reaching the country's investment targets. The strong focus on investment was expected to be continued in the objectives set for 2019 and 2020. The Brazil, Russia, India, China and South Africa (BRICS) forum is a grouping based on the shared values of the need to restructure the global political, economic and financial architecture to make it more balanced, representative, inclusive and equitable, as well as to ensure that the international system rests on the important pillars of multilateralism and international law.

The five BRICS countries represent over 3.6 billion people, or about 41% of the world population. All five members are in the top 25 of the world's population, and four are in the top 10. The five nations have a combined nominal gross domestic product (GDP) of US$16.6 trillion, equivalent to approximately 22% of the gross world product, combined GDP (purchasing power parity) of around US$37 trillion, and an estimated US$4 trillion in combined foreign reserves. Both South African exports to, and imports from other BRICS countries have grown at a rate faster than South Africa's global trade, thus increasing the importance of other BRICS countries in South Africa's trade basket. Combined, the BRICS countries account for 15.4% of South Africa's global exports, and 25.4% of the country's imports.

Multilateralism remains a focal point of South Africa's foreign policy. The strategic plan of the DIRCO (2015 – 2020) directs that South Africa's multilateral engagements are premised on the need to advance the priorities reflected in the NDP, as well as the development priorities of developing countries. In order to influence multilateral processes to reflect and advance these priorities, South Africa must be represented in multilateral fora to engage, influence, negotiate and articulate its positions with the aim of having these positions reflected in the outcomes of multilateral meetings and processes.

The underlying principles, which continue to serve as guidelines in the conduct of South Africa's foreign relations are based on commitments to:

- the promotion of human rights;
- the promotion of democracy;
- justice and international law in the conduct of relations between nations;
- international peace and internationally agreed-upon mechanisms for the resolution of conflicts;
- the interests of Africa in world affairs; and
- economic development through regional and international cooperation in an interdependent world.

Amid uncertainties, Africa is also experiencing positive trends such as optimistic economic growth, the increase in democratic changes in governments and general acceptance of Pan-African programmes such as Agenda 2063, the African Union Development Agency-New Partnership for Africa's Development (AUDA-NEPAD), the APRM and African initiatives towards socio-economic development. At the same time, the AU Commission is under new leadership.

The report on the Proposed Recommendations for the Institutional Reform of the AU (Kagame Report) has made important, far-reaching recommendations that will improve and streamline the organisation's performance and ensure financial independence, thus reducing its reliance on external partners. The Kagame Report calls for the strengthening of the APRM to track implementation and oversee monitoring and evaluation in key governance areas on the continent. This is to be welcomed, particularly the repositioning of the APRM to play a monitoring and evaluation role for the AU Agenda 2063 and the UN's 2030 Agenda for SDGs.

Programmes

International Relations

The programme promotes relations with foreign countries. Its objective is to strengthen political, economic and social relations through structured bilateral agreements and high-level engagements to advance South Africa's national priorities, the African Agenda and South-South cooperation. Its subprogramme include:

- Africa, which embraces relevant national priorities by strengthening bilateral cooperation with countries in Africa, particularly through focusing on increasing exports of South African goods and services, foreign direct investment (FDI) with technology transfers into value-added industries and mineral beneficiation, and inbound tourism and skills enhancement. South Africa has foreign representation in 47 diplomatic missions in Africa.
- Asia and the Middle East, which embraces relevant national priorities by strengthening bilateral cooperation with individual countries in Asia and the Middle East, particularly through focusing on increasing exports of South African goods and services, FDI with technology transfers into value-added industries and mineral beneficiation, and inbound tourism and skills enhancement. South Africa has foreign representation in 32 diplomatic missions in Asia and the Middle East.
- Americas and the Caribbean, which embraces relevant national priorities by strengthening bilateral cooperation with countries in the Americas and the Caribbean, particularly through focusing on increasing exports of South African goods and services, FDI with technology transfers into value-added industries and mineral beneficiation, and inbound tourism and skills enhancement. South Africa has foreign representation in 16 diplomatic missions in the Americas and the Caribbean.
- Europe embraces relevant national priorities by strengthening bilateral cooperation with countries in Europe, particularly through focusing on increasing exports of South African goods and services, FDI with technology transfers into value-added

industries and mineral beneficiation, and inbound tourism and skills enhancement. South Africa has foreign representation in 28 diplomatic missions in Europe.

International Cooperation

The purpose of the programme is to participate in initiatives of international organisations and institutions in line with South Africa's national values and foreign policy objectives. The programme's objective over the medium term include:

- Contributing to a reformed and strengthened multilateral system based on equal rules that will be responsive to the needs of developing countries and Africa, in particular, by participating in the global system of governance.
- Strengthening the AU and its structures by providing ongoing financial support for the operations of the Pan-African Parliament (PAP) in terms of the country's host agreement.
- Improving governance and capacity in the SADC secretariat by implementing the secretariat's job evaluation plan and assisting with the recruitment process.
- Contributing towards processes of the AUDA-NEPAD for socio-economic development in Africa by participating in the APRM and submitting APRM country reports when required.
- Strengthening bilateral, trilateral and multilateral interests and relations within the dialogue forum of the BRICS group of countries through active participation in forum structures.
- Strengthening political solidarity, economic cooperation and socio-cultural relations with Asian countries by participating in structures of the New Asian-African Strategic Partnership.
- Strengthening North-South economic and political relations and cooperation to advance the African Agenda through financing development initiatives and providing support for institutional and governance reforms.

  The subprogrammes include:
- The Global System of Governance, which provides for multilateralism and an international order based on rules. This entails participating in and playing an active role in all forums of the UN system and its specialised agencies, and funding programmes that promote the principles of multilateral activity.
- The Continental Cooperation, which provides for the enhancement of the African Agenda and sustainable development.
- The South-South Cooperation, which provides for partnerships with countries of the South in advancing South Africa's development needs and the needs of the African Agenda; and creates political, economic and social convergence for the fight against poverty, underdevelopment and the marginalisation of the South.
- The North-South Dialogue provides for South Africa's bilateral and multilateral engagements to consolidate and strengthen relations with organisations of the North to advance and support national priorities, the African Agenda and the developmental agenda of the South.

Public Diplomacy and Protocol Services

The purpose of the programme is to communicate South Africa's role and position in international relations in domestic and international arenas and provide state protocol services. It ensures a better understanding of South Africa's foreign policy by providing ongoing strategic public diplomacy direction and state protocol services nationally and internationally. Its subprogrammes include:

- Public Diplomacy, which promotes a positive projection of South Africa's image; communicates foreign policy positions to domestic and foreign audiences; and markets and brands South Africa by using public diplomacy platforms, strategies, products and services.
- Protocol Services, which facilitates incoming and outgoing high-level visits and ceremonial events; coordinates and regulates engagements with the local diplomatic community; provides protocol advice and support to the various spheres of government; facilitates the hosting of international conferences in South Africa; and manages the state protocol lounges and guesthouses.

International Transfers

The programme funds membership fees and transfers to international organisations. It promotes multilateral activities that enhance South Africa's economic and diplomatic relations within the continent and with the world by providing for:

- South Africa's annual membership fee contributions to international organisations such as the UN, the AU and the SADC; and
- annual transfers to recapitalise the ARF as a contribution to its operations.

Enhancing economic diplomacy

In anticipation of growth in the African and Asian regions, South Africa took a conscious decision to expand and strengthen its diplomatic missions in the two regions.

As South Africa consolidated its political relations on the continent by expanding its diplomatic footprint through 47 embassies, high commissions and consulates general, the country has also rapidly advanced its economic relations in Africa, through the expansion of its trade volumes, investment portfolio and economic relations across the length and breadth of the continent.

This has resulted in Africa becoming a prime destination of South African-originated goods and services, especially value-added goods, which assists in contributing to the R198-billion trade surplus, creating much needed jobs and opportunities in the manufacturing, retail, fast-moving consumer goods, financial services and transport/logistics sectors. It is also worth noting that the SADC accounts for approximately 80% of of South Africa's total trade with the continent.

With regard to Asia and the Middle East, South Africa's trade and investment in these regions have grown considerably and continue to do so. In 1994, trade with Asia and the Middle East combined was approximately R45 billion and has increased to approximately R760 billion for Asia and R116 billion with the Middle East.

There is a direct correlation between the growth of South Africa's diplomatic missions and the phenomenal expansion of its trade and investment relations on both the African continent and in Asia and the Middle East. The same applies to the Americas and Europe.

As South Africa explores new markets, it continues to maintain close economic ties with the industrialised economies of the North, which provide, among others, preferential market access to some of South Africa's exports. Enhancing the economic and

political dialogue is an important part of South Africa's economic diplomacy strategy as they remain a primary source of FDI and official development assistance flows into South Africa.

The DIRCO also uses international summits such as the BRICS, Group of Twenty (G20), the SADC, the Indian Ocean Rin Association (IORA) as well as state visits and bilateral consultation mechanisms to promote the trade and investment case for South Africa.

Disarmament, non-proliferation and arms control

A primary goal of South Africa's policy on disarmament, non-proliferation and arms control includes reinforcing and promoting the country as a responsible producer, possessor and trader of defence-related products and advanced technologies.

In this regard, the DIRCO continues to promote the benefits that disarmament, non-proliferation and arms control hold for international peace and security.

As a member of the supplier's regimes and of the Africa Group and the Non-Aligned Movement (NAM), the importance of non-proliferation is promoted, taking into account that export controls should not become the means whereby developing countries are denied access to advanced technologies required for their development.

In seeking solutions to intractable disarmament, non-proliferation and arms control challenges in the international arena, a bridge-building approach has been followed in order to seek realistic and achievable solutions. Whilst dealing with challenging issues from a pragmatic perspective, due recognition has been given to the role that civil society can play in partnership with the governments of the world, especially in the context of seeking solutions to the divergent views that often characterise international negotiations.

In February 2019, South Africa joined a growing number of states in submitting its Instrument of Ratification of the Treaty on the Prohibition of Nuclear Weapons to the UN in New York.

The historic treaty was adopted by a vote of 122 states in favour at the UN in 2017 and was opened for signatures the same year. South Africa signed the treaty at a ceremony held on the margins of the 72nd Session of the UN General Assembly.

The treaty seeks to establish an international norm, de-legitimising and stigmatising the possession of nuclear weapons. It aims to contribute towards achieving the objective set out in the very first resolution adopted by the UN General Assembly in 1946 to eliminate all weapons of mass destruction.

The treaty complements other international instruments by contributing towards fulfilling the nuclear disarmament obligations under the Nuclear Non-Proliferation Treaty, the objectives of the Comprehensive Nuclear Test-Ban Treaty and the various nuclear-weapon-free-zone treaties, such as the Pelindaba Treaty that already banned nuclear weapons in Africa.

The year 2020 marks a number of milestones, including the 75th anniversary of the UN, the 50th anniversary of the Treaty on the Non-Proliferation of Nuclear Weapons (NPT) and the 25th anniversary of its indefinite extension. It also marks 75 years since the first use of nuclear weapons. South Africa views the NPT as the cornerstone of the nuclear disarmament and nuclear non-proliferation regime. The Treaty represents a historical bargain between the Nuclear-Weapon States and the Non-Nuclear-Weapon States, in terms of which the former has undertaken to eliminate their nuclear weapons based on the reciprocal undertaking by the latter not to pursue the nuclear weapons option. While non-proliferation measures have been strengthened, similar concrete progress has not yet been realised in the area of nuclear disarmament. South Africa believes that efforts to prevent the proliferation of nuclear weapons should be matched by a concurrent effort to eliminate all nuclear weapons, in a verifiable and irreversible manner.

The Treaty on the Prohibition of Nuclear Weapons (TPNW) complements other international instruments by contributing towards fulfilling the nuclear disarmament obligations under the NPT, the objectives of the Comprehensive Nuclear Test-Ban Treaty and the various nuclear weapon free zone treaties, such as the Pelindaba Treaty. The TPNW includes different pathways for states possessing or hosting nuclear weapons to join when they are ready through a time bound, verifiable and irreversible process of nuclear disarmament. The TPNW does not spell out all the details of such a process, but rather allows for further negotiations on these arrangements to be agreed upon when states possessing or hosting nuclear weapons are ready to

Ubuntu brand

Ubuntu magazine

The DIRCO's quarterly magazine, *Ubuntu – South Africa's Public Diplomacy in Action,* is aimed at:

- communicating with and educating stakeholders on South Africa's foreign policy positions, achievements, objectives and goal; and
- giving in-depth analysis and information on key departmental issues ranging from current affairs, bilateral and multilateral milestones, upcoming key events, as well as international work done by other government departments, business and parastatals.

The high-quality glossy magazine spreads South Africa's foreign policy message quarterly around the world. Its footprint extends across the globe. The magazine is also available online on *www.dirco.gov.za.*

Ubuntu Radio

Ubuntu Radio is an online, 24-hour radio station aimed at enhancing communication on South Africa's foreign policy.

The first of its kind on the African continent, it is accessible on *www.ubunturadio.com* and on the DStv Audio Bouquet Channel 888. The objective of Ubuntu Radio is to create a platform to exchange views and opinions by various stakeholders.

Ubuntu Awards

The 2020 edition of the annual Ubuntu Awards were held in Cape Town on 15 February 2020 under the theme, "Celebrating Excellence in Diplomacy – Working Together to Build a Better Africa and a Better World".

The purpose of the awards is to recognise South African citizens for their distinguished service and contribution to promoting South Africa's national interests and values across the world.

The event takes place traditionally after the opening of Parliament and brings together captains of industry, civil-society leaders, members of Cabinet and other eminent persons in addition to ambassadors and high commissioners accredited to South Africa.

Among the 2020 winners was *The Daily Show* host and Grammy Award nominee, Trevor Noah, who was awarded the Ubuntu Arts and Cultural Diplomacy Award in the youth category for flying the South African flag high in his field of work.

World-celebrated musician, Vusi Mahlasela, who is a South African Music Awards Lifetime Achievement recipient, received the Arts and Cultural Diplomacy Award in the veterans' category.

Springboks Assistant Coach Mzwandile Stick received the Sports Diplomacy Award on behalf of the team, following their Rugby World Cup triumph in Japan in 2019 and for uniting the country behind the slogan "Stronger Together".

The Ubuntu Lifetime Achievement Award went to Dr Brigalia Bam, a prominent gender activist. Bam is the Chancellor of Walter Sisulu University, a former Chairperson of the Independent Electoral Commission and former General Secretary of the South African Council of Churches. She was recently awarded the prestigious Mahatma Gandhi International Award for Peace and Reconciliation.

accede to it. While the doors into this treaty have always been open, some chose to abdicate leadership and not participate in it.

Global governance and continental agenda

Recalibrating South Africa's foreign policy and services

South Africa's foreign policy is formulated and executed in a global environment that is constantly evolving. It therefore requires frequent recalibration through comprehensive reviews of various foreign policy levers, tools and instruments to remain relevant and in line with the department's mandate.

Global governance

South Africa participates in a rules-based multilateral system to achieve global political and socio-economic stability and security.

Multilateralism, and by implication the commitment to a rules-based, just, and equitable international order, remains a focal point of South Africa's foreign policy. Consequently, South Africa will continue to engage the multilateral system, particularly the UN, through its agencies, funds, programmes and processes, to advance South Africa's foreign policy priorities.

These engagements take into account that the multilateral system still does not fully reflect global political and economic realities, and is in need of reform. A key priority for South Africa is to regain lost momentum that would accelerate the reform of the UN Security Council (UNSC), as well as to advance the reform of the broader global governance architecture with a view to improving its representivity and focus its responsiveness to the needs of, and challenges faced by, developing states.

The current unpredictable global environment poses a number of risks to the UN and the global governance system, particularly as it relates to, among others, the dynamics within the UNSC on issues of peace and security (including the situation in the Middle East), promotion and protection of human rights, funding for multilateral processes and honouring commitments to enable national implementation of multilateral decisions such as the 2030 Agenda and SDGs as well as the Paris Agreement on Climate Change – which for the first time brings all nations into a common cause to undertake ambitious efforts to combat climate change and adapt to its effects, with enhanced support to assist developing countries to do so.

Ensuring sustainable development in the current global environment will require concerted engagement in the UN system and other multilateral structures such as the G20, on economic growth and the improvement of social well-being and infrastructure through increased trade and investment as well as the fair and equitable movement of goods and services.

Furthermore, in the wake of numerous terror attacks across the world, countering international terrorism remains a priority on the agenda of the UN, particularly with regard to the abuse of cyber platforms for propaganda, recruitment and planning of attacks, radicalising of the youth and inciting extremism leading to terrorist attacks.

Development, human rights, security and international law are promoted through international forums such as the UN and its agencies.

United Nations

The UN occupies the central and indispensable role within the global system of governance. South Africa looks to the UN to advance the global peace and security and development agenda, and address underdevelopment, social integration, full employment and decent work for all and the eradication of poverty globally.

Through its participation in multilateral forums, South Africa also upholds the belief that the resolution of international conflicts should be peaceful and in accordance with the centrality of the UN Charter and the principles of international law.

South Africa was one of the 51 founding members of the UN in 1945. Since then, the UN membership has grown to 193 states. After being suspended in 1974, owing to international opposition to the policy of apartheid, South Africa was readmitted to the UN in 1994, following its transition to democracy.

United Nations Security Council

South Africa was elected to serve on the UNSC for the term 2019 – 2020.

This is South Africa's third term on the UNSC, having previously served in 2007 – 2008 and 2011 – 2012. South Africa's tenure on the council will be dedicated to the legacy of former President Nelson Mandela and his commitment to peace.

South Africa will use its experience in the prioritisation of diplomacy, mediation, the pacific settlement of disputes, conflict resolution and peacebuilding through inclusive dialogue and negotiations with the ultimate aim of supporting parties to achieve sustainable peace, national unity and reconciliation;. The country will also actively contribute to achieving a Africa at peace by 2063 by pursuing and promoting Africa's goal of "Silencing the Guns by the Year 2020", but also to promote and achieve peace in all the regions of the world. In continuing its legacy from the two previous terms on the UNSC, South Africa will advocate for closer cooperation between the UNSC and the African Union Peace and Security Council (AUPSC).

UN Economic and Social Council (ECOSOC)

The council is a premier organ of the UN responsible for the economic and social development matters of the world.

South Africa regards sustainable development as a collective opportunity and responsibility that can be achieved through multilateral cooperation, and will continue its active role in the ECOSOC mandated processes to address the follow-up and review of financing for development outcomes and the means of implementation of the 2030 Agenda for Sustainable Development, all of which are crucial to the realisation of the SDGs.

South Africa further actively participates in the functional commissions of the ECOSOC such as the Commission for Social Development, and the Commission on the Status of Women.

United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO)

South Africa is an active participant in key UNESCO governance structures such as the General Conference and the World Heritage Committee and served on the organisation's Executive Board (for the term 2015 – 2019).

South Africa also acceded to the Convention for the Protection of Cultural Property in the Event of Armed Conflict (December 2003) and the Convention on the Protection of Underwater Cultural Heritage (May 2015).

Since South Africa ratified the World Heritage Convention in 1997, it has inscribed 10 world heritage sites under the convention, namely the:

- Fossil Hominid Sites of South Africa (1999);
- Robben Island Museum (1999);
- iSimangaliso Wetland Park (1999);
- Maloti-Drakensberg Park (2000);
- Mapungubwe Cultural Landscape (2003);
- Cape Floral Region Protected Areas (2004);
- Vredefort Dome (2005);
- Richtersveld Cultural and Botanical Landscape (2007);
- ǂKhomani Cultural Landscape (2017); and
- Barberton Makhonjwa Mountains (2018).

National interaction with the UNESCO's various areas of work is coordinated through the South African National Commission for the UNESCO, whose secretariat is hosted by the Department of Basic Education.

Human rights and humanitarian affairs

South Africa played a leadership role in several intergovernmental processes at the UN pertaining to norms and standard setting in international human rights and humanitarian law, law of international protection for asylum seekers, refugees, including migrants, the empowerment of women and gender equality, the protection of the rights of the child and persons with disabilities, as well as food security and nutrition.

To this end, the South African delegation to this system took leadership roles such as chairing relevant intergovernmental working groups, initiating and negotiating flagship resolutions, influencing as well as impacting the agenda setting in these areas.

In the above context, the most important initiative entails the leadership role in the work of the ad-hoc committee on the Elaboration of Complementary Standards to the International Convention for the Elimination of All Forms of Racial Discrimination, aimed at combating contemporary forms of racism.

The year 2019 marked the last year of South Africa's back-to-back membership on the United Nations Human Rights Council (UNHRC). The country is committed toward the strengthening and deepening of the multilateral system of global governance and the rule of law, despite increasing unilateralism and the growth of populist and ultra-nationalist forces in the world.

In 2019, South Africa joined other member states in various commemorative events in New York and Geneva celebrating the 30th anniversary of the Convention on the Rights of the Child (CRC). The CRC was the first international human rights treaty to be signed and ratified by a democratic South Africa in 1995. Given South Africa's history, children still face numerous challenges, including poverty, poor education and limited access to the provision of quality services. Since ratifying the CRC, and guided by commitments to child rights, South Africa has focused on addressing these historical fault lines. Section 28 of South Africa's Bill of Rights includes obligations on children's rights. Laws and policies aimed at realising child rights have been explicated to meet the country's commitments arising out of the CRC and the Constitution.

Based on regular reviews of the implementation of laws and policies, the South African government attempts to address the gaps that still exist in the promotion, protection and fulfilment of child rights. Tangible results include reforms with regards to juvenile justice. South Africa participated in the UN Global Study on Children deprived of Liberty. In December 2019, government and the mandate holder, Independent Expert Professor Manfred Nowak, co-hosted the southern African regional launch of the UN Global Study. This launch brought together officials from 15 SADC member states, human rights institutions, civil society organisations and academia to discuss how the outcomes and recommendations of the UN Global Study could be implemented in the region. For children, deprivation of liberty means deprivation of childhood, and is a form of structural violence, which states committed themselves to eliminate. Similar to the support provided to the previous two UN global studies on children, South Africa strongly urges the UN to continue to support the independent expert leading this important mandate to ensure the implementation of the recommendations of the Global Study on Children Deprived of Liberty.

In 2019, South Africa was proudly one of the member states that abolished corporal punishment in all settings when the country's apex court, the Constitutional Court, ruled in favour of government policy that prohibited corporal punishment, including in the home. This ruling confirmed that government laws and policies in these areas are in line with our international obligations on protecting children under Article 19 of the CRC.

Despite gains made over the last 25 years, there are still critical challenges that threaten the plight of children. Key priorities that remain for South Africa include early childhood development and care; violence against children; health and nutrition; and quality education and life skills programmes. South Africa, therefore, encourages states addressing the rights of the child within multilateral fora, to remain steadfast in strengthening and enhancing the important gains that have been made for children from developing countries. This will ensure that children experience the care and protection they deserve and have a voice in the decisions that are made pertaining to them.

The 43rd Session of the UNHRC was held from 24 to 26 February 2020 in Geneva, Switzerland. South Africa's participation at the high-level segment focused on the following issues: outlining the country's human rights priorities for 2020; giving an update on the government's recent efforts in ensuring the promotion, protection, fulfilment, enjoyment and practical realisation of human rights; initiating the process of lobbying support for the 20th anniversary of the Durban Declaration and Programme of Action (DDPA), in particular the convening of a one-day high-level plenary event to commemorate the 20th anniversary of the adoption of the DDPA on the margins of the high-level segment of the 76th Session of the UN General Assembly in 2021; and delivering messages on advancing gender equality, empowerment of women, and combating violence against women and girls.

South Africa participated in two high-level panel discussions on human rights mainstreaming, whose theme focused on "Thirty years of implementation of the Convention on the Rights of the Child: Challenges and Opportunities"; and the 25th anniversary of the Beijing Declaration and Platform for Action adopted at the 4th World Conference on Women.

World Health Organisation (WHO)

South Africa is one of the 194 member states that constitute the WHO. The country takes part in the annual World Health Assembly (WHA), which is the WHO's supreme decision-making body, as well as in its executive board meetings.

South Africa also participates in the WHO's Regional Committee for Africa, which convenes annually after the WHA to reflect on the decisions taken at the WHA (particularly those relevant to the continent) and plan for the following year's WHA.

Through its participation in these structures, South Africa contributes to setting international norms and standards on key issues regarding global and public health such as:

- the implementation of the international health regulations;
- addressing antimicrobial resistance;
- the fight against HIV and AIDS, tuberculosis and malaria;
- building resilient healthcare systems in developing states;
- ensuring access to medicines;
- achieving Universal Health Coverage (National Health Insurance in South Africa); and
- contributing to economic growth through health employment.

In April 2020, President Cyril Ramaphosa participated in the WHO virtual launch of a global collaboration to accelerate the development, production and equitable global access to new COVID-19 essential health technologies. The launch was co-hosted by WHO Director-General (DG), Dr Tedros Adhanom Ghebreyesus; France President Emmanuel Macron; European Commission President Ursula von der Leyen; and the Bill & Melinda Gates Foundation. President Ramaphosa participated in his capacity as President of South Africa and Chair of the AU.

Global health actors, private sector partners and other stakeholders came together to create a global platform for action which aimed to enhance connections and leverage interdependencies for collective thought-partnership, problem-solving, mobilising and guiding investments. This platform secured equitable access for new COVID-19 diagnostics, therapeutics and vaccines. It enabled partners to avoid duplication and overlap, and identify gaps and close them before they emerge. It also connected upstream and downstream activities with countries and communities. Its mission was not only accelerated development and production of new COVID-19 tools – it was to accelerate equitable global access to safe, quality, effective, and affordable COVID-19 diagnostics, therapeutics and vaccines, and thus to ensure that in the fight against COVID-19, no one is left behind.

In May 2020, President Ramaphosa attended the 73rd WHA where he affirmed South Africa's support for the WHO, which has been key in guiding the international response to the COVID-19 pandemic. The WHO has been instrumental in providing guidance and support to African governments with early detection of the pandemic, training health workers and strengthening surveillance in communities.

Group of Twenty

South Africa has been a permanent member of the G20 since its inception in 1999, following the Asian financial crises. The G20 was established to increase multilateral cooperation for the recovery of the global economy, to bring stability to the global financial system, to promote long-term sustainable growth and to strengthen global economic governance.

The G20 economies account for 85% of the global GDP, 80% of world trade and two-thirds of the world's population. Since the escalation of the G20 to Leaders' Summit level in 2008, the agenda has significantly expanded to include issues of geo-political, development and trade significance. South Africa's participation in the G20 has sought to provide strategic foresight in establishing an economic and financial international policy platform that will drive and negotiate the best possible outcomes for South Africa, Africa and the developing world.

South Africa has been the permanent Co-Chair of the Development Working Group since 2010 for the promotion of national and continental priorities. Addressing the scourge of illicit financial flows has the potential to unlock billions of dollars that could be utilised to fund Africa and the developing world's development.

In addition, South Africa has consistently advanced G20 support for industrialisation in Africa and least developed countries, the implementation of the G20 Partnership with Africa and enhanced G20 support to developing countries by providing the means of implementation for achieving the 2030 Sustainable Development Agenda. These initiatives are aimed at positively impacting the development trajectory of Africa and the developing world and contribute positively to achieving the global commitment of leaving no one behind.

The G20 is unique in its composition of countries of the North and South, and therefore as a collective body tends to carry significant profile and influence. South Africa, as the only permanent African member of the G20, has used its participation to advance national priorities, the African Agenda of Sustainable Development, inclusive growth, the reduction of inequality and the promotion of a just economic world order.

In the future, the strategic trajectory of the G20 is anticipated to transform from a crisis response mechanism focusing on short-term policies to one of long-term governance that shapes medium- to long-term policies, and will solidify its role as the premier forum for international economic governance.

South Africa also works closely with the following international bodies and organisations:

- World Trade Organisation (WTO)
- World Economic Forum (WEF)
- Organisation for Economic Cooperation and Development (OECD)
- International Labour Organisation (ILO)
- World Intellectual Property Organisation (WIPO).

The country continues to engage with key global economic institutions such as the WTO, the OECD, the ILO and WIPO to ensure that South Africa benefits from trade, investment, industrialisation and innovation to address the triple challenges of poverty, inequality and unemployment as espoused in the NDP.

South Africa pursues a system that is sensitive to the needs of the poorest, while leaving policy space at national level to address the development challenges of the South and Africa.

Continental Agenda

African Union

The establishment of the Organisation of African Unity (OAU) in 1963 by 32 countries in Addis Ababa, Ethiopia was intended to continue the fight against colonialism and apartheid on the African continent, promote unity and solidarity, safeguard

the sovereignty and territorial integrity of member states and coordinate and intensify cooperation for development.

Following the realisation of the objectives that were set during the advent of the OAU, particularly the mission to emancipate the continent from the shackles of colonial and apartheid rule, the AU was formed and brought to force in 2002, wherein 54 countries agreed to chart a new path for the continent, more specifically its economic development.

This new path which was set in 2002 by the AU was underpinned in the determination to tackle and address the multifaceted social, economic and political challenges, through forging an integrated continent that can ultimately realise its full economic potential and play its rightful role in the global economy.

To this end, the AU is making progressive strides and moving towards the right direction in its mission to address the long-standing challenges of underdevelopment, and consequent poverty, unemployment and inequality on the continent.

The AU recognised the need to develop a long-term strategy resulting in the adoption of Agenda 2063 in 2015 by the Heads of State and Government during the 24th Ordinary Session in Addis Ababa, Ethiopia.

Agenda 2063 has identified seven cardinal aspirations which provide an indication of what the continent should achieve by the year 2063:

- a prosperous Africa based on inclusive growth and sustainable development;
- an integrated continent, politically united based on the ideals of Pan-Africanism and the vision of Africa's renaissance;
- an Africa of good governance, democracy, respect for human rights, justice and the rule of law;
- a peaceful and secure Africa;
- an Africa with a strong cultural identity, common heritage, values and ethics;
- an Africa where development is people driven, unleashing the potential of its women and youth; and
- Africa as a strong united and influential global player and partner.

Appreciating the need that the realisation of the objectives set by Agenda 2063 should be fulfilled, there was a formulation its first ten-year implementation plan.

Thus far, there's has been progress made in this regard, as evidenced by:

- the adoption of a Protocol on the Free Movement of Persons in Africa,
- member states having committed to the African Continental Free Trade Area (AfCFTA); and
- the Single African Air Transport Market being launched.

These flagship programmes of Agenda 2063 are the catalysts which will ensure the acceleration of integration within the continent and will further enable the African countries to maximise the economic opportunities, particularly trade amongst them.

The objective of the AfCFTA is to promote intra-African trade and offer an opportunity to create larger economies of scale, a bigger market and improve the prospects of the African continent to attract investment. In addition, the AfCFTA will bring together the 55 member states of the AU, covering a market of more than 1.2 billion people, including a growing middle class and a combined GDP of more than US$3.4 trillion.

Furthermore, the AU has noted that in order to successfully move the continent forward, it has to transform the manner in which it conducts its business. Currently the AU is undergoing a rigorous process of reviewing how it has been operating, through engaging the recommendations made during the institutional reform process. The successful implementation of the agreement borne out of this process will ensure that the AU becomes more effective and efficient in carrying out its mandate.

South Africa, as a member of the AU, remains committed to the organisation and it has demonstrated its desire to ensure that the organisation succeeds. Currently, South Africa is hosting the PAP, the APRM and the AUDA-NEPAD, amongst others. Additionally, the country continues to play a steering role in matters related to peace and security on the continent.

AU Summit

The AU 33rd Ordinary Session of the Heads of State and Government Summit was held in Ethiopia from 9 to 10 February 2020 under the theme; "Silencing the Guns: Creating Conducive Conditions for Africa's Development". President Ramaphosa led a South African delegation to the summit where the country assumed the Chairship of the AU for the second time, taking over from Egypt.

While in Ethiopia, President Ramaphosa participated in a number of meetings, including a meeting of the committee of Heads of States and Government on climate change; the 29th Summit of the APRM Forum of Heads of State and Government; and the 37th Session of the AUDA-NEPAD Heads of State and Government orientation committee. He also engaged in a number of bilateral meetings with other Heads of State and Government on the side-lines of the summit and participated in the Presidential Infrastructure Champion Initiative event.

Amongst many issues on the agenda, the 2020 assembly considered the report of the 35th Ordinary Session of the Executive Council, the peace and security situation on the continent, and draft legal instruments of the AU.

Peace and Security Council

South Africa continues to promote peace and stability on the African continent through preventative diplomacy, peacemaking, peacebuilding and peacekeeping efforts. In this context, the country's approach to peacekeeping resonates strongly with the AU's aspirational goal adopted by the AU Assembly of African Heads of State and Government on 25 May 2013 in Addis Ababa of "Silencing the Guns by the Year 2020".

The AU's flagship project on addressing peace and security issues in the context of the African Peace and Security Architecture (APSA), is built around structures, objectives, principles and values, as well as decision-making processes relating to the prevention, management and resolution of crises and conflicts and post-conflict reconstruction and development on the continent.

Furthermore, the AUPSC remains the main pillar of the APSA and is supported by various structures, including the AU Commission, the Panel of the Wise, the continental Early Warning System, the African Standby Force and the Peace Fund.

The relationship between the AU and the regional economic communities (RECs)/regional mechanisms for conflict prevention, management and resolution remains crucial for the success of the APSA.

South Africa has actively participated, through both bilateral and multilateral efforts, to resolve some of the continent's pressing conflict areas.

These countries include Lesotho, the Democratic Republic of Congo (DRC), Madagascar, Burundi, South Sudan, Somalia, Central African Republic (CAR), Mali and Libya. South Africa also remains engaged in the peace and security dynamics of the Horn of Africa, the Sahel, the Great Lakes Region and the Lake Chad Basin.

South Africa will continue to play its part in conflict resolution in these countries and respective regions. In addition, South Africa reaffirms its continued solidarity to assist the people of Western Sahara in pursuit of their inalienable right to self-determination and decolonisation. South Africa remains steadfast in its rejection of all acts of terrorism and extremism that have increasingly affected Africa, contributing negatively to internal instability.

AU regional economic communities

The AU is the principal institution responsible for promoting sustainable development at economic, social and cultural level, as well as integrating African economies.

RECs are recognised as the building blocks of the AU, necessitating the need for their close involvement in formulating and implementing all AU programmes.

To this end, the AU must coordinate and take decisions on policies in areas of common interest to member states, as well as coordinate and harmonise policies between existing and future RECs, for the gradual attainment of the AU's objectives.

Seven specialised technical committees are responsible for the actual implementation of the continental socio-economic integration process, together with the Permanent Representatives Committee.

South Africa's development is intertwined with that of the southern Africa region and the African continent at large. The country's efforts at ramping up industrialisation should be viewed within the overall framework of the SADC Industrialisation Strategy and Roadmap, as approved by the SADC Extra-Ordinary Summit in April 2015. South Africa seeks to industrialise the regional and continental economies in order to develop its own manufacturing capacity.

In addition, the country seeks to radically alter the colonial/post-colonial pattern where Africa was a supplier of raw materials. Africa should produce value-added goods for exports into the global economy.

It is only in this way that Africa can address the paradox of a rich-resource continent inhabited by a poverty-stricken population, and make a decisive break with the past.

African Union Development Agency-New Partnership for Africa's Development

The AUDA-NEPAD, an AU strategic framework for Pan-African socio-economic development, is both a vision and a policy framework for Africa in the 21st century. The AUDA-NEPAD provides unique opportunities for African countries to take full control of their development agenda, to work more closely together, and to cooperate more effectively with international partners.

The AUDA-NEPAD manages a number of programmes and projects in six theme areas namely:

- agriculture and food security;
- climate change and national resource management;
- regional integration and infrastructure;
- human development;
- economic and corporate governance; and
- cross-cutting issues, including gender, capacity development and information and communications technology (ICT).

South Africa, as one of the initiating countries, played a key role in the establishment of the AUDA-NEPAD and the African APRM, and hosts the AUDA-NEPAD Agency and APRM Secretariat in Midrand, Gauteng.

The APRM process is aimed at addressing corruption, poor governance and inefficient delivery of public goods and services to the citizens of African countries. It encourages the adoption of policies, standards and practices that lead to political stability, high economic growth, sustainable development and accelerated regional and continental economic integration through the sharing of experiences and best practices, and is important to the sustainability of the AUDA-NEPAD.

The AUDA-NEPAD remains the main programme of reference for intra-African socio-economic and developmental relations and Africa's partnerships with international partners such as the:

- European Union (EU)-AU Strategic Partnership;
- Forum on China-Africa Cooperation (FOCAC);
- Group of Seven Most Industrialised Nations plus Russia;
- Tokyo International Conference on African Development;
- New Asian-African Strategic Partnership (NAASP); and
- Organisation for Economic Cooperation and Development.

Through the AUDA-NEPAD, Africa has expanded its development priorities. Development and funding in agriculture, ICT, science and technology, infrastructure and education have improved the quality of life for millions of Africans.

Southern African Development Community

The SADC developed from the Southern African Development Coordination Conference (SADCC), which was established in 1980. It adopted its current name during a summit held in Windhoek, Namibia, in August 1992.

Before 1992, the aim of the SADCC was to forge close economic cooperation with southern African countries, excluding South Africa, to bolster their economies and reduce their dependence on the South African economy.

From 1992, when the organisation became SADC, its mandate changed to:

- promoting and defending peace and security;
- evolving common values, systems and institutions;
- establishing an open economy based on equality, mutual benefit and balanced development;
- breaking down tariff barriers;
- promoting trade exchanges and mutual investment;
- realising the free movement of goods, personnel and labour services;
- achieving the unification of tariffs and currencies; and
- establishing a free trade zone.

The initial member states were Angola, Botswana, Lesotho, Malawi, Mauritius, Mozambique, Namibia, Eswatini, Tanzania, Zambia and Zimbabwe. South Africa became a member after 1994.

South Africa has consistently sought to nurture regional integration at three levels: The Southern African Customs Union (SACU), the SADC and the Tripartite Free Trade

Agreement (TFTA) between the SADC, the Common Market for Eastern and Southern Africa (COMESA) and East African Countries (EAC). In particular, South Africa has championed a "developmental regionalism" approach that combines market integration, cross-border infrastructure development as well as policy coordination to diversify production and boost intra-African trade. South Africa contributed to the development of the SACU's five-point plan, which aims to transform the customs union from a tariff and a revenue-sharing agreement to an integrated institution capable of promoting true regional economic development.

South Africa and Namibia co-hosted the SADC Solidarity Conference with Western Sahara from 25 to 26 March 2019 in Pretoria. This came after the 37th Summit of the SADC Heads of State and Government resolved to convene the Solidarity Conference with Western Sahara.

During the conference, the SADC Heads of State and Government expressed the region's support towards decolonisation and right to self-determination of the people of Western Sahara.

Work in the SADC continues to focus on consolidating the SADC Free Trade Agreement (FTA), launched in 2008, before considering deeper forms of integration in the region. The ongoing negotiations to establish the TFTA will combine the three major RECs of 600 million people and a combined GDP of USD$1 trillion, as building blocks towards continental integration.

In May 2018, Cabinet approved the agreement establishing the TFTA between the COMESA, EAC and SADC be tabled in Parliament for ratification.

The establishment of the TFTA has been heralded as one of the most important developments in Africa. It responds to the need for Africa to overcome small fragmented markets and increases prospects of stimulating industrialisation, employment, income generation and poverty reduction. It further addresses the negative impact on industrialisation, economies of scale and competitiveness.

The TFTA is a key Africa-led project that is being done through the promotion of intra-African investments and attraction of more foreign investment into the FTA. It is an important initiative in accelerating regional integration efforts aimed at improved intra-African trade,

The TFTA is anchored on the development integration approach that is based on three pillars: market integration, infrastructure development and industrial development. It also forms the basis for the ongoing African continental FTA negotiations which will unlock trade and investment opportunities in the entire continent.

This is also aligned to South Africa's NDP objective of an integrated Southern African region with beneficial relations with the rest of the world.

One of the key areas to stimulate regional economic development has been the finalisation of the SADC Regional Infrastructure Development Master Plan, which focuses on the following six priority sectors: energy, transport, ICT/communications, water, tourism and meteorology.

South Africa has played a critical role in promoting peace, security and political stability in the SADC region, including participation in peace missions. This includes creating an environment conducive to regional political integration, facilitation, and the promotion of democracy and good governance.

Strengthening African cooperation and regional integration

The SADC remains critical for the region's economic development and for South Africa's global competitiveness.

The revised Regional Indicative Strategic Development Plan 2015 – 2020 and the Industrialisation Strategy and Roadmap 2015 – 2063 are the key blueprints in place for this.

A renewed focus on industrialisation emerged from the 38th Ordinary Summit of SADC Heads of State and Government, and that guides government's priorities in leading the implementation and domestication of the region's blueprints over the medium term. South Africa continues to participate in the SADC Double Troika Leadership Oversight Structure, and monitor the implementation of SADC summit decisions and resolutions in advancing political and economic integration.

The DIRCO continues to play an active role in the AU structures and processes for the advancement of peace and security; and conflict prevention, resolution and management on the continent. This includes the strengthening of mechanisms to consolidate peace and prevent post-conflict in countries such as Libya and South Sudan, from backsliding into civil unrest. As one of the largest contributors to the AU budget, South Africa's membership contribution was expected to increase by R200 million in 2019/20 (from R237.9 million to R437.9 million) and by R213.3 million in 2020/21 (from R251 million to R464.3 million) to address a shortfall as a result of the current scale of assessment to determine countries' membership fees to the AU. This contribution is expected to decrease to R265.1 million in 2021/22, when the current three-year cycle of the scale of assessment lapses.

Development partners

South Africa has key partnerships such as the FOCAC, Africa's comprehensive partnership with India, and the Korea-Africa Forum. The South African government spares no effort in strengthening the progressive forums of the South such as the NAM, Group of 77 (G77)+China, Africa-South America Summit and the NAASP. These forums have demonstrated that they are trusted allies and partners in South Africa's aim for a better Africa in a better world

Relations with countries of the South remain strong and BRICS membership has yielded benefits for the country and is expected to do so for the rest of the continent. Efforts continue within BRICS on common objectives, including addressing challenges in respective regions and the world at large. BRICS also continues to provide alternative market access as well as strategic political support in pursuit of a just and equitable world.

In the same vein, South Africa continues to support the consolidation of the India Brazil and South Africa (IBSA) Dialogue Forum. The IBSA serves as an intimate platform from which to coordinate matters of common interest and concern, and to promote development through the IBSA Fund for the alleviation of poverty and hunger.

The Indian Ocean region is of vital importance and of growing geostrategic significance. South Africa views the IORA as the pre-eminent regional organisation linking Africa, the Middle East and Asia via the Indian Ocean. The association is growing in

stature and prominence, and South Africa chaired the IORA from October 2017 to 2019.

Brazil, Russia, India, China, South Africa

BRICS is an association of five major emerging countries, which together represent about 42% of the global population, 23% of GDP, 30% of the territory and 18% of the global trade. South Africa's membership of BRICS enables the country to employ additional and powerful tools in its fight to address the triple challenges of unemployment, poverty and inequality through increased trade, investment, tourism, capacity building, skills and technology transfers.

These objectives are further realised through BRICS' financial institutions like the New Development Bank (NDB) and the Africa Regional Centre (ARC). The Johannesburg-based ARC plays a catalytic role in providing financial and project preparation support for infrastructure and sustainable development projects in South Africa and Africa.

At an institutional development level, South Africa derives crucial benefits through the Track II institutions such as the BRICS Business Council and the BRICS Think-Tank Council, as well as the creation of the BRICS Inter-Bank Cooperation Mechanism. Furthermore, the establishment of the BRICS Science, Technology and Innovation Funding Mechanism and Framework Programme, is an example of the vital support for capacity building, as well as skills and technology transfer.

South Africa has made concerted efforts to place the African Continent and the Global South on the agenda of BRICS and to harmonise policies adopted in regional and international fora with those pursued in BRICS – the Africa's Agenda 2063 and the 2030 Agenda for Sustainable Development.

The exponential institutional development of BRICS has yielded institutions, including the NDB, and it's Africa ARC and the Contingent Reserve Arrangement, amongst others, all of which are intended to make tangible and impactful contributions toward the development objectives of South Africa and BRICS.

The 11th BRICS Summit was held in Brazil from 13 to 14 November 2019 under the theme, "BRICS: Economic Growth for an Innovative Future."

Brazil's priorities for its 2019 BRICS Chairship were innovation, fighting transnational crime, health and promoting trade and investment with a focus on infrastructure development and possible public-private partnerships.

IBSA Dialogue Forum

The IBSA Dialogue Forum brings together three large pluralistic, multi-cultural and multi-racial societies from three continents as a purely South-South grouping of like-minded countries committed to inclusive sustainable development, in pursuit of the well-being of their peoples and those of the developing world. The principles, norms and values underpinning the IBSA Dialogue Forum are participatory democracy, respect for human rights, the Rule of Law and the strengthening of multilateralism.

The realisation of the trilateral alliance between IBSA stems from three commonalities between the three countries, namely: all three countries are vibrant democracies, they share common views on various global issues and are substantial emerging economies within their sub-regions.

The IBSA Fund is a flagship programme of the Dialogue Forum that has successfully delivered impact-driven projects in developing and least developed countries. The IBSA Fund has made it possible for South Africa to contribute in a meaningful and substantive manner towards international efforts to alleviate extreme poverty and hunger in developing countries.

The engagement process of the IBSA countries takes place on a number of levels, namely: Summit (Heads of State and Government), the IBSA Trilateral Ministerial Commission meeting (Ministers), and Senior Officials and Technical (through various working groups).

As part of the commemoration of the 15th anniversary of the IBSA Dialogue Forum, President Ramaphosa spoke at the inaugural Gandhi-Mandela Freedom Lecture series in New Delhi during a state visit to India.

Indian Ocean Rim Association

The IORA is a charter-based regional multilateral organisation of 22 littoral and island states around the Indian Ocean and 10 dialogue partner countries. It seeks to build and expand understanding and mutually beneficial cooperation through a consensus-based, evolutionary and non-intrusive approach.

The IORA was established on 7 March 1997 and it is an initiative that came into existence, through Former President Mandela's visionary leadership, during his official visit to India in 1995. The IORA region is a huge market of more than three billion people.

South Africa views the IORA as an important platform for the implementation of its economic diplomacy objectives as well as the articulation of its foreign policy, which upholds the importance of multilateralism and global collaboration in resolving the intricate challenges facing the world.

South Africa concluded its two-year Chairship of the IORA in November 2019 when it handed over the Chairship to the United Arab Emirates (UAE) during the 19th IORA Council of Ministers held in Abu Dhabi.

South Africa's Chairship of the IORA provided an important platform to pursue the country's domestic imperatives such as the NDP as well as other regional and global programmes, such as the AU's Agenda 2063; the 2050 African Integrated Maritime Strategy; the AUDA-NEPAD, and Agenda 2030. During the South African Chairship, the IORA also adopted a special declaration to commemorate the centenary of former President Mandela and communicated the IORA Nelson Mandela "Be the Legacy" internship programme, envisioned to be launched in July 2020, as a contribution to empowering and capacitating the youth of the Indian Ocean Region. South Africa remains part of the IORA Troika for the next two years, which is constituted as follows: UAE (Chair), Bangladesh (Vice Chair) and South Africa (Past Chair). South Africa also remains either in the leading or core cluster country role of various IORA working groups established to implement key regional-wide programmes that emanate from the six IORA priority areas and two cross-cutting thematic areas.

Commonwealth

The modern Commonwealth is a voluntary association of 53 independent member countries. Membership is diverse and includes developed and developing countries in Africa, Asia, the Americas, the Caribbean, Europe and the South Pacific.

Since rejoining the Commonwealth in 1994, South Africa has interacted closely with the work of the Commonwealth,

contributing politically, financially and in terms of capacity and expertise to the work of the organisation.

In March 2020, South Africa joined other member states in celebrating the Commonwealth Day. It was held under the theme, "Delivering a Common Future: Connecting, Innovating, Transforming."

As a member of the Commonwealth, South Africa cooperates with the organisation's family of nations to create better life for its citizens through economic transformation and collaboration in the fields of education and skills development, women and youth empowerment, technology and innovation, the blue economy, as well as trade and investment. Therefore, the 2020 theme spoke directly to South Africa's NDP, the AU's Agenda 2063 and the UN's Agenda 2063, which aim to create a prosperous world, based on inclusive growth and sustainable development.

Since rejoining the Commonwealth in 1994, South Africa has worked closely with the group, contributing financially, and in terms of capacity and expertise to the work of the organisation. Recently, South Africa in partnership with the British Council, the United Kingdom's (UK) International Organisation for Cultural Relations and Educational Opportunities, implemented the Improving Work Opportunities project for young people in the Commonwealth to address the high rate of youth unemployment. Six South African Technical Vocational Education and Training (TVET) colleges will partner with their counterparts in Ghana, India, Malaysia and the UK to learn and share best practices on work readiness programmes.

Since the establishment of the Commonwealth on 26 April 1949, the relevance and value of this organisation has increased as the number of members have grown from eight countries in 1949 to 54 in 2020 and with a membership of around 2.4 billion people from developed and developing countries in Africa, Asia, the Americas, the Caribbean, Europe and the South Pacific. Members work together to pursue common goals to promote a fairer, prosperous, sustainable and secure future.

As a result of the COVID-19 pandemic, the 26th Commonwealth Heads of Government Meeting which was scheduled to take place in Kigali, Rwanda from 22 to 27 June 2020 was postponed. The event will be held in Kigali at a time to be announced.

Non-Aligned Movement (NAM)

With its 120 member states, the NAM is the largest grouping of countries outside of the UN, making it an important role player in global and multilateral affairs. Since its inception in 1961, the movement has played a crucial and highly visible political role in representing the interests of developing countries, particularly in the eradication of colonialism, supporting struggles for liberation and self-determination, the pursuit of world peace and the search for a more equitable and just global order. The NAM remains an important role player in the multilateral system and continues to play an active role on issues pertaining to development, UN reform, disarmament, human rights, peacekeeping and peacebuilding, amongst others.

The 18th Summit of the NAM was held from 25 to 26 October 2019 in Baku, Azerbaijan. The summit was attended by delegates from more than 120 countries. A delegation from South Africa also attended the summit which was held under the theme, "NAM Baku Summit – Upholding the Bandung Principles to ensure concerted and adequate response to the challenges of the contemporary world."

G77 and China

The G77 was established on 15 June 1964 by 77 developing countries signatories of the "Joint Declaration of the Seventy-Seven Developing Countries" issued at the end of the first session of the UN Conference on Trade and Development, in Geneva, Switzerland.

Although the members of the G77 have increased to 134 countries, including China as the associate member, the original name was retained due to its historic significance.

The G77 and China is the largest intergovernmental organisation of developing countries in the UN system. It provides the means for countries of the South to promote their collective economic interests, enhances its joint negotiating capacity on all major international economic issues within the UN system and promotes South-South cooperation.

South Africa chaired the G77 and China in 2006 and 2015. Significant during South Africa's chairing of the G77 was the adoption of the landmark 2030 Agenda for SDGs, which builds on the Millennium Development Goals and sets the global development trajectory until 2030.

As Chair of the G77, South Africa was also at the forefront of the negotiations and successfully carried out its mandate to ensure that the positions of developing countries were advanced.

Additionally, during South Africa's chairing of the group, developing countries were able to influence the outcomes of the Paris Climate Change negotiations, and international outcomes on development financing.

West Africa

Senegal

Senegal and South Africa are bound by their historic ties of friendship that were established during the struggle against colonialism and apartheid. Full diplomatic relations were established in May 1994.

Senegal is a bastion of stability in Francophone West Africa. It is a strong constitutional democracy and one of the only African countries that have never experienced a *coup d'état* or any type of violent transition since its independence from France in 1960.

South Africa and Senegal enjoy cordial bilateral political, economic and social relations underpinned by strong historical ties dating back to the years of the liberation struggle.

The Dakar Talks are widely considered to have paved the way towards a negotiated settlement between the African National Congress and the then government of South Africa.

South Africa and Senegal conduct their bilateral relations through a Joint Commission (JC) for Bilateral Cooperation.

Mali

South Africa and Mali established bilateral relations in May 1994. The bilateral relations between the two countries are conducted through the JC for Cooperation signed in December 2000.

South Africa assisted the government of Mali in the preservation of the Ahmed Baba Institute of Higher Learning and Islamic Research in Timbuktu through an African Renaissance Fund contribution.

Peace, security and stability remain a challenge in Northern and Central Mali. South Africa supports the current peace

process in Mali and encourages all the parties involved to remain committed to the implementation of the Peace Agreement in an effort to ensuring lasting peace.

The Gambia

South Africa and The Gambia established formal diplomatic relations in August 1998. The South African Ambassador in Dakar, Senegal, is accredited to The Gambia on a non-residential basis.

Guinea-Bissau

South Africa and Guinea-Bissau established formal diplomatic relations in October 1994, even though the relations between the two countries date back to the common struggle against apartheid and colonialism.

Cabo Verde

South Africa and Cabo Verde exchanged diplomatic notes to establish diplomatic relations in 1994 followed by the signing of the Agreement on the Establishment of a Mechanism for Bilateral Consultation during an AU summit in 2015.

Liberia

The formal diplomatic relations between South Africa and Liberia were established in 1997. The Liberian government opened its embassy in Pretoria in October 1997, while South Africa opened a resident diplomatic mission in Monrovia in October 2010.

South Africa and Liberia maintain good diplomatic and political relations since the attainment of freedom and democracy in South Africa.

South Africa and Liberia signed an Agreement on Visa Exemption for Holders of Diplomatic and Official Passports in May 2018.

The two countries have also since the establishment of diplomatic relations signed a General Cooperation Agreement, the Memorandum of Understanding (MoU) on Economic and Technical Cooperation.

These agreements allow the two countries to engage on a number of areas of possible cooperation, including agriculture, energy, infrastructure development, capacity and institutional building and trade as well as in the health sector.

Sierra Leone

Diplomatic relations between South Africa and Sierra Leone were established in 1998 through the exchange of diplomatic notes.

Niger

Diplomatic relations were established in May 1994. In March 2008 South Africa opened an embassy in Niamey which is headed by a *Chargé d 'Affaires*. Niger opened its embassy in Pretoria during the last quarter of 2012.

An Agreement on the Establishment of a Joint Commission for Cooperation (JCC) was concluded on 8 May 2007 and the inaugural session of the commission took pace in October 2013.

Côte d'Ivoire

Diplomatic relations between South Africa and Côte d'Ivoire were established in May 1992. The Agreement on the Establishment of a JCC was concluded in December 2015.

At a political level, given South Africa's firm commitment to the African Renaissance and its attendant features of stability and democratisation on the continent, the country previously played an important role in assisting to find a peaceful resolution to the stalemate following the disputed Presidential Elections in Côte d'Ivoire.

Bilateral trade between South Africa and Côte d'Ivoire has experienced an upward trend. South African investors are present in the banking, transport and telecommunications sectors.

Nigeria

As the continent's two largest economies, South Africa and Nigeria enjoy good political, economic and social bilateral relations formally established in 1994, immediately after South Africa's first democratic elections.

Formal relations between the two countries have been conducted through the Bi-National Commission (BNC), established in 1999 as a structured bilateral mechanism to promote political, economic, social, cultural, scientific and technical cooperation between the two countries.

Through eight successful biennial sessions over the years, the BNC has deepened and solidified the relations between the two countries, and laid the foundation for increased bilateral political and economic cooperation.

There are a number of signed bilateral agreements between the two countries which cover various areas such as arts and culture, education, agriculture, trade and investment, mining, defence, policing, immigration, taxation, science and technology, health, tourism, environment and energy amongst others.

There are over 120 South African companies currently doing business in Nigeria in various sectors, mainly in telecommunications, banking, retail, hospitality, mining, tourism, agriculture and construction. They include MTN, Multichoice, Stanbic Bank, Shoprite Checkers, South African Airways, Sasol and Bon Hotels.

In February 2019, President Ramaphosa congratulated his Nigerian counterpart, President Muhammadu Buhari following his successful re-election.

Ghana

South Africa and Ghana established a permanent JCC in May 2007, as a structured bilateral mechanism to provide for political, economic, social, cultural, scientific and technical cooperation between the two countries. In 2018, the commission was elevated to become a BNC at the Presidential level.

The permanent JCC essentially oversees the implementation of more than 20 bilateral agreements and memoranda of understanding, which cover various fields, including trade and investment, avoidance of double taxation, information and communication, transport, electricity, oil and gas, tourism, environment, science and technology, and arts and culture.

South Africa exported R4.4 billion worth of goods to Ghana in 2018 while imports were valued at R8.7 billion, thus registering a trade deficit of R4.3 billion with Ghana in 2019.

The majority of the South African investment projects are in the services sector with a total of over 100 projects valued at over US$780m. Other sectors that South Africa has invested

in include agriculture, building and construction, manufacturing and tourism.

Benin

South Africa and Benin established formal diplomatic relations in May 1994. South Africa opened an embassy in Cotonou in 2007, and Benin opened its embassy in Pretoria in January 1999.

The Agreement for the Establishment of a JC on Cooperation was concluded on 14 June 2015.

Burkina Faso

Diplomatic relations between South Africa and Burkina Faso were established in May 1995. South Africa has an embassy in Ouagadougou since February 2007, and Burkina opened an embassy in Pretoria in June 2007. An agreement to establish a JCC was concluded in April 2007.

South Africa and Burkina Faso work closely through regional bodies, the SADC and the Economic Community of West African States, as well as the AU, to address all challenges that hinder Africa's development and to ensure that the set objectives in relation to the Agenda 2063 are achieved without fail.

Togo

Relations between South Africa and Togo were established in 1997. The South African Ambassador in Benin is accredited to Togo on a non-residential basis. South Africa and Togo are currently negotiating a Framework Agreement for Cooperation.

The agreement will establish cooperation in a number of fields including agro-processing, port management, mining and energy. Nedbank and the Public Investment Corporation are the second- and third-largest shareholders respectively in the Lomé head-quartered West African Bank, Ecobank.

East Africa

Burundi

South Africa's relations with Burundi are sound and cordial. South Africa participated as the mediator in the AU-led Burundi Peace Process, which was first led by former President Nelson Mandela, followed by former President Thabo Mbeki and by then Deputy President Jacob Zuma. The process led to the Arusha Peace Accords in 2000 – 2005 that brought an end to the long civil war.

South Africa has invested significantly in Burundi's peace and stability and it closely follows developments in Burundi, a small but key role player in the Great Lakes region.

Peace and stability in Burundi are seen as crucial factors to the achievement of peace in the entire region.

South Africa is ready to assist and support the mediation process, if and when it is called upon. It continues to stand by the people of Burundi in their search for sustainable peace, security and development.

Djibouti

South Africa and Djibouti enjoy excellent relations. Current infrastructure development programmes, including the free development zones, provide fertile ground for active investment by South African companies.

Eritrea

Eritrea serves as one of the fastest-growing economies in the Horn of Africa with a GDP growth rate of 8.5%. The country is rich in mineral resources, including copper, gold, granite, marble, oil and gas reserves. The promotion of trade and investment between South Africa and Eritrea is important, especially in the fields of tourism and infrastructure development.

Ethiopia

Bilateral economic relations with Ethiopia, which were revived in 1995 when South Africa opened an embassy in Addis Ababa, remain strong.

The two countries have a number of bilateral agreements in place that establish a regulatory framework to facilitate political, economic and social interaction such as an agreement on the avoidance of double taxation. The umbrella agreement provides for the establishment of a Joint Ministerial Commission (JMC).

Ethiopian Prime Minister Abiy Ahmed Ali visited South Africa on 11 and 12 January 2020 for bilateral discussions on matters of mutual national development, regional and continental issues as well as international developments.

The objectives of the visit were to further strengthen and deepen bilateral relations and cooperation between the two nations and to consolidate political, economic and social cooperation. The visit also explored potential areas of trade and investment for the benefit of both countries in industries such as telecommunications, road infrastructure, mining, agro-processing and manufacturing.

Indian Ocean Islands

South Africa's political, economic and diplomatic relations with the Comoros, Madagascar, Mauritius and Seychelles remain strong.

Greater emphasis is being placed, in terms of South Africa's Operation Phakisa, on building partnerships with the islands in respect of the Oceans Economy to enhance trade and investment in areas such as, among others, marine manufacturing and transport; aquaculture; offshore oil and gas exploration; and marine protection and governance.

South Africa and Seychelles established formal relations in 1992. The relationship has been progressive, with a display of support for strategic tourism events hosted in each country and a shared vision for regional tourism development and integration

In January 2019, the South African government sent a representative to attend the inauguration of President-elect Andry Rajoelina in Antananarivo. The visit was also used to strengthen bilateral and socio-economic relations between the two countries.

Madagascar and South Africa have strong bilateral relations and currently have a MoU on Regular Diplomatic Consultations which covers various areas of cooperation such as political, security, economic and social issues of mutual interest.

Kenya

South Africa and Kenya enjoy strong bilateral relations, with the two countries' Heads of State meeting on the margins of various international and multilateral engagements to discuss matters of mutual interest.

South Africa and Kenya enjoy cordial relations since the signing of a bilateral agreement in 2004, which was implemented by the then Department of Science and Technology and Kenya's

Ministry of Education, National Commission for Science, Technology and Innovation.

Rwanda

Since the establishment of diplomatic relations in 1995 between South Africa and Rwanda, the two countries continue to have close interaction at a High Political level.

Rwanda is an important partner in the advancement and the championing of the African Agenda, by being among the first countries to volunteer for the APRM and by actively contributing troops to African peacekeeping missions in Sudan and the CAR.

South Africa and Rwanda have signed over 20 bilateral agreements in various fields and continue to enjoy cordial relations

Sudan

The relations between South Africa and Sudan remain cordial. South Africa is also playing a key role in the resolution of conflicts and the post-conflict reconstruction efforts in that country. Moreover, Sudan serves among key African countries with the potential for increased trade and investment.

South Sudan

In 2019, a South African delegation visited Addis Ababa, Ethiopia to continue consultations with the leadership of member states of the Intergovernmental Authority on Development (IGAD), as part of facilitating efforts towards sustainable peace and stability in South Sudan.

The delegation met with the Chairperson of the IGAD and Prime Minister of Ethiopia. They discussed the implementation of the Revitalised Peace Agreement on South Sudan and preparations for the transitional period. In January 2020, South Sudanese President Gen Salva Kiir Mayardit visited South Africa.

The working visit afforded the countries an opportunity to discuss the progress made thus far, in relation to the implementation of the Revitalised-Agreement on the Resolution of Conflict in the Republic of South Sudan (R-ARCSS). In this context, Deputy President David Mabuza, in his capacity as the Special Envoy of President Ramaphosa to the South Sudan, has been co-facilitating a series of meetings of the parties to the R-ARCSS in conjunction with the IGAD.

The focus of these consultative meetings has largely been on the resolution of the number of states and their boundaries, as one of sticking points towards the formation of the Revitalised Transitional Government of National Unity (RTGoNU).

South Africa will continue to support and remains committed to the South Sudanese Peace Process in its entirety, and stands in solidarity with the people of South Sudan in their quest to ultimately find lasting peace. South Africa will continue to encourage all relevant stakeholders to adhere to all the pre-transitional requirements and fully implement the R-ARCSS. South Africa remains confident that the parties will find common ground to form the RTGoNU.

Bilateral relations between the two countries are conducted under the General Cooperation Agreement of 21 September 2011, which entails the following areas of cooperation – agriculture/agri-business; water; education; infrastructure development; transport; mining; energy; electricity; oil and gas.

Uganda

South Africa and Uganda have enjoyed good political and economic relations since 1994. The relations were cemented when the South Africa-Uganda JCC was inaugurated in Pretoria during November 2012.

The two countries continue to cooperate closely and coordinate their positions on issues in a number of regional and multilateral forums, such as the AU and the UN, and share similar perspectives, particularly on the political and economic integration processes on the African continent.

North and Central Africa

Egypt

South Africa and Egypt have a Joint Bilateral Commission (JBC), convened at Ministerial level, for enhancing and strengthening bilateral relations.

South Africa is committed to forging closer strategic cooperation with Egypt, focusing in particular on economic and security cooperation, and to continue working together in pursuance of continental integration, peace and security as well as the fight against all forms of terrorism and extremism.

Libya

South Africa is deeply concerned over the prevailing political and security situation in Libya, which has gravely affected peace and security in the region.

At the same time, South Africa has noted, with satisfaction, the positive developments regarding the UN Political Agreement to establish a government of national accord in Libya.

In this regard, South Africa urges the Libyan people and its leaders to set aside their differences and unite in the interest of peace, stability and prosperity in Libya. Further, South Africa is ready to assist the Libyan people by sharing her experiences on democratic transition and reconciliation.

Algeria

South Africa enjoys historic and cordial relations with Algeria and regards it as a strategic partner in the region and continent. Since the establishment of the Presidential BNC in 2000, bilateral political trade and economic links have been growing steadily.

Algeria's relations with countries of the Maghreb, the Mediterranean, the Arab Peninsular and the Sahel regions serves as a platform to promote joint Algeria-South Africa partnerships/ventures in the mutual interest of all parties.

Morocco

South Africa and Morocco enjoy cordial diplomatic relations. Morocco recalled its Ambassador to South Africa in 2004, following South Africa's recognition of the Saharawi Arab Democratic Republic (SADR). Bilateral relations have since been maintained at the level of a *Chargé d'Affaires en titre* (Morocco) and *Chargé d'Affaires ad interim* (South Africa).

Western Sahara is Africa's longest-running territorial dispute and an issue of continental and international law and diplomatic controversy, having been on the decolonisation agenda of the UN and AU for more than 50 years.

Morocco contends that the Western Sahara, a former Spanish colony, is an integral part of its kingdom. On the other

side, the Polisario Front, which is campaigning for the territory's independence, demands a referendum on self-determination.

The SADR is a full member of the AU, while Morocco withdrew from the then OAU, in protest at the SADR's inclusion. Morocco was re-admitted as a member of the AU in 2017. Throughout the years, Pretoria has maintained the same position on the right to self-determination for the Saharawi people, as enshrined in the UN Charter and the AU Constitutive Act.

Western Sahara

Formal diplomatic relations were established at Ambassador level in 2004. South Africa continues to render political support and humanitarian assistance to the SADR. Through the ARF, South Africa supports projects that aim to benefit the Saharawi population.

South Africa's international solidarity and support for the self-determination of Western Sahara is based on:

- the principles of multilateralism and international legality in seeking a just, lasting and mutually acceptable political solution, which will provide for the self-determination of the people of Western Sahara;
- the centrality of the AU and UN in the resolution of the conflict;
- the Constitutive Act of the AU, in particular the principle of the sanctity of inherited colonial borders in Africa and the right of peoples of former colonial territories to self-determination and independence;
- respect for international human rights law in the occupied territories, notably the right to freedom of association, assembly, movement and expression;
- respect for international humanitarian law and support for the provision of humanitarian assistance to the Saharawi refugees in a way that is predictable, sustainable and timely;
- an end to the illegal exploration and exploitation of the natural resources of Western Sahara in the illegally occupied territory and the discouragement of the involvement of foreign companies in such activities; and
- support for the integration and stability of the Maghreb Union as a building block of the AU.

South Africa calls on the parties to return to a discussion table and have constructive direct dialogue.

In March 2019, South Africa hosted a Solidarity Conference with the SADR, following a resolution by SADC during its 38th Ordinary Summit of Heads of State and Government to convene the conference. During the solidarity conference, the SADC Heads of State and Government expressed the region's support for decolonisation and self-determination for Western Sahara on the basis of the values and principles that have guided the quest for independence throughout Africa.

SADC's collaboration on and with Western Sahara has been informed by the region's own decolonisation experiences and the quest for liberation and self-determination.

Mauritania

South Africa made a constructive contribution in Mauritania in support of the implementation of the democratic road map undertaken by the military transitional government, following the *coup d'état* of August 2005.

These efforts contributed to the restoration of constitutional order and stability in Mauritania, leading to South Africa's support for the lifting of the AU suspension of the country in April 2007.

In terms of economic relations, progress has been recorded between the two countries in the areas of fisheries and mining.

Tunisia

The South African Embassy in Tunisia was officially opened in 1994. South Africa and Tunisia enjoy a very healthy and mutually beneficial political and economic relationship. Relations between the two countries are based on a JBC launched in 1996.

Chad

South Africa and Chad established diplomatic relations in 1994, but it was only in 2013 that both countries appointed resident ambassadors.

Chad is a member of the Economic Community of Central African States (CEMAC), the community of Sahel-Saharan States, the Group of 5 of the Sahel, the Lake Chad Basin Commission, member and host of the Multi-National Joint Task Force (in the fight against Boko Haram) and is the designated Chair of the CEMAC. In 2017, South Africa signed a Bilateral Air Services Agreement with Chad.

Democratic Republic of São Tomé and Príncipe

Following its independence in 1975, São Tomé and Príncipe expanded its diplomatic relationships. Since the establishment of full diplomatic relations with South Africa in 1994, the relations between the two countries have grown significantly.

Republic of the Congo

Bilateral cooperation between the two countries takes place within the framework of an agreement signed in 2003, which established a JCC. The deepening of bilateral relations between the two countries have seen the signing of a number of agreements.

The Joint Trade Committee is playing an important role in facilitating the trade and investment relationship.

Equatorial Guinea

In April 2019, President Ramaphosa concluded a working visit to Equatorial Guinea where he held talks with his counterpart, President Obiang Nguema Mbasongo.

The visit provided an opportunity for President Ramaphosa and President Mbasongo to strengthen political, diplomatic and economic relations between the two countries, in pursuance of the objective to promote peace, security and sustainable development in Africa and the world.

They further agreed on the need to strengthen South-South cooperation and inter-African cooperation in particular.

South Africa and Equatorial Guinea enjoy cordial relations that were formally established in 1993. The two countries have entered into a number of bilateral cooperation agreements, including a General Cooperation Agreement and two agreements on defence cooperation. The two countries are also formulating draft agreements to enhance cooperation in education and energy.

During the visit, the Heads of State participated in a bilateral meeting and witnessed the signing of the Rules of Procedure for a Joint Permanent Commission.

South Africa and Equatorial Guinea serve as non-permanent members of the UNSC, and have committed themselves to work together to champion Africa's quest for peace and stability in line with the collective vision encapsulated in the AU's Agenda 2063.

Cameroon

South Africa and Cameroon enjoy cordial bilateral relations. Cameroon is the economic hub of the CAR.

The seaport of Doualla in Cameroon is used to import goods to landlocked countries in the region such as Chad and the CAR.

Central African Republic

South Africa opened its embassy in Bangui in 2017 and the two countries enjoy cordial relations.

Southern Africa

Angola

South Africa and Angola continue to work together in maintaining peace, stability and regional integration and promoting the SADC Agenda.

Angola is one of South Africa's major trading partners in Africa with almost 90% of Angolan exports to South Africa being petroleum-related products.

Namibia

South Africa and Namibia enjoy strong and fraternal relations that are characterised by regular and increasing interaction at all levels. The economies of South Africa and Namibia are interlinked with South Africa being one of Namibia's major trading partners.

Namibia imports 80% of its consumables from South Africa. South African companies have a large presence in Namibia and are involved in various sectors such as housing, food and beverages, construction, hotels and leisure, banking and medical services.

In January 2019, South Africa signed a MoU with Namibian for the neighbouring countries to work together in various matters within the fisheries space as both countries share a common border. This means that there is transboundary of fishing species in both countries and co-management between the two countries has always been important.

South Africa, Namibia and Angola share one of the most productive Benguela Current Large Marine Ecosystem (BCLME). The collaboration of the three countries is historic where international partners have funded a number of significant projects in the BCLME region. The collaboration was later formalised through Benguela Current Commission and now ratified into a convention.

Lesotho

South Africa's bilateral relations with the Mountain Kingdom of Lesotho remain strong and are based on a shared language, history and culture. Lesotho is landlocked in South Africa, creating a unique dependence.

South Africa supplies nearly 90% of Lesotho's total imports and it is critical to the economic success of the kingdom.

The strong cooperation that exists between the two countries cover a wide range of areas such as the Lesotho Highlands Water Project, the Metolong Dam Project and the revamping and upgrading of the Mokhotlong road and the Maloti-Drakensberg Transfrontier.

Eswatini

Bilateral relations between South Africa and the Kingdom of Eswatini, reflected in the JBC for Cooperation Agreement, are amiable and informed essentially by historical and cultural affinities, including the geographical proximity between the peoples of the two countries.

In March 2019, President Ramaphosa concluded a working visit to the Kingdom of Eswatini where he held talks with King Mswati III on a range of bilateral issues.

President Ramaphosa and King Mswati reviewed bilateral cooperation between the two countries

The two leaders directed the Ministers of International Relations and Cooperation in the two countries to convene a JBC for Cooperation that oversees the implementation of signed agreements between South Africa and Eswatini.

Zambia

South Africa and Zambia maintain solid economic cooperation as evidenced by the presence of several South African companies in Zambia.

Improved cooperation in a variety of areas such as air services and infrastructural development present economic opportunities to the South African private sector and parastatals.

South Africa and Zambia continue to work together on the region's common agenda relating to, among others, peace, security and economic integration.

Structured bilateral cooperation between South Africa and Zambia formerly took place under the framework of the JCC which was signed in October 2005.

Democratic Republic of Congo

South Africa and the DRC maintain good diplomatic and political relations. The highest expression of the quality and significance of these diplomatic relations is the annual BNC, co-chaired by the Heads of State.

The General Cooperation Agreement, signed by South Africa and the DRC on 14 January 2004, is the principal agreement establishing bilateral cooperation between the two states in the form of the BNC, which provides the basis for political, economic and technical cooperation.

Zimbabwe

South Africa and Zimbabwe enjoy historic political and fraternal relations which also incorporate regional affiliation and cultural ties.

Zimbabwe is one of South Africa's main trade partners in Africa and several South African companies operate in Zimbabwe in sectors such as mining, tourism, agriculture, banking, manufacturing and retail.

In March 2019, President Ramaphosa and President Emmerson Mnangagwa co-chaired the third session of the South Africa-Zimbabwe BNC.

Relations between South Africa and Zimbabwe are conducted through the BNC which was established in 2015.

During the BNC, the two Heads of State reviewed bilateral cooperation and progress made with the implementation of bilateral agreements.

South Africa and Zimbabwe are signatories to 45 agreements which cover a wide-range of fields, including trade and investment, health, labour, migration, defence, taxation, tourism, scientific and technological cooperation, water and the environment.

Malawi

South Africa and Malawi enjoy cordial and fraternal bilateral relations inclusive of political, economic and cultural relations and within the context of regional integration and intra-Africa trade. These bilateral relations are conducted under the framework of the JCC.

Since its inception in May 2007, four sessions of the JCC were held in June 2008, September 2012, April 2016 and 2018 respectively.

Mozambique

In January 2019, President Ramaphosa undertook a working visit to Mozambique, where he held bilateral talks with his counterpart President Filipe Nyusi, to discuss bilateral, regional and global issues of common interest.

South Africa and Mozambique enjoy very good economic, political and cultural relations dating back to the days of the struggle against apartheid.

In March 2019, a delegation from South Africa visited Mozambique and Zimbabwe to hand over donations aimed at assisting victims of Cyclone Idai. The donations included financial aid, clothes, water purifiers, non-perishable food items and blankets.

Tanzania

The bilateral relations have been characterised by high-level interactions between the two countries aimed at consolidating and strengthening political, economic and social cooperation.

Economic relations between South Africa and Tanzania have since 1994 grown significantly and continue to expand. The two countries have elevated their bilateral relations by signing a BNC Agreement in 2011, thus increasing the scope of areas of cooperation between the two countries.

Botswana

South Africa and Botswana cooperate in a wide range of areas, including transport, trade and investment, health, education, environmental affairs, water, science and technology, agriculture, justice, immigration, energy, finance, culture, security and sport.

Relations with Asia and the Middle East

The People's Republic of China

South Africa and China first established formal ties in January 1998. Since then, the two countries have achieved a significant number of bilateral cooperation agreements in areas such as trade, investment, economic and people-to-people relations. South Africa and China share a common developmental agenda based on the principle of internationalism and enjoy strong diplomatic and trade relations. China is South Africa's biggest trading partner and also the second biggest economy in the world.

The two countries share membership of and participate as partners in numerous international bodies, including BRICS, the G77+ China, G20 and are co-chairs of the FOCAC. South Africa's bilateral relations with China are guided broadly through mechanisms such as the Beijing Declaration establishing the Comprehensive Strategic Partnership, the BNC, the Joint Inter-Ministerial Working Group on Cooperation, the Strategic Dialogue Mechanism and the 5 to 10-Year Strategic Framework on Cooperation signed in 2014. South Africa-China bilateral relations have grown from a partnership to a strategic partnership, and subsequently to a comprehensive strategic partnership.

South Africa and China have committed to building, developing and strengthening relations based on shared principles of friendship and mutual trust; equality and mutual benefit; coordination; mutual learning; and working together for development. South Africa and China's bilateral relations are managed through structured mechanisms, including the BNC, the Joint Working Group and the Strategic Dialogue. These mechanisms are chaired at the Deputy President, Ministerial and Deputy Ministerial level respectively. South Africa is China's largest trading partner in Africa, and China is also South Africa's largest trading partner as reflected in the total trade volume of R343 billion.

South Africa and China work together to improve the structure of bilateral trade by encouraging the trade of high value-added manufactured goods and increasing China's investment in South Africa. The two sides continue to deepen their cooperation in infrastructure development, including the construction of roads, railways, ports, power plants, airports and housing. It should be noted that the current bilateral trade volume is skewed in favour of China and through the numerous high-level engagements the leaders have sought to redress the trade deficit through signing of agreements and MoUs among others which provide further opportunities for increased exports to China.

In 2019 several high-level visits and meetings took place between the two countries. The 10th Africa-China Strategic Dialogue was held on 30 October 2019, between South Africa and China. The dialogue provided a platform for the review of bilateral political and economic relations between the two countries.

On 31 November 2019, South Africa and China co-chaired the 7th South Africa-China BNC. The objective was to exchange views and assess the state of bilateral relations within the framework of the BNC.

On the economic front, South Africa and China also enjoy strong relations. South Africa remains China's number one trading partner in Africa. Bilateral trade between South Africa and China, for 2019 amounted to R374 billion, with a trade deficit of R96 billion in China's favour. While there is a trade imbalance between South Africa and China, both countries have implemented various mechanisms aimed at addressing this imbalance. Following the successful opening of the Chinese market for exports of South African wine and beef, the market access for various fruit and dairy products are now being negotiated.

As a sign of the strong relations between the two countries, South Africa donated medical supplies to China to assist its citizens in its fight against the COVID-19 pandemic. The donations were warmly accepted. Furthermore, China facilitated the successful repatriation of 114 South African citizens from Wuhan City in Hubei province, the epicentre of the outbreak. China has also donated medical supplies and pledged financial assistance to South Africa in addressing the challenges posed by the pandemic.

Japan

South Africa and Japan enjoy excellent diplomatic relations in the fields of trade and investment; science and technology cooperation; and skills development support.

Since 2010, the relations have been upgraded to a Strategic Cooperation Partnership. Japan is a major investor in the South African economy, with a presence of approximately 140 Japanese companies providing over 150 000 local job opportunities.

The Tokyo International Conference on African Development (TICAD) is a strategic partnership between Africa and Japan that was launched in 1993, with a view to serve as a consultative forum for development assistance to Africa. The TICAD remains an important strategic partnership of the AU, with the potential to support African countries to industrialise their economies, create sustainable, inclusive growth and, with it, sustainable employment opportunities and a better future for their people, thus also having the potential to contribute significantly to fulfilling the aspirations of the NDP.

From 2018 to 2019, South Africa's total volume of trade with Japan increased from R97.2 billion to R102.6 billion, while the trade balance, which is in South Africa's favour, increased from R21.5 billion to R21.6 billion.

During 2019, South Africa exported mainly precious metals, minerals, as well as iron and steel products to Japan and imported machinery, vehicles and equipment components. An average of approximately 11 147 Japanese tourists visit South Africa annually.

President Ramaphosa attended three high-profile events in Japan in 2019; namely the 14th G20 Summit, the 7th TICAD Summit and the Rugby World Cup. Following the meeting between President Ramaphosa and Prime Minister Shinzo Abe on margins of the TICAD 7 in 2019, there are good prospects of continued strong cooperation within the context of the TICAD, given South Africa's position as AU Chair and Chair of the APRM. South Africa stood ready to avail itself to be the host for the TICAD VIII in 2022, subject to the endorsement of the AU.

In October 2019, President Ramaphosa designated the DIRCO Deputy Minister Candith Mashego-Dlamini to attend the official Enthronement Ceremony of Emperor Naruhito.

Republic of Korea (ROK)

Formal diplomatic relations between South Africa and the ROK were established in December 1992.

Increasingly, the focus of the bilateral relationship between South Africa and ROK is on trade and investment links, as the latter houses some of the world's leading companies such as Hyundai, Samsung, KIA, Daewoo and LG, which have been sources of investment into South Africa.

The ROK is South Africa's fourth-largest trading partner in Asia, and South Africa is the ROK's largest trading partner in Africa. There are approximately 27 ROK companies in South Africa, with investments in the manufacturing, energy, construction, cosmetics, shipping and transport sectors, amongst others. Between 2003 and 2019, FDI projects recorded from the ROK represent a total capital investment of R31.27 billion.

Structured South Africa-ROK bilateral relations are conducted within the Policy Consultative Forum (PCF) framework, co-chaired at Deputy Ministerial level. The first PCF took place in Pretoria in 2003. The 8th PCF was held on 17 October 2014 in Seoul, ROK, where a decision was taken to elevate the PCF to a JCC at Ministerial level.

Democratic People's Republic of Korea (DPRK)

South Africa established diplomatic relations with the DPRK in August 1998 and the two countries enjoy cordial bilateral relations. Due to the imposition of various UNSC sanctions against the DPRK as a consequence of the country's controversial nuclear weapons and missile programmes, economic relations with South Africa remain limited.

South Africa has been encouraged by the positive developments on the Korean Peninsula and the efforts on all sides to promote direct contact and dialogue to ensure holistic and durable solutions to the regional security tensions and welcomed the rapprochement, which culminated into two inter-Korean Summits between the DPRK leader Kim Jong-un and the ROK President Moon Jae-in in 2018.

The two leaders adopted the Panmunjom Declaration for Peace, Prosperity and Unification of the Korean Peninsula, followed by a summit meeting between President Donald Trump of the United States of America (USA) and the DPRK leader Kim Jong-un in Singapore, which also adopted a joint statement in the interest of peace and security.

South Africa has consistently called for the denuclearisation of the Korean Peninsula, as it firmly believes that nuclear weapons and the pursuance of such capabilities do not enhance security, but rather constitute a source of regional and international insecurity.

Mongolia

South Africa and Mongolia established diplomatic relations in May 1994. The Mongolian Embassy in Egypt is accredited to South Africa, while South Africa's Embassy in Beijing is accredited to Mongolia.

South Africa and Mongolia held their Bilateral Political Consultation in Pretoria on 30 January 2020, to discuss relations, opportunities for expanding economic cooperation in mining, agriculture, education and culture sectors, as well as regional and international issues of common interest.

Mongolia's mining sector and its vast coal reserves potentially offer an opportunity for collaboration with South Africa, especially in terms of clean coal technologies.

South and Central Asia

Central Asia

The South African Ambassador to Kazakhstan is accredited to Tajikistan, Turkmenistan and Kyrgyzstan, while the South African Ambassador in Turkey is accredited to Uzbekistan, both on a non-residential basis. Tajikistan's Ambassador to Egypt and Kyrgyzstan's Ambassador in Saudi Arabia are accredited on a non-residential basis to South Africa.

Kazakhstan

Bilateral relations between the two countries are cordial and are conducted under the umbrella of the structured Protocol on Regular Political Consultations, signed in 1997 and co-chaired at the level of Deputy Minister. The consultations convene at alternating venues in Kazakhstan and South Africa.

The Bilateral Political Consultation serves to explore opportunities to strengthen bilateral relations between South Africa and Kazakhstan focusing on trade and investment, skills exchange and academic cooperation and to build on existing cooperation at various levels in the multilateral fora.

The sixth round of Bilateral Political Consultations reviewed progress made since the previous round and the consultations further explored closer cooperation in the fields of education and skills exchange, science and technology, mining, agriculture and energy to encourage the expansion of economic cooperation. The next round of consultations was scheduled to be held in Nur-Sultan in 2020.

Bilateral agreements in a variety of fields, including trade and economic cooperation, immigration and justice are currently under consideration and close to finalisation.

South Asia

South Africa's economic strategy in South Asia is strongly focused on deepening trade and investment linkages, particularly with countries that offer potential for future growth, and where synergies and complementarities in products and technologies exist.

South Africa enjoys cordial relations with India, Pakistan, Sri Lanka, Bangladesh, Nepal, Afghanistan and the Maldives.

India

South Africa and India enjoy strong historical and fraternal bonds forged through India's steadfast opposition to racial discrimination and its support for the liberation struggle in South Africa.

Formal diplomatic relations were established in November of 1993 and close cooperation occurs within multilateral groupings such as BRICS, the IBSA, the IORA and the G20. Formal bilateral relations are structured via a JMC and Foreign Office Consultations (FOC), which takes place at a Senior Official's level.

South Africa participated in the 5th edition of the Raisina Dialogue from 14 to 18 January 2020. The theme for the 2020 edition of the Raisina Dialogue – India's flagship conference on geo-politics and geo-economics – was "21@20: Navigating the Alpha century".

On 17 January 2020, South Africa co-chaired the 10th South Africa-India JMC. Key achievements of the 10th SA-India JMC included implementation of the Visa Simplification Agreement as of January 2020, as well as the proposed roll-out of the e-Visa system for Indian nationals, the announcement of the formal launch of the Gandhi-Mandela Artisan Skills Centre at the Tshwane South TVET College, the identification of two agricultural products for Indian market access, as well as positive consideration of customised training courses for South African civil servants.

Progress was recorded in a number of areas, including an agreement to conclude a MoU in the area of water and sanitation, and engaging with India on increased market access for South African products. In order to ensure continued growth in the bilateral relationship, and to ensure progress during the implementation phase, it was also agreed that there would be regular meetings between representatives of the respective high commissions and foreign ministries, with a view to monitoring progress on the implementation of the Three-Year Strategic Programme of Cooperation concluded during the state visit of President Ramaphosa to India in January 2019, as well as exchanging views on issues of mutual concern, both bilaterally and multilaterally.

The JMC also noted that trade between the two countries is still continuing to increase, with total trade between the two countries projected to reach R120 billion in 2020. Similarly, tourist arrivals from India showed an increase of 2.3% for 2019.

South Africa and India enjoy a strategic partnership and bilateral relations anchored by a deep and shared history of friendship and solidarity. The two countries share a common vision on a range of global issues and closely cooperate in various multilateral fora.

Pakistan

Pakistan and South Africa enjoy cordial bilateral relations and a strong historical bond. Bilateral relations are structured via a JC. In 2015, a decision was taken to elevate the JC from Senior Officials' level to the level of Deputy Minister.

The 5th South Africa-Pakistan JC was scheduled to be held in Pakistan in 2020. Bilateral trade has shown impressive growth, and in 2019 reached R15 billion, with the trade balance being in South Africa's favour. Both countries are keen to grow the trade relationship further concentrating on deep mining and technology, energy and agro-processing.

Sri Lanka

Bilateral relations between South Africa and Sri Lanka are cordial and conducted under the umbrella of the structured Partnership Forum.

The major exports to Sri Lanka are minerals, primarily coal. Bilateral relations have shown a marked strengthening as a result of growing collaboration over a wide spectrum of activities, most notably tourism, investment, trade, educational exchanges.

Bilateral trade between South Africa and Sri Lanka has grown significantly since the establishment of diplomatic relations, from R 184 million in 1994 to R2.5 billion in 2019.

The South African High Commissioner in Colombo, Sri Lanka, is accredited to the Maldives on a non-residential basis.

Bangladesh, Nepal and Maldives

The South African High Commissioner in New Delhi, India is accredited to Bangladesh and Nepal on a non-residential basis.

Bangladesh has been identified as a country with enormous potential for the expansion of trade and economic relations with South Africa. Over the recent years, bilateral relations between South Africa and Bangladesh have deepened and grown exponentially, with bilateral trade amounting to almost R5 billion in 2019, with a trade balance of R1.5 billion in South Africa's favour.

Bilateral relations with Bangladesh are cordial and conducted under the umbrella of the structured Senior Officials' Meeting.

The 5th Senior Officials' Meeting was held in Dhaka, Bangladesh, in September 2019, and coincided with commemoration of the Silver Jubilee of formal diplomatic relations between South Africa and Bangladesh, which was hosted by the Bangladesh International Institute for Security Studies.

South Africa and Nepal share good bilateral relations, consolidated further through the exchange of high-level bilateral visits. Various visits from Nepal have also focused on learning from the South African model of transitional justice, best practices and good governance.

In an effort to further enhance the strong bilateral relations between the two countries, South Africa and Nepal are

near concluding a declaration of intent, which provides for a structured bilateral mechanism at Senior Officials' level, through which bilateral relations would be advanced.

While bilateral relations between South Africa and the Maldives are cordial, there is currently no bilateral mechanism in place to advance relations between the two countries.

South-East Asia

The Association of Southeast Asian Nations (ASEAN) has dramatically outpaced the rest of the world in both economic and GDP per capita growth, since the late 1970s. Already some 67 million households in the ASEAN member states are part of the consuming class, with incomes exceeding the level at which they can begin to make significant discretionary purchases. That number could almost double to 125 million households by 2025, making the ASEAN a pivotal consumer market of the future, and hence of strategic importance to South African trade. Trade between South Africa and the ASEAN is growing rapidly. South Africa's largest trading partners in South East Asia are Thailand, Indonesia, Malaysia, and Vietnam

The ASEAN is of strategic importance to South Africa, which is moving towards deepening political and economic ties with ASEAN (through accession to the ASEAN Treaty of Amity and Cooperation); this will contribute positively to the delivery of national domestic priorities.

This approach could be a precursor for developing broader trade relations between the SACU or the SADC and the ASEAN. Trade between South Africa and the ASEAN is growing quickly.

Thailand

South Africa is Thailand's largest trading partner in Africa, while Thailand is South Africa's largest trading partner in the ASEAN. The South African Embassy in Thailand is also accredited to Myanmar, Laos and Cambodia.

The structured bilateral mechanism through which the two countries optimise existing cooperation is the South Africa-Thailand Senior Officials Meeting which takes place annually.

The massive ongoing infrastructure projects in Thailand provide a base for South African exports of machinery, iron ore and steel as well as mineral products.

Total bilateral trade between South Africa and Thailand in 2019 stood at R46.9 billion.

Malaysia

Malaysia is the fourth-largest new investor into the African continent. Malaysia continues to remain an important partner to South Africa and is instrumental in working together with South Africa on the latter's Operation Phakisa initiatives.

The bilateral mechanism that allows the two countries to optimise existing cooperation is the South Africa-Malaysia FOC, which takes place annually.

Malaysia has made a valuable and ongoing contribution to skills development in the South African Public Service under the Malaysia Technical Cooperation Programme sponsored by the Malaysian Ministry of Foreign Affairs. There is potential for South Africa to grow value-added trade with Malaysia, especially in specific areas such as defence procurement; agro-processing (to include the exports of Halaal meat) and other consumer goods.

Malaysia is South Africa's second-largest trading partner in the ASEAN region. Bilateral trade between South Africa and Malaysia amounted to R22 billion in 2019 and the partnership shows tremendous potential for further growth in trade, investment and tourism.

Singapore

South Africa and Singapore established diplomatic relations in 1992. The current bilateral mechanism that allows the two countries to optimise existing cooperation is the South Africa-Singapore FOC which takes place annually.

The total value of trade between South Africa and Singapore in 2019 was R15.4 billion with exports at R7.9 billion and the imports at R7.5 billion.

The Singaporean Cooperation Programme contributes to the skills development of South African civil servants annually. It is estimated that the programme trained over 1 500 South African civil servants including the programme that is tailor-made for the development of senior managers.

The Singapore Minister of State, Dr Maliki Bin Osman, and Deputy Minister Mashego-Dlamini, met on 5 September 2019, at the WEF in Cape Town and reaffirmed the strong bilateral relations between the two countries. Singapore pledged to a continued support to South Africa's skills development and other areas of technical cooperation.

Indonesia

South Africa and Indonesia established diplomatic relations in August 1994. Consequently, the South African Embassy was established in Jakarta in January 1995.

The bilateral relations between the two countries are managed through the JC for Bilateral Cooperation and the Joint Trade Committee both at Ministerial level. In December 2019, the inaugural FOC meeting, at the level of the Deputy Director-General (DDG) was held to provide an avenue for direct engagement between the foreign ministries geared towards deepening bilateral relations.

The total value of bilateral trade for 2019 was R18 billion, with exports to Indonesia accounting for R8 billion, while R10 billion worth of goods were imported from Indonesia.

Vietnam

Bilateral relations with Vietnam are coordinated through a biennial partnership Forum (at the level of Deputy Ministers). The last session was held in March 2019.

South Africa hosted Vietnamese Deputy Prime Minister Vuong Dinh Hue on an official visit and held a bilateral meeting in Pretoria on 5 November 2019. The key outcome of the bilateral meeting was the affirmation of the positive relations that exist between South Africa and Vietnam.

The meeting also reflected on measures that can improve trade by removing trade and technical barriers; as such, concluding the necessary MoU as well as bilateral agreements that would regularise and enable trade. South Africa's coal export to Vietnam was highlighted as one of the possible areas of cooperation. It was also acknowledged that the tourism figures needed to be improved and greater efforts should be made to encourage tourism flow between the countries.

The total value of bilateral trade between South Africa and Vietnam in 2019 was R18 billion.

South Africa looks forward to leveraging greater regional cooperation through its chairship of the AU and Vietnam's Chairship of the ASEAN in 2020.

South Africa's relations with Brunei-Darussalam, Cambodia, the PDR and Timor-Leste are cordial.

The South African Mission in Thailand is accredited on a non-residential basis to Cambodia, Laos and Myanmar; the Mission in Malaysia is accredited on a non-residential basis to Brunei-Darussalam; and the Mission in Indonesia is accredited on a non-residential basis to Timor-Leste.

Philippines

South Africa and the Philippines established a structured Bilateral Consultative Forum (BCF) to improve cooperation between the two countries. Although the BCF between South Africa and the Philippines did not take place as planned during 2019, bilateral relations remain strong. A number of outstanding agreements such as the Joint Trade Commission and the Mutual Visa Waiver Agreement are at the final stages of conclusion.

While trade levels remain low, the Philippines received permission to open a Trade Office in Johannesburg – a clear sign that the Philippines regards South Africa and the SADC as a viable future market. Bilateral trade for 2019 was R3.4 billion, with exports at R1 billion and imports R2.4 billion.

Australasia and the Pacific Islands

Australia

South Africa and Australia enjoy cordial relations and interact biennially through a Senior Official Meeting (SOM).

South Africa and Australia cooperate across a range of sectors and issues, including law enforcement, sport, tourism, education, defence relations, and science and technology.

Australia is South Africa's 23rd-largest trading partner. The majority of exports from South Africa to Australia are finished goods. Exports of high-quality passenger motor vehicles head the list. Total trade between South Africa and Australia amounted to R25.7 billion in 2019.

New Zealand

At a bilateral level, South Africa and New Zealand enjoy close cooperation in business, tourism, agriculture, disarmament, fisheries, environmental protection, indigenous people and human rights issues.

Relations are coordinated through a biennial SOM. New Zealand is South Africa's 33rd-largest trading partner. Total trade between South Africa and New Zealand amounted to R3.1 billion in 2019.

A significant feature of the South Africa-New Zealand relationship is its sporting ties, in particular, rugby, cricket, netball and in recent years, soccer. The two countries also enjoy productive cooperation at a multilateral level.

Both countries are members of the Valdivia Group (Group of Temperate Southern Hemisphere Countries on Environment), which aims to promote the Southern Hemisphere's views at international environmental meetings and enhance scientific cooperation.

They also work closely together within the context of the Antarctic Treaty and Southern Indian Ocean Fisheries Agreement, and interact regularly within the context of the WTO and the Cairns Group.

Relations with the Middle East

South Africa shares cordial relations with countries of the Middle East anchored by the strategic objective of strengthening South-South relations.

Within the political realm, South Africa's engagements have been mainly through diplomatic support for conflict resolution to conflicts affecting the region as in Syria and Yemen, and contributing towards finding a sustainable resolution to the protracted Israel-Palestine conflict.

Palestine

South Africa and Palestine have enjoyed warm relations since the inception of democracy. Official diplomatic relations between a democratic South Africa and Palestine were established in 1995. Over the last two decades bilateral relations have strengthened with the establishment of a JCC while the Political Consultations Mechanism has further reinforced relations. The overall objectives of these platforms are to monitor and guide the conduct of bilateral relations.

South Africa remains concerned and condemns the continued illegal settlement expansion by Israel, which constitutes a contravention of international law, particularly the Fourth Geneva Convention of 1949. South Africa believes that the only way to bring about lasting peace in the Middle East is to have a two-state solution for Palestine and Israel based on the international recognition and independence of the State of Palestine. This would be based on the 4 June 1967 borders, with East Jerusalem as its capital, functioning within recognised and secure borders and living side-by-side in peace with Israel and its other neighbours, as endorsed in the Quartet Roadmap, the Madrid Principles, the Arab Peace Initiative and the relevant UNSC resolutions.

Syria

Diplomatic relations between Syria and South Africa were established in June 1994, with Syria having opened an embassy in South Africa in 1998. Since the start of the Syrian civil war in 2011, the two countries have continued to maintain diplomatic relations. South Africa affirmed its support for Syria's territorial integrity and reiterated its support for a political solution to the conflict in Syria. South Africa also declared its condemnation of all violence and human rights violations and remains concerned about the deteriorating humanitarian and security situation in Syria. South Africa has called on all parties involved to work for a comprehensive and peaceful resolution of the conflict taking into account the legitimate aspirations of the people of Syria, through inclusive national dialogue and a Syrian-led political process.

South Africa remains committed to protecting the fundamental interests of the Syrian people, maintaining peace and stability in the Middle East region and upholding the purposes and principles of the Charter of the UN and basic norms governing international relations.

Iraq

Iraq opened its embassy in Pretoria in December 1999 and an Iraqi Ambassador was accredited to South Africa in 2001.

Bilateral relations are cordial and collaborative. The level of trade between the two countries has fluctuated. There are a number of bilateral agreements in various fields being negotiated, which will constitute an important framework in advancing the bilateral relations.

In February 2019, South Africa commended Iraqi authorities on the progress achieved in forming the national government. South Africa supports all international initiatives and the government of Iraq's efforts to restore stability and build inclusive and effective governance. The country reaffirmed its support for the mandate of the UN Mission in Iraq. It also supports the sovereignty and territorial integrity of Iraq in line with the principles of the UN Charter.

Jordan

Jordan was the first Arab country to establish diplomatic relations with South Africa in 1993. The embassy of South Africa was established in Amman in December 1993, and the embassy of Jordan was opened in Pretoria in June 1994. The two countries enjoy a warm and increasingly diverse relationship, underpinned by strengthening political ties. The relationship would be further strengthened by concluding a MoU on Bilateral Consultations between the two countries.

South Africa wishes to further intensify its relations with Jordan, which has the potential to develop significantly, with particular emphasis in the economic sphere as well as in the areas of cultural interaction, tourism, education and people-to-people relations. The two countries are concluding a MoU on Bilateral Consultations, which recognises the importance of constructive dialogue as well as engaging on regional and international issues of common interest between the two countries.

Lebanon

South Africa enjoys cordial relations with Lebanon, with formal diplomatic relations having been re-established on 27 June 1994. At present South Africa has no residential diplomatic presence in Lebanon. The South African Ambassador in Syria is accredited to Lebanon on a non-residential basis. South Africa attaches great importance to the ties that have been built between the two countries.

In June 2019, the relationship reached a significant milestone when the two countries celebrated 25 years of formal diplomatic relations. This event served as an opportunity to further enhance bilateral relations which are based on solid foundations of friendship underpinned by strong people-to-people links.

To give further impetus to the bilateral relationship, South Africa and Lebanon are in the process of concluding a number of agreements and an MoU on Bilateral Consultations. This MoU would institutionalise a regular and structured political engagement should further consolidate and promote practical cooperation to intensify the bilateral relations.

United Arab Emirates

South Africa has strengthened its diplomatic and economic relations with the UAE in recent years, reflecting its position as South Africa's largest export trading partner in the region. The UAE is also a growing source of investment into the South African economy.

Relations were expected to gain momentum during 2020 with the UAE hosting the Dubai World Expo 2020. The event was postponed to 2021 due to the COVID-19 pandemic. South Africa was going to participate in the expo by managing a country pavilion, which was expected to receive a number of high-level and business delegations focused on increasing South Africa's global economic presence in identified sectors.

The two countries have an agreement on cooperation in social development, focusing on early childhood intervention, research and social studies, teenager development and services to person with disabilities, among other areas of mutual interest.

Iran

The primary mechanism for engagement with Iran is the JC, established in 1995 and allows for a high-level review of bilateral relations and considers areas to further strengthen relations. This commission is supported by an inter-sessional mechanism, the Deputy Ministerial Working Group which further monitors the implementation of decisions and undertakings made during the JC.

The ninth Deputy Ministerial Working Group between South Africa and Iran was held in March 2019 in Cape Town. South Africa believes in diplomacy and the peaceful resolution of conflicts. South Africa welcomed and will continue to support the Joint Comprehensive Plan of Action on Iran's nuclear programme

The 14th Session of the JC between the South Africa and Iran was held in Tehran, Iran in October 2019. The meeting was co-chaired by the South African International Relations Minister Naledi Pandor and the Iranian Foreign Affairs Minister Javad Zarif. The meeting provided the opportunity for the two countries to advance bilateral cooperation in areas such as science and innovation, water resource management, trade and political relations.

South Africa remains committed to support Iran as it currently manages the economic consequences of unilateral and secondary sanctions imposed by the USA; following its withdrawal from the Joint Comprehensive Plan of Action (JCPOA). South Africa remains committed to diplomacy and the peaceful resolution of conflicts, as a matter of principle, and considers the JCPOA as a significant achievement in this regard. It remains South Africa's belief that it provides the necessary framework and confidence-building measures for Iran to re-enter the global economy whilst pursuing nuclear activities for peaceful purposes; a fundamental principle of the Nuclear Non-Proliferation Treaty. The JCPOA was unanimously endorsed by the UNSC Resolution 2231, which provides a binding legal framework to the agreement.

Saudi Arabia

Diplomatic relations between South Africa and Saudi Arabia were formalised in November 1994. South Africa imports approximately 47% of its oil from the Arab country and regards it as a strategic partner in the Middle East. The country is also a large investor in South Africa, especially in the area of renewable energy. It is also a large investor in South Africa, especially in the area of renewable energy with a view to increasing its portfolio of investments, notably in the petrochemical and refining sector.

In order to grow trade, investment and economic ties, including business-to-business cooperation between South Africa and Saudi Arabia, a number of business interactions

have been arranged with Saudi Arabia and it is anticipated that the Joint Business Council between the two countries may be reformulated during 2020.

South Africa remains committed to solidifying strong South Africa-Saudi Arabia bilateral relations in all fields, in line with the aspirations of the leadership of the two countries. This includes increased interaction on regional and international developments.

Qatar

Diplomatic relations between South Africa and the Qatar were established in 1994. South Africa's political and economic relations with Qatar have diversified and grown significantly over recent years and have become more diverse. Qatar has traditionally enjoyed a healthy trade surplus owing to the high proportion of oil and petrochemical trade to South Africa.

Qatar's investment is expected in line with is 20% stake in the Brulpradda oil and gas discovery.

Minister Pandor met with Qatari Foreign Affairs Minister Sheikh Mohammed bin Abdulrahman Al Thani, during a visit to the country in October 2019. Amongst others, the two Ministers agreed on the expansion of trade relations and the importance of convening the 5th Session of the Bilateral Consultations between the two countries as soon as possible.

Kuwait

Kuwait remains an important partner for South Africa in the Middle East, particularly in terms of economic relations. Kuwait has become an increasingly important market for South African exports and several Kuwaiti companies have made multimillion-rand investments in the construction and development of hotels and real estate in South Africa, as well as investments on the Johannesburg Stock Exchange. Kuwait is South Africa's largest source of FDI from the Middle East, especially in the hospitality industry, through the Zimbali Resort investment and the automotive component investment by KAPICO.

Oman

Diplomatic relations were established in 1995 and are managed through the South Africa-Oman Partnership Forum. Both countries are keen to attract further investment. A primary project by Oman is the Port of Sohar Projects, which will facilitate the trade of agro-processed products from South Africa.

Yemen

Relations between South Africa and Yemen are cordial. Both countries are members of the UN, the IORA and the NAM.

The continued civil war in Yemen has hindered the development and strengthening of bilateral relations.

North America

Canada

Canada has a long-standing and wide-ranging track record of constructive engagement, at bilateral and multilateral levels, in Africa, ranging from peacekeeping and development aid to FDI.

About two thirds of South African exports to Canada relate to minerals and mining equipment, with agricultural and chemical products making up the rest. Canada views South Africa as a gateway into the SADC and the rest of Africa.

Canada's cooperation with South Africa focuses on strengthening service delivery, support for HIV and AIDS programmes and rural development.

United States of America

Formal relations between South Africa and the US are historic, dating back to 1789.

The bilateral relationship is broad and deep, covering political, diplomatic, economic, social, scientific, educational, cultural, as well as regional and global cooperation on issues of mutual interest.

Bilateral relations between South Africa and the US are cordial. The US supports South Africa's domestic priorities and continues to align its assistance programmes to the NDP. The US contributes approximately US$541,681 million in Official Development Assistance per year and is the biggest international donor to South Africa's HIV and AIDS efforts, via the President's Emergency Programme for AIDS Relief.

The US is a major economic partner for South Africa, an important export market for value-added goods, a source of FDI, technology and of tourists.

Trade and investment relations take place under the auspices of the African Growth and Opportunity Act, under which South Africa gains duty-free and quota-free access to the US market for value-added products.

The US is currently South Africa's third-largest trading partner, absorbing a substantial amount of manufactured exports from South Africa.

Regional organisations

European Union

The EU remains a key strategic region for South Africa and a prominent dialogue partner from the global North.

Relations with the EU are structured in accordance with the Trade, Development and Cooperation Agreement, whereas trade relations are governed by the SADC-EU Economic Partnership Agreement.

The strategic partnership expanded the scope of the interaction beyond trade issues, to incorporate a much wider scope of cooperation with structured bilateral mechanisms and high-level meetings (summit, ministerial political dialogue, senior-official meetings and inter-parliamentary meetings) to support South Africa's national, regional, continental, and global priorities and programmes.

The JCC, co-chaired by the DG of the DIRCO and the EU counterpart, covers over twenty sectoral policy dialogues, including diverse issues such as development cooperation, science and technology, space, migration, health, trade, education and skills development, peace and security, and human rights.

The EU is South Africa's largest trading partner, as a block of 28 member states, and largest foreign investor, representing 77% of total FDI stocks in the country.

South Africa is the only African country, and one of 10 countries globally, that has a strategic partnership with the EU. More than 2 000 EU companies operate in South Africa, creating more than 500 000 direct and indirect jobs.

Western Europe

Belgium

Relations between South Africa and Belgium are strong and dynamic, covering a number of areas that are important to South Africa's national development objectives.

Belgium serves as port of entry for the largest portion of South African exports to the EU and beyond.

Bilateral relations between South Africa and Belgium are underpinned by shared values of freedom and democracy and a similar approach to a broad range of international issues, specifically peace and security.

South African exports to Belgium include precious stones, organic chemicals, iron, steel and manufactured goods, while relations between Flanders and South Africa is largely driven by development cooperation, but also includes culture, science and innovation, youth policy, education, economy and trade.

The Netherlands

Since 1994, South Africa and the Netherlands have forged a solid partnership that covers many fields, including economic, trade, science and technology, education, judicial, multilateral and culture. The Dutch has consistently supported South Africa in terms of bilateral and multilateral relations. There are approximately 42 agreements, MoUs and letters of intent in various areas, mainly in terms of water resource planning, science and technology, military cooperation, development cooperation and infrastructure development. Bilateral trade reached R60 billion in 2019. The Netherlands is an important international investor in the South African economy.

South Africa and the Netherlands signed a MoU on the Establishment of a JCC in November 2015, which provides for regular meetings chaired by the Ministers or Deputy Ministers of Foreign Affairs of the two countries in order to facilitate consultation and cooperation in various fields.

In February 2020, South Africa hosted the inaugural meeting of the JCC. South Africa was represented by Minister Pandor while the Netherlands was represented by a delegation led by its Foreign Affairs Minister Stef Blok. Both Ministers agreed to promote closer collaboration between the AU and the EU on issues such as climate change, jobs and investment, as well as migration and mobility.

South Africa and the Netherlands are committed to the goals of the Paris Agreement made at COP21 in 2015. Both nations are staunch supporters of multilateral cooperation in the efforts to implement the Paris Agreement and to reach its objectives. The countries look ahead to an important year to advance collective efforts to address climate change and to strengthen the global push for climate ambition and action for adaptation and mitigation. The two countries are amongst the convening countries of the Global Commission on Adaptation, which aims to catalyse a global adaptation movement. Minister Blok invited a South African delegation to the Climate Adaptation Summit, which would be held in Amsterdam on 22 October 2020.

Science and technology relations between South Africa and the Netherlands are managed by a Joint Working Committee. Two meetings of the committee have already taken place, the most recent of which was held in Pretoria on in April 2019. The third meeting of the Joint Working Committee is scheduled to be held in the Netherlands in 2021.

The National Research Foundation (NRF) and the Dutch organisation for internationalisation in education awarded 25 PhD scholarships to South Africans to be placed in various Dutch institutions after an agreement in this regard was signed in 2017.

The NRF and the Netherlands Organisation for Research will finance joint research projects as from 2020, focusing on SDGs in the area of Water-Energy-Food Nexus. The Netherlands continues to offer strategic and technical assistance to the National Water and Sanitation Master Plan. The "Blue Deal", which will provide 2.5 million people in South Africa with clean, safe and enough water, was expected to be launched in 2020 with the assistance of the Dutch water authorities.

The two countries also have a joint cooperation in the field of science and technology such as the Square Kilometer Array, the Orange Knowledge Programme and inter-institutional collaboration on student exchange, joint degrees, joint research and PhDs.

The Second Meeting of the JCC is expected to be held in the Netherlands before the end of 2022.

Luxembourg

Bilateral and economic relations, especially in the financial services and funds sectors, remain strong between Luxembourg and South Africa.

Germany

South Africa and Germany's strategic relationship is substantiated by 72 bilateral agreements, providing a legal framework for cooperation in several areas.

These relations are further enhanced through a BNC, spanning foreign and security policy, migration and humanitarian assistance, economy and energy development cooperation, environment, science and technology, arts and culture, labour and social affairs and vocational education and training.

South Africa and Germany have a strategic relationship, with regular structured dialogue and cooperation engagements covering a broad range of areas, including political dialogue, trade and investment, science and technology, the environment, vocational education and training, development cooperation, energy, defence, labour and social affairs, as well as arts and culture. Relations are cordial, multifaceted and of a strategic nature.

South Africa and Germany have served as non-permanent members of the UNSC for the period of 2019 – 2020.

In February 2020, President Ramaphosa hosted the Head of Government of Germany, Chancellor Angela Merkel, on an official visit. The visit followed the successful state visit by the Head of State of Germany, President Frank-Walter Steinmeier, in November 2018.

The 10th Meeting of the South Africa-Germany BNC, which is an instrument used to manage relations between the two countries was held on 20 March 2020, via a video conference. Minister Pandor and German's Federal Minister of Foreign Affairs, Mr Heiko Maas, led the delegations from their countries and co-chaired the meeting. The two Ministers discussed and exchanged views on political and high-level bilateral issues, including South Africa's priorities as Chair of the AU, Germany's priorities as incoming Chair of the EU, climate change and vocational training.

South Africa is Germany's largest trading partner in Africa while Germany is the third-largest source of overseas visitors to South Africa. Approximately 600 German companies are represented in South Africa. Total trade reached R235 billion over the 12 months to the end of November 2019, while South African exports (at R108 billion) exceeded R100 billion for the first time, narrowing the trade deficit. About 323 000 German nationals visited South Africa in 2019. Germany also has an extensive development programme in South Africa.

Switzerland

Relations between South Africa and Switzerland are based on equal partnership. There are some 200 Swiss companies in South Africa, employing around 36 000 South Africans. Consultations take place at the level of Deputy Minister.

Switzerland has transitioned from a purely development assistance programme in South Africa to focussing on an economic cooperation. The Swiss Strategy for Economic Cooperation with South Africa is implemented by the State Secretariat for Economic Affairs and financed through the Swiss Framework Credit 2017 – 2020 for economic and trade policy measures.

The planned commitment for South Africa for the 2017 – 2020 period is 55 million Swiss Francs (approximately R740 million), which is allocated in close coordination with South Africa's National Treasury.

Switzerland has granted South Africa special status on the Swiss foreign-policy agenda as one of the focus areas for Swiss interests outside Europe.

South Africa is Switzerland's second-largest trading partner in Africa after Ghana.

Switzerland is the seventh-largest foreign investor in South Africa, with more than 100 Swiss companies having subsidiaries of production in South Africa, sustaining approximately 33 000 jobs.

Austria

Apart from the political dialogue, the two Foreign Ministries have signed a MoU on the Establishment of Bilateral Consultation Mechanism between the DIRCO and the Austrian Ministry for Europe, Integration and Foreign Affairs.

The MoU allows for regular Bilateral Consultations at Senior Officials' level to review all aspects of bilateral relations, exchange views on regional and international issues of mutual interest as well as on developments taking place in regional and international fora.

Current bilateral programmes supported by the Austrian Embassy in South Africa are as follows:

- supporting tourism schools and curricular developments in hospitality industry;
- supporting renewable energy training, particular solar through the Soltrain II project;
- providing vocational welding training through the Austrian Welding Academy and with the support of the Austrian Development Agency;
- supporting vocational training through the Ithuba College south of Johannesburg; and
- promoting higher education through university to university cooperation.

South Africa enjoys cordial bilateral relations with Austria, focused primarily on economic exchanges.

The bilateral exchanges focus on trade and investment, tourism and technological cooperation as well as vocational training.

South Africa ranks sixth among Austria's overseas trading partners, and is by far Austria's major trading partner in Africa.

Some 400 Austrian companies are engaged in trade relations with South African companies. More than 50 Austrian companies have direct investments in South Africa.

South Africa is Austria's main trading partner in Africa and ranks sixth among Austria's overseas trading partners.

United Kingdom

Bilateral relations between South Africa and the UK cover a wide spectrum and have a far-reaching impact. Cooperation between the two countries is broad and includes health, education, science and technology, energy, the environment, defence, police, arts and culture, sports and recreation.

There is a healthy flow of investment in both directions. The UK is recognised as the foremost source of FDI into South Africa, while South African companies equally have made large investments in the UK. The two countries have identified key sectors for investment to boost economic growth and development.

These sectors include manufacturing, agro-processing, infrastructure development, mining, energy and tourism. South Africa and the UK also have strong relationship in wide-ranging areas of cooperation, including energy, science and technology, education, health, arts and culture.

Ireland

Ireland was the only EU member country that did not have full diplomatic relations with South Africa until the dawn of democratic South Africa.

Ireland continues to be a valued source of FDI in business services, alternative/renewable energy, software and information technology services, and plastics.

The Irish government also provides assistance to South African students through the Kader Asmal Fellowship Programme.

France

France is a significant technological, trade, investment, tourism and development cooperation partner for South Africa.

Bilateral technical cooperation between South Africa and France exist in various sectors, including energy, agriculture, manufacturing, transport, education and science and technology. About 250 French companies have invested in South Africa and employ around 300 000 people.

In March 2019, South Africa and France agreed to strengthen bilateral relations, following their 8th South Africa-France Forum for Political Dialogue held in Pretoria.

During the meeting, the two countries committed to regular, structured bilateral meetings at Ministerial level; defend the democratic values which they share and promote strong multilateralism. They agreed to increase cooperation within the framework of the G20 and in the UNSC, of which South Africa has been a non-permanent member for the period 2019 to 2020. They further agreed to reduce global inequality under France's Group of 7 Presidency, and continue to support the Paris Agreement on Climate Change and the common vision on the environment and human rights.

They also agreed to a number of bilateral interactions and cooperation, which include:

- regular interaction and deliberation on addressing peace, security and development concerns in Africa;
- deepen the working relationship between the AU, EU and UN to bolster peace keeping, security, governance and promoting democracy in Africa;
- increase cooperation in the Indian Ocean and continue discussions about France's role in the IORA;
- conclude arrangements for the 2019 Ministerial Joint Economic Commission in South Africa, to advance trade and investment relations; and
- conclude the implementation of the South Africa-France Partnership Framework 2016 – 2019 and renew the framework during the 9th Forum for Political Dialogue in 2020.

During the forum, the two countries signed new agreements, namely the:

- Agreement on Cooperation in the Field of Basic Education;
- Declaration of Intent on Establishing a Co-funded Scholarship for master's and doctoral students.
- Framework Agreement between the South African National Space Agency and the Centre National d'Etudes Spatiales in Space Cooperation.
- Financing Agreement between the Industrial Development Corporation of South Africa Limited and Agence Française de développement.
- MoU between La Réunion National Park and the South African National Parks.
- Cooperation Protocol between the Association pour le Centre de ressources et d'appui sur le risque requin à La Réunion of the French Republic and the KwaZulu-Natal Sharks Board of South Africa.

Greece

South Africa and Greece enjoy traditional and close ties of friendship and cooperation as well as a convergence of views and cooperation on various regional and international issues in general.

South Africa-Greece relations are, furthermore, underpinned by the presence of a substantial and influential Greek professional and business community in South Africa.

Bilateral relations between the two countries continue to grow in a number of strategic and mutually beneficial areas.

Cyprus

South Africa has excellent and long-standing bilateral relations with Cyprus. It has maintained strong ties with that country, partly because of a substantial and influential Cypriot community in South Africa.

Italy

South Africa enjoys constructive bilateral relations with Italy, based on a shared commitment to the values of freedom, democracy and a similar approach to a broad range of international issues.

This is due, in part, to the strong cultural links and long-standing diplomatic relations between the two countries underpinned by a dynamic, well integrated and respected Italian community, which also contributes to the economy of the country.

A MoU establishing Bilateral Consultation was signed and entered into force in 2003; with Senior Officials Meeting being a platform set to coordinate political relations at the DDG level.

Spain

Spain is one of South Africa's major trading partners in the EU. There are 100 Spanish companies that have invested in South Africa and they are estimated to have created over 12 000 jobs largely in renewable energy and metals sectors.

Portugal

Bilateral relations between South Africa and Portugal are cordial and cover many areas, underpinned by the High-level Political Consultative Forum, which provides a platform for the two countries to explore the deepening of relations across the spectrum of South Africa's national priorities, political cooperation, the strengthening of trade and investment and development cooperation. In February 2020, Minister Pandor and the Minister of Foreign Affairs in Portugal, Professor Augusto Santos Silva, held Bilateral Consultations in South Africa.

South Africa has the third-largest Portuguese community in the world after those in France and Brazil

Holy See

South Africa opened a Mission at the Holy See in 2017. The Holy See is of strategic importance politically and in respect of human rights and international humanitarian law.

Central, Eastern Europe, Nordic And Baltic Countries

Nordic countries

South Africa enjoys good relations with all the Nordic and Baltic countries flowing from the strong grassroots support of these countries for democratisation in South Africa.

Relations have been established in various fields at both public and official levels. The scope of Nordic development cooperation is broad and has benefited civil society and government. Although Nordic countries stopped providing development assistance to South Africa in 2009, these countries continue to provide technical support and also partner with South Africa and civil society in addressing development needs in various fields.

Relations in the international arena have seen close cooperation on multilateral issues. The Nordic countries are strong supporters of the AUDA-NEPAD and are directly involved in conflict resolution and reconstruction projects in Africa.

This was reinforced by the signing of the Declaration of Intent on Partnerships in Africa in 2008, which laid a framework for future trilateral cooperation.

Denmark

The bilateral relations between South Africa and Denmark are predicated on the historic Danish support and solidarity with the liberation struggle against apartheid in the early 1960s, leading to the eventual establishment of formal diplomatic relations at the advent of South Africa's democracy.

Denmark is also an important partner with regard to overseas development. South Africa's relations with Denmark are

coordinated through the South Africa-Denmark Senior Officials Consultations and the main areas of cooperation include water-resource management, science and technology, maritime affairs, and environmental affairs.

Denmark supports South Africa in achieving the objectives of the NDP and National Water and Sanitation Master Plan.

The Strategic Water Sector programme addresses issues of financing and research and innovation. Other areas of support include exchange of expertise on affordable and clean energy and sustainable cities and communities.

Estonia

There is no resident Estonian Mission in South Africa. The South African Embassy in Finland is also accredited to Estonia on a non-residential basis.

The ICT sector, science and technology and tourism have been identified as potential areas for strategic bilateral cooperation between South Africa and Estonia.

Finland

Diplomatic relations between South Africa and Finland were re-established in 1994. The bilateral relationship was given more definite structure with the signing of the Declaration of Intent at the Skagen Nordic Summit in 2000. Regular Bilateral Consultations are coordinated at Senior Officials' level.

The main areas of cooperation include education and skills development with special emphasis on the maritime sector and cooperation in the field of science, technology and innovation.

The blue economy is central to both countries and is also emphasised as an area with potential for future partnerships.

Finland supports Africa's infrastructure development through its funding of the EU-Africa Infrastructure Trust Fund.

It also supports the implementation of the Joint Africa-EU Strategy by promoting four of the eight thematic partnerships of the joint strategy in Africa; namely, peace and security, democratic governance and human rights, climate change, and science, information society and space.

Iceland

Formal diplomatic relations were established in 1995 at an Ambassadorial level on a non-residential basis. The South African Embassy in Norway is accredited to Iceland on a non-resident basis.

In terms of trade cooperation, South Africa's exports to Iceland amount to R78 million and the Iceland's exports to South Africa amount to R70 million.

Latvia

Full diplomatic relations were established in 1991. The South African Embassy in Sweden is accredited to Latvia.

Lithuania

South Africa and Lithuania entered into diplomatic relations in 2008 and the first Lithuanian Ambassador to South Africa was appointed in 2015. The South African Embassy in Sweden is accredited to Lithuania.

Relations between South Africa and Lithuania are coordinated at Senior Officials' level. The main areas of cooperation between South Africa and Lithuania include trade and investment, energy, transport, science and technology, and academic and cultural cooperation.

Norway

South Africa opened a Consulate General in Oslo in September 1988 while Norway already had a Consulate General in Cape Town. In January 1992, diplomatic relations were upgraded to Ambassadorial level.

South Africa and Norway have a history of working together in the promotion of democracy; good governance and human rights. Both countries cooperate and support each other in bilateral and multilateral relations.

South Africa's relations with Norway are coordinated through the South Africa-Norway High Level Consultations.

South Africa and Norway cooperate in the fields of peacebuilding and mediation. The programme focuses on building capacities for female mediators in conflict situations.

Training provided includes women in government and non-government organisations. In the area of the blue economy, South Africa and Norway have established a Fisheries Law Enforcement Academy at Nelson Mandela University called FishFORCE.

In the area of science and technology, South Africa and Norway have signed a new framework programme for joint research cooperation, referred to as, the South Africa-Norway Research Cooperation, focusing on the blue economy, climate change, the environment and sustainable energy. The programme began, for a period of five years, from 2018 to 2023.

The goal of the project is to enhance the knowledge base for policies and decisions for sustainable development in the areas of oceans and blue economy, environment – with emphasis on oceans and pollution, climate change and sustainable energy in South Africa and Norway.

South Africa and Norway have developed a close relationship dating back to the early Struggle years when Norway became an active supporter of organised resistance against the apartheid regime.

In the 1990s, a new era of cooperation in higher education and research was initiated, both bilaterally and multilaterally, including a number of joint projects between South African and Norwegian higher education institutions.

South Africa and Norway have also been conducting annual high-level Bilateral Consultations to identify areas of common political and economic interest.

Following the launch of Operation Phakisa, South Africa and Norway re-confirmed their mutual interest in exploring opportunities for development of ocean space and the blue economy, including the maritime sector, marine resources and aquaculture.

The two countries have further agreed to strengthen bilateral cooperation on the environment and to explore opportunities in the area of renewable energies.

Sweden

Formal relations between Sweden and South Africa date back to the 1930s when a South African legation was opened in Stockholm. Relations were upgraded to Ambassadorial level in 1994. Bilateral relations are coordinated through the South Africa-Swedish BNC, which was inaugurated in September

2000 by former President Thabo Mbeki and former Swedish Prime Minister Göran Persson.

Areas of cooperation include science and technology, maritime affairs, and environmental affairs.

South Africa's relations with Sweden are coordinated at Deputy President's level and the main areas of cooperation.

The Swedish government has extended the 30 fully funded scholarships for South Africans to pursue post-graduate studies in Sweden until 2021. The programme offers 10 scholarships per annum over a period of three academic years.

Eastern Europe

The Eastern Europe region is of crucial importance to South Africa's strategic objectives, straddling a wide spectrum of political and economic interests.

The region is well endowed with strategic commodities and minerals that are of vital significance to South Africa's economy.

Cooperation in gas and oil and energy can go a long way towards alleviating South Africa's energy needs.

Azerbaijan

South Africa and Azerbaijan established diplomatic relations in 1991. The South African Embassy in Ankara is also accredited to Azerbaijan on a non-residential basis.

Structured bilateral relations were established by means of a MoU on Regular Diplomatic Consultations that was concluded in February 2014. The MoU provides for the strengthening and broadening of the scope of bilateral cooperation in the political, economic, scientific, technological, cultural and humanitarian areas. Other areas of potential interests are energy, defence and air services.

Belarus

Diplomatic relations between South Africa and Belarus were established in March 1993. Currently the South African Ambassador to the Russian Federation is the non-residential Ambassador to Belarus. Belarus opened its embassy in South Africa in January 2000 and the first South African Ambassador presented credentials in February 2000.

South Africa and Belarus mainly engage through the Inter-governmental Committee on Trade and Economic Cooperation led by the Department of Trade, Industry and Competition (dtic).

The committee is co-chaired at the level of Deputy Minister of Foreign Affairs on the Belarusian side and at the Deputy Minister of the Trade, Industry and Competition on the South African side.

The primary objective of Inter-governmental Committee on Trade and Economic Cooperation is to strengthen and develop trade and economic cooperation on a long term and stable basis and on the principles of equality and mutual benefit.

Georgia

Full diplomatic relations between South Africa and Georgia were established in 1992. The South African Embassy in Kyiv, Ukraine, is non-residentially accredited to Georgia. The government of Georgia opened an embassy in South Africa in August 2011.

The two countries have good bilateral relations and have been cooperating mainly through sport, culture and in the agricultural sector especially through wine making exchange programmes.

Through joint efforts, Georgian and South African links are deepening through increased interactions in culture and sports, such as rugby.

The two countries have established a winemakers exchange programme which has seen student and expert exchanges between Telavi State University (Faculty of Agra-Sciences) and the University of Stellenbosch (Faculty of Wine Sciences).

Russian Federation

South Africa regards Russia as an important strategic partner and close bilateral and multilateral ties exist between the two countries.

With the dissolution of the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics, South Africa became the first African state to recognise the independence of the Russian Federation. Full diplomatic relations were established between South Africa and the Russian Federation in February 1992.

Since the re-establishment of bilateral relations, South Africa's relations with Russia have evolved into a strategic relationship over the past few years through continued high-level political engagements.

One of the primary mechanisms for improving the bilateral relationship and advancing the government's development objectives is the Inter-governmental Committee on Trade and Economic Cooperation which was established in 1999. The committee is the most important mechanism underpinning mutually beneficial trade and economic ties between the two countries.

The Inter-governmental Committee on Trade and Economic Cooperation has proven to be an effective instrument for effective engagement on trade and investment issues, as well as critical skills and technology transfers amongst others. The Inter-governmental Committee on Trade and Economic Cooperation has given practical substance to the political commitment on the part of the two countries to work together, as expressed in the Treaty of Friendship and Partnership signed by both countries.

Sectors covered within the Inter-governmental Committee on Trade and Economic Cooperation include agriculture; forestry and fisheries; energy; education; mineral resources; science and technology; transport; water and sanitation; trade and industry and the South Africa-Russia Business Council.

Further substance has been added to the growing relationship through the South Africa-Russia Friendship and Cooperation Agreement, which was signed in 2006 and a Declaration on Strategic Partnership between South Africa and Russia was signed in March 2013.

Serbia

Diplomatic relations between South Africa and Serbia were established in April 2002 when Serbia was still referred to as the Federal Republic of Yugoslavia.

Serbia regards South Africa as a strategic partner on the African continent, a regional power and a leading economy that is playing a positive role in promoting peace, security and sustainable development in Africa.

South Africa's contribution to the advancement of multilateralism, the rule of law, human rights and an equitable global governance system is similarly appreciated.

Serbia opened its embassy in Pretoria in June 1996. The South African Ambassador in Athens, Greece, is accredited to Serbia on a non-resident basis.

Areas of cooperation are based on shared interests between the two countries, including consolidation of peace and security, the establishment of democratic values and observance of human rights as embodied in the UN Charter.

Turkey

The South Africa-Turkey strategic partnership is informed by the two countries' growing political and economic profile and their geostrategic location in Africa and Euro-Asia; Turkey's rapidly growing political and economic footprint in Africa, including the Africa-Turkey strategic partnership; the two countries' capacity to project their foreign policies regionally and globally; active participation and membership in various organisations such as the G20 and the UN.

Relations between South Africa and Turkey had since 2005 been coordinated through the South Africa-Turkey Joint Economic Commission.

An Agreement to elevate the relations to a BNC at Deputy President and Prime Minister levels respectively, was signed in Turkey in June 2012 and ratified by the Turkish Parliament in July 2015.

Economic Relations between South Africa and Turkey are coordinated through the South Africa-Turkey Joint Economic Commission, led by the South African Minister of Trade, Industry and Competition. The primary objective of the commission, which was established in 2005, is to promote and deepen bilateral trade relations and economic between the two countries.

The priority sectors for the Joint Economic Commission includes agriculture and agri-business; automotive; infrastructure, energy and construction services; minerals resources; textile and clothing; as well as tourism.

Ukraine

Diplomatic relations between Ukraine and South Africa were established in March 1992. South Africa opened its embassy in Kiev in October 1992, while Ukraine opened its embassy in Pretoria in 1995.

Cooperation between the two countries is guided through regular Senior Officials' Political Consultations. Areas of cooperation between South Africa and Ukraine include military cooperation, education and science and technology.

Central Europe

Central Europe has seen substantial improvement in relations with South Africa. A number of bilateral mechanisms with these countries were established at various levels.

The areas of cooperation have been considerable in, inter alia, the fields of education, arts and culture, science and technology, agriculture, water affairs, trade, tourism. South Africa works very closely with Central European countries on multilateral forums.

Bulgaria

South Africa and Bulgaria have maintained cordial and warm relations dating back to the liberation struggle as Bulgaria hosted a number of anti-apartheid activists.

Diplomatic relations at the level of Ambassador were established through the exchange of notes in February 1992 and the South African Embassy in Sofia started functioning in 1992, while the Bulgarian Embassy in Pretoria was opened in February 1993.

Croatia

Bilateral relations between South Africa and Croatia have developed steadily since diplomatic relations were established in 1992. The South African Embassy in Hungary is accredited to Croatia whilst Croatia opened its embassy in Pretoria in November 1995.

Bilateral relations between the two countries are coordinated at the level of Senior Officials with emphasis in various areas such as marine technology, higher education and training, science and technology, and tourism.

Czech Republic

Full diplomatic relations between South Africa and the Czech Republic were established in 1991 and resident embassies in each other's capitals were established soon after.

Bilateral relations have evolved to a level of maturity, underpinned by increasing commercial and business-to-business activities, as well as people-to-people exchanges.

Political consultations are coordinated at Deputy Ministerial level. Areas of cooperation between the two countries include tourism, defence, medical equipment, pharmaceuticals and agro-processing.

Relations between South Africa and Czech Republic are governed by the South Africa-Czech Republic Joint Committee for Economic Cooperation, which aims to promote and deepen bilateral trade and economic cooperation.

Hungary

Hungary was the first, among the Central European countries, to establish diplomatic ties with South Africa. Full diplomatic relations between the two countries were established in July 1991.

Both countries enjoy cordial bilateral relations. Hungary and South Africa cooperate in the fields of education, science and technology. The two countries also have a bilateral agreement in the field of water resource management.

Poland

Diplomatic relations between South Africa and Poland were concluded in December 1991 and embassies were opened in each capital.

Political consultations between the two countries were established thereafter and are coordinated at the Deputy Ministers' level. Poland, with a population of 38 million people, is the sixth-largest economy in the EU.

South Africa is Poland's top trade partner in Africa. Areas of cooperation between Poland and South Africa include aeronautics, automotive, defence and agriculture.

Romania

South Africa and Romania established diplomatic relations in November 1991. The formal mechanism, legalising bilateral political consultations on an institutionalised basis between South Africa and Romania, was signed in September 2016. The protocol is crucial in strengthening bilateral relations as well

as providing a political framework for other agreements and commitments.

South Africa and Romania signed an agreement in the field of science and technology in September 2004. The partnership has successfully contributed to scientific advancement in both countries.

Other areas of cooperation between South Africa and Romania include energy, mining, agriculture, and marine technology.

Slovakia

Full diplomatic relations between the former Federal Republic of Czechoslovakia and South Africa were established in October 1991.

The dissolution of the Federal Republic of Czechoslovakia brought about the Slovak Republic as a separate sovereign state in 1993.

The bilateral diplomatic relations entered into with the Federal Republic of Czechoslovakia continued uninterrupted with the Slovak Republic. South Africa's bilateral relations with Slovakia are sound.

Whilst South Africa does not have an embassy in Bratislava, the country's relations with Slovakia are managed on a non-resident basis by the South African embassy in Vienna.

Areas of cooperation between South Africa and Slovakia are in the fields of automotive (including automotive components), agro-processing, medical equipment and pharmaceuticals.

Slovenia

Full diplomatic relations between South Africa and Slovenia were established in 1992. However, both countries do not have resident diplomatic representation in each other's country.

Both countries enjoy cordial bilateral relations. Bilateral relations between the two countries exist at the level of Senior Officials, with meetings taking place alternatively every two years.

Mexico

Bilateral relations between South Africa and Mexico are good and the two countries work closely together in multilateral forums on issues such as South-South cooperation and nuclear disarmament. South Africa is Mexico's biggest trading partner in Africa.

Latin America and the Caribbean

South Africa's bilateral relations with Latin America and the Caribbean continue to advance the developmental agenda of the South, and strengthen cooperation among developing countries through active participation in groupings of the South at regional, inter-regional and multilateral levels.

In this regard, the need to build stronger and balanced relationships with Latin American and the Caribbean countries is of particular importance. South Africa has observer status in the Caribbean Community and Common Market and acts as the region's voice in the G20.

Brazil

The presidents of South Africa and Brazil meet regularly to discuss issues of mutual interest. South Africa maintains the view that the Rio+20 Conference, which took place in Brazil in June 2012, helped to ensure that the issue of sustainable development remained a top priority on the agenda of the UN and the international community.

Argentina

Argentina is South Africa's third-largest trading partner in Latin America and the Caribbean region after Brazil and Mexico. Regular ministerial meetings ensure continuous improvement in bilateral ties.

The Caribbean

South Africa enjoys cordial relations with the countries of the Caribbean. The majority of inhabitants of the Caribbean are of African descent and have strong historical and cultural links to the continent.

South Africa's endeavour in conjunction with the AU and Caricom to strengthen cooperation between Africa and the African Diaspora in the Caribbean has given added impetus to bilateral and multilateral relations. South Africa attaches importance to strengthening its relations with the Caribbean and developing common positions on global issues such as access to the markets of the industrial North, reform of international institutions and promoting the development agenda and protection of small island states.

Uruguay, Chile and Colombia

South Africa and Chile enjoy sound bilateral relations, which are conducted through the Joint Consultative Mechanism at Deputy Ministerial level.

The Joint Consultative Mechanism continues to serve a constructive purpose in the ongoing political dialogue between the two countries at bilateral, regional and multilateral levels.

South Africa is Chile's largest trading partner in Africa and the biggest investor in the country's mining sector. The biggest area of trade between South Africa and Chile is capital goods for mining.

Bilateral relations between South Africa and Colombia are cordial and growing. In January 2019, South Africa affirmed its commitment to assist Colombia in achieving lasting peace after years of conflict.

Peru

South Africa is one of the largest investors in Peru, with SABMiller and Anglo-American operating in that country.

The main South African exports to Peru are mining equipment, paper and carton, metal sheeting and specialised structural steel.

Venezuela

Diplomatic relations between South Africa and Venezuela were established in 1993 and in 1995. The two countries share cordial relations premised on mainly political relations.

In January 2019, President Ramaphosa congratulated Venezuelan President Nicolas Maduro Moros, following his inauguration for a second term.

Cuba

In 2019, South Africa and Cuba celebrated 25 years of cordial, mutually beneficial diplomatic relations and constructive cooperation at both bilateral and multilateral levels.

The South Africa-Cuba Agreement on Cooperation in the Fields of Public Health and Medical Sciences has registered much success. Over 732 South Africans, many from previously disadvantaged communities, received their first five years of medical training in Cuba and have qualified as doctors since the inception of the Nelson Mandela/ Fidel Castro Medical Student Training Programme in 1997. Many others continue receiving medical training in Cuba and will also provide in the coming years much needed primary healthcare services to their local communities.

The strong and historic relations between the two countries has seen bilateral agreements and technical cooperation in many areas, including health, human settlements, public works, infrastructure, water resource management, sanitation and basic bducation, among others.

The deployment of Cuban doctors, engineers and technical experts in all the provinces of South Africa rendering important services, is a demonstration of the strategic partnership and solidarity between South Africa and Cuba and a good example of South-South cooperation.

In April 2020, 217 Cuban health specialists and workers arrived in South Africa to assist with the fight to curb the spread of the COVID-19 pandemic. This followed a request by President Ramaphosa to President Díaz Canel Bermúdez of Cuba. The experts would support South Africa's efforts to contain the spread of COVID 19.

The group consisted of experts in the fields of epidemiology, biostatistics, and public health; family physicians to guide interventions through door-to-door testing and to assist local health workers in health promotion and disease surveillance at the community level; healthcare technology engineers to assist in maintaining the inventory, deployment and repair of aged medical equipment; and experts to provide technical assistance working with local experts.

Cuba remains a strategic partner of South Africa and the region. Relations between South Africa and Cuba are characterised by high-level political dialogues.

There are over 30 signed bilateral agreements in place between the two countries, covering vast areas of cooperation. The most active of these agreements are in the areas of health cooperation, human settlements technical exchange, public works technical assistance, cooperation on water resource management and water supply and most recently, the agreement on professional services in the field of basic education.

2019/20 SOUTH AFRICA YEARBOOK

Justice and Correctional Services

Justice and Constitutional Development

The Department of Justice and Constitutional Development (DoJ&CD) derives its mandate from a number of Acts, in addition to the mandate it derives from the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996.

These Acts, and the Constitutional Framework, assign functions to the department, such as the establishment of magistrates' courts, and the appointment of magistrates and other judicial officers; the establishment and functioning of the Special Investigating Unit (SIU) and the National Prosecuting Authority (NPA), including the Asset Forfeiture Unit (AFU); the conducting of criminal proceedings; the prosecution of organised crime and corruption, and the forfeiture of assets obtained through illicit means; the provision of witness protection to vulnerable and intimidated witnesses and their related persons in judicial proceedings; the establishment and functioning of bodies responsible for legal aid, law reform and rulemaking; the appointment of masters of the high courts; the management of third-party funds; the administration of the Guardian's Fund and deceased and insolvent estates; the regulation and provision of legal advisory services to government departments; the promotion, protection and enforcement of human rights; the protection of vulnerable groups; and the provision of support to Chapter 9 institutions.

The National Development Plan (NDP) sets out a vision for building and maintaining safe communities in South Africa through, among other things, strengthening the criminal justice system. This vision is expressed in terms of Priority 5 (social cohesion and safe communities) of government's 2019 – 2024 Medium Term Strategic Framework (MTSF). The work of the DoJ&CD is directly aligned with this priority in that a well-functioning criminal justice system provides relief to victims of crime, protects vulnerable groups and swiftly acts against perpetrators of corrupt activities. To this end, over the medium term, the DoJ&CD will focus on implementing an integrated criminal justice strategy, eradicating gender-based violence and femicide (GBVF) and strengthening the State's capability to combat corruption.

Implementing an integrated criminal justice strategy

The most effective deterrent to criminal activity is an efficient and effective criminal justice system. In this regard, in 2017 Cabinet approved a broad framework for adopting an integrated criminal justice strategy. The strategy aims to improve the efficiency of the criminal justice system through aligning the business processes of various stakeholders in the criminal justice system, improving and strengthening the capabilities of the criminal justice system, and coordinating integrated interventions across the criminal justice value chain.

The DoJ&CD leads the implementation of the strategy in the Justice, Crime Prevention and Security (JCPS) Cluster. To fast-track the implementation of the strategy, R123.3 million is allocated over the Medium Term Expenditure Framework (MTEF) period to the Court Services programme. Measures are also being implemented to align the strategy with the Integrated Justice System programme included under the Justice Modernisation subprogramme.

Other key activities carried out in the Court Services programme that support an integrated criminal justice system include developing practical, short-term and medium-term proposals to improve the performance of courts by focusing court work on trials and ancillary proceedings such as bail; and removing some administrative functions relating to postponements. Spending in the Court Services programme accounts for 32.1% (R22.9 billion) of the department's total expenditure, increasing at an average annual rate of 5.9%, from R6.7 billion in 2019/20 to R8 billion in 2022/23.

Eradicating GBVF

A common criticism levelled against the State is that it is slow to respond to the crisis of rape, domestic violence, femicide, child homicide and related forms of GBV. In response, the government has developed a GBVF national strategic plan, which requires large-scale changes in the criminal justice system.

For the DoJ&CD specifically, these changes include upgrading the existing 309 magisterial district courts to victim-centric justice courts that offer centre-based support services, particularly to victims of domestic violence, GBV and related violence. The department also plans to increase the number of courts dealing with sexual offences from 90 in 2018/19 to 148 in 2022/23.

To expedite the transformation of justice support services for victims of GBVF, the DoJ&CD plans to introduce a justice rapid results transformation programme, which will be led by trained and dedicated multidisciplinary teams comprising officials across line functions. To ensure a seamless transformation process, training in producing rapid results will also be undertaken at all levels of management. The department plans to transform 30 district courts in this regard between 2020/21 and 2021/22. Related activities will be carried out in the Lower Courts subprogramme. Spending in this subprogramme accounts for 74.2% (R16.8 billion) of the programme's total expenditure over the MTEF period.

In contributing to building a victim-centric criminal justice system, the NPA plans to increase the number of Thuthuzela Care Centres (TCCs) from 55 in 2019/20 to 60 in 2022/23. This function will be carried out in the National Prosecutions Service (NPS) subprogramme. Spending in this subprogramme accounts for 80.7% (R11.8 billion) of the programme's total expenditure over the medium term.

Strengthening the State's capability to combat corruption

In responding to the urgent need to combat corruption in South Africa, additional funding amounting to R1.2 billion over the medium term (R369 million in 2020/21, R421.7 million in 2021/22 and R444.3 million in 2022/23) has been allocated to the NPA. These funds will be used to increase capacity in all business units; rejuvenate the Aspirant Prosecutor Programme; and operationalise an investigative directorate to deal with serious, high-profile or complex corruption, and any other cases referred to it by the National Director of Public Prosecutions (NDPP) in accordance with the NPA Act, 1998 (Act 32 of 1998). Due to these additional allocations, spending in the NPA programme will increase at an average annual rate of 8.1%, from R4 billion in 2019/20 to R5.1 billion in 2022/23.

Over the period ahead, the NPA plans to appoint 277 new staff. This is intended to enable the authority to increase the

value of recoveries relating to corruption or related offences by the AFU from R1.6 billion in 2019/20 to R1.8 billion in 2022/23; increase the number of persons convicted of corruption in the private sector from 57 in 2019/20 to 166 in 2022/23; and increase the number of government officials convicted of corruption from 202 in 2019/20 to 243 in 2022/23.

To further strengthen the State's capability in combating corruption, additional funding of R120.2 million is allocated to increase the number of specialised commercial crime courts, and R225 million is allocated for the SIU to appoint forensic investigators and operationalise the special tribunal, which has a statutory mandate to recover public funds syphoned from the fiscus through corruption, fraud and illicit money flows.

Legislation and policies

The following instruments of legislation are relevant to the successful functioning of the DoJ&CD:

- Legislation providing for the establishment and functioning of the superior courts, magistrates' courts and special courts: The Constitutional Court Complementary Act, 1995 (Act 13 of 1995), the Supreme Court Act, 1959 (Act 59 of 1959), the Magistrates' Courts Act, 1944 (Act 32 of 1944), and the Small Claims Court Act, 1984 (Act 61 of 1984).
- Legislation providing for the appointment of judges and other judicial officers, the conditions of service, discipline and training: The Judges Remuneration and Conditions of Employment Act, 2001 (Act 47 of 2001), the Judicial Service Commission (JSC) Act, 1994 (Act 9 of 1994), as amended, the South African Judicial Education Institute (SAJEI) Act, 2008 (Act 14 of 2008), and the Magistrates' Act, 1993 (Act 90 of 1993).
- Legislation providing for the establishment and functioning of the NPA, the SIU and the AFU; the conduct of criminal proceedings; the investigation of organised crime and corruption; and the forfeiture of assets obtained through illicit means: the NPA Act of 1998, the Criminal Procedure Act (CPA), 1977 (Act 51 of 1977), the Prevention of Organised Crime Act (POCA), 1998 (Act 121 of 1998), the SIU and Special Tribunals Act, 1996 (Act 74 of 1996), and the Witness Protection Act, 1998 (Act 112 of 1998).
- Legislation providing for the establishment and functioning of bodies responsible for legal aid, law reform and rule-making: The Legal Aid Act, 1969 (Act 22 of 1969), the South African Law Reform Commission (SALRC) Act, 1973 (Act 19 of 1973), and the Rules Board for Courts of Law Act, 1985 (Act 107 of 1985).
- Legislation providing for the appointment of masters of the High Court and the administration of the Guardian's Fund and deceased and insolvent estates: The Administration of Estates Act, 1965 (Act 66 of 1965), and the Insolvency Act, 1936 (Act 24 of 1936).
- Legislation regulating the provisioning of legal advisory services to government departments: The State Attorney Act, 1957 (Act 56 of 1957).
- Legislation relating to the promotion, protection and enforcement of certain human rights: The Promotion of Administrative Justice Act, 2000 (Act 3 of 2000), the Promotion of Access to Information Act, 2000 (Act 2 of 2000), and the Promotion of Equality and Prevention of Unfair Discrimination Act, 2000 (Act 4 of 2000), better known as the Equality Act of 2000.
- Legislation pertaining to the protection of vulnerable groups: The Child Justice Act, 2008 (Act 75 of 2008), the Children's Act, 2005 (Act 38 of 2005), the Criminal Law (Sexual Offences and Related Matters) Amendment Act, 2007 (Act 32 of 2007), the Maintenance Act, 1998 (Act 99 of 1998), and the Domestic Violence Act, 1998 (Act 116 of 1998).
- Legislation providing support to Chapter 9 institutions: The Human Rights Commission Act, 1994 (Act 54 of 1994), and the Public Protector Act, 1994 (Act 23 of 1994).
- Legislation regulating the management and control of public expenditure: The Public Finance Management Act, 1999 (Act 1 of 1999).
- Legislation regulating operations in the Public Service: The Public Service Act, 1994 (Act 103 of 1994), as amended.
- Criminal Law (Sexual Offences and Related Matters) Amendment Act, 2012 (Act 6 of 2012).
- Criminal Procedure Amendment Act, 2012 (Act 9 of 2012).
- Judicial Matters Amendment Act, 2012 (Act 11 of 2012).
- Repeal of the Black Administration Act and Amendment of Certain Laws Amendment Act, 2012 (Act 20 of 2012).
- Sheriffs Amendment Act, 2012 (Act 14 of 2012).
- The Criminal Law SIU (Forensic Procedures) Amendment Bill 2013 paves the way to regulate and promote the use of DNA in combating crime, taking into account constitutional requirements. The use of DNA evidence holds the potential to alleviate bottlenecks in the criminal justice system. Maximising the use of DNA evidence promotes fairness, confidence and certainty in the administration of South Africa's laws.
- The Constitution 17th Amendment Act of 2013 is implemented with the Superior Courts Act, 2013 (Act 10 of 2013), which repeals the Supreme Court Act of 1959.
- The Legal Practice Act, 2014 (Act 28 of 2014) establishes a new regulatory framework for the profession, enhances opportunities to enhance access to services of attorneys and advocates, and creates mechanisms to address the spiralling cost of litigation.

Budget

For the 2019/20 financial year, the DoJ&CD was allocated R21 billion. The department's expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 5.8%, from R21 billion in 2019/20 to R24.9 billion in 2022/23. Spending on the compensation of employees accounts for 57.4% (R41.2 billion) of the DoJ&CD's total expenditure over the medium term.

Entity

Legal Aid South Africa

Legal Aid South Africa was established in terms of Section 2 of the Legal Aid South Africa Act, 2014 (Act 39 of 2014), to provide legal aid and legal advice to eligible people at the State's expense. The entity is mandated to ensure access to justice and the realisation of people's right to legal representation, as envisaged in the Constitution. To this end, over the medium term, the entity will continue to focus on providing legal aid and representation to people who cannot afford it.

Expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 5.4%, from R2 billion in 2019/20 to R2.3 billion in 2022/23. Compensation of employees is the main cost driver, spending on which accounts for 81.2% (R5.4 billion) of the entity's total

expenditure over the medium term. Revenue is mainly derived from transfers from the DoJ&CD, which are expected to increase at an average annual rate of 5.5%, from R2 billion in 2019/20 to R2.3 billion in 2022/23. The entity has been allocated an additional R75 million over the MTEF period to assist with issuing a greater number of instructions on criminal matters to judicare practitioners.

Other entities

Public Protector of South Africa

The Public Protector of South Africa is mandated to strengthen the country's constitutional democracy by investigating any conduct in state affairs, or in the public administration in any sphere of government, that is alleged or suspected to be improper or to result in any impropriety or prejudice; to report on that conduct; and to take appropriate remedial action. The institution's total budget for 2019/20 was R31.4 million.

South African Human Rights Commission (SAHRC)

The SAHRC is an independent statutory body established to support constitutional democracy by promoting, protecting and monitoring matters relating to human rights. The commission's total budget for 2019/20 was R189.2 million.

Special Investigating Unit

The SIU investigates and litigates on serious malpractice, maladministration and corruption, in connection with the administration of state institutions. The unit is also empowered to institute and conduct civil proceedings in any court of law or special tribunal in its own name or on behalf of other state institutions. Its total budget for 2019/20 was R363 million.

Role players

National Prosecuting Authority

The NPA was established in 1998 and comprises the NDPP, Deputy National Directors of Public Prosecutions (DNDPPs), Directors and Special Directors of Public Prosecutions (DPPs and SDPPs) and other members of the prosecuting authority appointed at or assigned to the NPA, and members of the administrative staff. It provides a coordinated prosecuting service that ensures that justice is delivered to victims of crime through general and specialised prosecutions. It also removes profit from crime and protect certain witnesses.

The NPA has the power to:

- institute and conduct criminal proceedings on behalf of the State;
- carry out any necessary functions incidental to instituting and conducting such criminal proceedings); and
- discontinue criminal proceedings.

The DNDPPs are responsible for the following divisions:

- the NPS.
- AFU and International Relations.
- Legal Affairs.
- Administration.

The SDPPs head the following specialised units:

- Sexual Offences and Community Affairs (SOCA) Unit.
- Priority Crimes Litigation Unit (PCLU).
- Office for Witness Protection (OWP).

Over the medium term, the authority will focus on:

- ensuring successful prosecution by maintaining a conviction rate of 87% in high courts, 74% in regional courts, and 88% in district courts;
- conducting impactful prosecution by increasing the number of persons convicted of corruption in the private sector, from 57 in 2019/20 to 166 in 2022/23;
- removing the profit from crime by intensifying the impact of asset forfeiture through increasing the value of recoveries relating to corruption or related offences from R1.6 billion in 2019/20 to R1.8 billion in 2022/23; and
- contributing to the effectiveness of the criminal justice system on an ongoing basis by ensuring that no witnesses and related persons are threatened, harmed or killed.

National Prosecutions Service

The NPS is a core division of the NPA, responsible for general and specialised criminal prosecutions. The DPPs are the heads of their respective areas of jurisdiction, which are established according to provincial demarcations in each of the seats of the high courts.

All the public prosecutors and state advocates working in the district, regional and high courts fall under the responsibility and direction of the DPPs. The SDPPs are appointed to carry out certain functions and responsibilities related to a particular crime type, as assigned by the President by proclamation in the Government Gazette.

Office for Witness Protection

The OWP is established in terms of the Witness Protection Act of 1998, and is headed by a director, appointed by and operating under the direction and authority of the Minister of Justice and Correctional Services, for the purpose of administering the Act. The OWP is responsible for the protection (including temporary protection) of witnesses and related persons, in accordance with the Act. All OWP functions and duties are classified secret in terms of the Witness Protection Act of 1998.

Asset Forfeiture Unit

The AFU was established in May 1999 as a division of the NPA to focus on the implementation of Chapter 5 and Chapter 6 of the POCA of 1998. The AFU was created to ensure that the powers in the Act to seize criminal assets would be used to their maximum effect in the fight against crime, in particular, organised crime. Criminal assets seized by the AFU are paid into the Criminal Assets Recovery Account.

Specialised Commercial Crime Unit (SCCU)

A division of the NPS, the SCCU's mandate is to prosecute complex commercial crime and corruption cases. The client base of the unit comprises a broad spectrum of complainants in commercial cases, ranging from private individuals and corporate bodies to state departments.

Priority Crimes Litigation Unit

The PCLU is mandated to tackle cases that threaten national security. It was created by a Presidential proclamation. The primary function of the unit is to manage and direct investigations and prosecutions in respect of the non-proliferation of weapons of mass destruction (nuclear, chemical and biological).

Sexual Offences and Community Affairs

The SOCA unit's mandate is to act against the victimisation of vulnerable groups, mainly women and children. The unit develops strategy and policy, and oversees the management of cases relating to sexual offences, domestic violence, human trafficking, maintenance offences and children in conflict with the law.

The unit aims to:

- improve the conviction rate in gender-based crimes and crimes against children;
- protect vulnerable groups from abuse and violence;
- ensure access to maintenance support; and
- reduce secondary victimisation.

One of the SOCA's key achievements in ensuring government's commitment to the fight against sexual offences and GBV is the establishment of TCCs – one-stop facilities located in public hospitals in communities where sexual assault is particularly high. The facilities are aimed at reducing secondary victimisation, improving conviction rates and reducing the cycle time for the finalisation of rape cases.

Master of the High Court

The Master of the High Court serves the public in respect of:

- deceased estates;
- liquidations (insolvent estates); and
- registration of trusts, tutors and curators' administration of the Guardian's Fund (minors and people with mental disabilities).

The Master's Office has five main divisions, which are all aimed at protecting the financial interests of people whose assets or interests are, for various reasons, managed by others.

As part of the turnaround strategy in the Master's Office, there has been a special focus on training frontline officials. The Master's Office is also investigating methods to deliver a more efficient and effective service to the public through the Internet.

Office of the Family Advocate

The role of the Family Advocate is to promote and protect the best interests of children in civil disputes over parental rights and responsibilities.

This is achieved by monitoring pleadings filed at court, conducting enquiries, filing reports, appearing in court during the hearing of the application or trial, and providing mediation services in respect of disputes over the parental rights and responsibilities of fathers of children born out of wedlock.

In certain instances, the Family Advocate also assists the courts in matters involving domestic violence and maintenance. Furthermore, litigants are obliged to mediate their disputes before resorting to litigation. Unmarried fathers can approach the Family Advocate directly for assistance without instituting any litigation.

Children's rights to participate in, and consult on, decisions affecting them have been entrenched; the Family Advocate is the mechanism whereby the voice of the child is heard.

Truth and Reconciliation Commission (TRC)

The TRC was dissolved in March 2002 by way of proclamation in the Government Gazette. The TRC made recommendations to government regarding reparations to victims and measures to prevent the future violation of human rights and abuses experienced during the apartheid years.

Government approved categories of recommendations in June 2003 for implementation, namely:

- final reparations;
- TRC-identified victims;
- symbols and monuments;
- medical benefits and other forms of social assistance; and
- community rehabilitation.

New Bills

Recognition of Customary Marriages Amendment Bill of 2019

In July 2019, Cabinet approved the submission of the Recognition of Customary Marriages Amendment Bill of 2019 to Parliament. The Bill brings Section 7(1) and (2) of the Recognition of Customary Marriages Act (RCMA), 1998 (Act 120 of 1998) in line with the judgment of the Constitutional Court in 2017, which declared these provisions constitutionally invalid. These sections discriminated unfairly against women in customary marriages.

The Bill also provides for the equal treatment of women in pre-Act monogamous and polygamous customary marriages.

The amendments eliminate gender-based discrimination in polygamous marriages entered into before the commencement of the RCMA of 1998. Spouses will now have joint and equal proprietary rights over marital property. This means that husbands will no longer have exclusive proprietary rights over marital property to the detriment of their wives. Children can also benefit as they will be able to inherit from the mother as well.

Human rights

The Bill of Rights is the cornerstone of South Africa's democracy. It enshrines the rights of all people in South Africa and affirms the democratic values of human dignity, equality and freedom. While every person is entitled to these rights, they also have a responsibility to respect them.

The Bill of Rights binds the legislature, the executive, judiciary and all organs of state.

The rights contained in the Bill of Rights are subject to the limitations contained in or referred to in Section 36 of the Constitution, or elsewhere in the Bill of Rights.

They apply to all laws, administrative decisions taken and acts performed during the period in which the Constitution is in force. In terms of the Constitution, every person has basic human rights such as:

- equality before the law and equal protection and benefit of the law;
- freedom from unfair discrimination;
- the right to life;
- the right to human dignity; and
- the right to freedom and security.

Areas of legislation

Sexual offences

The Criminal Law (Sexual Offences and Related Matters) Amendment Act of 2007 provides a legal framework to support an integrated approach to the management of sexual offences, thereby aiming to reduce secondary trauma to victims of such crimes.

National Register for Sexual Offenders (NRSO)

The DoJ&CD has developed the NRSO, which was deployed in 195 courts. The NRSO was established by an Act of Parliament in 2007.

It is a record of names of those found guilty of sexual offences against children and people with mental disabilities.

The NRSO gives employers in the public or private sectors such as schools, crèches and hospitals the right to check that the person being hired is fit to work with children or mentally disabled people.

Information on whether a person is on the list is available on request, along with the relevant motivation, before any confirmation or information is released.

Maintenance

The main objective of the Maintenance Act of 1998 is to facilitate the securing of maintenance money from parents and/or other persons able to maintain maintenance beneficiaries, mainly children, who have a right to maintenance.

Parents and/or guardians must maintain children in the proportion in which they can afford. Therefore, both parents and/or sets of families need to take responsibility for the maintenance of the child or children concerned.

The Maintenance Amendment Act, 2015 (Act 9 of 2015), further ensures that maintenance systems are effective, putting the following measures in place, among others:

- A beneficiary will be able to claim maintenance where they work and not only where they live. This will make it easier for beneficiaries to go to the maintenance court during working hours.
- If the person from whom maintenance is sought cannot be located, despite all reasonable efforts, the court can grant an order directing electronic communication service providers to provide the court with contact information.
- Maintenance courts must complete their enquiries as speedily as possible. The views of the person who is obliged to pay maintenance must be sought.
- If a person has defaulted on paying maintenance, their personal details will be submitted to all credit bureaus. This will prevent maintenance defaulters from continuing to receive credit while owing maintenance. They will effectively be blacklisted.

From the 369 maintenance courts nationwide, the DoJ&CD registers about 200 000 new maintenance complaints a year. To reduce the maintenance queues at courts, the department has installed technology to process payments through electronic financial transfers to replace the card-based manual system. The courts are also increasingly making orders for payments to be deposited directly into the accounts of beneficiaries.

The Guardian's Fund was created to hold and administer funds which are paid to the Master of the High Court on behalf of various persons known or unknown, for example, minors, persons incapable of managing their own affairs, unborn heirs, missing or absent persons or persons having an interest in the moneys of a usufructuary, fiduciary or fideicommissary nature. Each Master of the High Court has its own Guardian's Fund. Through the fund, the DoJ&CD contributes substantially to poverty alleviation.

Over the medium term, the DoJ&CD aims to ensure an enhanced and integrated family law service by:

- increasing the percentage of maintenance matters finalised within 90 days from the date of proper services of process from 50% in 2016/17 to 60% 2019/20; and
- increasing the percentage of family advocate reports filed within six months from the date of opening matters, from 50% in 2016/17 to 60% in 2019/20.

Domestic violence

Rigorous steps being taken by the JCPS Cluster to root out GBV include the adoption of zero tolerance towards rape, violation of the rights of lesbian, gay, bisexual, transgender and intersex people, and other forms of violence towards women and children.

The Ndabezitha Project trains traditional leaders and clerks of the court in domestic violence matters in rural areas. This includes the development of a safety tool and intersectoral statistical tool by the NPA and the DoJ&CD.

The DoJ&CD conducted research under the topic, 10-Year Review of Implementation of the Domestic Violence Act of 1998, aimed at taking stock of all initiatives and projects in courts and the criminal justice system to address the reduction and prevention of domestic violence.

The Protection from Harassment Act, 2011 (Act 17 of 2011), is the first specific legislation to address sexual harassment in the Southern African Development Community (SADC) region. The essence of the Act is to provide a quick, easy and affordable civil remedy in the form of a protection order for incidences of stalking. The legislation arose out of a SALRC investigation into the legal framework governing stalking and domestic violence.

A key component of the Act is that it seeks to cover all forms of stalking, not just that involving people engaged in a relationship.

A protection order can be issued instructing the harasser to cease harassment.

The Act sets out how a complainant is to apply for a protection order and the procedure to be followed in granting one. The legislation also provides for the issuing of an interim protection order without the knowledge of the respondent, given certain conditions.

A victim of cyberstalking can apply to a court for an interim protection order even when the identity of the alleged stalker is unknown. The law will also empower the police to investigate a stalker to identify the perpetrator even before a victim launches an application for a protection order.

Human trafficking

The Prevention and Combating of Trafficking in Persons Act, 2013 (Act 7 of 2013), defines trafficking to include the recruitment, transportation, sale or harbour of people by means of force, deceit, the abuse of vulnerability and the abuse of power for exploitation. The Act addresses the scourge of trafficking in persons holistically and comprehensively.

Child maintenance money can be deposited directly into the bank accounts of beneficiaries. Equally, the introduction of the Paperless Estates Administration System in the Master's Office has enhanced the efficacy in the management of deceased estates.

The system was rolled out to 15 Masters' offices countrywide and about 206 service points, resulting in improved accountability and faster turnaround times.

The DoJ&CD uses a system called MojaPay, which has ensured that 80% of payments are made within four working days, as opposed to the previous manual system that could take up to a month.

Besides creating the main offence of trafficking in persons, the legislation creates offences such as debt bondage; the possession, destruction and tampering with travel documents; and using the services of victims of trafficking, all of which facilitate innocent persons becoming victims of this modern-day form of slavery.

The legislation gives effect to South Africa's international obligations in terms of the United Nations (UN) Protocol to Prevent, Suppress and Punish Trafficking in Persons, especially Women and Children.

South Africa fully recognises the existence of human trafficking and smuggling activities. These crimes are mostly perpetuated by transnational syndicates, hence the call from many states for regional and international cooperation, as well as the introduction of aligned legislation and immigration procedures.

To address those challenges, the UN member states require fair, responsible, ethical and efficient criminal justice systems and crime prevention strategies that contribute to sustainable economic and social development. It also imposes a responsibility on states to work together.

These scourges have also had a negative impact on the people of South Africa. The government therefore fully supports the UN's promotion of objectives relating to the continued and focused national and international prevention, and combating of these crimes.

In South Africa, migration and human trafficking are a result of a complex set of interrelated push-and-pull factors. On the push side, factors such as poverty, lack of opportunities, dislocations from family and community, gender, racial and ethnic inequalities and the break-up of families are all relevant. The pull factors include the promise of a better life, consumer aspirations and lack of information on the risks involved, established patterns of migration, porous borders and fewer constraints on travel.

As a result of these factors, South Africa has become a source, transit and destination country for trafficked and smuggled men, women and children. South African girls are trafficked or smuggled for the purposes of commercial sexual exploitation and domestic servitude, while boys are trafficked or smuggled for use in street vending, food service and agriculture.

The Prevention and Combating of Trafficking in Persons Act of 2013 deals comprehensively with human trafficking in all its forms and, in particular, provides for the protection of and assistance to victims of trafficking.

Persons engaged with trafficking will be liable on conviction to a severe fine or imprisonment, including imprisonment for life or such imprisonment without the option of a fine or both.

Other existing laws being used to prosecute traffickers include the Children's Act of 2005, which provides for the criminalisation of the trafficking of children, while the Criminal Law (Sexual Offences and Related Matters) Amendment Act of 2007, contains provisions that criminalise trafficking in persons for sexual purposes.

South Africa has also been successful in using the racketeering offences in the POCA of 1998 to deal with criminal organisations involved in trafficking.

Under the common law, depending on the circumstances of each case, persons suspected of trafficking could be charged with kidnapping, common assault, assault with intent to do grievous bodily harm, extortion, attempted murder and murder.

Those involved in acts of trafficking in persons may be prosecuted using other acts that include the Immigration Act, 2002 (Act 13 of 2002), the Basic Conditions of Employment Act, 1997 (Act 75 of 1997), the Intimidation Act, 1982 (Act 72 of 1982), the Domestic Violence Act of 1998, and the Films and Publications Act of 1996 (Act 65 of 1996).

Programmes and projects

Court Services

The purpose of the programme is to facilitate the resolution of criminal and civil cases, and family law disputes by providing accessible, efficient and quality administrative support to the lower courts, and managing court facilities.

Over the medium term, the programme's objective is to deliver modern, accessible and people-centric services for all by:

- reducing the number of criminal cases on the backlog roll in lower courts, from 48 223 in 2019/20 to 45 388 in 2022/23;
- increasing the percentage of child justice preliminary inquiries finalised within 90 days after the date of first appearance, from 85% in 2019/20 to 90% in 2022/23;
- increasing the percentage of maintenance matters finalised within 90 days from the date of proper service of process, from 72% in 2019/20 to 79% in 2022/23;
- increasing the number of clearance certificates for the NRSO, in respect of particulars issued to applicants, from 3 000 in 2019/20 to 18 000 in 2022/23;
- expediting the implementation of Femicide Watch, established as required by Article 15 of the 2019 Presidential Summit Declaration against GBVF, from phase 2 in 2019/20 to phase 5 in 2022/23;
- increasing the number of regional courts upgraded to sexual offences courts, as required by the 2019 Presidential Summit Declaration against GBVF, from 90 in 2018/19 to 148 in 2022/23; and
- upgrading 72 magisterial district courts in terms of the Victim-Centric Justice Strategy by March 2023.

State Legal Services

The purpose of this programme is to provide legal and legislative services to government, supervise the administration of deceased and insolvent estates and the Guardian's Fund, prepare and promote legislation and undertake research in support of this. The objectives of the programme over the medium term include:

- delivering modern, accessible and people-centric justice services for all, by maintaining the percentage of letters of appointment issued in deceased estates within 15 days of receipt of all required documents at 93%;
- ensuring a regulated and transformed legal profession by increasing the percentage of briefs allocated to historically disadvantaged individuals, from 80% in 2020/21 to 85% in 2022/23;
- ensuring effective and efficient state legal advisory and litigation services by increasing the percentage of legal opinions finalised within 40 days of receipt of instruction, from 82% in 2019/20 to 86% in 2022/23;
- increasing the percentage of international agreements and accompanying legal opinions finalised within 40 days of receipt of instruction, from 85% in 2019/20 to 86% in 2022/23;
- increasing the percentage of draft Bills approved by Cabinet

for introduction within 40 days of receipt of instruction, from 82% in 2019/20 to 85% in 2022/23;
- maintaining the number of research papers submitted to the SALRC for consideration and approval at 11 from 2020/21 onwards;
- enhancing the protection and promotion of fundamental human rights and freedoms by maintaining sustained and visible anti-xenophobia campaigns conducted in collaboration with other departments and role players at six from 2020/21 onwards;
- maintaining the number of awareness sessions on lesbian, gay, bisexual, trans and intersex issues conducted with organisations, as well as traditional and faith-based leaders' communities at 13 from 2020/21 onwards; and
- improving reparations accessed by qualifying beneficiaries of Parliament-approved TRC recommendations, by maintaining the number of community projects launched at five from 2020/21 onwards.

Auxiliary and Associated Services

The purpose of the programme is to provide a variety of auxiliary services associated with the DoJ&CD's purpose. It also funds the Interdepartmental Justice Modernisation programme, the President's Fund, and transfers payments to public entities and constitutional institutions.

It's objective is to deliver modern, accessible and people-centric justice services for all, by maintaining the number of government departments and entities exchanging information electronically at nine from 2020/21 to 2022/23, and increasing the number of branches, sites or service centres of government departments and entities where person verification services are deployed, from 280 in 2019/20 to 560 in 2021/22.

Child justice

Children's Act

The Department of Social Development leads the implementation of the Children's Act of 2005. The DoJ&CD's main responsibility is towards the Children's Court operations relating to the Act.

Embracing information and communication technology has allowed the DoJ&CD to extend its reach on modern-day platforms that are more accessible to children, thereby increasing access and engagement with potentially vulnerable or threatened children who would otherwise not have access to the department and, consequently, support and assistance.

The DoJ&CD has developed a child-friendly Frequently Asked Questions link on its website. In addition, the department created an email address, *children@justice.gov.za,* which the public may use to report issues relating to children.

The Children's Court is the DoJ&CD's principal legal mechanism to intervene and assist children who need care and protection. To gather statistics from the Children's Courts, the department developed the Children's Court Monitoring Tool. Data about matters coming to court relating to children in need of care is gathered monthly.

Section 14 of the Children's Act of 2005 states that every child has the right to bring a matter to the Children's Court.

This means that Children's Courts can serve as direct entry points for a child to seek help and protection. Children's Courts have been rendered highly accessible through the Act.

Child Justice Act

The Child Justice Act of 2008 promotes and protects the constitutional rights of children in conflict with the law. The Act provides special measures, designed to break the cycle of crime and restore in these children a lifestyle that is law-abiding and productive.

The DoJ&CD established governance structures to ensure the effective intersectoral implementation of the Act. Nine provincial child justice forums are coordinating and monitoring the implementation of the Act at provincial level.

Restorative justice

Restorative justice responds to crime in a way that focuses on the losses suffered by victims by both holding offenders accountable for the harm they have caused and building peace in communities.

Restorative justice strategies, programmes and processes in the criminal justice system are in place to try and heal the harm caused by crime, from a holistic point of view, for the victim, the offender and the community concerned – with the aim of rebuilding broken relationships and encouraging social justice and social dialogue.

Restorative justice options are always voluntary for victims involved.

Alternative dispute resolution is defined as the disposal of disputes outside formal court proceedings. The processes and mechanisms may or may not include the restorative-justice approach.

Integrated Case-Flow Management Framework

The DoJ&CD, in partnership with stakeholders from other partner organisations, is developing an enhanced version of case-flow management in the court environment.

To eradicate case-flow blockages, workable solutions were adopted. These include:
- continuous cooperation of stakeholders to implement and maintain case-flow management at all courts,
- establishing judicial leadership and case-flow management buy-in processes in the lower and higher courts in the form of case-flow management forums,
- facilitating and monitoring the creation of case-flow management governance structures to sustain productivity in the courts' environment, and
- maintaining case-flow management.

Systems that support case-flow management in the courts include the Integrated Case Management System (ICMS). This system spans all disciplines of cases administered in the justice environment.

The ICMS draws on several core modules to perform basic functions such as information warehousing, case numbering and document scanning. The specific functionality for each court and office are then built on these foundations.

The further development of the ICMS Masters System aims to create a Paperless Estate Administration System for the Master's Office.

This system will computerise the administration process in deceased estates, as all documentation will be scanned and stored electronically.

Audio-Visual Remand (AVR) System

The AVR System links magistrates' courts to correctional detention centres via closed-circuit television. The development in this area of support to case-flow management for the courts has brought about a significant improvement in the movement of cases through the use of technology. One of the directives issued by the Chief Justice to address, prevent and curb the spread of COVID-19 in court precincts, was that AVR centres in correctional centres linked to magistrates' court should be used for purposes of the postponement of cases where accused persons were in custody.

Case-Reduction Backlog Project

The JCPS Cluster departments have introduced a case backlog intervention to reduce the number of backlog cases in regional and district courts, and provide additional capacity to the backlog priority sites. The intervention ensures that the inflow of the number of new cases is balanced by the number of matters concluded. The project deliverables have been integrated into the outputs of the JCPS Cluster Delivery Agreement.

The DoJ&CD has provided resources in the form of infrastructure, court personnel, the judiciary, magistrates and budget, in support of the prosecution and judiciary to remove these cases from the backlog roll.

Integrated Justice System

This aims to increase the efficiency and effectiveness of the entire criminal justice system by increasing the probability of successful investigation, prosecution, punishment for priority crimes and, ultimately, rehabilitation of offenders. Further issues receiving specific attention include overcrowding in prisons and awaiting-trial prisoner problems, as well as bail, sentencing and plea-bargaining.

The government wants to eliminate the duplication of services and programmes at all levels. The benefits of proper alignment include:

- less duplication of services;
- the effective use of scarce and limited resources and skills; and
- joint strategic planning and a planned approach instead of being reactive.

The JCPS Cluster has structured itself to focus on two main areas of responsibility – operational and developmental issues relating to the justice system, and improving the safety and security of citizens.

International Legal Relations

The main functions of the Chief Directorate: International Legal Relations, in the DoJ&CD, is to identify and research legal questions that relate to matters pertaining to the administration of justice between South Africa and other countries, as well as international bodies and institutions.

The chief directorate is involved in direct liaison and negotiations at administrative and technical levels with foreign countries to promote international legal cooperation, and for the possible conclusion of extradition and mutual legal assistance agreements. It also aims to establish greater uniformity between the legal systems of southern African countries, especially within the SADC.

The chief directorate coordinates human rights issues at international level under the auspices of the UN and the African Union. Its functions are divided into eight broad categories:

- regular liaison on international legal matters with the SADC;
- coordinating all Commonwealth matters pertaining to the administration of justice;
- interacting with the UN, the Hague Conference and the International Institute for the Unification of Private Law;
- interacting with foreign countries outside the SADC region;
- preparing Cabinet and Parliament documentation for the ratification of human rights treaties, including report-writing; and
- processing requests for extradition, mutual legal assistance in criminal matters, interrogatory commissions, as well as requests for maintenance in terms of the Reciprocal Enforcement of Maintenance Orders Act, 1963 (Act 80 of 1963).

Owing to the number of departments and/or institutions involved in the execution of extradition and mutual legal assistance, requests and taking into consideration that diplomatic channels are followed to transmit documents, delays are experienced from time to time.

Provisions are included in extradition and mutual legal assistance agreements to provide for direct communication between central authorities.

The drastic reduction in the turnaround time for the processing of these requests should be a clear indication to the rest of the world that South Africa will neither be a safe haven for fugitives nor a breeding ground for transnational organised crime.

International Criminal Court (ICC)

South Africa remains committed to the global promotion of the rule of law and will continue cooperating with the UN system to ensure the success of the international human rights architecture.

South Africa views the ICC as an important element in a new system of international law and governance.

Office of the Chief Justice (OCJ) and Judicial Administration

The OCJ derives its mandate of providing support to the Chief Justice as the head of the Judiciary from Section 165 (6) of the Constitution, read together with the Superior Courts Act of 2013.

It provides support to the judiciary to ensure that it remains independent, accessible and effective in promoting accountability and fighting corruption. This is in line with the NDP's vision of promoting accountability and the rule of law, and Priority 5 (social cohesion and safe communities) of government's 2019 – 2024 MTSF.

To give expression to these guiding policies over the medium term, the OCJ will focus on broadening access to justice, increasing efficiencies in court administration, and ensuring judicial accountability.

The OCJ also has the following functions supplementary to its mandate:

- provide and coordinate legal and administrative support to the Chief Justice;
- provide communication and relationship management services;
- provide intergovernmental and internal coordination services;
- develop administration policies for courts;
- support the development of judicial policy, norms and standards;

- support the judicial function of the Constitutional Court; and
- support the JSC and SAJEI in the execution of their mandates.

Broadening access to justice

The official opening of the Mpumalanga High Court in 2019/20 marked a significant achievement in fulfilling the government's democratic commitment to providing access to justice for all. The OCJ will ensure that the court is fully operationalised over the MTEF period to provide access to quality justice services to residents of Mpumalanga. The projected costs for the project is R136.2 million over the medium term.

Increasing efficiencies in court administration

There is a crucial need to improve data management at superior courts. Recognising that modernising processes and infrastructure at these institutions is key to ensuring their effective administration, expenditure in the Corporate Services subprogramme is expected to increase from R121 million in 2019/20 to R134.2 million in 2022/23. This will provide for the implementation of an electronic filing system that will allow cases and evidence to be accessed more easily, and cloud-based software that will enable evidence to be digitised in court to streamline court proceedings. Implementing these systems forms part of the broader implementation of the Integrated Criminal Jstice Strategy, led by the DoJ&CD.

By modernising systems and processes at superior courts to reduce inefficiencies in court administration, the OCJ aims to increase its capacity to make the Superior Court Services more widely available, as well as improve their quality. As a result of this anticipated greater efficiency, the department is targeting an increase in the percentage of default judgements finalised within 14 days from 70% in 2020/21 to 74% in 2022/23; the percentage of taxations of legal costs finalised within 60 days from 70% in 2020/21 to 80% in 2022/23; and the percentage of warrants of release delivered within one day of release issued from 98% in 2019/20 to 100% in 2022/23.

Ensuring judicial accountability

The efficiencies gained through the modernisation and digitisation of systems at superior courts is also expected to improve the quality of the OCJ's reporting on performance information by simplifying the monitoring and evaluation of norms and standards. The department supports the Chief Justice in monitoring and reporting on the implementation of norms and standards for the performance of judicial functions, whereas the Judiciary reports on court performance. These activities are carried out in the Superior Court Services programme. The department further ensures judicial accountability by administering a record of judges' registrable interests, as informed by Section 13 of the Judicial Service Commission Act, 1994 (Act 9 of 1994). Expenditure for this work is in the Judicial Policy, Research and Support subprogramme, which has a budget of R52.5 million over the MTEF period.

Legislation and policies

In discharging its mandate, the OCJ is guided by the Constitution, other legislation and policies that constitute the legal framework for the establishment of the office. The Superior Courts Act of 2013 reaffirms the Chief Justice as the head of the Judiciary, responsible for the establishment and monitoring of norms and standards for the judicial functions of all courts. The Act further empowers the Chief Justice to issue written protocols or directives, or give guidance or advice, to judicial officers – in respect of norms and standards for the performance of the judicial functions; and regarding any matter affecting the dignity, accessibility, effectiveness, efficiency or functioning of the courts.

Constitutional mandates

The Constitution provides for the independence of the Judiciary and protects judicial independence by prohibiting any interference with the functioning of the courts. It further imposes a duty on organs of state to assist and protect the courts to ensure, amongst other things, their independence, impartiality and efficiency. Furthermore, the Constitution as amended in 2013, formalises the Chief Justice as the head of the Judiciary and entrusts him with the responsibility for the establishment and monitoring of norms and standards for the judicial functions of all courts. It also designates the Constitutional Court as the highest court in all matters.

In order to advance the transformation imperatives of the Constitution, Schedule 6 to the Constitution provides for the rationalisation of all courts and all relevant legislation with the view to establishing a judicial system suited to the requirements of the Constitution.

The Constitution furthermore provides that, after a national election, the Chief Justice is required to convene the first sitting of the National Assembly, and to preside over the election of the Speaker of Parliament.

Budget and funding

An estimated 38.9% (R3 billion) of the OCJ's total budget of R7.8 billion over the MTEF period is earmarked for spending in the Superior Court Services programme, which houses the High Courts subprogramme. Spending in this subprogramme alone is expected to account for 30.7% (R2.4 billion) of the department's total projected expenditure. Due to the labour-intensive nature of the OCJ's work, an estimated 69.9% (R2.1 billion) of the budget in this programme is earmarked for spending on compensation of employees, increasing from R624.8 million in 2019/20 to R743.4 million in 2022/23. Total expenditure on compensation of employees accounts for an estimated 76.5% (R5.9 billion) of the department's budget over the MTEF period, increasing from R1.8 billion in 2019/20 to R2.1 billion in 2022/23 at an average annual rate of 5.9%.

Department of Correctional Services (DCS)

The DCS is mandated to place offenders in a secure, safe and humane environment, and ensure that rehabilitation and successful reintegration programmes are implemented. This mandate is derived from the Correctional Services Act, 1998 (Act 111 of 1998), the CPA of 1977, the *2005 White Paper on Corrections in South Africa,* and the *2014 White Paper on Remand Detention Management in South Africa*.

The NDP articulates a vision for a safer South Africa by 2030, and this vision is supported by Priority 5 (social cohesion and safe communities) of government's 2019 – 2024 MTSF. To give effect to these guiding policies over the medium term, the work of the DCS will focus on providing detention that is humane,

safe and secure; providing needs-based rehabilitation; and successfully reintegrating offenders into communities.

Providing detention that is humane, safe and secure

The DCS aims to ensure that conditions of detention are safe and secure, and to maintain the human dignity of inmates, the department's personnel and members of the public. These considerations give effect to the core functions and bulk of the department's work. Funding for security operations, facilities, remand detention, offender management, the proper administration and profiling of inmates, and the consideration of offenders for release or placement into the system of community corrections is in the Incarceration programme. Expenditure in the programme accounts for an estimated 59.4% (R50.5 billion) of the department's total budget over the MTEF period.

Prison escapes can be largely attributed to overcrowding, the failure of personnel to adhere to basic security policies, and dilapidated infrastructure. To improve adherence to security procedures, meetings are frequently held in all correctional centres, and security awareness is provided during morning parades. The DCS provides personnel with appropriate security equipment such as body armour, ammunition, leg irons, handcuffs, metal detectors, tonfas, gas or fire filters, pepper spray, neutralisers and movable parcel scanners. An allocation of R27.6 billion over the medium term in the Security Operations subprogramme provides for this equipment, accounting for an estimated 54.6% of the Incarceration programme's total budget over the same period. An additional amount of R66 million has been allocated for the implementation of the Criminal Justice Strategy over the MTEF period. These funds, allocated under the information technology subprogramme, will be used to implement the mesh network for device management.

To complement this focus on security, R1.8 billion over the medium term is earmarked for the upgrading, rehabilitation, repair and refurbishment of dilapidated correctional and other remand facilities. The completion of these renovations is expected to ease overcrowding, as many offenders have been moved to other centres while facilities are in the process of being upgraded. Through these measures, despite the anticipation that new offender admissions will increase at a higher rate than the number of new bed spaces created over the medium term, a decrease is expected in the percentage of inmates who escape each year, from 0.034% in 2019/20 to 0.031% in 2022/23, and in the percentage of inmates injured each year, from 4.7% in 2019/20 to 4.55% in 2022/23.

Providing needs-based rehabilitation

Although the NDP envisages that offenders should be released and successfully reintegrated into society, the effectiveness of this process largely depends on the quality of programmes offenders receive while incarcerated. Recognising this contingency, the department plays a vital role in rehabilitating offenders and reducing the likelihood of them reoffending by conducting proper assessments and informing them about the programmes and interventions available within their facilities.

These include correctional and skills development programmes, and psychological, social and spiritual care services. Through the improved marketing of skills development programmes, and the appointment of external service providers to provide more training opportunities for offenders, the percentage of offenders participating in skills development programmes is expected to be maintained at 80% over the MTEF period. Training programmes will be provided to a targeted 11 944 offenders over this period in areas such as vocational skills, computer skills, engineering, business and entrepreneurial skills.

To carry out these activities, R6.8 billion is allocated to the Rehabilitation programme over the MTEF period. An estimated 74.4% (R5.1 billion) of this allocation is for spending on compensation of employees, with 24.4% (R1.7 billion) allocated for supplies at various sites where work opportunities are provided to offenders, such as bakeries, farms and a shoe factory; as well as for rehabilitation workshops.

Reintegrating offenders into communities

Most offenders find it difficult to adapt when they are released back into society. They are often stigmatised and ostracised by their families and communities, and their ability to find jobs or housing, return to formal education, or build or rebuild individual and social capital is severely hampered. Unless offenders receive help, they risk getting caught up in a cycle of failed social integration, reoffending, reconviction and social rejection.

To ensure the successful reintegration of offenders into communities, all parole considerations should include victim participation to provide a platform for dialogue between offenders and victims, and thereby contribute to healing and restoration. The DCS plans to increase the number of victims participating in dialogues and other restorative justice programmes from 7 560 in 2019/20 to 9 615 in 2022/23. To assist in reintegrating offenders into communities, the department has contracted 63 auxiliary social workers to facilitate these dialogues until 2021/22.

These activities contribute to spending in the Community Reintegration subprogramme, in which expenditure is expected to increase from R51.2 million in 2019/20 to R63.7 million in 2022/23. The Social Reintegration programme is allocated R3.4 billion over the medium term, of which 89.9% (R3.1 billion) is earmarked for compensation of employees because of the labour-intensive nature of the work in this programme.

Budget

For the 2019/20 financial year, the DCS was allocated R25.3 billion. The department's total expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 5.6%, from R25.3 billion in 2019/20 to R29.8 billion in 2022/23. Cabinet has approved budget reductions to the department's baseline of R397.2 million in 2020/21, R418.9 million in 2021/22 and R308.1 million in 2022/23, mainly on the allocations for compensation of employees. As a result, the number of personnel in the DCS is expected to decrease from 37 709 in 2019/20 to 36 996 in 2022/23 through the gradual termination of contracts and natural attrition, including early retirement. The work of the department remains labour intensive, and, as such, an estimated 70% (R59.6 billion) of total expenditure over the MTEF period is earmarked for compensation of employees.

Role players

National Council for Correctional Services (NCCS)

The NCCS is a statutory body that guide the Minister of Justice and Correctional Services in developing policy relating to the correctional system and the sentence-management process.

Judicial Inspectorate of Correctional Services (JICS)

The JICS was established in 1998 with the statutory objective to facilitate the inspection of correctional centres so that the inspecting judge may report on the treatment of inmates and on conditions in correctional centres. The JICS is an independent office.

Medical Parole Advisory Board

The Correctional Matters Amendment Act, 2011 (Act 5 of 2011), provides for a new medical parole policy and correctional supervision. The Medical Parole Advisory Board was appointed in February 2012 to look into all seriously and terminally ill inmates who have submitted reports requesting to be released on medical grounds.

Correctional Supervision and Parole Board

The Correctional supervision and parole boards are responsible for dealing with parole matters and matters of correctional supervision. The boards have decision-making competency except:

- decisions regarding the granting of parole to people who are declared dangerous criminals in terms of Section 286A of the CPA of 1977,
- the converting of sentences of imprisonment imposed in terms of Section 276 (A) (3) of the CPA of 1977 into correctional supervision, and
- decisions with regard to those sentenced to life imprisonment.

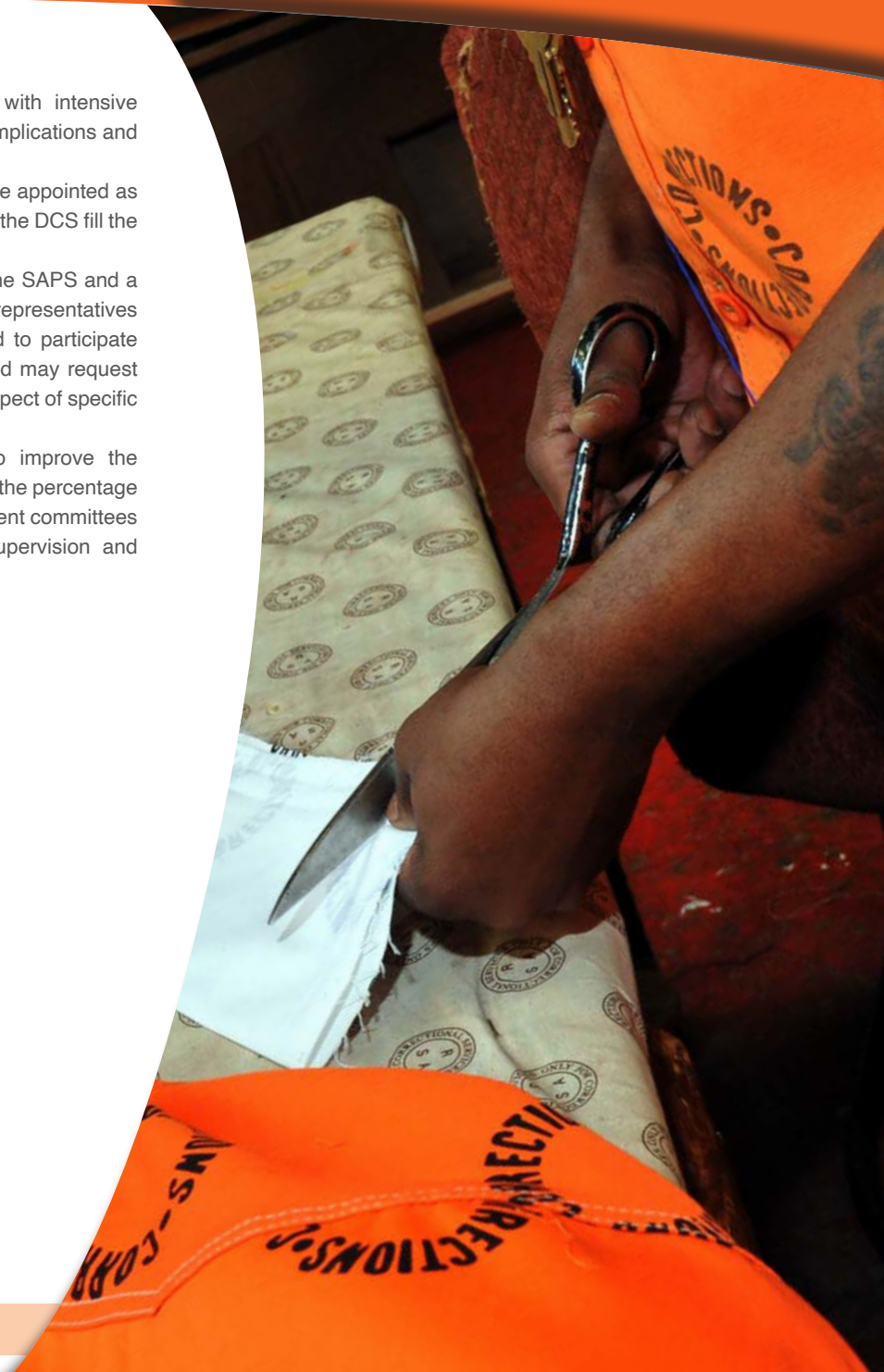
In cases such as the above-mentioned, recommendations are submitted to courts that, in turn, make decision in respect of conditional placement.

There are 53 correctional supervision and parole boards in South Africa. These boards are chaired by community members who are regarded as suitable and capable of carrying out the responsibilities by virtue of occupation, standing or cultural reverence. The DCS provides the members with intensive training in respect of the processes, legislative implications and relative policies.

In addition, two members of the community are appointed as members of the board. Trained staff members of the DCS fill the positions of vice-chairperson and secretary.

A board can also co-opt a representative of the SAPS and a representative of the DoJ&CD. However, if the representatives of the SAPS and of DoJ&CD are not co-opted to participate in a board hearing, the chairperson of the board may request such departments to provide written inputs in respect of specific serious crimes.

As part of its mandate, the DCS aims to improve the effectiveness of the parole system by increasing the percentage of offender profiles submitted by case management committees that have been considered by correctional supervision and parole boards to 93% in 2019/20.



2019/20 SOUTH AFRICA YEARBOOK

Mineral Resources and Energy

Mineral Resources and Energy

The Department of Mineral Resources and Energy (DMRE) is mandated to ensure the transparent and efficient regulation of South Africa's mineral resources and industry, and the secure and sustainable provision of energy in support of socio-economic development. The strategic objective derives from the National Development Plan (NDP), which envisages that, by 2030, South Africa will have a mineral resources and energy sector that promotes economic growth and development, social equity and environmental sustainability.

The NDP envisages that, by 2030, South Africa will have an adequate supply of electricity and liquid fuels to maintain economic activity and prevent economic disruptions, and a mining sector that prioritises the welfare of its human resources and the environment. To give effect to this vision, over the medium term, the DMRE will focus on transforming mining and energy resources, rehabilitating mines and the environment, extending access to electricity, enhancing energy efficiency, and managing nuclear energy in accordance with international commitments. These focus areas contribute to Priority 1 (economic transformation and job creation) and Priority 5 (social cohesion and safe communities) of government's 2019 – 2024 Medium Term Strategic Framework.

Transforming mining and energy resources

As the DMRE works towards growing the economy and creating jobs, it will seek to accelerate transformation within the mining and energy sectors by monitoring and enforcing compliance with the newly approved Mining Charter, and monitoring adherence to social labour plans. It will also promote the exploration of onshore and offshore oil and gas resources, and their optimal development and investments in the mineral and upstream petroleum sectors. Activities related to these initiatives are expected to lead to an increase in expenditure, from R399.2 million in 2019/20 to R468.1 million in 2022/23 at an average annual rate of 5.5%.

Rehabilitating mines and the environment

The DMRE plans to intensify its efforts to rehabilitate dangerous, derelict and ownerless mining sites to promote the health and safety of mine employees and people in surrounding communities. Over the medium term, the department aims to rehabilitate 129 mines, conduct 3 825 environmental inspections, and conduct 24 000 health inspections. As a result, allocations in the Mine Health and Safety Inspectorate programme are expected to increase from R224.8 million in 2019/20 to R261.5 million in 2022/23 at an average annual rate of 5.2%.

Extending access to electricity

In support of government's policy to extend access to electricity to all South Africans, an additional 560 000 households are expected to be connected to the electricity grid over the medium term. To enable this, six new substations are set to be built and nine substations upgraded. A further 15 000 households per year are expected to be provided with non-grid, mainly solar, electrification.

Despite reductions over the Medium Term Expenditure Framework (MTEF) period of R1.2 billion in indirect grants to Eskom and R380.5 million in municipal grants, mainly in 2020/21 and 2021/22, spending in the Integrated National Electrification programme is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 5.1%, from R5.2 billion in 2019/20 to R6.1 billion in 2022/23. Transfers to Eskom are set to increase from R3.1 billion in 2019/20 to R3.7 billion in 2022/23 at an average annual rate of 5.7%, and transfers to municipalities are set to increase from R1.9 billion in 2019/20 to R2.1 billion in 2022/23 at an average annual rate of 4.4%. Transfers for non-grid connections are expected to increase from R212.9 million in 2019/20 to R238.5 million in 2022/23 at an average annual rate of 3.9%.

The DMRE's Electrification Master Plan, which is intended to inform the rollout of electrification connections for universal access, is expected to be finalised in 2020/21. The plan will provide a model for allocating resources based on data informed by factors such as backlogs and is allocated R17.2 million over a two-year period ending in 2020/21.

Enhancing energy efficiency

To realise a target of 1.5 terawatt hours of energy savings over the medium term, allocations to the Energy Efficiency and Demand-side Management Grant are expected to increase from R227.1 million in 2019/20 to R243.3 million in 2022/23. This will enable municipalities to undertake initiatives to upgrade municipal infrastructure that is not energy efficient, such as replacing street and traffic lights with greener technology.

Managing nuclear energy

The Nuclear Energy Regulation and Management programme accounts for an estimated 11.6% of the DMRE's total expenditure over the medium term, mainly comprising transfers to entities. The South African Nuclear Energy Corporation (NECSA) is allocated R3 billion over the MTEF period, of which R2.3 billion is for operational costs and R635 million for the decontamination and decommissioning of old strategic nuclear facilities. The National Radioactive Waste Disposal Institute is set to receive R155 million over the period ahead for its operationalisation, while it finalises its application for a radioactive waste disposal licence from the National Nuclear Regulator (NNR).

Legislation

A number of Acts regulate the mining, minerals and energy sectors. Key among these are:

- the Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act, 2002 (Act 28 of 2002), which provides the regulatory framework for equitable access to, and the sustainable development of mineral resources and related matters;
- the Mine Health and Safety Act, 1996 (Act 29 of 1996), which governs mine health and safety;
- the National Energy Act, 2008 (Act 34 of 2008), which empowers the Minister of Mineral Resources and Energy to plan for, and ensure the security of supply for the energy sector;
- the Petroleum Products Act, 1977 (Act 120 of 1977), which regulates the petroleum industry at manufacturing, wholesale and retail levels; and
- the Electricity Regulation Act, 2006 (Act 4 of 2006), which establishes a national regulatory framework for the electricity supply industry, including registration and licensing.

Budget

For the 2019/20 financial year, Mineral Resources was allocated R2 billion and Energy was allocated R7.2 billion. Transfers and subsidies to public entities and municipalities of R24 billion, over the MTEF period, account for an estimated 81.6% of the DMRE's planned spending. Total expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 4.8%, from R9.2 billion in 2019/20 to R10.6 billion in 2022/23.

Due to the labour-intensive nature of the DMRE's work, which requires inspections to be conducted to ensure that mining companies comply with legislative requirements, expenditure on the compensation of employees amounts to an estimated R3.6 billion over the medium term, 11.9% of total expenditure. To remain within the expenditure ceiling for compensation of employees, the number of personnel in the department is expected to decrease from 1 917 in 2019/20 to 1 882 in 2022/23.

This decrease is not expected to have an impact on service delivery as the affected posts are mainly administrative, and to avoid the duplication of functions following the merger of the departments of Mineral Resources and Energy through the national macro organisation of government.

Entities

Central Energy Fund (CEF)

The CEF is listed in Schedule 2 of the Public Finance Management Act (PFMA), 1999 (Act 1 of 1999), and is governed by the CEF Act, 1977 (Act 38 of 1977) and the Companies Act, 2008 (Act 71 of 2008). Its mandate is to research, finance, develop and exploit appropriate energy solutions to contribute to South Africa's security of energy supply.

Through its subsidiaries, the CEF is also mandated to finance and promote the acquisition of coal; exploit coal deposits; manufacture liquid fuel, oil and other products from coal; market these products; and acquire, generate, manufacture, market, distribute or research any other form of energy.

The fund's subsidiaries are the Petroleum Oil and Gas Corporation of South Africa (PetroSA); the South African Gas Development Company; the Petroleum Agency South Africa; Oil Pollution Control South Africa; the Strategic Fuel Fund; the African Exploration Mining and Finance Corporation (AEMFC); Eta Energy Solutions and CCE Solutions.

Over the medium term, the fund will focus on sustaining and improving its liquidity and solvency in its efforts to return to commercial viability. Initiatives expected to improve profitability include new business development and expansions for revenue growth, and the optimisation of feedstock for the gas-to-liquid facility. The fund will also aim to reduce operating costs, improve liquidity through working capital management, and dispose of non-core assets.

Total expenditure is expected to increase from R15.7 billion in 2019/20 to R16.9 billion in 2022/23 at an average annual rate of 2.4%, mainly driven by the planned increase in production at the AEMFC and the PetroSA. Research and development costs and consulting fees are also expected to increase as the fund embarks on certain commercial projects.

The CEF generates revenue almost entirely through commercial activities. Total revenue is expected to increase from R16.9 billion in 2019/20 to R17.3 billion in 2022/23 at an average annual rate of 0.9%, driven mainly by the expected increase in sales for the PetroSA and the AEMFC, as well as increased income from dividends and interest.

South African Nuclear Energy Corporation

The NECSA is listed as a Schedule 2 public entity in terms of the PFMA of 1999. It derives its mandate from the Nuclear Energy Act, 1999 (Act 46 of 1999), the Nuclear Energy Policy (2008), and directives conferred on it by the Minister of Mineral Resources and Energy. The corporation's subsidiaries include international fluoro-chemical producer Pelchem; radiopharmaceutical and radioisotope producer NTP Radioisotopes; and Pelindaba Enterprises, which specialises in the manufacturing of power-generation components. It also operates the South Africa Fundamental Atomic Research Installation-1 nuclear reactor for research, technology development and the production of radioisotopes. The corporation is responsible for the decommissioning and decontamination of nuclear facilities and contributes to South Africa's obligations in terms of international nuclear treaties and agreements.

Over the medium term, the corporation will focus on increasing medical radioisotope production and radiation applications used locally and internationally for the diagnosis and treatment of cancer. This activity accounts for the bulk of the corporation's spending and is set to increase from R1.8 billion in 2019/20 to R2.1 billion in 2022/23 at an average annual rate of 5.5%. Other priorities include research and technology development for new products, specialised nuclear manufacturing, support for nuclear power generation, and the decommissioning and decontamination of disused nuclear facilities. The corporation's total expenditure is expected to be R11.2 billion over the medium term. The sale of nuclear technology products, chemical products and nuclear engineering services are expected to account for 61.9% (R7.6 billion) of the corporation's revenue over the medium term. The projected increase in sales is mostly attributed to NTP Radioisotopes operating at higher capacity, as well as improved market conditions. Transfers from the DMRE, amounting to a projected 38.1% (R3.9 billion) of total revenue over the medium term, will be used for operational requirements and activities such as the decommissioning of disused plants, radioactive waste management at all disused nuclear facilities, the production and conversion of low-enriched uranium fuel, and nuclear safety.

Other entities

Council for Geoscience

The council develops and publishes world-class geoscience knowledge products and provides geoscience-related services to the South African public and industry. The council's total budget for 2019/20 was R444.6 million.

Mine Health and Safety Council

The council advises the Minister of Mineral Resources and Energy on occupational health and safety at mines, develops legislation, conducts research, and liaises with other statutory bodies on matters relating to occupational health and safety at mines. The council's total budget for 2019/20 was R131.9 million.

Mintek
Mintek develops appropriate and innovative technology for transfer to the minerals industry, and provides the industry with test work, consultancy, and analytical and mineralogical services. The council's total budget for 2019/20 was R571.7 million.

National Energy Regulator of South Africa (NERSA)
The NERSA is the regulatory authority for electricity, piped gas and petroleum pipelines. The regulator's total budget for 2019/20 was R237.8 million.

National Nuclear Regulator
The NNR is responsible for safety standards and regulatory practices for the protection of people, property and the environment against nuclear damage. The regulator's total budget for 2019/20 was R237.8 million.

National Radioactive Waste Disposal Institute
The institute is responsible for the long-term care and disposal of radioactive waste at national level, in a manner that is safe, technically sound, socially acceptable, environmentally responsible and economically feasible. The institute's total budget for 2019/20 was R49 million.

South African Diamond and Precious Metals Regulator (SADPMR)
The SADPMR was established in terms of Section 3 of the Diamonds Act, 1986 (Act 26 of 1986), as amended. It is mandated to regulate control over the possession, purchase, sale, processing and export of diamonds, and the regulation of precious metals. The regulator's total budget for 2019/20 was R118.7 million.

South African National Energy Development Institute
The institute is mandated to stimulate innovation in energy research and development, transform the gender and race profile of researchers in the sector, and improve South Africa's competitiveness in energy research. The institute's total budget for 2019/20 was R232.4 million.

State Diamond Trader
The trader is mandated to buy and sell rough diamonds to promote equitable access to diamonds and the local beneficiation of diamond resources. It generates revenue by selling rough diamonds to clients, mainly diamond polishers and cutters. Its total budget for 2019/20 was R594.9 million.

Resources
Mining Qualifications Authority (MQA)
The future of mining in the country depends largely on the successful implementation of skills development initiatives. Particular focus is placed on artisan and artisan aid, as well as other technical skills. The MQA was established as a sector education and training authority. It facilitates the development of appropriate knowledge and skills in the mining, minerals and jewellery sectors.

Shale gas
Shale gas is a natural gas that is occurring and can be extracted from Shale. The natural gas, which is imbedded in the Karoo Basin, can be used for energy production.

Reserves
Gold
The large-scale gold mines operating in South Africa include the record-setting TauTona Gold Mine, which extends 3.9 km underground. *TauTona* means "great lion" in Setswana. South Africa accounts for 10.5% of the world's gold reserves. The Witwatersrand Basin remains the world's largest gold resource.

Coal
The South African government has emphasised the importance of ensuring a sustainable local coal supply for the country's energy requirements. This commodity currently plays a vital role in meeting South Africa's primary energy needs, as well as in the economy in general. It is recognised that coal contributes to the economy, not only to supply energy, but through the generation of export revenue, contributing to the gross domestic product and employment.

Platinum group metals (PGMs)
Platinum, palladium, rhodium, osmium, ruthenium and iridium occur together in nature alongside nickel and copper. Platinum, palladium and rhodium, the most economically significant of the PGMs, are found in the largest quantities.

South Africa is the world's leading platinum and rhodium producer, and the second-largest palladium producer after Russia. South Africa's production is sourced entirely from the Bushveld Complex, the largest known PGM resource in the world.

Platinum
South Africa accounts for over 80% of known global reserves of the PGMs. The Merensky Reef, stretching from southern Zimbabwe through to the Rustenburg and Pretoria regions, is the centre of platinum mining in South Africa, playing host to companies such as Rustenburg Platinum Mines and Bafokeng Rasimone Platinum Mines.

Palladium
South Africa is the world's second-largest palladium producer. All of South Africa's production is sourced from the Bushveld Igneous Complex, which hosts the world's largest resource of PGMs. Palladium, together with platinum, is more abundant than any of the other PGMs.

Ferrous minerals
These are the largest new investment in the manganese industry in the country, and supports government's drive to increase the beneficiation in South Africa.

Copper
Palabora, a large copper mine, smelter and refinery complex managed by the Palabora Mining Company in Limpopo, is South Africa's only producer of refined copper.

Useful by-product metals and minerals include zirconium chemicals, magnetite, nickel sulphate and small quantities of gold, silver and platinum.

Manganese

South Africa has significant proven manganese reserves, but the exploitation of the mineral has not reflected its development potential.

Diamonds

According to the Minerals Council South Africa, in 2019 South Africa produced 7.2 million carats of diamonds. The total diamond sales were worth R13.3 billion and the diamond industry employed 15 728 people.

Industrial minerals

Of the hundreds of producers of industrial minerals in South Africa, almost half are in the sand and aggregate sector. There are producers of clays (brickmaking), limestone and dolomite, dimension stone, 28 salt and silica in South Africa. Bulk consumption of industrial minerals is realised in the domestic market, as most are low-priced commodities and sold in bulk, making their economic exploitation highly dependent on transport costs and distance to markets.

Geology

South Africa has a long and complex geological history. The preservation of so much Archaean geology dating back more than 2 500 million years, has resulted in the Archaean Witwatersrand Basin, as well as several greenstone belts being preserved.

Mining production

Mining production increased by 1.8% year-on-year in December 2019. The largest positive contributors were:

- gold (24.9% and contributing 2.7% points);
- 'other' non-metallic minerals (24.1% and contributing 1.3% points);
- iron ore (9.8% and contributing 1.2% points); and
- chromium ore (26.6% and contributing a 0.9% point).

Total mining production was 1.3% lower in 2019 compared 2018. The 1.3% decrease in annual mining production followed a decrease of 2.1% in 2018 and an increase of 4.6% in 2017. Seasonally adjusted mining production decreased by 2.4% in December 2019, compared with November 2019. This followed month-on-month changes of -1.8% in November 2019 and 1.7% in October 2019.

Seasonally adjusted mining production increased by 0.2% in the fourth quarter of 2019 compared with the third quarter of 2019. The two largest positive contributors were iron ore (7.4% and contributing a 0.8% point) and PGMs (.4% and contributing a 0.8% point). Coal (-5.6% and contributing -1.5% points) and manganese ore (-8.8% and contributing -0.6% points) were significant negative contributors.

Mineral sales decreased by 6.0% year-on-year in December 2019. The largest negative contributors were:

- coal (-20.1% and contributing -5.7% points);
- manganese ore (-49.0% and contributing -4.9% points); and
- 'other' non-metallic minerals (-26.5% and contributing -1.3% points).

Total mineral sales were 10.6% higher in 2019 compared to the previous year. The 10.6% increase in annual mineral sales followed increases of 5.2% in 2018 and 8.3% in 2017. Seasonally adjusted mineral sales at current prices decreased by 9.9% in December 2019 compared with November 2019. This followed month-on-month changes of 6.5% in November 2019 and -0.4% in October 2019.

In the fourth quarter of 2019, the seasonally adjusted value of mineral sales at current prices was 1.3% higher compared with the third quarter 2019.

Energy

Guided by the National Energy Act of 2008, government's responsibility is to ensure that diverse energy resources are available in sustainable quantities and affordable prices to support economic growth.

The government is committed to extending access to electricity and enhancing energy efficiency, managing nuclear energy in terms of international commitments, and diversifying the energy generation mix.

The NDP proposes that gas and other renewable resources like wind, solar and hydroelectricity will be viable alternatives to coal and will supply at least 20 000 megawatts (MW) of the additional 29 000 MW of electricity needed by 2030.

Other recommendations in the NDP include diversifying power sources and ownership in the electricity sector, supporting cleaner coal technologies, and investing in human and physical capital in the 12-largest electricity distributors.

Goals beyond 2020 include contracting more than 20 000 MW of renewable energy, including an increasing share from regional hydroelectricity.

South Africa has committed to attain substantial reductions in carbon dioxide emissions by 2025.

The country supports research, technology development and special measures aimed at environmentally sustainable economic growth.

National Strategic Fuels Stock Policy

The National Strategic Fuels Stock Policy sets out the framework for the storage of fuel stock by government and the industry. It aims to ensure uninterrupted supply of petroleum products throughout South Africa by providing adequate strategic stocks and infrastructure such as storage facilities and pipeline capacity.

Strategic stocks are to be used during declared emergencies. The Minister of Mineral Resources and Energy will have the power to decide when a shortage of fuel and oil is at such a level to warrant an emergency.

National Liquid Petroleum Gas (LPG) Strategy

The LPG Strategy's main objectives are to provide access to safe, cleaner, efficient, portable, environmentally friendly and affordable thermal fuel for all households, and to switch low-income households away from the use of coal, paraffin and biomass to LPG.

The strategy highlights options that could be adopted for the orderly development of the LPG industry in South Africa to make LPG an energy carrier of choice for thermal applications. LPG is considered one of the safest, cleanest and most sustainable energy sources.

National building standards

Energy-efficient regulations for new buildings form part of the deliverables of South Africa's National Energy Strategy to strengthen standards and regulations for energy efficiency.

The energy-efficient regulations apply to residential and commercial buildings, places of learning and worship, certain medical clinics and other categories of building.

The regulations make it compulsory for all new buildings to be designed and constructed to a standard that makes it possible for the user to minimise the energy required to meet the functional requirements. This will save energy significantly, which will relieve pressure on the electricity supply grid.

In addition to temperature regulations, all buildings will also have to be fitted with renewable-energy water-heating systems such as solar systems, which also have to comply with South African national standards.

Southern African Power Pool (SAPP)

The SAPP was created with the primary aim to provide reliable and economical electricity supply to the consumers of each of the SAPP members, consistent with the reasonable use of natural resources and the effect on the environment.

The SAPP allows the free trading of electricity between the Southern African Development Community (SADC) member countries, providing South Africa with access to the vast hydropower potential in the countries to the north, notably the Congo River (Inga Falls).

Electricity

As part of the Integrated National Electrification Programme, which aims to extend access to electricity to all households across South Africa, about 590 000 households are expected to be connected to the electricity grid over the medium term.

A further 20 000 households per year over the same period would be provided with non-grid (mainly solar) electrification systems. The government planned to develop an electrification master plan to inform the roll-out of electrification connections for universal access.

Biofuel

The biofuels industry in South Africa, the continent's biggest agricultural producer, has been held back by an inadequate regulatory regime and concerns that biofuels would hurt food security and affect food prices.

Canola, sunflower and soya are feedstock for biodiesel, while sugarcane and sugar beet are feedstock for ethanol.

Maize, South Africa's staple food, will not be used in the production of biofuels to ensure food security and control high prices.

The biofuels sector has strong linkages to agriculture, manufacturing and distribution, and has the potential to create substantial numbers of labour-intensive jobs in the agriculture sector in particular.

In addition, second generation biofuel technology can also contribute to South Africa meeting its renewable energy targets sustainably.

Hydropower

Energy from water can be generated from waves, tides, waterfalls and rivers and will never be depleted as long as water is available. South Africa has a mix of small hydroelectricity stations and pumped-water storage schemes.

Solar power

Most areas in South Africa average more than 2 500 hours of sunshine per year, and average daily solar-radiation levels range between 4.5 kilowatt-hours per square metre (kWh/m^2) and 6.5 kWh/m^2 in one day.

The southern African region, and in fact the whole of Africa, has sunshine all year round. The annual 24-hour global solar radiation average is about 220 W/m^2 for South Africa.

Wind power

Wind energy, like solar energy, is a free and sustainable renewable energy source that is being used to generate electricity.

Hybrid systems

Hybrid energy systems are a combination of two or more renewable energy sources such as photovoltaic, wind, micro-hydro, storage batteries and fuel-powered generator sets to provide a reliable off-grid supply.

Nuclear

The government has committed, through the Nuclear Energy Policy and Integrated Resource Plan (IRP), to an energy mix consisting of coal, gas, hydro, nuclear, solar and wind.

The Nuclear New Build Programme will enable the country to create jobs, develop skills, create industries, and catapult the country into a knowledge economy.

The IRP 2010 – 2030 envisages 9 600 MW additional nuclear capacity by 2030. The IRP is a 20-year projection on electricity supply and demand.

Eskom operates the Koeberg Nuclear Power Station near Cape Town, the only nuclear power station in South Africa and the entire African continent, which supplies power to the national grid.

Renewable Energy Independent Power Producer Procurement Programme (REIPPPP)

The REIPPPP has become one of the world's most progressive and successful alternative energy programmes.

Ever since the introduction of these renewable energy technology programmes (solar, wind, biomass, small hydro and landfill gas power), plants have been going up across the country, feeding additional, clean energy into the national grid.

The REIPPPP represents the country's most comprehensive strategy to date, in achieving the transition to a greener economy. The programme has been designed to contribute to the development of a local green industry and the creation of green jobs.

The programme seeks to procure energy from small-scale independent power producers with projects that generate between one MW and five MW of energy from solar, wind, biomass and landfill gas projects.

International cooperation

South Africa is a member of the International Energy Forum (IEF), which aims to foster greater mutual understanding and awareness of common energy interests among its members.

The 74-member countries of the forum are signatories to the IEF Charter, which outlines the framework of the global energy dialogue through this intergovernmental arrangement.

South Africa is a member state of the International Renewable Energy Agency (IRENA) which seeks to make an impact in the world of renewable energy by maintaining a clear and independent position, providing a range of reliable and well-understood services that complement those already offered by the renewable energy community and gather existing, but scattered, activities around a central hub.

The country has been a member of the International Atomic Energy Agency (IAEA) for decades and has been both a recipient and provider of services emanating from the agency.

As a member state of the IAEA, permanent member of the board of directors and actively participating in nuclear energy, safety, technology, security and disarmament, South Africa has contributed to efforts of ensuring that nuclear energy is used for peaceful purposes like power generation, as well as medical, industrial and agricultural initiatives.

Sustainable development in Africa

The Intergovernmental Memorandum of Understanding (MoU) on the Western Power Corridor Project is a flagship programme for the African Union Development Agency-New Partnership for Africa's Development. It intends to pilot the use of hydro-electric energy obtained from the Inga rapids site in the Democratic Republic of Congo (DRC) to ensure the security of supply in the SADC.

The participating utilities are those of Angola, Botswana, the DRC, Namibia and South Africa. A joint-venture company has been formed to initiate studies determining the viability of the project and to build, own and operate the infrastructure.

The main project outside South Africa's borders is Westcor. It entails a five-way intergovernmental MoU signed between the utilities of Angola, Botswana, the DRC, Namibia and South Africa. Westcor will tap into some of the potential in the DRC. Inga III, a 3 500-MW hydro plant on the Congo River, will be the first of these projects.

At the same time, the countries to the north could benefit through access to the coal-fired power resources in the south. Such an arrangement should stabilise the energy requirements of the region well into this century.

Exploitation of the vast hydropower resources would constitute a significant infusion of renewable-energy resources into the energy economy of the region over the medium to long term.

The Lesotho Highlands Water Project could contribute some 72 MW of hydroelectric power to the system in the short term.

Global pressures regarding the environmental impact and displacement of settlements by huge storage dams are likely to limit the exploitation of hydropower on a large scale.

Irrespective of the size of installation, any hydropower development will require authorisation in terms of the National Water Act, 1998 (Act 36 of 1998).

Joint Meeting of SADC Ministers of Energy and Water

The Ministers of energy and water from the SADC, met on 24 May 2019 in Windhoek, Namibia and reviewed progress made in the implementation of the energy and water programmes and projects. They also discussed the energy and water supply status to ensure food security and development in the SADC region.

The meeting was hosted by the government of Namibia and was attended by the SADC Ministers, or their representatives from Angola, Botswana, the DRC, Eswatini, Lesotho, Mauritius, Mozambique, Namibia, South Africa, Tanzania, Zambia and Zimbabwe.

The meeting was also attended by representatives from international and cooperating partners, United Nations (UN) agencies, implementing agencies, development partners, youth representatives, and was preceded by a three-day meeting of senior officials responsible for the two sectors.

Fourth Brazil, Russia, India, China and South Africa (BRICS) Meeting of Energy Ministers

The Ministers of energy and heads of delegation of the BRICS countries, held the fourth BRICS Ministers of Energy Meeting on 11 November 2019 in Brasilia. Building upon the invaluable outcomes of the previous presidencies and ministerial meetings, they reaffirmed the outcomes of previous BRICS Energy Ministers' meetings and leaders' summits, and renewed their commitment to strengthen cooperation in energy and maximise collaboration potential in order to facilitate the attainment of Sustainable Development Goal 7 as a guiding principle for energy policy.

Cross-border gas trade agreements

To facilitate the movement of gas across international borders, South Africa has signed cross-border gas trade agreements with Mozambique and Namibia.

The South Africa-Namibia Gas Commission addresses harnessing the natural gas reserves in the Kudu Gas Field.

In 2017, Eskom signed a five-year electricity sales agreement with Namibia's national electricity utility, NamPower.

Eskom will supplement generation capacity for South Africa's neighbour with its surplus electricity, providing Namibia with energy security and allowing for economic development and growth.

NamPower has also concluded a number of projects to establish renewable energy projects in Namibia and to enhance its local production.

The same year, Eskom and Botswana Power Corporation signed a three-year firm power supply agreement – in line with Eskom's plan to increase its electricity exports to South Africa's neighbouring states.

Import and export of fuel products

The import of refined products is restricted to special cases where local producers cannot meet demand. It is subject to state control to promote local refinery usage.

When overproduction occurs, export permits are required and generally granted, provided that the needs of both South Africa and other Southern African Customs Union members are met. More diesel than petrol is exported, due to the balance of supply and demand of petrol and diesel relative to refinery configurations.

Although petrol and diesel make up 55% of total liquid-fuel exports, South Africa is also the main supplier of all other liquid fuels to Botswana, Lesotho, Namibia and Eswatini.

Energy and the global environment

South Africa is classified as a developing country or a non-Annex 1 country. This means that within the international political and

negotiation context, South Africa is not required to reduce its green-house gas (GHG) emissions.

South Africa is among the top 20 emitters of GHGs in the world and the largest emitter in Africa, largely because of the economy's dependence on fossil fuels. It emits more than 400 megatonnes of carbon dioxide per year.

The National Climate Change Strategy requires that government departments collaborate in a coordinated manner to ensure that response measures to climate change are properly directed and carried out with a national focus.

The South African economy depends greatly on fossil fuels for energy generation and consumption, and is subsequently a significant emitter due to relatively high values being derived from emission intensity and emissions per capita.

Therefore, South Africa is proactively moving the economy towards becoming less carbon-intensive, with the DMRE playing a prominent role. The department has introduced systems to access investment through the clean development mechanism of the Kyoto Protocol. It developed the *White Paper on Renewable Energy and Clean Energy Development*, together with an energy efficiency programme, to support diversification in pursuit of a less carbon-intensive energy economy.

The South African Renewables Initiative secures international financing partnerships in investment in deploying renewable energy and develops renewable supply chains through securing a critical mass of renewable energy, without imposing undue burden on the fiscus or the South African consumer.

In line with this objective, the DMRE has signed a declaration of intent with Germany, the United Kingdom, Denmark, Norway and the European Investment Bank. The agreement will lead to the establishment of a fund to assist in the deployment of renewable energy.

Further, the DMRE participates in structures such as the:

- IRENA
- International Energy Forum
- International Partnership for Energy Efficiency Cooperation
- UN Industrial Development Organisation
- Clean Energy Ministerial
- African Union-European Union Energy Partnership.

Programmes

Minerals and Petroleum Regulation

The programme regulates the mining, minerals and petroleum sectors to promote economic growth, employment, transformation and sustainable development. The programme's objectives over the medium term include:

- Improving the participation of historically disadvantaged South Africans in the mining sector and contributing to its transformation by issuing mining rights and permits to 360 historically disadvantaged South Africans over the medium term, and monitoring and enforcing compliance with procurement requirements that relate to historically disadvantaged South Africans, as prescribed by the mining charter, on an ongoing basis.
- Monitoring and enforcing compliance with the statutory obligations of the Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act of 2002, and the Mining Charter by conducting 636 social and labour plan verification inspections, 1 275 mine economic verification audits and 3 825 environmental verification inspections over the medium term.
- Ensuring the development and transformation of the liquid fuels industry, and the security of supply of petroleum and petroleum products by monitoring and enforcing technical and economic compliance with legislation, specifications, standards and licence conditions.
- Facilitating the orderly operation of the petroleum sector through an analysis of fuel supply and the efficient adjudication of licences for manufacturing, wholesaling and retailing activities on an ongoing basis.
- Strengthening the regulatory framework in the liquid fuels petroleum industry by implementing the regulatory accounting system to introduce a transparent fuel pricing mechanism that will provide appropriate returns to investors in the liquid fuels sector across the value chain on an ongoing basis.
- Strengthening the regulatory framework in the liquid fuels petroleum industry by implementing the regulatory accounting system to introduce a transparent fuel pricing mechanism that will provide appropriate returns to investors in the liquid fuels sector across the value chain on an ongoing basis.

Mining, Minerals and Energy Policy Development

The programme formulates, maintains and implements integrated minerals and energy policies to promote and encourage investment in the mining and energy industry. The programme's objectives over the medium term include:

- Promoting investment in the mining, minerals and upstream petroleum sectors over the medium term, by hosting 138 promotional and awareness activities or events for local and foreign investors, participating in local and international mining and petroleum conferences and events, engaging with stakeholders in various forums, and leading the implementation of key government priorities, ensuring the full implementation of plans for developing the Oceans Economy for oil and gas exploration through Operation Phakisa, and ensuring the full implementation of the Shale Gas Action Plan through consultations, advocacy, research and promotional activities for shale gas exploration.
- Managing diplomatic imperatives and relations with foreign countries to benefit South Africa by establishing and implementing bilateral and multilateral partnerships for mining and upstream petroleum development on an ongoing basis.
- Promoting the sustainable use and management of mineral resources over the medium term, by participating in technical and strategic partnerships such as the intergovernmental forum on mining, minerals, metals and sustainable development; the Benguela Current Commission; and UN programmes.
- Improving energy security over the medium term by amending the Electricity Regulation Amendment Act, 2007 (Act 28 of 2007), the NERSA Amendment Act, 2004 (Act 40 of 2004) and the NNR Act, 1999 (Act 47 of 1999).

Mine Health and Safety Inspectorate

The inspectorate ensures the health and safety of employees in the mining sector. The programme's objectives over the medium term include:

- Promoting health and safety by reducing occupational fatalities by 20%, occupational injuries by 20% and occupational disease by 10%, implementing the Occupational Health and

Safety Strategy, and enforcing guidelines and conducting investigations, inspections and audits on an ongoing basis.
- Contributing to skills development in the mining sector by implementing, monitoring and evaluating the certificate of competency model on an ongoing basis.
- Improving health care in the mining sector on an ongoing basis by ensuring 80% adherence to prescribed timeframes for resolving medical appeals, 100% adherence to timelines for appeals to the chief inspector of mines, 100% adherence to timelines for applications in terms of the Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act of 2002.

Mineral Resources and Energy Projects

The programme manages, coordinates and monitors projects focused on access to mineral and energy resources. The programme's objectives over the medium term include:
- Increasing access to electricity by managing funding and monitoring of the implementation of the Integrated National Electrification Programme on an ongoing basis.
- Increasing public awareness on energy issues, while empowering disadvantaged and vulnerable groups by identifying, implementing, managing and coordinating upliftment programmes and projects on an ongoing basis.
- Ensuring the efficient management of electricity supply on an ongoing basis, by enhancing the application of business principles for project management to assist programme and project managers, coordinating, monitoring and reporting on the implementation of programmes and projects focused on the development, improvement and transformation of the energy generation, refinement, transmission and distribution industry and its infrastructure.
- Promoting the sustainable use and management of mineral and energy resources by rehabilitating 129 derelict and ownerless mines, providing marginal mines with subsidies for water management solutions, and managing the funding and monitoring of the Energy Efficiency and Demand-side Management Grant to municipalities.

Nuclear Energy Regulation and Management

The programme manages the South African nuclear energy industry and controls nuclear materials in terms of international obligations, nuclear legislation and policies to ensure the peaceful use of nuclear energy. The programme's objectives over the medium term include:
- Ensuring compliance with international nuclear obligations by applying the relevant statutory frameworks and following the guidelines of the IAEA for best international practices on an ongoing basis.
- Regulating the security of nuclear material, related equipment and facilities by developing and publishing appropriate regulations on an ongoing basis.
- Conducting awareness workshops and training courses, and participating in regional and international forums to enhance compliance with legislation and international obligations on an ongoing basis.

2019/20 SOUTH AFRICA YEARBOOK

Police, Defence and Intelligence

Police, Defence and Intelligence

The National Development Plan (NDP) 2030 envisions a South Africa where people feel safe and enjoy a community life free of crime. Achieving this requires a well-functioning criminal justice system, in which the police, the judiciary and correctional services work together to ensure that suspects are caught, prosecuted, convicted if guilty, and securely incarcerated and rehabilitated.

In recognition of the multitudes of challenges confronting the country, especially women, youth and people with disabilities, the Medium Term Strategic Framework (MTSF) 2019 – 2024 emphasises these cross-cutting focus areas for the country's developmental vision. This was reaffirmed by President Cyril Ramaphosa during the 2019 State of the Nation Address when he declared that the country will intensify the fight against gender-based violence (GBV) and create safer communities. Safety and security are directly related to socio-economic development and equality.

A safe and secure country encourages economic growth and transformation and is, therefore, an important contributor to addressing the challenge of poverty, inequality and unemployment.

Department of Police

The South African Police Service (SAPS) derives its powers and functions from Section 205 of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996 and from the SAPS Act, 1995 (Act 68 of 1995). This legislation regulates the SAPS, in terms of its core functions, which are to prevent, investigate and combat crime; maintain public order; protect and secure the inhabitants of South Africa and their property; and uphold and enforce the law. The vision of the SAPS is to create a safe and secure environment for all people in South Africa. The mission of the SAPS is to:

- prevent and combat crime that may threaten the safety and security of any community;
- investigate any crimes threatening the safety and security of any community;
- ensure that offenders are brought to justice; and
- participate in efforts to address the causes of crime.

The National Commissioner is the Accounting Officer of the SAPS. Deputy national commissioners and provincial commissioners report to the National Commissioner.

Over the medium term, the department will continue to focus on implementing the SAPS Strategic Plan 2020 – 2025, the SAPS Turnaround Vision and the Back-to-Basics approach to policing. In support of this, the SAPS will implement multidisciplinary crime fighting operations, such as Operation Fiela Reclaim II, which is intended to assert the authority of the State by stabilising identified high crime and hotspot areas. High density clampdown policing will be the cornerstone of these operations, comprising intelligence-led roadblocks, cordon-and-search operations, vehicle checkpoints, stop-and-search operations, as well as vehicle and foot patrols.

These operations will also involve confiscating typical crime generators, such as illegal firearms and ammunition, drugs, alcohol and stolen goods. The implementation of operations, such as Operation Fiela Reclaim II, is expected to lead to an increase in, inter alia, the number of stolen or lost illegal firearms recovered, and in the number of crimes reported for the unlawful possession of and the dealing in drugs.

Further to this, the SAPS will maintain public order and safety by responding to incidents of public disorder and crowd management, medium to high-risk incidents of a security nature, hits as a result of the Movement Control System screening, as well as the profiling and searching for illicit drugs, firearms, stolen/robbed vehicles, consignment, smuggled persons and counterfeit goods/contraband at ports of entry and exit and implement the Integrated Crime Detection Framework. The framework is aimed at defining the crime detection value chain, from the time a crime is reported until prosecution; enabling the department to effectively combat and investigate crime through adequate training and resourcing for crime detection. The implementation of the framework is expected to lead to a slight increase in the percentage of trial-ready case dockets for serious crime, and in the detection rate for serious crimes.The work of the SAPS is aligned with Priority 5 (social cohesion and safe communities) of government's 2019 – 2024 MTSF.

Accordingly, over the medium term, the SAPS will focus on strengthening safety in communities through community policing forums; reducing violent crime, specifically those committed against women and children; employing the stabilisation and normalisation approaches to fighting crime; and improving capacity for specialised investigations.

Code of Conduct

The SAPS Code of Conduct serves as a guideline for its members to know and understand their responsibilities and obligations towards the general public.

Each member of the SAPS is obliged to give a written undertaking to adhere to the principles of the Code of Conduct, to ensure a safe and secure environment for all people of South Africa, and to protect the life and property of the citizens of South Africa and all its inhabitants, including foreigners.

This ensures that all members are faithful to South Africa, honour the Constitution and abide by it in the performance of their duties and/or their daily tasks. Posters are disseminated, pertaining to the Code of Conduct, as well as ethical behaviour in the SAPS. They are displayed at all police stations and units.

Legislation

The Minister of Police is responsible for determining national policing policies and the overall execution of the department's mandate, in relation to the following key pieces of legislation:

- the Civilian Secretariat for Police Service Act, 2011 (Act 2 of 2011);
- the Control of Access to Public Premises and Vehicles Act, 1985 (Act 53 of 1985);
- the Dangerous Weapons Act, 2013 (Act 15 of 2013);
- the Explosives Act, 1956 (Act 26 of 1956);
- the Firearms Control Act, 2000 (Act 60 of 2000);
- the Game Theft Act, 1991 (Act 105 of 1991);
- the Intimidation Act, 1982 (Act 72 of 1982);
- the Independent Police Investigative Directorate (IPID) Act, 2011 (Act 1 of 2011);
- the National Key Points Act, 1980 (Act 102 of 1980);
- the Private Security Industry Regulation Act, 2001 (Act 56 of 2001);
- the Protection of Constitutional Democracy against Terrorist and Related Activities Act, 2004 (Act 33 of 2004);

- the Regulation of Gatherings Act, 1993 (Act 205 of 1993);
- the Second-Hand Goods Act, 2009 (Act 6 of 2009);
- the SAPS Act of 1995;
- the Stock Theft Act, 1959 (Act 57 of 1959);
- the Tear Gas Act, 1964 (Act 16 of 1964); and
- the Transfer of the South African Railways Police Force to the South African Police Act, 1986 (Act 83 of 1986).

In the execution of its Constitutional mandate, the SAPS derives its powers and functions from the following key legislation:

- the Criminal Law (Sexual Offences and Related Matters) Amendment Act, 2007 (Act 32 of 2007);
- the Child Justice Act, 2008 (Act 75 of 2008);
- the Children's Act, 2005 (Act 38 of 2005);
- the Criminal Procedure Act, 1977 (Act 51 of 1977);
- the Counterfeit Goods Act, 1997 (Act 37 of 1997);
- the Customs and Excise Act, 1966 (Act 91 of 1966);
- the Diamonds Act, 1986 (Act 56 of 1986);
- the Disaster Management Act, 2002 (Act 57 of 2002);
- the Domestic Violence Act, 1998 (Act 116 of 1998);
- the Drugs and Drug Trafficking Act, 1992 (Act 140 of 1992);
- the Exchange Control Regulations, 1961;
- the Films and Publications Act, 1996 (Act 65 of 1996);
- the Financial Intelligence Centre Act, 2001 (Act 38 of 2001);
- the Immigration Act, 2002 (Act 13 of 2002);
- the Inquest Act, 1959 (Act 58 of 1959);
- the Implementation of the Rome Statute of the International Criminal Court Act, 2002 (Act 27 of 2002);
- the International Cooperation in Criminal Matters Act, 1996 (Act 75 of 1996);
- the Liquor Act, 2003 (Act 59 of 2003);
- the Marine Living Resources Act, 1998 (Act 18 of 1998);
- the Mental Healthcare Act, 2002 (Act 17 of 2002);
- the National Conventional Arms Control Act, 2002 (Act 41 of 2002);
- the National Environmental Management Act, 1998 (Act 107 of 1998);
- the National Road Traffic Act, 1996 (Act 93 of 1996);
- the National Strategic Intelligence Act, 1994 (Act 39 of 1994);
- the Non-Proliferation of Weapons of Mass Destruction Act, 1993 (Act 87 of 1993);
- the Older Persons Act, 2006 (Act 13 of 2006);
- the Precious Metals Act, 2005 (Act 37 of 2005);
- the Prevention and Combating of Corrupt Activities Act, 2004 (Act 12 of 2004);
- the Prevention and Combating of Torture of Persons Act, 2013 (Act 13 of 2013);
- the Prevention and Combating of Trafficking in Persons Act, 2013 (Act 7 of 2013);
- the Protection from Harassment Act, 2011 (Act 17 of 2011);
- the Prevention of Organised Crime Act, 1998 (Act 121 of 1998);
- the Regulation of Interception of Communication and Provision of Communication-Related Information Act, 2002 (Act 70 of 2002);
- the Safety at Sports and Recreational Events Act, 2010 (Act 2 of 2010);
- the Sexual Offences Act, 1957 (Act 23 of 1957); and
- the State of Emergency Act, 1997 (Act 64 of 1997); and

Budget

In 2019/20 the SAPS was allocated a budget of R96.827 billion for the following financial programmes:

- Administration — R20.151 billion
- Visible Policing — R19.347 billion
- Detective Services — R19.230 billion
- Crime Intelligence — R4.155 billion
- Protection and Security Services — R3.149 billion.

Total expenditure for the 2019/20 financial year amounted to R96.073 billion.

Staff establishment of the SAPS

The financial constraints that the government is facing, and which translates into fiscal limitations being imposed on all government departments, are increasingly complicating the SAPS's ability to effectively respond to its Constitutional mandate. Factors, such as pervasive socio-economic inequalities, an expanding population base, globalisation and urbanisation are placing the SAPS's human, physical and infrastructural resources under increased pressure. The sustained decline in the organisation's staff establishment over the medium term, despite the aforementioned factors, necessitates not only smarter, technology-driven policing, but also the prioritised capacitation and resourcing of the various functional areas that comprise the broader policing function. The SAPS will, therefore, focus on the continued capacitation of the detective service capability and specifically, the investigation of crime against women and children; the SAPS's ability to ensure internal stability through Public Order Policing (POP); and specialised policing capabilities, as well as the crime intelligence function, which supports both proactive and reactive policing. Emphasis will be placed on the requirement that there be an increasing investment in, and devolution of policing resources to local level.

The phased implementation of a rationalised organisational structure, during 2019/20, is expected to promote the resourcing of general and specialised policing capabilities, in both urban and rural settings, that provide a direct policing service to communities. An estimated 78.1% (R316.2 billion) of the department's budget over the medium term is allocated to the compensation of employees. The SAPS had a funded establishment of 192 431 personnel in 2018/19. The number decreased by 1 000 in 2019/20 to 191 431, due to natural attrition, and remain constant over the period ahead, to stay within government's expenditure ceiling for compensation of employees.

The SAPS establishment was 187 358 at the end of March 2020, and did not achieve its target to maintain a minimum workforce of 98%. A total of 786 employees went on early retirement without penalties, as part of the government's efforts to reduce the Public Service Wage Bill. To minimise the impact of the expenditure ceiling on core service delivery, critical vacant funded posts, such as visible policing, forensic analysts, detectives and senior management, are still expected to be filled.

The department will also continue to prioritise its rejuvenation programme, which entails the recruitment of younger police officials at entry level, by appointing at least 3 000 trainees, annually, over the Medium Term Expenditure Framework (MTEF) period.

Visible policing

The Visible Policing division within the SAPS provides direction on the effective combating of crime, through the provisioning of a visible policing service. The purpose of the division is to discourage all crime, by providing a proactive and responsive policing service, striving towards the reduction of crime levels and to instil community confidence in the SAPS.

The division deals with the strategic, tactical and operational approach in policing, to address the incidence of crime, with the aim to reduce and combat crime, improve the SAPS's response time, enhance community mobilisation through partnerships, encourage victim empowerment programmes, address the proliferation of firearms, address incidents of unlawful possession and the dealing in drugs, to ensure safer schools, as well as the closure of markets for stolen goods.

Partnership policing

Despite the gains that have been made towards the overall reduction in levels of serious crime over the medium term, public trust and confidence in the SAPS are not at the desired levels. This necessitates a concerted effort by the SAPS to involve the public and relevant stakeholders in the prevention, combating and investigation of crime.

The implementation of community policing concepts, such as Community Police Forums (CPFs), Sector Crime Forums and Rural Safety Priority Committees, continue to serve as platforms of engagement between the SAPS and the community, in an effort to encourage a shared responsibility, in matters relating to the prevention of crime and community safety. At the end of March 2020, a total of 1 149 of the 1 154 police stations had functional CPFs, 852 of the 875 identified police stations implemented sector policing and 887 rural and rural/urban mixed police stations implemented the set criteria of the four pillars of the Rural Safety Strategy.

In furthering the SAPS's stated intention of ingraining a community-centred approach to policing, specific attention is paid to the establishment and maintenance of sustainable partnerships with key local, national (including the public and private sectors) and international stakeholders. These partnerships include international policing organisations, such as the International Criminal Police Organisation (INTERPOL) and the Southern African Regional Police Chiefs Cooperation Organisation, seeking to harness innovate solutions to common challenges impacting on safety, security and economic prosperity, by focussing efforts to align and integrate the application of resources, in addressing crime-related issues that constrain or undermine socio-economic development in the country.

The implementation of the Community Policing Strategy and the Community in Blue Concept will further enhance community-police partnerships in the fight against crime, through a multidisciplinary collaboration which focuses on public education, building community-resilience to crime and will enable the SAPS to promote cooperation with the community, to improve and fulfil the service delivery needs of the community and to strengthen partnerships to prevent crime or reduce the fear of crime, by jointly identifying the root causes of crime.

Stabilisation of crime

Continued efforts are made to address serious crime and the need to combat gangsterism and substance abuse, as well as the enhanced protection of vulnerable sectors of society. The SAPS continues to provide direct intervention, in support of communities plagued by gangsterism, as part of the overarching Community Policing Strategy.

The establishment of the Anti-Gang Unit will provide the much needed capacity in affected provinces. The strategy has taken into consideration intelligence gathering analysis and coordination, a proactive and high visibility approach, a combat and reactive approach through detection, including an organised crime approach, community policing concept, as well as communication and liaison. Contact crimes increased from 618 472 in 2018/19 to 622 206 in 2019/20, contact-related crimes reduced from 117 814 to 112 765, property-related crimes reduced from 498 198 to 472 158 and other serious crimes reduced from 446 844 to 428 767.

Overall, serious crimes reduced by 2.7%, from 1 681 328 to 1 635 896 compared to 2018/19. In an effort to reduce violent crimes, a total number of 4 204 stolen or lost and illegal firearms were confiscated, including 2 277 firearms recovered, found, confiscated and forfeited to the State. A total of 459 SAPS-owned firearms were also recovered.

Furthermore, 36 674 stolen or robbed vehicles and 159 234 kilogrammes (kg) of cannabis, 394 545 381 mandrax tablets, 638 kg crystal methamphetamine (tik), 192 kg cocaine and 313 kg heroine were confiscated.

The national average police reaction time for crimes in progress, including incidents where serious crimes were committed was 17:24 minutes, 21:13 minutes for crimes that have already taken place with no immediate threat to the complainant or property, and 19:22 minutes for crimes of a less serious nature. A total number of 1 133 891 arrests were made for serious crimes, including 310 068 arrests for contact crimes, 43 141 for contact-related crimes, 183 636 for property-related crimes and 23 024 for other serious crimes.

A total of 265 915 arrests were effected for crimes dependent on police action for detection (illegal possession of firearms and ammunition, drug-related crimes, as well as driving under the influence of alcohol, and drugs and sexual offences, as a result of police action).

Additional emphasis is placed on certain categories of crime that require focused attention, such as crimes against women and children. Crimes against women decreased by 4.8% (8 668) reported crimes, from 179 683 to 171 015 and crimes against children decreased by 6.4% (2 881), from 45 229 to 42 348 or 6.4%, compared to 2018/19.

The SAPS has identified 30 police stations referred to as the "high-crime weight stations", for focused attention over the short and medium term, which will translate into the implementation of specific proactive and reactive interventions, on an annual basis. These stations are in Gauteng, the Western Cape, KwaZulu-Natal, Mpumalanga and the Free State, and will be reviewed on an annual basis, with the intention of monitoring the application of these interventions, which relate to core policing functions, including the prevention and investigation of crime.

The supposition underlying the identification of these stations is that through the implementation of the aforementioned interventions, the reported incidence of the 17 community-reported crimes, will be sustainably reduced.

The high-crime weight police stations are associated with, but very distinct in nature from, hot spots and hotspot areas, which may emerge during the course of a year, depending on a range of factors that contribute to substantially elevated levels of socio-economic disruption and crime, and dramatically reduced perceptions of safety and security.

The addressing of these hotspots requires a unique policing methodology, which includes two fundamental approaches namely; the stabilisation approach and the normalisation approach. The purpose of stabilisation is to mobilise specialised, mobile policing capabilities, such as POP, the Tactical Response Team (TRT) and the National Intervention Unit (NIU), to rapidly address factors contributing to destabilisation, so as to restore the rule of law. Normalisation interventions are characterised by a community and stakeholder-centred approach to policing, to ensure a holistic, multifaceted response, which is sustainable, going forward. Reported serious crimes at the 30 high-crime weight stations reduced from 237 787 in 2018/19, to 204 109 in 2019/20.

Gender-based violence

The 2019 – 2024 MTSF sets out objectives towards a 50% reduction in the number of violent crimes reported in South Africa in the next 10 years. These objectives relate to reducing violence against women and children, among other things. Accordingly, targets set out in the framework reflect reductions of 6.7% per year over the next 10 years in reported contact crimes and crimes against women and children. Effectively combating these crimes requires adopting an integrated approach that involves all sectors of society, including key business industries, supported by an effective criminal justice system that delivers quality and professional services.

The SAPS continues to promote and protect the rights of women, children and vulnerable groups, and particular attention is paid to the violence and abuse, which is perpetrated against women and children. The functioning and resourcing of various specialised areas, such as the Family Violence, Child Protection and Sexual Offences (FCS) units, have been enhanced to address crimes against women and children. The implementation of the GBV Strategy will also assist to intensify and accelerate efforts to prevent acts of GBV by creating multisectoral and long-term strategic interventions. The SAPS also acknowledges the rights of people with disabilities and will continue to protect and ensure the full and equal enjoyment of all human rights and fundamental freedom.

Detection rates for all contact crimes are expected to increase from 50.58% in 2018/19 to 56.07% in 2022/23; detection rates for crimes against women are expected to increase from 73.81% in 2018/19 to 75.35% in 2022/23; and detection rates for crimes against children are expected to increase from 69.19% in 2018/19 to 70.20% in 2022/23.

In 2019/20, a total of 1 153 out of 1 154 police stations rendered a victim-friendly service to victims of rape, sexual offences, domestic violence and abuse. There are 1 090 victim-friendly rooms, including 1 001 at police stations, 38 at satellite police stations, one at a contact point, two at international airports and 48 at FCS units.

Operational Response Services

The responsibility to respond to and stabilise medium to high-risk incidents to ensure that normal policing continues falls under the broader tactical environment of the NIU, the Special Task Force (STF) and POP units, and Mobile Operations under the Operational Response Services. This division is also responsible for:

- maintaining public order;
- conducting high-risk operations (by combating acts of terror and terrorism);
- executing search and rescue operations;
- stabilising volatile situations;
- preventing cross-border crimes (by controlling legal/legal cross-border movement of all persons and goods), at all acknowledged ports of entry;
- providing operational support to all divisions within the SAPS, including air support to operational requirements;
- rendering of support to operational-related and national coordinated operations;
- providing escort duties of dangerous awaiting trial detainees or sentenced prisoners;
- providing tactical response activities, e.g. anti-poaching, cross-border operations, active shooter situations;
- deploying members to neighbouring countries in peacekeeping missions; and
- developing, implementing and monitoring of integrated all-of-government and police-specific operations, to address the SAPS, the Justice, Crime Prevention and Security (JCPS) Cluster and the International Coordination, Trade and Security Cluster priorities, as well as managing major events.

Public disorder

The country has, in the past few years, experienced an upsurge in violent incidents of public disorder, which requires urgent, additional interventions from the SAPS. It is anticipated that this upsurge against state authority will not decline in the foreseeable future, due to the current climate of service delivery-related protest actions and land invasions.

Although the SAPS's POP capability has been largely successful in containing these incidents and has limited the use of force, the situation requires a renewed focus. The stability of the country is essential, especially in planning for the National Local Government Elections in 2021. In order to achieve the creation of a demilitarised, professional and well-resourced POP capacity within the SAPS, which is capable of addressing the 21st century policing demands, the SAPS implemented the POP Strategy that was approved in June 2019. The strategy has five pillars:

- operational readiness related to human and physical resources,
- policing of crowd management and public disorder,
- regulatory framework, operating principles and procedures,
- research and best practices, and
- monitoring and evaluation.

The SAPS continues to capacitate its POP unit to manage community protests, including the training and equipping of members to deal with crowd management. The POP capacity was expected to increase to 8 802 by 2020. This would have a fundamental impact on the accommodation, vehicle and budget allocation of this component.

The human resource capability at POP units increased by 320, from 5 818 members in 2018/19, to 6 138 members at

the end of March 2020, comprising 5 734 SAPS Act of 1995 members and 404 Public Service Act, 1994 (Act 103 of 1994) personnel. The SAPS will continue to prioritise the capacitation of the 45 provincial POP units, as well as the four reserve units (in Pretoria, Durban, Cape Town and Mbombela) that it has at its disposal, to manage community protests.

Safeguarding South Africa's borders

Ports of entry and exit are used for the conveyance of goods and persons entering or departing South Africa. Controlling borders and ports of entry is vital, in order to prevent the flow of contraband, illegal drugs, undocumented persons, stolen/robbed vehicles, stolen firearms, wanted persons, stock theft and human trafficking.

To enhance the national security and territorial integrity at ports of entry, the SAPS continues to execute planned crime prevention and combating actions, which include roadblocks, foot and vehicle patrols, vehicle checkpoints and perimeter inspections. A total number of 3 781 planned crime prevention and combating actions were undertaken at ports of entry in 2019/20, including 340 roadblocks, 56 560 vehicle patrols, 10 588 vehicle checkpoints, 88 632 foot patrols and 1 247 vessel patrol inspections, to enhance the national security and territorial integrity at ports of entry. These actions led to 12 625 arrests.

The Border Policing Strategy was approved in July 2019. It is aimed at the seamless movement of persons and goods in and out of the country, by effectively safeguarding and securing all borders, policing crimes that may threaten the safety and security of the country, ensuring that the repression and prevention of transnational organised crime, illegal migration and corruption are dealt with, and preserving the territorial integrity of the country. The strategy has five pillars namely:

- balancing trade and security;
- capacity building and personnel development;
- strategic budgeting, resourcing and staffing, to include acquisition of specialised resources;
- collaborative engagement with relevant stakeholders; and
- intelligence gathering/analysis and information.

Participation in peace support

The SAPS renders specialised policing services to neighbouring countries, including the deployment of members on peacekeeping missions and other interventions, in accordance with the United Nations Security Council (UNSC) Resolutions, the African Union (AU) Constitutive Act and the Southern African Development Community (SADC) agreements.

These refer to the reporting of deployment in peace missions (peacemaking, peacekeeping, peacebuilding, preventative diplomacy, peace enforcement) of the SAPS, sanctioned by Cabinet, as requested by the multilateral organisations – the UN through the UNSC Resolution, the AU through the Peace and Security Council Resolution and the SADC Organ Politics, Defence and Security Council Summit.

The terms of reference for such a deployment are outlined on the respective resolutions. International intervention deployments refer to all deployments of SAPS members outside the borders of South Africa, sanctioned either by the National Commissioner, as delegated by the Minister of Police, by the SAPS Act of 1995, as requested through a country-to-country bilateral agreement or by regional arrangement (SADC).

The activities include cross border operations and election observer missions. A total of 69 members were deployed in the AU/UN peacekeeping missions in 2019/20. These include 32 members in South Sudan and 35 members as police advisors in Darfur. Duties for missions in South Sudan and Sudan include the protection of civilians, confidence and capacity building patrols in the internally displaced persons camps and villages, monitoring and mentoring the local police on accepted standards of policing and monitoring crime investigation and security within the camps.

One member of the SAPS was appointed to the UN Office of Rule of Law and Security Institution, in New York and one member was appointed as the Senior Police Coordinator in Somalia.

Detective Services

The service enables the investigative work of the SAPS, including providing support to officials, in terms of forensic evidence and criminal records. The objectives are to contribute to the successful prosecution of offenders by increasing the detection rate for serious crimes, by providing specialised training to detectives and enhancing dedicated specialised capabilities in different detective services units; maintaining the percentage of trial-ready case dockets for serious commercial crime-related charges over the medium term, through the timeous submission of case dockets for prosecution; and generating original previous conviction reports for formally charged individuals.

The Detective Service programme comprises the Crime Investigations, Specialised Investigations, Criminal Record Centre and Forensic Service Laboratory subprogrammes, which are managed by the Detective Service and Forensic Services divisions, as well as the Directorate for Priority Crime Investigations (DPCI).

Crime Detection

The division is responsible for managing Detective Services in accordance with the mission and priorities of the SAPS and to actively implement and exercise effective control over these activities. It enables the investigative work of the SAPS, including providing support to investigators, in terms of forensic evidence and criminal records. The objective of the division is the successful prosecution of offenders by investigating, gathering and analysing evidence. It comprises the Crime Investigation Service, Family Violence, Child Protection and Sexual Investigation Service, Specific Crime Investigations, Organised and Commercial Crime Investigation, and Anti-Corruption outside the mandate of the DPCI.

In 2019/20, the detection rate for all serious crimes decreased by 0.20% to 36.17%. Contact crimes decreased by 1.45% to 49.13% and other serious crimes by 0.26% to 35.90%. Contact-related crimes increased by 0.50% to 50.31% and property-related crimes by 0.16% to 15.67%. The trial-ready case docket rate for all serious crimes increased by 3.34% to 93.26%.

Other serious crimes increased by 5.30% to 93.36%, property-related crimes by 2.91% to 93.80%, contact crimes by 2.80% to 92.94% and contact-related crimes by 2.23% to 94.99%. The detection rate for criminal and violent conduct in public protests decreased by 0.01% to 46.91%.

The trial-ready case docket rate increased by 0.03% to 95.63%. The detection rate for crimes against children decreased by 3.05% to 66.14% and the trial-ready case docket rate increased by 5.24% to 91.36%. The detection rate for crimes against women decreased by 0.89% to 72.92% and the trial-ready case docket rate increased by 2.91% to 92.99%.

An integrated approach to the detection of crime is being applied, in order to align the various investigative capabilities, including both general and specialised investigation and the support to the investigation of crime. The Detective Service Helpline contributes to the solving of volumes of complex investigative enquiries. The helpline provides support to detectives in need of information about any aspect related to the investigation of crime. Detectives are encouraged to consult the helpline when in need of support to obtain the correct information in the investigation of crime, share best investigative practices, if they need to consult with legal and policy services or if there is a need for understanding national instructions, standing orders and policies.

The "My SAPS" application (app) was launched in October 2019. The app was developed by Vodacom and allows citizens to submit a crime tip-off anonymously to the SAPS's Crime Stop via a smartphone. An Unstructured Supplementary Service Data app was also developed for phones with no internet access.

Firearms control

The Central Firearms Register is mandated to administer firearm applications, in accordance with the prescripts of the Firearms Control Act of 2000. Its primary objective is to prevent the proliferation of illegally possessed firearms, providing for the removal of those firearms from society, improving control over legally possessed firearms and promoting responsible firearm ownership in South Africa. The circulation of lost, stolen and found firearms plays an essential role in the investigation of firearm-related crime, in the efficient control of firearms and ultimately, in the reduction of the proliferation of firearms.

Firearm licences, competency certificates, permits and authorisations are issued by the SAPS to individuals and businesses, in terms of the provisions and subject to compliance with the prerequisites of firearm control legislation, after comprehensive assessment of the content of applications and supporting documentation.

Liquor control

The SAPS plays a pivotal role in enforcing compliance to national and provincial liquor legislation. The existing partnership between the Department of Trade, Industry and Competition (dtic), the National Liquor Authority and the SAPS to address enforcement of compliance to the Liquor Act of 2003, was strengthened through the review and signing of a Memorandum of Agreement to appoint the SAPS members as liquor inspectors, thereby assisting in the enhanced enforcement of compliance to the Act.

Police reaction time

The SAPS's reaction time to complaints remains an important factor in the services that are rendered by police stations. The reaction time is defined as the time it takes to respond to a complaint. It is measured from the time that a specific complaint is registered on the Crime Administration System/ Global Emergency Mobile Communication Command and Control System, to the time that the response vehicle arrives at the scene. Response times are based on the severity of the crime and are classified according to the Alpha, Bravo and Charlie system. Alpha complaints are crimes in progress, which require immediate police response or action. Bravo complaints are crimes that have already taken place, with no immediate threat to the complainant or property, such as a report of a housebreaking that has already occurred. Charlie complaints are crimes of a less serious nature, such as loitering and trespassing.

Police safety

Attacks and unnatural deaths of employees of the SAPS, both on or off duty, are regarded as a threat to the stability of the country. Attacks and murder of police employees have a potential to create a negative perception among the citizens of the country, as to whether the SAPS is able to fulfil its Constitutional mandate to prevent, combat and investigate crime, maintain public order, uphold and enforce the law. It further creates the perception that criminals are willing and able to act with impunity by disregarding the law and negating the impact of the SAPS in furthering their criminal activities.

A police safety committee is in place as a tool to coordinate all activities, in support of enhancing the safety of all SAPS members, including the implementation of employee health and wellness programmes, the enhancement of tactical training programmes, the analysis of incidents which informed the development of proactive measures to reduce the number of police attacks and killing of police members, as well as enhanced safety awareness, internally and externally.

Specialised interventions

The policing and stabilising of public disorder, and the responsibility to respond to medium to high-risk incidents, as well as to ensure that normal policing continues, falls under the POP unit and the broader tactical environment of the NIU, the STF units, the TRT and Mobile Operations. The National Operational Coordination section is responsible for the developing, implementing and monitoring of an integrated all-of-government and police specific operations, to address the SAPS and the JCPS Cluster priorities and managing major events.

Missing persons

The Bureau for Missing Persons provides investigative support to the SAPS members tasked with investigating the disappearance of persons, including missing and wanted persons, as well as unidentified bodies. This support includes the circulation of information and photographs, both internally to the SAPS members, as well as nationally and internationally, through printed and electronic media and mediums to the general public.

In 2020, the SAPS and Facebook joined hands to strengthen the tracing of missing children through the use of the Child Abduction Emergency Alert platform, commonly known as the Amber Alert. The service is aimed at activating and sending details and photographs of a missing child on Facebook, to alert users to be on the lookout for a reported missing child. South Africa is the first country in Africa to receive this programme

and the 23rd in the world. Immediately after a case docket has been opened, it is sent to the Bureau of Missing Persons, which sends the information to Facebook, and within a few seconds, the missing child appears with full details, such as names, clothes worn on the day and other descriptive details to enable users to alert the police on time. If a child goes missing in a particular area, the Amber Alert is mostly sent to people in that area.

National priority offences

The DPCI, through a multidisciplinary approach, conducts major case and project-driven investigations that are based on threat assessments in Serious Corruption Investigations, Serious Organised Crime Investigations and Serious Commercial Crime Investigations. The Priority Crime SIU and the Priority Crime Management Centre provide specialised investigative and operational support in these investigations.

Serious corruption includes the misuse of a public or private office or position or resources with corrupt intent and may include an act of bribery, nepotism, extortion, fraud and theft. This includes, but is not limited to, offences under the Prevention and Combating of Corrupt Activities Act of 2004.

As part of efforts to fight corruption, the Anti-Corruption Task Team (ACTT) continues to give operational effect to government's Anti-Corruption Agenda. The ACTT is implemented and supported through the governance architecture of the Operational Committee. The percentage trial-ready case dockets for fraud and corruption by individuals within the JCPS Cluster increased from 82.37% in 2018/19 to 89.63% against the planned target of 77%, an increase of 7.26%. The conviction rate was 92.72%. The trial-ready rate for fraud and corruption within the public sector was 88.89% and 76.51% within the private sector. The conviction rates were 100% and 98.00% respectively.

Serious Commercial Crime refers to serious fraud, forgery and uttering, theft, such as the theft of trust funds, commercial crime that is of such extent or complexity, that it requires the services of a chartered accountant or other specialist or expert during investigation and contraventions of certain statutes, relating to commercial crime (including statutes relating to companies, trusts and close corporations, long and short-term insurance, the counterfeiting of currency, the counterfeiting and illicit trade in counterfeit products and goods, intellectual property rights, banks and the banking industry, exchange control, estate agents, serious corruption and computer-related/cyber-related crime).

The trial-ready case docket rate for serious commercial crime-related charges decreased by 10.58% from 74.37% to 63.79%. This was due to witnesses in municipal fraud and corruption investigations that are sometimes reluctant to hand over evidential material, delays in the finalisation of forensic audit reports, and some delays in case dockets submitted to the National Prosecuting Authority (NPA) for decision, due to the high volume of cases. The conviction rate stood at 98.15% or 37 700 out of 38 409 charges.

Serious organised crime units investigate national priority offences through serious organised crime project investigations. These crimes include the killing of police officials, cash-in-transit robberies, narcotics, nonferrous metals, theft of copper cables, dealing in abalone, money laundering, fraud, gang-related murder, wildlife trafficking, illegal trade in tobacco products, corruption, forgery, car and truck hijacking, dealing in stolen property, cultivation of hydroponic cannabis and illegal drug production, as well as crimes regulated by the Prevention and Combating of Corrupt Activities Act of 2004 and the Prevention of Organised Crime Act of 1998.

In 2019/20, 70.00% or seven out of 10 registered serious organised crime project investigations were successfully closed. The South African Narcotic Enforcement Bureau successfully identified and dismantled 24 clandestine drug laboratories, resulting in an achievement of 100% and the arresting of 56 suspects.

A total of 73 out of 91 or 80.22% of specialised cybercrime investigative support case files were successfully investigated. The target for the 2019/20 financial year was 55.00%.

The stabilisation of the DPCI through the appointment of a permanent national head provides impetus to the investigation of national priority crime, including serious commercial, corruption and organised crimes. The DPCI will review certain key internal organisational processes, supported by effective management and governance principles and will establish appropriate operational practices, to reinforce its position as the leading investigative capability in the country.

Forensic Services

The SAPS's forensic capability continues to provide specialised crime scene management and evidential support. To ensure its progressive development, the medium term technological advances in this environment, will be continued. The Forensic Services division deals with the application of the knowledge and methodology of various disciplines of science to legal matters.

It involves the use of multiple disciplines, such as physics, chemistry, biology and engineering for evidence analysis. Without the application of forensic science, criminals cannot be convicted, unless an eyewitness is present, thus forensic services involves the collection, preservation and analysis of evidence, which is suitable for prosecuting an offender in a court of law.

Policing plays a major role in the combating of crime in the community, both reassuring and assisting persons affected by crime. Increasingly, crime investigation depends on the collection and processing of the analysis of physical forensic evidence for the exoneration of the innocent or the conviction of the perpetrator.

The Forensic Services division, comprising the Forensic Science Laboratory and the Criminal Record and Crime Scene Management, is an indispensable investigative aid. This is a highly regulated environment, which requires compliance to legislation, focusing on the Criminal Law (Forensic Procedure) Amendment Act, 2013 (Act 37 of 2013) (Fingerprint Act and DNA Act). The accuracy and reliability of information provided by the SAPS's Forensic Service division is crucial to the success of crime investigations and prosecution.

The SAPS remains committed towards the realisation of processing the different categories of exhibits/entries (routine case exhibits/entries, non-routine case exhibits/entries, priority case exhibits/entries and intelligence case exhibits/entries). The backlog of cases exhibits/entries, not yet finalised, are also addressed.

During the 2019/20 financial year, a total of 122 609 or 63.75% out of 192 319 routine case exhibits/entries received were finalised within 35 calendar days, compared to 171 989 or 71.92% out of 239 123 in 2018/19 – a decrease of 5.78%. The Forensic Science Laboratory achieved a 79.67% or 3 794 out of 4 762 completion rate, with regard to non-routine case exhibits/entries within the planned turnaround time of 113 calendar days, compared to a 91.66% or 5 034 out of 5 492 completion rate, during the previous financial year.

The performance decreased by 11.99% compared to 2018/19. Non-routine case exhibits or entries require research or extraordinary timely effort, thus consuming more time and resources to complete. A total of 29 152 out of 48 694 or 59.86% biology intelligence case exhibits or entries were finalised within the planned turnaround time of 90 calendar days. The backlog of cases exhibits or entries increased from 2.48% to 27.06% in 2018/19, portraying a 24.58% increase. A total of 98 238 case exhibits or entries are yet to be attended to. This surpasses the international norm of 10%, by 14.58%. Although progress in the reduction of the backlog was made in the past years, the current backlog statistics leaves less to be desired.

The Criminal Record and Crime Scene Management unit deals with requests for previous conviction reports, requests for fingerprint searches, including criminal fingerprint searches, in order to determine whether an individual has a criminal record and non-criminal fingerprint searches, such as in the case of applications for firearm licenses, professional driver's permits and pre-employment screening.

The unit processed 96.85% previous conviction reports within 15 calendar days, which is a 1.37% decrease, compared to the 2018/19 achievement of 98.22%. The number of requests for fingerprint searches decreased by 74.71%, compared to 2018/19. From the 539 131 requests received, 49.81% were for criminal fingerprint searches and 50.19%, were non-criminal fingerprint searches, such as in the case of professional driver's permits and pre-employment screening. From the 268 568 criminal fingerprint searches conducted, 48.40% were first offenders, whilst 51.60% resulted in previous convictions being identified and verified. A further 108 532 requests were received for fingerprint searches related to firearm license applications, of which 86 803 or 79.98% were processed within 15 calendar days.

Crime Intelligence

The purpose of the programme is to manage crime intelligence and analyse crime information and provide technical support for investigations and crime prevention operations. The objectives are to contribute to combating crime on an ongoing basis, by ensuring that network operations are successfully executed in support of crime prevention, investigation and prosecution and maintaining tactical and operational intelligence products in support of policing activities.

Proactive and reactive crime intelligence

Effective proactive and reactive crime intelligence, driven by the corporate renewal of the SAPS's crime intelligence capability, supports basic policing functions provided from police stations and is critical to the stabilisation and normalisation of areas identified as being problematic. The capability also contributes to the management of the integrity of the SAPS through the introduction of a revitalised approach to the vetting of members in key areas. Over the medium term, the SAPS will focus on the effective use of crime intelligence to support policing initiatives. This approach includes optimising the collection of intelligence, enhancing its analysis and coordination, ensuring effective counterintelligence, establishing security intelligence to uphold the authority of the State and establishing a culture of performance management within the crime intelligence environment. In support of this, the department aims to ensure that network operations are successfully terminated.

The Crime Intelligence division within the SAPS is responsible for the gathering, collation, evaluation, analysis and coordination of intelligence. Legislative prescriptions require the SAPS to confine its intelligence activities to crime, criminal activities and security-related matters. The core function of the division is to provide intelligence to operational units for the use in the prevention of crime or to conduct criminal investigations and to prepare evidence for the purpose of law enforcement and the prosecution of offenders. Crime intelligence is, therefore, a key enabler, in support of both proactive and reactive policing.

The division also provides intelligence-related services, such as lifestyle audits, security screening and vetting to the SAPS. Functioning within strict legal and regulatory parameters, the division conducts its intelligence-gathering, analysis and supplementary activities with due regard to the constitutionally protected rights of individuals. Through its national and provincial components, the division has established coverage throughout the country which extends down to cluster level.

In 2019/20, a total of 799 network operations were successfully terminated to infiltrate criminal syndicates, 6 523 security risk and vetting assessments were conducted and 250 835 intelligence reports were operationalised. Intelligence reports consist of proactive and reactive reports. Proactive intelligence reports include threat and risk assessments and early warning reports, in support of proactive operations and reactive intelligence reports include profiles and intelligence analysis reports such as communication analysis reports, and association or network analysis reports. A total of 10 cross-border operations and 20 arrests of identified transnational crime suspects were facilitated on request from the INTERPOL member countries. A further 13 identified transnational crime suspects were arrested, but the files could not be finalised due to outstanding court proceedings, mutual legal assistance and outstanding requests for extradition or arrest.

Protection and Security Services

The purpose of the programme is to provide protection and security services to all identified dignitaries and government interests. The objectives are to minimise security violations by protecting all identified local and foreign dignitaries while in transit; protecting the locations in which dignitaries are present; auditing strategic installations and evaluating national key points.

The programme comprises the VIP Protection Services, the Static and Mobile Security and the Government Security Regulator subprogrammes managed by the Protection and Security Services division and the Presidential Protection Service component.

The Protection and Security Services division is a national competency with nine provincial offices located throughout South Africa. The division provides in-transit and static protection to

all identified VIPs, including the Speaker or Deputy Speaker of the National Assembly, Ministers or Deputy Ministers, Premiers, Members of the Executive Council, the Chief Justice, Judge Presidents and ad hoc VIPs, in terms of the Risk Information Management Support System Policy and national key points, and identified strategic installations (national and provincial government departments).

The Presidential Protection Service component is a national competency with provincial offices in Gauteng, the Western Cape, KwaZulu-Natal and the Eastern Cape. The component provides in-transit and static protection to the President, the Deputy President, former presidents, former deputy presidents, their spouses, identified VIPs, including foreign Heads of State/Government, former Heads of State/Government and their spouses at identified government installations.

The in-transit protection function is performed, in Gauteng, the Western Cape and KwaZulu-Natal. The static protection function is performed in the provinces indicated above, as well as in the Eastern Cape and at national level. In-transit and static protection are supported by K9, Bomb Disposal, Technical Support, Physical Security Compliance and High-Risk Operations personnel. These functions are further administratively supported by the operational support function. In 2019/20, the Protection and Security Services division and the Presidential Protection Service provided in-transit protection to identified VIPs, as well as static protection at identified government installations and identified VIP residences, without any security breaches.

A total number of 132 strategic installations were audited and 217 national key points were evaluated.

Strengthening safety in communities

The Safe Cities Framework, which will be finalised in 2020/21, provides an overarching strategy for adopting a collaborative approach to strengthening safety and security in South Africa. The SAPS has recognised that functioning community policing forums are central to the successful implementation of the framework. This is because these forums provide a critical interface between the police at the local level and the communities they serve.

Over the medium term, the department will ensure that at least 99.56% of all community policing forums remain functioning to facilitate the successful implementation of the Safe Cities Framework.

Crime statistics during COVID-19 restrictions

Crime statistics from 1 April 2020 to 30 June 2020, illustrated a decrease in criminal activity. This decrease was attributed to COVID-19 restrictions – a national lockdown period which began on 26 March 2020 where all South African residents, except a few categories of essential workers, had to stay home.

The government acknowledged that the unavailability of alcohol had a role to play towards decreased numbers of cases of contact crimes, which plummeted by 37.4%.

There were 53 891 less cases of murder, attempted murder, assault with intent to cause grievous bodily harm, common robbery and common assault reported, compared to the same reporting period last year.

The drop in crime cases was also demonstrated by a 29.4% decline in contact-related crimes made up of arson and malicious damage to property.

Burglaries at residential premises dropped by over 30%, while on the other hand, burglary at non-residential premises increased by 9.1%.

There was also an increase in the number of attacks on schools and liquor outlets during this time. A total of 2 692 burglaries were reported at educational premises and 1 246 liquor outlets were targeted.

During this period, there was a drop of 39.7% in the number of sexual offences such as sexual assault. A 40.4% decrease in the number of rape cases was reported during the three months. All top 30 police stations that reported high levels of assault with intent to cause grievous bodily harm, recorded drops in numbers. Common assault numbers declined in April and May.

A total of 298 252 people were arrested and charged with contraventions of the Disaster Management Act of 2002. A total of 181 579 people were released on warning to appear before a court. A total of 28 337 of those arrested were found guilty of violations, ranging from liquor possession, gathering, unauthorised transportation and business, and cross-border related offences.

Operational interventions continued throughout the national lockdown period and resulted in the confiscation of millions of rands worth of contraband.

Illegal firearms were also removed off streets and recovered stolen property, including stock. These operations played a huge role in clamping down on illegal transportation and distribution of banned substances (during the national lockdown period) such as alcohol and cigarettes.

Statistics for this period also illustrated police officers implicated in criminal activities. A total of 163 officers were arrested from the start of the lockdown for violating the lockdown regulations.

SAPS Commemoration Day

The 2020 SAPS Commemoration Day took place on 6 September at the SAPS Memorial site in Pretoria.

Hosted annually by the Department of Police, the day is commemorated in remembrance of police officers and reservists who lose their lives in the line of duty. The event also presents an opportunity for the nation to celebrate the courage and dedication of officers who laid down their lives in execution of their Constitutional mandate to protect all within South Africa's borders.

As part of the commemoration activities, Deputy President David Mabuza, together with the next of kin of the fallen officers, laid wreaths in honour of the departed police personnel. Their names were engraved on the National Memorial Wall at the Union Buildings to signify the gratitude of the nation for their bravery, loyalty and sacrifices made to serve and protect the people of South Africa

Civilian Secretariat for the Police Service

The Civilian Secretariat for the Police Service was established in terms of the Civilian Secretariat for Police Service Act of 2011 and Section 208 of the Constitution, which provides for the establishment of a civilian secretariat for the police service to function under the direction of the Minister of Police. The secretariat's mandate is to conduct civilian oversight of the

police service and provide policy and strategic support to the Minister of Police, including administrative support in relation to his international obligations. The Act also mandates responsibility on the secretariat to monitor the implementation of the Domestic Violence Act of 1998 by the SAPS.

Chapter 12 of the NDP sets out a vision for building safer communities by adopting a holistic approach to safety and security. This vision is expressed in terms of Priority 5 (social cohesion and safe communities) of government's 2019 – 2024 MTSF, with which the work of the Civilian Secretariat for the Police Service is closely aligned. Over the medium term, the secretariat will focus on strengthening community participation in the fight against crime by implementing crime prevention campaigns, hosting provincial *izimbizo* and establishing additional community safety forums at municipal level; strengthening regulation by developing new policies and legislation for the police sector; and monitoring the performance of the police service through oversight visits to police stations.

Strengthening community participation in the fight against crime

The Civilian Secretariat for the Police Service recognises that community participation is critical to reducing crime and building a safe and cohesive society. A key vehicle for community participation is community safety forums, which are managed by communities and are responsible for coordinating the implementation of national and provincial community safety initiatives and priorities at municipal level. In this regard, over the MTEF period, the department, in collaboration with the Department of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs, and provincial departments of community safety, plans to continue facilitating the establishment of community safety forums.

There were 42 functioning community safety forums across South Africa by the end of 2018/19 and plans are underway to establish an additional 27 by 2022/23. Related activities are carried out in the Intersectoral Coordination and Strategic Partnerships programme, which has an allocation of R85.1 million over the medium term, accounting for 17.3% of the department's total budget. Travel and subsistence is the largest cost associated with establishing community safety forums, spending on which constitutes 42.1% (R10.2 million) of the programme's total expenditure on goods and services over the medium term.

Greater public awareness and educational campaigns were necessary in 2019/20 as reports of incidents of femicide and GBV increased. As a result, the Civilian Secretariat for the Police Service increased its number of planned national crime prevention campaigns for the year from three to five. Over the MTEF period, the department will revert to implementing three crime prevention campaigns per year, in line with the available budget.

The Civilian Secretariat for the Police Service hosts *izimbizo* to allow communities to raise their concerns and make suggestions for improved service delivery directly with the Minister of Police. Over the medium term, the department plans to hold one imbizo in eight provinces per year. Related activities for *izimbizo* and crime prevention campaigns are also carried out in the Intersectoral Coordination and Strategic Partnerships programme.

Strengthening regulation of the police service

Through its Legislation unit, the Civilian Secretariat for the Police Service plans to finalise two Bills per year over the medium term. The Bills include the Firearms Control Amendment Bill, the Second-hand Goods Amendment Bill, the Controlled Animals and Animal Products Bill, the Criminal Law (Forensic Procedures) Amendment Bill, the IPID Bill, and the Protection of Constitutional Democracy against Terrorist and Related Activities Amendment Bill. The department also plans to finalise four policies on policing and safety.

Among these policies is the implementation framework for the *2016 White Paper on Policing*, which will outline policy proposals for professionalising the police service. Related activities are carried out in the Legislation and Policy Development programme, which accounts for 15.6% (R77.7 million) of the department's total budget over the MTEF period. As these activities are labour intensive, spending on compensation of employees constitutes 76.3% (R59.5 million) of the programme's total expenditure over the medium term.

Monitoring police performance

In line with its mandate to monitor the performance of the police service over the MTEF period, the Civilian Secretariat for the Police Service plans to prepare and finalise biannual reports on oversight visits to police stations. These reports enable the department to assess the overall effectiveness of policing programmes, including crime prevention initiatives, and compliance by the police service with policing regulations and legislation such as the Domestic Violence Act of 1998.

As the Civilian Secretariat for the Police Service monitors the work undertaken by provinces on its behalf regarding oversight visits, spending on travel and subsistence increases by 5.5% over the medium term, accounting for 53.1% (R13.6 million) of total spending on goods and services in the Civilian Oversight, Monitoring and Evaluations programme.

Budget

The Civilian Secretariat for the Police Service was allocated R143.1 million for the 2019/20 financial year. Expenditure increased at an average annual rate of 6.6%, from R143.1 million in 2019/20 to R173.3 million in 2022/23. Spending on compensation of employees accounts for 71.5% (R355.9 million) of total expenditure over the medium term. However, allocations for compensation of employees have been reduced by R676 000 in 2020/21 and R720 000 in 2021/22 in line with government's expenditure ceiling for compensation of employees.

Despite these reductions, the Civilian Secretariat for the Police Service's funded establishment will increase from 153 posts in 2019/20 to 156 posts in 2022/23, due to the planned filling of vacant funded posts.

Independent Police Investigative Directorate

The IPID exercises its functions in accordance with the IPID Act of 2011 which gives effect to the provisions of Section 206 (6) of the Constitution, which provides for the establishment of an independent police complaints body that must investigate any alleged misconduct of, or offence committed by, a member of the police service. The thrust of the directorate's work is to

investigate serious and priority crimes allegedly committed by members of the SAPS and the Municipal Police Services (MPS).

The Act grants the IPID an extended mandate and changes the focus of the directorate's work from a complaints-driven organisation to one that prioritises the investigative function. The Act also places stringent obligations on the SAPS and the MPS to report matters that must be investigated by the directorate, and ensures the implementation of disciplinary recommendations made by the IPID.

The NDP outlines a vision for building safer communities in South Africa. This vision is expressed specifically in terms of Priority 5 (social cohesion and safe communities) of government's 2019 – 2024 MTSF, with which the work of the IPID is aligned. Accordingly, over the medium term, the directorate will focus on strengthening its human capital to improve the quality of investigations for serious and priority crimes, and collaborating with stakeholders to monitor the implementation of recommendations from the outcomes of investigations.

Strengthening human capital to improve the quality of investigations

Despite the reduction in its funded establishment, the IPID intends to focus on investment in human capital, specifically with regards to investigations. This is in recognition of the directorate's responsibility to gather requisite and necessary evidence to enable the NPA, the SAPS and the MPS to make informed decisions on whether to prosecute or take disciplinary action against officers.

Accordingly, over the medium term, the IPID plans to strengthen its investigative capacity by training and upskilling all 179 investigators to be able to effectively respond to advanced criminal activities undertaken by police officers.

Training will be provided on conducting investigations of sexual offences, using advanced investigative techniques and methods, and provisions of the Prevention of Organised Crime Act of 1998, among other things. For this purpose, R4.5 million is allocated over the MTEF period in the Investigation and Information Management programme.

Collaborating with stakeholders to monitor the implementation of recommendations

Along with the Civilian Secretariat for the Police Service, the IPID is the primary oversight body of the police service. It meets quarterly with the Civilian Secretariat for the Police Service to discuss collective measures that should be taken by both departments to advance the professionalisation of the police service as envisaged in the NDP. Over the medium term, the IPID will work closely with the secretariat to ensure that there is regular and stringent monitoring of the implementation of disciplinary recommendations made to the SAPS.

Meetings will be held with the secretariat and the SAPS to review monthly statistics in relation to the implementation of disciplinary recommendations forwarded to the police service and cases referred to the NPA for prosecution. In addition, awareness training sessions will be held with the SAPS members in police stations to strengthen compliance with applicable legislation and regulations, and reduce the number of cases reported for deaths as a result of police action or while in police custody, rape by police officers or while in police custody, and systemic corruption. Related activities are carried out in the Compliance Monitoring and Stakeholder Management programme, which was allocated R40.8 million over the MTEF period.

In August 2020, 16 SAPS officers appeared before a magistrate's court in Gauteng, following a three-year investigation by the Hawks Serious Corruption Investigation and Crime Intelligence. The officers were arrested for allegedly stealing millions of rands worth of drugs confiscated from drug mules and other corruption-related offences at the OR Tambo International Airport. Another 11 officers from the Tshwane Metro Police Department were arrested in Pretoria for alleged corruption by receiving bribes from motorists.

Budget

The IPID was allocated R336.7 million for the 2019/20 financial year. Expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 5.3%, from R336.7 million in 2019/20 to R393.4 million in 2022/23. Spending on compensation of employees accounts for 68.3% (R771.4 million) of the IPID's total expenditure over the MTEF period. In line with government's expenditure ceiling for compensation of employees, the item's baseline is reduced by R10.1 million over the medium term (R3.7 million in 2020/21, R3.9 million in 2021/22 and R2.5 million in 2022/23).

Department of Defence (DoD)

The purpose of the DoD is to defend and protect South Africa, its territorial integrity and its people, in accordance with the Constitution and the principles of international law regulating the use of force, and provide for military veterans' benefits.

The DoD derives its mandate from Section 200 of the Constitution, the Defence Act, 2002 (Act 42 of 2002), as amended by the Defence Amendment Act, 2010 (Act 22 of 2010), the *1996 White Paper on Defence* and the *2015 South African Defence Review*.

The DoD is required to provide, manage, prepare and employ defence capabilities that are commensurate with the needs of South Africa.

The NDP calls for an integrated, holistic approach to safety and security that tackles the root causes of crime and ensures South Africa's long-term stability, as well as peace and stability in Africa. This vision is supported by Priority 5 (social cohesion and safe communities) and Priority 7 (a better Africa and world) of government's 2019 – 2024 MTSF. In its efforts to give expression to these key policies over the medium term, the DoD will focus on creating a sustainable defence force, enhancing border safeguarding and territorial integrity, participating in peace support operations in Africa, and participating in internal operations through collaboration with other departments.

Creating a sustainable defence force

The DoD aims to respond to the constrained fiscal environment by focusing on measures to create a defence force that is more efficient, sustainable and capable.

These measures include using internal personnel for basic maintenance and repairs; introducing measures to enhance revenue, such as the leasing and selling of defence assets; and maximising reimbursements from the UN as part of South Africa's peace support operations in the Democratic Republic of the Congo (DRC).

Over the medium term, the use of internal maintenance and repair capabilities is expected to lead to a decrease

of R209.8 million in planned expenditure; the disposal and leasing of redundant assets and military equipment is expected to generate R3 billion; and reimbursements from the UN are projected to amount to R1.9 billion. These funds are expected to sustain capabilities in the Landward Defence, Air Defence and Maritime Defence programmes.

Enhancing border safeguarding and territorial integrity

Securing the country's borders remains a key priority for the South African Defence Force (SANDF). Over the medium term, the DoD will maintain its deployment of 15 landward subunits to patrol a targeted 4 471 kilometres of South Africa's land borders. To ensure the integrity of the country's borders and enhance the capacity of landward subunits through the acquisition of military equipment and technology, an additional R225 million over the MTEF period has been allocated in the Force Employment programme. The equipment and technology are expected to serve as a "force multiplier" to enable soldiers to increase the range of the borderline under protection.

Participating in peace support operations

The external deployment of military personnel under the auspices of international law has necessitated the SADC to heighten awareness of the legal implications of the actions of deployed forces and a requirement for more sophisticated training led by an objective and authoritative doctrine.

Peacekeeping operations are a critical element of prevention and deterrence, as well as a traditional conflict response with UN peacekeepers constituting the largest deployed military force in the world. South Africa supports the UN Secretary-General's efforts to explore the needs of the next generation of UN peacekeeping missions, while promoting reforms to improve planning, troop deployment, and to strengthen measures preventing incidents of sexual exploitation and abuse during operations.

Over the medium term, the DoD will continue to participate in peace support operations in the DRC under the auspices of the UN Stabilisation Mission. In this deployment, the SANDF participates in the Force Intervention Brigade and deploys an infantry battalion supported by a composite helicopter unit, a tactical intelligence unit and military observers.

To maintain these deployment activities, R3.5 billion is provided in the Force Employment programme over the medium term. This amount includes an estimated R480.4 million per year earmarked for the compensation of 2 059 employees per year over this period, many of whom will be deployed in the DRC. The SANDF will continue to provide military observers as part of the UN/AU hybrid mission in Sudan.

Participating in internal operations

The DoD contributes to domestic safety and security by conducting various internal operations, including operations in support of other government departments.

Over the MTEF period, the department aims to comply with all ordered commitments for internal operations by conducting operations in support of the SAPS; providing disaster aid and relief, search and rescue operations upon request, and support during national and provincial elections, the inauguration of the President of South Africa and the opening of Parliament.

To ensure these activities are carried out, R48.5 million has been allocated in the Force Employment programme over the medium term.

In March 2020, the SANDF was part of a multidisciplinary team that supported the Department of Health (DoH) and the Department of International Relations and Cooperation (DIRCO) to repatriate South African citizens from the COVID-19 hit city of Wuhan in China. Officials were also called up and deployed on borderline protection in support of the SAPS and the DoH to combat COVID-19 in the country.

Legislation, policies and strategies

The Constitutional and primary legislative mandates governing the DoD are:

- the Defence Act of 2002;
- the Defence Amendment Act of 2010;
- the Public Service Act of 1994;
- the Public Finance Management Act,1999 (Act 1 of 1999);
- the National Conventional Arms Control Act of 2002;
- the National Strategic Intelligence Act of 1994;
- the Defence Special Account Act, 1974 (Act 6 of 1974);
- the Military Ombud Act, 2012 (Act 4 of 2012);
- the Castle Management Act, 1993 (Act 207 of 1993);
- the Armaments Corporation of South Africa (Armscor) Act, 2003 (Act 51 of 2003);
- the Non-Proliferation of Weapons of Mass Destruction Act of 1993; and
- the Promotion of Access to Information Act, 2000 (Act 2 of 2000).

Budget

The DoD was allocated R50.9 billion for the 2019/20 financial year. Cabinet has approved reductions to the department's baseline of R749.7 million in 2020/21, R756.3 million in 2021/22 and R583.5 million in 2022/23. This includes reductions of R30.9 million in 2020/21, R32.5 million in 2021/22 and R33.8 million in 2022/23 on transfers to Armscor. These reductions will be effected proportionally across all programmes, mainly on goods and services items such as fuel, oil and gas; travel and subsistence; and food and food supplies.

SADC Maritime Security

The focus of the South African Navy (SAN) remains on preparing naval forces for operations in support of the SADC Maritime Security Strategy (MSS). Conducting naval operations that involves patrols in the Mozambique Channel to prevent piracy-related activities remains a national and departmental priority.

The SADC MSS will require continued capacity building in (regional) Maritime Domain Awareness to ensure a safe and secured SADC maritime environment. The latter will be achieved through joint international military exercises and other forms of military cooperation with strategic partners, such as the Brazil, Russia, India, China and South Africa countries and the SADC defence forces among others.

The focus of the SADC MSS will remain on maritime crime prevention close to the East Coast shores, and highlights the requirement for the littoral states to be able to exercise control over their territorial waters, and the role of the DoD in protecting the maritime resources as part of Operation Phakisa.

Force preparation

The chiefs of the South African Army (SA Army), the South African Air Force (SAAF), the SAN and the South African Military Health Service (SAMHS) are responsible for providing combat-ready defence capabilities in accordance with the military strategic objectives and operational requirements.

Each division must structure, position and maintain itself to provide forces able to participate successfully, as part of a joint, interdepartmental and multinational grouping, in the execution of all missions.

Group formations established by the different services include:

- the SA Army – infantry, artillery or armour formations;
- the SAAF – air capabilities within the air command;
- the SAN – fleet command; and
- the SAMHS – military health formations.

Organisational structure

The DoD and the Department of Military Veterans (DMV) adhere to the principles of civil control and oversight through the Minister of Defence and Military Veterans, various parliamentary committees such as the Joint Standing Committee on Defence and the Defence Secretariat.

While the Minister of Defence and Military Veterans is responsible for providing political direction to the department, the Joint Standing Committee on Defence ensures that the Minister remains accountable to Parliament.

However, for day-to-day administration and the coordination of strategic processes, the Minister relies on the Defence Secretariat, which is the civilian component of the DoD.

Force Employment

The purpose of the programme is to provide and employ defence capabilities, including an operational capability, to successfully conduct all operations, as well as joint, interdepartmental, interagency and multinational military exercises.

The output of this programme is to ensure successful joint force employment over the medium term by:

- providing and employing a special operations capability in accordance with national requirements;
- ensuring full participation in the number of peace missions as instructed by the President; and
- conducting four operations per year, protecting the territorial integrity and sovereignty of South Africa, supporting other government departments and complying with international obligations.

The mandate for employment of joint forces is drawn from the Constitution, the Defence Act of 2002 and the *Defence Review 2015*. In terms of these documents, the SANDF is mandated to provide:

- service in defence of South Africa for the protection of its sovereignty and territorial integrity;
- service in fulfilment of South Africa's international obligations to international bodies and other states;
- service in the preservation of life, health or property;
- service in the provision or maintenance of essential services;
- uphold law and order in South Africa in cooperation with the SAPS, under circumstances set out in legislation, where the SAPS is unable to independently maintain law and order; and
- service in support of any department or state, for the purpose of socio-economic upliftment.

Landward Defence

The Landward Defence programme provides prepared and supported landward defence capabilities for the defence and protection of South Africa. The output of this programme is to defend and protect South Africa and its territory over the medium term by:

- providing infantry capability, including the SANDF Reaction Force, for external deployment and internal safety and security, including border safeguarding;
- exercising tank and armoured car capabilities and providing squadron for internal deployment;
- exercising air defence artillery capabilities and providing a battery for internal deployment;
- providing a sustained composite engineer capability for external deployment, as well as for internal safety and security and exercising a field engineer capability;
- providing a signal capability for external deployment and internal signal support and exercising a composite signal capability;
- providing strategic direction by orchestrating and controlling the SA Army to achieve its mission to prepare and provide supported landward capabilities;
- providing an operational intelligence capability for external deployment, internal operational intelligence support and exercising one composite intelligence troop;
- providing combat-ready tactical command and control capabilities for integrated forces during force preparation exercises and force employment;
- providing a support capability for external and internal deployment through first-, second- and fourth-line support by two first and second-line maintenance units and two field workshops and fourth-line depots; and
- providing general training capabilities through basic military training, junior leader training, common landward training, command and management training, force preparation exercises and training courses.

Air Defence

The purpose of the programme is to provide prepared and supported air defence capabilities. The output of this programme is to defend and protect South Africa and its airspace over the medium term by providing:

- four helicopter squadrons and one combat-support squadron per year;
- three medium transport squadrons, including one VIP squadron, one maritime and transport squadron, one light transport squadron and nine reserve squadrons per year;
- one air combat squadron per year; and
- 24-hour air command and control capability.

Maritime Defence

The Maritime Defence programme provides prepared and supported maritime defence capabilities for the defence and protection of South Africa.

The output of this programme is to defend and protect South Africa and its maritime zones over the medium term by providing:

- a surface combat and patrol capability of three frigates, one combat support vessel, two offshore patrol vessels and three inshore patrol vessels in each annual operational cycle;
- a sub-surface combat capability of two submarines in each annual operational cycle;
- a mine warfare capability of two vessels in each annual operational cycle to ensure safe access to South Africa's harbours and mine clearance, where required;
- a maritime reaction squadron capability, comprising an operational boat division, an operational diving division and a naval reaction division in each annual operational cycle; and
- a hydrographic survey capability to ensure safe navigation by charting areas and to meet international obligations.

Office of the Military Ombud

The Office of the Military Ombud was established in terms of the Military Ombud Act of 2012 to investigate and ensure that complaints against the official conduct of a member or a person acting on behalf of a member with regard to their conditions of service are resolved in a fair, economical and expeditious manner.

Reserve Force Council (RFC)

The RFC is a statutory body under the Defence Act of 2002. The RFC is a consultative and advisory body and represents the Reserve Force to promote and maintain it as an integral part of the Defence Force and must be consulted on any legislation, policy or administrative measures affecting the Reserve Force.

Employment of the youth

The unemployment rate amongst the youth in Africa is not only a social issue with dire consequences should it not be addressed, but also a security issue with the potential to destabilise countries, regions and the continent. The UN defines the youth as persons between the ages of 15 and 24, while the African Youth Charter defines youth as those between the ages of 15 and 35. From a security perspective, the issue continuously creates a future challenge as the unemployed youth have the potential to become the targets of political demagogues who may use these youths as a means to achieve their political aspirations.

The government has introduced measures to increase the employment of young people. The DoD continues to provide employment opportunities to the youth through the DoD Military Skills Development System and internship programmes.

The DoD in support of the Department of Agriculture, Land Reform and Rural Development, through the National Youth System programme, will continue to train members through existing departmental infrastructure and resource arrangements.

The department will pursue the implementation of its Internship Policy, directing utilisation and management of interns. It was expected to continue with an internship intake of approximately 200 members in the 2019/20 financial year.

Entities

Armaments Corporation of South Africa

The Armscor is mandated to meet the acquisition, maintenance and disposal needs of the DoD and other clients in terms of defence matériel and related products and services. The corporation maintains strategic capabilities and technologies, and promotes the local defence-related industry, ensuring that the SANDF receives quality equipment to carry out its mandate. The focus of the corporation over the medium term will be on meeting the DoD's defence matériel requirements, providing support to the local defence industry, and expanding its revenue sources.

To meet the DoD's defence matériel requirements over the medium term, the corporation plans to spend R418 million. In its efforts to meet these requirements more effectively, the corporation will continue to improve its internal controls to ensure greater compliance with procurement regulations, and streamline the tendering process for urgent requirements, especially the acquisition of existing military equipment.

The corporation will continue to provide support to the South African defence industry over the medium term. It intends to improve its contracting processes to increase the participation of the local defence industry, especially small, medium and micro enterprises, and companies compliant with broad-based black economic empowerment regulations. The corporation will also facilitate these organisations' participation in international defence exhibitions. It plans to promote the industry, and manage requests from the private sector to use the SANDF equipment, personnel and facilities for marketing purposes. An estimated R89.4 million will be spent on these activities over the medium term.

The corporation expects to derive an estimated 70.9% (R4.7 billion) of its revenue over the MTEF period through transfers from the Department of Transport. These payments are expected to increase at an annual average rate of 3.4% from R1.5 billion in 2019/20 to R1.6 billion in 2022/23.

To supplement this, in an endeavour to ensure that it remains sustainable in a constrained fiscal environment, the corporation expects to generate an additional R540 million over the medium term through the commercialisation of intellectual property, commercial income from strategic facilities, and the brokering of defence sector deals in Africa.

Castle Control Board (CCB)

The CCB preserves and protects the military and cultural heritage of the Castle of Good Hope in Cape Town. The CCB is responsible for the following:

- Compliance with regulatory framework.
- Maintenance, preservation, interpretation and showcasing of the history of the Castle of Good Hope.
- Preservation and protection of this military and cultural heritage site.
- Optimised tourism potential of the Castle of Good Hope.
- Optimised accessibility to the Castle of Good Hope by the public.
- Increased public profile and positive perception across all sectors of the community.

The board's total budget for 2019/20 was R8.4 million.

Role players

National Conventional Arms Control Committee (NCACC)

The NCACC is a committee of Ministers. The Minister of Defence and Military Veterans is a member of the NCACC. The committee oversees policy and sets control mechanisms for the South African arms trade. It also ensures that arms-trade policies conform to internationally accepted practices.

Companies interested in exporting arms have to apply for export permits, thereafter the Ministry of Defence and Military Veterans processes the applications. Each application is sent for scrutiny to relevant government departments, such as the DIRCO or the dtic. The application is then referred to the various directors-general for their recommendations, after which the NCACC makes the final decision.

An independent inspectorate ensures that all levels of the process are subject to independent scrutiny and supervision, and are conducted in accordance with the policies and guidelines of the NCACC. The inspectorate submits periodic reports to the Joint Standing Committee on Defence.

Aerospace, Maritime and Defence Industries Association of South Africa (AMD)

The AMD's primary objective is to represent the South African industry in matters of mutual interest in pursuit of profitability, sustainability and responsible corporate citizenship. The association is acknowledged as the only trade association of the South African Defence Industries (SADI), and is mandated by its members to promote and champion the collective interests of the industry.

It comprises a cluster of leading companies in the South African private and public sector that supply defence materiel, products and services. The AMD member companies supply products and services to the DoD, government organisations and other contractors, locally and internationally, in the defence and security marketplace.

As the SADI is one of the cornerstones of a stable and growing the South African economy, the AMD is responsible for ensuring that a world-class, indigenous defence industry capability is maintained in a sustainable manner.

Within an emerging defence industry support framework, the DoD, in collaboration with the Armscor and the AMD, will continue providing effective support to enable SADI to exploit export opportunities within the South African political and legal context. The services range from information-sharing on possible opportunities to facilitating the provision of defence personnel, facilities and equipment for use by the SADI in demonstrations for export purposes. The AMD, through its membership, is strategically well positioned and capable of supporting the government in achieving its African Union Development Agency-New Partnership for Africa's Development objectives.

Denel Group of South Africa

Denel is a state-owned commercially driven company and strategic partner for innovative defence, security and related technology solutions. It groups together several defence and aerospace divisions and associated companies. It provides turnkey solutions of defence equipment to its clients by designing, developing, integrating and supporting artillery, munitions, missiles, aerostructures, aircraft maintenance, unmanned aerial vehicle systems and optical payloads based on high-end technology.

The *Defence Review 2014* calls for Denel to be the custodian of critical strategic and sovereign capabilities, especially in command and control and the maritime environment. The recent establishment of the Denel Integrated Systems and Maritime Division enables it to move rapidly into areas that are of strategic importance for South Africa's future security. This division has given Denel a strong initial foothold in the naval defence environment and the company is confident that it will become a catalyst in a number of maritime defence acquisition programmes that are currently in the pipeline. Denel is in the process of acquiring a stake in a defence command-and-control business in line with its strategic intent.

Military Veterans

The DMV derives its mandate from the Military Veterans Act, 2011 (Act 18 of 2011), which requires the department to provide national policy and standards on socio-economic support to military veterans and their dependants, including benefits and entitlements to help realise a dignified, unified, empowered and self-sufficient community of military veterans.

In acknowledging the role military veterans played in the creation of a democratic South Africa, the DMV contributes to the realisation of the NDP's vision of a capable and ethical developmental state that treats its citizens with dignity.

Over the medium term, the DMV will continue to deliver key benefits such as housing, education, training, skills development and access to healthcare to military veterans and their dependants; and implementing initiatives to improve the delivery of the services it provides. These activities support Priority 2 (education, skills and health) and Priority 5 (social cohesion and safe communities) of government's 2019 – 2024 MTSF.

Delivering key benefits

To improve quality of life for military veterans and their dependants, almost 80% (R1.7 billion) of the DMV's budget is allocated for the delivery of key benefits.

To give effect to the recognition that the provision of adequate housing is central to upholding human dignity, the department expects to deliver 2 130 newly built houses to military veterans and their families at a projected cost of R161.4 million over the medium term in the Socio-economic Support programme.

The DMV's commitment to social upliftment through education is underscored by its commitment to providing 7 400 bursaries per year over the MTEF period to military veterans and their dependants at a projected cost of R465 million. It also plans to offer training and skills development programmes (such as driver training, short courses and hard skills through accredited service providers) to a targeted 16 500 military veterans and their dependants at an estimated cost of R148.8 million over the MTEF period, in the Empowerment and Stakeholder Management programme.

To enhance quality of life for military veterans, the DMV subsidises their healthcare in full. Over the previous MTEF period, the department focused on conducting campaigns to increase awareness among eligible beneficiaries on the benefits available to them.

As a result, the number of military veterans with access to healthcare services is set to increase from 18 000 in 2019/20 to 21 000 in 2022/23, leading to an increase in spending of 8.5%, from R96.1 million in 2019/20 to R122.7 million in 2022/23.

Improving service delivery

The DMV plans to create an automated database of military veterans and implement a benefit management system to streamline its delivery of benefits, and improve the credibility, integrity and security of the register of military veterans.

The creation of the database and implementation of the system are expected to result in expenditure of R57 million in the Database and Benefits Management subprogramme in the Socio-economic Support programme.

Over the MTEF period, the DMV also expects to finalise and implement its education, transport, compensation and pension policies. These have been developed to align with existing policies in other government departments, provinces and municipalities in order to strengthen intergovernmental relations and increase access to services for military veterans and their dependants throughout the country, particularly in rural areas.

The finalisation and implementation of these policies are expected to regularise and facilitate the rollout of benefits, as provided for in the Military Veterans Act of 2011. To complete this work, a projected R68.9 million has been allocated in the Strategic Planning, Policy Development and Monitoring and Evaluation subprogramme in the Administration programme.

Budget

The DMV was allocated R652.6 million in the 2019/20 financial year.

State Security Agency (SSA)

The mandate of the SSA is to provide the government with intelligence on domestic and foreign threats or potential threats to national stability, the Constitutional order, and the safety and wellbeing of citizens. The threats include terrorism, sabotage and subversion. This allows the government to implement policies to deal with potential threats and to better understand existing threats and thus improve their policies.

Among the areas of focus for the SSA are the following matters of national interest:

- Terrorism – deliberate and premeditated attempts to create terror through symbolic acts involving the use or threats of lethal force for creating psychological effects that will influence a target group or individual and translate it into political or material results.
- Sabotage – activities or purposeful omissions conducted or planned for purposes of endangering the safety, security or defence of vital public or private property, such as installations, structures, equipment or systems.
- Subversion – includes activities directed towards undermining by covert unlawful acts, or directed towards, or intended ultimately to lead to the destruction or overthrow by violence of Constitutionally established systems of government in South Africa.
- Espionage – unlawful or unauthorised activities conducted for acquiring information or assets relating to sensitive social, political, economic, scientific or military matters of South Africa or for their unauthorised communication to a foreign state.
- Organised Crime – includes analysis of the origins and reasons behind organised crime, the identification of key role players, the nature and extent, as well as the modus operandi of organised crime syndicates.

Legislation

The legislative mandates are:

- the General Intelligence Laws Amendment Act, 2013 (Act 11 of 2013);
- the Gazetted Proclamation (Government Gazette No 32566);
- the Intelligence Services Act, 2002 (Act 65 of 2002);
- the Ministerial Notices (No 32576);
- the Intelligence Services Regulations, 2003 (Government Gazette No 25592);
- the National Strategic Intelligence Act of 1994;
- the Intelligence Services Oversight Act, 1994 (Act 40 of 1994);
- the *White Paper on Intelligence, 1994*;
- the Protection of State Information Bill, 2011;
- the Diplomatic Immunities and Privileges Act, 2007 (Act 37 of 2001);
- the Regulation of Foreign Military Assistance Act, 1998 (Act 15 of 1998);
- the Defence Act of 2002;
- the SAPS Act of 1995;
- the Financial Intelligence Centre Act of 2001;
- the Regulation of Interception of Communications and Provision of Communication-related Information Act, 2002 (Act 70 of 2002); and
- the Auditor-General Act, 1995 (Act 12 of 1995).

Domestic Branch

The National Strategic Intelligence Act of 1994 defines the primary functions of the National Intelligence Agency (NIA) as being to gather, correlate, evaluate and analyse domestic intelligence to:

- identify any threat or potential threat to the security of the country or its people;
- supply intelligence regarding any such threat to the National Intelligence Coordinating Committee (NICOC);
- gather departmental intelligence at the request of any interested department of state, and without delay to transmit such intelligence to the relevant department;
- fulfil the national counter-intelligence responsibility and, for this purpose, to conduct and coordinate counter-intelligence to gather, correlate, evaluate, analyse and interpret information regarding counter-intelligence to identify any threat or potential threat to the security of the country or its people;
- inform the President of any such threat; and
- supply (where necessary) intelligence relating to any such threat to the SAPS for the purposes of investigating any offence or alleged offence.

In view of these functions, the NIA Domestic Branch is responsible for the following:

- To fulfil a proactive, anticipatory or early warning role of scanning and assessing the total (economic, social, political and environmental) domestic security situation to identify and report to the policy maker or executive departments any signs or warning signals of threats or potential threats to the Constitutional order and the safety of the people.
- To perform a reactive monitoring role of tracking events when a threat/crime has been identified or a crisis has already arisen, without duplication of the role of the other executive departments. The purpose of this monitoring role is mainly to enhance investigation and prosecution by providing tactical information and intelligence to enforcement and prosecution institutions and to decide the extent and the implications

of threats or potential threats to the national security of the country and the safety of South Africans.
- To provide an integrated multi-analytical strategic projective assessment of patterns, trends and of security-relevant issues, to provide strategic early warning and to enhance the NIA's support/involvement in policy formulation.

Foreign Branch

The Foreign Branch is a national intelligence structure. Its functions include:
- gathering, correlating, evaluating and analysing foreign intelligence, excluding foreign military intelligence, to identify any threat or potential threat to the security of South Africa or its people and to supply intelligence relating to any such threat to the NICOC;
- instituting counter-intelligence measures within the service and, in consultation with the service, counter-intelligence measures outside South Africa; and
- gathering intelligence at the request of any interested national department, and without delay to evaluate and transmit such intelligence and any other intelligence at the disposal of the service and which constitutes departmental intelligence to the department concerned and to the NICOC.

The Foreign Branch is, therefore, responsible for:
- fulfilling a proactive, anticipatory or early warning role of scanning and assessing the total (economic, social, political and environmental) foreign environment to identify and report to the policy maker any signs or warning signals of threats or potential threats to the Constitutional order and the safety of the people;
- providing the Executive with developments in the foreign environment that are likely to have an impact on the image, territorial integrity as well as the security of the country and its citizens;
- offering advice on opportunities that exist in the external environment that should be exploited to enhance South Africa's national interest, be it in the political, economic, social or international relations sphere;
- offering advice on security threats against personnel, interests, strategic installations and assets of the country abroad; and
- conducting security screening investigations on its personnel as well as those of other departments identified for posting abroad.

Intelligence Academy

The Intelligence Academy, under the SSA, has a mandate to provide quality intelligence training to members of the intelligence community.

National Communications

The National Communications Branch of the SSA comprises the Electronic Communications Security (Pty) Ltd (Comsec), the National Communications Centre and the Office for Interception Centre (OIC). The Comsec and the OIC are externally focused as they render services to organs of the State.

Electronic Communications Security

The Comsec was established in 2002 as a private company – Civilian Intelligence Community – with the primary purpose of ensuring that critical electronic communications of the State are secure and protected. Through presidential proclamation in 2009, the Comsec was pronounced a government component, effectively transferring its Information Communications Technology (ICT) functions to the SSA.

Its functions include:
- protecting and securing electronic communications of national importance against security threats;
- conducting periodic analysis of the state of ICT security and advising the Minister of State Security of such analysis; and
- identifying and providing security to the critical electronic communications infrastructure of organs of state.

The Comsec offers the following ICT security services:
- Managed security services.
- Secure communications.
- Risk management and assurance services.

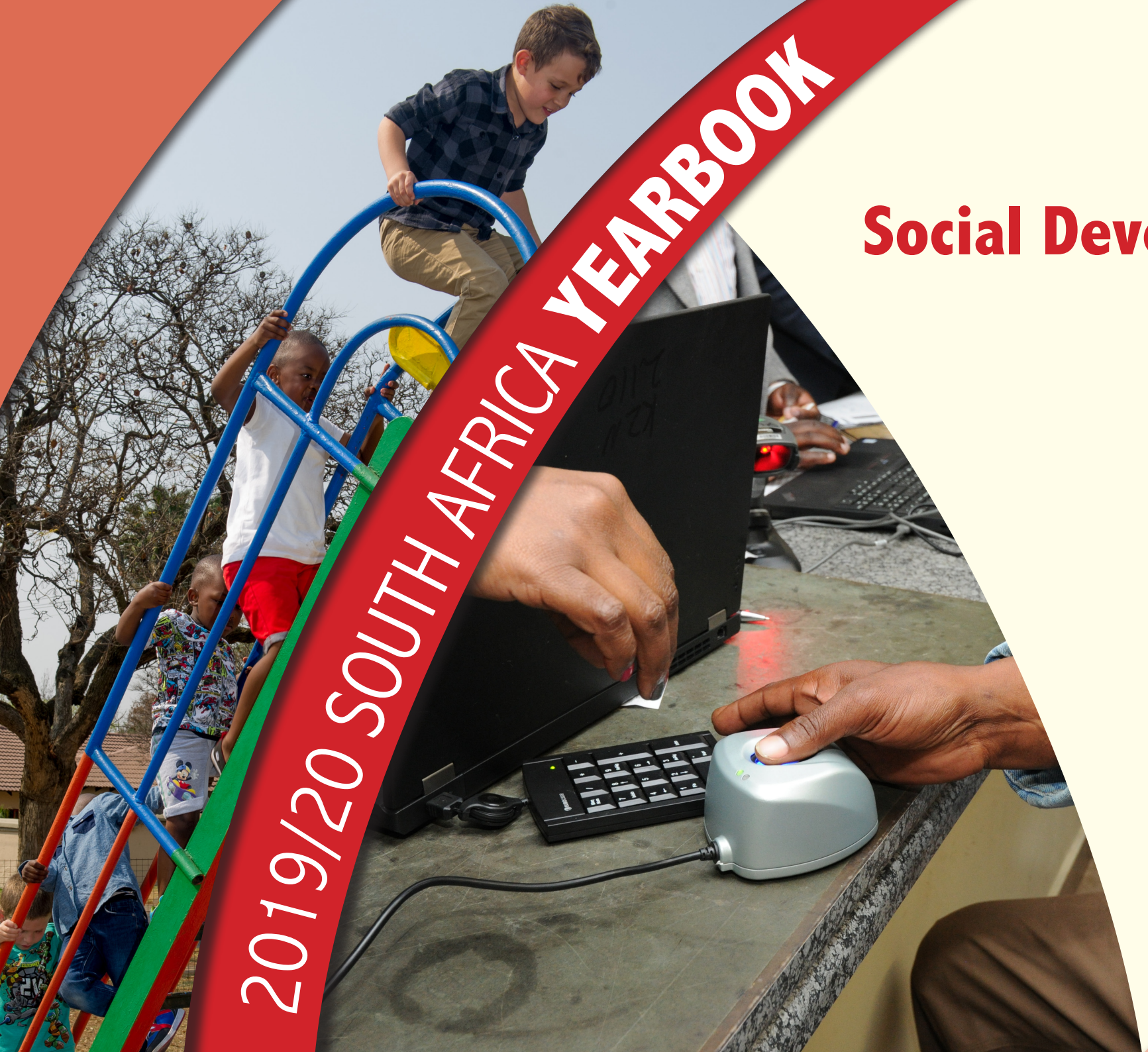
Office for Interception Centre

The OIC was established in terms of the Regulation of Interception of Communications and Provision of Communication-Related Act of 2002. The OIC provides a centralised interception service to law enforcement agencies involved in combating threats to national security. Interception was previously conducted independently by the Law Enforcement Agency, which may have resulted in duplication of work and resources.

The formation of the OIC centralises interception activities and paves the way for better management of interception in an effort to increase efficiency, minimise duplication of resources and costs, and regulate and control the interception environment.

Vetting services

Part of the SSA's objective is to conduct vetting for all government departments in a user-friendly and speedy manner, in line with its counter-intelligence mandate that ensures that the department creates conditions of security, which enable government and key state entities to do their work.



2019/20 SOUTH AFRICA YEARBOOK

Social Development

Social Development

The Department of Social Development (DSD) provides social protection services and leads government efforts to forge partnerships through which vulnerable individuals, groups and communities become capable and self-reliant participants in their own development. The mission is to transform society by building conscious and capable citizens through the provision of comprehensive, integrated and sustainable social development services.

The National Development Plan (NDP) acknowledges the need to address the critical challenges of poverty, unemployment and inequality to improve short-term and long-term prospects of current and future generations. In its efforts to give expression to this guiding policy, the DSD aims to improve quality of life for poor and vulnerable people and, in so doing, contributes to Priority 3 (consolidating the social wage through reliable and quality basic services) and Priority 6 (a capable, ethical and developmental state) of government's 2019 – 2024 Medium Term Strategic Framework (MTSF). Over the medium term, the DSD will focus on reducing poverty and inequality; increasing access to early childhood development (ECD) services; reducing social ills and empowering individuals, families and communities; and creating a functional, efficient and integrated social development sector.

South Africa has made good progress in building social cohesion and promoting a new single national identity. The biggest barrier to increasing social cohesion is the remaining inequality in society, which needs to be attended to.

More than half of all households in South Africa benefit from government's social assistance programme.

Comprehensive social security alleviates and reduces poverty, vulnerability, social exclusion and inequality through a comprehensive social protection system.

Empowering young and old people, those with disabilities as well as women in particular, helps rebuild families and communities.

Welfare services create and provide social protection to the most vulnerable of society, through the delivery of social welfare services via provincial government and non-profit organisation (NPO) structures.

Reducing poverty and inequality

As one of the chief departments responsible for alleviating poverty and providing assistance to vulnerable individuals and communities, the DSD implements and supports programmes focused on food relief, capacity building, and response to social distress. The department will continue to provide social assistance to eligible individuals whose income and assets fall below set thresholds through social grants administered by the South African Social Security Agency (SASSA). By the end of 2019/20, an estimated 18 million beneficiaries, including elderly people, war veterans, people with disabilities and children, were expecte to receive monthly grants. This number is expected to increase to 18.9 million by 2022/23. Such social assistance, in the form of unconditional monthly cash transfers, constitute an estimated 95% (R605.2 billion) of the department's budget of R636.4 billion over the Medium Term Expenditure Framework (MTEF) period. As a result of lower inflation forecasts, compared to the 2019 budget and delays in the implementation of the Extended Child Support Grant (CSG) for orphans, Cabinet approved reductions to the DSD's baseline of R4.2 billion over the medium term. Despite these reductions, spending on social assistance is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 7.2%, from R175.2 billion in 2019/20 to R216 billion in 2022/23.

The department acknowledges that continued reliance on social assistance from the State as the only form of income is not sustainable. There is a need for the government to continue to develop and implement programmes that support the poor and vulnerable to establish their own income-generating activities, with a specific focus on young people and women. The department seeks to build capacity in the sector by providing training to cooperatives, providing operational support to NPOs, creating work opportunities through the Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP), and engaging key stakeholders on establishing sustainable livelihood and employment opportunities for social grant beneficiaries. Expenditure for these activities is within an allocation of R32.1 million over the MTEF period in the Community Development subprogramme in the Social Policy and Integrated Service Delivery programme.

Increasing access to ECD services

In recognising that a good foundation to learning and capacity development forms part of a long-term solution to reducing inequality, ensuring universal access to ECD services for children aged younger than five remains a key priority for the DSD over the medium term. As such, an estimated 70.4% (R3.2 billion) of spending in the Welfare Services Policy Development and Implementation Support programme over the medium term is allocated to the ECD Grant to provinces, resulting in an increase in spending in the programme from R1.0 billion in 2019/20 to R1.5 billion in 2022/23 at an average annual rate of 14.2%. This allocation will enable the department to increase the subsidy rate per child from R15 in 2019/20 to R18.57 in 2022/23 and provide access to ECD services to an estimated 692 469 children by 2022/23.

Reducing social ills and empowering individuals, families and communities

Violence against women and children continues to affect the wellbeing of people, families and communities. Its prevalence requires a concomitant response from government, civil society organisations and broader society. In the department's efforts to address this social ill, it will use an allocation of R398.1 million over the medium term to employ and sustain the employment of 200 social workers in areas where they are most needed. This allocation previously focused on providing scholarships to social work students and has been shifted from the Welfare Services Policy Development and Implementation Support programme to the provincial equitable share. In addition, R315.9 million is shifted from the national budget to provinces to continue supporting implementing agencies in the delivery of programmes focused on addressing social and structural drivers of HIV, sexually transmitted infections, tuberculosis and gender-based violence (GBV).

The DSD plans to design a standardised welfare package to improve the quality of services offered and adequately respond to an increasing number of reported social problems. The package will include essential minimum psychosocial support, and norms and standards for substance abuse, violence against women and children, and other problems affecting families and

communities. Spending for this work is in the HIV and AIDS subprogramme, which has a budget of R93.1 million over the MTEF period, in the Welfare Services Policy Development and Implementation Support programme.

Creating a functional, efficient and integrated social development sector

Whereas provincial departments, the SASSA and the National Development Agency (NDA) are mainly responsible for service delivery, the DSD has a responsibility to develop legislation and policies. Accordingly, over the MTEF period, the department will prioritise the transformation and standardisation of social welfare services by developing and coordinating overarching policies and legislative frameworks, norms and standards that promote integrated, quality-driven, professional and accountable service delivery, with the ultimate aim of improving quality of life for poor and vulnerable people. Spending for these activities is in the Welfare Services Policy Development and Implementation Support programme, which has a total budget of R4.2 billion over the medium term.

Legislation and frameworks

Several pieces of legislation determine the mandate of the DSD:

- the Children's Act, 2005 (Act 38 of 2005), which sets out principles relating to the care and protection of children, and defines parental responsibilities and rights. It deals with ECD drop-in centres and early intervention; children in alternative care such as foster care, child and youth care centres; and the adoption of children;
- the NPOs Act, 1997 (Act 71 of 1997), which establishes an administrative and regulatory framework within which NPOs can conduct their affairs, and provides for their registration by the DSD;
- the Older Persons Act, 2006 (Act 13 of 2006), which establishes a framework for empowering and protecting older people, and promoting and maintaining their status, rights, wellbeing, safety and security. It provides for older people to enjoy good quality services while staying with their families and in their communities for as long as possible. It also makes provision for older people to live in residential care facilities;
- the Prevention of and Treatment for Substance Abuse Act, 2008 (Act 70 of 2008), which regulates substance abuse services and facilities;
- the Social Assistance Act, 2004 (Act 13 of 2004), which provides a legislative framework for providing social assistance. The Act sets out the different types of grants payable, as well as their qualifying criteria;
- the Social Service Professions Act, 1978 (Act 110 of 1978), which provides for the regulation of social service professionals;
- the *1997 White Paper for Social Welfare* sets out the principles, guidelines, policies and programmes for developmental social welfare in South Africa. It provides the foundation for social welfare in the post-1994 era;
- the *1998 White Paper on Population Policy for South Africa* is aimed at promoting the sustainable development of all South Africans by integrating population issues with development planning in all spheres of government and all sectors of society; and
- the *2015 White Paper on the Rights of Persons with Disabilities* focuses on putting in place measures to reduce the exclusion and inequality disabled people experience. This includes contributing towards fighting poverty among people with disabilities and their families, and providing policy guidelines on building capacity in the public sector to deliver equitable and accessible services to these people.

Budget

For the 2019/20 financial year, the DSD was allocated R184.7 billion.

Entities

South African Social Security Agency

The SASSA Act, 2004 (Act 9 of 2004) provides for the establishment of the SASSA, the objectives of which are to ensure the effective and efficient administration, management and payment of social assistance. The agency's core business is to administer and pay social assistance transfers. It has a large network of centres where citizens can apply for social grants and manages a large system of payment services.

The agency provides social assistance to about 18 million poor South Africans through social grants. Since its inception in 1998/99, the CSG has grown from supporting 70 000 beneficiaries to more than 12 million in 2018/19, accounting for an estimated two-thirds of the total number of grants administered by the DSD. To optimise the delivery of services to the recipients of grants over the medium term, the agency will focus on investing in information and communications technology infrastructure, particularly biometric and business intelligence solutions, and reviewing its business model.

The agency plans to roll out a biometric solution to reduce fraud by strengthening beneficiary verification mechanisms and authentication. The planned upgrades will include facial recognition as an additional biometric identifier, and high-performance search and matching capabilities to efficiently scan an estimated 220 million beneficiary fingerprints in the database to identify potential duplicates. Eliminating the use of passwords to log into the grant application and payment system will further reduce the risk of fraud. Rollout is set to be completed in 2020/21 at a projected cost of R17.5 million.

To improve the quality of its financial reporting, the agency will invest in a business intelligence solution to verify that all payments to grant recipient bank accounts were successful and match claims from the South African Post Office. This solution is expected to allow data to be profiled comprehensively and effectively to support transactional, operational and analytical workloads regardless of source, volume or latency. To implement the solution, and for deployment costs and post-implementation support and maintenance, R155.5 million has been set aside over the medium term.

The SASSA plans to conduct a business review to assess whether processes, structures and systems are appropriately configured to deliver on its mandate. This review is critical in light of recent developments such as a review of the grants value chain and the insourcing of some of the functions that were performed by the previous payment service provider. It is envisaged that the review will be concluded by 2021/22.

As administering grants is labour intensive, spending on compensation of employees comprises an estimated 46.7% (R11.7 billion) of the agency's total expenditure over the medium

term, increasing from R3.7 billion in 2019/20 to R4 billion in 2022/23 at an average annual rate of 3%. The remainder goes towards goods and services, for essential operational requirements such as building leases, security, cleaning and computer services. The agency derives 99.9% of its revenue through transfers from the department. These are expected to increase from R7.6 billion in 2019/20 to R8.3 billion in 2022/23 at an average annual rate of 3.2%.

National Development Agency

The primary focus of the NDA is on strengthening the institutional capacity of civil society organisations that provide services to poor communities. The agency also promotes consultation and dialogue between civil society and the State, debates policy development, and conducts research. The agency's projected expenditure for 2019/20 was R213.9 million.

In September 2020, the SASSA launched an online grant application portal, making it possible for applicants to apply for certain social grants through this platform.

The pilot project covers the child support, older persons and foster child grants. The online method saves grant applicants the inconvenience of standing in queues at the SASSA offices. It also eliminates the risk of spreading COVID-19 because there will be no need to gather at public places when applying.

This remote self-service option is available on computers and mobile phones. The turnaround time is 10 days, provided the applicant supplies all stipulated documents.

Programmes and projects

Social Assistance

Over the medium term, the programme intends to provide social assistance to eligible beneficiaries whose income and assets fall below the set thresholds by providing income support, by 2022/23, to four million elderly people; one million people with with disabilities; 13.4 million children; 163 882 children with disabilities requiring care and support services; and 284 844 foster children. Its subprogrammes includes:

- Old Age, which provides income support to people aged 60 and older earning less than R86 280 (single) or R172 560 (married) a year, whose assets do not exceed R1 227 600 (single) or R2 455 200 (married).
- War Veterans, which provides income support to men and women who fought in World War II or the Korean War who earn an annual income of less than R86 280 (single) or R172 560 (married) a year, whose assets do not exceed R1 227 600 (single) or R2 455 200 (married).
- Disability, which provides income support to people with permanent or temporary disabilities earning less than R86 280 (single) or R172 560 (married) a year, whose assets do not exceed R1 227 600 (single) or R2 455 200 (married).
- Foster Care, which provides grants for children placed in foster care through a court order.
- Care Dependency, which provides income support to caregivers earning less than R223 200 (single) or R446 400 (married) a year to help them care for children who are mentally or physically disabled.
- Child Support, which provides income support to parents and caregivers of children younger than 18 earning not more than R53 400 (single) or R106 800 (married) a year.
- Grant-in-Aid, which is an additional benefit to recipients of the old age, disability or war veterans grants who require regular care.
- Social Relief of Distress, which provides temporary income support, food parcels and other forms of relief to people experiencing undue hardship.

Social Security Policy and Administration

The programme provides for social security policy development and the fair administration of social assistance. Its objective, over the medium term, is to ensure the fair administration of social assistance by:

- amending the Social Assistance Act of 2004, the SASSA Act of 2004 and the Fundraising Act, 1978 (Act 107 of 1978) to address gaps and inconsistencies in the legislation by March 2021; and
- completing the *White Paper on Comprehensive Social Security* to extend social assistance coverage and introduce a social insurance cover for all workers in formal and informal sectors by March 2023.

Its subprogrammes include:

- Social Security Policy Development, which develops and reviews social assistance policies and legislation, and contributory income support aimed at protecting households against life cycle contingencies such as unemployment, ill health, retirement, disability, or the death of a breadwinner.
- Appeals Adjudication, which seeks to provide fair and just adjudication services for social assistance appeals.
- Social Grants Administration, which provides for the SASSA's operational costs for administering social grants, the management information system and the reimbursement of payment contractors.
- Social Grants Fraud Investigations, which funds fraud investigations through the SASSA's special investigations unit.

Welfare Services Policy Development and Implementation Support

The purpose of the programme is to create an enabling environment for the delivery of equitable developmental welfare services through the formulation of policies, norms, standards and best practices; and the provision of support to implementing agencies. Its objective, over the medium term, include:

- Ensuring that individuals, families and communities are empowered and resilient to deal with the scourge of HIV and AIDS, drugs and violence by supporting non-profit institutions through the implementation of psychosocial support programmes and HIV prevention.
- Providing universal access to quality ECD services for children younger than five by March 2023, by developing a service delivery model that outlines government's approach to the delivery of ECD services and the role of each stakeholder, and providing training to trainers of the parenting programme to empower parents and caregivers.
- Transforming and standardising social welfare services by developing and coordinating overarching policies, legislative frameworks, and norms and standards that promote integrated, quality-driven, professional and accountable service delivery by March 2023.
- Ensuring improved human capacity for the sector by supporting the training of social work professionals and

facilitating their employment or absorption, and contributing to youth employment by March 2023.

- Rendering uniform and standardised adoption services, in line with the draft Children's Amendment Bill, by providing training to social workers employed by provincial departments of social development by March 2023.
- Ensuring that government continues to meet its obligations to observe, protect, realise and safeguard all children's rights and act in their best interests by finalising the amendment to the Children's Act, 2007 (Act 41 of 2007) by March 2023.
- Promoting, coordinating, facilitating and monitoring the implementation of children's constitutional rights through the Office on the Rights of the Child by March 2023.
- Facilitating the implementation of the guidelines on community-based prevention and early intervention services to vulnerable children by developing a monitoring tool and capacitating social workers and other stakeholders to render such services by March 2023.
- Regulating social service practices to ensure the delivery of professional and accountable social services and effective sector capability by finalising the draft Bill for social service practitioners by March 2021.
- Creating an improved, efficient and integrated social development service by facilitating the approval of a draft White Paper on social development, and the development of a draft social development Bill by March 2021.
- Providing regulation and guidance for the sector, and outline various models for the provision of psychosocial services in different settings by developing a policy on the provision of psychosocial services by March 2021.
- Ensuring that victims are moved from abusive environments to environments in which they can positively transform their lives and those of their dependants, by developing an intersectoral sheltering policy by March 2021.
- Reducing the high relapse rate and, ultimately, prevent the scourge of substance abuse in communities and families by capacitating social workers on the universal treatment curriculum for the treatment of substance abuse by March 2023.

Social Policy and Integrated Service Delivery

The purpose of the programme is to support community development and promote evidence-based policy making in the department and the social development sector. It's objectives, over the medium term, include:

- Increasing public trust and confidence through the effective, fair regulation of NPOs by administering the NPOs Act of 1997, developing a policy framework for these institutions, improving turnaround times for their registration, monitoring their compliance and facilitating the implementation of their funding policy and partnership to ensure uniformity in the sector.
- Standardising the implementation of community development in South Africa through an overarching community development policy and framework by March 2023.
- Empowering and strengthening the sector to deliver quality services to vulnerable and poor communities, and improving their quality of life by developing education and awareness programmes for NPOs by March 2021.
- Coordinating food and nutrition interventions, including centre-based feeding programmes, by providing nutritious food to the poor and vulnerable in partnership with civil society organisations, social partners and social agencies over the medium term.

Ten-Point Plan

The strategic plan of the DSD is informed by the Ten-Point Plan, which represents the priorities to be addressed by the social development sector. These are:

- Rebuilding of family, community and social relations: restoring the ethics of care and human development in all welfare programmes. This requires an urgent rebuilding of family, community and social relations in order to promote social integration.
- Integrated poverty eradication strategy: designing an integrated poverty eradication strategy that provides direct benefits to those in greatest need, especially women, youth and children in rural areas and informal settlements.
- Comprehensive social security system: developing a comprehensive social security system that builds on existing contributory and non-contributory schemes and prioritises the most vulnerable households.
- Violence against women and children, older persons and other vulnerable groups: responding to brutal effects of all forms of violence against women, children, older persons and other vulnerable groups, as well as designing effective strategies to deal with perpetrators.
- HIV and AIDS: programmes include a range of services to support community-based care and assistance for the people living with HIV and AIDS. Particular attention will be given to orphans and children infected and affected by HIV and AIDS.
- Youth Development: developing a national strategy to reduce the number of youth in conflict with the law and promoting youth development within the framework of the National Crime Prevention Strategy and in partnership with the National Youth Commission.
- Accessibility of social welfare services: making social welfare services accessible and available to people in rural, peri-urban and informal settlements, and ensuring equity in service provision.
- Services to people with disabilities: redesigning services to people with disabilities in ways that promote their human rights and economic development and working with people with disabilities to ensure that their needs are met without further marginalising them.
- Commitment to cooperative governance: work must be based on a commitment to cooperative governance that includes working with different spheres of government and civil society.
- Train, educate, re-deploy and employ a new category of workers in social development: this includes the re-orientation of social service workers to meet the challenges of South Africa and link these to regional and global demands.

Project Mikondzo

Project Mikondzo (which means "footprints" in Xitsonga) compels office-bound officials from the DSD, the NDA and the SASSA to join frontline officials to interact with communities in a bid to tackle social problems such as poverty, malnutrition, violence against women and child-headed households.

The project includes an audit of ECD centres and the setting up of a command centre with a toll-free hotline open 24 hours a day, seven days a week. It also includes a substance abuse awareness campaign targeting sports and music events, the targeting of GBV and the strengthening of NPOs.

The project helps government reach about two million children who qualify for CSGs, but have not registered with SASSA to receive grants.

The DSD trains caregivers to improve assistance to child and youth-headed households.

The government continues to implement the service-delivery initiatives, Project Mikondzo and the Integrated Community Registration Outreach Programme to improve the sector's services and increase access to social assistance for impoverished communities.

Expanded Public Works Programme

The EPWP is a nationwide programme under the auspices of government and state-owned enterprises. The programme provides an important avenue for labour absorption and income transfers to poor households in the short to medium term. It is also a deliberate attempt by public sector bodies to use expenditure on goods and services to create job opportunities for the unemployed.

The EPWP projects employ workers on a temporary or ongoing basis either by the government, contractors or non-governmental organisations (NGOs) under the Ministerial Conditions of Employment for the EPWP or learnership employment conditions.

The Vuk'uphile Learnership Programme is an EPWP Contractor Development programme. It is a subprogramme of the EPWP infrastructure sector which is aimed at training and developing emerging contractors within the construction industry.

The programme develops the administrative, technical, contractual, managerial and entrepreneurial skills of the learners within a learner-contracting entity. The Vuk'uphile Learnership Programme uses labour-intensive methods of construction.

The EPWP Knowledge Management Committee is composed of various national government departments such as Social Development, Environmental Affairs, and Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs, with the Department of Public Works and Infrastructure (DPWI) leading the committee.

Knowledge management is a process of creating, acquiring, capturing and using knowledge wherever it resides to enable learning and performance in an organisation.

A three-day EPWP Social Sector Conference was held from 2 – 4 March 2020 in Pretoria. During the conference, a call was made for young people who have completed their social work studies to be given opportunities in the EPWP, to gain experience while looking for employment.

Whilst the DPWI must continue with its role of coordinating the EPWP nationally, the DSD will drive the implementation of EPWP projects in the social sector space.

Some of the key resolutions that came out of the conference include:

- reviewing the current programme design and making necessary adjustments to encourage pathway model;
- facilitating the development of sound business plans for a social sector programme;
- formalising a convergence coordination platform with other EPWP sectors; and
- establishing the role of infrastructure in supporting social sector projects in relation to social infrastructure.

War on Poverty Campaign

The Cooperative Shop Project is aimed at combating poverty by linking social grant beneficiaries (particularly the caregivers of children receiving CSGs) and other vulnerable groups to meaningful socio-economic opportunities. The DSD and its entities identifies cooperatives that need support, with the intention of developing skills of the members of the cooperative to ensure they are able to produce goods of quality.

The project is in line with the developmental agenda of the government and could be seen as an addition to the grants that are provided. The primary intention is not to take people out of the grant system but to provide opportunities for grant beneficiaries to supplement their income.

Food for All Programme

The DSD is tasked with facilitating and monitoring the implementation of the Food for All programme.

To this end, distressed households were being provided with food through the DSD and the FoodForward SA programme.

While this provides short-term relief for poor households, the government recognises that longer-term solutions are needed.

The government is committed to improving its efforts at ensuring food security for all in the country, starting with vulnerable households and communities.

To this end, households have been assisted in establishing food gardens to produce their own food, thus participating in their own development.

National Family Policy

The DSD is tasked with implementing the National Family Policy, and provides training in family-preservation services, marriage preparation and enrichment, parenting/primary care-giving and families in crisis to service providers in the area of family services.

The *2013 White Paper on Families* emphasises the need for all to build strong families that protect the most vulnerable members of society.

The purpose of the White Paper is to provide a platform for all South Africans to engage and exchange views on how to build stable families.

It also addresses some of the challenges faced by individuals in families, including the abuse of women and children, the elderly as well as people with disabilities.

National Minimum Wage (NMW)

The NMW came into effect on 1 January 2019. The minimum wage, which is set at R20.76 an hour, is an achievement for a young democracy like South Africa which is striving to overcome a legacy of poverty and severe inequality. It is part of a broader engagement among social partners on how to reduce wage inequality and promote labour stability in South Africa.

The minimum wages for domestic and farm workers were initially set at R15.57 and R18.68 an hour respectively. This will be adjusted to reach the NMW within two years of implementation. For workers who still earn below the NMW

level, legislation provided for a transition until all employers are subjected to the NMW.

Food banks

FoodBank SA is now known as FoodForward SA. It collects edible surplus food from manufacturers, wholesalers and retailers, and redistributes it to verified NPOs that collectively feed thousands of hungry people daily. FoodForward SA works with over 600 member beneficiary organisations that in turn feed over 175 000 people daily. At least 85% of the beneficiary organisations undertake skills development, education or remedial activities.

HIV and AIDS Youth Programme

Isibindi is a programme which deploys child and youth care workers in communities to assist children in vulnerable homes. Isibindi has a special focus on Grade 12 learners.

The assistance by Isibindi child and youth care workers ensures that children remain in school and attend classes. The child and youth care workers support these children and make sure that they are relieved from household responsibilities, including being parents to their siblings while they are trying to pass Grade 12.

Almost 300 Isibindi projects have been replicated across South African provinces, serving over 100 000 children who would otherwise have fallen outside of the care and protection matrix. Including quality assurance mechanisms, and a community development approach, the Isibindi model has received public acclaim, and is currently being scaled up through a South African government initiative. Additional components of the model include a young women's empowerment program, a young men's empowerment program, a non-centre based ECD model and a disability model – all of which enable progressive realisation of a wide range of children's rights and protection needs, through effective deployment of community-based child and youth care workers.

HIV and AIDS Advocacy, Awareness and Outreach Programme

Achieving a meaningful and clear understanding of the scientific facts about HIV and AIDS will lead to individual self-management regarding the risk of HIV infection.

The awareness programme has the following main pillars:

- disclosure;
- communication;
- rights; and
- facilitation.

The programme also deals with the physical and emotional consequences of HIV and AIDS. It addresses the following challenges:

- the lack of accurate and current information on HIV and AIDS;
- the lack of access to care, support, treatment and new healthcare developments; and
- discrimination against the infected and affected.

The programme aims to involve people living with HIV and AIDS in initiatives that directly help affected and infected people to alleviate stigmatisation.

Victim Empowerment Programme

South Africa's Victim Empowerment Policy is based upon the concept of restorative justice.

Victim empowerment is a means of facilitating access to a range of services for all people who have individually or collectively suffered harm, trauma and/or material loss through violence, crime, natural disaster, human accident and/or through socio-economic conditions.

It is the process of promoting the resourcefulness of victims of crime and violence by providing opportunities to access services available to them, as well as to use and build their own capacity and support networks and to act on their own choices.

National Directory on Services for Victims of Violence and Crime

The National Directory on Services for Victims of Violence and Crime is updated annually in collaboration with the provincial Victim Empowerment Policy managers or coordinators and their provincial counterparts.

Prevention and treatment of substance and drug abuse

Sobriety Week is a national campaign aimed at creating awareness among the general South African public, particularly the youth, women and pregnant women about the adverse effects of liquor abuse.

Sobriety Week incorporates the International Foetal Alcohol Syndrome Day, which is observed internationally on 9 September every year to highlight the irreversible damage caused to unborn babies when their mothers consume alcohol during pregnancy. The government recognises challenges such as unemployment, which result in people using and abusing alcohol.

Children and youth

The Home Community-Based Care (HCBC) programme is the centrepiece of government's interventions to build a protective and caring environment for vulnerable children.

Most services to orphans and vulnerable children are rendered through HCBC and include early identification of vulnerable children and their families, referrals, training of community caregivers and psychosocial support and material assistance.

This approach is geared towards keeping children within their families and communities. It is aimed at providing comprehensive care and support, which is complemented by proactive action at community level. This includes linking families with poverty alleviation projects and other services in the community, such as food security initiatives and ECD services.

In July 2020, the DSD, in partnership with the United States (US) Agency for International Development launched a government-to-government social and behaviour change programme for children.

Under the partnership, the US government has made funds available for the South African government to implement the DSD's flagship social and behavioural change programmes, including You Only Live Once (YOLO) and ChommY which target children and young people between the ages of 10 and 24.

YOLO and ChommY are part of the DSD's collection of social and behavioural change programmes that seek to reduce risky sexual behaviours to prevent new HIV infections.

The partnership will ensure that the DSD intensifies the programmes in KwaZulu-Natal and Gauteng for five years.

Child Labour Programme of Action (CLPA)

The CLPA is a national partnership initiated by government, and civil-society partners comprising organised business, organised labour and NGOs. It is let by the Department of Labour.

It is South Africa's roadmap towards the prevention, reduction and eventual elimination of child labour.

The CLPA was first adopted in 2003, after extensive consultation within government, with a wide range of organisations outside government and with groups of teenage children involved in different forms of child labour. The programme sets out specific actions to be taken and assigned responsibility for these actions.

Childline South Africa

Childline offers a 24-hour toll-free crisis line (08000 55 555) to children and families across South Africa. It provides immediate assistance to children and families in crisis who need counselling and information. Childline is an NPO that works to protect children from all forms of violence and create a culture of respect for children's rights.

Programmes delivered through the provincial offices include:

- a crisis line,
- child rights and education,
- training and education of volunteers,
- training of other professionals who work with child protection services and children,
- therapy for abused and traumatised children and their families,
- court preparation of child witnesses,
- networking and coordination,
- lobbying and advocacy, and
- analysis of law and policy.

Response to COVID-19

In March 2020, the government introduced an economic and social response to the COVID-19 pandemic. The economic response was divided into three phases. The first phase was the declaration of the coronavirus pandemic as a national disaster. This included a broad range of measures to mitigate the worst effects of the pandemic on businesses, communities and individuals.

The measures included tax relief, the release of disaster relief funds, emergency procurement, wage support through the Unemployment Insurance Fund (UIF) and funding to small businesses. The second phase of the economic response aimed to stabilise the economy, address the extreme decline in supply and demand, and protect jobs. As part of the phase, the government announced a massive social relief and economic support package of R500 billion – amounting to around 10% of the country's gross domestic product.

Additional funding of R20 billion was made available to municipalities for the provision of emergency water supply, increased sanitisation of public transport and facilities, and the provision of food and shelter for the homeless. The government also introduced a temporary six-month Coronavirus grant to reach the most vulnerable families in the country. It directed R50 billion towards relieving the plight of those who were desperately affected by the pandemic. CSG beneficiaries received an extra R300 in May 2020, and from June to October 2020 they received an additional R500 each month. All other grant beneficiaries received R250 per month for six months.

In addition, a special COVID-19 Social Relief of Distress Grant of R350 a month was paid to individuals who were unemployed and did not receive any other form of social grant or UIF payment.

The third phase was the economic strategy that the country expected to implement to drive the recovery of the economy as it emerged from the pandemic.

Central to the economic recovery strategy were measures put in place to stimulate demand and supply through interventions such as a substantial infrastructure build programme, the speedy implementation of economic reforms, the transformation of the economy and embarking on steps that would ignite inclusive economic growth.

Mobility and migration during COVID-19

According to the Social Impact of COVID-19 (Wave 3): Mobility, Migration, and Education in South Africa Survey by Statistics South Africa, nearly 6% of respondents changed their provincial residence during COVID-19 restrictions – a national lockdown period which began on 26 March 2020 where all South African residents, except a few categories of essential workers, had to stay home. About one-quarter of respondents indicated that they wanted to be closer to their family or friends.

Findings on inter-provincial travel showed that approximately 12% of respondents indicated that they travelled across provincial boundaries since the start of the restrictions. More than a quarter of these respondents indicated that they crossed provincial boundaries to attend funerals, while about 15% of respondents travelled to provide essential services, and approximately 13% travelled for non-essential work or business related travel. About 15% of respondents travelled to visit family or friends.

With regard to international migration, about 90% of the respondents indicated that they were born in South Africa (non-migrants), whilst about 9% were international migrants (respondents who indicated that they were born outside of South Africa).

Data pertaining to foreign-born respondents' countries of birth shows that almost half of lifetime migrants were born in Zimbabwe (22.6%) and Europe (22.6%). One-third of respondents were born in countries that are part of the Southern African Development Community (SADC) region.

Other areas featured were South America, North America, the rest of Africa (outside the SADC region) and Asia. More than 82% of migrant respondents remained in South Africa instead of returning to their countries of birth when COVID-19 restrictions were announced because they considered South Africa as their home, while 11% felt that the COVID-19 pandemic was global and that they would still be at risk even if they moved.

A total of 5% of migrant respondents indicated that they were concerned that if they left South Africa they would be unable to re-enter South Africa.

According to the survey, more than 20% of migrant respondents indicated that they did not send remittances during COVID-19 restrictions because they could not afford to send money.

The results show that, generally, migrant respondents were more vulnerable than non-migrant respondents. A much higher percentage of migrant respondents (22.5%) were unemployed as compared to non-migrants (9%).

Role players

Women, Youth and Persons with Disabilities

The Department of Women, Youth and Persons with Disabilities is situated in The Presidency. The department derives its

mandate from Section 9(3) of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996. It is required to champion socio-economic transformation and the empowerment and participation of women, youth and people with disabilities through mainstreaming, advocacy, and monitoring and evaluation.

The NDP envisages economic participation, education and skills development for women and other vulnerable groups, and the elimination of violence against women and children. This vision is given expression by Priority 1 (economic transformation and job creation), Priority 5 (social cohesion and safe communities) and Priority 6 (a capable, ethical and developmental state) of government's 2019 – 2024 MTSF. The work of this department is directly aligned with these priorities through facilitating the planning, budgeting, monitoring and evaluation, and auditing processes responsive to gender, youth and disability rights across the State. Accordingly, over the medium term, the department intends to focus on reducing GBV and femicide (GBVF), and strengthening the national gender machinery; making interventions for economic empowerment; engaging in responsive government-wide planning, budgeting, monitoring and evaluation; ensuring compliance with international commitments; promoting the rights of people with disabilities; and supporting the development of young people.

People with disabilities

The *2016 DSD White Paper on the Rights of Persons with Disabilities* (WPRPD) takes its cue from the Constitution and a number of international instruments, including the Convention on the Rights of Persons with Disabilities and its Optional Protocol, Vienna Declaration and Programme of Action, the Copenhagen Declaration and Programme of Action, and the sustainable development goals, which reaffirm the human rights of people with disabilities.

The White Paper is a crucial step along the journey of improving the lives of people with disabilities and moves the country closer to a fully inclusive society.

The White Paper:

- updates South Africa's *1997 White Paper on an Integrated National Disability Strategy;*
- integrates obligations of the United Nations (UN) Convention on the Rights of Persons with Disabilities, and in the Continental Plan of Action for the African Decade of Persons with Disabilities (both of which South Africa has signed), with South Africa's legislation, policy frameworks and the NDP;
- endorses a mainstreaming trajectory for realising the rights of persons with disabilities;
- provides clarity on and guides the development of standard operating procedures for mainstreaming disability;
- guides the review of all existing, and the development of new, sectoral policies, programmes, budgets and reporting systems, to bring these in line with both Constitutional and international treaty obligations;
- stipulates norms and standards for the removal of discriminatory barriers that perpetuate the exclusion and segregation of persons with disabilities; and
- outlines the responsibilities and accountabilities of the various stakeholders involved in providing barrier-free, appropriate, effective, efficient and coordinated service delivery to persons with disabilities, and guides self-representation of persons with disabilities.

It is intended to accelerate transformation and redress with regard to full inclusion, integration and equality for people with disabilities. South Africa had to collectively contribute to the empowerment of people with disabilities through accessible disability information services, inclusive ECD opportunities and accessible rehabilitation services.

This would enable people with disabilities to take up the opportunities created in much larger numbers, improving performance in achieving equity targets.

People with disabilities represent the voice of the sector in institutions such as the South African Human Rights Commission, the Commission on Gender Equality, the Board of the South African Broadcasting Corporation, the National Youth Development Agency and many transformation and developmental entities.

The South African experience has also helped to shape the UN Convention on the Rights of Persons with Disabilities and the Continental Plan for the African Decade of Persons with Disabilities. South Africa has been celebrating the International Day for People with Disabilities annually since 1997.

The vision of the WPRPD is the creation of a free and just society inclusive of all persons with disabilities as equal citizens. It commits duty bearers to realising the rights of persons with disabilities by:

- accelerating implementation of existing legislation that advocates equality for persons with disabilities;
- taking calculated action to ensure that their rights as equal persons are upheld;
- removing discriminatory barriers to access and participation;
- ensuring that universal design informs access and participation in the planning, budgeting and service delivery value chain of all programmes;
- recognising the right to self-representation;
- acknowledging that not all persons with disabilities are alike, and that personal circumstances, gender, age, sexuality, religious and cultural backgrounds, geographical location, requires different responses; and
- embedding the obligations contained in the UN Convention on the Rights of Persons with Disabilities in legislation, policy and service delivery.

The WPRPD is built on nine strategic pillars:

- Removing barriers to access and participation.
- Protecting the rights of persons at risk of compounded marginalisation.
- Supporting sustainable integrated community life.
- Promoting and supporting the empowerment of children, women, youth and persons with disabilities.
- Reducing economic vulnerability and releasing human capital.
- Strengthening the representative voice of persons with disabilities.
- Building a disability equitable state machinery.
- Promoting international cooperation.
- Monitoring and evaluation.

Blind SA

Blind SA is an organisation for the blind, and is governed by the blind. Situated in Johannesburg, it is aligned with other member organisations throughout South Africa.

Blind SA's main focus is to improve the quality of life of all South Africa's visually impaired people by empowering them through education.

Its objectives are to protect and promote the interests of people with visual impairment and enable all visually impaired people to achieve their optimal potential through independence; and by providing development care for and protecting the rights of those who, owing to circumstances beyond their control, are unable to do so themselves.

Orientation, mobility and skills development to blind and newly blinded people is an important aspect of the work undertaken by Blind SA.

The organisation provides, among other things, study bursaries for visually impaired students for further education, Braille publications in all South African official languages, Braille training that entails writing and reading, and orientation and mobility training.

The purpose of Blind SA is to end the cycle of poverty for blind South Africans, empowering them with knowledge and information through education, Braille and developmental services. It aims to break down barriers, provide opportunities and create answers that improve the quality of life for the blind community so that they can live the life they choose. Recent initiatives include Mali-Bhala – a money counter and signature guide. This locally created device comes in two standard sizes that are designed to fit either in a person's wallet or pocket. It is used as an indicator to differentiate between the five South African 'Mandela' bank notes and as a signature guide.

South African Braille Authority (SABA)

The SABA promotes and advocates for Braille and Braille-related matters in South Africa. Its purpose is to set and maintain standards for Braille in all 11 official languages of South Africa.

These standards relate to the development and maintenance of Braille codes; production of quality Braille; the teaching of, access to and promotion of Braille; Braille examinations; and many other Braille-related matters.

Members of the SABA include schools for the blind (approximately half the members), consumer organisations of the blind, student disability units, Braille producers and the South African Library for the Blind.

Through the SABA, South Africa is a member of the International Council on English Braille (ICEB).

The ICEB membership enables the country to stay abreast of and participate in international Braille-related matters.

South African National Council for the Blind (SANCB)

The SANCB is the coordinating body for over 100-member organisations that span the full spectrum of services offered for and to blind and partially sighted people throughout the country.

The SANCB comprises four core business areas, namely social development, the bureau for the prevention of blindness, education, and fund-raising and public relations.

To combat as much as 80% of avoidable blindness, the council regularly undertakes tours with its mobile eye care clinics to rural areas for eye screening, referrals and to perform cataract removal operations.

The SANCB provides entrepreneurial training, adult basic education and training, and facilitates skills training such as computer literacy and call centre programmes through its Optima College.

It is also affiliated to international organisations, including the African Union of the Blind and the World Blind Union.

Support for the deaf

South Africa's national organisation for the deaf is the Deaf Federation of South Africa (DeafSA). It acts as the national research, information and community action organisation on behalf of ± 1.5 million South Africans that are culturally and linguistically deaf, hard of hearing and deafblind.

DeafSA, formerly known as the South African National Council for the Deaf (SANCD), was founded in 1929. In 1995 the SANCD was transformed to a new democratically elected organisation, the DeafSA. This resulted in a paradigm shift from an organisation for the deaf to one of the deaf. The changes in the constitution and attitudes also meant that decisions about the services and affairs of deaf people were no longer taken by hearing people on behalf of deaf people – but by the deaf people. Currently, 100% of the National Executive Committee of DeafSA are deaf.

The organisation has nine provincial chapters throughout South Africa. An estimated 500 000 to 600 000 South Africans use the South African sign language. As sign language has grown in South Africa – particularly baby sign language – an NPO, Sign Language Education and Development, has been formed to promote the language.

Signing with hearing babies and children is being promoted through the Signsational Kids website.

South Africa has a long-established deaf education system.

The Institute for the Deaf in Worcester operates Deaf College South Africa, which trains deaf people for jobs.

In addition, the Bible College for the Deaf in Gauteng trains people to work in deaf ministry.

The University of the Witwatersrand in Johannesburg has a Centre for Deaf Studies. The centre offers programmes in deaf education and focuses on teaching, research and community service.

Among other services, the National Institute for the Deaf provides services for multiple disabled deaf, runs two deaf churches and provides audiological and mental health services.

A Deaf Child Centre at the Department of Paediatrics and Child Health at the University of Cape Town, provides pre-school education and community services. This centre also focuses on deafness research.

The Carel du Toit Centre, based in Cape Town, provides early childhood auditory-oral education.

In addition, the centre engages in community outreaches, helping families with hearing-related needs and more practical needs such as food.

A similar centre is the Eduplex in Pretoria. It provides auditory-oral pre-school and primary school educational services, teaching hearing and deaf children together and provides training to prospective teachers, audiologists and therapists.

In 2018, sign language was administered as a new subject for the first time during the National Senior Certificate examinations.

South African Sign Language Charter

In September 2020, the Pan South African Language Board (PanSALB) launched the South African Sign Language (SASL) Charter. With September being Deaf Awareness Month, the launch of the SASL Charter kickstarted various activities that were undertaken by the PanSALB in various parts of the country to raise awareness about this initiative.

The charter was conceptualised to address issues that relate to communication, access to information, facilities, and social justice for the deaf community, including the type of service provided by the SASL Charter interpreters in general.

The SASL Charter articulates the linguistic rights of deaf persons in South Africa and is aimed at creating conditions for the development of the SASL. It compels all government departments, and other organs of state, as well as private sector to make provisions for SASL interpreting. It also guarantees access to services by deaf persons through ensuring that essential service staff, such as social workers and police officers, receive advanced level training in SASL.

Older people

The DSD promotes a holistic approach to active ageing and well-being among the country's senior citizens. A number of initiatives have been rolled out by the departments of Social Development, Health, Tourism, Sport, Arts and Culture, and other stakeholders to promote general health among older persons, especially through sports to promote general well-being.

In 2008, the government implemented a national active ageing programme in line with the Madrid International Plan of Action on Ageing of 2002.

The Madrid Plan of Action offers a bold agenda for handling the issue of ageing in the 21st century. It focuses on three priority areas – older persons and development, advancing health and well-being into old age and ensuring enabling and supportive environments.

The Older Persons Act of 2006 aims to enhance the quality of life and improve the health of older persons by engaging them in programmes that promote social, physical, mental and emotional well-being to prevent or delay the onset of ageing challenges and keep illnesses related to old age at bay.

The Older Persons' Parliament takes place annually in October. It gives elders the opportunity to engage with the executive on critical issues affecting their lives.

Training and skills development

Recruitment and Retention Strategy for Social Workers

The Unemployed Social Workers Database informs the DSD about the number of unemployed social workers who have studied outside the DSD scholarship programme.

This aims to address the issue of qualified social workers who are unemployed.

The government has mandated the development of strategies to facilitate the recruitment and retention of such scarce skills. The DSD has been the main driver in the implementation of this social policy. In addition, the NDP indicates that 60 000 social workers will be needed by 2030 to serve the population.

Professionalising community development

The Council for Social Service Professions was established in terms of the Social Service Professions Act of 1978.

The key functions are:

- protecting and promoting the interests of the professions, in respect of which professional boards have been or are to be established and to deal with any matter relating to such interests;
- advising the Minister of Social Development on matters affecting the professions in respect of which professional boards have been established; and
- controlling and exercising authority regarding all financial matters relating to the council and the professional boards; and assisting in the promotion of social services.

2019/20 SOUTH AFRICA YEARBOOK

Sport, Arts and Culture

Sport, Arts and Culture

The Department of Arts and Culture merged with the Department of Sport and Recreation South Africa on 1 April 2020. The two departments are working together to implement action plans for different workstreams to develop organisational and programme structures for the new Department of Sport, Arts and Culture (DSAC).

The DSAC is mandated to provide leadership to the Sport, Arts and Culture sector to accelerate its transformation; oversee the development and management of sport, arts and culture in South Africa; legislate on sports participation, sports infrastructure and safety; improve South Africa's international ranking in selected sports through a partnership with the South African Sports Confederation and Olympic Committee (SASCOC); preserve, develop, protect and promote the cultural, heritage, linguistic diversity and legacy of South Africa; lead nation-building and social cohesion through social transformation; enhance archives and records management structures and systems, and promote access to information.

Chapter 15 of the National Development Plan (NDP) outlines a vision for transforming society and uniting South Africa, particularly by means of promoting social cohesion, developing an active citizenry and leadership, and fostering a social compact. The social compact aims to address social problems through collective action and agreements between citizens and the government in which the rights and duties of each party are defined and limited.

The NDP's vision is given expression by Priority 5 (social cohesion and safe communities) of government's 2019 – 2024 Medium Term Strategic Framework, with which the work of the DSAC is aligned. Accordingly, the department's ongoing and overarching objective is to provide an enabling environment to cultivate an active, creative, winning and socially cohesive nation.

Over the medium term, the department will focus on increasing market share and job opportunities created in the sport, cultural and creative industries; promoting a diverse and socially cohesive society with a common national identity; enabling a transformed, capable and professional sport, arts and culture sector; providing integrated and accessible sports, arts and culture infrastructure and information; and supporting youth development.

Increasing market share and job opportunities created in the cultural, creative and sports industries

To contribute to economic growth through job creation, the DSAC endeavours to mainstream the sports, creative and cultural industries in the economy. In this regard, the department increases market share and intensifies job creation through providing funding for projects in the Mzansi Golden Economy (MGE) Strategy, which aims to stimulate economic opportunities for arts, culture and heritage practitioners in poor and remote communities. Over the medium term, as part of the strategy, the DSAC expects to provide funding for 264 projects, comprising 54 flagship cultural events, which are large-scale projects that have demonstrated a track record in contributing to economic activity; 60 cultural events, which are small and often community-based projects; 90 touring ventures; and 60 public art projects. These projects will be supported by funds allocated in the MGE subprogramme. Allocations to the subprogramme amount to 23.9% (R958 million) of the programme's total budget over the medium term.

In terms of sport, Netball South Africa will host the Netball World Cup in Cape Town in 2023 at a cost of R69 million over the medium term. The event is expected to inject R250 million into the economy in 2023/24.

Promoting a diverse and socially cohesive society with a common national identity

The DSAC engages in various activities in fulfilling its mandate to promote diversity, social cohesion and nation-building. In this regard, over the medium term, the department will continue to foreground national symbols that are inclusive and contribute to a sense of unity among South Africans. Initiatives include funding 60 public awareness activations on the I Am the Flag campaign, hosting 18 workshops to advance knowledge of national symbols, and implementing the Young Patriots programme to instil patriotism and promote the preamble to the Constitution among young people. In addition, activities related to the social cohesion advocates initiative, moral regeneration efforts and sector engagements leading to the conclusion of the social compact are expected to be carried out over the medium term.

Funding for these initiatives and activities is made available in the Social Cohesion and Nation Building subprogramme in the Arts and Culture Promotion and Development programme. Allocations to the subprogramme amount to R290.3 million over the Medium Term Expenditure Framework (MTEF) period. The DSAC has recognised the need for citizens to get into the habit of participating in sport and recreation activities from a young age towards building an active nation that interacts across space, race and class.

Accordingly, an estimated 46 964 people are expected to participate in events such as youth camps, the Big Walk, the National Recreation Day and the National Indigenous Games Festival per year over the medium term. These events are mainly funded by transfers to provinces amounting to R1.9 billion over the medium term for the Mass Participation and Sport Development Grant, and R122 million from goods and services in the Active Nation subprogramme in the Recreation Development and Sport Promotion programme.

Nine indigenous games frequently played in South Africa are showcased during the National Indigenous Games Festival. The games bring people from culturally diverse backgrounds together as part of South Africa's heritage celebrations in September. All provinces present teams selected from various communities at the games, which are held from the community level to the provincial level. Developing and hosting the festival is expected to result in expenditure of R85 million over the medium term in the Active Nation subprogramme.

Enabling a transformed, capable and professional sport, arts and culture sector

It is a national imperative and a strategic goal of the DSAC to transform the sport and recreation sector. To this end, the Sport Support subprogramme in the Recreation Development and Sport Promotion programme will continue to fund 60 national sports federations through an allocation of R354.7 million over the MTEF period.

Federations are audited against their own transformation targets. Based on this, a comprehensive transformation report is published annually that reflects the status of transformation, as well as a comparative analysis across different federations. With regards to sport development, allocations in the programme's Active Nation subprogramme provide funding for young people to showcase their skills at events such as the National School Sport Championship, which exposes South African sporting talent to national federations and talent scouts.

For this purpose, R35.9 million is allocated for these championships in 2020/21 in the Active Nation subprogramme, while provinces will use R204 million of the Mass Participation and Sport Development Grant, which is also funded in the subprogramme, in the same year. In 2020/21, recognised provincial and district sports academies are expected to receive R59.1 million from the Mass Participation and Sport Development Grant to provide specialist training and sport scientific support to a projected 3 700 talented athletes.

In addition, the DSAC plans to support 40 emerging athletes identified by national federations as having high potential through an allocation of R6 million in the Winning Nation subprogramme. Elite athletes preparing to compete in the All Africa Games, the World Games, the Commonwealth Games, and the Olympic and Paralympic Games receive advanced coaching and financial support each year through the SASCOC's high-performance programme. In 2020/21, the focus will be on preparing a winning team for the 2020 Olympic Games in Tokyo, Japan. Due to the COVID-19 outbreak, the olympic games were postponed for the first time in their history. The opening ceremony of the Olympic Games Tokyo 2020 will now be held on 23 July 2021. To support the 40 elite athletes who will compete at the olympic and paralympic games, R36.2 million is transferred to the committee through the Winning Nation subprogramme over the medium term.

Ministerial sports bursaries are awarded to young, talented athletes to enable them to attend verified schools that focus on sports. These bursaries are available for high school learners and are valid for the duration of their school careers, if they maintain their sporting achievements. Each year, a minimum of 50 qualifying learners are expected to be supported through the payment of their school fees; the provision of school uniforms, sport clothing and equipment and sport scientific support; and event attendance. For this purpose, R23.7 million is allocated over the MTEF period in the Winning Nation subprogramme in the Recreation Development and Sport Promotion programme.

Included in the allocations to the National Language Services subprogramme in the Arts and Culture Promotion and Development programme over the medium term are amounts of R19.9 million and R36.7 million to fund 900 tertiary language bursary students and support six projects to develop human language technologies, respectively, in each year over the period.

The Heritage Promotion and Preservation programme will contribute to building capacity in the heritage sector by awarding 65 bursaries for heritage-related studies per year, at an average cost of R7 million over the medium term.

Providing integrated and accessible sports, arts and culture infrastructure and information

The DSAC's infrastructure development initiatives aim to achieve redress for South Africa's historical imbalances, encourage participation in sport and recreation, and contribute to social transformation. Accordingly, activities related to infrastructure development involve establishing and maintaining heritage sites, building and maintaining libraries, and planning and delivering infrastructure for sport and recreation. Over the medium term, R442.3 million is allocated in the Infrastructure Support subprogramme in the Recreation Development and Sport Promotion programme to establish and maintain world-class heritage sites to boost tourism and create job opportunities, particularly in historically disadvantaged areas. This includes sites along the Resistance and Liberation Heritage Route, which honours those who dedicated their lives to South Africa's liberation struggle.

Through the Community Library Services Grant, which is funded by the Public Library Services subprogramme in the Heritage Promotion and Preservation programme, an estimated 96 new libraries will be built, 135 community libraries will be upgraded and 430 000 library materials will be procured over the medium term. To carry out these activities, the grant receives R4.7 billion over the period ahead. In collaboration with the Department of Basic Education (DBE) and at an estimated cost of R1.8 billion over the medium term, the grant will also fund 40 dual library service points that serve as community and school libraries.

To improve the planning and delivery of infrastructure for sport and recreation to 35 municipalities in each year over the MTEF period, an amount of R35.1 million is allocated in the Infrastructure Support subprogramme in the Recreation Development and Sport Promotion programme. In collaboration with the Department of Cooperative Governance and Traditionsal Affairs, the South African Local Government Association and municipalities, the DSAC will ensure that funds earmarked in the MIG for the provision of sport and recreation facilities are used to provide facilities in areas where they are needed the most.

Through a partnership with the Sports Trust, the DSAC facilitates the delivery of specialised, multipurpose sports courts and other infrastructure projects to improve access to sport and recreation activities. Over the medium term, the trust will provide 30 multipurpose sports courts at a cost of R77.9 million.

Supporting youth development

The DSAC supports school sports leagues in partnership with the DBE, and will continue integrating the 16 priority sporting codes and indigenous games, such as *morabaraba* and *jukskei*, into the school sports system over the medium term. An estimated 2 500 schools, hubs and clubs are expected to receive equipment and attire in each year over the MTEF period to facilitate sustainable participation. For this purpose, R50 million is allocated over the medium term in the Active Nation subprogramme. A further R124.4 million over the period ahead is allocated in the Active Nation subprogramme for the DSAC's partnership with loveLife to provide youth empowerment programmes at sport and recreation events, such as national youth camps and the National School Sport Championship.

The DSAC will collaborate and partner with the DBE to enrich and improve the quality of learning in the area of arts and culture. To this end, the department has budgeted R2.7 million over the medium term in the Arts and Culture Promotion

and Development programme to co-host the South African Schools Choral Eisteddfod, with more than 3 000 learners expected to participate annually. Other joint initiatives include the Inner-City High Schools Drama Festival and the educator skills improvement project in the arts and culture learning area, for which the DSAC has budgeted R1.9 million over the MTEF period.

Legislation

The DSAC derives its mandate from the following legislation:

- the National Sport and Recreation Act, 1998 (Act 110 of 1998);
- the National Heritage Resources Act, 1999 (Act 25 of 1999);
- the National Council for Library and Information Services (LIS) Act, 2001 (Act 6 of 2001);
- the Safety at Sports and Recreational Events Act, 2010 (Act 2 of 2010);
- the Use of Official Languages Act, 2012 (Act 12 of 2012);
- the Heraldry Act, 1962 (Act 18 of 1962);
- the Culture Promotion Act, 1983 (Act 35 of 1983);
- the National Archives and Record Service of South Africa Act, 1996 (Act 43 of 1996);
- the Legal Deposit Act, 1997 (Act 54 of 1997);
- the South African Geographical Names Council Act, 1998 (Act 118 of 1998); and
- the Cultural Institutions Act, 1998 (Act 119 of 1998).

Budget

For the 2019/20 financial year, Sport and Recreation received R1.2 billion while Arts and Culture was allocated R4.6 billion. Expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 3.1%, from R5.7 billion in 2019/20 to R6.3 billion in 2022/23. Spending on transfers and subsidies constitutes 79% (R14.2 billion) of the DSAC's total expenditure over the MTEF period. Cabinet has approved budget reductions amounting to R1.2 billion over the medium term (R376.3 million in 2020/21, R416.3 million in 2021/22 and R431.1 million in 2022/23) on the department's baseline allocation.

The reductions will mainly be effected on transfers to heritage assets and institutions, spending on goods and services across all programmes, transfers to entities, transfers to libraries and the Community Library Services Grant, transfers to performing arts institutions, funding for projects linked to the MGE Strategy, transfers to loveLife, and transfers to the Mass Participation and Sport Development Grant.

With the cancellation of most sports and heritage events in 2020, the DSAC redirected R1 billion of its budget towards COVID-19 relief efforts. A significant amount of the DSAC's budget was reprioritised to contribute to the COVID-19 Relief Fund.

The shift of funds affected the annual performance plan delivery targets of the DSAC for the 2020/21 financial year.

Several budget reprioritisation shifts had to be implemented, including an amount of R10 million which was deducted out of R408 million compensation of employees budget and R312.5 million being reprioritised from the community libraries budget of R1.4 billion.

In the remaining R1.1 billion, a further R10 million was reallocated for the decontamination of community libraries and purchasing of personal protective equipment for staff to resume library activities.

A budget reduction of R224 million, out of R596 million, in the Participation and Sports Development programme, was implemented. Provinces will utilise R58 million for cancelled competitions to compensate the sport sector for the loss of earnings due to the restrictions on economic activity.

An allocation of R95 million will compensate the Arts and Culture sector for loss of income due to the restrictions on economic activity.

Entities

Boxing South Africa (BSA)

BSA contributes to nation-building, healthy lifestyles and social cohesion by promoting participation in boxing, especially among youth and women; strengthening the boxing regulatory environment; and ensuring the effective administration of the sport. The organisation's total budget for 2019/20 was R15.7 million.

Heritage institutions

The following officially declared heritage institutions are dependent on annual transfers from the DSAC: Die Afrikaanse Taalmuseum en -monument, Paarl; Ditsong Museums of South Africa, Pretoria; the Iziko Museums, Cape Town; the KwaZulu-Natal Museum, Pietermaritzburg; the National Museum, Bloemfontein; the Amazwi South African Museum of Literature, Makhanda (formerly Grahamstown); the Robben Island Museum, Cape Town; the Voortrekker Museum, Pietermaritzburg; the War Museum of the Boer Republics, Bloemfontein; the William Humphreys Art Gallery, Kimberley; the Luthuli Museum, Stanger; the Nelson Mandela Museum, Mthatha; Freedom Park; and the Engelenburg House Art Collection.

These institutions collect, protect and conserve heritage materials, conduct exhibitions, and contribute knowledge through research and publications. Their total budget for 2019/20 was R849.4 million, including capital works.

Libraries

The DSAC oversees various libraries, including the National Library of South Africa (NLSA), which promotes awareness and appreciation of the national documentary heritage by fostering information literacy, and by facilitating access to the world's information resources.

The South African Library for the Blind (SALB) provides a national library and information service to blind and print handicapped readers in South Africa. Their total budget for 2019/20 was R165.6 million, including capital works.

National Arts Council (NAC)

The NAC facilitates opportunities for people to practice and appreciate the arts. The council also promotes the general application of the arts in the community, fosters the expression of national identity by means of the arts, promotes freedom in the practice of the arts, and gives historically disadvantaged people greater access to the arts. Its total budget for 2019/20 was R117.5 million

National Film and Video Foundation (NFVF)

The NFVF develops and promotes the film and video industry in South Africa. The foundation promotes local film and video products, supports the development of and access to the industry, and addresses historical imbalances in infrastructure, skills and resources in the industry. Its total budget for 2019/20 was R143.9 million.

National Heritage Council

The council engages heritage stakeholders in public and private institutions, including the various organs of civil society, mobilises debates and builds awareness about heritage. Its total budget for 2019/20 was R71.3 million.

Pan South African Language Board

The board is a constitutional institution that promotes an awareness of multilingualism as a national resource and supports previously marginalised languages. The board is mandated to investigate complaints about language rights and violations from any individual, organisation or institution. Its total budget for 2019/20 was R124.6 million.

Performing arts institutions

The following performing arts institutions receive annual transfers from the DSAC: The South African State Theatre, The Playhouse Company, Artscape Theatre Centre, the Market Theatre Foundation and the Performing Arts Council of the Free State.

These institutions advance, promote and preserve the performing arts in South Africa; enhance the contribution of arts and culture to the economy; and create job opportunities and initiatives that will enhance nation-building. Their total budget for 2019/20 was R422.5 million.

South African Institute for Drug-Free Sport

The institute manages the implementation of a drug deterrent and prevention strategy that is compliant with the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO) International Convention against Doping in Sport, and the World Anti-Doping Code. Over the medium term, the institute will focus on enforcing strict compliance with this code, which requires a minimum level of analysis of samples from athletes for banned substances in specific sports. The institute's total budget for 2019/20 was R32.2 million.

The South African Heritage Resource

The South African Heritage Resource is the national administrative management body for the protection of South Africa's cultural heritage. Its main functions include managing and preserving the national estate through partnerships with other bodies to promote an integrated heritage resources management system. Its total budget for 2019/20 was R66.3 million.

Arts and Culture

To increase the levels of participation in the Arts and Culture sector and to develop new audiences, the DSAC plans to provide financial support to activate provincial arts programmes for community centres. This will ensure that community arts centres remain the nerve centres for community participation and development in the area of arts and culture, and encourage young people to engage in positive activities. The DSAC has received business plans from community arts centres in all nine provinces, focusing on building capacity in arts administration, arts programming and financial management.

Through the MGE programme, the DSAC has made an open call to financially support arts initiatives from the various arts disciplines throughout the country. In excess of R64 million has been ring-fenced to support both national and provincial flagship projects such as the Mapungubwe Arts Festival; the Cape Town International Jazz Festival; the Buyelekaya; the Abantu Book Fair and the Cape Town Carnival. To capacitate the sector the DSAC will support incubator programmes in playhouses.

The implementation of recommendations from the feasibility study on the Resistance, Liberation and Heritage Museum was expected to commence in the 2019/20 financial year in an effort to address the disparities in the national heritage landscape. Furthermore, the DSAC will continue with the renaming of geographical features to reflect the demographics and history of the country.

The National Archives of South Africa, an important repository of the collective memory of the country, have been experiencing challenges in terms of the availability of storage space. A study to investigate the feasibility of upgrading the old archives building or constructing a new one, will be conducted. This will also assist with the process of digitisation and responding to emerging technologies.

National symbols

Animal: Springbok (Antidorcas marsupialis)

The springbok's common name is derived from its characteristic jumping display. It is the only southern African gazelle and is fairly widespread in open, dry bush, grasslands or riverbeds near water. It is also the emblem of South Africa's national rugby team, which bears its name.

Bird: Blue crane (Anthropoides paradisia)

This elegant crane with its silvery blue plumage is endemic to southern Africa, with more than 99% of the population within South Africa's borders.

Fish: Galjoen (Coracinus capensis)

The galjoen is found only along the South African coast and is a familiar sight to every angler. It keeps to mostly shallow water and is often found in rough surf and sometimes right next to the shore.

Flower: King protea (Protea cynaroides)

This striking protea is found in the south-western and southern areas of the Western Cape. It derives its scientific name cynaroides, which means "like cynara" (artichoke), from the artichoke-like appearance of its flower head.

Tree: Real yellowwood (Podocarpus latifolius)

The yellowwood family is primeval and has been present in South Africa for more than 100 million years. The species is widespread, from Table Mountain, along the southern and eastern Cape coast, in the ravines of the Drakensberg up to the Soutpansberg and the Blouberg in Limpopo.

National flag

South Africa's flag is one of the most recognised in the world. It was launched and used for the first time on Freedom Day, 27 April 1994. The design and colours are a synopsis of the principal elements of the country's flag history.

It is the only six-coloured national flag in the world. The central design of the flag, beginning at the flag pole in a "V" form and flowing into a single horizontal band to the outer edge of the fly, can be interpreted as the convergence of diverse elements within South African society, taking the road ahead in unity.

When the flag is displayed vertically against a wall, the red band should be to the left of the viewer, with the hoist or the cord seam at the top.

When displayed horizontally, the hoist should be to the left of the viewer and the red band at the top. When the flag is displayed next to or behind the speaker at a meeting, it must be placed to the speaker's right. When it is placed elsewhere in the meeting place, it should be to the right of the audience.

National anthem

South Africa's national anthem is a combined version of Nkosi Sikelel' iAfrika and The Call of South Africa (Die Stem van Suid-Afrika).

Nkosi Sikelel' iAfrika was composed by Methodist mission schoolteacher, Enoch Sontonga, in 1897. The words of The Call of South Africa were written by Cornelis Jacobus Langenhoven in May 1918, and the music was composed by Reverend Marthinus Lourens de Villiers in 1921.

The National Anthem

Nkosi sikelel' i Afrika
Maluphakanyisw' uphondo lwayo,
Yizwa imithandazo yethu,
Nkosi sikelela, thina lusapho lwayo.

Morena boloka setjhaba sa heso,
O fedise dintwa le matshwenyeho,
O se boloke,
O se boloke setjhaba sa heso,
Setjhaba sa South Afrika –
South Afrika.

Uit die blou van onse hemel,
Uit die diepte van ons see,
Oor ons ewige gebergtes,
Waar die kranse antwoord gee.

Sounds the call to come together,
And united we shall stand,
Let us live and strive for freedom,
In South Africa our land.

National Coat of Arms

South Africa's Coat of Arms, the highest visual symbol of the State, was launched on Freedom Day, 27 April 2000.

Its central image is a secretary bird with uplifted wings and a sun rising above it.

Below the bird is the protea, an indigenous South African flower, representing the aesthetic harmony of all cultures and the country flowering as a nation. The ears of wheat are emblems of the fertility of the land, while the tusks of the African elephant symbolise wisdom, steadfastness and strength.

At the centre stands a shield signifying the protection of South Africans, above which are a spear and knobkierie. These assert the defence of peace rather than a posture of war.

Within the shield are images of the Khoisan people, the first inhabitants of the land. The figures are derived from images on the Linton Stone, a world-famous example of South African rock art.

The motto of the Coat of Arms – !ke e:/xarra//ke – is in the Khoisan language of the /Xam people, and means "diverse people unite" or "people who are different joining together".

National Orders

National Orders are the highest awards that the country, through its President, can bestow on individual South Africans and eminent foreign leaders and personalities.

The Order of Mapungubwe is awarded to South African citizens for excellence and exceptional achievement.

The Order of the Baobab is awarded to South African citizens for distinguished service in the fields of business and the economy; science, medicine and technological innovation, and community service.

The Order of the Companions of OR Tambo is awarded to heads of state and other dignitaries for promoting peace, cooperation and friendship towards South Africa.

The Order of Luthuli is awarded to South Africans who have made a meaningful contribution to the struggle for democracy, human rights, nation-building, justice and peace, and conflict resolution.

The Order of Ikhamanga is awarded to South African citizens who have excelled in the fields of arts, culture, literature, music, journalism and sport.

The Order of Mendi for Bravery is awarded to South African citizens who have performed extraordinary acts of bravery.

The last National Orders Awards Ceremony was hosted by President Cyril Ramaphosa in Pretoria in April 2019.

The Order of Mendi for Bravery

The Order in Silver was bestowed on:

- Thapelo Tambani (Posthumous): For his selfless act of saving another life, which led to his unfortunate demise.

The Order of the Baobab

The Order in Silver was bestowed on:

- Maduke Lot Ndlovu;
- Braam Jordaan;
- Constance Mirriam Thokozile Koza (Posthumous);

- Bongani Donald Mkhwanazi (Posthumous);
- Ray and Dora Phillips (Posthumous); and
- William Smith (Posthumous).

Order of Ikhamanga

The Order was bestowed in Silver on:

- Achmat Davids (Posthumous);
- Jacques Henry Kallis;
- Yvonne Chaka Chaka Mhinga;
- Nomhle Nkonyeni;
- Benjamin Pogrund;
- Mathatha Tsedu; and
- Mary Mhlongo Twala.

The Order was bestowed in Gold on:

- Johaar Mosaval.

Order of Luthuli

The Order was bestowed in Silver to:

- Velaphi Msane;
- Thandi Lujabe-Rankoe;
- Antony Andrew Trew;
- Moyisile Douglas Tyutyu; and
- Yosuf (Joe) Veriava.

The Order of the Companions of OR Tambo

The Order in Bronze was bestowed on:

- Riccardo Sarra (Italy): For his consistent contribution to the fight for the liberation of the people of South Africa and the Southern African region.

The Order in Silver was bestowed on:

- Klaas de Jonge (The Netherlands);
- Khotso Makhulu (United Kingdom(UK));
- Paulette Pierson-Mathy (Belgium);
- Amii Omara-Otunnu (Uganda); and
- Lucia Raadschelders (The Netherlands) (Posthumous).

The Order was bestowed in Gold to:

- His Excellency Admiral Didier Ignace Ratsiraka (Madagascar): For his outstanding contribution to the struggle for democracy in South Africa.

Languages

South Africa is a multilingual country. The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996 guarantees equal status to 11 official languages to cater for the country's diverse people and their cultures. These are English, isiNdebele, isiXhosa, isiZulu, Afrikaans, Sepedi, Sesotho, Setswana, Siswati, Tshivenda and Xitsonga.

Other languages used in South Africa include the Khoi, Nama and San languages, Sign Language, Arabic, German, French, Greek, Gujarati, Hebrew, Hindi, Portuguese, Sanskrit, Tamil, Telegu and Urdu.

South Africa has various structures and institutions that support the preservation and development of languages.

In line with the Use of Official Languages Act of 2012, the DSAC developed its Official Language Policy in 2014. The policy provides for the use of all 11 official languages, taking into account factors such as usage, practicality, expense, regional circumstances and the balance of the needs and preferences of the public it serves, and sets out how these languages will be used for department's purposes.

The DSAC's language policy is implemented through the National Language Service, which is composed of four sections namely: Translation and Editing, Terminology Coordination, Human Language Technologies and Language Planning and Development.

Programmes, projects and initiatives

Mzansi Golden Economy

The MGE is a strategy to reposition the cultural industries in South Africa. The MGE Strategy opens up the arts, culture and heritage sector to effectively and comprehensively contribute to economic growth and job creation.

National flagship cultural events, such as the Buyel'Ekhaya Pan African Music Festival (Eastern Cape), the Joy of Jazz Festival (Gauteng), the Marula Festival (Limpopo) and the Diamonds and Dorings Festival (Northern Cape) are covered under the strategy.

Another part of the strategy is to develop major international exchange platforms such as Africa Month and international cultural seasons.

The cultural seasons are a programme of arts and culture exchange between South Africa and other countries to create new international markets for South African arts and culture products.

In 2019, the DSAC, through the MGE, launched an online application system for Open Call Funding to help creative practitioners looking to fund projects or programmes to be implemented during the 2020/21 financial year. The e-Service will provide a convenient electronic interface which allows cultural and creative practitioners to access applications from anywhere at any time via the internet for the duration of the Open Call. It is available as an e-Service via the State Information Technology Agency e-Services Portal.

By automating the application process for funding, the DSAC will be able to track, trace and monitor turnaround times, thus speeding up the process. In addition, bottlenecks can be identified earlier and all applicants' South African identity numbers can be verified through the e-Services portal web service.

Furthermore, the DSAC will be able to track the spatial disbursement of funds, not only provincially but also at the level of local municipalities. The online portal promotes transparency, accountability and creates a conducive environment for the cultural and creative industry to create jobs and increase its economic growth contribution of 1.7% to the gross domestic product (GDP).

Public Art Development Programme (PADP)

The PADP is a work stream of the MGE. It is implemented to strengthen and grow the arts, culture and heritage sector, with particular emphasis on giving the youth, women, children and persons with disabilities the opportunity to participate and benefit from the PADP. The objectives of the PADP include:

- Creating a nationally driven approach which is focused on building community ownership and pride in public and shared spaces through public art projects. It's structured to engage these communities at all stages of the development process, with the express objectives of creating work for artists, designers, researchers, storytellers, crafters and performance artists to name a few.

- Attracting investment and economic activity to particular locations, including the 'far-flung' areas of South Africa.
- Catalysing work creation and economic activity in a range of associated sectors such as tourism, hospitality and property development.
- To upscale existing public art projects and create public interest in the role of art in their communities towards creating real jobs, stimulating local economy, enhancing quality of life, raising awareness of local history/heritage and allowing increased diversity of cultural offerings.

The participants in the PADP will gain numerous skills and employment opportunities, including: interpersonal; negotiating; conflict-management; communication, visual arts, performance art; storytelling, design; research; entrepreneurship; business; presenting; problem-solving; creative solutions; community participation, community-liaison and appraisal skills.

Art Bank

The purpose of the Art Bank of South Africa is to identify and purchase contemporary visual art works from emerging and established South African artists. The objectives of the Art Bank of South Africa are to:

- be a national rental agency for contemporary South African art (art works will be leased out for a minimum period of two years);
- procure and curate art works in all public buildings, including government departments, government institutions and South African embassies around the world, on a biannual basis, to ensure that good-quality contemporary art works are displayed; and
- allow for the exposure of artists in marketing their works, as this will further contribute to audience development and consumption of South African art.

Theatre

South Africa has a prolific theatre scene with more than 100 active spaces around the country offering everything from indigenous drama, music, dance, cabaret and satire to West End and Broadway hits, classical opera and ballet. South African theatre is very interactive, with actors sometimes directly addressing audiences.

The country has a long and rich history of storytelling, from the oral narratives and shamanistic dances of the San, to the fables told around the fire by South Africa's indigenous people, to the modern and youthful productions of today.

South African theatre came into its own during the apartheid years, partly due to the cultural boycott of the country by British and American actors. Without any external influences, South African theatre flourished with its own unique and local feel, particularly the protest theatre of the 1970s and 1980s.

But the formal South African theatre tradition dates back as far back as the 1830s, when Andrew Geddes Bains's Kaatje Kekkelbek, or Life Among the Hottentots, was performed in 1838 by the Grahamstown Amateur Company.

Over the years, playwrights such as Athol Fugard and Gibson Kente would form the backbone of South African theatre. And through their plays, actors such as John Kani and Winston Ntshona became a few of the early participants of a form of theatre that sought to challenge the apartheid system and question racial attitudes of the time.

With mainstream venues like the National Theatre barring black people from creative participation, the Market Theatre in Johannesburg and The Space in Cape Town were just two of many theatres established to give black artists a stage and multiracial audience. Theatre venues were desegregated in 1978.

Some of the more well-known venues include the Market Theatre, Jo'burg Theatre and Soweto Theatre in Johannesburg; the Baxter and Artscape theatres in Cape Town; and the Playhouse in Durban.

Many of the casinos and malls in South Africa are also home to theatres. The Pieter Toerien's Theatre & Studio at Montecasino in Johannesburg has hosted major productions such as Dream Girls and Phantom of the Opera.

There are also multitudes of festivals that take place across the country. The most well-known is the Grahamstown National Arts Festival which is the biggest annual celebration of the arts on the African continent. Over the years, the festival has showcased some of South Africa's best-performing arts talent, including up-and-coming artists. It has also spawned a multitude of similar festivals such as the Klein Karoo Nasionale Kunstefees in Oudtshoorn.

The 46th edition of the National Arts Festival went digital for the full 11 days from 25 June – 5 July 2020, due to the COVID-19 pandemic. Moving to the Virtual National Arts Festival 2020 was largely motivated by a desire to support artists to earn income and gain exposure. Organisers created the vFringe – a digital platform for artists to share their work with home-based audiences.

The vFringe accommodates a visual arts directory, a ticketed video-on-demand platform, and an advertising space for live events held on third-party platforms. There was no fee for artists to participate in vFringe 2020. Going virtual meant that the festival could continue to support artists and the arts in 2020, by presenting work within a digital space.

Festivals

Arts and cultural festivals in South Africa offer something for every taste. Many of these have become annual events, growing in popularity and attendance numbers:

- Aardklop, held annually in Potchefstroom, North West, is inherently Afrikaans, but universal in character. The festival provides a platform for the creativity and talent of local artists.
- Arts Alive International Festival in Newtown, Johannesburg provides the best in homegrown and overseas entertainment in September.
- The Cape Town International Jazz Festival features international and African artists. It also features photographic and art exhibitions.
- The Dance Umbrella is a festival of contemporary choreography and dance, presenting work ranging from community-based dance troupes to international companies.
- The Klein Karoo Nasionale Kunstefees, known as the KKNK, a vibrant festival for the performing arts, is held annually in Oudtshoorn and presentations include drama, cabaret, and contemporary and classical music.
- The Mangaung African Cultural Festival (MACUFE) in Bloemfontein in the Free State is one of the biggest cultural tourism events in southern Africa. This 10-day festival showcases the cream of African and international talent.

- The National Arts Festival, held annually in July in Grahamstown in the Eastern Cape, is one of the largest and most diverse arts gatherings in Africa.

The Cape Town International Jazz Festival, which was set to take place from 27 – 28 March 2020, was postponed due to the COVID-19 pandemic. Due to the scale of the event, which draws over 40 000 attendees, this decision was made to protect the health and safety of patrons, performing artists, services providers, employees and the public at large.

Some of the artists that were confirmed to perform at the festival were Lady Zamar (South Africa), Lira (South Africa), Earl Sweatshirt (United States of America), Ezra Collective (UK), Judith Sephuma (South Africa), Manou Gallo (Ivory Coast), and The Unity Band (South Africa).

- Oppikoppi Bushveld Bash near Northam in North West offers live performances by rock, alternative and blues bands, both local and from abroad.
- The Splashy Fen Music Festival near Underberg in KwaZulu-Natal offers a variety of mainstream and alternative rock and pop music.
- Standard Bank Joy of Jazz is Johannesburg's biggest annual jazz festival, with local and international artists performing at different venues across the city.
- Up the Creek is a popular music festival on the banks of the Breede River near Swellendam in the Western Cape.
- The Mandela International Film Festival aims to celebrate and stimulate a brave new world of film-making, and is dedicated to improving both the craft and business of film.

Other festivals that attract visitors at both national and international levels are: Innibos in Nelspruit, Mpumalanga; Taung Cultural Calabash in North West; the Awesome Africa Music Festival in Durban, KwaZulu-Natal; the Windybrow Theatre Festival in Johannesburg; and the Hilton Arts Festival in KwaZulu-Natal.

Music

Music is one of the key cultural industries identified in the Cultural Industrial Growth Strategy Report, and the government has committed itself to harnessing its potential. Local music accounts for a third of all the music bought by South Africans.

Township jazz and blues, especially the kwêla music of the 1940s and 1950s are being redefined. The country also has a rich choral tradition. Pop and rock musicians have made their mark internationally.

Even techno-rave and house music have found their own variations in local culture. Kwaito and hip-hop are very popular, combining elements of rap, reggae and other musical styles into a distinctly South African style. Kwaai Jazz is also gaining momentum.

In addition to its cultural value, music plays an important economic role in the country, generating significant copyright revenue.

The Taking South African Music to the World initiative is aimed at improving export opportunities for South African music.

The DSAC funds a number of musical ensembles directly and indirectly, through the NAC.

Moshito Music Conference and Exhibition

The DSAC hosts the annual Moshito Conference and Exhibition; a key music event on the African continent that promotes collaboration among interested parties from both the private and public sectors.

The event is designed to provide opportunities for business networking; information exchange; music-business education; promotion and product development for national music producers, performers, individuals and entities providing support services; as well as to strengthen business opportunities for the music industry and related media.

The 2019 Moshito Music Conference and Exhibition took place from 4 – 7 September at Constitution Hill in Braamfontein, Johannesburg.

Mangaung African Cultural Festival

The MACUFE is one of the most popular cultural festivals on the African continent and beyond. This festival has, from humble beginnings, grown from strength to strength and has undoubtedly reached international stature.

The 2019 festival took place from 4 – 13 October in Bloemfontein. The event features the best international, continental, and national musicians.

South African Music Awards (SAMAs)

The annual SAMAs are hosted by the Recording Industry of South Africa. The 25th annual SAMAs ceremony was held in Sun City in June 2019. The winners were:

- Best Traditional Album: Candy – *Hupenyu Unenge Viri.*
- Best Traditional Faith Music Album: Spirit of Praise – *Spirit of Praise Volume 7.*
- Beste Kontemporere Musiek Album: Coenie de Villiers – *Pure Coenie*.
- Beste Pop Album: Snotkop – *Sous*.
- Capasso Best Selling Digital Download Composers Award: Lindelani Mkhize, Mnqobi Nxumalo, Siphiwe Ngcobo, Thobeka Mahlangu – *Joyous Celebration 22; All for you*.
- Collaboration of the year: Black Coffee featuring David Guetta and Delilah Montagu – *Drive*.
- Duo/Group of the Year: Black Motion – *Moya Wa Taola*.
- Female Artist of the Year: Sho Madjozi.
- Lifetime Achievement Award: HHP, TKZee and Mango Groove
- Male Artist of the Year: Black Coffee – *Music is King*.
- Music Video of the Year: Jeremy Loops – *Gold* by Robert Smith.
- Newcomer of the Year: Sho Madjozi – *Limpopo Champions League.*
- Record of the Year: Holly Rey – *Deeper*.
- Remix of the Year: Zakwe – *Sebentin* by Cassper Nyovest, HHP, Blaklez, Kwesta and Musiholiq.
- Rest of Africa Artist: Diamond Platnumz – *A Boy from Tandale*.
- SAMPRA Highest Airplay Song of the Year: Lady Zamar – *Collide*.
- SAMRO Composers Highest Airplay Award: Lady Zamar – *Collide.*
- Album of the Year: Sjava – *Umqhele*.
- Best Adult Contemporary Album: Ard Matthews – *Impossible Machines.*
- Best African Adult Contemporary Album: Nathi – *Iphupha Labantu.*
- Best African Indigenous Faith Album: Ithimba Le Africa – *Sesiphunyukile*.
- Best Afro Pop Album: Sjava – *Umqhele*.

- Best Alternative Album: Nakhane – *You Will Not Die*.
- Best Contemporary Faith Music Album: *We Will Worship – Seasons Volume 1*.
- Best Dance Album: Black Motion – *Moya Wa Taola*.
- Best Engineered Album: Vusi Nova – *Manyan-nyan* by Robin Walsh.
- Best Hip Hop Album: Nasty C – *Strings N Bling*.
- Best Jazz Album: Bokani Dyer Trio – *Neo Native*.
- Best Kwaito/Gqom/Amapiano: Spikiri – *King Don Father*.
- Best Live Audio Visual Recording: Cassper Nyovest – *Fill up Orlando Stadium* – Robin Kohl.
- Best Maskandi Album: Sgwebo Sentambo – *Yekani Umona*.
- Best Pop Album: Tresor – *Nostalgia.*
- Best Produced Album: Nasty C – *Strings and Bling.*
- Best R&B/Soul Album: Zonke – *L.O.V.E.*
- Best Reggae Album: Black Dillinger – *Mavara is King*.
- Best Rock Album: Dan Patlansky – *Perfection Kills*.
- Best Selling Artist: Joyous Celebration 22.
- Best Selling DVD: Joyous Celebration 22.

South African Traditional Music Achievement (SATMA) Awards

The SATMA Awards are aimed at promoting, preserving, uplifting, developing, honouring and awarding traditional musicians across racial and ethnic backgrounds. The 14th Annual SATMA Awards were held on 8 June 2019 in Polokwane under the theme, “Free to be Me”.

Dance

Dancing is part of the African way of life and has become a prime means of artistic expression, with dance companies expanding and exploring new territory.

Contemporary work ranges from normal preconceptions of movement and performance art or performance theatre to the completely unconventional.

Added to this is the African experience, which includes traditional dance inspired by wedding ceremonies, battles, rituals and the trifles of everyday life.

An informal but highly versatile performance venue in Johannesburg, The Dance Factory, provides a permanent platform for a variety of dance and movement groups.

The University of the Witwatersrand Theatre is another popular dance venue.

The South African hit song *Jerusalema* by Master KG, featuring Nomcebo Zikode, went viral and became a global hit in 2020, providing hope and relief during the lockdown period. People from all walks of life performed choreographed dances to the song. Health workers around the world also joined in the frenzy. Clad in their scrubs, the health workers danced to the song to celebrate life and remember those who lost their lives due to COVID-19. Many of these videos have trended on social media.

In August 2020, Arts and Culture Minister Nathi Mthethwa handed over the Arts and Cultural Ambassador Certificate to Master KG and Zikode, following their appointment as Arts and Culture Ambassadors to the world.

In September 2020, President Ramaphosa urged South Africans to do the Jerusalema Dance Challenge on Heritage Day.

Visual arts

South Africa has a rich variety of visual art, with influences ranging from prehistoric, ancient and indigenous art to western, Asian and contemporary art.

Art galleries, ranging from small privately owned commercial galleries, to major regional galleries such as the South African National Gallery in Cape Town, the Durban Art Gallery in KwaZulu-Natal, the Johannesburg Art Gallery in Gauteng and King George VI Gallery in the Eastern Cape, showcase collections of indigenous, historical and contemporary works.

Educational institutions also play an important role in acquiring works of national interest.

Rock art

There are many traces of ancient cultures that existed in southern Africa in the distant past. Experts estimate that there are 250 000 rock-art sites south of the Zambezi.

The San people left a priceless and unique collection of Stone Age paintings and engravings in the region, which also represents the largest collection of its kind in the world.

Rock engravings are scattered on flat rock surfaces and boulders throughout the interior. The artworks depict mainly hunter-gatherers and their relationship with the animal world and historical events, as well as their interaction with and observation of newcomers encroaching upon their living space.

Indigenous people with spears and Nguni cattle, Khoikhoi fat-tailed sheep, European settlers on horseback with rifles and wagons, and ships and soldiers in uniform were captured in surprising detail.

Immortalised visions of the artists’ spiritual world can also be found on the sandstone canvases. These depict complex symbols and metaphors to illustrate the supernatural powers and potency they received from nature.

The oldest dated rock art in South Africa, an engraved stone, some 10 200 years, was discovered in a living floor at the Wonderwerk Cave near Kuruman in the Northern Cape.

The oldest painted stones (around 6 400 years) were recovered at Boomplaas Cave in the Cango Valley near Oudtshoorn.

Three painted stones were also found at the Klasies River caves, which yielded the second-oldest painted stone, dating back some 3 900 years.

The DSAC supports a number of projects, including a rock-heritage project in Clanwilliam in the Western Cape. Millions of pieces of tools made by humankind’s ancestors (possibly the *Homo heidelbergensis* species) were uncovered at Kathu in the Northern Cape in 2014. The site is between 700 000 and a million years old and used to be a huge workshop to produce tools.

The findings were published in the technical magazine, *PLoS One*, by the universities of Cape Town and Toronto (Canada) and the McGregor Museum in Kimberley.

The hominid species produced tools and equipment at the site for 20 000 to 30 000 years, generation after generation.

Photography

With its scenic beauty, abundant wildlife, diversity of cultures and rich historical heritage, South Africa is a photographer’s paradise.

Many South African photographers have been acclaimed for their work, which features in coffee table books, documentaries, local and international exhibitions, magazines and newspapers.

Famous South African photographers include Kevin Carter, Ernest Cole, Alf Kumalo, Peter Magubane, Jürgen Schadeberg, Austin Stevens, Greg Marinovich, Andrew Tshabangu, Sam Nzima and James Oatway.

In June 2016, Peter Magubane launched a book titled *June 16: 40th Anniversary Edition* in Johannesburg – a pictorial account of the events that took place on 16 June 1976 – a fateful day that marked a significant change in the discourse of South Africa's push for liberation. The foreword of the book was written by Struggle Veteran Winnie Madikizela Mandela.

A number of photographers from the state of emergency era partnered with the Mcgregor Museum and the Nelson Mandela Foundation to honour photographers who played a fundamental role in South Africa's liberation.

This museum is home to an exhibition which tells forgotten stories and highlights South Africa's heritage.

Architecture

South Africa has a rich architectural heritage, reflecting contributions from all the cultural groups in the country. Through the centuries, a unique trend has developed in South Africa's architectural style, which has been referred to as an innovative marriage of traditions.

This is evident in the variety of architectural structures found all over the country, ranging from humble dwellings, historical homesteads and public buildings, to modern, commercial buildings reflecting state-of-the-art technology and designs that match the best in the world.

Schools of architecture exist within various South African universities, including the universities of Pretoria, Cape Town, the Free State, KwaZulu-Natal, the Witwatersrand and the Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University.

Crafts

A high level of skill is brought to the production of work that has long been a part of African society, and has found new commercial outlets.

South African beadwork, once the insignia of tribal royalty, has found a huge range of applications, from the creation of coverings for everything such as bottles and matchboxes, to the reproduction of the red AIDS ribbon using Zulu beadwork known as Zulu love letters.

With workplaces ranging from the pavements and markets of the big cities to dwellings in deep rural areas, South Africans produce a remarkable range of arts and crafts, including various forms of traditional artwork and innovative new products.

There are also several important collections of African art in South Africa, such as the Standard Bank collection at the Gertrude Posel Gallery at Wits University, in Johannesburg. The Durban Art Gallery houses works of historical and anthropological significance.

These range from jewellery, tableware, home decorations, embroidery and key rings to skilfully crafted wooden engravings and wirework sculptures. In addition to the standard materials such as beads, grass, leather, fabric and clay, many other mediums are also used, including telephone wire, plastic bags, empty cans, bottle tops and even food tin labels, to create brightly coloured paper mâché bowls.

Shops, markets and collectors dealing in African crafts provide much-needed employment and income to communities.

Fugitive's Drift in KwaZulu-Natal, offers a large variety of skilfully crafted basketry; the Northern Cape Schmidtsdrift community of displaced San people produces paintings influenced by ancient rock art; and the Madi a Thavha Art Gallery in the Soutpansberg region of Limpopo produces and sells a range of arts and crafts created by the local Venda and Tsonga communities. Products include beautiful beadwork, sculptures, ceramics and jewellery.

South African folk art is also making inroads into Western-style "high art".

The Ndebele tradition of house-painting, part of the widespread African practice of painting or decorating the exteriors of homes, burgeoned amazingly with the advent of commercial paints.

It also gave rise to artists such as Dr Esther Mahlangu, who has put her adaptations of the distinctive, highly coloured geometric Ndebele designs on everything from cars to aeroplanes.

Design

The annual Design Indaba Conference is held in Cape Town. It is also broadcast via live simulcast to multiple cities at a lower price point to broaden the access to the event.

Independently curated with a focus on case studies and ingenious problem solving, rather than simply eye-catching portfolios, conference alumni are contemporary industry pacesetters. Despite its name, the conference's scope has broadened over the years to include all the creative sectors; in recent years it has been dubbed by some as "The Conference on Creativity".

Design Indaba 2020 took place from 26 February to 1 March 2020.

In September 2020, the government honoured well-known legends Hugh Masekela, Dr Phillip Tabane and Professor Willie Keorapetse Kgositsile with postage stamps – for their roles in the Struggle against apartheid.

This followed a decision taken by Cabinet in 2018, whereby the South African Post Office (SAPO) would honour these three artists, whose words and music have left an imprint on the continent and the world.

Masekela was an award-winning jazz maestro, who also went into exile before returning to South Africa when political parties were unbanned. He is known as the Father of South African jazz, with 40 albums under his name. He succumbed to cancer in 2018.

Tabane was a renowned vocalist, jazz guitarist and bandleader. He died in 2018 at the age of 84. He was recognised as one of the best musicians and was awarded honourary doctoral degrees. Kgositsile, who also passed away in 2018, was a journalist turned author. He was a renowned poet and teacher, whose dedication to politics led him to establish the African National Congress' Department of Education, and Arts and Culture. He was the country's first National Poet Laureate in 1996 and received the National Order of Ikhamanga in 2008.

Stamps play a critical role as a small ambassador for the country. They travel across the world in the global postal network. They also attract huge interest for stamp collectors, and what is portrayed becomes very critical and serves as a revenue-generating source for the SAPO.

Literature

South Africa has a rich and diverse literary history, with realism, until relatively recently, dominating works of fiction.

Fiction has been written in all of South Africa's 11 official languages – with a large body of work in Afrikaans and English. This overview focuses primarily on English fiction, though it also touches on major poetic developments.

The local literature sector has become globally competitive and the country's writers continue to command respect throughout the world.

Well-known South African writers include Nobel Prize winners John Maxwell Coetzee and Nadine Gordimer, Gcina Mhlope, Phaswane Mpe, Es'kia Mphahlele, Wally Serote, Athol Fugard, Herman Charles Bosman, Sir Percy Fitzpatrick, Breyten Breytenbach, Dalene Matthee, Alan Paton, Olive Schreiner, André Philippus Brink and Njabulo Ndebele.

The current generation of writers are also making their mark on the world stage, with writers such as Zakes Mda, Niq Mhlongo and the late Kabelo K Sello Duiker, who have had their novels translated into languages such as Dutch, German and Spanish; and Deon Meyer, whose work has attracted worldwide critical acclaim and a growing international fan base. Originally written in Afrikaans, Meyer's books have been translated into 25 languages, including English, French, German, Dutch, Italian, Spanish, Danish, Norwegian, Swedish, Russian, Finnish, Czech, Romanian, Slovakian, Bulgarian, Japanese and Polish.

Well-known poets include the late Professor Kgositsile, Joseph Mbuyiseni Mtshali, Roy Campbell, Sheila Cussons, Jakob Daniël du Toit (better known as Totius), Elisabeth Eybers, Ingrid Jonker, Antjie Krog, Thomas Pringle, Nicolaas Petrus van Wyk Louw and Eugène Marais.

The new pop culture in poetry, often referred to as "spoken-word poetry", is one of the most celebrated art forms in the country and beyond. Poets such as Lesego Rampolokeng, Lebogang Mashile, Kgafela oa Magogodi, Blaq Pearl, Jessica Mbangeni and Mark Manaka are household names in the genre. Regular platforms have been created to give these poets opportunities to hone their skills.

The Publishing Association of South Africa is committed to creativity, literacy, the free flow of ideas and encouraging a culture of reading.

The 2019 National Book Week (NBW) ran from 2 – 8 September 2019. Celebrations included 10 indigenous language reading festivals in remote communities across the country to mark UNESCO's International Year of Indigenous Languages which was commemorated in 2019.

This annual campaign is aimed at uncovering the thrill and magic of reading books. It is guided by the idea that when the nation learns to share the joy of reading books, the country benefits by developing empowered, self-reliant communities.

The programme reaches a diverse audience during its annual visits across the country, including pre-schoolers, learners from Grade R – 12, youth, adults, the elderly, the visually impaired, the hearing impaired and persons with disabilities.

During the NBW, the South African Book Development Council (SABDC) also draws attention to various programmes to ensure that books reach as many South African households as possible. The lack of leisure books in households is a key motivator for the #BUYABOOK Strategy under the NBW campaign.

This campaign is supported by the SABDC, in association with the DSAC, with broadcast media support from the South African Broadcasting Corporation Foundation.

The department supports the Baobab Literary Journal with the purpose of providing a regular publishing platform for budding writers to appear alongside seasoned ones. This publication includes contributors from various countries across the African continent and the diaspora.

The DSAC continues to support the Time of the Writer and the Poetry Africa festivals, held annually in Durban. These festivals also deliver developmental workshops for young emerging writers, a schools programme and an initiative with the Department of Justice and Correctional Services to promote writing among inmates. WordFest, a literary component of the Grahamstown Arts Festival, focuses on promoting literature in indigenous languages. Also popular are the Johannesburg and Franschhoek literary festivals.

There is an English Literary Museum in Grahamstown and an Afrikaans Museum in Bloemfontein. The Centre for African Literary Studies at the University of KwaZulu-Natal is home to the Bernth Lindfors Collection of African literature.

The centre's mission is to promote a culture of reading, writing and publishing in all local languages, and easy access to books for all South Africans.

South African Literary Awards (SALA)

The 2019 awards ceremony was held on 7 November 2019 at Ditsong National Museum of Cultural History.

The awards were preceded by the 8th Africa Century International African Writers Conference which was held under the theme, "Writing in Tongues: Towards Social, Political, Heritage and Cultural Justice", which was intended to be in line with the UNESCO's International Year of Indigenous Languages.

The main aim of the SALA is to pay tribute to South African writers who have distinguished themselves as ground-breaking producers and creators of literature. It also celebrates literary excellence in the depiction and sharing of South Africa's histories, value systems and philosophies, and art as inscribed and preserved in all the languages of South Africa — particularly the official languages.

The event has expanded its categories to include Children's and Youth Literature categories – to acknowledge those who write for children, while encouraging reading and appreciation of literature from an early age.

The 2019 SALA winners were:

- Children's Literature Award: Lebohang Masango – *Mpumi's Magic Beads.*
- Youth Literature Award: Sally Partridge – *Mine.*
- First-time Published Literary Award: Bongani Ngqulunga – *The Man Who Founded the ANC: A Biography of Pixley Ka Isaka Seme.*
- Poetry Award: Tony Ullyatt – *An Unobtrusive Vice*, Nathan Trantraal – *Alles het niet kom wôd,* and Ayanda Billie – *Umhlaba Umanzi.*
- K Sello Duiker Memorial Literary Award: Chase Rhys – *Kinnes.*
- Novel Award: Charl-Pierre Naudé – *Die ongelooflike onskuld van Dirkie Verwey* and Sabata-mpho Mokae – *Moletlo wa Manong.*
- Nadine Gordimer Short Story Award: Niq Mhlongo – *Soweto, Under the Apricot Tree.*
- Creative Non-Fiction Literary Award: Jonathan Jansen – *As by Fire: The End of the South African University.*
- Literary Translator's Award: Michiel Heyns – *Buys and Red Dog.*
- Literary Journalism Award: Jennifer Malec and Wamuwi Mbao – *Body of work.*
- Lifetime Achievement Award: Louise Smit and Cornelius Tennyson Daniel (CTD) Marivate – *Body of work.*
- Posthumous Literary Award: Cyril Lincoln Sibusiso Nyembezi.
- Chairperson's Award – Lindiwe Mabuza.

Film

The first-ever newsreel was shot in South Africa during the Anglo-Boer/South African War, which ended in 1902. The weekly newsreel ran for more than 60 years. Film production

began in 1916, when Isidore Williem Schlesinger Schlesinger set up Killarney Studios in Johannesburg.

The studio produced 42 movies between 1916 and 1922. Access to international markets became limited in the 1920s, and it was only in the 1950s that the market picked up again, when Afrikaans filmmakers developed an interest in the industry.

In the 1980s, South Africa gave foreign companies the opportunity to film movies in the country by giving them tax breaks.

The South African film industry contributes R3.5 billion annually to the country's GDP, while providing employment for more than 25 000 people.

The government offers a package of incentives to promote its film production industry. They comprise the Foreign Film and Television Production Incentive to attract foreign-based film productions to shoot on location in South Africa, and the South African Film and Television Production and Co-Production Incentive, which aims to assist local film producers in producing local content.

South Africa's first co-production treaty was signed with Canada in 1997, followed by Germany, Italy, the UK, France, Australia and New Zealand. The three largest film distributors in South Africa are Ster-Kinekor, United International Pictures and Nu-Metro. Ster-Kinekor has a specialised art circuit, called Cinema Nouveau, with theatres in Johannesburg, Cape Town, Durban and Pretoria.

Festivals include the Durban International Film Festival; the North West Film Festival; the Apollo Film Festival in Victoria West; the Three Continents Film Festival (specialising in African, South American and Asian films); the Soweto Film Festival; and the Encounters Documentary Festival, which alternates between Cape Town and Johannesburg.

South African Film and Television Awards (SAFTAs)

The 2020 vitual SAFTAs were held on 19 April 2020, to celebrate and honour the South African film and television industry during the nationwide lockdown. The biggest winners at this year's SAFTAs were Tshedza Pictures, scooping 17 awards. Second in place was Mzansi's official Oscars entry for 2019, Knuckle City, who bagged six wins. The Most Popular TV Soap was awarded to *Imbewu* and Best TV Presenter went to Hectic on 3's Enhle Bizana.

Below is the full list of the 2019 SAFTAs winners:

- Best Short Film: *The Letter Reader.*
- Best Student Film: *Moya.*
- Best Achievement in Directing: Telenovela – Ferry Jele, Catharine Cooke, Zolani Phakade and Johnny Barbuzano – *The River.*
- Best Achievement in Directing: TV Soap – Eric Mogale – *Rhythm City.*
- Best Achievement in Scriptwriting: Telenovela – Gwydion Beynon, Phathutshedzo Makwarela, Christa Biyela, Lebogang Mogashoa and Mamello Lebona – *The River*.
- Best Achievement in Scriptwriting – TV Soap: the writing team: *Getroud met Rugby.*
- Best Achievement in Original Music/Score: Telenovela – Philip Miller – *Isibaya*.
- Best Achievement in Editing: Telenovela – Bongi Malefo, Matodzi Nemungadi and Ula Oelsen – *The River.*
- Best Achievement in Sound: TV Soap/Telenovela – Ben Oelsen, Juli Vanden Berg and Tladi Steven Mabuya – *The River.*
- Best Achievement in Cinematography: Telenovela – Alice Mataboge – *The River.*
- Best Achievement in Make-Up and Hairstyling: TV Soap/ Telenovela – Bongi Mlotshwa – *The River*.
- Best Achievement in Art Direction: TV Soap/Telenovela – Beatrix van Zyl – *Arendsvlei.*
- Best Actress: Telenovela – Sindi Dlathu – *The River.*
- Best Actor: Telenovela – Roberto Kyle – *Arendsvlei.*
- Best Supporting Actress: Telenovela – Mary-Anne Barlow – *The River.*
- Best Supporting Actor: Telenovela – Loyiso MacDonald – *The Queen.*
- Best Actress: TV Soap – Denise Newman – *Suidooster.*
- Best Actor: TV Soap – Bongile Mantsai – *Scandal!*
- Best Supporting Actress: TV Soap – Kgomotso Christopher – *Scandal!*
- Best Supporting Actor: TV Soap – Mncedisi Shabangu – *Rhythm City.*
- Best TV Soap: Quizzical Pictures – *Rhythm City.*
- Best Telenovela: Tshedza Pictures – *The River.*
- Best Achievement in Directing: TV Drama – Johnny Barbuzano and Rea Rangaka – *The Republic.*
- Best Achievement in Scriptwriting: TV Drama – Phathutshedzo Makwarela and Gwydion Beynon – *The Republic.*
- Best Achievement in Editing: TV Drama – Leon Visser – *Spreeus.*
- Best Achievement in Sound: TV Drama – Ben Oelsen and Juli Vanden Berg – *The Republic.*
- Best Achievement in Original Music/Score: TV Drama – Pierre-Henri Wicomb – *Spreeus.*
- Best Achievement in Art Direction: TV Drama – Christelle van Graan – *Shadow.*
- Best Achievement in Wardrobe: TV Drama – Heidi Riss, Monique Lamprecht and Nerine Pienaar – *Ifalakhe*.
- Best Achievement in Make-Up and Hairstyling: TV Drama – Ronwyn Jarrett – *Ifalakhe.*
- Best Achievement in Cinematography: TV Drama – Ntobeko Dlamini – *The Republic*.
- Best Actress: TV Drama – Florence Masebe – *The Republic.*
- Best Actor: TV Drama – Wiseman Mncube – *eHostela.*
- Best Supporting Actress:TV Drama – Brenda Ngxoli – *iThemba.*
- Best Supporting Actor: TV Drama – Seputla Sebogodi – *The Republic.*
- Best TV Drama: Tshedza Pictures – *The Republic*.
- Best Achievement in Directing: Documentary Feature: – Nicole Schafer – *Buddha in Africa.*
- Best Achievement in Cinematography: Documentary – Sara Gouveia – *The Sound of Masks.*
- Best Achievement in Editing: Documentary – Michael Cross – *The Fun's Not Over -The James Phillips Story.*
- Best Achievement in Sound: Documentary Feature – Catherine Meyburgh, Guy Steer and Mapula Lehong – *Dying for Gold.*
- Best Documentary Feature: Buddha in Africa – *Thinking Strings Media.*
- Best Natural History and Environmental Programme: Scott & de Bod Films – *Stroop: Journey into the Rhino Horn War.*

- Best Competition Reality Show: Okuhle Media – *Ultimate Braai Master.*
- Best Structured or Docu-reality Show: Barleader TV – *Living The Dream with Somizi Season 4.*
- Best International Format Show: Rapid Blue – *Celebrity Game Night Season 1.*
- Best Factual and Educational Programme: Gambit Films – *Op Seer Se Spoor.*
- Best Current Affairs Programme: eNCA – *Checkpoint Work Hazards.*
- Best Variety Show: Afrikaans Film & Television – *Mooi.*
- Best Youth Programme: Quizzical Pictures – *MTV Shuga Down South 2.*
- Natural History and Environmental Programme on Innovative Research: Earth Touch – *Cave Crocs of Gabon.*
- Best Children's Programme: Johan Stemmet Entertainment Enterprises – *Words and Numbers Series 9.*
- Best Entertainment Programme: All Star Productions – *Emo 30 Jaar in Musiek.*
- Best Lifestyle Programme: Bonanza Films – *Elders: Japan.*
- Best Made for TV Movie: Deon Opperman Produksies – *Droomman.*
- Best Achievement in Directing: Feature Film – Jahmil X.T. Qubeka – *Knuckle City.*
- Best Achievement in Scriptwriting: Feature Film – Brett Michael Innes – *Fiela se Kind.*
- Best Achievement in Cinematography: Feature Film: – Willie Nel – *Die Verhaal van Racheltjie de Beer.*
- Best Achievement in Original Music/Score: Feature Film – Chris Letcher – *Die Verhaal van Racheltjie de Beer.*
- Best Achievement in Editing: Feature Film – Layla Swart – *Knuckle City.*
- Best Achievement in Production Design: Feature Film – TK Khampepe and Justice Nhlapo – *Knuckle City.*
- Best Achievement in Costume Design: Feature Film – Trudi Mantzios – *Back of the Moon.*
- Best Achievement in Make-Up and Hairstyling: Feature Film – Carol Babalwa Mtshiselwa – *Knuckle City.*
- Best Actress: Feature Film – Clementine Mosimane – *Poppie Nongena.*
- Best Actor: Feature Film – Bongile Mantsai – *Knuckle City.*
- Best Supporting Actress: Feature Film – Anna-Mart van der Merwe – *Poppie Nongena.*
- Best Supporting Actor: Feature Film – Patrick Ndlovu – *Knuckle City.*
- Best Feature Film: The Film Factory and Nostalgia Productions – *Fiela se Kind.*
- Lifetime Achiever Award: Thembi Mtshali-Jones.
- Youth Achiever Award: Thabo Welcome.
- Outstanding Person with Disability Contributor Award: Boitshoko Keabetswe and Malebo Matlhage.
- Outstanding Provincial Contributor Award: Luzuko Dilima.
- Emerging Filmmaker Award: Vusi Africa Sindane.
- Best TV Presenter: Entle Bizana – *Hectic on 3.*
- Most Popular TV Soap/Telenovela: Grapevine Productions – *Imbewu.*

Museums

Museums are the windows to the natural and cultural heritage of a country. South Africa can justifiably be called the "museum country of Africa", with the earliest of its museums dating back to the first half of the 19th century.

There are more than 300 museums in South Africa. They range from museums of geology, history, the biological sciences and the arts, to mining, agriculture, forestry and many other disciplines.

Visitors can find exhibits, both conventional and eccentric, on every conceivable topic – from beer to beadwork, from fashion to food.

New additions are those reflecting the apartheid era, and commemorating those who fought and died for the cause of establishing a democratic country.

Most of the country's national museums are declared cultural institutions and fall under the overall jurisdiction of the DSAC. They receive an annual subsidy from the department, but function autonomously.

The following officially declared heritage institutions depend on annual transfers from the DSAC:

- Northern Flagship Institutions, Pretoria;
- Freedom Park, Pretoria;
- Iziko Museum, Cape Town;
- Natal Museum, Pietermaritzburg;
- Bloemfontein National Museum;
- Afrikaans Language Museum, Paarl;
- The National English Literary Museum, Grahamstown;
- Msunduzi/Voortrekker Museum, Pietermaritzburg;
- War Museum of the Boer Republics, Bloemfontein;
- Robben Island Museum, Cape Town;
- William Humphreys Art Gallery, Kimberley;
- Luthuli Museum, KwaDukuza; and
- Nelson Mandela Museum, Mthatha.

The following museums report to the Minister of Sport, Arts and Culture:

- Ditsong Museums of South Africa;
- Iziko Museums, Cape Town;
- Natal Museum, Pietermaritzburg;
- National Museum, Bloemfontein;
- Language Museum, Paarl;
- National English Literary Museum, Grahamstown;
- Msunduzi/Voortrekker Museum, Pietermaritzburg;
- War Museum of the Boer Republics, Bloemfontein;
- Robben Island Museum, Cape Town;
- William Humphreys Art Gallery, Kimberley;
- Engelenburg House Art Collection, Pretoria;
- Nelson Mandela Museum, Mthatha; and
- Luthuli Museum, KwaDukuza.

The Ditsong Museums of South Africa comprise the National Cultural History Museum, Kruger House Museum, Tswaing Meteorite Crater, Willem Prinsloo Agricultural Museum, Pioneer Museum, Sammy Marks Museum, the Coert Steynberg Museum, the Transvaal Museum and the South African National Museum of Military History in Johannesburg.

The Iziko Museums of Cape Town comprise the South African Museum, the South African Cultural History Museum and its satellite museums, the South African National Gallery, the William Fehr Collection and the Michaelis Collection.

The Robben Island Museum was established as a national monument and museum, and declared South Africa's first world heritage site in 1999. Guided tours are offered to historical sites on the island, including the cell in which former President Nelson Mandela was imprisoned.

In April 2009, the government declared Freedom Park, Pretoria, a cultural institution under the Cultural Institutions Act of 1998.

The //hapo Museum at the historic Freedom Park was officially unveiled in 2013.

The museum, which is situated at the top of Salvokop in Pretoria, also serves as a monument to the mighty legacy of South Africa's first democratically elected President Nelson Mandela.

//hapo is a Khoi word which means "a dream". The museum is helping the country define its history, in holistic terms, from the early wars of dispossession such as the Khoikhoi-Dutch War in the 1500s; the arrival of Jan van Riebeeck in the Cape in 1652; the Third War of Dispossession between the Khoisan and colonial authorities in the 1800s; and the South African War, previously known as the Anglo-Boer War, to the anti-apartheid struggle – all of which form part of the freedom history and define the freedom South Africans enjoy today. The museum is the result of nationwide consultative processes that solicited advice from youth, intellectuals, academics, artistic communities, women's groups, traditional leaders and healers and faith-based organisations.

It is a product of South Africans from all walks of life, and is in every shape and form a community's dream.

Other elements include a vast wall commemorating those who paid the ultimate price for freedom, an eternal flame paying tribute to the unknown and unsung heroes and heroines, a gallery dedicated to the legends of humanity, a symbolic resting place for those who have died and the story of southern Africa's 3.6 billion years of history.

Other museums administered by central government departments or research councils are the:

- Museum of the Council for Geoscience (Pretoria).
- Theiler Veterinary Science Museum at Onderstepoort (Pretoria).
- South African Air Force Museum at Swartkop Air Force Base (Pretoria) with its satellites in Cape Town and Port Elizabeth.
- Museum of the Department of Correctional Services (Pretoria).

The best-known natural history collections in South Africa are housed in the Iziko Museums, the Ditsong Museums of South Africa, the National Museum and the KwaZulu-Natal Museum.

The following natural history museums do not fall under the DSAC, but work closely with the national heritage institutions:

- McGregor Museum, Kimberley;
- East London Museum;
- South African Institute for Aquatic Biodiversity, Grahamstown;
- Port Elizabeth Museum; and
- Durban Museum of Natural History.

The best-known cultural history collections are housed in the Iziko Museums and the Ditsong Museums of South Africa, as well as the Durban Local History Museum and Museum Africa in Johannesburg.

The South African National Gallery in Cape Town and the William Humphreys Art Gallery in Kimberley report to the DSAC.

The South African Cultural History Museum (Slave Lodge) in Cape Town houses the oldest cultural history collection in the country.

The South African Museum (Cape Town) showcases the natural history of South Africa, and relics of the early human inhabitants of the subcontinent.

The huge Whale Hall houses possibly the most impressive of all its exhibitions. This is the only collection in South Africa with a planetarium attached to it.

The Transvaal Museum in Pretoria houses the skull of Mrs Ples, a 2.5-million-year-old hominid fossil, and depicts the origin and development of life in South Africa, from the most primitive unicellular form of life to the emergence of mammals and the first human beings.

It has an impressive collection of early human fossils and houses some of the largest herpetological and ornithological collections in southern Africa.

The Tswaing Meteorite Crater, situated to the north-west of Pretoria, combines a museum with a cultural-development initiative.

The National Cultural History Museum in Pretoria is a centre for the preservation and promotion of the culture and heritage of all South Africans.

It explores cultural diversity and commonalities, links the present and the past to offer a better understanding of both, and nurtures the living cultures of all South Africans.

Mining is best represented by the De Beers Museum at the Big Hole in Kimberley, where visitors can view the biggest hole ever made by man with pick and shovel.

It includes an open-air museum, which houses many buildings dating back to the era of the diamond diggings.

Another important mining museum is at Pilgrim's Rest, Mpumalanga, where the first economically viable gold field was discovered. The entire village has been conserved and restored.

Agriculture in South Africa is depicted mainly in two museums. These are Kleinplasie in Worcester, Western Cape, which showcases the wine culture and characteristic architecture of the winelands; and the Willem Prinsloo Agricultural Museum between Pretoria and Bronkhorstspruit, in Gauteng.

This museum comprises two "house" museums and runs educational programmes based on its extensive collection of early farming implements, vehicles of yesteryear and indigenous farm animals.

The Absa Museum and Archives in Johannesburg preserve the banking group's more than 110 years of history. The museum also houses a unique and very valuable coin and banknote collection.

The Apartheid Museum in Johannesburg offers a realistic view of the political situation in South Africa during the apartheid years.

Exhibitions in the museum include audio visual footage recorded during the apartheid era.

The Red Location Museum in Port Elizabeth highlights the struggle against apartheid and has won several international awards.

A common type of museum in South Africa is the "house" museum. Examples include an entire village nucleus in Stellenbosch; the mansion of millionaire industrialist Sammy Marks; the Kruger House Museum, the residence of Paul Kruger, former President of the Zuid-Afrikaansche Republiek; and Melrose House, where the Peace Treaty of Vereeniging that ended the Second Anglo-Boer/South African War (1899 to 1902) was signed, around the massive dining table, on 31

May 1902, in Pretoria. Simpler variations include the Pioneer Museum and 1848 House in Silverton, Pretoria; and the Diepkloof Farm Museum, featuring a farmhouse dating back to the 1850s, at Suikerbosrand near Heidelberg, in Gauteng.

There are several open-air museums that showcase the black cultures of the country, for example, Tsonga Kraal near Letsitele, Limpopo; the Ndebele Museum in Middelburg, Mpumalanga; the Bakone Malapa Museum in Polokwane, Limpopo; and the South Sotho Museum in Witsieshoek, Free State.

The South African Museum for Military History in Johannesburg reflects the military history of the country, while the War Museum in Bloemfontein depicts the Anglo-Boer/South African War, in particular.

The famous battlefields of KwaZulu-Natal, the Northern Cape and North West are also worth a visit.

International Museum Day is commemorated on 18 May. It is coordinated by the International Council of Museums and its objective is to raise awareness of the fact that museums are an important means of cultural exchange, enrichment of cultures and development of mutual understanding, cooperation and peace among people.

The event highlights a specific theme that changes every year and that is at the heart of the international museum community's preoccupations.

The 2020 event was held under the theme, "Museums for Equality: Diversity and Inclusion" and aims at becoming a rallying point to both celebrate the diversity of perspectives that make up the communities and personnel of museums, and champion tools for identifying and overcoming bias in what they display and the stories they tell.

Participation in International Museum Day is growing all over the world. In 2019, over 37 000 museums in more than 150 countries took part in the event.

The main mission of museums is to oversee the safekeeping and protection of the heritage that lies both within and beyond their walls.

Archives

The archives of governmental bodies are transferred to archive repositories after 20 years, and are accessible to the public and to the office of origin. The National Archives in Pretoria includes the National Film, Video and Sound Archives (NFVSA). Its primary functions are to obtain and preserve films, videotapes and sound recordings of archival value, and to make these available for research and reference purposes.

The archives of central government are preserved in the National Archives' repository in Pretoria. The nine provinces run their archiving services independently from the National Archives. The retrieval of information from archives is facilitated by the National Automated Archival Information System, which can be found at *www.national.archives.gov.za*. It includes national registers of manuscripts, photographs and audio-visual material.

The National Archives is responsible for collecting non-public records with enduring value of national significance. It also renders a regulatory records-management service with regard to current records in governmental bodies, aimed at promoting efficient, transparent and accountable administration. In so doing, it is obliged to pay special attention to aspects of the nation's experience neglected by archives of the past.

The National Archives' outreach programme promotes the use of its facilities and functions. Archives are taken to the people through coordinated national and provincial archive services.

The Convention for a Democratic South Africa and Archives of the Multi-Party Negotiating Process, 1993 were submitted and recommended for inclusion in the UNESCO Memory of the World International Register in 2013. This is part of South Africa's contribution to the documented collective memory of the people of the world.

The automated National Register of Oral Sources is an important element of the programme.

The National Oral History Association (OHASA), which was established in 2006, hosts annual oral history conferences.

From 7 – 11 October 2019, the DSAC in partnership with the OHASA hosted the 16th Annual National Oral History opening at Steve Tshwete Banquet Hall in Middelburg. The theme was, "Collective Memories, Disparities and Contents: Reflecting on 25 Years of Democracy".

The DSAC is mandated to lead the National Oral History programme for South Africa. The programme seeks to yield information that will be added to the information already existing in the country's archival holdings. The programme also seeks to assist communities in retrieving neglected indigenous and community knowledge as a way of promoting social, economic and cultural development.

Library and Information Services

The DSAC oversees various libraries, including the NLSA, a statutory body; the SALB; and Blind South Africa. South Africa's growing LIS sector also includes public/community libraries; special libraries; government libraries; and higher education libraries.

National Library of South Africa

The NLSA was established after the merger of the former State Library in Pretoria and the former South African Library in Cape Town, and includes a specialist unit, the Centre for the Book in Cape Town.

The NLSA in Pretoria has seating capacity for 1 300 library users and offers free Internet access to users in Cape Town and Pretoria.

The Centre for the Book promotes the culture of reading, writing and publishing in all official languages of South Africa.

The NLSA is a custodian and provider of the nation's knowledge resources. It is mandated to collect and preserve intellectual documentary heritage material and make it accessible worldwide.

Its collections contain a wealth of information sources, including rare manuscripts, books, periodicals, government publications, foreign official publications, maps, technical reports, and special interest material, including Africana and newspapers.

The functions of the NLSA are to:

- build a complete collection of published documents emanating from or relating to South Africa;
- maintain and preserve these collections;
- provide access to them through bibliographic, reference, information and interlending services; and
- promote information awareness and literacy.

In terms of the Legal Deposit Act of 1997, the NLSA receives two copies of each book, periodical, newspaper, map,

manuscript material or other publication that is published in South Africa in any medium, whether print or electronic.

The Bookkeeper Mass Deacidification has been installed at the NLSA in Pretoria to treat books and archival non-book material to extend the useful life of paper collections.

The NLSA is able to offer moderate services to local libraries, archives and museums. It is also a link between the LIS sector and heritage sector. It influences a social cohesive nation by providing free and equitable access to knowledge and information resources, with the theme: "A reading nation is a thriving nation".

Library and Information Association of South Africa (LIASA)

The LIASA is the national professional association that represents libraries and information institutions; all library and information workers; and millions of users and potential users of libraries in South Africa.

It aims to unite, develop and empower all people in the library and information field. It represents the interests of and promotes the development and image of LIS in South Africa.

Libraries have always played a role in education, whether school, academic, public or special libraries.

Where there are not enough school libraries, public libraries are largely bridging the gap.

The concept of lifelong learning is one embodied in all libraries, especially public and community libraries.

That any person, young or old, rich or poor, employed or unemployed, can walk into a library and find information (in both electronic and traditional formats) to educate and enrich themselves, is one of the major benefits of libraries.

The 2020 South African Library Week, which was scheduled to run from 16 to 22 March under the theme "Libraries: Your Partners for Life", was cancelled due to the COVID-19 pandemic.

The LIASA remains aligned with South Africa's NDP 2030 vision that will shape communities through among others, skill development in a focused attempt to reduce unemployment especially amongst the youth.

National Council for Library and Information Services (NCLIS)

The NCLIS is a council that advises Ministers of Arts and Culture, Basic Education, and Higher Education, Science and Innovation on matters relating to LIS to support and stimulate the socio-economic, educational, cultural, recreational, scientific research, technological and information development of all communities in the country.

The council is broadly representative and councillors are appointed for their expertise and experience in the field of LIS.

Members serve on the council for a renewable term of three years. Some important policy matters include the development of the LIS Transformation Charter, which aligns the role of libraries with the vision and strategic framework of government; the training of librarians; and the funding of the sector.

Legal Deposit Committee

The committee was appointed in terms of the Legal Deposit Act of 1997, which is administered by the DSAC. Members serve on the committee for a renewable term of three years. The mandate of the Act includes:

- providing for the preservation of the national documentary heritage through the legal deposit of published documents;
- ensuring the preservation and cataloguing of, and access to, published documents emanating from, or adapted for, South Africa; and
- providing for access to government information.

The core functions of the Legal Deposit Committee include:

- advising the Minister of Sport, Arts and Culture on any matter dealt with in this Act;
- making recommendations concerning any regulations which the Minister of Sport, Arts and Culture may make under this Act;
- coordinating the tasks carried out by the places of legal deposit; and
- advising any place of legal deposit regarding any matter dealt with in this Act.

The places of legal deposit are the NLSA, the Library of Parliament in Cape Town, the Mangaung Public Library in Bloemfontein, the Msunduzi/Voortrekker Municipal Library in Pietermaritzburg and the NFVSA in Pretoria.

The Act also provides for the establishment of official publications depositories, namely the Constitutional Court Library in Johannesburg, the Phuthaditjhaba Public Library in the Free State, the North West Provincial Library, Information and Archives Service, and the Mpumalanga Library Services.

South African Library for the Blind

The SALB is a statutory organisation located in Grahamstown in the Eastern Cape. Its purpose is to provide, free of charge as far as is reasonably possible, a national LIS to serve blind and print-handicapped readers in South Africa.

It is partly state-funded and depends for the remainder of its financial needs on funds from the private sector and the general public.

The SALB also produces documents in special media such as Braille, audio and tactile formats. It develops standards for the production of such documents and researches production methods and technology in the appropriate fields.

The SALB has five broad objectives, namely to significantly contribute towards:

- helping to build a nation of readers;
- assisting the organised blind community;
- improving the lives of individuals with print disabilities by meeting their information needs;
- helping the State to discharge its cultural mandate, and its obligations to blind and visually impaired people;
- assisting Africa's development by providing advice, expertise and documents in accessible formats for blind people and the institutions that serve their information needs.

The SALB has a membership of about 3 655 people, an audio and Braille collection of more than 25 600 books, and an annual circulation of 133 222 books in Braille or audio format.

To make library services more accessible, the SALB has partnered with 82 public libraries providing accessible reading material and assisting devices.

Blind SA

Blind SA is an organisation of the blind, governed by the blind, and is located in Johannesburg.

It provides services for blind and partially sighted individuals to uplift and empower them by publishing books, magazines and other documents in Braille.

The organisation equips blind people with the skills they need to fully and independently participate in society. This includes support in living without assistance, getting about, using technology, reading, working and socialising. All this is made possible through the organisation's advocacy, education committee, Braille services, orientation and mobility services and employment programme.

It is through this, and the support of its donors, that Blind SA connects South Africans who are blind or visually impaired with the world they live in.

Blind SA provides:

- study bursaries for blind and partially sighted students;
- interest-free loans (for adaptive equipment);
- information (including free Braille magazines);
- assistance in finding sustainable employment;
- advocacy (to act as a pressure group for disability rights);
- Braille publications at affordable prices in all the official languages;
- free Braille training (newly blind people or previously disadvantaged blind people); and
- free orientation and mobility training (newly blind people or previously disadvantaged blind people).

International relations

The DSAC's participation in various activities in the international cultural arena helps to identify, promote and exploit mutually beneficial partnerships for social and economic development in South Africa.

Together with the African Union (AU) and the New Partnership for Africa's Development, South Africa has embarked on the road to restoring, preserving and protecting its African heritage.

The DSAC ensures that South African talent takes its rightful place on the global stage, and uses arts and culture as a tool for economic self-liberation. Bilateral agreements have been signed with France, the UK, China, Cuba, India, New Zealand and many more.

South Africa ratified the Convention on the Promotion and Protection of Cultural Diversity in 2006, becoming the 35th member country to do so. In the area of international cooperation on cultural development, the DSAC is committed to promoting the African Agenda. It continues to encourage and support initiatives to promote South African artists on the world stage.

Cultural diplomacy

South Africa continues to expand its international Cultural Diplomacy programme led by the DSAC, in order to create opportunities for artists and showcase South African talent and creativity to the world.

The cultural diplomacy and seasons programmes build relations between individuals, communities, states and institutions, in order to foster a better understanding of each other's cultures and heritage and to use this power to promote peaceful relations.

Cultural diplomacy supports and enhances political dialogue and economic cooperation. It uses the power of culture as a driver and facilitator of economic development, and contributes to poverty reduction, whilst fostering positive, socially-cohesive nations.

The cultural seasons initiative is one of the tools used for the implementation of cultural diplomacy. It is a concentrated focus of cultural activities and exchanges over a specific period of time, agreed to between two countries and is based on reciprocity. It seeks to profile and strengthen cultural relations between two countries and showcase the best talent while providing growth opportunities for emerging and up-and-coming young artists.

It creates international platforms and opportunities for artists and cultural practitioners of all genres to showcase their work, and to engage with their counterparts and audiences, growing and further developing the arts and culture sector.

The initiative creates reciprocal cultural, arts and heritage collaboration and exchanges between involved countries, creating institutional ties, increasing the level of awareness of each other's culture and heritage, and unlocking opportunities in other spin-off areas, including cultural tourism.

Africa cultural seasons

The African cultural seasons are aimed at showcasing South Africa's artistic and cultural talent and promote regional integration. In line with the NDP and South Africa's foreign policy imperative on "regional integration", South Africa's national interests include the development and upliftment of its people; growth and development of the economy; growth and development of southern Africa; and a stable and prosperous African continent.

Africa Month

South Africa has dedicated the month of May to commemorating Africa Month, which the government is using to promote the African unity, deeper regional integration and recommit Africa to a common destiny.

The theme for the 2020 Africa Month was, "Silencing the Guns, Creating Conducive Conditions for Africa's Development and Intensifying the Fight against the COVID-19 Pandemic". Celebrations took place amid the continent's advancing efforts to combat the spread of the Coronavirus. The AU has developed a comprehensive COVID-19 strategy, established an AU COVID-19 Response Fund and strengthened the Africa Centre for Disease Control and Prevention.

Africa Day is celebrated annually on 25 May to mark the formation of the Organisation of African Unity (OAU) on 25 May 1963 and the AU in 2002, which was created to promote unity in Africa. The day, which is celebrated across the continent, is used to acknowledge the progress that Africans have made, while reflecting upon the common challenges faced in a global environment. The 2020 Africa Day celebrations included a special virtual broadcast, featuring speeches by President Ramaphosa; the AU Commission Chair Moussa Faki Mahamat; Pan African Women Association President Eunice Ipinge, and the AU Youth Envoy Aya Chebbi.

The broadcast also featured one of the champions of Africa's liberation, the only remaining founding father of the OAU, Dr Kenneth Kaunda of Zambia. KK, as he is known, walked and worked side by side with other gallant giants of Africa's liberation in establishing the organisation that strived to free the whole continent from the shackles of colonialism. He served as Zambia's first president and as the Chair of the OAU from 1970 to 1973.

South Africa-Russia Seasons

The initiative has become an excellent and innovative way to showcase different cultures, discover new talent and connect new generations of creative professionals and audiences in South Africa and Russia. It is about the sustainability and growth of the arts and culture sector. The South Africa-Russia Seasons initiative, at its core, is about common and shared heritage, the need to positively influence each other, shared thinking on the arts, culture and creative industry, institutional collaboration, nurturing of leadership in the arts and promoting innovation.

South Africa-China: People-to-People Exchange Mechanism

Among others, the initiative aims to create new opportunities for developing and enriching the current bilateral cooperation and exchange mechanisms between China and South Africa in the fields of arts and culture, health, youth, science and technology, education and tourism.

Brazil, Russia, India, China and South Africa (BRICS)

Rio de Janeiro hosted the 4th BRICS film festival in October 2019. Filmmakers from the BRICS countries showcased their work to promote cultural exchange. The event was the main cultural event ahead of the BRICS summit, gathering filmmakers from the five member countries and foreign experts.

Indigenous music and oral history

The International Library of African Music attached to the Music Department at Rhodes University, is the largest repository of African music in the world. Founded in 1954 by ethnomusicologist Hugh Tracy, the library is devoted to the study of music and oral arts in Africa. It preserves thousands of historical recordings, going back to 1929, and supports contemporary fieldwork.

The DSAC has entered into partnerships with the universities of Venda, Fort Hare and Zululand to conduct research into indigenous music and instruments, as well as identifying and collecting all aspects of intangible cultural heritage in their provinces.

The DSAC and the African Cultural Heritage Fund promote indigenous music by hosting regional, provincial and national indigenous dance and music competitions.

African World Heritage Fund (AWHF)

The AWHF provides financial and technical support for the conservation and protection of Africa's natural and cultural heritage of outstanding universal value.

The fund was established as a result of work undertaken by African member states of the UNESCO, with the objective of developing an ongoing strategy to deal with the challenges that most African countries have in implementing the World Heritage Convention. The AWHF is the first regional funding initiative within the framework of the UNESCO World Heritage Convention.

The fund strives towards the effective conservation and protection of Africa's natural and cultural heritage. It is aimed at AU member states that signed the 1972 UNESCO World Heritage Convention in support of these goals.

Sport and Recreation South Africa

Aligned with the DSAC's vision of an active and winning nation, this aspect of the department focuses on providing opportunities for all South Africans to participate in sport; manages the regulatory framework; and provides funding for different sporting codes.

The right to participate in sport has been embodied in the UN instruments such as the Convention on the Rights of the Child and the Convention on the Elimination of All Forms of Discrimination Against Women. It is recognised as a right which all governments should make available to people.

The DSAC aims to maximise access, development and excellence at all levels of participation in sport and recreation to improve the quality of life for all South Africans.

The start of the sixth administration saw the merger of the former departments of Arts and Culture, and Sport and Recreation, to form the DSAC. The merger will add impetus in terms of the efficiency of the country's programmatic content, in particular, for more social integration and inclusion. It is an indisputable fact that sport, arts and culture, if harnessed optimally, can be a lever for societal integration.

Sporting events bring South Africans together and rally them in support of sport teams. Events such as the Big Walk and National Recreation Day, as well as various school sport events, not only contribute towards an active nation that may win the war against various social ills; but also bring together people in the name of "choosing to be active". National days educate communities about the meaning and importance of each day, and through these days, the DSAC promotes national symbols, particularly the flag, which is one of the primary symbols of the country.

In the 2019/20 financial year, the DSAC plans to conduct a study to consider the feasibility of constructing a monumental South African flag to inspire and maintain the pride of being South African.

The provision of appropriate sport, arts and culture infrastructure is important to encourage participation by communities. To this end, the DSAC will use earmarked funds in the Municipal Infrastructure Grant to provide sport and recreation facilities, especially in distressed districts. Plans are in place to construct the National Training Centre, which will provide world class training facilities for elite athletes to assist them in preparing for participation on international platforms.

Over the medium term, the DSAC will support school sports and integrate the 16 priority sporting codes and indigenous games into the school sport system. Furthermore, collaboration with loveLife will be strengthened to offer youth empowerment programmes at sport and recreation activities.

The DSAC's Recreation Development and Sport Promotion programme supports the provision of mass participation opportunities, the development of elite athletes, and the regulation and maintenance of facilities. The programme's objectives, over the medium term, include:

- Inspiring lifelong physical activity by providing mass sport participation opportunities to at least 4 864 community members in three sport promotion events by March 2021.
- Increasing learners' access to sport at schools by supporting the National School Sport Championship for 5 000 learners by March 2021, and providing equipment and attire for 2 500 schools, hubs and clubs per year over the medium term.

- Increasing the provision of opportunities for mass participation in sport and recreation in all provinces by providing management and financial support through the Mass Participation and Sport Development Grant annually.
- Improving the delivery of sport and recreation by providing financial and non-financial support to 60 sport and recreation bodies annually.
- Fostering transformation within the sport and recreation sector by monitoring the transformation statuses of 19 sport federations and broadly assisting them towards reaching their respective transformation targets by March 2023.
- Providing accessible infrastructure to communities by constructing 10 community gyms and play parks, and 10 multipurpose sports courts by March 2021.
- Assisting 35 municipalities per year in complying with facility norms and standards by providing technical and management support during the construction phase of sport and recreation facilities on an ongoing basis.
- Preserving and promoting South African heritage, a national memory, and an informed reading nation by constructing, upgrading, maintaining, repairing and renovating its buildings, its public entities and related institutions on an ongoing basis.

Transformation in sport

There has been significant progress since the introduction of the Sports Transformation Charter. Federation commitment to the process, quality, and reliability of data submitted has consistently improved. Cricket, football, netball, rugby, and tennis are leading the pack in this regard. Change in demographics at administration level is reflected in that more than half of the boards of federations audited are black and have black presidents.

On the field of play, a substantial number of senior male and underage national representative teams, including athletics, cricket, football, volleyball, boxing, and table tennis have achieved the charter targets.

However, senior women and underage national team demographic profiles are lagging behind that of male representative entities, in that charter targets were achieved by only three codes, namely, gymnastics, football and boxing, reflecting the magnitude of the task to improve women's position in sport. Coaching, referee or umpire, and medical and scientific support structures were found to be more challenging from a demographic change perspective for both men and women. These areas have thus become increasingly under the magnifying glass.

The purpose of the Sports Transformation Charter is to level the playing fields that enable the majority of South Africans to have equitable access and opportunity to participate and achieve in all areas and at all levels of sport. It also:

- outlines the principles and the basis for designing and implementing a transformation strategy on the basis of broad-based empowerment;
- lays the basis for setting transformation-related goals, the achievement of which will become an important barometer in the allocation of funds;
- intends to assist the South African sport sector to develop and implement broad-based transformation action plans; and
- intends that the achievement of selected transformation goals will become important criteria for considering applications for lotto funding.

Role players

South African Sports Confederation and Olympic Committee

The DSAC and the SASCOC cooperate closely on issues of mutual importance, and the department provides funding to the SASCOC for initiatives such as the preparation of elite athletes for international events.

The SASCOC is the national controlling body for the promotion and development of high-performance sport in South Africa and consults with relevant sports bodies in this regard.

It prepares and delivers Team South Africa to all international multi-coded sporting events, such as the Olympic Games, Paralympic Games, Commonwealth Games, African Games, Olympic Youth Games, Commonwealth Youth Games and AU Sports Council (AUSC) Region 5 Games.

The committee is also responsible for the awarding of National Protea Colours to athletes/officials who have met the criteria to represent South Africa in different sporting codes and arenas and, in addition, endorse the applications for bidding and hosting of international events, providing the criteria are all met.

Its different strategies, such as the Operation Excellence programme were designed to offer support to athletes who have the potential to qualify for participation and returning medals at a higher level in the multi-coded events under the organisation's umbrella of sports. It is the premier programme for prospective Olympic and Paralympic medallists. The programme comprises three different tiers that provide varying degrees of funding and support.

The Olympic Committee also collaborates with various stakeholders, including other national Olympic committees to ensure that its main mandate is fulfilled.

AUSC Region 5

The AUSC Region 5 is one of the five regions entrusted with the responsibility to develop sport under the AU. This follows the dissolution of the Supreme Council for Sport in Africa, under which Region 5 was known as the Supreme Council for Sport in Africa Zone VI.

World Anti-Doping Agency

The World Anti-Doping Agency aims to bring consistency to anti-doping policies and regulations within sport organisations and governments across the world.

The World Anti-Doping Agency's NO! to Doping campaign, which has been running since 2010, has become the leading awareness campaign for most sporting codes around the globe.

National Sport Federations

The various sporting codes in South Africa are governed by their own federations and associations. These include:

- Aero Club of South Africa
- AFL South Africa
- Amateur Fencing Association of Southern Africa
- Anglers and Casting Federation of Southern Africa
- Archery South Africa
- Athletics South Africa
- Badminton South Africa

- Baseball Union of Southern Africa
- Basketball South Africa
- Bowls South Africa
- BSA
- Bridge Federation of Southern Africa
- Canoeing South Africa
- Chess South Africa
- Clay Target Shooting Association of South Africa
- Confederation of Cue Sport South Africa
- Cricket South Africa
- Cycling South Africa
- Dance Sport Federation of Sport South Africa
- Darts South Africa
- Deaf Sports Federation of Southern Africa
- Federation Bocce
- Fitness Sport Aerobics Federation of Southern Africa
- Handball Federation of Southern Africa
- Judo South Africa
- Jukskei South Africa
- Karate South Africa
- Korfball Federation of South Africa
- Lifesaving South Africa
- Majorette and Cheerleading Association South Africa
- Martial Arts and Games Committee of South Africa
- Masters Sports Association of Southern Africa Mind Sports South Africa
- Modern Pentathlon Association of South Africa
- Motorsport South Africa
- National Amateur Bodybuilding Association of South Africa
- National Horseracing Authority
- National Pigeon Organisation of Southern Africa
- National Boxing Organisation of Southern Africa
- Netball South Africa
- Orienteering Federation of Southern Africa
- Parachute Association of South Africa
- Physically Disabled Association
- Powerlifting Federation of South Africa
- Powerboat South Africa
- Ringball South Africa
- Roller Sport South Africa
- Rowing South Africa
- SASCOC
- Scrabble South Africa
- Sheep Shearing Federation of Southern Africa
- Shooting Sport Federation of South Africa
- Snooker and Billiards South Africa
- Snow Sports South Africa
- Squash South Africa
- Soaring Society of South Africa
- Softball South Africa
- South African Amateur Fencing Association
- South African Bodyboarding Association
- South African Deep Sea Angling Association
- South African Figure Skating Association
- South African Fly Fishing Association
- South African Football Association
- South African Gold Panning Association
- South African Golf Association
- South African Gymnastics Federation
- South African Hang Gliding and Paragliding Association
- South African Hockey
- South African Ice Hockey Association
- South African National Archery Association
- South African National Equestrian Federation
- South African Polo Association
- South African Practical Shooting Association
- South African Rugby Union
- South African Sailing
- South African Shore Angling Association
- South African Sports Association for the Intellectually Impaired
- South African Tennis Association
- South African Underwater Sports Federation
- Surfing South Africa
- Swimming South Africa
- Table Tennis Board of Southern Africa
- Taekwondo Federation of South Africa
- Tenniquoits Board of South Africa
- Tenpin Bowling Association of South Africa
- Transplant Sports Association of South Africa
- Triathlon South Africa
- Tug of War Federation of South Africa
- University Sport South Africa
- Volleyball South Africa
- Water Ski Federation of Southern Africa
- Weightlifting Federation of Southern Africa
- Wrestling South Africa
- Wushu Federation of Southern Africa.

South African Sport Awards

The 14th Annual South African Sport Awards took place in November 2019 at the Playhouse, in Durban, KwaZulu-Natal.

The event recognised the massive feat that the sports fraternity achieved for this period and how it continues to inspire the nation.

The DSAC acknowledged the sportsmen and women who represented the country in competitive tournaments and stood out as ambassadors on global stages.

The South African Netball team was crowned the 2019 Africa Netball Cup Champions. The Springboks' historic Rugby World Cup win heightened the country's celebrations of 25 years of democracy. Netball South Africa was among the biggest winners of the night, walking away with the National Federation of the Year Award.

In the highly contested People's Choice Award category, Siya Kolisi was the overall winner taking home a brand-new car as well as R200 000. The category was one of the many highlights of the evening as it was voted for by fans. For the first time since its inception, the awards managed to amass over 90 000 votes.

The other big winners of the evening were:

- Tatjana Schoenmaker, who won Sport Star of the Year Award and Sportswoman of the Year Award. She received R220 000 cash and a new car.
- Moruti Mthalane, who emerged as one of the first category winners from the boxing fraternity in the ceremony. He won the Sportsman of the Year Award.

Below is the full list of South African Sport Awards winners:

- Administrator of the Year: Cecilia Molokwane.
- Sportsman of the Year: Moruti Mthalane.
- Sportsman of the Year with a Disability: Ntando Mahlangu.

- Sportswoman of the Year: Tatjana Schoenmaker.
- People's Choice of the Year: Siya Kolisi.
- Sportswoman of the Year with a Disability: Anrune Liebenberg-Weyers.
- Team of the Year: Spar Proteas.
- Newcomer of the Year: Micheal Houlie.
- Coach of the Year: Rassie Errasmus.
- Volunteer of the Year: Mervyn Mooi.
- The Recreation Body of the Year: United Through Sports.
- Photographer of the Year: Philip Maeta.
- Sports Journalist of the Year: Nduduzo Dladla.
- School Team of the Year: St Benedicts College.
- Developing School Team of the Year: Ikhwezi Lesizwe Primary School.
- Indigenous Games Team of the Year: Kwazulu-Natal Khokho Female Team.
- National Federation of the Year: Netball South Africa.
- Sport Star of the Year: Tatjana Schoenmaker.
- Steve Tshwete Lifetime Achievement Award: Koos Radebe, Clive Barker, Fran Hilton Smith, Jomo Sono, Thulani "Sugarboy" Malinga, and Chester Williams (posthumous).
- The Minister's Recognition of Excellence Award: The Springboks, Sim Tshabalala, Edward Mothibi, Zade Waddell, Daryl Impey and Karla Pretorius.

Momentum gsport Awards

The year 2020 marks the 15th edition of the Momentum gsport Awards – the longest-running women's sports awards in South Africa, and Africa's only national women's sport awards, endorsed by the DSAC in 2015. The 2020 winners were announced at a virtual ceremony held in August.

World Surfski Champion, Hayley Nixon, won the Momentum Athlete of the Year. Wheelchair tennis star, Kgothatso Montjane, won in the Athlete with Disability category, making her a five-time gsport award winner.

In celebration of the 15th edition, the Momentum gsport Awards introduced the Global Woman in Sport Award, won by Netball World Cup Player of the Tournament, Karla Pretorius. Another introduction, the African Woman in Sport Award, went to African Football Correspondent, Usher Komugisha.

Othe winners were:

- Coach of the Year: Desiree Ellis.
- Emerging Athlete: Caitlin Rooskrantz.
- Global Woman in Sport: Karla Pretorius.
- School Sports Star: Kaitlyn Ramduth.
- Woman in TV: Motshidisi Mohono.
- Woman in Radio: Itumeleng Banda.
- Woman in Social Media: Jo Prins.
- Woman in Print: Marizanne Kok.
- Woman in PR and Sponsorship: Keabetswe Taele.
- Woman of the Year: Virginia Mabaso.
- Style Star: Zinhle Ndawonde.
- Supporter of the Year: Selina Munsamy.
- Team of the Year: SPAR Proteas.
- Volunteer of the Year: Siyabulela Loyilane.
- Federation of the Year: SA Gymnastics.
- Special Recognition: Elizabeth Smith.
- Sponsor of the Year: SPAR.
- Public Choice: Awande Malinga.
- Minister's Recognition of Excellence Awards: Noluthando Makalima, Laura Wolvaardt, Nosipho Mthembu, Rene Naylor and Tiffany Keep.

Major events

Transnet National Soccer Tournament

Established in QwaQwa in 2002, the Transnet Rural and Farm Schools Development programme is one of the flagship projects within the Transnet Foundation's sports portfolio.

The Rural and Farm Schools Sport Development programme focuses its efforts on sports development and the South African Football Association Transnet Football School of Excellence. The programme targets communities around Transnet's key expansion areas. It notes that although South Africa is rich in sporting talent, much of it goes undiscovered because it is hidden away in underdeveloped and rural communities. There are many opportunities for young sportsmen and women to develop and showcase their abilities, but most of the infrastructure for this is centred in urban and developed areas. Through its Rural and Farm Schools Sport programme, the Transnet Foundation gives real opportunities to youth who fall outside the target areas of traditional sporting bodies. It aims to identify and develop young sports talent in rural areas and nurture it towards excellence.

The 2019 Transnet National Soccer Tournament was held at University of the Free State from 2 to 3 December. KwaZulu-Natal won the tournament on both male and female categories.

The tournament comprises eight teams selected from eight provinces. They initially compete at district level and proceed to provincial level where teams representing each province in soccer for boys and girls are selected. Participating schools in the district and provincial tournaments are located in areas that are regarded as Transnet areas of operation.

The tournament enables the DBE to deliver on its strategic objective of increasing participation of sport and recreation from grassroots to national level through a structured pathway for sport and development of South African youth.

National Aquatic Championships

Chad Le Clos and Erin Gallagher both posted qualifying times for the Fédération internationale de natation (FINA) World Championships, as they struck gold in their respective events on the first day of the 2019 SA National Aquatic Championships held in Durban in April 2019.

Le Clos cruised to victory in the 200 metres (m) butterfly with a time of 1:56.21 as he ensured his qualification the world championships. He also won the 100 m freestyle in a time of 49.75 but fell short of the 48.80 world championship qualifying time by just 0.95 seconds.

Ethan du Preez (1:58.24) and Eben Vorster (1:58.44) finished second and third in the 200 m butterfly respectively, while Ryan Coetzee (49.84) and Zane Waddell (50.28) took home the silver and bronze medals in the 100 m freestyle.

In the women's 100 m freestyle, Gallagher made a quick start and quickly outpaced her rivals as she clocked a FINA world championship qualifying time of 54.34 to claim the gold medal. Aimee Canny in 56.33 and Emma Chelius in 56.43 finished second and third respectively in the event.

In June 2020, the FINA announced a number of 2020 event changes/postponement/cancellations in light of the international COVID-19 restrictions. The events will now be held as follows:

- Olympic Games 2021: 23 July – 8 August 2021 (Tokyo);

- FINA World Championships 2022: 13 – 29 May 2022 (Fukuoka, Japan);
- Masters World Championships 2022: 31 May – 9 June 2022 (Island of Kyushu, Japan); and
- FINA World Swimming Championships (25 m) 2021: 13 – 18 December 2021 (Abu Dhabi, United Arab Emirates).

Biking, mountain biking, cycling

In September 2019, Team Dimension Data for Qhubeka were announced as winners at the prestigious Beyond Sport Global Awards 2019 in New York. They won in the Best Corporate Campaign or Initiative in the Sport for Good category. The award recognises organisations that are using their reach, resources and influence to effect change. The 2019 Beyond Sport Global Awards shortlist represented 37 countries, across six continents and more than 40 sports, all dedicated to creating positive social impact in communities around the world through sport to help achieve the UN Sustainable Development Goals.

Qhubeka is a Nguni word that means to move forward or to progress. Qhubeka is a non-profit organisation which helps disadvantaged people move forward and progress by giving bicycles in return for work done to improve communities, the environment, or academic results. They are the World Bicycle Relief's programme in South Africa.

Boxing

In May 2019, Tulani Mbenge walked away with the big prize at the SA Boxing Awards in Sandton. Melissa Miller took the trophy in the Female category.

Below is the full list of the SA Boxing Awards winners:

- Male Boxer of the Year: Tulani Mbenge.
- Female Boxer of the Year: Mellisa Miller.
- Male Fight of the Year: Mzoxolo Ndwayana v Shaun Ness.
- Female Fight of the Year: Asandiswa Nxokwana v Sherodine Fortuin.
- Male Prospect of the Year: Ayabonga Sonjica.
- Female Prospect of the Year: Simangele Hadebe.
- Media Person of the Year: Thabiso Mosia.
- Female Ring Official of the Year: Siya Vabaza.
- Male Ring Official of the Year: Alan Matakane.
- Most Promising Ring Official of the Year: Simphiwe Gceba.
- Knockout of the Year: Zolani Tete v Siboniso Gonya.
- Trainer of the Year: Colin Nathan.
- Promoter of the Year: Teris Ntutu (Rumble Africa Promotions).
- Most Promising Promoter of the Year: Xolani Mampunye of Last-Born Promotions.
- Manager of the Year: Colleen McAusland.
- Special Achievements: Zolani Tete, Hekkie Budler, Moruti Mthalane, Xaba Boxing Promotions.
- Lifetime Achievement Awards: Themba Zulu, Les Andreasen, Gladys Tsenene, Jeff Ellis and Mzoli Madyaka.

Canoeing, rowing

In September 2019, Mike Wessels won the national title at the Macski South African Waveski Championships after a tussle with Bruce Viaene.

Teenage paddling star, Thabo Mahlaba, impressed at the South African Slalom Canoeing Championships and won the senior title over three rounds.

Mahlaba was the early pacesetter on the Bohlokong Slalom course, with Sandile Makhubo keeping him under pressure as the field was reduced to five boats for the final after two round of qualifiers.

Cricket

The 2020 Cricket South Africa (CSA) Awards were held on 4 July. Quinton de Kock and Laura Wolvaardt claimed the top honours at the awards ceremony that was held virtually. De Kock was adjudged South Africa Men's Cricketer of the Year, becoming the sixth player to claim the honour for the second time.

Other players to have won the award twice are Makhaya Ntini, Kagiso Rabada, Hashim Amla, AB de Villiers and Jacques Kallis. Star batter Laura Wolvaardt bagged the prestigious South Africa Women's Cricketer of the Year Award and was also named their One Day International (ODI) Cricketer of the Year. Below is the full list of winners:

Professional Awards: National

- SA Men's Cricketer of the Year: Quinton de Kock.
- SA Women's Cricketer of the Year: Laura Wolvaardt.
- Test Cricketer of the Year: Quinton de Kock.
- ODI Cricketer of the Year: Lungi Ngidi.
- T20 International Cricketer of the Year: Lungi Ngidi.
- SA Men Players' Player of the Year: Quinton de Kock.
- SA Fans' Player of the Year: David Mille.
- Streetwise Award: Mignon du Preez (six hit v England, T20 World Cup).
- Delivery of the Year: Anrich Nortje (dismissal of David Warner, 3rd ODI).
- International Men's Newcomer of the Year: Anrich Nortje.
- International Women's Newcomer of the Year: Nonkululeko Mlaba.
- SA Women's Players' Player of the Year: Laura Wolvaardt.
- ODI Cricketer of the Year: Laura Wolvaardt.
- Proteas T20 Cricketer of the Year: Shabnim Ismail.

Professional Awards: Domestic:

- CSA Provincial T20 Cricketer of the Year: Lerato Kgoatle (Limpopo).
- CSA Provincial Three-Day Cricketer of the Year: Beyers Swanepoel (Northern Cape).
- Provincial Coach of the Year: Richard das Neves (Easterns).
- CSA Provincial One-day Cricketer of the Year: Ruan de Swardt (Northerns).
- MSL Impact Player of the Year: Tabraiz Shamsi (Paarl Rocks).
- MSL Young Player of the Year: Janneman Malan (CT Blitz).
- Four-day Domestic Series Cricketer of the Season: George Linde (Cape Cobras).
- 1-Day Cup Cricketer of the Season: Grant Roelofsen (Dolphins).
- Coach of the Season: Wandile Gwavu (Lions).
- Domestic Players' Player of the Season: Grant Roelofsen (Dolphins).
- Domestic Newcomer of the Season: Wandile Makwetu (Knights).
- South African Cricketers' Association Most Valuable Player Award: George Linde (Cape Cobras).

Professional Awards: Operations:

- CSA Umpires' Umpire of the Year: Adrian Holdstock.
- CSA Umpire of the Year: Adrian Holdstock.

- CSA Scorers Association of the Year: Central Gauteng Lions.
- CSA Fair Play Award: Warriors.

Golf

In October 2019, Thriston Lawrence came out on top in a tightly contested Vodacom Origins of Golf event in Stellenbosch, where he won by a single shot. Lawrence became the tenth golfer to secure his maiden Sunshine Tour title to date. He had trailed by five shots behind leaders JP Strydom and Deon Germishuys but carded a 7-under final round to win at 15-under.

Ice hockey

The South Africa men's team is ranked 44th in the International Ice Hockey Federation World Ranking.

The South African and Egyptian teams battled each other in the final group stage game of the African Hockey Road to Tokyo 2020 competition in August 2019. The Egyptians had four penalty corners at the end of the first quarter, but the South African defence managed to repel all four. On the edge of half-time, though the Egyptians did take the lead and reacted first after a rebound and finished into the bottom corner. The end result secured the title for South Africa and the African Hockey a spot at the Tokyo Olympics.

The African Hockey Road to Tokyo 2020 final positions were:

- Position one: South Africa.
- Position two: Egypt.
- Position three: Ghana.
- Position four: Zimbabwe.
- Position five: Kenya.
- Position six: Namibia.

Netball

Netball South Africa won the rights to host the 16th staging of the Netball World Cup in 2023. The tournament will be held at the International Convention Centre in Cape Town, widely renowned for its international reputation in hosting sports and other major events. This is the first time the Netball World Cup will be held in Africa.

South Africa's netball team (the Spar Proteas) narrowly lost a closely contested semi-final match against the Australian Diamonds at the Netball World Cup in Liverpool in July 2019. The highly anticipated game ended 55-53 in favour of defending world champions, Australia

South Africa went into the semi-final having had lost only one game against England compared to Australia's perfect win record in all of their five games.

In October 2019, the team was crowned the 2019 Africa Netball Cup Champions at the Bellville Velodrome in Cape Town. The Spar Proteas defeated Zambia 72-53 to win their sixth consecutive game in the tournament and claim the title.

Rugby

In November 2019, Cheslin Kolbe and Makazole Mapimpi produced two match-winning tries to help the Springboks clinch the Rugby World Cup final by beating England 32-12 in Yokohama, Japan.

The Springboks became world champions, 12 years after clinching it for the second time in 2007. They became world champions for the third time, and the first team to ever lose a pool match and go on to win the trophy.

The Rugby World Cup was held at 12 venues across Japan from 20 September to 2 November 2019.

Soccer

Bafana Bafana made it to the quarterfinals of the 2019 Africa Cup of Nations in Egypt, after stunning the hosts with a 1-0 win at the Cairo International Stadium. Thembinkosi Lorch was the hero for South Africa in his first start of the tournament, as he slotted past Egypt goalkeeper Mohamed El Shenawi with five minutes left to send Bafana into the next round. The South African men's national team went on to lose to Nigeria in the quarterfinals.

South Africa's national women's soccer team, Banyana Banyana, made history after qualifying for the 2019 FIFA Women's World Cup which was held in France from 7 June to 7 July 2019. It was the first time the team participated in in the women's world tournament, making it a victorious moment in South African sporting history.

One of the oldest names in South African football, Moroka Swallows, returned to the topflight, the Premier Soccer League (PSL), after being crowned the winners of the GladAfrica Championship season. Their return to the PSL was eventful, following their 2015 relegation.

Kaizer Chiefs were at the summit of the log from August 2019 to September 2020, but it was Mamelodi Sundowns who eventually walked away with the biggest prize in South Africa, securing the league title on the final day of the season. As a result, Mamelodi Sundowns have made history as they are the only South African team to win the PSL title in three successive seasons on two occasions.

Swimming

The 13th CANA Junior African Swimming Championships was held in Tunisia from 11 to 15 September 2019. The South African swimming team claimed the top spot on the medal table with a total of 78 medals (46 gold, 22 silver and 10 bronze). The team won 21 more medals than the 2015 competition in Egypt, where they still topped the medal table with a total of 57 medals.

On the final day, Leigh McMorran won South Africa's final gold medal in the five kilometres Open Water race with a time of 56:31.00 ahead of Tunisia's Ryhem Ben Slama in 57:39.00 and Algeria's Hania Grigahcene in 57:43.00. Egypt's swimming team came in second with a total of 74 medals and Tunisia finished off the championship in third place with two gold medals and a total of 24 medals.

12th African Games

The South African swimming team concluded the 12th African Games in Casablanca, Morocco, with a total of 45 medals (20 gold, 13 silver and 12 bronze) and claimed the top spot at the medal table.

Jessica Whelan finished the competition on a high note, winning the gold medal in the 200 m individual medley in 2:19.44, just over a second ahead of Algeria's Hamida Nefsi in 2:20.57 and South Africa's Christin Mundell in 2:21.70.

Erin Gallagher and Emma Chelius made the perfect duo in the 50m freestyle, scooping the gold and bronze in 24.95 and 25.25 respectively, while Egypt's Farida Osman won the silver in 25.06. Gallagher and Chelius were also part of the gold winning 4 x 100 m medley relay, alongside Kaylene Corbett

and Kerryn Herbst when they finished first in 4:12.42, while the men's 4 x 100 m medley relay team of Martin Binedell, Michael Houlie, Ryan Coetzee and Alaric Basson grabbed the gold medal in 3:40.24. Herbst and Binedell also won the bronze in their respective 100 m backstroke races. The games were held from 19 to 31 August 2019.

2019/20 SOUTH AFRICA YEARBOOK

The Presidency

The Presidency

As the executive manager of government, The Presidency is at the apex of South Africa's government system. It is situated in the Union Buildings in Pretoria, and has a subsidiary office in Tuynhuys, Cape Town.

The Presidency's key role in the executive management and coordination of government lies in its responsibility to organise governance. In this regard, a key aim is the facilitation of an integrated and coordinated approach to governance. This is being achieved through creative, cross-sectoral thinking on policy issues and the enhancement of the alignment of sectoral priorities with the National Strategic Policy framework and other government priorities. Its purpose is to facilitate a common programme towards the achievement of the electoral mandate and the enhanced integrity of the State through considered planning, coordination, oversight, mobilisation and support.

The Presidency comprises six political principals:

- the President, who is the Head of State and Government;
- the Deputy President, who is the Leader of Government Business (in Parliament);
- the Minister in The Presidency;
- the Minister in The Presidency for Women, Youth and Persons with Disabilities;
- the Deputy Minister in The Presidency for Women, Youth and Persons with Disabilities; and
- the Deputy Minister in The Presidency.

The Presidency has three structures that support governance operations directly. They are:

- Cabinet Office, which provides administrative support to Cabinet. It implements administrative systems and processes to ensure the overall optimal functioning of the Cabinet and its committees. It also facilitates the management of decision-making processes of the Cabinet and its committees.
- Policy Coordination Advisory Services comprises a Deputy Director-General (DDG) and five chief directorates, which support policy processes developed by respective clusters of Director-Generals (DGs).
- Legal and Executive Services provides legal advice to the President, Deputy President, the Minister, as well as The Presidency as a whole, and is responsible for all litigation involving the political principals.

The President, as the Head of State, leads the Cabinet. He or she is elected by the National Assembly (NA) from among its members and leads the country in the interest of national unity, in accordance with the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996 and the law. The President appoints the Deputy President from among members of the NA. The Deputy President assists the President in executing government functions.

The mandate of The Presidency is to ensure that the President is able to execute his constitutional responsibilities in leading and galvanising the whole of government and society to implement the electoral mandate. Chapter 1 of the National Development Plan (NDP) sets out a vision for increased government integration towards developing policy in a complex domestic and international environment. Priority 6 (a capable, ethical and developmental state) and Priority 7 (a better Africa and world) of government's 2019 – 2024 Medium Term Strategic Framework (MTSF), with which the work of The Presidency is closely aligned, support this vision. Broadly, The Presidency oversees the implementation of the administration's electoral mandate, the NDP and government's 2019 – 2024 MTSF.

Accordingly, over the medium term, the department intends to focus on promoting an integrated approach to governance and service delivery; operationalising the e-Cabinet system; supporting the implementation of the District Development Model (DDM); leading the coordination of government policies and programmes; supporting initiatives that promote nation building and social cohesion; and advancing South Africa's interests in the international arena.

Promoting an integrated approach to governance and service delivery

The Presidency's core function is to strengthen coordination among all national departments to ensure that their policies align with national priorities. This requires the department to provide training or briefing sessions on Cabinet decision-making processes for relevant officials in ministerial offices and offices of DGs. To ensure greater coordination between national departments, The Presidency plans to implement an integrated approach to governance and service delivery. This will entail measures such as providing administrative support to 74 meetings of the Forum of South African DGs, and 67 Cabinet meetings and its committees per year over the medium term. Expenditure related to promoting this approach is expected to be R18.9 million over the medium term in the Cabinet Services subprogramme.

Operationalising the e-Cabinet system

The e-Cabinet system is a tool to streamline Cabinet's decision-making processes and ensure that an integrated approach to governance is adopted. The system provides a collaborative platform for members of the executive, heads of department and executive support staff to share, manage and store information securely.

To regularise the use of the system, the e-Cabinet User Application Policy and the e-Cabinet Security Policy are expected to be adopted in 2020/21, and the department plans to monitor the implementation of the system by compiling quarterly progress reports. Expenditure relating to the e-Cabinet system is included in the budget of R177.4 million over the medium term in the Cabinet Services subprogramme. Expenditure in this subprogramme is expected to increase from R49.7 million in 2019/20 to R60.1 million in 2022/23.

Supporting the implementation of the DDM

The DDM, which is informed by the provisions of the Intergovernmental Relations Framework Act, 2005 (Act 13 of 2005), presents an opportunity to reconfigure integrated planning responsibilities and institutional arrangements. Improving governance and service delivery at the provincial and local government levels requires oversight from the department at the national level. Additionally, national departments review decision-making structures that affect frontline service delivery by improving integrated planning across government.

Accordingly, over the medium term, The Presidency will provide leadership support for the conceptualisation and design of the DDM and oversee its implementation. To ensure effective leadership support and implementation, The Presidency will work with various stakeholders to enforce collaboration

between the three spheres of government and social partners in the private sector, civil society and labour organisations; the coordinated and effective implementation of commitments; and the proper integration and logical sequencing of projects and programmes. Expenditure relating to the implementation of the model is expected to be R8 million over the medium term in the Support Services to the President subprogramme.

Leading the coordination of government policies and programmes

The Presidency seeks to promote good governance by ensuring greater policy coordination across government. To improve this function, over the medium term, the department plans to build capacity in the Policy and Research Services programme. Activities in this new programme, which will be responsible for providing content and technical support to political principals in The Presidency and Cabinet, include ensuring the effectiveness of government policy and the accuracy of submissions on the approach and strategy of government policy; and advising the President, Deputy President and Cabinet on interventions necessary to ensure more efficient and effective service delivery across government. To carry out these activities, the Economy, Trade and Investment subprogramme is allocated R44.7 million over the medium term.

Activities in the Socio-economic Impact Assessment System subprogramme involve ensuring that government policies and legislation are evidence-based and coherent, and that associated costs and risks are proactively managed to ensure the implementation of the seven priorities of government's 2019 – 2024 MTSF. Spending on these activities is expected to amount to R26.2 million over the medium term. Total expenditure in the Policy and Research Services programme is expected to amount to R70.9 million, accounting for an estimated R2.0 billion of the department's total budget over the Medium Term Expenditure Framework (MTEF) period.

Promoting nation-building and social cohesion

The Presidency plans to continue supporting nation-building and social cohesion, mainly through the President leading initiatives on national days, national orders and special events. The Deputy President is expected to continue facilitating engagements between The Presidency and social partners to strengthen the Moral Regeneration Movement, a civil society organisation mandated to promote collective activism on issues of moral renewal and nation-building. In addition, to promote social cohesion, the Deputy President will attend to government business in the NA, chair the South African National AIDS Council, and lead government's anti-poverty programme and its efforts to fast-track land reform. Activities related to these initiatives are carried out in the Support Services to the President and Support Services to the Deputy President subprogrammes. Allocations to these subprogrammes amount to R431.2 million over the MTEF period.

Advancing South Africa's interests

The Presidency's fundamental role in the international arena is to assist the President and Deputy President in advancing South Africa's interests in the global community. Accordingly, over the medium term, the department plans to provide strategic and administrative support to state visits, unilateral, bilateral and multilateral meetings and summits. The department also plans to assist South Africa in fulfilling its obligations to the United Nations (UN), the Brazil-Russia-India-China-South Africa group of countries, the Group of Twenty, the Southern African Development Community (SADC), and peacekeeping missions.

The Presidency also supports the President in his role as the African Union (AU) Chairperson. Through its focus on strengthening South Africa's political and economic relations internationally, the department expects to create an enabling environment for trade and investment. To support these activities, R57.1 million is allocated over the medium term in the Support Services to the President and Support Services to the Deputy President subprogrammes.

Legislative mandates

A number of Acts further expand the specific roles and functions of The Presidency and inform its approach to the implementation of its Constitutional mandate:

- the Independent Commission for the Remuneration of Public Office-Bearers Act, 1997 (Act 92 of 1997);
- the Remuneration of Public Office-Bearers Act, 1998 (Act 20 of 1998), as amended, provides a framework for determining the salaries, benefits and allowances of public office bearers, and the secretariat to the Independent Commission located within The Presidency;
- the Executive Members Ethics Act, 1998 (Act 82 of 1998), including the Executive Ethics Code; and
- the Intergovernmental Relations Framework Act of 2005, which establishes a framework for national government, provincial governments and local governments to promote and facilitate intergovernmental relations, and to provide for mechanisms and procedures to facilitate the settlement of intergovernmental disputes. The Act further seeks to promote cooperative governance as espoused by Chapter 3 of the Constitution, and has informed the formation of the President's Coordinating Council, the Cabinet Cluster System, the Forum of South African DGs and the formation of Inter-Ministerial Committees.

Budget

For the 2019/20 financial year, The Presidency was allocated R698.6 million. Compensation of employees expenditure is expected to increase from R368.1 million in 2019/20 to R440.6 million in 2022/23, mainly due to the establishment of the Policy and Research Services programme within the department. Spending on compensation of employees accounts for an estimated R1.3 billion of the department's total expenditure over the MTEF period.

Programmes

Executive Support

The purpose of the programme is to provide strategic and administrative support to enable Cabinet to foster accountability and policy coherence through integrated planning, policy coordination, and the implementation of the strategic agenda of government. Its objectives, over the medium term, are to:

- provide policy advisory support to political principals to ensure policy coherence by implementing Cabinet programmes; and
- strengthen technical support provided to the President and other political principals in the department by participating in

Cabinet structures on an ongoing basis, and implementing the recommendations of the evaluation of coordinating structures to improve systems of governance and compliance for Cabinet and the forum of South African DGs.

Policy and Research Service

The purpose of the programme is to provide policy and research support to the President and Deputy President in exercising their Constitutional mandate within the context of government priorities.

Its objective, over the medium term, is to enhance governance, state capacity and service delivery defined in the 2020 – 2025 programme of action by:

- producing quarterly progress reports on the content support provided by the programme to the structures chaired by the President and Deputy President each year over the medium term;
- producing quarterly progress reports on intergovernmental mechanisms to unblock issues impeding service delivery in priority areas each year;
- developing a register of policy research commissioned or funded across government by March 2021;
- developing policy formulation standards and presenting them to the forum of South Africa DGs by March 2021; and
- reporting on the biannual soci-economic impact assessments conducted over the medium term.

Its subprogrammes include:

- Economy, Trade and Investment, which promotes coherence between economic, trade and investment policies and programmes; oversees the work of the Infrastructure Fund, which is intended to pool government's infrastructure budget and leverage it to raise additional funds and attract skills from other public and private sources for infrastructure development.
- Security and International Relations, which facilitates and promotes policy coherence in the security and international relations sector.
- Infrastructure and Budget Support, which promotes policy coherence and budget support in government's strategic infrastructure programme.
- Social Protection and Human Capital Development, which promotes policy coherence in the social protection and human capital development sectors by identifying critical social transformation policies and programmes, such as the national health and education systems, social cohesion, and comprehensive social security.
- Intervention and Rapid Response, which provides support to government interventions in areas experiencing crisis and distress, such as service delivery protests.
- Governance and Institutional Development, which promotes policy coherence within governance and institutional development by facilitating the strengthening of institutions responsible for service delivery.
- Socio-economic Impact Assessment System, which provides support on policy initiatives, legislation and regulations. The subprogramme conducts socio-economic impact assessments and facilitates the strengthening of the assessment system.

Women, Youth and Persons with Disabilities

The Department of Women, Youth and Persons with Disabilities derives its mandate from Section 9(3) of the Constitution. The department is required to champion socio-economic transformation and the empowerment and participation of women, youth and people with disabilities through mainstreaming, advocacy, and monitoring and evaluation.

The NDP envisages economic participation, education and skills development for women and other vulnerable groups, and the elimination of violence against women and children. This vision is given expression by Priority 1 (economic transformation and job creation), Priority 5 (social cohesion and safe communities) and Priority 6 (a capable, ethical and developmental state) of government's 2019 – 2024 MTSF. The work of the Department of Women, Youth and Persons with Disabilities is directly aligned with these priorities through facilitating the planning, budgeting, monitoring and evaluation, and auditing processes responsive to gender, youth and disability rights across the State. Accordingly, over the medium term, the department intends to focus on reducing gender-based violence and femicide (GBVF), and strengthening the national gender machinery; making interventions for economic empowerment; engaging in responsive government-wide planning, budgeting, monitoring and evaluation; ensuring compliance with international commitments; promoting the rights of people with disabilities; and supporting the development of young people.

Eradicating GBVF and strengthening the national gender machinery

In response to the high prevalence of GBVF in South Africa, the Department of Women, Youth and Persons with Disabilities plans to carry out work in two strategic areas: facilitating interventions to eradicate GBVF; and revitalising and strengthening the national gender machinery – a set of integrated structures meant to promote gender equality, as proposed in the South African Policy Framework for Women's Empowerment and Gender Equality. Activities related to these measures are carried out in the Governance Transformation, Justice and Security subprogramme, which is allocated R43.6 million over the MTEF period.

Making interventions for economic empowerment

Over the medium term, the Department of Women, Youth and Persons with Disabilities will seek to explore partnerships with economic cluster departments, agencies and businesses in priority sectors to establish models and support systems to maximise the economic inclusion and empowerment of women, young people and people with disabilities. Related activities such as advocacy campaigns and meetings will be carried out in the Social Empowerment and Transformation subprogramme in the Social Transformation and Economic Empowerment programme, which is allocated R29.5 million over the medium term.

Engaging in responsive government-wide planning, budgeting, and monitoring and evaluation

The work of the Department of Women, Youth and Persons with Disabilities's Policy, Stakeholder Coordination and Knowledge Management programme is integral in advocating for and

safeguarding the rights of the department's core constituents. In each year over the medium term, the department plans to conduct 12 public participation initiatives and four community mobilisation events to assist the government in identifying gaps and advising on how services should be structured to respond to citizen concerns, and contribute to the realisation of equal and entrenched rights for women, young people and people with disabilities. Expenditure for these initiatives and events is within an allocation of R51.7 million in the programme's Stakeholder Coordination and Outreach subprogramme.

Cabinet adopted the Framework on Gender-responsive Planning, Budgeting, Monitoring and Evaluation, and Auditing in 2018/19. Over the medium term, the Department of Women, Youth and Persons with Disabilities will continue to increase awareness of and build capacity for implementing the framework, and provide strategic guidance to other departments to coordinate its implementation through an allocation of R3.7 million also in the Policy, Stakeholder Coordination and Knowledge Management programme.

When the department's knowledge hub, which was launched in 2019/20, is fully operational, it will be a central repository of research and information on gender, and thereby contribute to the framework's successful implementation. For this purpose, R1.3 million is allocated over the MTEF period, in the Policy, Stakeholder Coordination and Knowledge Management programme.

Ensuring compliance with international commitments

The Department of Women, Youth and Persons with Disabilities plans to facilitate South Africa's participation in multilateral platforms that advance the inclusion of women, youth and people with disabilities. Related activities include supporting compliance with international commitments and obligations, establishing partnerships and collaborations to mobilise resources, and preparing country reports. These are carried out in the International Relations subprogramme in the Policy, Stakeholder Coordination and Knowledge Management programme at an estimated cost of R17.3 million over the MTEF period. Key engagements over the medium term include the 64th session of the UN Commission on the Status of Women, the 25th anniversary of the Beijing Declaration and Platform for Action, and relevant structures of the AU and the SADC.

Promoting the rights of people with disabilities

Activities in the Rights of Persons with Disabilities programme are focused on developing, supporting and monitoring the implementation of policies; and coordinating government's implementation of the *2015 White Paper on the Rights of Persons with Disabilities*.

Over the medium term, the department will oversee the implementation of programmes pertaining to the rights of people with disabilities, develop advocacy strategies and mainstreaming guidelines to advance the rights of people with disabilities, standardise the measure of disability in partnership with Statistics South Africa to ensure the quality of disability data in administrative systems, and integrate reporting obligations into a consolidated monitoring framework for disability rights. These goals are set to be achieved through an allocation of R63.9 million over the MTEF period in the Rights of Persons with Disabilities programme.

Supporting the development of young people

The Department of Women, Youth and Persons with Disabilities oversees the development of National Youth Policy and the National Youth Development Agency (NYDA), and implements and monitors initiatives targeted at the development of young people. To this end, the department has embarked on a review of the National Youth Policy with the aim of producing a new policy for the period 2020 – 2030. The review of the policy will run concurrently with the policy's monitoring and evaluation framework to enable adequate reporting and accountability on policy pillars. To carry out these activities, R40 million over the MTEF period is allocated to the Management: NYDA subprogramme.

Budget

The Department of Women, Youth and Persons with Disabilities was allocated R244.4 million for the 2019/20 financial year. The budget structure has changed to align with the reconfigured department, following the incorporation of the National Youth Development programme from the Department of Planning, Monitoring and Evaluation (DPME), and the Rights of Persons with Disabilities subprogramme from the Department of Social Development. Expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 4.9%, from R738 million in 2019/20 to R853 million in 2022/23. Transfers and subsidies account for an estimated 73% (R1.8 billion) of the department's total budget over the MTEF period. The department is set to receive additional allocations in the Social Transformation and Economic Empowerment programme amounting to R15 million over the medium term for the establishment of a national council on GBVF.

Entities

Commission for Gender Equality

The commission promotes respect for gender equality, and engages in advocacy and education initiatives to raise awareness and challenges patriarchal stereotypes. It seeks to protect and enforce gender rights by investigating complaints made by members of the public and sanctioning appropriate remedies in line with legislation. The commission's total budget for 2019/20 was R85.2 million.

National Youth Development Agency

The NYDA was established in 2009, through the merger of the National Youth Commission and the Umsobomvu Youth Fund. Its main role is to initiate, implement, facilitate and monitor youth development interventions aimed at reducing unemployment among young people and promoting social cohesion. The agency's total budget for 2019/20 was R510.6 million.

Programmes

Social Transformation and Economic Empowerment

The purpose of the programme is to manage policies and programmes that mainstream the social transformation and economic empowerment of women in South Africa.

The objective of the programme, over the medium term, is to advance the socio-economic empowerment of women by:

- promoting the social empowerment and participation of women through national dialogues on violence against women and children, and social upliftment programmes for women;
- proposing and developing interventions for the socio-economic empowerment and participation of women; and
- developing interventions to advance gender equality, and establishing a just and safe society.

Policy, Stakeholder Coordination and Knowledge Management

The purpose of the programme is to ensure policy and stakeholder coordination and knowledge management for the social transformation of women in South Africa.

The programme's objective, over the medium term, are to:

- Inform decision-making, policy development and implementation on the socio-economic empowerment of women in South Africa in line with national, regional, continental and global development goals by generating, accessing and analysing available knowledge, research and information on the implementation of policy and international commitments on an ongoing basis.
- Ensure that government departments improve their contribution to the soci-economic empowerment of women by improving the mainstreaming of gender equality within government's planning, monitoring and evaluation systems on an ongoing basis.
- Improve gender-sensitive planning, monitoring and evaluation systems by analysing other departments' plans and performance against priority indicators and targets for gender development, facilitating the evaluation of key gender policies and programmes, and making recommendations for improvement on an ongoing basis.
- Position the department as an effective information and knowledge hub on the socio-economic empowerment of women and gender equality by developing a central national gender information system to enable stakeholders to contribute to and access gender knowledge and information over the medium term.
- Enable the fulfilment of commitments to and effective participation in international multilateral forums on the empowerment of women and gender equality by instituting timely reporting and convening consultative workshops with relevant stakeholders annually.

Rights of Persons with Disabilities

The purpose of the programme is to oversee the implementation of programmes pertaining to the rights of persons with disabilities. It's objective, over the medium term, is to support and monitor the implementation of policies, and coordinate government's implementation of the *2015 White Paper on the Rights of Persons with Disabilities*. Its subprogramme – Rights of Persons with Disabilities – maintains guidelines and frameworks for the rights of people with disabilities.

National Youth Development

The purpose the programme is to oversee the implementation of national youth development programmes. Its objective, over the medium term, is to promote the development and empowerment of young people by reviewing the legislative framework and other interventions to advance youth rights.

16 Days of Activism for No Violence against Women and Children

The 16 Days of Activism for No Violence against Women and Children is a UN campaign which takes place annually from 25 November (International Day of No Violence against Women) to 10 December (International Human Rights Day).

The year 2019 marked the 21st anniversary of the campaign in South Africa. While the internationally determined time frame of the annual campaign is 16 days until 10 December, the time frame of 365 days was chosen by the South African government to ensure a programmatic approach to the management of violence against women and children. The 2019 campaign was hosted under the theme, "Enough is enough – 365 days to end GBVF." During the 16 Days of Activism, the focus by government is on violence against women and children, and how South Africa can end this scourge through collective efforts, collaboration and advocacy.

Government Communications

The Government Communication and Information System (GCIS) was officially launched in May 1998. It was established in terms of Section 7 (Subsection 2 and 3) of the Public Service Act, 1994 (Act 103 of 1994) as amended. It was transferred from the then Department of Communications to The Presidency with effect from 1 April 2020.

The mandate of the GCIS is derived from Section 195(g) of the Constitution, which stipulates that South African citizens should be provided with information that is timely, accurate and accessible. This is in support of the Constitutional principles of freedom of expression, transparency and openness of government. The GCIS is responsible for providing strategic leadership and coordinating government communication to ensure that the people of South Africa are informed and have access to government programmes and policies that benefit them.

The NDP emphasises the need to unite all South Africans around a common goal, ensure citizens are active in their own development, and build a capable and developmental state. This is given expression by Priority 6 (building a capable, ethical and developmental state) of government's 2019 – 2024 MTSF, with which the work of the GCIS is aligned. To support this priority over the medium term, the department will continue to focus on providing and facilitating strategic government communications, and facilitating active citizen participation.

The GCIS:

- provides professional services;
- sets and influences adherence to standards for an effective government communication system;
- drives coherent government messaging; and
- proactively communicates with the public about government policies, plans programmes and achievements.

The DG of the GCIS is also the official spokesperson for government. He/she chairs the GCIS Executive Committee – a strategising body that integrates, coordinates and rationalises the work of the department and government communication.

Providing and facilitating strategic government communications

One of the key functions of the GCIS is to provide the public with information about government policies, plans, programmes and activities. The department uses its *Vuk'uzenzele* newspaper and weekly newsletter, *My District Today*, to disseminate information that empowers South African communities to participate in government programmes. Information published in *Vuk'uzenzele* focuses on key government priorities such as service delivery and rural development projects, and publishes advertisements for vacant government posts.

In addition to the production and distribution of a targeted 18.7 million copies and 9 600 Braille copies of 22 editions of *Vuk'uzenzele* in each year of the medium term, the department plans to produce 14 716 copies of various publications across core programmes, including various communication products and reports. The printing and distribution costs for *Vuk'uzenzele* are expected to amount to R85 million over the MTEF period in the Products and Platforms subprogramme in the Content Processing and Dissemination programme.

To provide guidance and assistance to government communicators on how to develop communications strategies and better understand the broader communications environment, the GCIS plans to produce 30 cluster reports on perceptions of government delivery and performance, and 36 reports based on surveys conducted on behalf of various national departments and premiers' offices. In support of deepening its relations with the media, the GCIS also drives a proactive and reactive media liaison strategy by hosting cluster and Cabinet media briefings, and communicating with the public through activities such as door-to-door visits, and community workshops and gatherings, in all provinces. These activities are carried out in the Content Processing and Dissemination programme, which has a total operational budget of R528 million over the medium term.

The GCIS will aim to reduce government's cost of advertising in the media over the medium term, while maintaining the visibility of its communications campaigns. This will entail providing an estimated 1 000 bulk-buying services to other government departments for media advertising; media production services, including 1 050 photographic and video products and services; and 240 live radio products and services such as advertisements, the hosting of talk shows and the compilation of voice-overs. The provision of these services is funded through the communications budgets of client departments and entities at an estimated cost of R250 million per year over the medium term.

The GCIS manages the interface between government and commercial and community media, and provides support to Cabinet through regular media briefings, in which the decisions of the Executive are communicated to the public. To carry out these activities, R10 million is allocated over the medium term in the Intergovernmental Coordination and Stakeholder Management programme, which has a total budget of R423.1 million over the MTEF period.

The department has embraced the move towards the Fourth Industrial Revolution by adopting new technology to deliver government's messages to citizens in more creative and interactive ways, such as the use of more communications content on government websites and social media platforms.

To stay abreast of and manage a rapidly changing telecommunications environment and respond in increasingly able and agile ways, the GCIS has earmarked R7 million in the Intergovernmental Coordination and Stakeholder Management programme for the management of the department's website and social media accounts, subscriptions to digital media accounts, and research on public opinion.

Facilitating active citizen participation

The GCIS is committed to aligning provincial and local communications strategies with the National Communication Strategy Framework. This entails providing information on government services directly to communities through outreach campaigns in high-traffic areas such as taxi ranks, shopping malls and commuter trains, as well as talk shows on community radio and television stations. Accordingly, over the medium term, the department plans to conduct an estimated 9 306 outreach campaigns to improve public participation in government policies, plans, programmes and achievements. These comprise 1 140 development communications activations per year, 1 710 community and stakeholder liaison visits per year, and 252 marketing events at Thusong Service Centres per year. These activities are carried out in the Intergovernmental Coordination and Stakeholder Management programme at an estimated cost of R10 million over the MTEF period.

The GCIS plans to continue the Imbizo programme, which facilitates interactions between political principals and the public. It will also develop content for print and electronic products, including leaflets during the State of the Nation Address, at an estimated cost of R540 000 per year over the medium term.

Other communications activities include compiling annual online editions of the *South Africa Yearbook* and the *Official Guide to South Africa*, providing daily government news and updates on *sanews.gov.za*, updating content on government's website (*www.gov.za*), and producing 12 annual reports on the performance of government's social media accounts.

Budget

For the 2019/20 financial year, the GCIS was allocated R438.7 million. The department's total budget is R2.3 billion over the MTEF period. As the work of the department is knowledge-based, spending on compensation of employees across all programmes accounts for an estimated 40.9% (R938.5 million) of its total budget over the medium term, increasing at an average annual rate of 6.5%. Transfers to Brand South Africa (Brand SA) and the Media Development and Diversity Agency (MDDA) account for an estimated 34.5% (R784.7 million) of the total budget.

Entities

Brand South Africa

Brand SA was established as a trust in 2002 and gazetted as a Schedule 3A public entity in terms of the Public Finance Management Act, 1999 (Act 1 of 1999) in 2006 to manage South Africa's branding in order to improve its global appeal and competitiveness. The entity's primary objective is to develop and implement proactive and coordinated marketing, communications and reputation management strategies for South Africa to attract investment, trade and tourism.

Through several planned campaigns over the medium term, the entity aims to encourage South Africans to breathe life

into the national identity. Key among these is the Play Your Part campaign, which seeks to promote strong South African values, a South African identity and Constitutional awareness by encouraging citizens to participate in democratic processes. One of the campaign's initiatives is a project to promote Constitutional awareness, which has a budget of R32 million for nine Play Your Part activities and 16 marketing platforms per year over the MTEF period.

All domestic campaigns will comprise community engagements and outdoor or above the line advertisements that promote active citizenship. Expenditure for campaigns is in the Brand Marketing and Reputation Management programme, which has a total budget of R297.9 million over the medium term.

An integral part of the entity's mandate is to promote South Africa as a brand that attracts local and international investment. Accordingly, to monitor the effectiveness of its efforts to build international media partnerships to portray South Africa as a favourable destination for investment, the entity will continue to commission and subscribe to key research indexes that track factors such as domestic and investor perceptions. The cost of commissioning and subscribing to these studies is estimated at R7 million per year over the medium term in the Stakeholder Relations programme.

The entity funds its activities through transfer payments from the GCIS, which are expected to increase at an average annual rate of 4.4%, from R207.9 million in 2019/20 to R236.6 million in 2022/23, while total revenue is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 4.2% over the same period. In line with this, total expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 4.2%, from R218.9 million in 2019/20 to R247.6 million in 2022/23.

Media Development and Diversity Agency

The MDDA was set up in terms of the MDDA Act, 2002 (Act 14 of 2002) to enable historically disadvantaged communities and individuals to gain access to the media. Its mandate is to create an enabling environment for media development and diversity to reflect the needs and aspirations of all South Africans; redress the exclusion and marginalisation of disadvantaged communities and people from access to the media and the media industry; and promote media development and diversity by providing support primarily to community and small commercial media projects. The agency aims to ensure that all citizens are able to access information in a language of their choice, and to transform media access, ownership and control patterns in South Africa.

The MDDA aims to continue encouraging media diversity in a rapidly changing telecommunications environment by placing emphasis on promoting indigenous languages and communities that are underserved by the mainstream media, with a focus on gender equity, people living with disabilities, and young people. As such, over the MTEF period, the agency plans to focus on providing financial and non-financial support to 60 community broadcast projects, and nine community and 11 small commercial print and digital projects. Over the medium term, an estimated R67.5 million is earmarked to provide financial support to community broadcast projects, and R13.7 million for community and small commercial print and digital projects. By investing in initiatives that display good governance, business management skills and capabilities for content generation, the agency intends to ensure the sustainability of the community media sector. An estimated R9.7 million is set aside over the medium term to provide projects with non-financial support through training and sector research. Of this amount, R1.5 million is allocated to providing training to a targeted 120 projects to help bridge skills gaps. However, the number of projects supported depends on the quality and quantity of applications received, and on how much funding is available.

Total expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 12.2%, from R69 million in 2019/20 to R97.6 million in 2022/23. The agency expects to derive 93.5% (R272 million) of its total revenue over the medium term through transfers from national government and non-governmental donors, of which R104.1 million will be transferred from the GCIS.

Department of Planning Monitoring and Evaluation

The purpose of the DPME is to improve government service delivery through integrated planning, monitoring and evaluation. The mandate of the DPME is derived from Section 85(2) (b-c) of the Constitution which states that the President exercises executive authority, together with the other members of the Cabinet, by developing and implementing national policy and coordinating the functions of state departments and administrations.

It is mandated to:

- support the National Planning Commission (NPC);
- facilitate the implementation of the NDP through the development of sector-specific and outcome-specific medium-term plans and delivery agreements, and monitor and evaluate the implementation of these plans;
- ensure the alignment of departmental strategic and annual plans and budget allocations with government's MTSF;
- monitor the performance of individual national and provincial government departments and municipalities, and facilitate targeted intervention programmes;
- monitor frontline service delivery and manage the presidential hotline;
- develop and implement the annual national evaluations plan and support the national evaluations system; and
- promote good planning, monitoring and evaluation practices in government.

Chapter 13 of the NDP sets out a vision for building a capable and developmental state, which is expressed in terms of Priority 6 (a capable, ethical and developmental state) of government's 2019 – 2024 MTSF. The work of the DPME is directly aligned with this priority. Accordingly, over the medium term, the department intends to focus on reviewing the NDP, improving and strengthening government planning and coordination, supporting the implementation of short-term and medium-term goals, developing intervention programmes to support service delivery, and conducting research and evaluations.

Reviewing the NDP

The NDP was adopted as a guide to achieving South Africa's goals, broadly in terms of socio-economic development, and specifically in terms of eliminating poverty, creating jobs and reducing inequality by 2030. The NPC was tasked with reviewing some aspects of the NDP in 2019/20 to address certain

implementation challenges. Over the medium term, this review is expected to assess the capacity and capability of the State in measuring the implementation of the NDP. Related activities are set to be carried out in the Management: National Planning Coordination subprogramme. Allocations in the subprogramme amount to R157.7 million over the MTEF period.

Improving and strengthening government planning and coordination

The DPME is mandated to improve and strengthen government's planning and coordination. This involves ensuring the implementation of government's MTSF, which is implemented in five-year cycles to allow for revisions, and serves as a roadmap for achieving goals linked to NDP outcomes; and conducting assessments of national departments' draft strategic and annual performance plans to ensure alignment with the MTSF and the NDP.

In this regard, in each year over the medium term, the DPME expects to produce 47 assessment reports. Based on the outcomes of these assessments, the department will, in consultation with the National Treasury, identify delivery priorities for the funding of national departments. Related activities are carried out in the Planning Coordination programme. Allocations to the subprogramme amount to R101.8 million over the medium term.

Supporting implementation of short-term and medium-term goals

Tracking the performance of the short-term and medium-term goals of government's 2019 – 2024 MTSF is a core function of the DPME. Accordingly, over the MTEF period, the department will engage national and provincial departments, government agencies and key state-owned entities to assess their implementation of the priorities and indicators of the framework, and identify performance gaps and interventions to address underperformance. In this regard, the DPME plans to produce two reports per year over the medium term for submission to Cabinet. These activities are budgeted for in the Outcomes Monitoring and Support, and Intervention Support subprogrammes, which together account for 94.9% (R246.8 million) of allocations to the Sector Monitoring Services programme over the medium term.

Developing intervention programmes to support service delivery

The DPME plans to produce two reports per year over the MTEF period to monitor the impact of policy priorities in relation to actual service delivery through various frontline monitoring programmes, including targeted site visits, citizen-based monitoring and the presidential hotline. To enhance capacity over the medium term, the DPME plans to assess the performance of government departments, agencies, state-owned enterprises and local government. This will include the development of a new monitoring model to replace the Management Performance Assessment Tool, and support the annual development and assessment of performance agreements of heads of department. These activities will be carried out in the Public Service Monitoring and Capacity Development subprogramme. Allocations in the subprogramme amount to R266.2 million over the MTEF period.

Conducting research and evaluations

The DPME's ongoing focus is on maximising the use of its evaluations and research to generate rapid and relevant evidence to inform planning and monitoring, and appropriate interventions. As such, over the medium term, the department plans to work towards improving research and knowledge, and maintain evidence-based policy development, planning, implementation and monitoring by providing support for data management.

This will be achieved by developing and monitoring the implementation of a national evaluation plan, and conducting evaluations and research to support the planning and monitoring activities of the National Planning Coordination and Sector Monitoring Services programmes. Accordingly, in each year over the medium term, the DPME plans to produce 10 evidence reports on indicators related to evaluations, and research and development. These activities will be carried out in the Evaluation, Research, Knowledge and Data Systems subprogramme, which accounts for R156.4 million of the total budget.

Budget

The DPME was allocated R956.9 million for the 2019/20 financial year. As part of the National Macro Organisation of Government in 2019/20, the DPME's organisational structure was revised to accommodate the transfer of the youth function to the Department of Women, Youth and Persons with Disabilities, and the socio-economic impact assessment system function to The Presidency.

Spending on compensation of employees accounts for an estimated 67.8% (R1.1 billion) of the department's total expenditure over the medium term.

2019/20 SOUTH AFRICA YEARBOOK

Transport

Transport

The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996 identifies the legislative responsibilities of different spheres of government with regards to all modes of transport and its associated infrastructure. The Department of Transport (DoT) is responsible for the legislation and policies for rail, pipelines, roads, airports, ports and the intermodal operations of public transport and freight. The department conducts sector research, formulates legislation and policy to set the strategic direction of subsectors, assigns responsibilities to public entities, regulates through setting norms and standards, and monitors implementation.

The work of the DoT contributes to the realisation of the vision of improved social and economic development articulated in the National Development Plan (NDP), Priority 1 (economic transformation and job creation) and Priority 4 (spatial integration, human settlements and local government) of government's 2019 – 2024 Medium Term Strategic Framework (MTSF). Over the medium term, the DoT plans to give effect to these guiding policies by focusing on building and maintaining national and provincial road networks, providing passenger rail infrastructure and services, and facilitating the provision of integrated public transport networks.

Building and preserving national and provincial roads

To carry out all departmental activities related to the maintenance of South Africa's road network, R102.2 billion was allocated over the medium term in the Road Transport programme. As the South African National Roads Agency (SANRAL) plays a crucial role in the upgrading, maintenance and strengthening programmes of the toll and non-toll portfolios of national roads, transfers to the agency account for an estimated 31.8% (R64.6 billion) of the department's total budget over the medium term, and 63.3% of the department's budget for road transport. Of the allocation to the agency, R35.4 billion over the Medium Term Expenditure Framework (MTEF) period was allocated for maintenance on the national network of non-toll roads, which constitutes an estimated 85% of the agency's national roads portfolio. As part of its planned projects for the non-toll road network, R3.4 billion over the medium term is set to be spent on the construction of the N2 Wild Coast highway and R2.5 billion on the upgrading of the R573 (Moloto Road). Transfers to fund reduced tariffs for the Gauteng Freeway Improvement Project amount to R1.9 billion over the MTEF period.

About 49 000 kilometres (km) of South Africa's tar road network are under the jurisdiction of provincial departments of transport. The bulk of maintenance operations carried out on provincial roads is funded through the Provincial Roads Maintenance Grant, which receives an estimated R36.0 billion in allocations over the medium term. Over the MTEF period, the DoT plans to transfer funds to provinces to maintain the provincial road network by resealing 16 227 lane km, rehabilitating 6 199 lane km, and blacktop patching 3.7 million (square kilometres) km^2. Factors such as the condition of roads, weather patterns and traffic volumes determine allocations for the maintenance of provincial roads.

Investing in passenger rail infrastructure and services

The DoT will continue its efforts to modernise South Africa's passenger rail services through the Passenger Rail Agency of South Africa (PRASA), transfers to which account for an estimated 26.8% (R53.7 billion) of the department's total budget over the medium term. These transfers are expected to subsidise 994 million passenger trips on Metrorail and 1.7 million passengers on long-distance Mainline Passenger Services over the next three years.

The modernisation of the agency's services is intended to improve the reliability of services and increase passenger ridership through focused expenditure on repairs and maintenance as part of the agency's rolling stock fleet renewal programme, as well as improved security. Transfers to the PRASA for the rolling stock fleet renewal programme are expected to increase from R5.8 billion in 2019/20 to R8.3 billion in 2022/23 at an average annual rate of 12.5% as the agency intensifies its implementation of the modernisation programme. Total transfers to the agency, mainly for capital expenditure, are set to increase from R16.5 billion in 2019/20 to R21.6 billion in 2022/23 at an average annual rate of 9.4%.

Towards an integrated public transport network

As hubs of economic activity and growth, South Africa's urban areas must maintain optimal functionality. It is important that integrated, sustainable, affordable and functional transport solutions within these hubs are tailored to suit the needs of present and future urban commuters. To this end, the DoT, through its Public Transport programme, makes allocations to the Public Transport Network Grant. These allocations are expected to increase from R6.5 billion in 2019/20 to R7.1 billion in 2022/23 at an average annual rate of 3.2%. This relatively modest growth rate is reflective of a narrowing of the grant's focus, from 2020/21, to fund the infrastructure and operations of integrated public transport networks in 10 cities as opposed to 13. Included in this are the indirect costs of operating bus rapid transit services in Johannesburg, Tshwane, Cape Town, George, Nelson Mandela Bay and Ekurhuleni. In these cities, the grant is expected to lead to an increase in the number of weekday passenger trips from 196 441 in 2019/20 to 423 145 in 2022/23.

Legislation

For cross-modal functions of public transport and freight, the DoT is guided by the following legislation and policies:

- The Transport Laws and Related Matters Amendment Act, 2013 (Act 3 of 2013), aims, among other things, to amend the Cross-Border Road Transport Agency to collect toll on behalf of the SANRAL.
- The National Land Transport Act, 2009 (Act 5 of 2009), clarifies the concurrent roles and responsibilities of the different spheres of government in relation to public transport. It also consolidates public transport planning, service delivery, regulation and monitoring in the municipal sphere, establishes the national and provincial public transport regulators, and enhances overall transport regulatory functions.
- The incorporation of the Shosholoza Meyl train service and the Autopax long-distance bus services into the PRASA was finalised in the Legal Succession to the South African Transport Services Amendment Act, 2008 (Act 38 of 2008).
- The National Road Traffic Amendment Act, 2008 (Act 64 of 2008) and the Cross-Border Transport Amendment Act, 2008

(Act 12 of 2008), allows for better road-traffic enforcement and improved cross-border regulation.

- The Administrative Adjudication of Road Traffic Offences Act, 1998 (Act 46 of 1998).
- The Civil Aviation Act, 2009 (Act 13 of 2009), was promulgated to harmonise and rationalise safety and security legislation for aviation to ensure compliance with the International Civil Aviation Organisation (ICAO) standards.
- The Air Service Licensing Amendment Act, 2008 (Act 21 of 2008), addresses corporate governance issues relating to the Air Services Licensing Council. The DoT plans to implement the airlift strategy and improve aviation safety and compliance with the standards set by the United States of America Federal Aviation Administration's International Aviation Safety Assessment Programme, and by the ICAO, an organ of the United Nations (UN).
- The Road Accident Fund (RAF) Amendment Act, 2005 (Act 19 of 2005), creates an equitable, affordable and sustainable system for victims of road accidents and their families.
- The RAF (Transitional Provisions) Act, 2012, (Act 15 of 2012), provides for transitional measures regarding certain categories of third parties whose claims were limited to R25 000 under the RAF Act, 1996 (Act 56 of 1996) prior to 1 August 2008.
- The DoT has published a revised version of the Road Accident Benefit Scheme (RABS). The Bill proposed that the RABS Administrator replace the RAF. The new regulations, rules and forms were drafted to enable a better understanding of how the proposed scheme would operate in practice. The RABS Bill provides for a new no-fault benefit scheme and a new administrator called the RABS Administrator, which will replace the current RAF and compensation system administered by it. The RABS Bill forms part of an initiative to replace the third-party compensation system currently administered by the RAF with a new scheme that is reasonable, equitable, affordable and sustainable.

Budget

For the 2019/20 financial year, the DoT was allocated R64.2 billion. The department's total expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 4%, from R64.2 billion in 2019/20 to R72.2 billion in 2022/23. The majority of the department's expenditure is directed towards the PRASA for investments in rail infrastructure, maintenance, operations and inventories; the SANRAL for the upgrading and maintenance of the national road network; and provinces and municipalities for the construction, operations and maintenance of transport infrastructure and services. Over the medium term, transfers account for an estimated 97.7% (R198.7 billion) of the DoT's total budget.

Spending on the compensation of employees is estimated at 0.9% (R1.8 billion) of the department's total budget over the medium term, increasing from R504.9 million in 2019/20 to R635 million in 2022/23 at an average annual rate of 7.9%. This relatively high increase is due to the implementation of job revaluation outcomes for upgrading salary levels 9 to 10 and 11 to 12, and the filling of critical posts.

Due to persistent underspending in previous years, Cabinet has approved total budget reductions of R17.6 billion over the medium term, mainly on capital transfers to the PRASA and the Public Transport Network Grant to municipalities.

During the DoT's budget vote in July 2020, the department allocated R1.135 billion towards taxi relief support. The revised fiscal framework accounts for substantial revenue losses emanating from the economic shock of the COVID-19 pandemic.

The special adjustment budget amounted to a net decrease of R4.6 billion in the department's 2020/21 budget allocation, proposed adjustments to the budget towards the provision for the rapidly changing economic conditions and enable spending on the COVID-19 response.

The adjustments were packaged along two categories. The first proposed reallocation of funds. The reallocation was a consequence of the baseline reduction, which resulted in a downward adjustment to the baselines of the PRASA Rolling Stock Renewal programme to the amount of R1.021 billion; the Provincial Road Maintenance Grant to the amount of R1.756 billion; the SANRAL non-toll capital to the amount of R1.096 billion, and the Public Transport Network Grant to the amount of R1.902 billion.

The allocation for taxi relief support was funded from this baseline adjustment. An amount of R349 million was shifted across programmes from goods and services, and the Taxi Recapitalisation Programme to fund the shortfalls of the department's distressed entities.

The Cross-Border Road Transport Agency received R104 million, the Road Traffic Infringement Agency received R200 million and the Railway Safety Regulator (RSR) received R15.8 million. A total of R25 million was also reprioritised for the procurement of personal protective equipment for the public transport industry.

Entities

Airports Company South Africa (ACSA)

The ACSA was established in terms of the Airports Company Act, 1993 (Act 44 of 1993) and the Companies Act, 2008 (Act 71 of 2008). Listed as a Schedule 2 entity in terms of the Public Finance Management Act, 1999 (Act 1 of 1999), the company owns and operates nine of South Africa's principal airports, including OR Tambo International Airport, Cape Town International Airport and King Shaka International Airport. Over the medium term, the company will continue to focus on airport development, management and maintenance. It anticipates that 67.7 million passengers will depart from these nine airports and 827 581 aircraft will arrive at them over the MTEF period. To support this, total expenditure is expected to increase from R6.7 billion in 2019/20 to R8.8 billion in 2022/23. The company's spending of R13.9 billion over the medium term on capital and infrastructure is expected to be financed through a combination of borrowings (R7.4 billion) and cash reserves. Total revenue over the MTEF period is expected to amount to R27.2 billion, with aeronautical and nonaeronautical revenue comprising 97.6% of this amount. Aeronautical revenue, which includes income from passenger facilitation and airline services, such as charges and tariffs for aircraft parking and landing fees, is expected to amount to R13.4 billion; and non-aeronautical revenue from property rentals, advertising and parking fees is expected to amount to R12.9 billion.

Air Traffic and Navigation Services (ATNS)

The ATNS Company was established in terms of the ATNS Act, 1993 (Act 45 of 1993), with the mandate of providing safe,

orderly and efficient air traffic navigational and associated services, in accordance with the standards of the ICAO, to the air traffic management community. The company will, over the medium term, continue to focus on providing safe, efficient and cost-effective air traffic management solutions and related services as it expands its footprint to cover the rest of Africa and the Indian Ocean region. As a result of this focus, an estimated R4 billion of the company's total expenditure over the medium term is earmarked for investment in communication and simulation systems, which are essential to ensuring safety and improved capacity at airports. Total expenditure is expected to increase from R1.7 billion in 2019/20 to R2 billion in 2022/23. The company generates revenue by providing aeronautical services to the aviation industry. Total revenue is expected to increase from R1.8 billion in 2019/20 to R2.1 billion in 2022/23 as a result of a projected increase in tariff fees.

Passenger Rail Agency of South Africa

The PRASA was established in terms of the Legal Succession to the South African Transport Services Amendment Act of 2008, with the primary mandate of providing rail commuter services within, to and from South Africa in the public interest. The agency also provides long-haul passenger rail and bus services within, to and from South Africa.

In its efforts to stabilise operations, over the medium term, the agency will focus on responding to its historic challenge of underspending on capital programmes, with the aim of reducing its persistent operating deficits. Accordingly, to increase the number of passengers using Metrorail and Mainline Passenger Services, the agency plans to continue its Modernisation programme. Over the MTEF period, this entails refurbishing a targeted 1 314 train coaches; upgrading and improving 150 stations; upgrading signalling infrastructure; improving depots; acquiring 166 new train sets; and securing the agency's assets, including all stations. As a result of historic underspending on capital programmes, the PRASA had a cash balance of R18.3 billion at the end of 2018/19, which it plans to use over the medium term on infrastructure for Metrorail and Mainline Passenger Services.

An estimated R36 billion of the agency's total expenditure of R54.4 billion over the medium term is earmarked for spending on the Metrorail and Mainline Passenger Services programmes, including the Modernisation programme. Total revenue over the MTEF period is expected to be R44.4 billion, of which transfers from the DoT account for an estimated R30.4 billion. Other sources of revenue include the sale of train and bus tickets, rental income from the leasing of properties, on-board sales, and interest earned. Partly due to the non-payment of fares by passengers, total revenue is expected to increase from R14 billion in 2019/20 to R15.8 billion in 2022/23. As a result, the agency's operating deficit is set to increase from R2 billion in 2019/20 to R4.1 billion in 2020/21. Persistent operating deficits are expected to result in the agency's trade and other payables increasing from R11.9 billion in 2019/20 to a projected R29.3 billion in 2022/23.

Road Accident Fund

The RAF is mandated to compensate South African road users for losses or damages caused by motor-vehicle accidents within the borders of the country. The fund receives its revenue from the RAF Fuel Levy, in terms of the Customs and Excise Act, 1964 (Act 91 of 1964). Over the medium term, revenue from the Fuel Levy is expected to increase from R43.9 billion in 2019/20 to R45.4 billion in 2022/23. Due to the fund operating on a pay-as-you-go model and paying out what it is able to with the revenue it has, it has insufficient revenue to meet its liabilities, thereby increasing its indebtedness.

Claims against the fund increased from R66 billion in 2016/17 to R108.3 billion in 2019/20, and are expected to increase to R145.6 billion in 2022/23. As a result, the accumulated deficit is expected to increase from R329.7 billion in 2019/20 to R593.1 billion in 2022/23. To address this systemic challenge, the RABS Bill proposes to transform the fund from a liability insurance scheme to a system based on social security principles. This is expected to result in a more equitable and affordable road accident compensation scheme. In the meantime, the fund is developing a turnaround plan to prioritise, among others, reducing legal fees and transforming the claims management systems and processes.

South African National Roads Agency Limited

The SANRAL was established under its own founding legislation, the National Roads Act, 1998 (Act 7 of 1998), which defines its powers and functions. The agency is responsible for the management of South Africa's national road network, including finance, development, planning, control, operating, design and construction, maintenance and rehabilitation of national roads within the framework of government policy.

South Africa has 750 000 km of roads – the 10th-longest road network in the world and by far the longest in Africa. At the core of this network is the spine – a national network of 22 214 km, which is managed by the SANRAL. It stretches from Beit Bridge in the north to the southern-most parts of the continent, and from Oranjemund to the KwaZulu-Natal coast.

As of 1 April 2019, the SANRAL manages a national road network of 22 214 km. Of this, 19 262 km (87%) are non-toll roads and 2 952 km (13%) are toll roads. These roads are the country's single biggest public asset and critical to South Africa's future economic and social trajectory. These roads facilitate development, commerce, mobility and access.

The SANRAL's overarching objective is to meet the needs of South Africa in terms of its national road network. The accelerated implementation of the NDP will be at the core of government initiatives over the next decade and the quality of the country's primary road network will be critical to the success of the NDP.

This is governed by the four pillars of roads, road safety, stakeholders and mobility as contained in its strategy – Horizon 2030. The strategy includes a transformation policy which has the aim of promoting small, emerging, black construction companies and related industries, while also supporting the transformation of the industry to reflect the demographics of the country.

Over the medium term, the agency will continue to focus on undertaking preventative maintenance to improve and preserve the national road network. As such, the agency plans to resurface 3 300 km and improve 1 500 km of roads, upgrade intersections to interchanges, and build new interchanges and bridges.

Other entities

Cross-Border Road Transport Agency

The agency is a Schedule 3A public entity established in terms of the Cross-Border Road Transport Act, 1998 (Act 4 of 1998). The agency's legislative mandate requires it to advise the Minister of Transport on cross-border road transport policy, regulate access to the market by the road transport freight and passenger industry in respect of cross-border road transport by issuing permits, undertaking road transport law enforcement, and playing a facilitative role in contributing to the economic prosperity of the region. The agency's estimated expenditure for 2019/20 was R225.8 million.

Driving Licence Card Account

The Driving Licence Card Account manufactures credit card-format driving licences based on orders received from driving licence testing centres, and generates its own revenue through the sale of licence cards. The entity's estimated expenditure for 2019/20 was R235 million.

Ports Regulator of South Africa

The Ports Regulator of South Africa performs functions that relate mainly to the regulation of pricing and other aspects of economic regulation, the promotion of equal access to ports facilities and services, the monitoring of the industry's compliance with the regulatory framework, and the hearing of any complaints and appeals lodged with it. The regulator's estimated expenditure for 2019/20 was R37.4 million.

Railway Safety Regulator

The RSR oversees and promotes safe railway operations through appropriate support, monitoring and enforcement, guided by an enabling regulatory framework, including regulations for all rail operators in South Africa and those of neighbouring countries whose rail operations enter South Africa. The regulator's estimated expenditure for 2019/20 was R240.6 million.

Road Traffic Infringement Agency

The agency promotes road traffic quality by providing for a scheme to discourage road traffic infringements to support the prosecution of offences in terms of national and provincial laws relating to road traffic, and implements a points demerit system. The agency's estimated expenditure for 2019/20 was R258.9 million.

Road Traffic Management Corporation (RTMC)

The RTMC pools national and provincial government resources for the provision of road traffic management. This includes cooperative and coordinated road traffic strategic planning, regulation, facilitation and law enforcement. The corporation's estimated expenditure for 2019/20 was R1.5 billion.

South African Civil Aviation Authority (SACAA)

The SACAA promotes, regulates and enforces civil aviation safety and security standards across the aviation industry. The entity's estimated expenditure for 2019/20 was R792.5 million.

South African Maritime Safety Authority (SAMSA)

The SAMSA promotes South Africa's maritime interests, ensures the safety of life and property at sea, and prevents and combats the pollution of the marine environment by ships. Functions of the authority are also defined as per international maritime conventions to which South Africa is a signatory. The entity's estimated expenditure for 2019/20 was R505.7 million.

Rail networks

The purpose of the Rail Transport programme within the DoT is to facilitate and coordinate the development of sustainable rail transport policies, rail economic and safety regulations, infrastructure development strategies; systems that reduce system costs and improve customer service; and to monitor and oversee the RSR and the PRASA; and the implementation of integrated rail services planned through the lowest competent sphere of government.

The South African rail network is the eleventh-largest in the world at 22 298 route km, and total track distance of 30 400 km. Public sector railways comprise three distinct vertically integrated entities, namely the Transnet Freight Rail (TFR) division of Transnet SOC Limited (previously Transnet Limited), the PRASA, and the Gautrain Management Agency. They fulfil distinctly different roles and responsibilities, and have different objectives and service delivery requirements.

The DoT has developed a business case which was approved by the National Treasury. This paved way for the revitalisation of the commuter rail network in South Africa. The Modernisation programme covers selected metropolitan areas and includes the upgrading of the signaling system, stations, construction of a rail manufacturing plant and the manufacturing of 3 600 new trains.

The total spending in the Rail Transport programme is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 9.4% from R16.5 billion in 2019/20 to R21.7 billion in 2022/23 over the medium term.

Through the PRASA, the DoT will continue its efforts to modernise South Africa's passenger rail services to improve the reliability of services, increase passenger ridership, improved security provision as well as repairs and maintenance. The spending focus over the medium term in this programme will be on developing the National Rail Bill for submission to Cabinet, developing the National Rail Policy, developing the Branch Line Framework Model for private sector participation, as well as regulating and enhancing rail safety and security by submitting the draft Railway Safety Bill to Cabinet.

Transnet SOC Limited

Transnet is a focused freight-transport and logistics company wholly owned by the South African government. Its divisions include, the TFR, Transnet Rail Engineering, Transnet Port Terminals, Transnet Pipelines and Transnet National Ports Authority.

The Transnet Port Terminals operates 45 cranes in seven ports across the country and plans to buy 39 new ship-to-shore cranes. Container capacity is also being created in other terminals, such as the Durban Ro-Ro and Maydon Wharf Terminal, through the acquisition of new equipment, including mobile cranes and various infrastructure upgrades.

The port is said to be the deepest container terminal in sub-Saharan Africa and will accommodate the new generation of giant container ships that regularly visit the country's shores.

Given its positioning and size, the Ngqura Trade Port will go a long way in boosting South Africa's trade with other countries

in the region and is expected to support the country's new growth path. The planning of the Ngqura Trade Port has been integrated with that of the Coega Industrial Development Zone.

The bulk handling capacity at Ngqura, Richards Bay in KwaZulu-Natal, and Saldanha in the Western Cape will also come in for major expansion.

The TFR is the largest division of Transnet. It is a world-class heavy haul freight rail company that specialises in the transportation of freight.

Its technological leadership goes beyond Africa as well as within Africa, where it is active in some 17 countries.

The TFR has positioned itself to become a profitable and sustainable freight railway business, assisting in driving the competitiveness of the South African economy.

The company is made up of the following business units:

- Agriculture and Bulk Liquids
- Coal
- Container and Automotive
- Iron Ore and Manganese
- Steel and Cement
- Mineral Mining and Chrome.

Forming an integral part of the southern African economy, Transnet:

- moves 17% of the nation's freight annually;
- exports 100% of the country's coal;
- exports 100% of the iron ore;
- 30% of the core network carries 95% of freight volumes;
- has annual revenues of over R14 billion;
- will invest R35 billion in capital over the next five years; and
- has 38 000 employees countrywide.

The company maintains an extensive rail network across South Africa that connects with other rail networks in the sub-Saharan region, with its rail infrastructure representing about 80% of Africa's total.

Gautrain

The Gautrain is an 80-km long mass rapid transit railway system that links Johannesburg, Pretoria and the OR Tambo International Airport.

It was built to relieve traffic congestion in the Johannesburg-Pretoria traffic corridor and offer commuters a viable alternative to road transport, as Johannesburg had limited public transport infrastructure.

The Gauteng 25-Year Integrated Transport Master Plan will ensure integration of transport with spatial patterns, as well as the integration between various transport modes to transport people effectively.

The Gautrain ferries more than 60 000 people a day (including weekends) or 1.2 million people a year.

The Gautrain Management Agency is planning to extend the rail route by 150 km over the next 20 years, including routes through Randburg, Fourways, and Soweto. This expansion is expected to create 211 000 jobs.

A feasibility study that included demand modelling to determine transport needs for Gauteng in 2025 and 2037, indicated that the "cost of doing nothing" in the province will lead to major road congestion in 2037, at which stage cars will travel at an average of 15 km/h due to the doubling of car growth.

The feasibility study identified the following main links and stations of the Gautrain rail network extensions:

- On the link between Jabulani via Cosmo City and Samrand to Mamelodi, stations include Roodepoort, Little Falls, Fourways, Sunninghill, Olievenhoutsbosch, Irene, Tshwane East and Hazeldean.
- The link between Sandton and Cosmo City has a station at Randburg.
- On the link between Rhodesfield and Boksburg there will be a station at East Rand Mall and possible link-up with the OR Tambo International Airport Midfield terminal development.
- A future link from Cosmo City to Lanseria Airport.

In October 2019, the Gautrain Management Agency introduced a contactless bank card to tag in and out at stations, including buses and parking to ensure easy acces to commuters on the go.

Passenger rail safety

The National RSR Act, 2002 (Act 16 of 2002), is the enabling legislation for setting up the independent RSR, reporting and accountable to the Minister of Transport.

The mandate of the RSR is to:

- oversee safety in railway transport, while operators remain responsible for managing the safety of their operations;
- develop an appropriate regulatory framework through the development of regulations and standards for safe railway operations;
- monitor and ensure safety compliance by conducting audits, inspections, safety assessments and occurrence investigations;
- collect and disseminate information relating to safe railway operations;
- promote the harmonisation of the railway safety regime of South Africa with the Southern African Development Community (SADC) railway operations; and
- promote improved safety performance to support the use of rail.

In pursuance of this mandate, the RSR has, in collaboration with the railway industry and the South African Bureau of Standards, developed a series of standards to ensure a common and consistent approach to railway safety in areas such as safety management, technical and operational requirements, and the management of human factors.

A key to the successful regeneration of the railway system in South Africa, and the subregion, is the interoperability of the railways.

This implies consistent standards and common usage of technology where railway infrastructure is used by more than one operator.

The RSR and the railway industry continue to collaborate in developing the overarching broad technical and operating standards.

The need for harmonisation of safety standards within the SADC region is of strategic importance. The RSR is facilitating efforts to adopt and align the current railway safety standards by regional railway operators through the Southern African Railways Association (SARA).

Since the RSR's creation, there has been increased awareness of safety in railways, improvements in safety management and accountability, and standardisation of safety management systems among railway operators in South Africa

and regional railways operating into South Africa. The permit system employed by the RSR ensures the standardisation of safety management systems.

Through its SARA membership, the RSR plays a leading role in regional safety issues. The RSR played a central part in developing the Regional Safety Policy Framework and safety standards and in updating the *Handbook on the Transportation of Hazardous Materials by Rail.*

Since the reintroduction of the railway police, there has been a significant drop in crime on trains and at train stations.

Civil aviation

The DoT's Civil Avialtion programme exists to facilitate the development of an economically viable air transport industry that is safe, secure, efficient, environmentally friendly and compliant with international standards through regulations and investigations; and to oversee aviation public entities. Plans are underway to develop a business case for a government-owned national aviation academy.

South African Airways (SAA)

The SAA is the leading carrier in Africa, serving 56 destinations, in partnership with South African Express Airways (SA Express), Airlink and its low-cost carrier, Mango, within South Africa and across the continent, and nine intercontinental routes from its Johannesburg hub. It is a member of the largest international airline network, Star Alliance.

The airline's core business is the provision of passenger airline and cargo transport services, together with related services, which are provided through the SAA and its four wholly owned subsidiaries:

- SAA Technical,
- Mango,
- Air Chefs, the catering entity of the SAA, and
- South African Travel Centre.

In Dember 2019, the Board of the SAA adopted a resolution to place the airline under business rescue as a mechanism to restore confidence in the company and safeguard its good assets, as well as help to restructure and reposition the entity into one that is stronger, more sustainable and able to grow and attract an equity partner. It was the government's desire that the restructured airline would mark the beginning of a new era in the South African aviation – which would bring in millions more tourists into the country; help create more jobs in tourism and related sectors of the economy; and work with other African airlines to underpin and service the integration of African markets and improve intra-African trade and travel.

The business rescue would incorporate existing lenders to the SAA, providing R2 billion as post commencement finance guaranteed by government and repayable out of future budget appropriations in order for the business rescue process to commence, and to enable the SAA to continue operating.

The business rescue would also incorporate the following:

- government, through the National Treasury, providing an additional R2 billion of post commencement finance in a fiscally neutral manner;
- the prevention of a disorderly collapse of the airline, with a negative impact on passengers, suppliers and other partners in the aviation sector;
- providing an opportunity to critically review the cost structure of the airline, while simultaneously attempting to retain as many jobs as possible; and
- providing a structured opportunity to reorganise the state aviation assets to make them better positioned to be sustainable and attractive to an investment partner.

A business rescue practitioner was chosen to take charge of the business and perform the function of operating the airline with the assistance of management. In February 2020, the government set aside R16.4 billion to repay guaranteed debt for the struggling airline which has incurred net losses of over R32 billion since the 2008/09 financinal year.

In January 2020, the Development Bank of Southern Africa provided R3.5 billion – with an immediate draw-down of R2 billion – to the SAA to assist the national carrier in addressing its liquidity challenges. The money was to repay the airline's guaranteed debt and to cover debt-service costs.

The Companies Act of 2008 prescribes that the primary function of a business rescue process is to develop and implement a rescue plan with the view of fundamentally restructuring the business affairs and other liabilities of a company in distress, in a manner which maximises the likelihood for it to continue to exist on a solvent basis.

If this is not possible, the second option is to dispose of assets so that the company in distress can obtain better returns for its creditors and shareholders than they would otherwise receive from the liquidation of the company.

SA Express

The SA Express is a domestic and regional passenger and cargo carrier. Although the airline is operationally independent of the SAA, its flights are incorporated within the strategic alliance with Airlink and the SAA.

It became the first airline in the country to adopt a new method of taxiing after landing that burns less fuel and cuts fuel emissions.

This simple, but unusual, method of using only one engine to taxi off the runway to the terminal after landing, cuts the amount of fuel burned by an average of 20 litres (l) on every landing.

A flight from Johannesburg to Bloemfontein typically uses 1 000 l of fuel, so saving 20 l is a reduction of 2%, helping the airline to become more cost-efficient. The SA Express offers connectivity between primary and secondary domestic destinations in South Africa and five other SADC countries.

The airline was placed under business rescue in February 2020. The SA Express is unable to settle either short or long-term obligations as they become due. Cumulative losses amount to R1.2 billion over the past 10 years.

Resources

Roads

Roads are a crucial component of South Africa's transport system and economy. The purpose of the DoT's Road Transport programme is to develop and manage an integrated road infrastructure network, regulate road transport, ensure safer roads, and oversee road agencies.

The department continues to ensure efficient and effective investment in the road network to implement the Road Infrastructure Strategic Framework for South Africa, in line with the S'hamba Sonke Road Programme and other related road infrastructure asset management programmes.

Besides funding allocated to the SANRAL for the maintenance of the national road network (non-toll portfolio), the DoT is providing implementation support to provinces (maintenance and upgrading projects) and municipalities (planning support). The plans, going forward, are to introduce more labour intensive methodologies for road projects through appropriate design and construction methods to increase job creation.

Plans include partnering with poor communities with people who can be employed for routine road maintenance and construction activities through the Contractor Householder Programme.

In its efforts to reduce crashes on the country's roads, the DoT will, during the medium term, introduce the National Road Traffic Amendment Bill, which seeks to reduce the blood alcohol limit to zero, with the result that no one on the road should be operating a motor vehicle while under the influence of alcohol and drugs.

To carry out all departmental activities related to the maintenance, development and management of an integrated road infrastructure network and to ensure safer roads, an amount of R102.7 billion was allocated over the medium term in this programme.

National roads

The government is responsible for overall policy, while the SANRAL is responsible for road-building and maintenance. The DoT continues to improve the road network by ensuring that it is well maintained and safe.

Provincial roads

Provincial governments are responsible for planning, constructing and maintaining roads and bridges, except those falling under the SANRAL or local governments. The DoT helps provincial and local governments to improve and develop the state of their roads.

Municipal roads

The construction and maintenance of most roads and streets within the municipal boundaries of cities and towns is the responsibility of the municipality concerned.

Toll roads

The toll-road network comprises about 19% (3 120 km) of the national road grid. The SANRAL manages some 1 832 km of these toll roads.

In its endeavour to continue the expansion and maintenance of the comprehensive national road network, the SANRAL will continue the selective expansion of toll roads.

About 1 288 km of the tolled sections of national roads have been concessioned to private companies to develop, operate and maintain.

The N12 freeway was recently upgraded at a cost of R485 million. It entailed the rehabilitation and upgrading of the N12 from Eldorado Park to the North West border, with the entire section of the road developed into a dual carriageway.

The 20-month project involved the resurfacing of the freeway, clearing of drainage structures, replacing missing steel grids, reinstatement of road markings, erecting new road signs and replacing guard rails.

The N12 freeway serves as a critical freight link between Gauteng and North West, including the Western Cape. It also services the mining, agriculture and tourism sectors.

The project had a strong economic empowerment component, with over 350 workers, particularly women and youth, as well as more than 20 local subcontractors from communities along the route.

The N2 Wild Coast Toll Road Project recently revised a route spanning 410 km from East London to the Mtamvuna River Bridge. The recent upgrade on the N1 highway, between Pretoria and Bela-Bela, is expected to increase the design life of the road by ten years.

Other upgrades on the 395 km of network under Bakwena's control include adding 70 km of dual carriageway on the N4 between Pretoria and Rustenburg in a R1.5-billion project. Bakwena has already added 35 km of dual carriageway on the N4, with the upgrade to be completed by 2020/21.

Bakwena is also spending R230 million on selected plaza and interchange upgrades.

Civil aviation

South Africa's nine major airports are:

- OR Tambo International Airport in Gauteng,
- Cape Town International Airport in the Western Cape,
- King Shaka International Airport in KwaZulu-Natal,
- Bram Fischer International Airport in the Free State,
- Port Elizabeth International Airport in the Eastern Cape,
- Upington International Airport in the Northern Cape,
- East London Airport in the Eastern Cape,
- George Airport in the Western Cape, and
- Kimberley Airport in the Northern Cape.

Airlift Strategy

The Airlift Strategy introduced structured regulatory measures for increasing tourism growth in South Africa. In particular, this strategy is based on aviation policy directives and contributes to the county's growth by:

- aligning with the Tourism Growth Strategy and industry;
- prioritising tourism and trade markets; and
- unblocking obstacles to growth through regulatory mechanisms, and bilateral and multilateral air-services negotiations.

The overall objective of the Airlift Strategy is to increase aviation's contribution towards sustainable economic growth and job creation. This requires the creation and maintenance of an enabling framework, within which both suppliers and consumers of air-transport services may exercise reasonable flexibility and choice.

The strategy enhances the prospects of South Africa as a preferred air-travel destination and synchronises the basis for bilateral air-services negotiations with other priorities.

The strategy also provides specific guidelines for various unique markets, with emphasis on the needs of intra-African air services, and aims to improve the regulation of particularly the supply side of air-transport services.

The DoT also developed the Airlift Implementation Plan, which provides a clear framework and capacity targets to be met.

Airlines

Several domestic airlines, as well as a number of smaller charter airline companies, operate in South Africa.

The SAA, British Airways (BA)/Comair, SA Express, SA Airlink and Interair operate scheduled air services within South Africa and the Indian Ocean islands. In addition to serving Africa, the SAA also operates services to Europe, Latin America and the Far East.

Other airlines operating in the country are Kulula and Mango. Scheduled international air services are also provided by Air Afrique, Air Austral, Air Botswana, Air France, Air Gabon, Air Madagascar, Air Malawi, Air Mauritius, Air Namibia, Air Portugal, Air Seychelles, Air Tanzania, Air Zimbabwe, Eswatini Airlink, Alliance Express, BA, Cameroon Airlines, Delta Airlines, El Al Israel Airlines, Egyptair, Emirates, Ethiopian Airlines, Ghana Airways, Iberia, KLM, Kenya Airways, LAM Mozambique Airlines, LTU International Airways, Lufthansa, MK Airlines, Malaysia Airlines, Martinair Holland, Northwest Airlines, Olympic Airways, Qantas, Royal Air Maroc, Saudi Arabian Airlines, Singapore Airlines, Swissair, Taag, Thai International, Turkish Airlines, Uganda Airlines, United Airlines, Varig, Virgin Atlantic, Yemenia, Zambian Air Services and Zambian Skyways.

Freight transport

Africa's road access rate is only 34% compared with 50% in other geographical zones. However, roads remain the dominant mode of transportation, accounting for more than 90% of passenger and freight transport in Africa, compared with around 50% of freight in Europe.

Pipelines

South Africa consumes about 25 billion l of petroleum products a year. Transnet Pipelines transports almost 50% of all refined petroleum products in the country for the emerging and major oil companies of South Africa. The Tarlton storage and distribution depot is a vital conduit in the supply of fuel to Botswana. The company plans to enhance this service.

Transnet Pipelines transports all the crude requirements for the inland refinery at the National Petroleum Refiners of South Africa, from where almost 70% of their refined products and 80% at Secunda are transported through the pipeline network to the final markets.

Transnet Pipelines owns, maintains and operates a network of 3 000 km of high-pressure petroleum and gas pipelines.

Investment in the pipeline sector is ongoing. Construction on a R5.8 billion fuel pipeline between the Mozambican Port of Matola in Maputo and Kendal in South Africa started in 2009. The 450-km pipeline transports up to 3.5 millilitres (ml) a year and is expected to prevent potential fuel shortages in South Africa.

The pipeline facilitates the importation of petrol and diesel from Mozambique, which has extensive natural gas and coal reserves, but no oil reserves. Of the pipeline's total capacity of 3.5 ml of fuel and diesel, a maximum of 1.5 ml is diverted to Mbombela. The remainder is transported to Kendal.

More than 60% of South Africa's liquid-fuels demand lies within the Durban-Johannesburg corridor. The Durban-Johannesburg pipeline was no longer adequate for the transportation of the required volumes of petroleum products from the coast to the inland regions.

Maritime transport

The DoT's Marine Transport programme exists to implement the Comprehensive Maritime Transport Policy (CMTP) to ensure promotion and coordination; as well as infrastructure and industry development and achieve compliance through monitoring, evaluation and oversight, and collaboration with maritime related public entities namely; the Ports Regulator; National Ports Authority; the SAMSA industry and international bodies.

Marine transport encompasses all forms of transport by sea, intermodal links and inland ports. It serves a large degree for the freight market, and in the South African context, offers no significant passenger-carrying ability.

The DoT is responsible for South Africa's maritime administration and legislation – the SAMSA controls on its behalf in terms of the SAMSA Act, 1998 (Act 5 of 1998).

The broad aim of the SAMSA is to maintain the safety of life and property at sea within South Africa's area of maritime jurisdiction, and to ensure the prevention of marine pollution by oil and other substances emanating from ships.

The Department of Environment, Forestry and Fisheries (DEFF) is responsible for combating pollution and uses Kuswag coast-watch vessels to perform this function. The SAMSA is responsible for introducing and maintaining international standards set by the International Maritime Organisation (IMO) in London, United Kindom, with respect to:

- ship construction;
- maritime training and training curriculums;
- watch-keeping;
- certification of seafarers;
- manning and operation of local and foreign ships;
- maritime search-and-rescue;
- marine communications and radio navigation aids; and
- pollution prevention.

The SAMSA has an operations unit, a policy unit and a corporate support division to handle all financial, human resources and information technology issues.

Other functions include registering ships, establishing a coastal patrol service and managing marine casualties and wrecks.

The SAMSA is steadily improving its capacity to monitor safety standards of foreign vessels. Numerous ships calling at South Africa's major ports are inspected, and those not complying with internatiomanal safety standards are detained until the deficiencies are corrected.

The South African Marine Corporation, Unicorn Lines and Griffin Shipping are the country's predominant shipping lines. Their fleets of container, oil tanker, general cargo and bulk cargo vessels operate not only between South African ports but as cross-traders to other parts of the world.

Comprehensive Maritime Transport Policy

South African's length of the coastline is estimated to be approximately 3 000 km. In South Africa, the greatest challenge has been the absence of a maritime transport policy that is required to provide guidance to the industry. The much awaited Maritime Transport Policy will create certainty in the transport sector and the logistics market.

There are over 89 464 merchant ships trading internationally, transporting different types of cargoes and registered, in 150 nations, thus growing marine international trade by 4% per annum. South Africa currently has four ships on its ship register and there is commitment to grow the register through the

creation of a conducive environment and providing incentives to ship-owners as an encouragement to set up offices and possibly register under the South African flag.

The DoT maintains a single emergency towing vessel that is available to respond to emergency incidents, which is mainly deployed in the Western Seaboard. This exposes certain areas of the coastline, especially of the Indian Ocean, to risks from ships oil pollution in the event of accidents or incidents. The DoT is working on a long term strategy to enhance capacity and capability for oil pollution surveillance and response.

The development of the Ports Economic Participation Framework, which is prioritised for the remaining period of the MTSF, will lay a firm legal basis for the effective implementation of the relevant provisions of the Ports Act, 2005 (Act 12 of 2005). In order to increase the direct contribution of the maritime transport sector to the economy, revitalisation of merchant shipping through the development of a private sector driven national shipping carrier(s) and promotion of coastal shipping services for specific cargoes is very essential.

Following the approval of the CMTP by Cabinet, the DoT has embarked on the process of developing a Maritime Transport Strategy 2030.

The CMTP serves as the embodiment of government's commitment to the growth, development and transformation of South Africa's maritime transport sector. It represents South Africa's long term vision, the underpinning philosophy and principles that inform its development and the direction that government has committed to take the sector to reach its full potential.

As a priority, the DoT will also be establishing the Maritime Transport Sector Development Council to drive the sector growth and development initiatives. Through this initiative, a transforming and inclusively growing maritime transport economy that leverages South Africa's competitive advantage in geographic position, nature and heritage; supported by people, innovative insfrastructure and service excellence, will be built.

South African Maritime Training Academy (SAMTRA)

The SAMTRA, at Simon's Town in the Western Cape, provides advanced training to the broader maritime sector, including the merchant navy, harbour-craft operations, the fishing industry and the South African Navy.

The South African Merchant Navy Academy, General Botha, established at Granger Bay, is integrated with the Cape Peninsula University of Technology (CPUT), with a similar training facility at the Durban University of Technology (DUT).

Deck and engineering students and officers complete their academic training at the CPUT and DUT, while lower classes of certificates are offered at the Northlink College, situated in the Duncan Dock area in Cape Town. This training institution also caters for deck, engine-room and catering department ratings.

The SAMSA is responsible for setting all standards of training certification and watch-keeping on behalf of the DoT, while the Maritime Education and Training Board is responsible for accrediting all maritime courses.

Other maritime training organisations offer a wide range of courses that have been developed within the South African maritime industry. These are situated mainly in the ports of Cape Town and Durban and, to a lesser degree, Port Elizabeth.

As part of an initiative to reduce the vacancy rate of at least 45 000 jobs in the maritime industry, 12 Further Education and Training (FET) colleges across the country started to offer courses aimed at equipping young people for a career in the industry.

The FET colleges will meet at least 80% of the industry's skills demands, producing artisans such as riggers, welders and boiler makers. Annually, between 1 200 and 1 600 students enter the maritime industry after completing their studies.

Ports

Along its 3 000 km-long coastline, South Africa has eight commercial seaports: Richards Bay, Durban, East London, Ngqura, Port Elizabeth, Mossel Bay, Cape Town and Saldanha.

South Africa is situated on a major sea route, which facilitates the safe and secure movement of about 500 megatonnes (Mt) of crude petrochemical sea trade. This represents over 30% of the world's petrochemical production, on board over 5 000 tanker voyages of very large crude carriers per year.

The commercial ports are crucial to South Africa's transport, logistics and socio-economic development. About 98% of South Africa's exports are conveyed by sea.

The Port of Durban is the busiest container terminal in Africa and the second busiest in the southern hemisphere, following Melbourne, Australia. The Ports Authority alone employs 6 200 people at the Durban Port, with an estimated 30 000 people employed indirectly.

Richard's Bay is the busiest port in South Africa by tonnage and is one of the top two coal-handling ports in the world. Richard's Bay focuses on bulk cargo handling while the Durban Port focuses on general cargo. It has also been earmarked for expansion projects with R3.7 billion set aside for mobile and quayside equipment, as well as weighbridges. Safety-critical, environmental and legal-compliance projects will also be carried out.

Cape Town, located at the southern-most point of Africa, is ideally positioned as a hub terminal for cargo to South America and the Far East. West/East Africa cargo has grown substantially, making the Cape Town Container Terminal the terminal of choice for trans-shipment cargo. The terminal handles 3 161 vessels per year for a gross tonnage of 44 501 297.

The Port Elizabeth Container Terminal is one of the three specialised container-handling facilities along the South African coastline. The terminal currently handles 1 271 ships with a total gross tonnage of 25 756 823.

Safety of travellers

Arrive Alive

The government's Arrive Alive Road-Safety Campaign has become an important part of the DoT's road safety projects and awareness efforts, especially during critical periods for road traffic management such as the Easter long weekend and the December holidays.

At the end of 2015, it was announced that the RTMC could not use the Arrive Alive campaign anymore, as it had been registered as a brand. The safety campaign remains in place, operating under the name 365 Days of Road Safety Programme, which focuses on creating awareness all year round.

The goals of the campaign are to:

- reduce the number of road-traffic accidents in general, and fatalities in particular, by 5% compared with the same period the previous year;
- improve road-user compliance with traffic laws; and
- forge improved working relationships between traffic authorities in the various spheres of government.

The campaign emphasised that the reduction in road deaths was urgent and non-negotiable.

The RAF pays out about R15 billion to victims of road accidents every year.

The DoT intends to harmonise road traffic law enforcement and establish a single traffic police unit. As part of efforts to alleviate the scourge of road accidents and incidents, the department continues to work tirelessly to ensure that law enforcement is declared an essential service to guarantee availability of traffic officers 24/7 on the roads. Anti-fraud and corruption operations will continue to be intensified at all public and private driver learning testing centres and driving schools around the country.

UN Decade of Action for Road Safety 2011 – 2020

South Africa is a signatory to the UN Decade of Action for Road Safety 2011 – 2020. The UN General Assembly resolution proclaiming a Decade of Action for Road Safety 2011 – 2020 was tabled by Russia and co-sponsored by more than 90 countries.

The initiative aims to save lives by halting the increasing trends in road traffic deaths and injuries world-wide.

It is based on the following pillars:

- Building road safety management capacity.
- Improving the safety of road infrastructure and broader transport networks.
- Further developing the safety of vehicles.
- Enhancing the behaviour of road users.
- Improving post-crash response.

As part of the campaign, the government is targeting the reduction in fatalities by 50% in 2020.

South Africa's efforts are focused on four key areas:

- fatigue or driver fitness;
- drinking and driving;
- use of seat belts; and
- pedestrian safety.

A key aspect of the integrated Road Safety Management programme is increasing pedestrian safety. In planning and design, the SANRAL provides for interventions such as traffic calming, safe stopping areas for public transport, and pedestrian bridges. The DoT also engages communities adjacent to national roads to find solutions to pedestrians' needs.

To contribute to safety on the roads, the SANRAL has developed a database of projects that need to be implemented in areas that are hazardous to pedestrians. The solutions range from pedestrian bridges, pavements, road safety education and traffic calming measures.

When it comes to managing safety on freeways, the SANRAL's incident management system, supported by central coordination centres, embraces interaction between emergency services and law enforcement agencies on all declared national routes.

Maritime safety

An estimated 7 000 vessels pass around South Africa's coastline annually, of which many are laden tankers carrying in excess of 30 Mt of crude oil. South African weather conditions present regular challenges to vessels, often resulting in distress calls to the Cape Town-based Maritime Rescue Coordination Centre (MRCC).

Piracy constitutes a serious challenge to the development and stability of the SADC member states, given the importance of the region's international seaborne trade and its vital contribution to regional food stocks and economic development.

Threats of piracy are of particular concern to the SADC, whose coastline and shipping lanes are extremely vulnerable to maritime crime. As the SADC's coastal area does not fall within patrol areas of the international anti-pirate forces, the SADC will have to take responsibility for its own maritime security.

The threat around the Horn of Africa and SADC waters detrimentally affects the SADC's trade and economy.

The SADC's Maritime Strategy entails a regional partnership with all member states contributing within their means. Not all members necessarily have the essential maritime and military capabilities, but they still contribute in other ways by providing land-based equipment such as radar and soldiers to patrol coastlines and islands.

The SADC has established robust rules of engagement for anti-piracy, which are largely consistent with those of other regions and task forces.

Regarding the legal framework, SADC member states are expected to:

- ratify or accede to international maritime conventions/treaties/regimes and the incorporation of these into their national law;
- put in place comprehensive legal regimes at national level, consistent with international law, to prosecute pirates;
- stop the practice of "catch-and-release" of pirates since it allows experienced pirates to execute more sophisticated acts of piracy;
- strengthen and harmonise regional and domestic legal frameworks for arrest, awaiting trial detention, prosecution and imprisonment or repatriation of pirates; and
- take responsibility for its own maritime security in cooperation with other regions, task forces, navies and role players.

The MRCC enables South Africa to exercise its responsibilities to the international community by employing state-of-the-art search-and-rescue infrastructure and services.

South Africa has a well-established pollution prevention strategy, and is ready to respond in case of threats to the environment or to provide assistance to vessels at risk.

South Africa acts in terms of the Indian Ocean Memorandum of Understanding (MoU) on Port State Control and has a similar agreement with the states of West Africa in the form of the Abuja MoU.

Search and rescue services

The Southern African Search and Rescue Organisation (Sasar) has been in existence since 1957. It was formalised through the enactment of the South African Maritime and Aeronautical Search and Rescue (SAR) Act, 2002 (Act 44 of 2002). The Act gave the organisation a statutory mandate to coordinate all SAR activities within South Africa's area of responsibility.

South Africa is responsible for a huge SAR area, representing about 10% of the globe and about 28.5 million km^2 in total. To manage this vast area, the South African area is divided into the aeronautical and maritime SAR areas.

The aeronautical SAR region covers Lesotho, Namibia, South Africa and Eswatini, and associated flight information regions.

The maritime SAR area stretches about halfway between South Africa and South America on the western side, and about halfway between South Africa and Australia on the eastern side. It also borders on Namibia, Angola, South Africa and Mozambique on the northern side and then extends to the south pole.

Relevant operational structures and substructures were established for Sasar to execute its mandate successfully.

The Aeronautical Rescue Coordination Centre (ARCC) and the MRCC are the primary structures responsible for the execution of Sasar's statutory mandate. The ARCC and the MRCC are based at the ATNS and SAMSA.

The SAR only works when several countries and all stakeholders collaborate across borders. This culture of collaboration dates back to 1959 when the Convention on International Civil Aviation first made provision for cooperation between states.

According to this provision, states will individually or in cooperation with other states, arrange for the establishment and prompt provision of the SAR services within their territories to ensure that people in distress get assistance.

Regional cooperation also uses scarce resources and helps nations to avoid duplicating efforts and facilities.

Through this collaboration, services are provided for poor states in a uniform way across a wide area. Collaboration also reduces the overall cost of the SAR operations.

The SADC approached the ICAO and the IMO to fund the training requirements identified for the region.

In collaboration with the DEFF, the DoT is also planning to create the SAR capacity in the Antarctic region.

The DoT, the South African National Defence Force, Telkom, Portnet, the SAMSA, the SACAA, the ATNS, the South African Police Service, the Independent Communications Authority of South Africa, the SAA and the Department of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs are members of the Sasar and contribute their services and facilities.

Voluntary organisations such as the 4x4 Rescue Club, the Mountain Club of South Africa, Hamnet (the national amateur radio emergency communication network) and the National Sea Rescue Institute are also members of the Sasar.

The ARCC Centre is an operational facility of the Sasar that promotes the efficient organisation of search and rescue services and coordinates aeronautical search and rescue operations. This plays a significant role in improving the safety of South African airspace.